

# Manitowoc

## OPERATOR MANUAL

This manual has been prepared for and is considered part of -

**12000-1**

Model Number

**1200Ref**

Serial Number

This Manual is divided into the following sections:

	<b>IMPORTANT INFORMATION</b>
<b>SECTION 1</b>	<b>SAFETY</b>
<b>SECTION 2</b>	<b>OPERATION</b>
<b>SECTION 3</b>	<b>LOAD SAFETY DEVICE</b>
<b>SECTION 4</b>	<b>ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY</b>
<b>SECTION 5</b>	<b>ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT</b>
<b>SECTION 6</b>	<b>WIRE ROPE</b>
<b>SECTION 7</b>	<b>MAINTENANCE</b>
<b>SECTION 8</b>	<b>REFERENCE MATERIAL</b>

### NOTICE

The serial number of the crane is the only method the Manitowoc Crane Care Lattice Team has of providing you with correct parts and service information.

**Always furnish serial number of crane** when ordering parts or discussing service problems with your Manitowoc distributor or the Manitowoc Crane Care Lattice Team.



## WARNING

### To prevent death or serious injury:

- Avoid unsafe operation and maintenance.  
Crane and attachments must be operated and maintained by trained and experienced personnel. Manitowoc is not responsible for qualifying these personnel.
- Do not operate or work on crane or attachments without first reading and understanding instructions contained in Operator Information Manual and Service Manual supplied with crane and applicable attachments.
- Store Operator Information Manual and Service Manual in operator's cab.

If Operator Information Manual or Service Manual is missing from cab, contact your Manitowoc distributor for a new one.

12001229

**THE ORIGINAL LANGUAGE OF THIS PUBLICATION IS ENGLISH**

**IMPORTANT INFORMATION**

**1. SAFETY**

1.1	SAFETY INFORMATION .....	1-1
1.2	EXPLANATION OF WARNING LABELS IN THE MACHINE .....	1-2
1.2.1	HANDLING OF WARNING LABELS IN THE MACHINE .....	1-2
1.2.2	LABEL LAYOUT .....	1-3
1.3	SAFE OPERATING PRACTICES FOR MOBILE CRANES .....	1-20
1.4	SAFETY AT INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE WORK .....	1-44
1.5	SAFETY DURING ASSEMBLY AND DISASSEMBLY WORK .....	1-47
1.6	CAUTIONS IN HANDLING OIL AND PAINT .....	1-48
1.7	SAFETY EQUIPMENT (OPTION) .....	1-50

**2. OPERATION**

2.1	TERMINOLOGY OF MACHINE EACH PART .....	2-1
2.1.1	CRANE .....	2-1
2.2	LOCATIONS AND TERMS OF OPERATING CONTROLS .....	2-2
2.2.1	HANDING LEVER AND PEDAL .....	2-3
2.2.2	OPERATING SWITCHES .....	2-10
2.2.3	VARIOUS SETTING OF MONITOR .....	2-39
2.2.4	WIND SPEED SENSOR INSTALLATION (OPTION) .....	2-49
2.2.5	AIR CONDITIONER .....	2-50
2.2.6	AM/FM RADIO .....	2-57
2.2.7	1WAY CALL (TRANSMITTER) .....	2-65
2.2.8	CAMERA MONITOR (OPTION) .....	2-66
2.3	CRANE OPERATION .....	2-69
2.3.1	ADJUSTING THE OPERATOR'S SEAT .....	2-69
2.3.2	GETTING ON OR OFF TO THE OPERATOR SEAT .....	2-71
2.3.3	STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE .....	2-72
2.3.4	AUTO IDLE STOP FUNCTION .....	2-86
2.3.5	FUNCTION LOCK LEVER .....	2-89
2.3.6	PROPELLING OPERATION .....	2-90
2.3.7	SWINGING OPERATION .....	2-93
2.3.8	BOOM RAISING/LOWERING OPERATION .....	2-97
2.3.9	HOOK RAISING/LOWERING OPERATION .....	2-100
2.4	FREE FALL OPERATION (OPTION) .....	2-109
2.5	CLAMSHELL OPERATION .....	2-115
2.5.1	PREPARATION WORK .....	2-116
2.5.2	CLAMSHELL WORK .....	2-121

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

2.6	HANDLING OF HYDRAULIC TAGLINE (OPTION) .....	2-122
2.7	HANDLING OF VIBRO HAMMER.....	2-125
2.8	HANDLING OF REEVING WINCH (OPTION) .....	2-128
2.9.1	PREPARATION BEFORE HANDLING REEVING WINCH .....	2-129
2.9.2	HANDLING PROCEDURE OF REEVING WINCH.....	2-131
2.9	OPERATION IN WEATHER CHANGE AND SPECIAL CIRCUMSTANCE .....	2-135
2.9.1	CAUTION AGAINST WIND .....	2-135
2.9.2	CAUTION AGAINST ELECTRIC SHOCK.....	2-147
2.9.3	CAUTION AGAINST RADIO WAVE INTERFERENCE.....	2-150
2.9.4	CAUTION AGAINST LIGHTNING .....	2-151
2.9.5	COUNTERMEASURE AGAINST EARTHQUAKE .....	2-152
 <b>3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE</b>		
3.1	ARRANGEMENT OF EQUIPMENTS.....	3-5
3.2	TYPE AND FUNCTIONS OF EQUIPMENTS.....	3-10
3.3	CONNECTING PROCEDURE OF WIRING.....	3-19
3.3.1	CRANE ATTACHMENT .....	3-19
3.4	FUNCTION OF MONITOR.....	3-26
3.5	OPERATING PROCEDURE OF MONITOR.....	3-27
3.5.1	SETTING OF CRANE CONFIGURATION.....	3-33
3.5.2	SELECTION OF MAIN LIFTING /AUXILIARY LIFTING.....	3-45
3.5.3	SETTING OF WORK AREA LIMIT VALUE .....	3-46
3.6	SWING LIMITATION DEVICE (OPTION) .....	3-52
3.7	FUNCTION OF GROUND INCLINE INDICATOR (OPTION).....	3-64
3.8	LOAD HISTORY.....	3-66
3.9	ALARMING AND AUTO-STOP .....	3-67
3.9.1	CONTENT OF ALARMING AND AUTO-STOP.....	3-67
3.9.2	CONTENT OF AUTO-STOP .....	3-68
3.9.3	RELEASING AUTO-STOP .....	3-70
3.10	INSPECTION .....	3-76
3.10.1	INSPECTION PROCEDURE WHEN BOOM IS RAISED AFTER ATTACHMENT ASSEMBLY WORK IS COMPLETED3 .....	-76
3.10.2	INSPECTION AFTER ERECTING ATTACHMENT.....	3-78
3.11	CAUTIONS IN HANDLING LOAD SAFETY DEVICE .....	3-81
3.12	ABNORMALITY INDICATION AND ITS ACTION.....	3-82
3.13	MESSAGE TABLE .....	3-91
3.14	CHECKING PROCEDURE OF LOAD SAFETY DEVICE .....	3-97

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

4.1	SWING AND PROPEL STABILITY .....	4-1
4.2	ASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY .....	4-3
4.2.1	UNLOADING MAIN MACHINERY FROM TRAILER .....	4-7
4.2.2	CRAWLER INSTALLATION .....	4-23
4.2.3	CAB STEP EXTENSION .....	4-37
4.2.4	CARBODY WEIGHT INSTALLATION .....	4-38
4.2.5	ASSEMBLING THE COUNTERWEIGHTS (USING SELF REMOVAL DEVICE)4	4-43
4.2.6	SETTING THE COUNTERWEIGHT LINK.....	4-47
4.2.7	INSTALLATION OF COUNTERWEIGHTS TO MACHINE (USING SELF REMOVAL DEVICE)4 .....	-48
4.3	DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY.....	4-57
4.3.1	REMOVE THE COUNTERWEIGHTS FROM THE MACHINE (USING SELF RE- MOVAL DEVICE)4.....	-59
4.3.2	DISASSEMBLY OF THE COUNTERWEIGHT (USING SELF REMOVAL DEVICE)4	-65
4.3.3	CARBODY WEIGHT REMOVAL .....	4-70
4.3.4	STOWING CAB STEP .....	4-75
4.3.5	CRAWLER REMOVAL .....	4-76
4.3.6	MAIN MACHINERY LOADING INTO TRAILER .....	4-88
4.4	TRANSPORTATION .....	4-100
4.5	LIFTING OF WHOLE MAIN MACHINERY .....	4-101
4.5.1	UPPER STRUCTURE (WITH CARBODY) LIFTING PROCEDURES.....	4-102
4.5.2	LOADING/UNLOADING THE MACHINE FROM/ONTO A TRAILER.....	4-103
4.5.3	INSTALLATION OF CRAWLER .....	4-103
4.5.4	INSTALLATION OF GANTRY TO REVOLVING FRAME.....	4-104
4.6	ASSEMBLY OF BOOM BASE.....	4-109
4.6.1	BOOM BASE INSTALLATION.....	4-110
4.6.2	BACKSTOP INSTALLATION.....	4-112
4.6.3	UPPER SPREADER INSTALLATION .....	4-113
4.6.4	REEVING BOOM HOIST WIRE ROPE .....	4-114
4.6.5	INSTALLATION OF BOOM HOIST WIRE ROPE TO THE DRUM.....	4-116
4.6.6	REEVING HOOK HOIST WIRE ROPE .....	4-117
4.7	DISASSEMBLY OF BOOM BASE.....	4-118
4.6.1	WINDING UP OF BOOM HOIST ROPE.....	4-118
4.6.2	UPPER SPREADER REMOVAL .....	4-120
4.6.3	BACKSTOP REMOVAL.....	4-121
4.6.4	REMOVAL OF BOOM BASE.....	4-123
4.8	EXTENDING/RETRACTING THE CRAWLERS.....	4-125
4.7.1	EXTENDING THE CRAWLER.....	4-125

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

4.7.2	RETRACTING THE CRAWLER .....	4-132
<b>5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT</b>		
5.1	ASSEMBLING THE ATTACHMENT .....	5-4
5.1.1	ARRANGEMENT OF BOOM/JIB/GUY LINE.....	5-5
5.1.2	INSTALLING THE BOOM TIP .....	5-13
5.1.3	INSTALLATION OF THE BASIC GUY LINE .....	5-15
5.1.4	CONNECTING THE BOOM INSERT .....	5-17
5.1.5	INSTALLING THE CABLE ROLLERS.....	5-29
5.1.6	CONNECTING THE BOOM GUY LINES .....	5-30
5.1.7	CAUTION FOR CANTILEVER .....	5-32
5.1.8	FRONT DRUM WIRE ROPE REEVING.....	5-33
5.1.9	ASSEMBLING THE JIB.....	5-37
5.1.10	REEVING OF REAR DRUM WIRE ROPE .....	5-42
5.1.11	INSTALLING THE AUXILIARY SHEAVE .....	5-45
5.1.12	REEVING THE REAR DRUM WIRE ROPE TO THE AUXILIARY SHEAVE ....	5-46
5.1.13	PERFORMANCE CHECK OF EACH LIMIT SWITCH.....	5-48
5.2	ERECTING THE ATTACHMENT .....	5-49
5.2.1	CONFIRMATION BEFORE ERECTING THE ATTACHMENT.....	5-49
5.2.2	ERECTING THE ATTACHMENT .....	5-50
5.3	LOWERING THE ATTACHMENT .....	5-54
5.3.1	LOWERING THE ATTACHMENT .....	5-55
5.4	DISASSEMBLING THE ATTACHMENT .....	5-56
5.4.1	TREATMENT OF OVERHOIST LIMIT SWITCH WIRING.....	5-56
5.4.2	WINDING UP THE FRONT/REAR DRUM WIRE ROPES .....	5-59
5.4.3	DISASSEMBLING THE JIB.....	5-61
5.4.4	REMOVING THE AUXILIARY SHEAVE .....	5-64
5.4.5	REMOVING THE BOOM GUY LINE .....	5-66
5.4.6	REMOVING THE CABLE ROLLER.....	5-68
5.4.7	DISASSEMBLING THE BOOM .....	5-69
5.5	PROCEDURE OF THE BOOM NESTING (OPTION).....	5-73
5.5.1	NESTING PROCEDURE.....	5-73
5.5.2	UNNESTING PROCEDURE .....	5-74
5.6	CAUTION WHEN TRANSPORTING BOOM.....	5-75
<b>6. WIRE ROPE</b>		
6.1	HANDLING OF WIRE ROPE .....	6-1
6.1.1	SPECIFICATION OF WIRE ROPE .....	6-2
6.1.2	WIRE ROPE LENGTH .....	6-5

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

6.1.3	CAUTIONS IN HANDLING WIRE ROPE .....	6-7
6.1.4	WINDING WIRE ROPE TO THE DRUM .....	6-8
6.1.5	WINDING PROCEDURE OF WIRE ROPE TO DRUM .....	6-9
6.1.6	CORRECTING METHOD OF ENTANGLED WIRE ROPE .....	6-13
6.1.7	ROPE SOCKET INSTALLATION .....	6-16
6.1.8	REPLACEMENT STANDARDS FOR WIRE ROPE .....	6-18

## 7. MAINTENANCE

7.1	INSPECTION INTERVAL .....	7-10
7.1.1	INSPECTION POINT .....	7-10
7.1.2	GREASING (WATER SUPPLY) POINT .....	7-12
7.2	INSPECTION .....	7-14
7.2.1	INSPECTION OF UPPER MACHINERY .....	7-14
7.2.2	INSPECTION OF LOWER MACHINERY .....	7-20
7.2.3	INSPECTION OF ATTACHMENT .....	7-22
7.2.4	INSPECTION METHOD OF EACH POINT .....	7-24
7.3	OIL/GREASE SUPPLY AND WATER SUPPLY .....	7-49
7.3.1	UPPER LUBRICATION (INCL. WATER SUPPLY) .....	7-53
7.3.2	LOWER LUBRICATION .....	7-55
7.3.3	ATTACHMENT LUBRICATION .....	7-57
7.3.4	INSPECTION, GREASING (WATER SUPPLY) ON EACH POINT .....	7-59
7.4	CLEANING/WASHING/CHANGING FILTER ELEMENT AND STRAINER .....	7-78
7.5	BATTERY INSPECTION .....	7-96
7.6	LOCATION AND USE OF FUSE .....	7-100
7.7	OPERATION UNDER SEVERE CONDITIONS .....	7-102
7.8	HANDLING OF DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER .....	7-104
7.9	MACHINE STORAGE .....	7-107
7.10	TIGHTENING TORQUE VALUES .....	7-108
7.11	PERIODICAL REPLACING SECURITY PARTS .....	7-111
7.12	ADJUSTMENT .....	7-114
7.12.1	ADJUSTMENT OF FRONT, REAR, THIRD DRUM LOCKS .....	7-114
7.12.2	ADJUSTMENT OF BOOM DRUM LOCK .....	7-115
7.12.3	CRAWLER SHOES ADJUSTMENT .....	7-116
7.13	CONSUMABLE PARTS LIST .....	7-117
7.14	MEASURES REQUIRED FOR FRONT, REAR WINCH MONITORING .....	7-122
7.14.1	THEORETICAL SERVICE LIFE .....	7-122
7.14.2	USED PROPORTION OF THEORETICAL SERVICE LIFE .....	7-124
7.14.3	EXAMPLE .....	7-129

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

8.1	SPECIFICATION.....	8-1
8.1.1	OUTER DIMENSION.....	8-2
8.1.2	CRANE SPECIFICATION, PERFORMANCE .....	8-3
8.1.3	CRANE WORKING RANGES .....	8-4
8.2	DIMENSION, WEIGHT OF EACH COMPONENT .....	8-7
8.2.1	MAIN MACHINERY .....	8-7
8.2.2	COUNTERWEIGHT .....	8-9
8.2.3	CRANE ATTACHMENT .....	8-11
8.3	CLAMSHELL RATED LOADS (OPTION) .....	8-14
8.4	SWING AND PROPEL STABILITY .....	8-17
8.5	PROPEL ALLOWABLE SLOPE ANGLE.....	8-19
8.5.1	CRANE ATTACHMENT INSTALLED : BOOM INSERT CONFIGURATION ....	8-19
8.6	LOW GANTRY POSITION .....	8-26
8.7	SAFETY DEVICE LIST (OPTION).....	8-27

12001229



## IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Thank you for purchasing your Manitowoc crawler crane.

Full-hydraulically operated crawler crane is manufactured based on our many years of experience and expertise. This manual describes the important information about the Model 12000-1.

Before operating the machine, be sure to thoroughly read this manual to use the machine safely and efficiently.

---

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not operate or maintain this machine until you read this manual and understand the instructions. Improper operation or maintenance of this machine may cause accidents and could result in serious injury or loss of life.**

**Always keep this manual in the operators cab. If it is missing or damaged, place an order to a Manitowoc authorized dealer for a replacement.**

**If the machine is to be sold to others, hand over this manual together.**

**If you have any questions, please consult your Manitowoc authorized dealer.**

---

This machine's specification is based on Mobile crane ASME B30.5.

As for class of utilization related to crane life, this crane is classified as [A1] of ISO 4301/2, FEM 1.001.

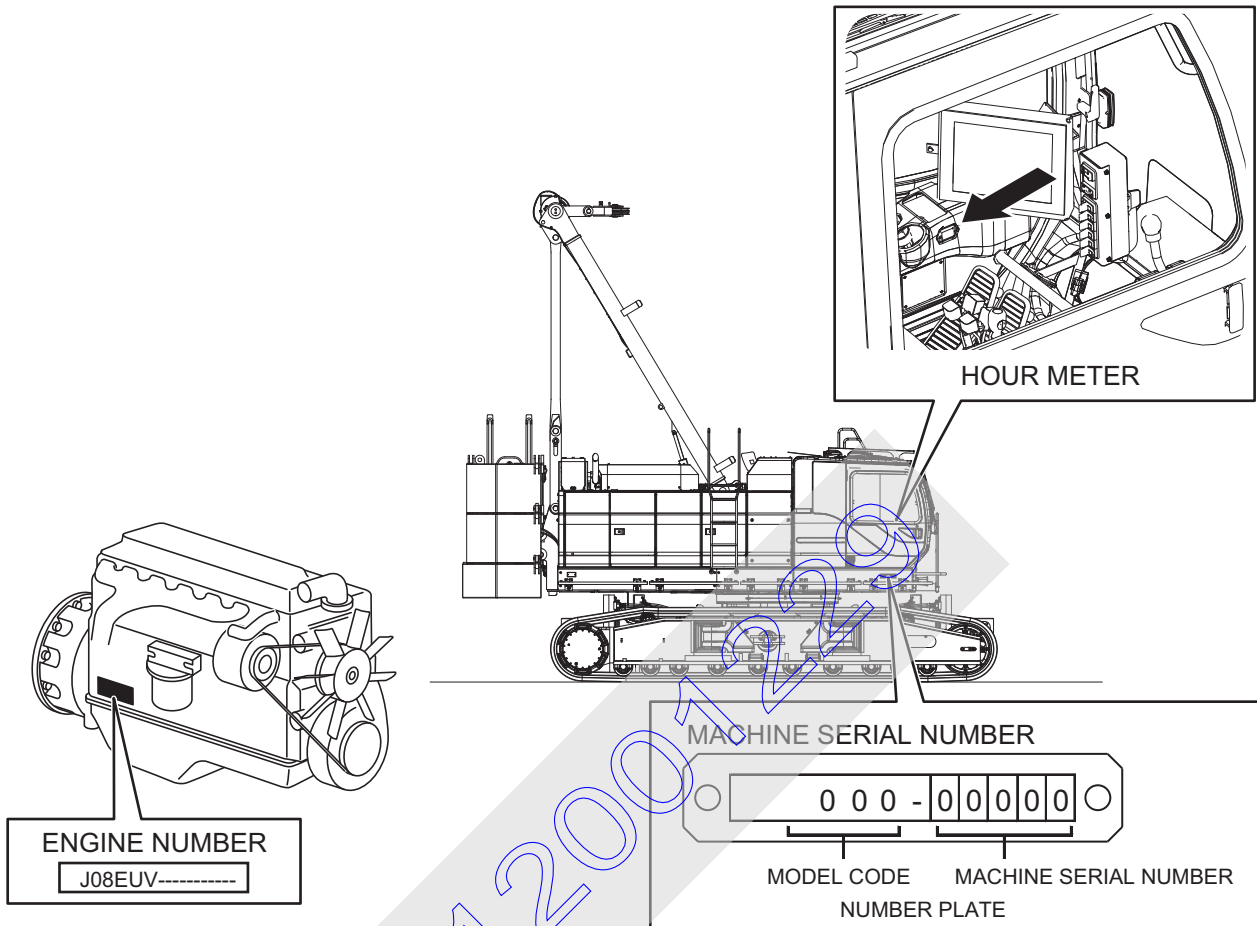
If there is any doubt if this crane conforms to the standard or regulation of your country, contact Manitowoc or your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer.

12000-1-229

# IMPORTANT INFORMATION

## MACHINE SERIAL NUMBER AND HOUR METER

When you order repair parts and when you need repair or service of the machine, always inform us the machine serial number stamped on the name plate and the total number of hours indicated on the hour meter which is located in the gauge.



## ENTER MACHINE SERIAL NUMBER OF THIS MACHINE

MACHINE MODEL	12000-1	MACHINE SERIAL No.		ENGINE No.	J08EUV-
---------------	---------	--------------------	--	------------	---------

## WARRANTY

The terms under which this machine is guaranteed are clearly defined in the accompanying WARRANTY. Trouble and damage occurred during the terms of guarantee shall be repaired at no cost to the purchaser according to the warrant description if the trouble or damage is recognized to be our responsibility. However, if you use the machine contrary to the instructions of this manual, the WARRANTY does not cover any damage to the machine.

## REPAIR PARTS

When servicing and repairing the machine, be sure to use genuine parts in order to make the machine performance display sufficiently.

Since the important security parts are prepared to ensure safety and to protect the machine from an serious accident, be sure to replace them on every specified period of time.

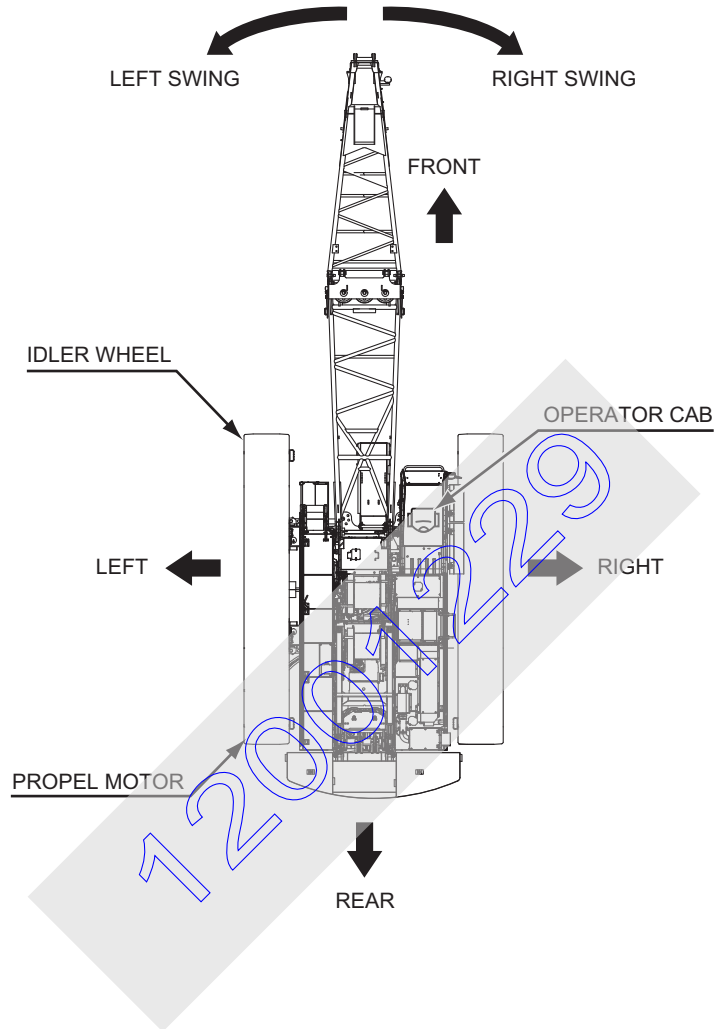
The part number described in the operator manual is to be changed without prior notice.

When place an order, please confirm the part number with the parts manual or the engine handbook.

**MACHINE DIRECTION**

**FRONT, REAR, LEFT AND RIGHT**

In this manual, idler wheel side is called "Front" of the lower machinery and "Front, Rear, Left and Right" of the upper machinery are called based on the operator's view when he sits down on the operator's seat and facing front.



12001229

# 1. SAFETY

## 1.1 SAFETY INFORMATION

Most accidents, which occur during operation, are due to neglect of precautionary measures and safety rules. Sufficient care should be taken to avoid these accidents.

Erroneous operation, lubrication or maintenance services are very dangerous and may cause injury or death of personnel.

Thus, precautionary measures, or notes, written in this manual should be read and understood by personnel before starting each task.

Operation, inspection, and maintenance should be carefully carried out, and safety must be given the first priority. Messages of safety are indicated with caution marks. The safety information contained in this manual is intended only general safety information.

Messages of safety appear in this manual and on the machine. All messages of safety are identified by the words "DANGER", "WARNING" and "CAUTION". These words mean the following:



Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in loss of life or serious injuries.



Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in loss of life or serious injuries.



Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injuries. It may also be used to alert against possible damage to the machine and its components.

Note

Supplementary explanation.

It is very difficult for us to forecast every danger that may occur during operation. However, safety can be ensured by operating this machine according to methods recommended by Manitowoc. While operating machine, be sure to perform work with great care, so as to not damage the machine, or let accidents occur.

Please continue studying this manual until proper operation is completely understood.

## 1. SAFETY

---

### 1.2 EXPLANATION OF WARNING LABELS IN THE MACHINE

Since the warning labels are installed in the machine and indicated with the three stages in the same way as the warning description, confirm the positions and contents of all warning labels first.

Put them to the practical use to secure safety when operating, checking and performing maintenance.

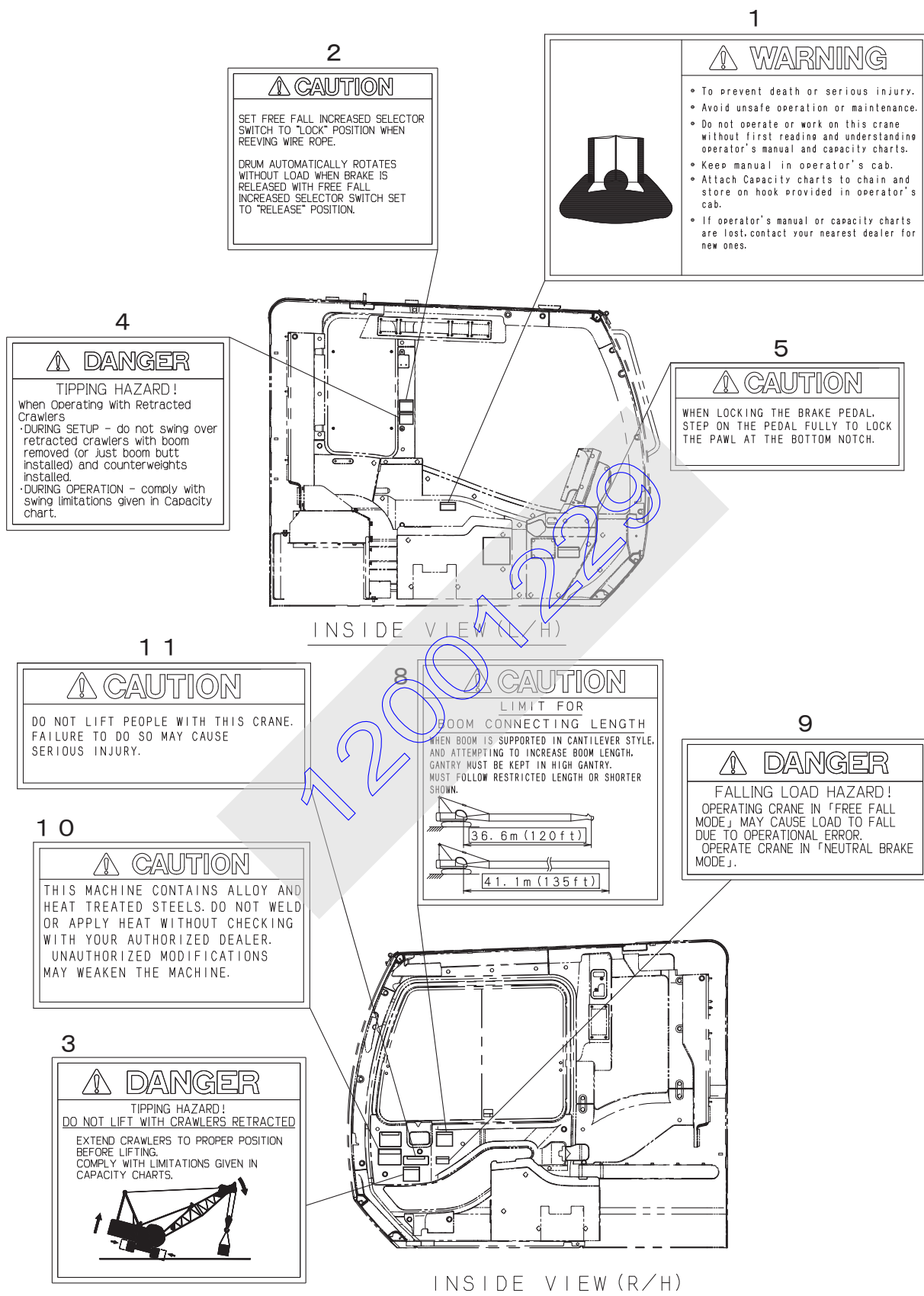
#### 1.2.1 HANDLING OF WARNING LABELS IN THE MACHINE

1. When the warning label is damaged or stained, order it to the designated service shop.
2. Do not remove the warning labels.
3. When the surface of the warning label is soiled and difficult to be seen, wipe it cleanly.

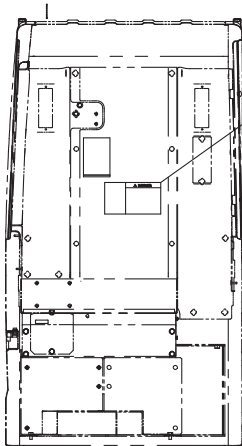


1.2.2 LABEL LAYOUT

\* Numbers in the drawings correspond with those in the label explanation detail after P.1-11.



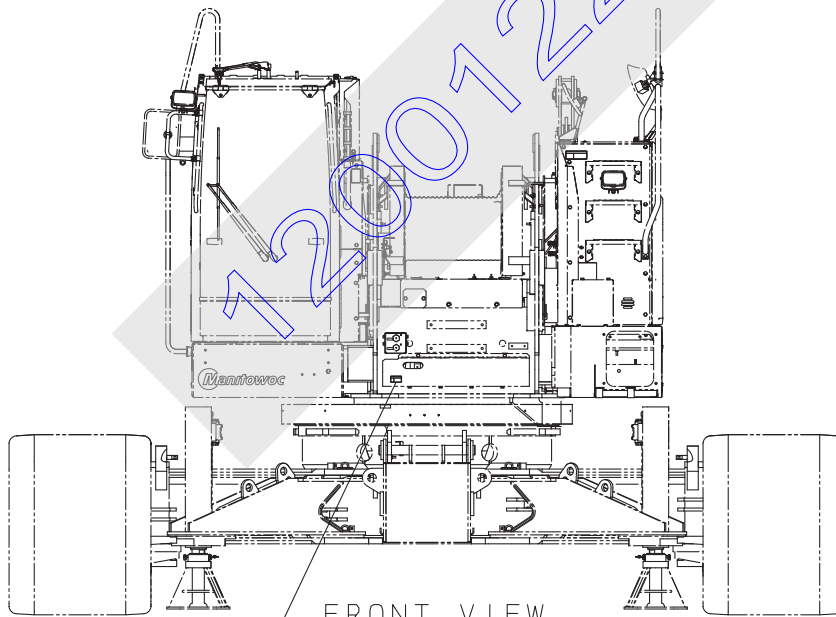
# 1. SAFETY



CAB INSIDE VIEW  
(REAR)

6

	<p><b>⚠ DANGER</b></p> <p><b>ELECTROCUTION HAZARD</b></p> <p>THIS CRANE IS NOT INSULATED</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ To avoid death or serious injury, keep all parts of this crane, rigging and materials being lifted at least 20ft (6m) away from all electrical power lines and equipment.</li> <li>▣ Keep away from this crane if it is being operated near electrical power lines or equipment.</li> <li>▣ Before operating this crane in vicinity of power lines or equipment, notify power utility company. Have power turned off.</li> <li>▣ Follow instructions in Operator's Manual.</li> </ul>
--	---

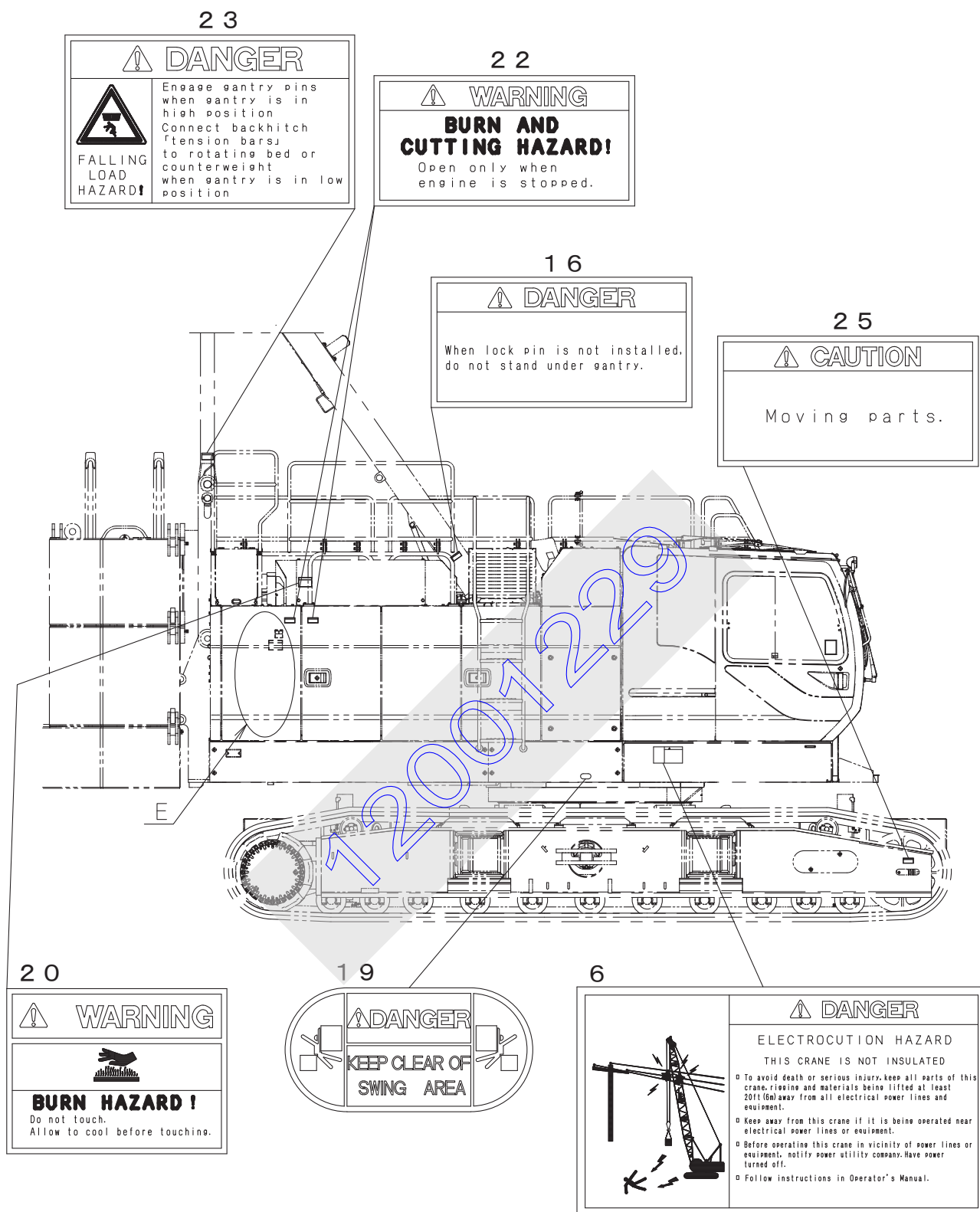


FRONT VIEW

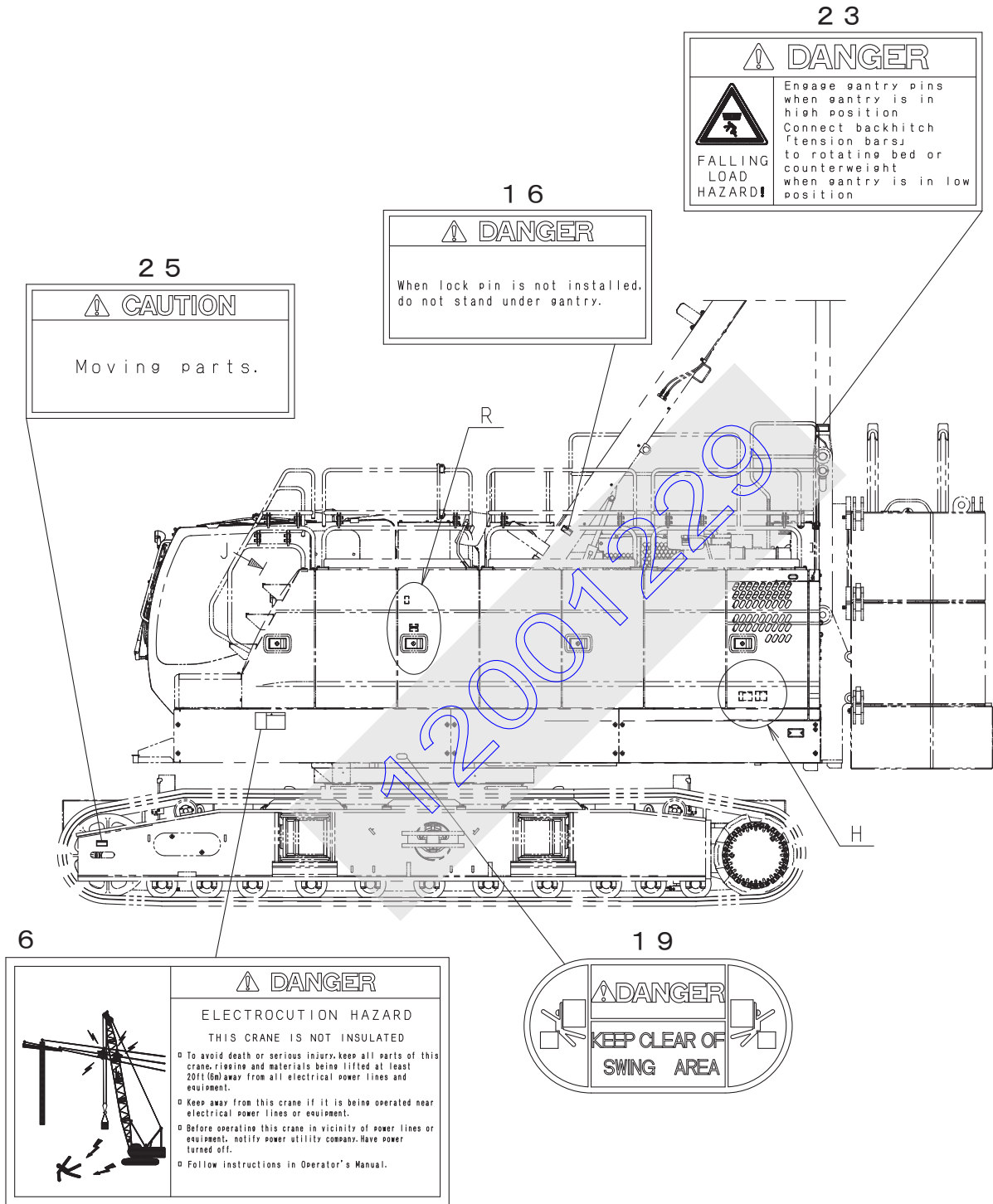
30

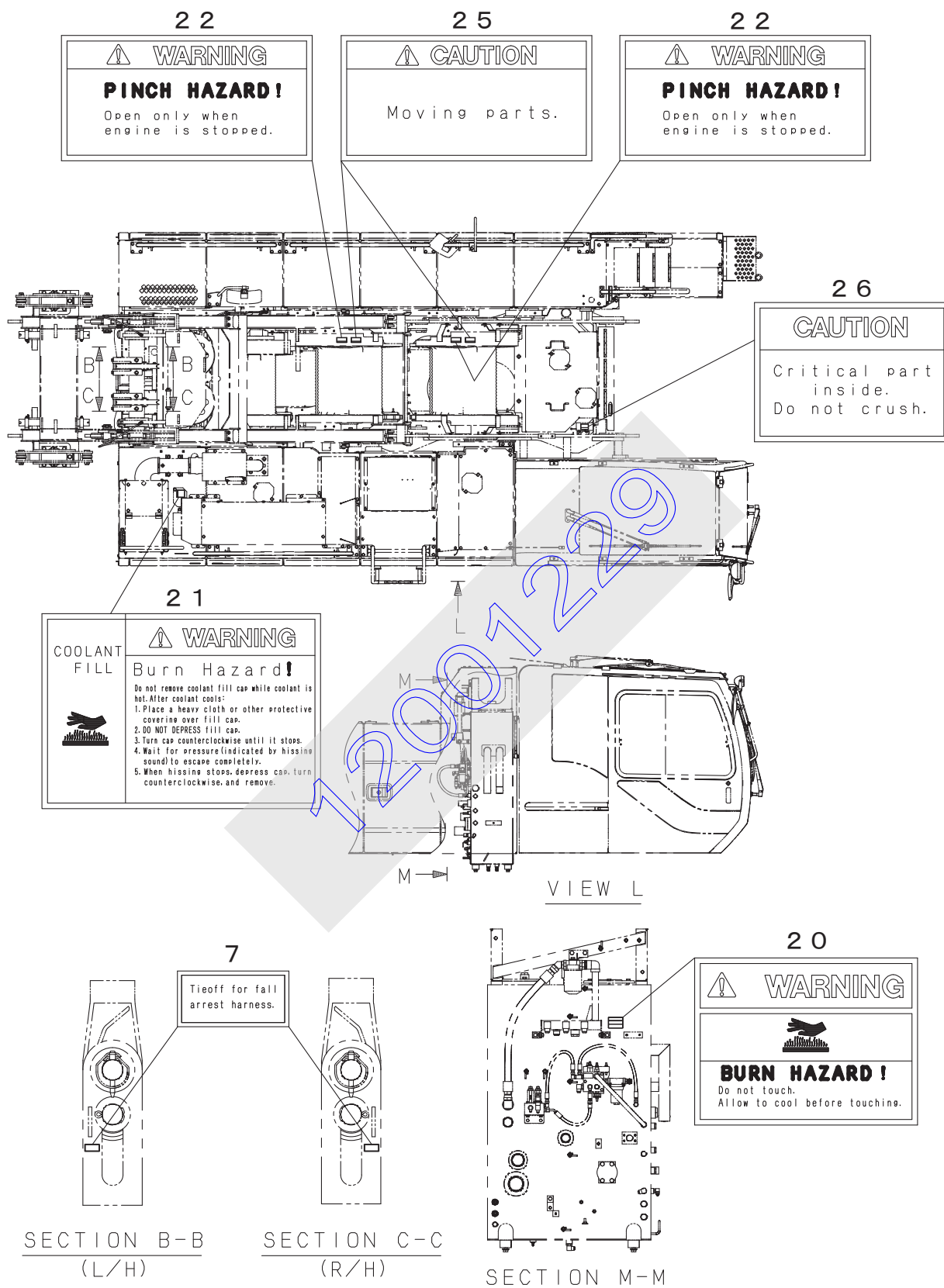
<p><b>⚠ DANGER</b></p>	<p>Stay clear of this area Place boom, block, on ground before performing maintenance</p>
<p>FALLING LOAD HAZARD!</p>	



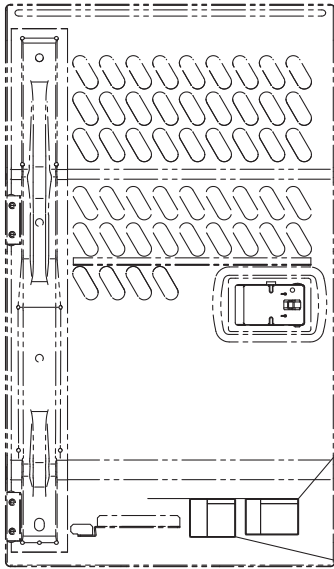


# 1. SAFETY






DETAIL H  
(BATTERY)

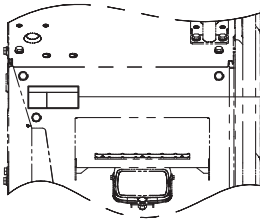


1 2

	<b>⚠ WARNING</b>
	<p><b>PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSION</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Batteries give off hydrogen gases that can explode and cause personal injury.</li> <li>• Keep sparks, open flames and cigarettes away from batteries.</li> <li>• Keep metallic articles away from batteries.</li> <li>• Keep all ventilation caps tightly secured.</li> <li>• Never check charge by placing metal articles across battery terminals.</li> <li>• Leave battery box open to improve ventilation when charging.</li> </ul>


1 2

	<b>⚠ WARNING</b>
	<p><b>BURN HAZARD!</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Electrolyte can cause injury or blindness if it contacts skin or eyes.</li> <li>• Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling or servicing batteries.</li> <li>• If electrolyte contacts skin or eyes, flush affected areas immediately with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.</li> </ul>



VIEW J



1 8

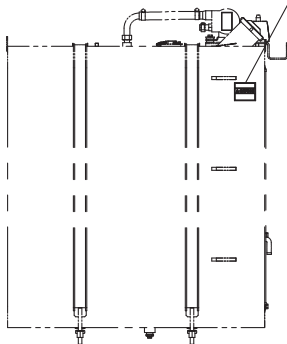
	<b>⚠ WARNING</b>
	<p><b>FALL HAZARD!</b></p> <p>Surface may be slippery. Wear work positioning harness and tieoff when performing maintenance.</p>

1 5

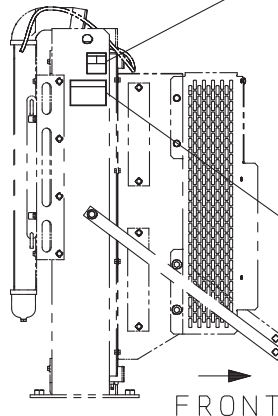
FUEL TANK
<b>⚠ CAUTION</b>
ULTRA LOW SULFUR FUEL ONLY

2 4

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>
 
Rotating parts can cause personal injury.
Keep away from fan and belt when engine is running.
Stop engine before servicing.



DETAIL R  
(FUEL TANK)

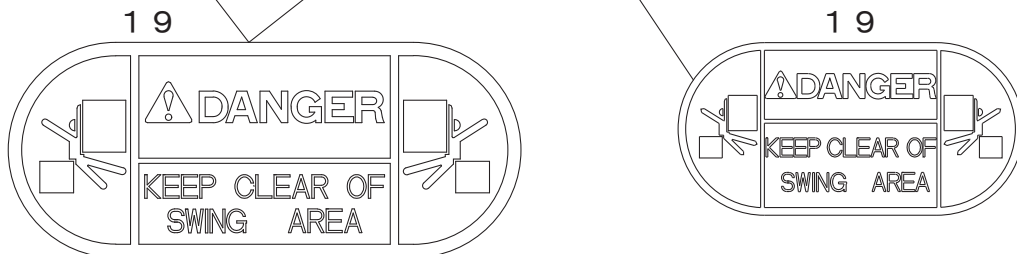
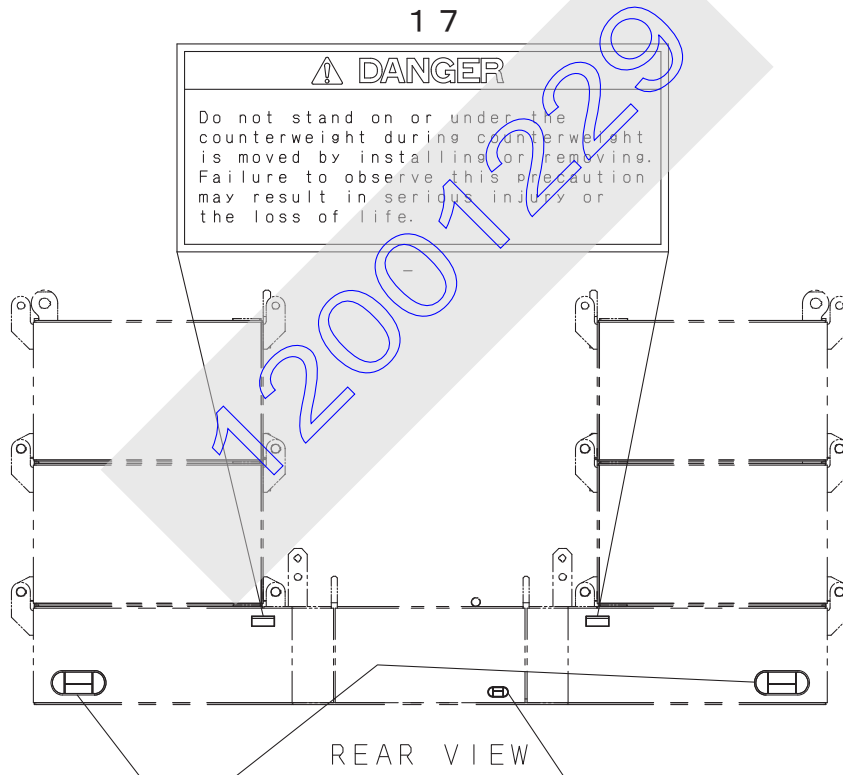
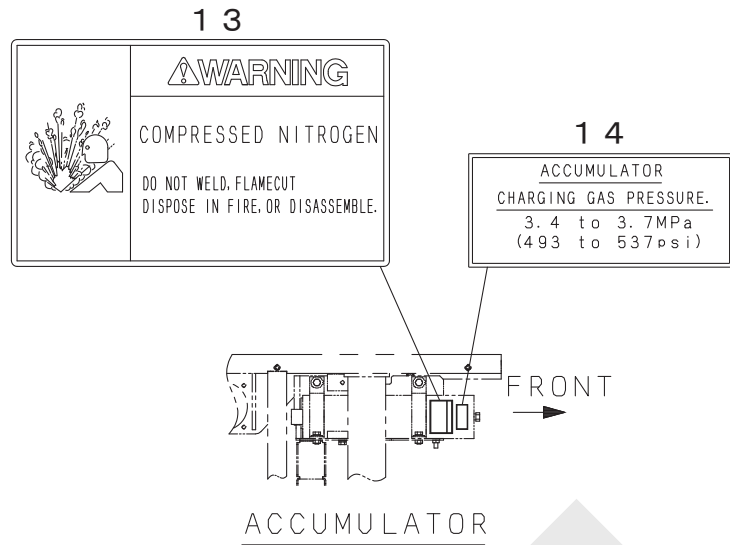


DETAIL E  
(RADIATOR)

2 0

<b>⚠ WARNING</b>

<b>BURN HAZARD!</b>
Do not touch.
Allow to cool before touching.



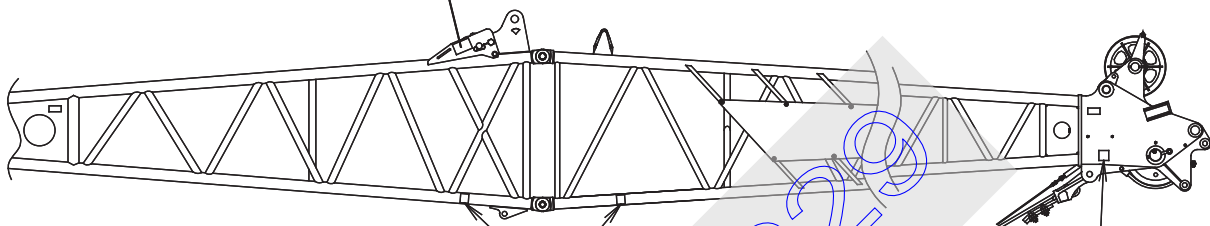
2 8

**⚠ CAUTION**

**MOVING PARTS CAN CUT AND CRUSH  
STRUCTURAL DAMAGE**

Place guides in storing position after connecting spreader to boom.  
At first the guides should be held by hands and pins disengaged, and then should be placed in storing position.

STORING POSITION      WORKING POSITION (BOOM DISASSEMBLING / ASSEMBLING)      DISASSEMBLING OF PIN "A"



**2 7**

**⚠ DANGER**

**DO NOT ENTER  
UNDER BOOM**

TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY  
CAUSED BY FALLING OF BOOM,  
DO NOT ENTER UNDER BOOM  
WHILE DISASSEMBLING/  
ASSEMBLING OF BOOM.


**2 9**

**⚠ CAUTION**

CORRECT      WRONG

Install the rope socket in the correct direction. Otherwise, the rope socket or the wire rope may interfere with the boom, causing damage to the boom or cut of the wire rope.

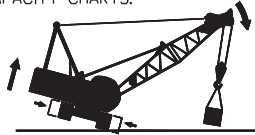
1. Ensure to read the operator manual before operation / handling, assembly, / disassembly, transportation, inspection / maintenance of the machine.

	<p><b>⚠ WARNING</b></p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To prevent death or serious injury.</li> <li>• Avoid unsafe operation or maintenance.</li> <li>• Do not operate or work on this crane without first reading and understanding operator's manual and capacity charts.</li> <li>• Keep manual in operator's cab.</li> <li>• Attach Capacity charts to chain and store on hook provided in operator's cab.</li> <li>• If operator's manual or capacity charts are lost, contact your nearest dealer for new ones.</li> </ul>

2. If the free fall speed select switch is in speed increase side and the brake is released, the drum may rotate automatically to lowering side even without lifting load and wire rope may be paid out to lower the hook and rough spooling may be caused. When paying out the wire rope from the drum, ensure to set the free fall select switch to normal side.

<p><b>⚠ CAUTION</b></p>
<p>SET FREE FALL INCREASED SELECTOR SWITCH TO "LOCK" POSITION WHEN REEVING WIRE ROPE.</p> <p>DRUM AUTOMATICALLY ROTATES WITHOUT LOAD WHEN BRAKE IS RELEASED WITH FREE FALL INCREASED SELECTOR SWITCH SET TO "RELEASE" POSITION.</p>

3. The crane may turn over during work based on machine condition. Install the proper amount of the counterweight and secure them to make proper machine configuration.

<p><b>⚠ DANGER</b></p>
<p>TIPPING HAZARD! DO NOT LIFT WITH CRAWLERS RETRACTED</p> <p>EXTEND CRAWLERS TO PROPER POSITION BEFORE LIFTING. COMPLY WITH LIMITATIONS GIVEN IN CAPACITY CHARTS.</p>


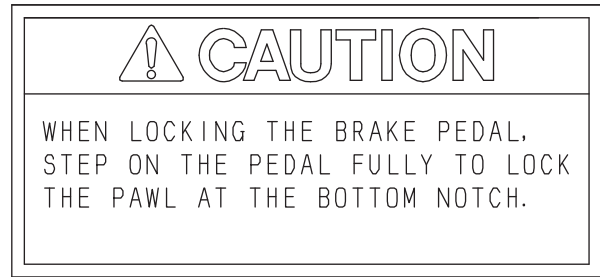
4. If machine swings or is assembled / disassembled with crawler retracted, main machinery may turn over to rear side. Read the operator manual carefully and set the crane to the proper configuration.

<p><b>⚠ DANGER</b></p>
<p>TIPPING HAZARD! When Operating With Retracted Crawlers</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DURING SETUP - do not swing over retracted crawlers with boom removed (or just boom butt installed) and counterweights installed.</li> <li>• DURING OPERATION - comply with swing limitations given in Capacity chart.</li> </ul>

# 1. SAFETY

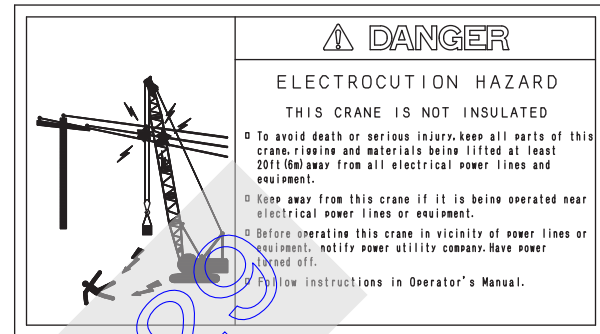
5. If the brake pedal lock is not completely engaged, lifting load or hook may be lowered unexpectedly and is very dangerous.

When locking the brake pedal, press the brake pedal fully and confirm that the pedal is locked completely.



6. During crane work if the boom comes too close to the tower or power lines, electric shock may hit the crane.

Keep the boom away from the tower or power lines for safety.



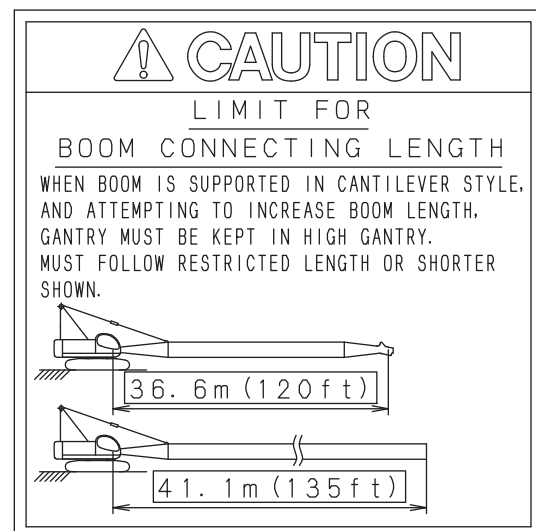
7. When work is done on the upper surface of the guard or counterweight, person may fall off by mistake.

Ensure to engage the safety hook on the specified place.



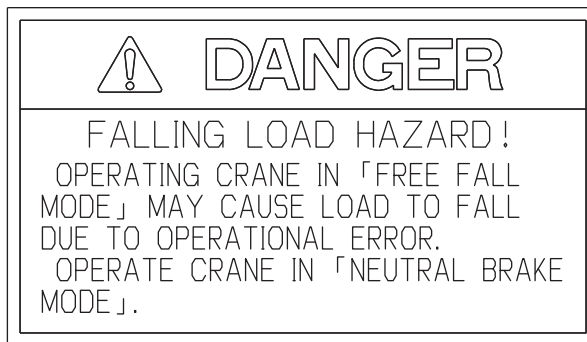
8. When the boom is assembled, disassembled, boom self erection / self lowering or crane work with the low gantry, the gantry or boom may be damaged and may fall off.

Raise the gantry to the proper position for work.

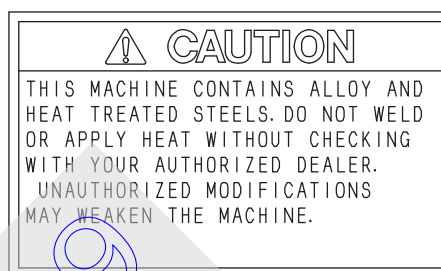




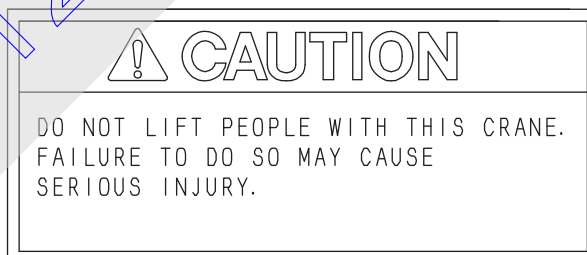
- 9. Free fall work of load may cause dropping the load by mishandling.  
Use power lowering of load in the crane work.  
(Even on neutral free side, power lowering is possible by turning the lever to lowering side.)



- 10. This machine contains alloy and heat treated steels.  
Do not weld or apply heat without checking with your authorized dealer.  
Unauthorized modifications may weaken the machine.




- 11. Do not lift people with this crane.  
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.




12001229

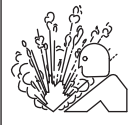
# 1. SAFETY

12. Wrong handling of battery may cause burns, blindness or explosion by inflammation.

	<b>⚠WARNING</b>
	<b>BURN HAZARD!</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>·Electrolyte can cause injury or blindness if it contacts skin or eyes.</li><li>·Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling or servicing batteries.</li><li>·If electrolyte contacts skin or eyes, flush affected areas immediately with clean water and seek medical attention immediately.</li></ul>

	<b>⚠WARNING</b>
	<b>PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSION</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>·Batteries give off hydrogen gases that can explode and cause personal injury. Keep sparks, open flames and cigarettes away from batteries.</li><li>·Keep metallic articles away from batteries.</li><li>·Keep all ventilation caps tightly secured.</li><li>·Never check charge by placing metal articles across battery terminals.</li><li>·Leave battery box open to improve ventilation when charging.</li></ul>

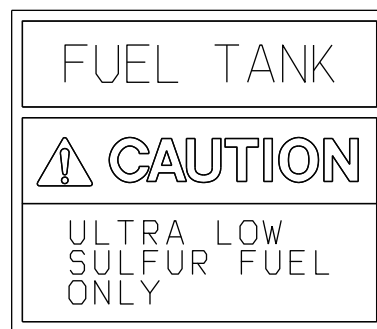
13. If accumulator is handled in wrong way, burns, loss of eyesight, explosion may be caused. Take extra care in handling accumulator. (Do not weld, flame cut, dispose or disassemble.)

	<b>⚠WARNING</b>
	<b>COMPRESSED NITROGEN</b>  DO NOT WELD, FLAMECUT DISPOSE IN FIRE, OR DISASSEMBLE.

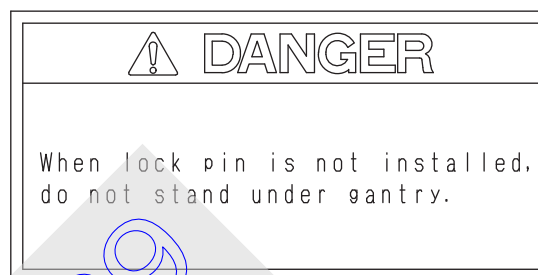
14. The accumulator is charged with high pressure nitrogen gas. Charge the nitrogen gas within the specified pressure.

<b>ACCUMULATOR</b>
<b>CHARGING GAS PRESSURE.</b>
3.4 to 3.7 MPa (493 to 537 psi)

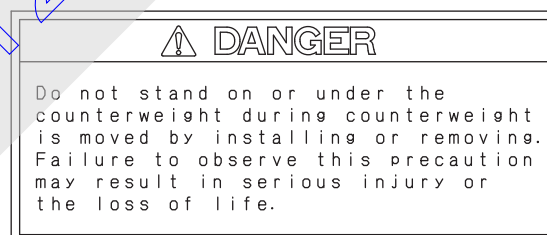
15. Using engine fuel other than the specified diesel fuel may cause engine failure, fire or explosion. Ensure to use the diesel fuel in the fuel tank. Use ultra low sulfur diesel fuel only. (S50: sulfur content lower than 50 ppm)



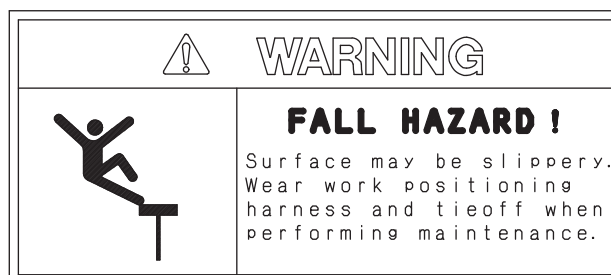
16. During raising the gantry, ensure to insert the gantry fixing pin. Otherwise the gantry may come off and the boom may drop off.



17. Handling the counterweight in wrong way is very dangerous. Never allow any person to enter under the lifting counterweight.



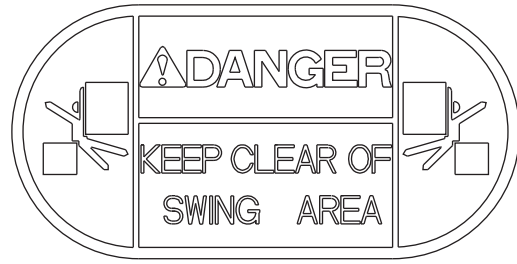
18. When working on the upper surface of the guard, person may fall off the upper surface of the guard. During high place work on the upper surface of the guard, do not come close to the guard side face to prevent falling off. During work on the upper surface of the guard, ensure to wear safety belt and hook the safety belt on the upper machinery and firmly stand on the guard.



12001229

# 1. SAFETY

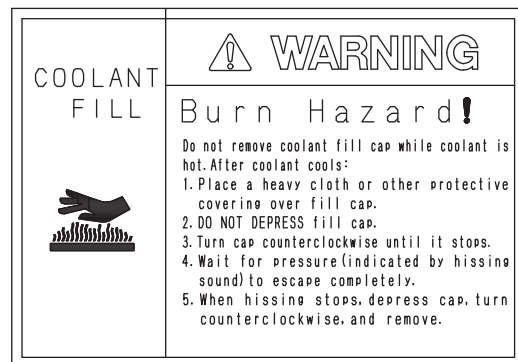
19. While the upper machinery is swinging, person may be crushed with the upper machinery.  
Never allow anybody to enter the swing range.



20. During engine running or straight after the engine is stopped, hydraulic oil tank, engine and muffler are hot.  
Touching them may cause burns.  
Do not touch the hot area.



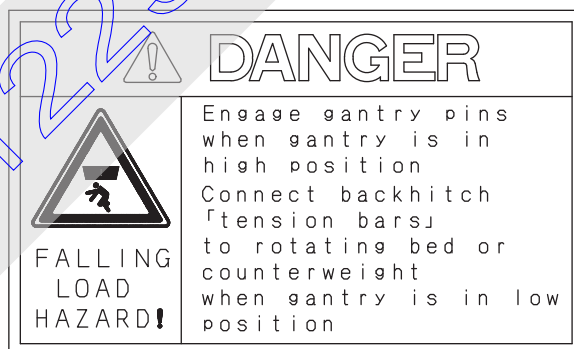
21. During engine running or straight after the engine is stopped, inside of the radiator becomes high pressure and hot.  
Person may get burns by hot water blow out when taking off the radiator cap.  
Take extra care of opening or closing the radiator cap.



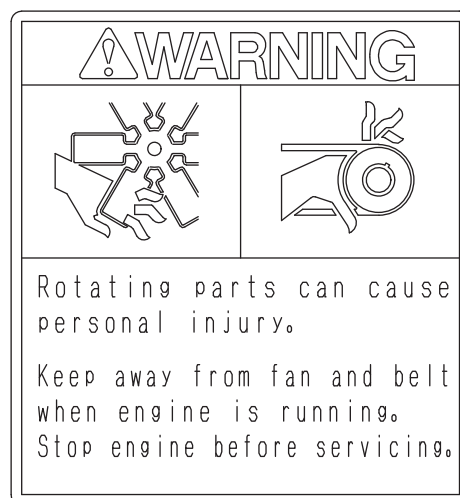
22. When inspection or work is done by removing the drum flange cover, serious injuries may be caused if the drum rotates unexpectedly.  
Stop the crane and then remove the drum cover.



23. When the machine is transported with the low gantry, connect the tension bar to the revolving frame or counterweight.

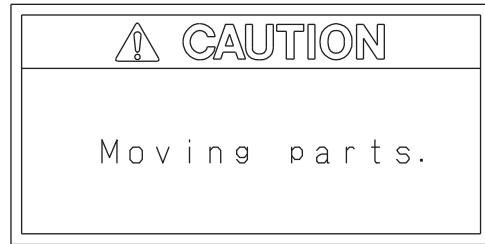


24. When working on the engine area for inspection and maintenance, person may be entangled with the fan belt and may get injured if the engine is running.  
Stop the engine when inspection or maintenance work is done.

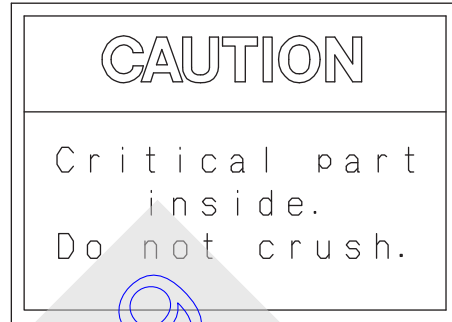


# 1. SAFETY

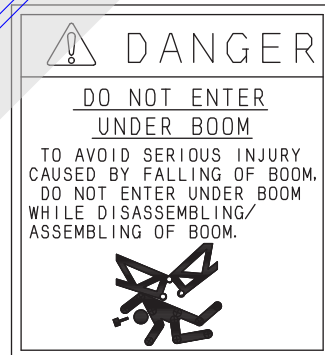
25. There are some moving parts near.



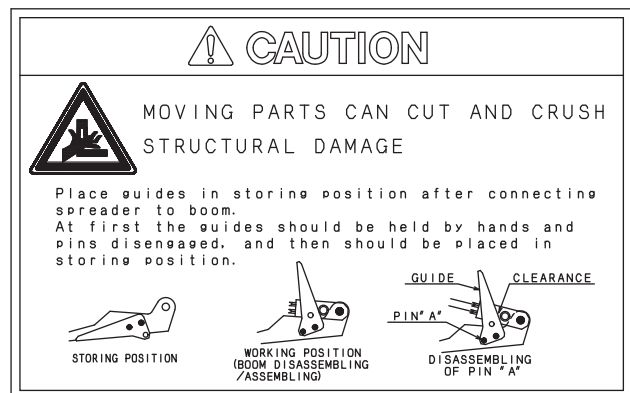
26. This is a connector cover of electrical wiring of safety device.  
Do not step on and crush.



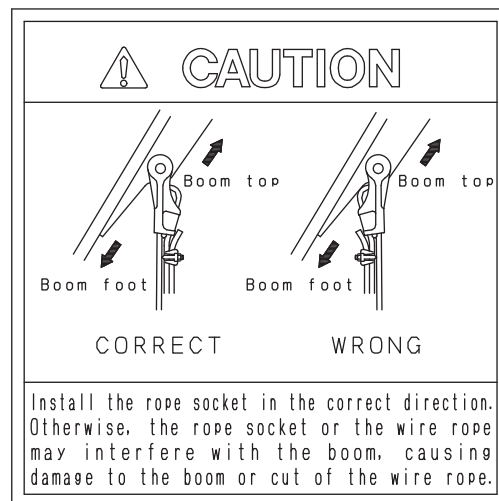
27. Taking wrong procedure in boom assembly or disassembly may cause boom falling off and person may get injured.  
Do not allow any person to enter inside or under the boom during assembly or disassembly.



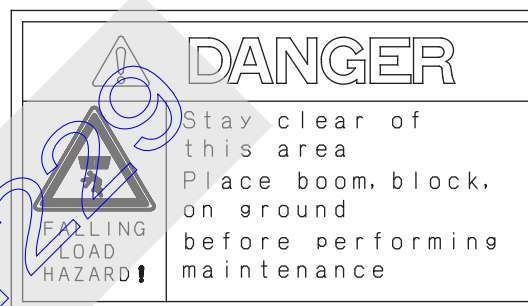
28. Taking wrong method in using the spreader guide installed on the boom base may damage the spreader guide.  
Set the spreader guide to the stowing position except when the upper spreader is connected is connected to the boom base.



29. Taking the wrong installing direction when the rope sockets are installed to the boom tip and jib tip, may damage the boom or may break the wire rope. Install the rope socket in the proper direction.



30. Free fall work of load may cause dropping the load by mishandling.  
Use power lowering of load in the crane work.  
(Even on neutral free side, power lowering is possible by turning the lever to lowering side.)



#### CAUTION LABEL

- Keep the caution label in good condition to read.
- Whenever they become dirty, wash them with water or detergent.
- Whenever they are damaged or missed, replace them with the new and same ones.

# 1. SAFETY

---

## 1.3 SAFE OPERATING PRACTICES FOR MOBILE CRANES

### INTRODUCTION

Because cranes have the ability to lift heavy loads to great heights, they also have a potential for accidents if safe operating practices are not followed. This book will help you prevent accidents that could result in injury, death, or property damage.

General safe practices for working on machinery must be followed as well as the safe operating practices recommended here.

### OPERATOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

The operator is the best safety feature in any crane. Safety must always be the operator's most important concern. He must refuse to operate when he knows it is unsafe and consult his supervisor when safety is in doubt.

He must read and understand the Operator Manual and see that the machine is in proper order before operating.

He must understand how to read the rating plate and know that his machine can safely lift each load before attempting to lift it.

He must never lift a load without knowing the length of the boom, the weight of the load, and the load radius or boom angle.

Never attempt to operate the crane at conditions exceeding those shown on the rating chart. Such operation can cause tipping or structural failure of the crane that can result in damage, injury, or loss of life.

12001229



He must be alert, physically fit, and free from the influences of alcohol, drugs, or medications that might affect his eyesight, hearing, reactions, judgment.

He must see that unnecessary people, equipment, and material are kept out of the work area. The area around the machine should be properly barricaded.

When an operator's vision is restricted or when operating in hazardous places such as near electrical power lines or around people, a signalman must be used. Because the operator is not always in the best position to judge distances and cannot see all parts of the job site, a signalman may also be necessary at other times. Operators must understand standard crane signals and take signals only from designated signalmen.

### **SIGNALMAN'S RESPONSIBILITY**

The primary duty of a signalman is to assist the operator in safe and efficient operation. Operators depend on designated signalmen to assist them in making movements without endangering people or property.

Signalmen must have a clear understanding of the work to be done so that they can safely coordinate each job with operators and other crew members. Signalmen must place themselves where they can be clearly seen and where they can safely observe the entire operation. Standard crane signals must be used unless other methods of signaling, such as two way radios or flags have been agreed upon.

12001229

# 1. SAFETY

---

## CREW MEMBER'S RESPONSIBILITY

Any unsafe condition or practice must be corrected or reported to the job supervisor.

Everyone who works around the crane, including riggers and oilers, must obey all warning signs and watch out for his own safety and the safety of others. Crew members setting up machines or handling loads are expected to know proper machine erection and rigging procedures.

Watch for hazards during operations and alert the operator and signalmen of dangers such as power lines, the unexpected presence of people, other equipment or unstable ground conditions.

## MANAGEMENT'S RESPONSIBILITY

See that operators are trained, competent, physically fit and, if required, licensed. Good vision is required, as are good judgment, coordination and mental ability. Any person who lacks any of these qualities must not be allowed to operate a crane.

Signalmen must have good vision and sound judgment, know standard crane signals and be able to give signals clearly. They must have enough experience to be able to recognize hazards and signal the operator to avoid them.

Riggers must be trained to determine weights and distances and to select proper lifting tackle. Rigging is a complex subject far beyond the scope of this manual. It is management's responsibility to employ qualified riggers.

Crew members must be given specific safety responsibilities and instructed to report any unsafe conditions to their supervisors.

12001229

**PLANNING THE JOB**

Most accidents can be avoided by careful job planning. The person in charge must have a clear understanding of the work to be done and equipment capabilities. He must consider all dangers at the job site, develop a plan to do the job safely, and then explain the plan to all concerned. Factors such as these should be considered :

- What crew members are needed and what responsibilities will they be given?
- What is the weight of the load to be lifted, the lift radius, boom angle, and the rated capacity of the crane?
- How will the signalmen communicate with the operator?
- What equipment is required to do the job safely? Is a crane the best equipment for the job?
- How can the equipment be safely transported to the job site?
- Are there gas lines, electrical power lines or structures that must be moved or avoided?
- Is the surface strong enough to support the machine and load?
- How will loads be rigged?
- What special safety precautions must be taken if a crane must travel with a suspended load or if more than one crane is needed to lift a load?
- Are unusual weather conditions such as winds or extreme cold expected?
- What steps will be taken to keep unnecessary people and equipment safely away from the work area?
- How can the crane be positioned to use the shortest boom and radius possible?
- Is "OFF LIMIT" sign posted in the swing radius area?

120001229

# 1. SAFETY

---

## OPERATOR'S CHECK LIST

The operator must make a safety check before starting to work each day to see that the machine is in proper order. Some things to check are:

- Check the machine log book to see that periodic maintenance and inspections have been performed and all necessary repairs made.
- Check the operation of the boom hoist kickout, boom angle indicator, back up alarms, and other safety devices.
- Carefully inspect load bearing parts such as wire rope, (load lines, boom hoist cable, suspension lines), boom, outriggers, hooks, and rigging.
- Inspect the crane for any missing bolts, nuts or pins and any cracked or broken components.
- Be sure no unauthorized field modifications have been made, such as counterweights increased or decreased and booms that have been improperly repaired.
- Check for fuel and hydraulic oil leaks.
- After starting the engine, check all gauges for proper readings.
- Test all controls for proper operation.
- Check brakes and clutches. Test load brakes by lifting a load a few inches off the ground and holding it.

12001229

## OPERATING PRECAUTIONS

The following recommendations represent our experience in regard to the most likely causes of personal injuries and damage to equipment. Careful observance of the following recommendations will prevent the majority of common accidents.

1. Mistakes in calculating lifting capacity can cause accidents.

Several factors must be considered including:

- (1) Load radius (the distance between the center of the crane rotation to the center of the load).

Note that the radius will increase when the load is lifted.

- (2) Weight of the load, hook, and rigging.

- (3) Boom length, jib, parts of line, and operating area (side, rear).

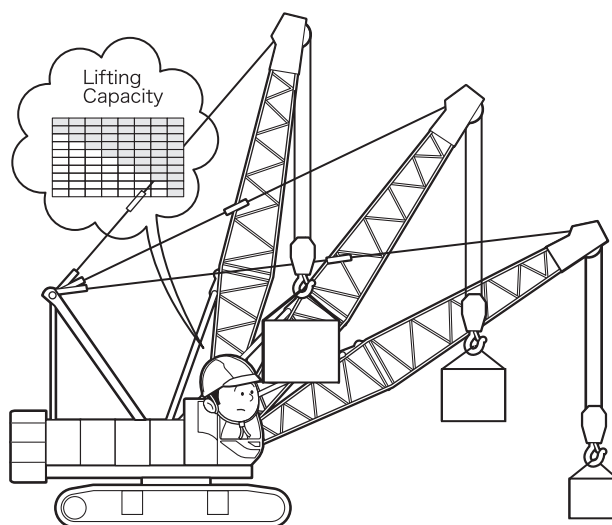
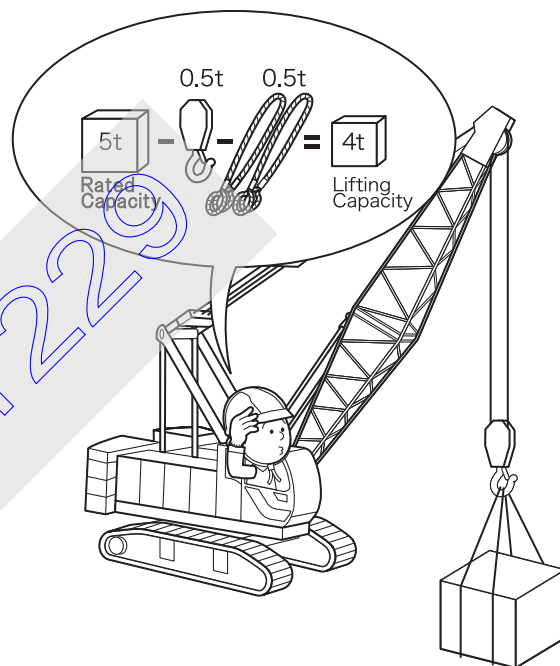
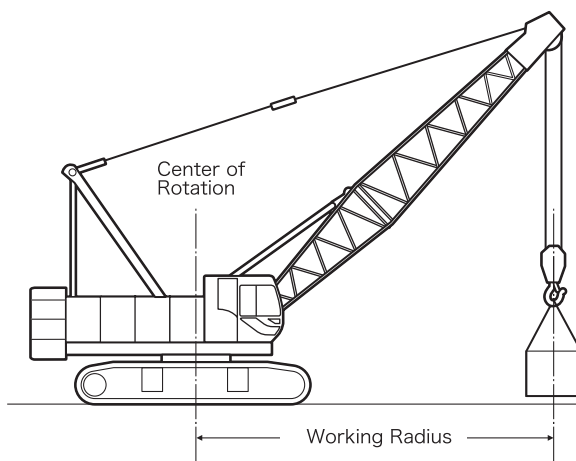
Use the next lower rated capacity when working at boom length or radii between the figures on the rating chart.

It is dangerous to guess the capacity for boom length or radii between those listed on the rating plate.

Trying to lift a load without knowing whether it is within the rated capacity while expecting the crane to start to tip to warn of an overload is very dangerous and should never be done.

Cranes may suddenly tip over or collapse.

Always operate within the rated capacity. The operator must reduce the load under adverse field conditions until, in his judgment, the machine can safely handle the lift. (See Operating Precautions #3, 10, 16, 19, 27, and 28.)



## 1. SAFETY

---

2. Cranes may tip over or collapse if the operating surface cannot support their weight.

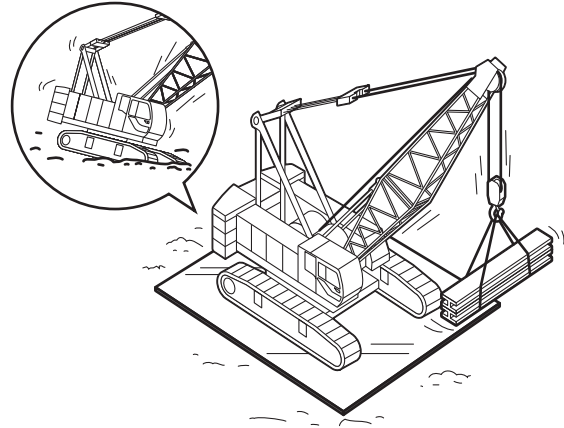
Timber mats, steel plates or concrete rafts may be needed under crawlers to distribute the load under the crane so that the bearing strength of the ground is not exceeded.

Determine the load bearing capacity of the ground or other surface on which machines will be operating.

Be sure cranes are adequately supported.

Avoid soft or unstable ground, sand, areas with high water tables, and partially frozen ground.

When machines are working near trenches, the trenches should be shored or sloped to prevent cave-ins or slides.



3. The rated capacity of a crane is determined with the crane leveled within  $\pm 0.5$  deg. of grade (1 foot drop or rise in 100 foot distance).

Out of level more than  $\pm 0.5$  deg. will drastically reduce the lifting capacity.

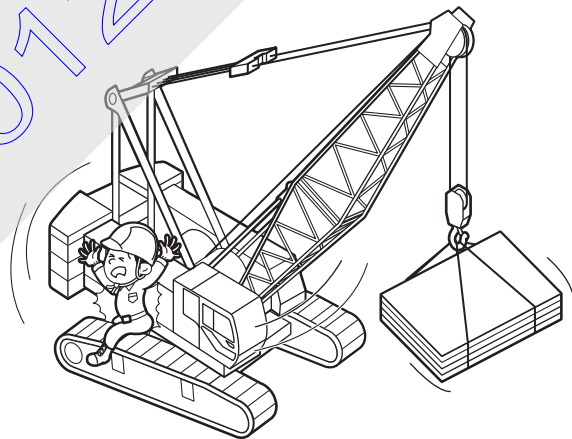
Be sure cranes are level.

4. People can be crushed by the scissors-like action of the upper rotating on the lower.

Stay away from rotating cranes.

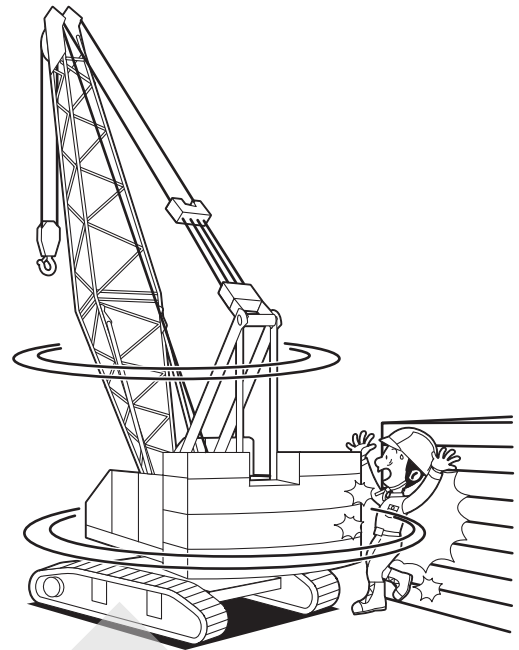
Erect barricades to keep people away.

Take the time to determine that these areas are clear before swinging.



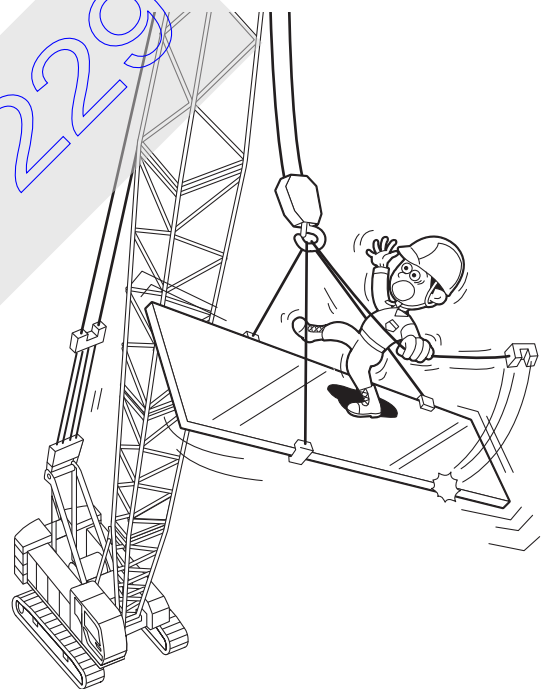
5. People can be crushed by the rear (counterweight) of the machine if there is not enough room for it to swing.

Position machines so that people cannot be trapped between the counterweight and other obstructions.



6. Many people have been injured when riding crane hooks or loads or while being lifted in manbaskets. They have no control over how they are handled and no protection from impacts or falls. Small mistakes can be fatal.

Never permit anyone to ride loads, slings, hooks, etc., for any reason.



# 1. SAFETY

7. Power electrical lines have killed or seriously injured people working around cranes and excavators. These accidents can be avoided by following a few simple rules.

Always determine whether there are power lines in the area before starting any job, assembly and disassembly.

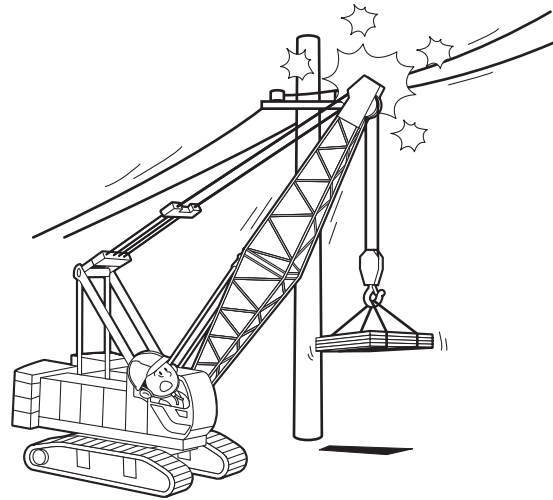
OSHA regulations require at least 3.05 meter (10 feet) of clearance from lines carrying 50,000 volts or less.

Greater clearances are required for lines with higher voltages.

Some states require greater clearances than OSHA.

Safety requires that you stay as far as possible from power lines and never violate minimum clearances.

Always take these precautions if power lines are present.



- (1) Hold a job site meeting and make all people concerned aware of work procedure.
- (2) For tagline work, ensure to use nonconductive type tagline rope.
- (3) Ensure to use swing angle limiter (if available).
- (4) Ensure to use visual signs such as an elevated warning line or barricade.
- (5) Ensure to use boom angle and work radius limiter.
- (6) Notify the electrical power company before beginning work.
- (7) You and the power company must take specific precautions. These may include locating cranes and materials away from electrical power lines, de-energizing and grounding lines, rerouting lines, removing barricading lines, and insulating lines with rubber sleeves.
- (8) Use a signalman to maintain a safe distance between any part of the machine or load and electrical power lines. The operator is not in the best position to judge distances.
- (9) Warn people to stay away from the machine and load at all times. If the load must be guided into place, ask the power company about special precautions such as insulated poles or hot sticks.
- (10) Slow down. Give yourself time to react to problems and to double check the distance between electrical power lines and any part of the machine or load.

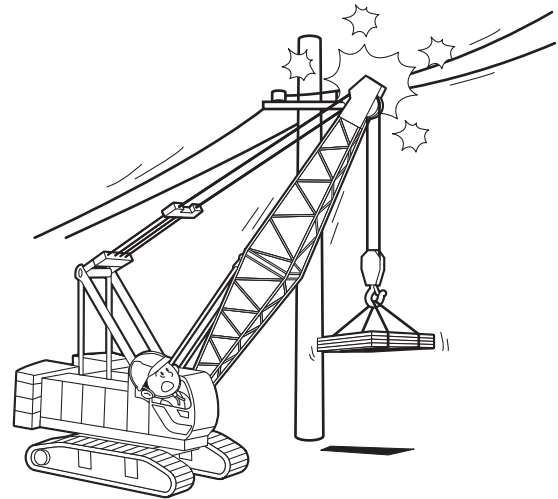
Operation Near High Voltage Power Lines	
Normal Voltage, kV (Phase to Phase)	Minimum Required Clearance, m(ft)
UP to 50	3.05 (10)
Over 50 to 200	4.60 (15)
Over 200 to 350	6.10 (20)
Over 350 to 500	7.62 (25)
Over 500 to 750	10.67 (35)
Over 750 to 1000	13.72 (45)
Over 1000 kV As established by the utility owner/operator or registered professional engineer who is a qualified person with respect to electrical power transmission and distribution.	
NOTE The value that follows "to" is up to and includes that value. For example, over 50 to 200 means up to and including 200kV.	

Operation in Transit With No Load and Boom or Mast Lowered.	
Normal Voltage, kV (Phase to Phase)	Minimum Required Clearance, m(ft)
UP to 0.75	1.22 (4)
Over 0.75 to 50	1.83 (6)
Over 50 to 345	3.05 (10)
Over 345 to 750	4.87 (16)
Over 750 to 1000	6.10 (20)
(Extracted from ASME/ANSI standard B30.5-2004) SAFE MAINTENANCE PRACTICES	

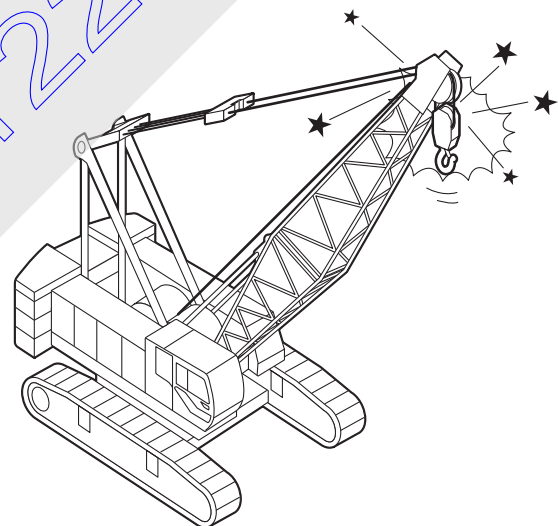
### Required Clearances for Operation Near High Voltage Power Lines



Careful planning and supervision offer better protection than any known hardware. Insulated boom cages, proximity warning devices, and insulating links have limitations and can fail without warning. Insulated boom cages and links only protect part of the crane and can break down electrically if contaminated with dust and water. Operation of proximity warning devices can be affected by different arrangements of power lines, the movement of trucks, materials, and the crane itself, and other influences. Relying on any of these devices could be dangerous because users may think they are providing protection when in fact they are not. If any part of the crane or rigging contacts a high voltage line, the safest procedure for the operator is to stay at his post until the contact is cleared, or the power has been shut off. Do not allow anyone on the ground to touch the machine. If the operator must leave the machine, he should jump off, rather than climb off.



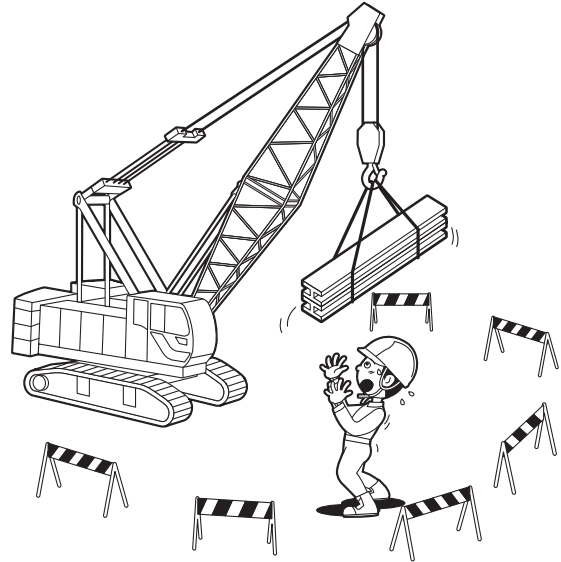
8. The load line can break if the hook block contacts the end of the boom. This is called "two blocking". Two blocking, for example, can be caused by hoisting the hook into the end of the boom or lowering the boom without paying out load line. Two blocking can pull jibs and lattice booms over backwards or cause structural damage at boom or jib points. Always keep space between the hook block and boom point. Lower the hook when lowering the boom.



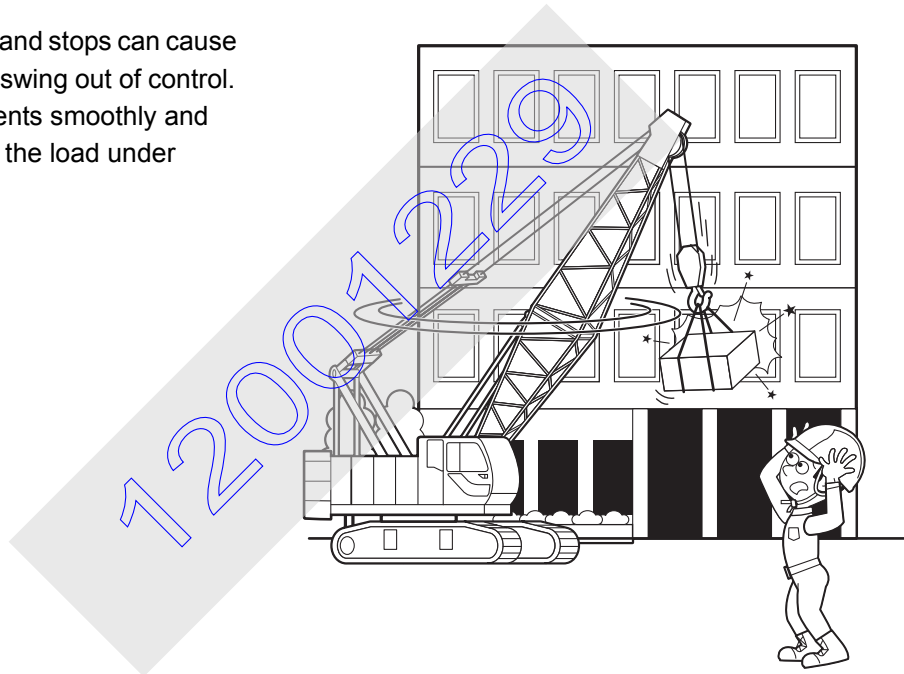
## 1. SAFETY

---

9. People can be injured if the hook, boom, load or outriggers are moved when personnel are nearby. Make sure everyone is clear before moving the hook, boom, load or outriggers. Do not move loads over people. Do not allow the load to bump or catch on anything.



10. Rapid swings or sudden starts and stops can cause the hook and attached load to swing out of control. Always start and stop movements smoothly and swing at speeds that will keep the load under control.



11. Dirty windows, darkness, bright sunlight, fog, rain and other conditions can make it difficult for the operator to see.

Keep windows clean. Do not operate if you cannot see clearly enough to operate safely. Replace cracked or broken glass as soon as possible.

There are several specific safety signs on your machine. Their exact location and description of the hazard are reviewed in this section. Please take the time to familiarize yourself with these safety signs.

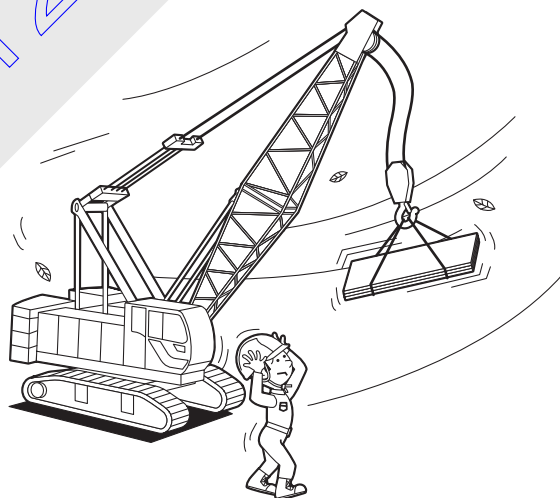
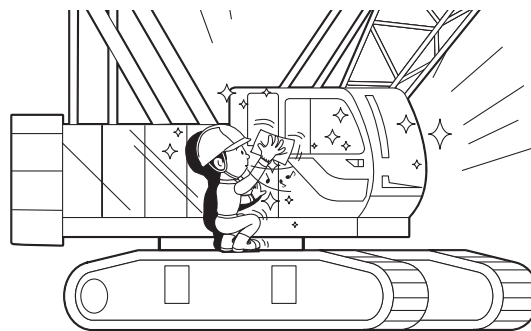
Make sure that you can read all safety signs. Clean or replace these if you cannot read the words or see the pictures. When cleaning the labels use a cloth, water and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, etc.

You must replace a label if it is damaged, missing or cannot be read. If a label is on a part that is replaced, make sure a new label is installed on the replaced part.

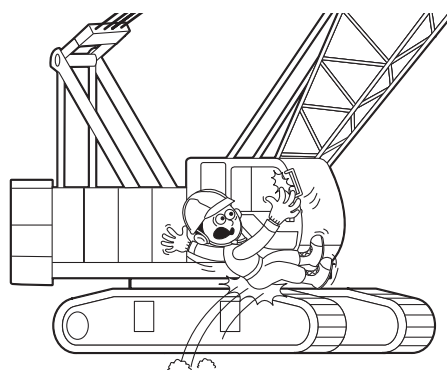
12. Even light winds can blow loads out of control, collapse booms, or tip cranes. Winds aloft can be much stronger than at ground level.

Do not lift loads if winds create a hazard. Lower the boom if necessary.

Moderate winds may create a hazard for long booms or loads with large surface areas.



13. Carelessness in getting on and off equipment can result in serious injuries. Always wait until the machine has stopped. Do not jump on or off. Always use both hands and make sure you have good footing.



## 1. SAFETY

---

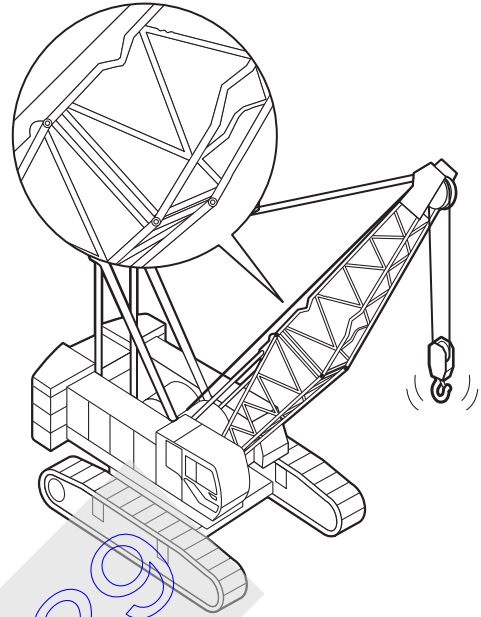
14. Slippery floors and steps, tools, trash, or other loose items can cause falls. Keep the machine clean and dry.
15. Damaged crane booms may collapse.  
Lattice type booms will be weakened by damaged chords, bent or missing lacings, or cracked welds. Inspect the crane boom daily for damage. Do not use damaged booms.

---

### CAUTION

Due to the high strength steels used in booms and jibs, special repair procedures are required. Consult your local authorized Manitowoc authorized dealer for instructions.

---



16. Crane booms can collapse if side loaded (pulled sideways).  
Typical causes of side loading are rapid starts and stops while swinging, dragging a load sideways, winds, or lifting when the crane is not level.

Take care to avoid side loading.

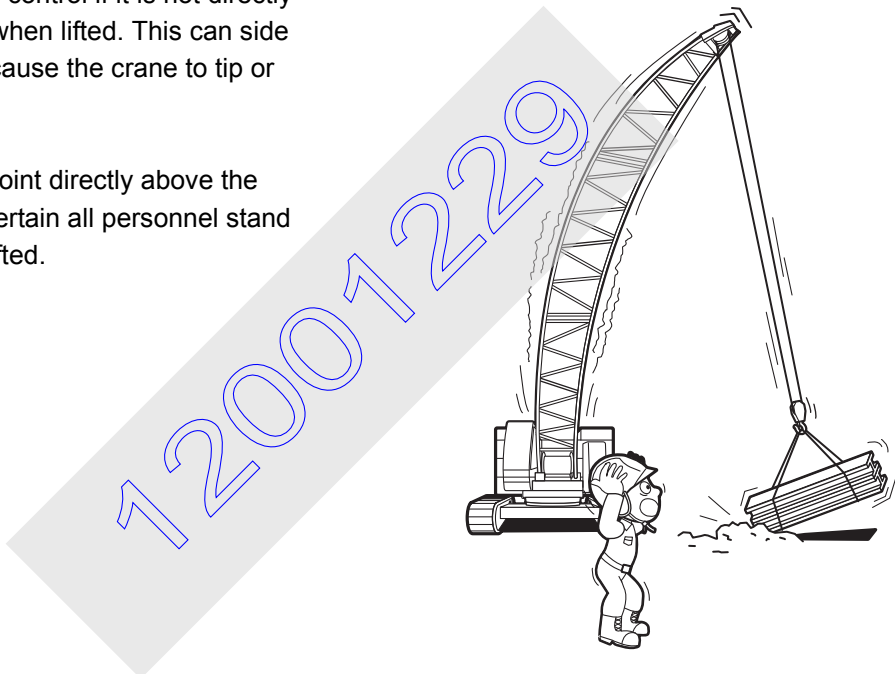


- 17. If the load strikes the boom or the boom hits a building or other object, the boom may collapse. Never let the load or any other object contact the boom.
- 18. Boom suspension lines will stretch when the load is lifted and contract when the load is released. At high boom angles this may be enough to pull the boom backwards over the crane or collapse the boom stops.

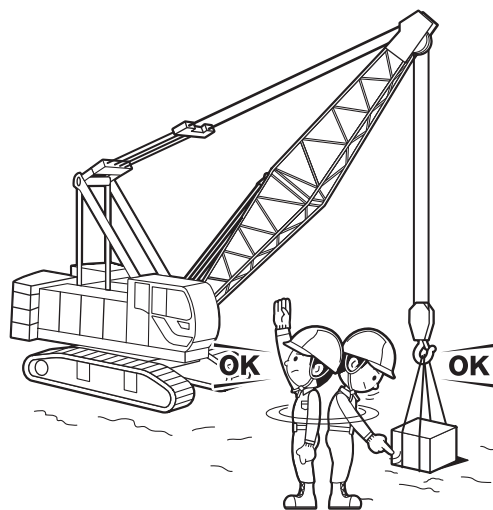
When releasing loads be sure the boom never tightens against the backstops.  
Release loads slowly booming out if necessary while releasing.

- 19. The load will swing out of control if it is not directly beneath the boom point when lifted. This can side load the boom and may cause the crane to tip or collapse.

Always place the boom point directly above the load when lifting. Make certain all personnel stand clear of the load as it is lifted.



- 20. Trying to lift a load which is stuck, frozen or attached to something else may result in tipping, boom collapse or other damage. Be sure that loads are free before lifting.

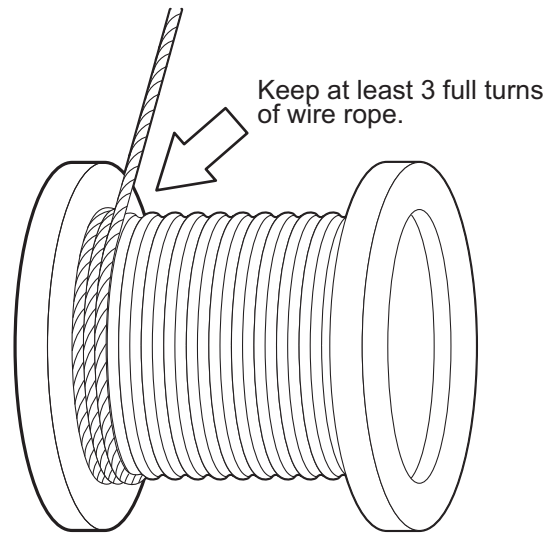


## 1. SAFETY

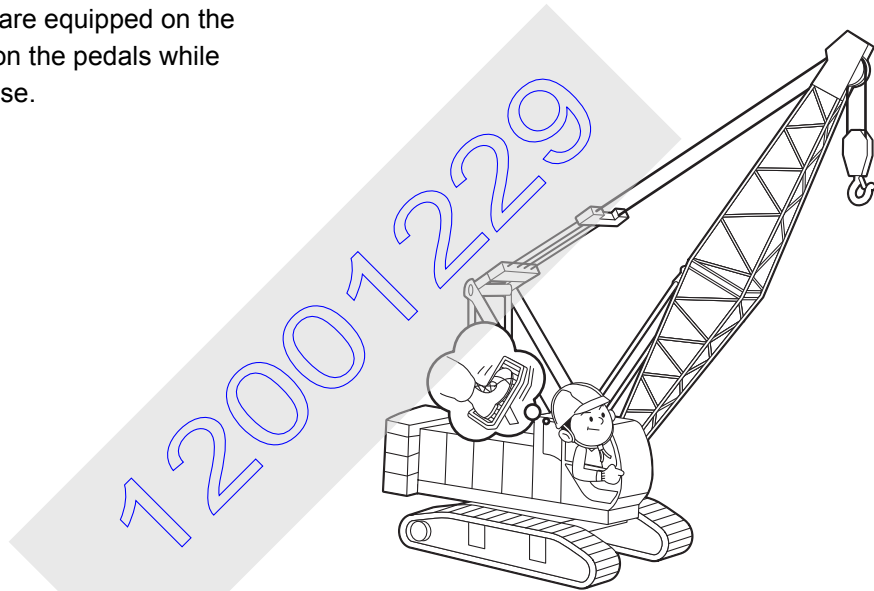
---

21. If there is not enough wire rope on the drum the rope can snap loose.

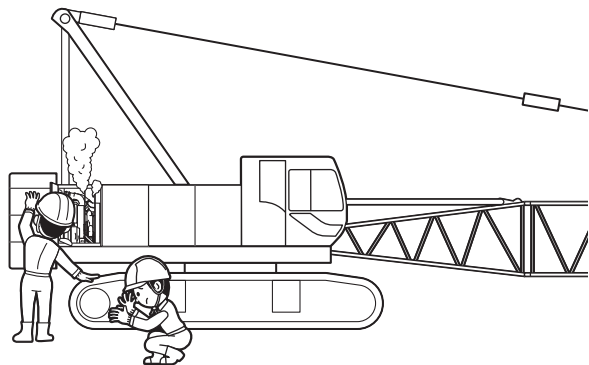
Keep at least 3 full turns of wire rope on drums when operating.



22. If foot brake pedals and locks are equipped on the crane, always keep your feet on the pedals while foot pedal brake locks are in use.

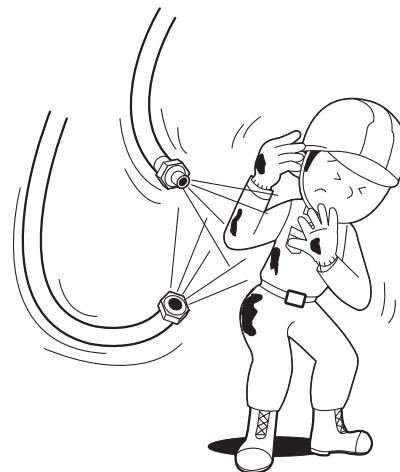


23. Trying to repair or adjust equipment with a suspended hook or load or with the boom raised could release machinery and let it move unexpectedly.  
Always lower the load to the ground and the boom onto proper cribbing before doing maintenance or repair work.



24. Pressure in hydraulic systems can be retained for long periods of time. If not properly released before maintenance people attempt to work on the hydraulic systems, this pressure can let machinery move or cause hot oil and hose ends to shoot out at high speed.

Release system pressure before attempting to make adjustment or repairs.

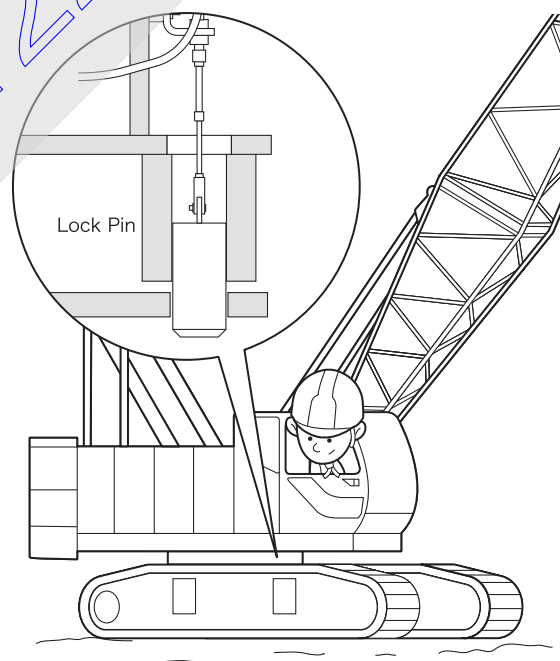


25. Pin-connected booms and jibs may fall if not properly supported when removing pins.

Make sure both ends of each boom and jib section are supported and the boom suspension lines completely slacked off before removing pins.

Never stand on, inside, or under booms or jibs during assembly or disassembly.

26. As with all heavy equipment, care must be taken when cranes are driven (traveled), whether on or off the job site. Watch for people, electrical power lines, low or narrow clearances, bridge or road load limits, and steep hills or uneven terrain. Use a signalman in close quarters. Know the height, width and weight of your machine. Set swing brake or lock before traveling.

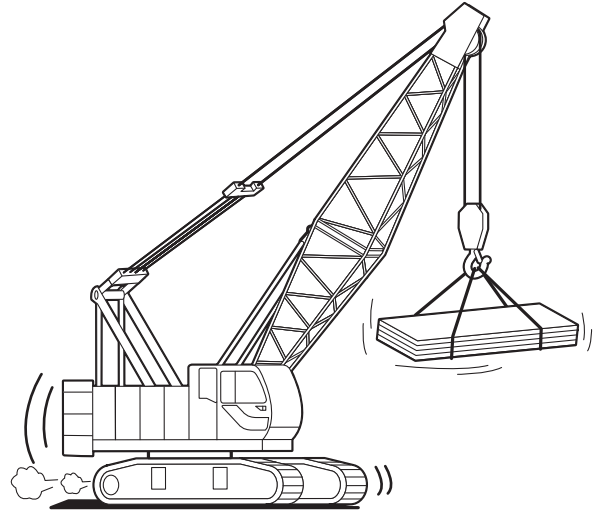


## 1. SAFETY

---

27. Load ratings for cranes are based on the machine being level and operated properly so that dynamic effects of operation do not increase the loadings on the crane.

Traveling a crane with a long boom or with a load suspended involves special hazards including the increased possibility of side loading or tipping.



Because of the many variables involved in pick and carry operations, the user must evaluate conditions and take appropriate precautions such as these:

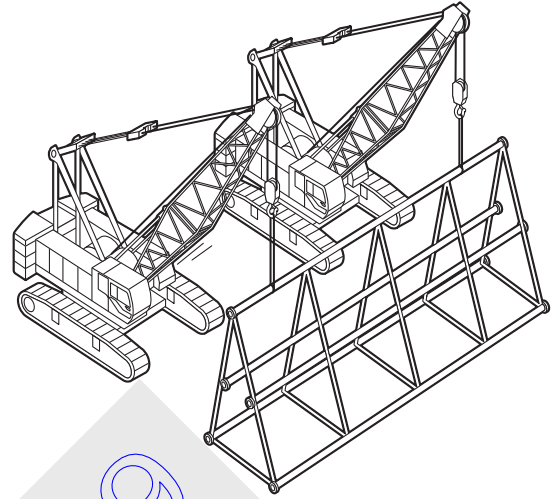
- Follow the travel precautions listed in rule 26.
- Check the rating plate for limitations.
- Position the boom in line with the direction of travel.
- Reduce the maximum load while traveling to reflect operating conditions. The safe load will vary depending on speed, crane, and other conditions.
- Travel slowly and avoid sudden stops and starts.
- Do not steer. Otherwise a lifting load may swing and lateral load would be applied on the boom and would be dangerous.
- Avoid backing away from the load. This could increase the radius and cause the machine to tip over.
- Use taglines to keep loads under control.
- Keep the load close to the ground.
- Use the shortest boom possible.



28. Using two or more cranes to lift a load involves many hazards not normally encountered in single crane lifts.

Multi-crane lifts must be carefully engineered, keeping the following points in mind.

- Since the load is not freely suspended, careful engineering studies must be made to ensure that the load carried by each machine is less than its rated capacity.
- Make sure slings are arranged to divide the load as planned.
- Review the lifting plan with operators, signalmen and other crew members before beginning the lift.
- Carefully coordinate crane movements through every stage of the lift.
- Avoid boom side loading (see #16).



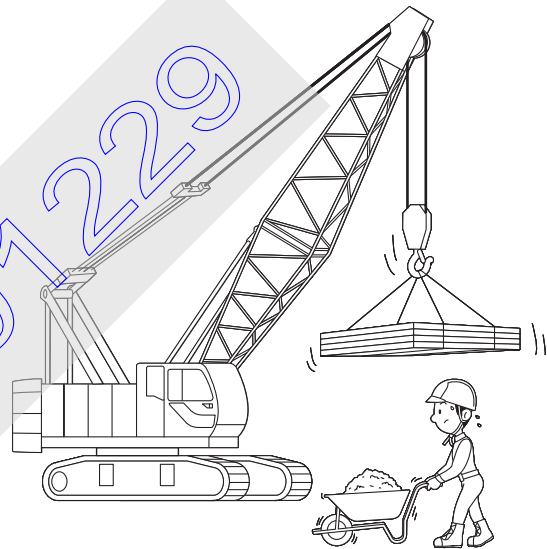
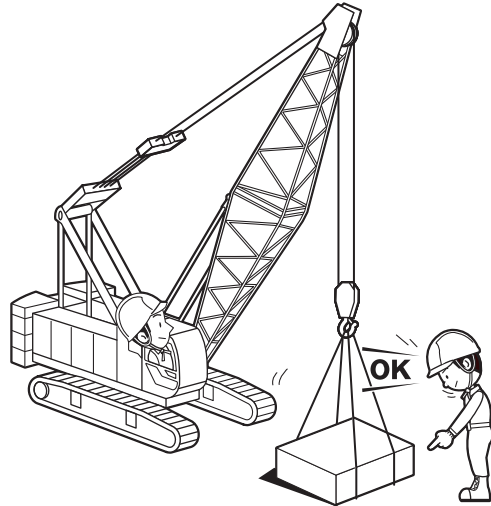
29. Leaving a machine unattended can be very dangerous. Before leaving his seat, the operator must take the following steps to prevent his machine from moving:

- Since the load is not freely suspended, careful engineering studies must be made to ensure that the load carried by each machine is less than its rated capacity.
- Lower the load or bucket to the ground. Lower the boom when necessary.
- Set the swing brake or lock.
- Set all drum locks.
- Set parking brakes.
- Set propel brakes or locks on crawler machines.
- Disengage the engine clutch or shut off the engine.
- Place the function lock lever in the shut down position.

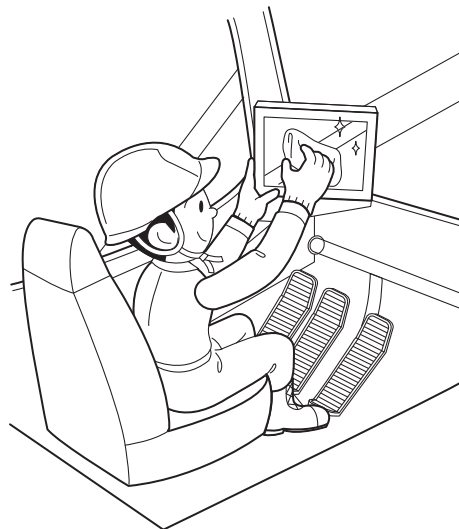
## 1. SAFETY

30. The operator or person in charge should see that :

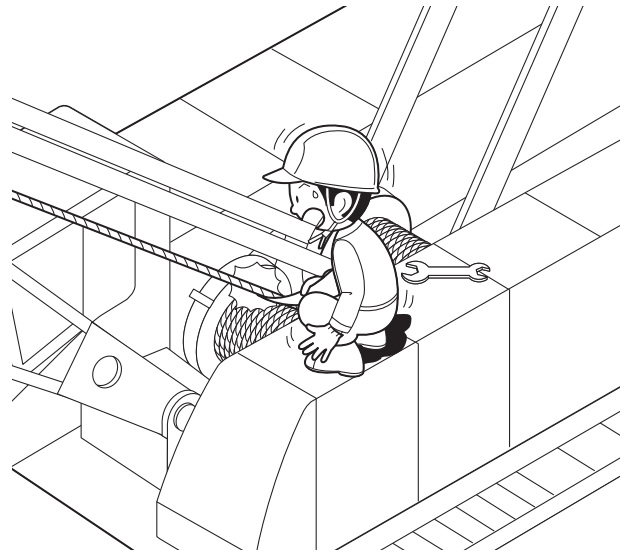
- Loads are well secured before being lifted.
- Slings are not kinked or damaged. The load is well balanced, and the hook block is adequate for the load to be lifted.  
Slings are properly arranged on the hook.
- Sudden stops and starts are avoided.
- The hoist line is vertical before starting the lift.
- The crane hook is equipped with a properly functioning retainer latch.
- Crane loads, grapples, or buckets do not pass over the heads of workmen nor in any way endanger their safety. All loose objects must be removed from the load.  
Non-operating personnel should be warned, or told to leave the immediate area, when making crane lifts.



31. Always replace protective guards and panels before operating the machine whenever they become dirty or damaged.



32. Never wear loose clothing rings or other objects which may become entangled in the moving machinery.



33. The operator should test the winch brakes when a load is first lifted, and when the load is only a few inches above its starting position, to assure the ability of the brakes to hold the load while it is aloft.

12001229

## 1. SAFETY

---

34. When refueling, do not smoke. Stop the engine, and keep metal funnels in contact with the fuel tank filler pipe to prevent static electrical sparks from igniting the fuel. Turn off cab heater (if equipped) while refueling, and avoid refueling near an open flame.

---

**WARNING**

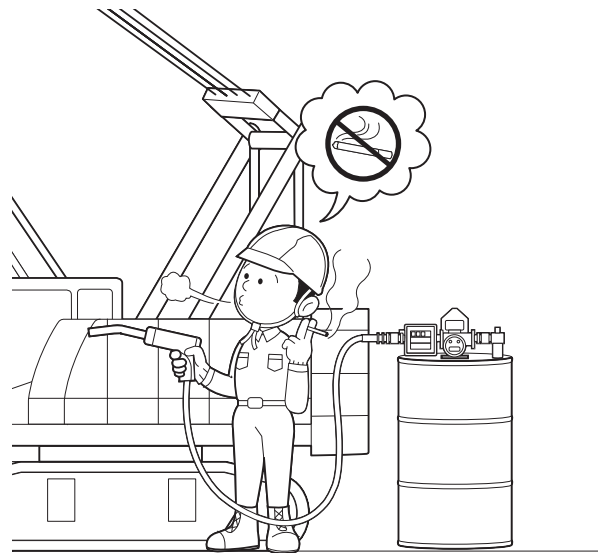
**Make sure to use light oil. However, replenish the fuel which matches the regional conditions in cold climates.**

**If the fuel other than the specified type is used or gasoline, kerosene and alcohol group fuels are supplied or used after mixing them, it may cause malfunction due to the sliding defect on the fuel sliding section in the injection pump and/or in the injector, or it may adversely affect the engine and result in damages.**

**Check that the fuel is the specified product when fueling to your vehicle. If a wrong product was supplied, thoroughly drain it.**

**If the engine is started with the wrong fuel filled, it is very dangerous because it may cause fire disaster or damage to the engine.**

---



35. If an overheated condition necessitates an engine shutdown, use extreme care when checking the radiator, if possible, wait for radiator to cool. Use a heavy cloth and gloves to protect yourself while slowly loosening the cap. Wait until the sound and fluid flow stops. Then remove the cap.
36. Be careful where you park your machine. Do not leave it where there is a chance of a bank caving in on it, or in a low spot where heavy rains may wash out the footing.

37. When leaving the crane unattended, always remove keys and lock all cab doors to prevent unauthorized person from tampering with the machine and possibly injuring themselves or others.

38. Other operating precautions

- Do not perform lifting work with the crawler retracted.
- Never work in over load condition.
- Avoid free fall work as much as possible.
- Be careful of slipping on slope road.
- Do not use the main and aux. hook simultaneously from the boom point.
- Take slow speed in landing of load on the ground.

12001229

# 1. SAFETY

---

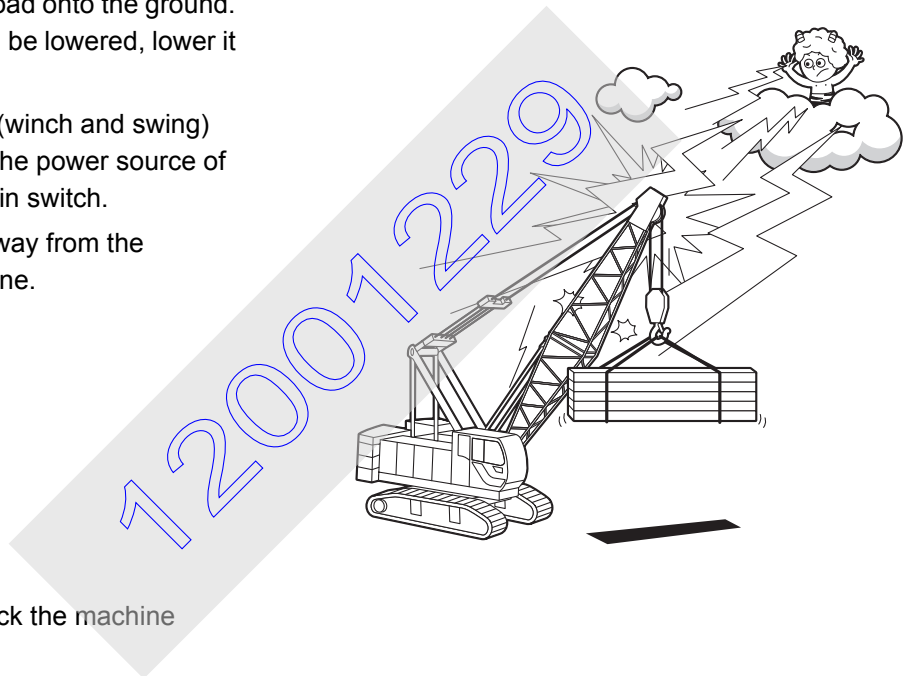
## MEASURES FOR RADIO TRANSMITTERS

When working in the vicinity of a transmitting antenna for a broadcasting station, the boom could act as a large antenna, and could become electrified. High voltage of electricity may be generated at the hook end, and the hook could become heated. If this happens, do not touch the hook. Electrical shock, or burning could result. Ground personnel should be warned to stay away from the machine.

## MEASURES FOR LIGHTNING

1. When lightning storms are generated and lightning bolts are anticipated, immediately take the following steps:

- (1) Stop the work, and lower the load onto the ground. When the boom (or tower) can be lowered, lower it onto the ground.
- (2) Engage the brakes and locks (winch and swing) and stop the engine. Turn off the power source of the load safety device and main switch.
- (3) Advise all personnel to stay away from the surrounding area of the machine.



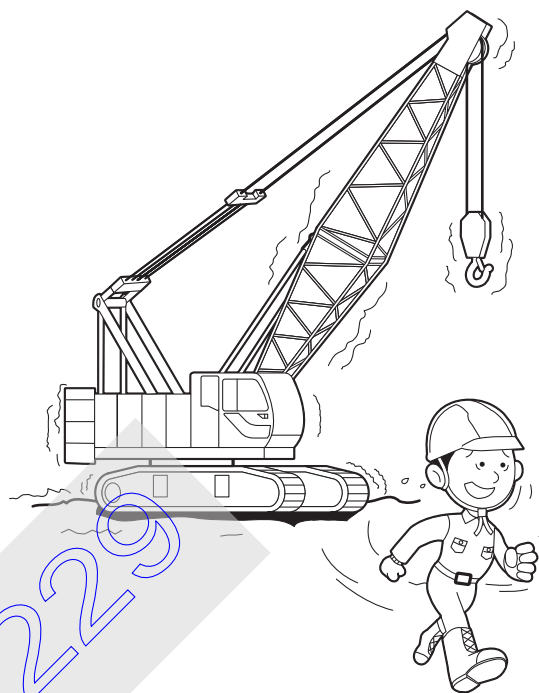
2. If a lightning strike occurs check the machine before operating it.

- (1) Check for burns and damage.
- (2) Check the electrical devices and load safety device for performance.
- (3) Check each function for abnormality.

**MEASURES FOR EARTHQUAKE**

1. When earthquakes occur, immediately take the following steps:

- (1) Stop the work, and lower the load and hook onto the ground. When the boom (or tower) can be lowered, lower it onto the ground.
- (2) Engage the brakes and locks (winch and swing), stop the engine, and turn off the electrical power of the main switch and load safety device.
- (3) Advise all personnel to stay away from the surrounding area of the machine.



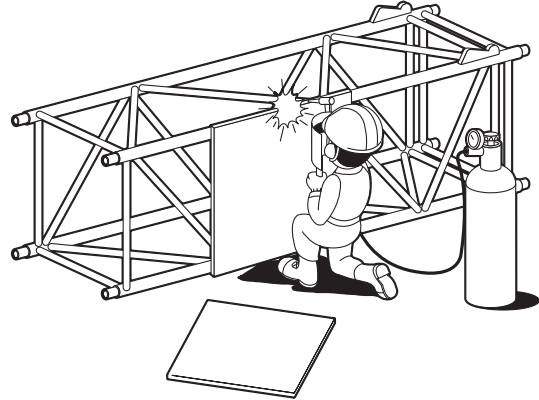
2. After the earthquake is over, check the machine before operating.

- (1) Check each function for performance.
- (2) Check the electrical devices and load safety device for performance.

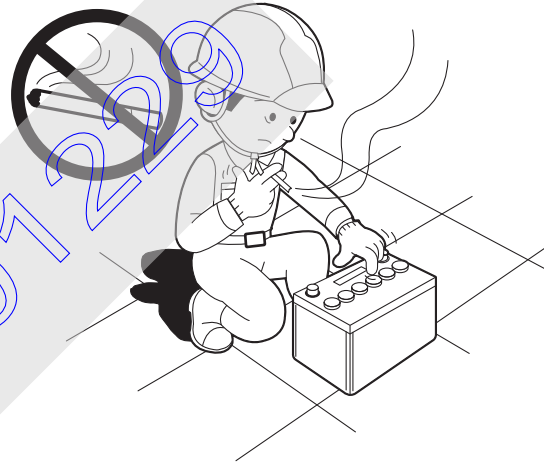
## 1. SAFETY

### 1.4 SAFETY AT INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE WORK

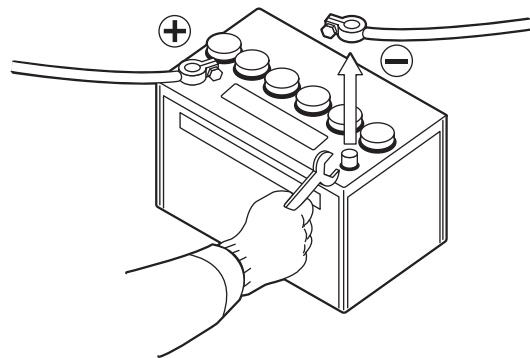
- Stop the engine during inspection and maintenance work.
- Do not weld other object to the boom since it may cause weakening the boom strength.  
(Prohibiting modification)



- Do not bring fire close during battery handling.



- Disconnect the battery cables during inspection and maintenance of electrical system.

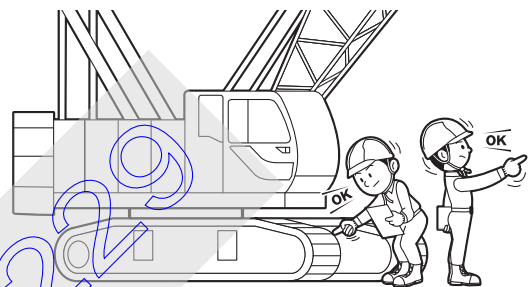




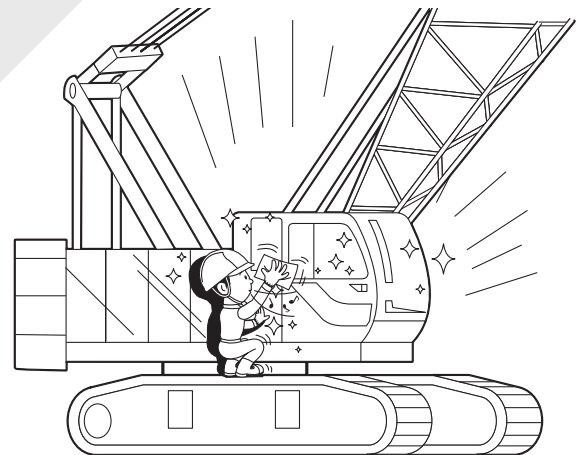
- When removing the radiator cap straight after engine stop, take extra care about internal high pressure and high temperature. Slowly remove the radiator cap after the coolant temperature becomes lowered to release pressure.



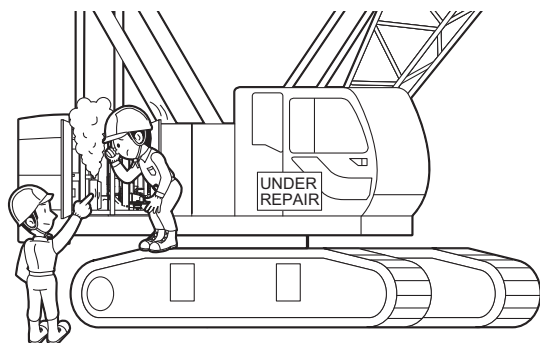
- Machine parts are hot straight after engine stop. Do not touch them.
- Perform the inspection and maintenance work specified by law.



- Keep machine always in order, tidy and clean.



- Whenever any fault is found, repair immediately.



## 1. SAFETY

---

- Ensure to use genuine wire rope, guy line or oil.

---

### **CAUTION**

Warranty is voided if the failure is caused by use of parts and components other than Manitowoc genuine parts.

---



- Do not use fuel other than specified one.

---

### **WARNING**

**Use ultra low sulfur diesel fuel only (S50: sulfur content lower than 50ppm).**

**If fuel other than specified one is used, adverse affect may be caused to the engine or diesel particulate filter and white smoke or failure may be resulted.**

---

- Use recommended engine oil.

---

### **CAUTION**

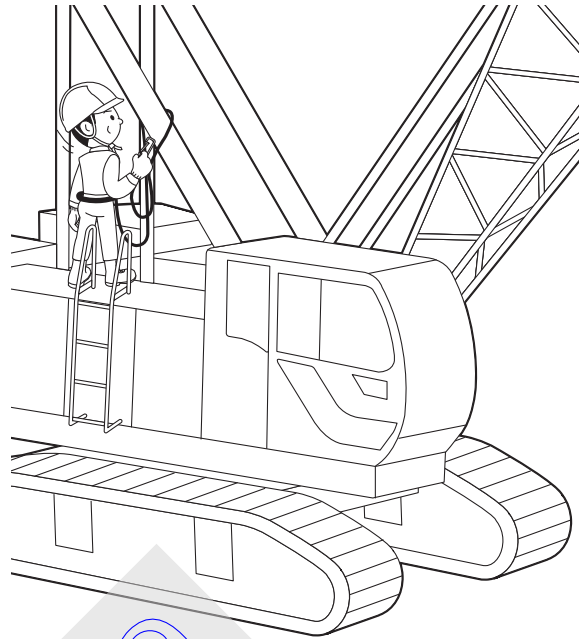
In order to keep good function of the diesel particulate filter, it is recommended to use the specified brand (recommended) engine oil.

---

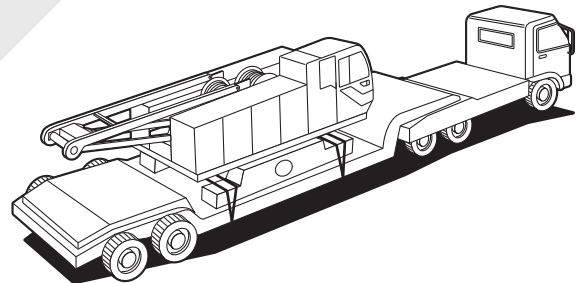
12001229

**1.5 SAFETY DURING ASSEMBLY AND DISASSEMBLY WORK**

- Ensure to wear safety belt and other protective gear during high place work.



- Ensure to secure the machine to the trailer firmly during transportation.  
Strictly observe the road traffic regulation on dimension and weight during transportation.
- Do not cause overloading on the trailer.



12001229

## 1. SAFETY

---

### 1.6 CAUTIONS IN HANDLING OIL AND PAINT

#### CAUTIONS IN HANDLING LUBRICATING OIL AND GREASE

1. Draining while hot may cause burns and is dangerous. Drain after cool down.
2. Getting oil and grease into eyes may cause inflammation. Wear safety glasses etc in handling to prevent getting into eyes.
3. Getting oil and grease on skin may cause inflammation.  
Wear protective gloves etc. in handling to prevent them touching on skin.
4. Do not drink. (Drinking them may cause diarrhea or vomiting.) Keep them away from children.

#### CAUTIONS IN HANDLING PAINT

1. Do not handle around fire.
2. Handling place should be equipped with the localized exhaust system.
3. During painting and drying, exhaust system should work to prevent sucking steam.
4. During handling, take care not to let paint touch the skin. Wear organic gas mask, supplied-air respirator, safety glasses, protective gloves, hood, long sleeve work shirt, scarf etc as required.
5. If spilled, wipe off with cloths after scattering sands. Paint adhered cloths, paint dregs or spray dust should be handled by soaking in the water.
6. After handling, wash your face, your hands, and rinse your mouth and nose well.
7. If paint adheres to your skin, wash out with soapy water. If painful or injured, see the doctor.
8. If paint gets into your eyes, wash your eyes with much water and see the doctor as soon as possible.
9. If you feel bad by sucking steam or gas, stay calm in clean-air place and see the doctor as required.
10. In case of fire, use CO<sub>2</sub> gas or foam fire extinguisher.

11. Keep paint with complete sealing and at the specified place where children cannot reach.
12. Dispose them as industrial wastes.
13. Do not use for purpose other than specified (such as glue sniffing).

12001229

## 1. SAFETY

---

### 1.7 SAFETY EQUIPMENT (OPTION)

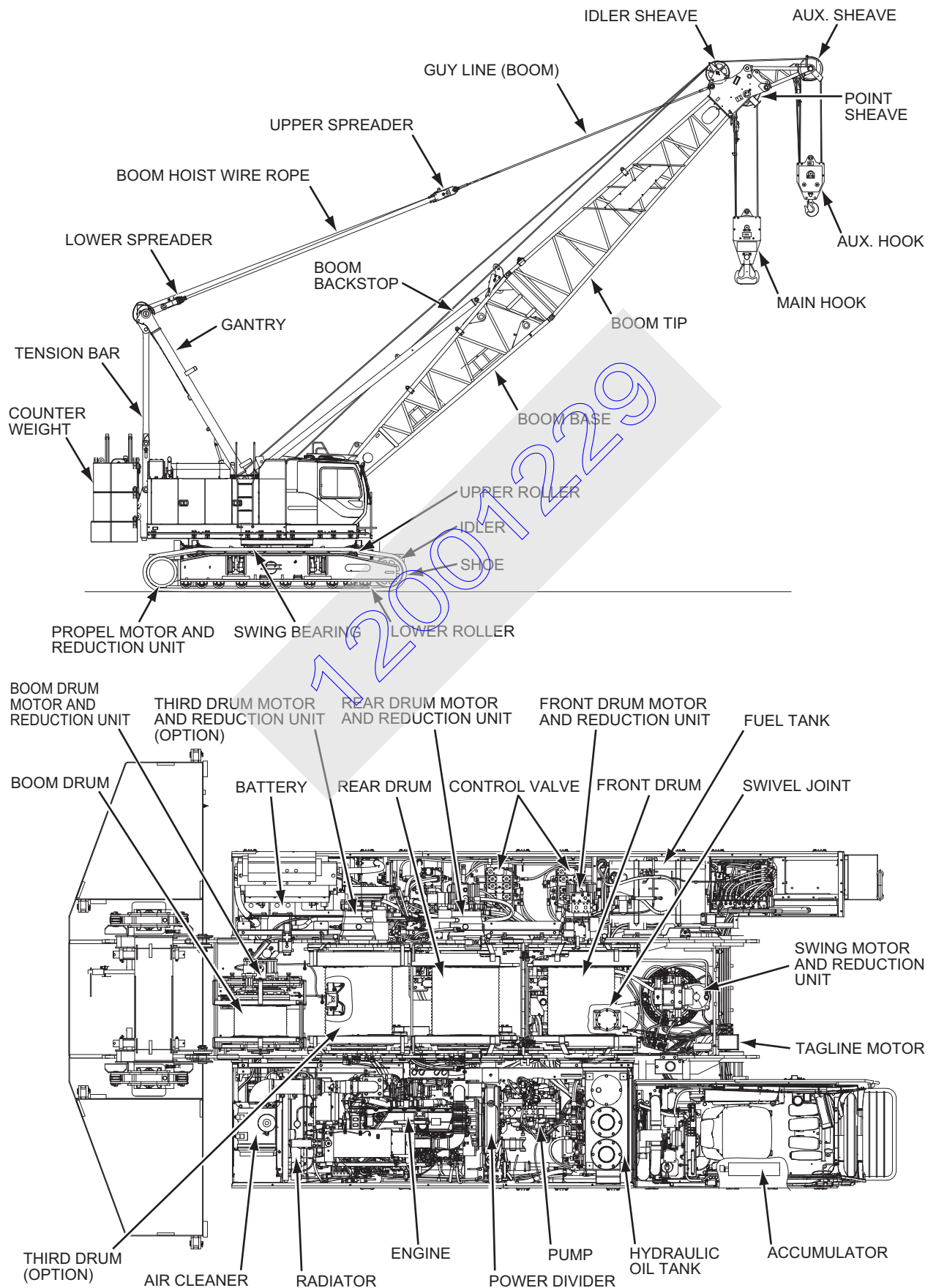
This machine is equipped with the following safety equipment as option. For the detail of the safety equipment (option), refer to list in the chapter 9. REFERENCE MATERIALS.

12001229

2. OPERATION

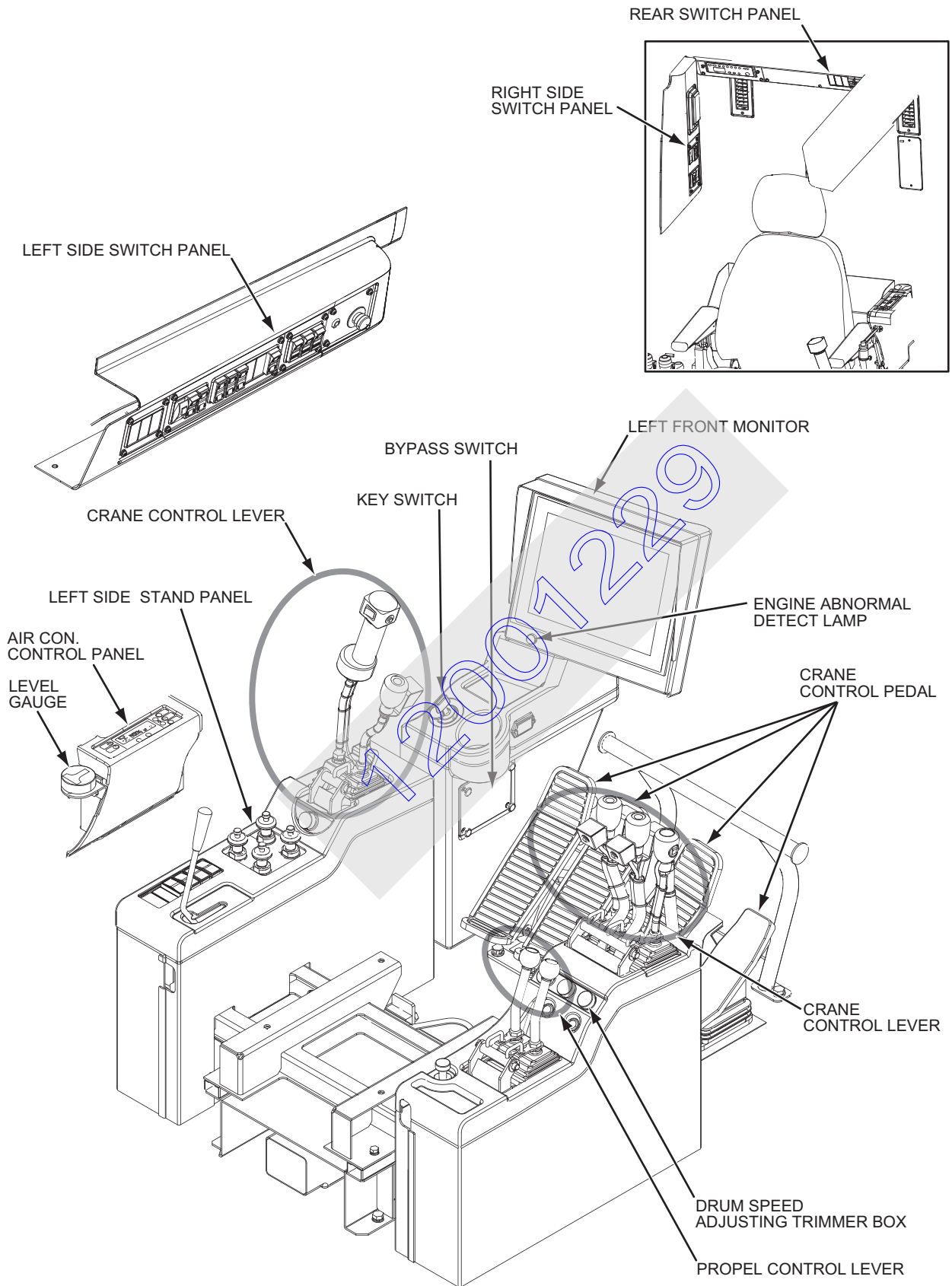
2.1 TERMINOLOGY OF MACHINE EACH PART

2.1.1 CRANE



## 2. OPERATION

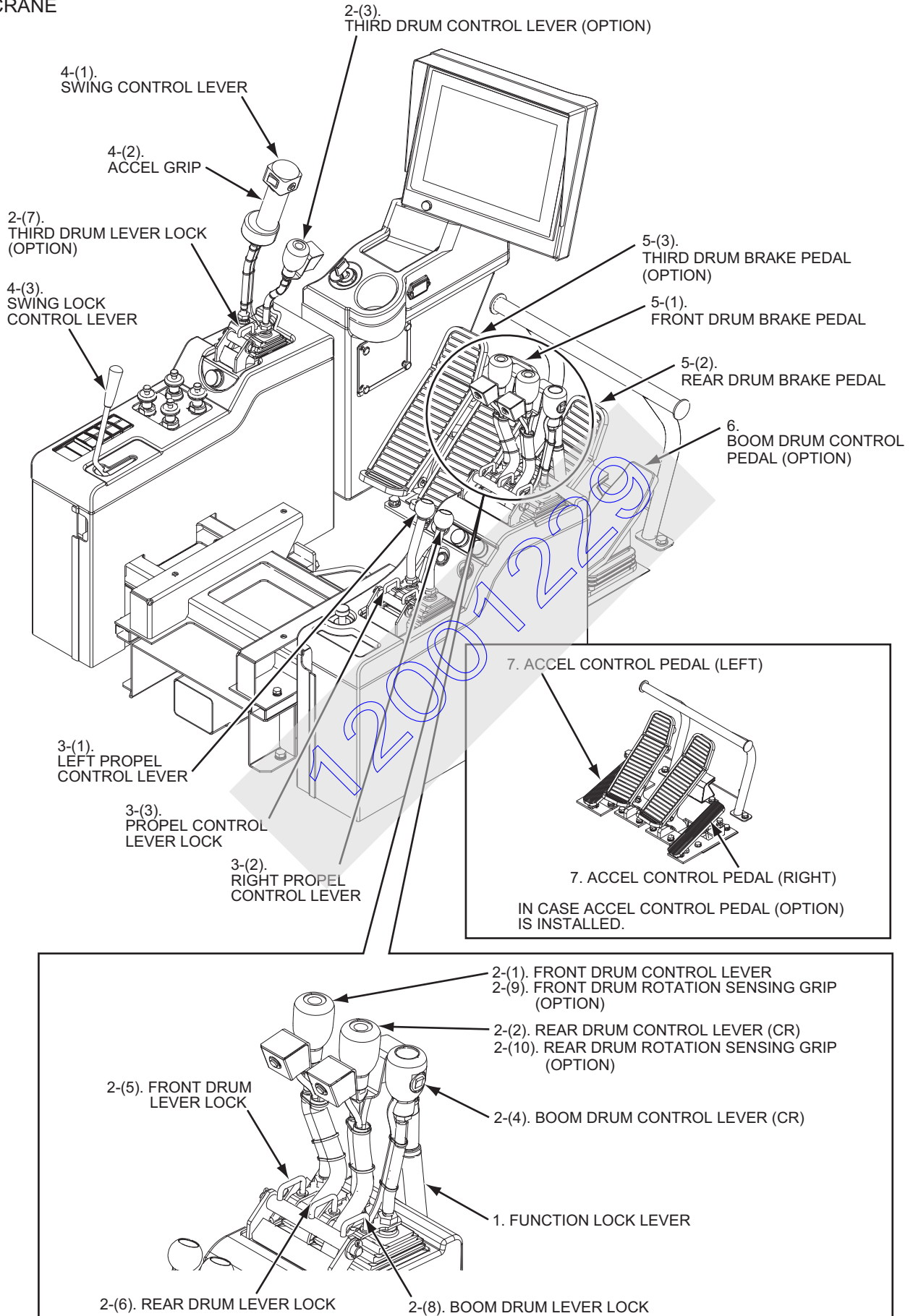
### 2.2 LOCATIONS AND TERMS OF OPERATING CONTROLS





2.2.1 HANDING LEVER AND PEDAL

CRANE



## 2. OPERATION

### 1. FUNCTION LOCK LEVER

#### (1) FUNCTION LOCK LEVER

(Refer to P.2-89)

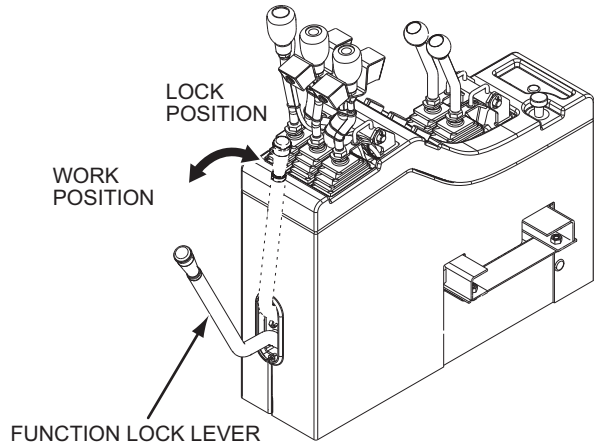
Function lock lever is provided as safety device to prevent unexpected machine movement even operator's body touches the control lever during getting to or from the operator's seat.

#### **LOCK POSITION**

Hook raising, boom raising, propel and swing motion becomes non operational.

#### **WORK POSITION**

Hook raising, boom raising, propel and swing motion becomes operational.



Turn the function lock lever to "WORK" position when the machine is operated.

Whenever leaving from the operator's seat, ensure to stop the engine and turn the function lock lever to "LOCK" position.

Ensure to turn the function lock lever to "LOCK" position at work completion or at transportation of machine.

12001229

**2. DRUM CONTROL LEVER**

- (1) **FRONT DRUM CONTROL LEVER**  
(Refer to P.2-102)
- (2) **REAR DRUM CONTROL LEVER**  
(Refer to P.2-102)
- (3) **THIRD DRUM CONTROL LEVER (OPTION)** (Refer to P.2-102)
- (4) **BOOM DRUM CONTROL LEVER**  
(Refer to P.2-97)

These levers are to start, control and stop the front, rear third and boom drum.

Each lever drives and controls the drum such as pulling backward to raise, neutral and pushing forward to lower.

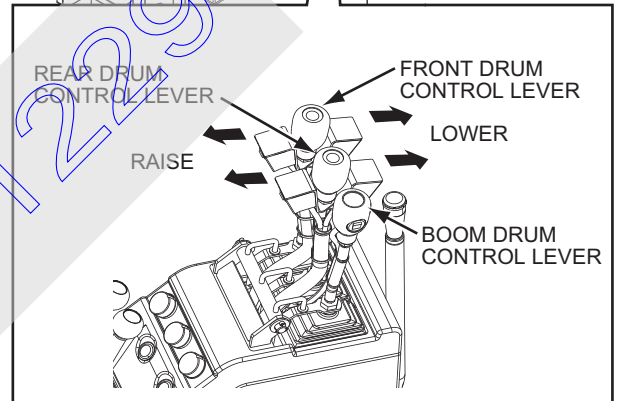
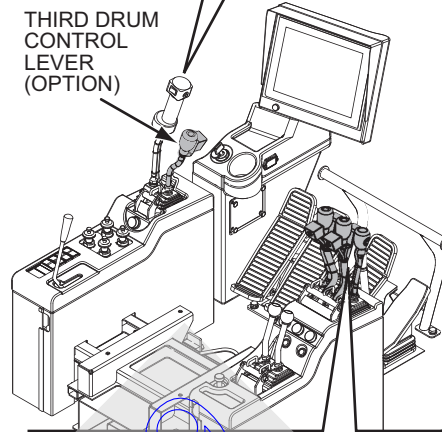
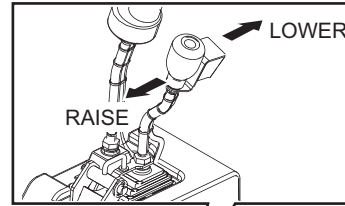
Each lever is held at the position due to detent.

\* Detent:

Function to prevent lever returning.

- (5) **FRONT DRUM LEVER LOCK**
- (6) **REAR DRUM LEVER LOCK**
- (7) **THIRD DRUM LEVER LOCK (OPTION)**
- (8) **BOOM DRUM LEVER LOCK**

Engage each lever lock with the lever at neutral position to prevent unexpected movement of lever by touching the operator's body.



12001229

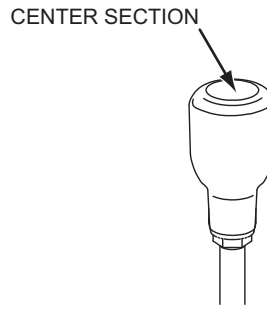
## 2. OPERATION

### (9) FRONT DRUM ROTATION SENSING GRIP (OPTION)

### (10) REAR DRUM ROTATION SENSING GRIP (OPTION)

When the drum rotation sensing switch is turned to "ON", operator can sense the front and rear drum rotation by top movable spot of the front and rear drum control lever.

The drum sensing is provided to sense the start and condition of the drum rotation on the top face of the lever grip. High speed rotation or free fall of the drum may not be sensed.



## 3. PROPEL CONTROL LEVER

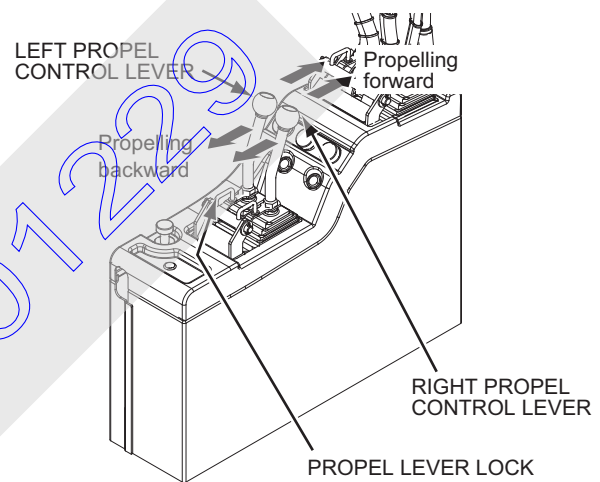
### (1) LEFT PROPEL CONTROL LEVER (Refer to P.2-90)

### (2) RIGHT PROPEL CONTROL LEVER (Refer to P.2-90)

These levers are to drive, control and stop propel forward or propel backward. Furthermore, pivot turn, spin turn or normal turn can be done for direction change.

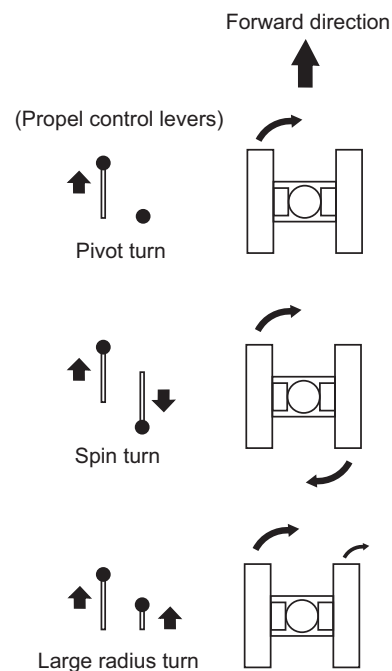
Each lever drives and controls the drum such as pushing forward for forward propel, neutral and pulling backward for backward propel. Each lever is held at any position due to detent.

Special attention is required since the lever moving direction has to be reversed based on the direction of the lower machinery against the upper.



### (3) PROPEL CONTROL LEVER LOCK (Refer to P.2-90)

Engage each lever lock with the lever at neutral position to prevent unexpected movement of lever by touching the operator's body.



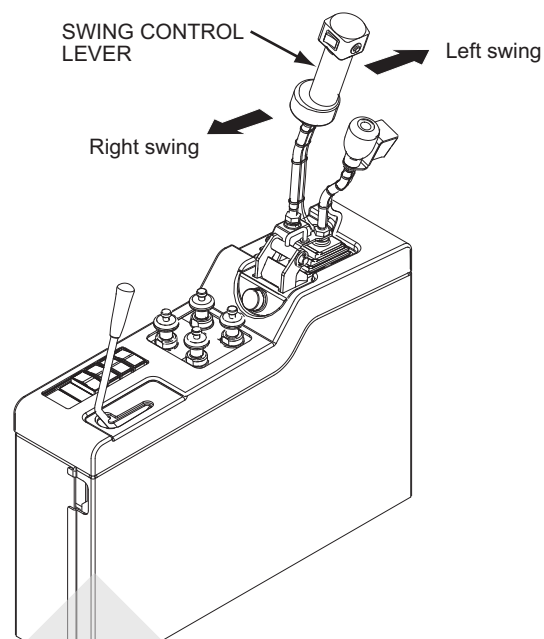
#### 4. SWING CONTROL LEVER

##### (1) SWING CONTROL LEVER

(Refer to P.2-96)

This lever is to start, control and stop the left and right swing motion of the upper machinery.

Pulling the lever backward is to swing right and pushing lever forward is to swing left and the lever returns to neutral automatically.



##### (2) ACCEL GRIP

(Refer to P.2-74)

The engine speed adjustment is done with the accel grip installed on the swing lever.

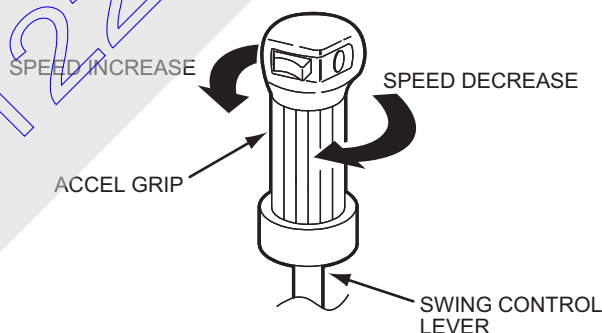
Accel grip has 120 degrees control range and can be set to any position.

##### COUNTERCLOCKWISE (LEFT TURN):

Speed increase

##### CLOCKWISE (RIGHT TURN):

Speed decrease



##### (3) SWING LOCK CONTROL LEVER

(Refer to P.2-95)

This lever is to insert the lock pin from the upper machinery to the pin catch on the lower machinery to secure the upper machinery or release the pin to make upper machinery swing freely.

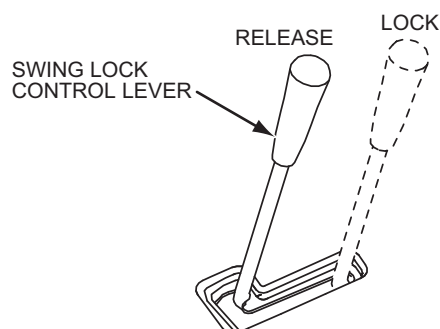
Ensure to insert the swing lock pin at the work completion or at the transportation.

##### LEVER LOCK POSITION:

Upper machinery secured.

##### LEVER RELEASE POSITION:

Upper machinery released.



## 2. OPERATION

### 5. BRAKE PEDAL FOR FREE FALL

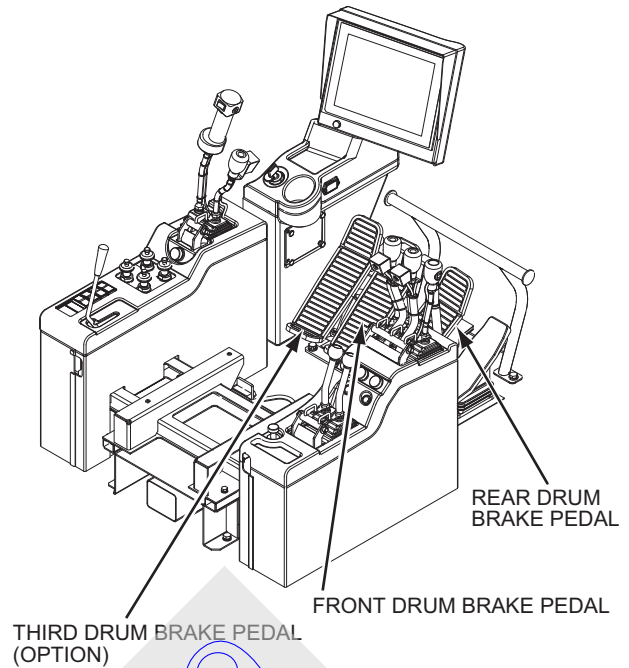
- (1) **FRONT DRUM BRAKE PEDAL**  
(Refer to P.2-110)
- (2) **REAR DRUM BRAKE PEDAL**  
(Refer to P.2-110)
- (3) **THIRD DRUM BRAKE PEDAL**  
(OPTION)  
(Refer to P.2-110)

These are brake pedals of each drum to make free-falling and stop falling of hook and the lifting load.

Make free-fall, brake or stop while pressing the brake pedal.

In order to hold the hook or lifting load during the free-fall operation, press the brake pedal to engage the pedal lock.

Pressing the brake pedal during raising or power lowering operation does not engage the brake. Only during free fall operation, brake is engaged.



### 6. BOOM DRUM CONTROL PEDAL (OPTION)

This pedal can control the boom drum instead of the boom hoist control lever.

The boom rises up with the control pedal pushed toward near side and the boom lowers with the control pedal pushed far side. The pedal returns automatically.

As for the boom drum control lever and boom drum control pedal, whichever is used first over-rides the other.

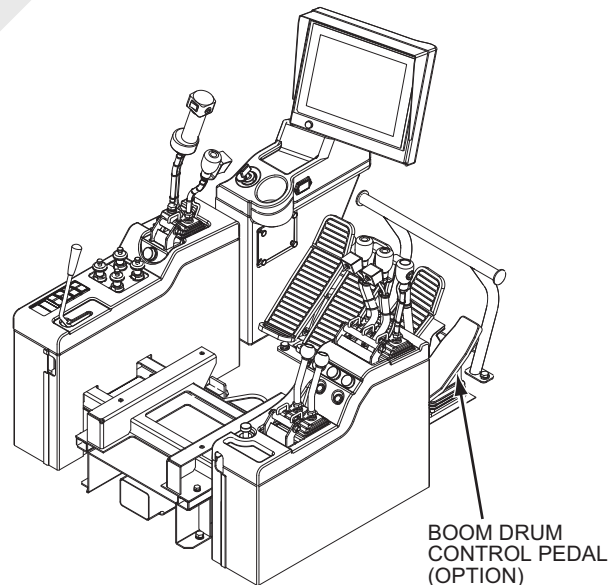
#### Condition to install

#### **RIGHT HAND INSTALLATION:**

In case of no accel pedal.

#### **LEFT HAND INSTALLATION:**

In case of no third drum brake pedal.



**6. ACCEL CONTROL PEDAL (OPTION)**

During work using swing lever, the accel control pedal can be used instead of the accel grip control.

Pressing the control lever to far side increase the speed and the pedal returns automatically.

As for the accel grip and the accel control pedal, whichever is used first to speed increase side overrides the others.

Condition to install

**LEFT/RIGHT INSTALLATION:**

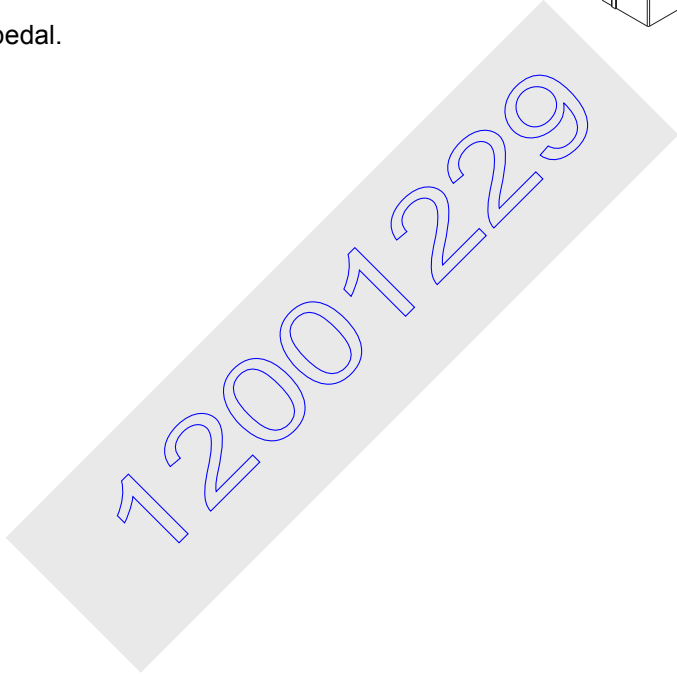
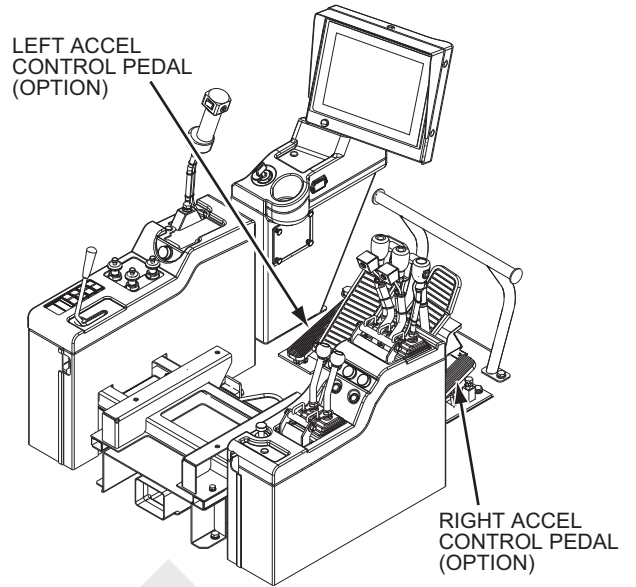
In case of no third/boom pedal.

**RIGHT INSTALLATION:**

In case of no boom drum pedal.

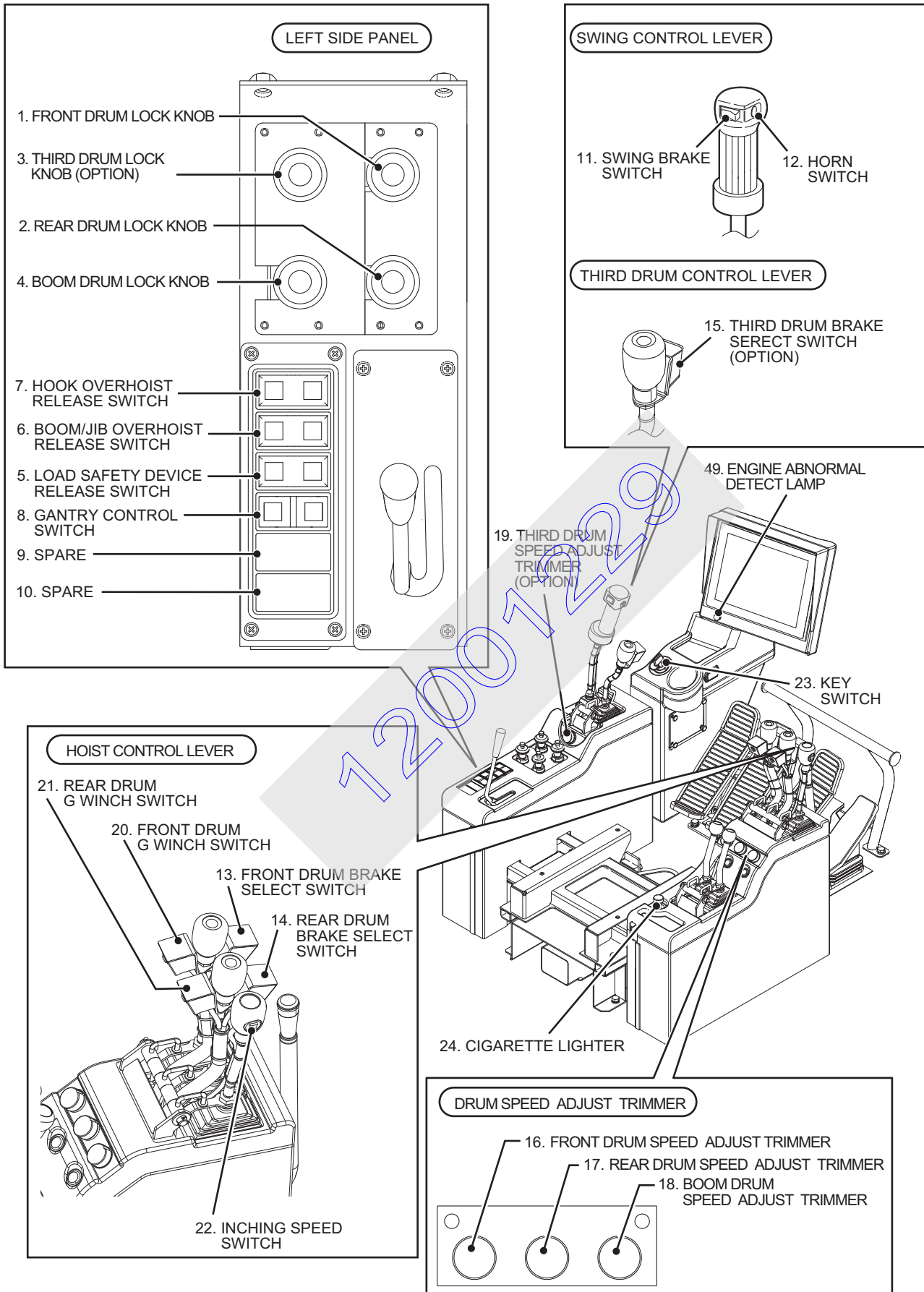
**LEFT INSTALLATION:**

In case of no third drum pedal.

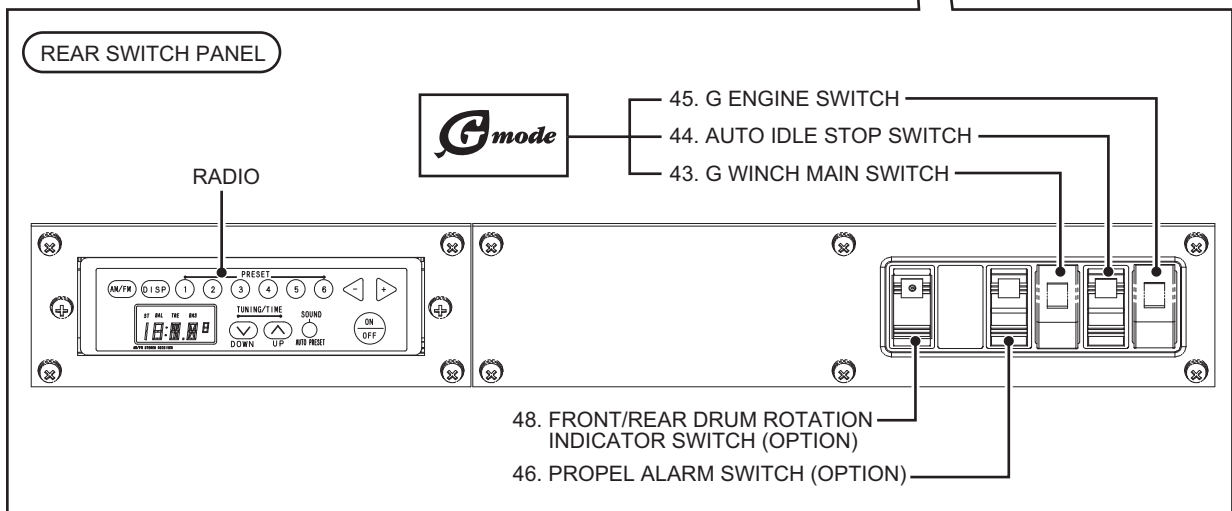
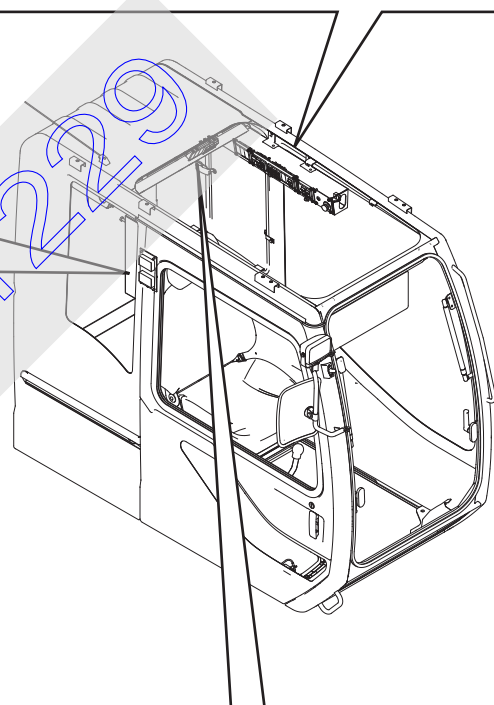
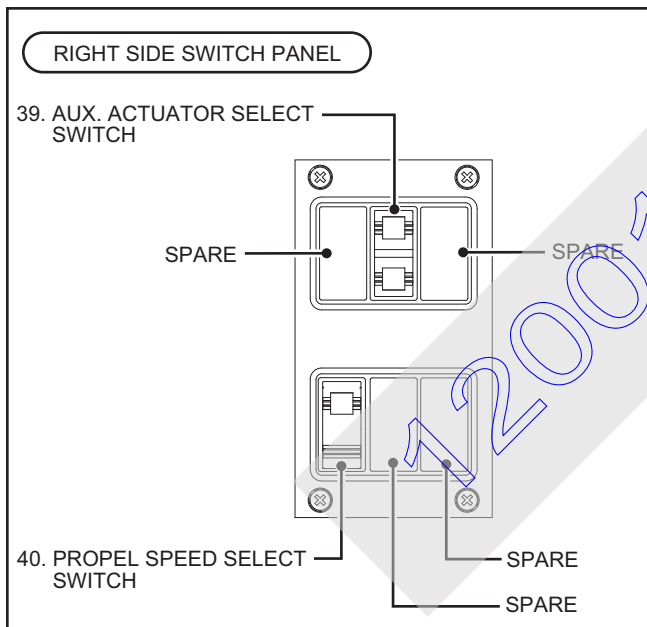
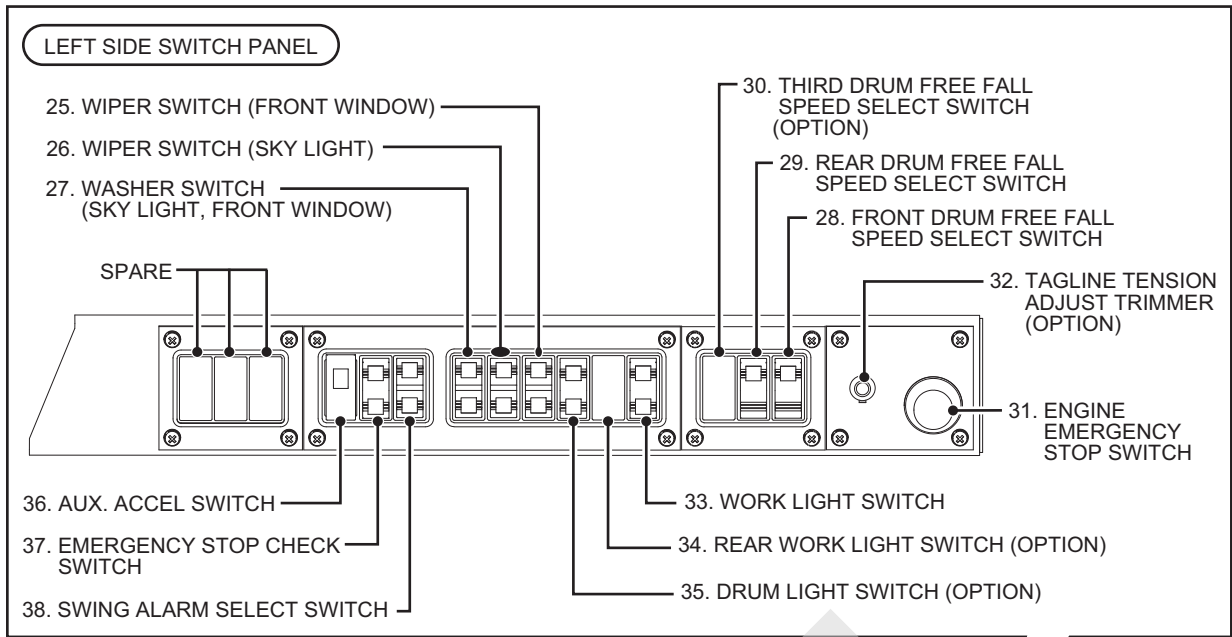


## 2. OPERATION

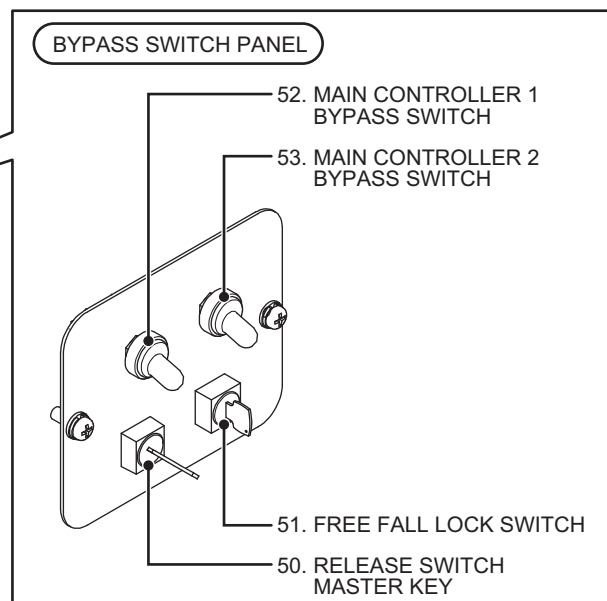
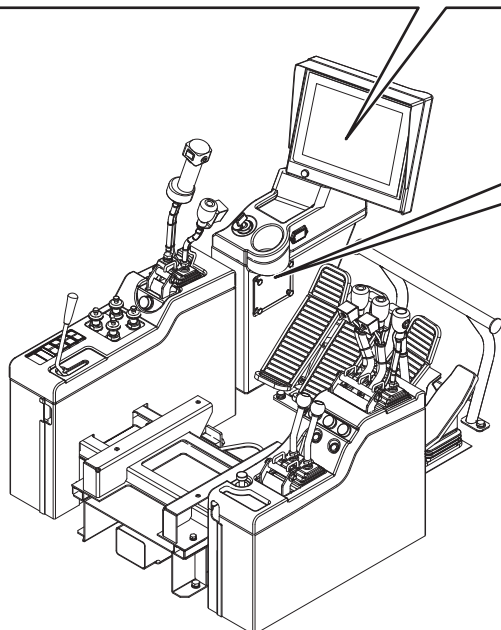
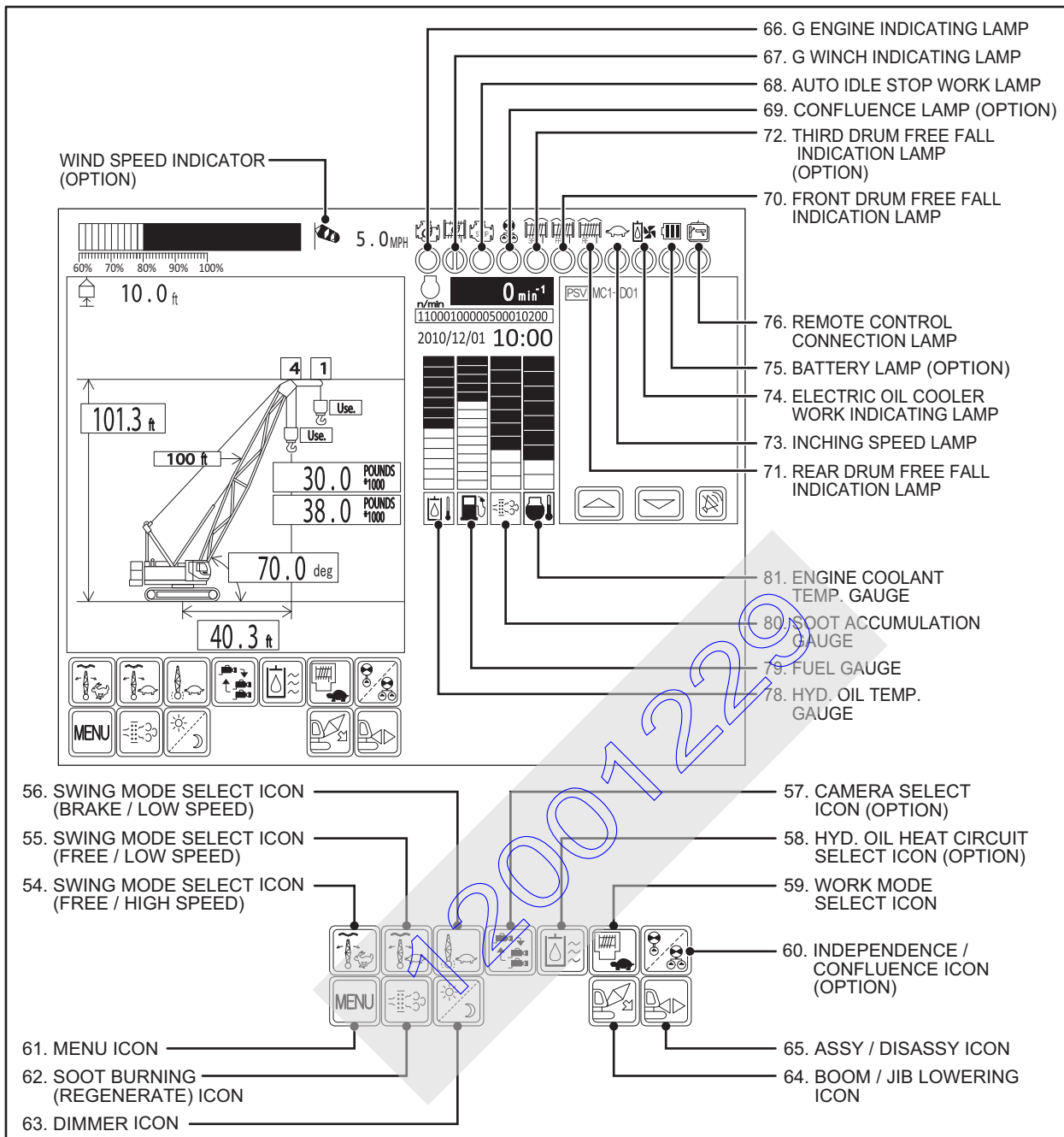
### 2.2.2 OPERATING SWITCHES







## 2. OPERATION

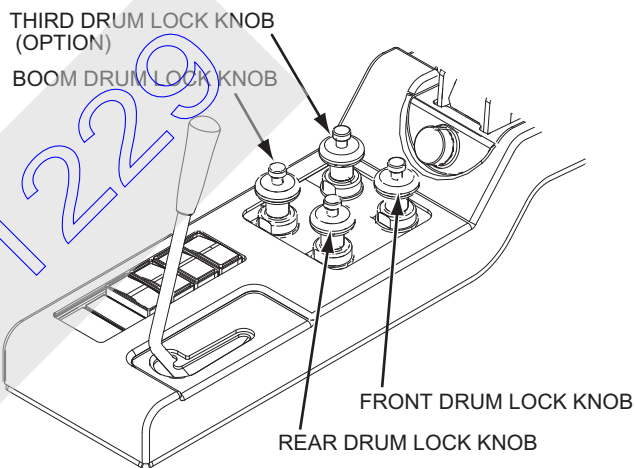
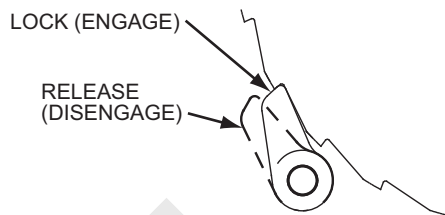


The following explain how to use each switch. Refer to article 2.3 CRANE OPERATION.



**PANEL SWITCH**

- 1. FRONT DRUM LOCK KNOB
- 2. REAR DRUM LOCK KNOB
- 3. THIRD DRUM LOCK KNOB (OPTION)
- 4. BOOM DRUM LOCK KNOB

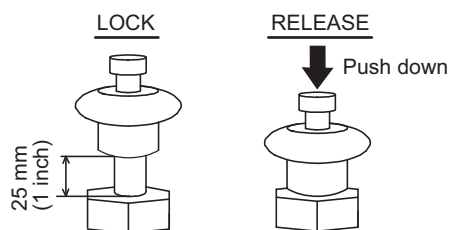
Engage the drum lock by pulling up the drum lock knob when the drum is not used for long time.  
To release, push the knob while pushing the button on the knob top.



These knobs are to lock the drum for safety during lowering the lifting load or boom.

 (LOCK)	Pull up the knob to engage the drum lock.
 (RELEASE)	Push down the knob to disengage the drum lock.

LEFT SIDE PANEL



Stopping the engine issues alarm sound to expedite drum lock for 4 seconds.

**⚠ DANGER**

- Do not engage the drum lock while the hook is being lowered.**
- Do not control the hook to lowering side while the drum lock is engaged.**
- Drum and drum lock may be damaged.**

## 2. OPERATION

### 5. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE RELEASE SWITCH

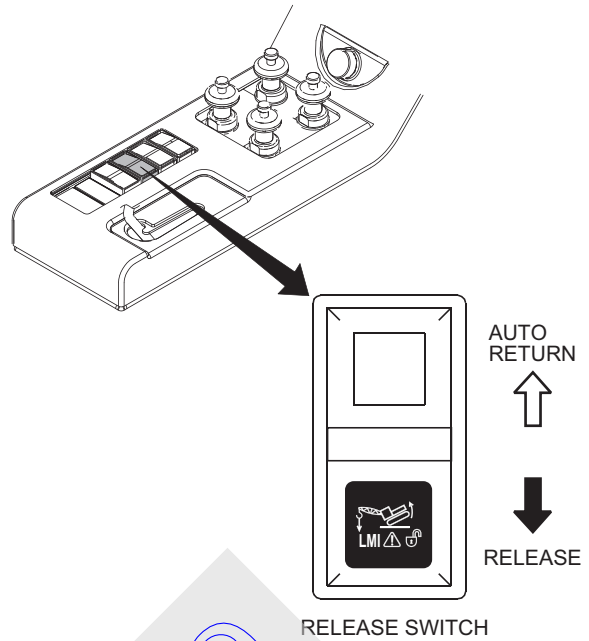
If the lifting work has to be continued after the load safety device stops the operation by some reason, this switch release the auto stop function.

#### RELEASE

Only during the time when this switch is turned to release side, auto stop function of the load safety device can be released.

The switch can automatically return when the switch is hand released.

This switch is functional only when 50. RELEASE SWITCH MASTER KEY is turned to release side.



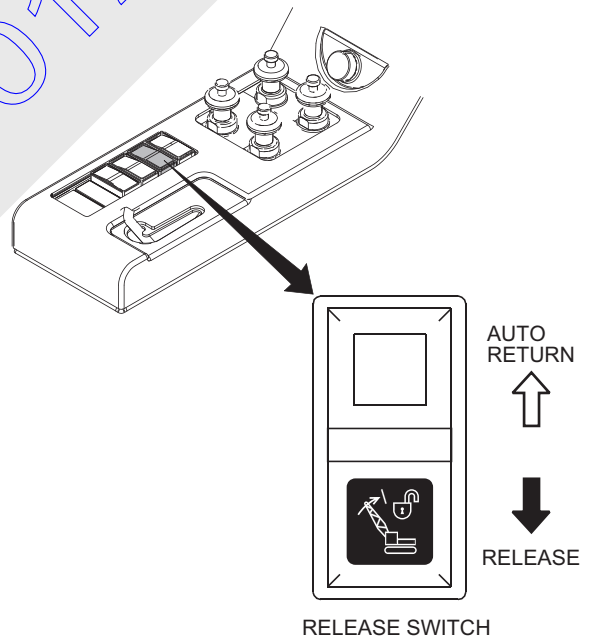
### 6. BOOM/JIB OVERHOIST RELEASE SWITCH

If the boom/jib lifting work has to be continued after the load safety device stops the operation by some reason, this switch releases the auto stop function.

#### RELEASE

Only during the time when this switch is turned to release side, auto stop function of the boom/jib over hoist device can be released.

The switch can automatically return when the switch is hand released. This switch is functional only when 50. RELEASE SWITCH MASTER KEY is turned to release side.



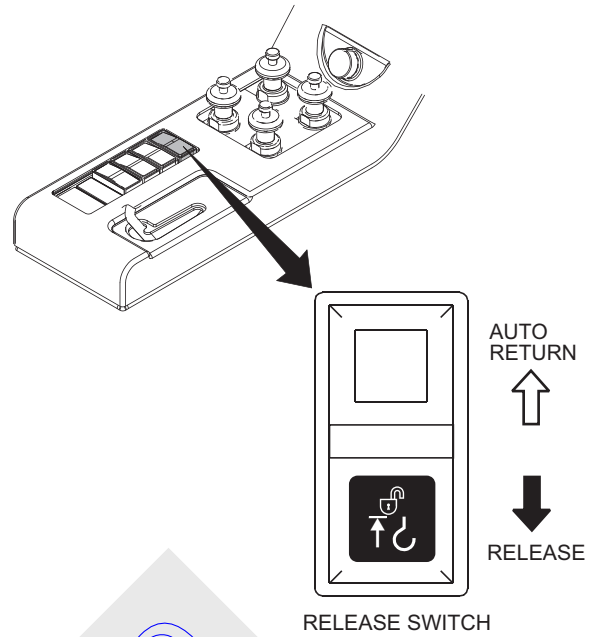
**6. HOOK OVERHOIST RELEASE SWITCH**

If the hook has to be continued lifting after the hook over-hoist preventive device stops the operation by some reason, this switch release the auto stop function.

**RELEASE**

Only during the time when this switch is turned to release side, auto stop function of the hook over-preventive device can be released.

The switch can automatically return when the switch is hand released. This switch is functional only when 50. RELEASE SWITCH MASTER KEY is turned to release side.



**7. GANTRY CONTROL SWITCH**

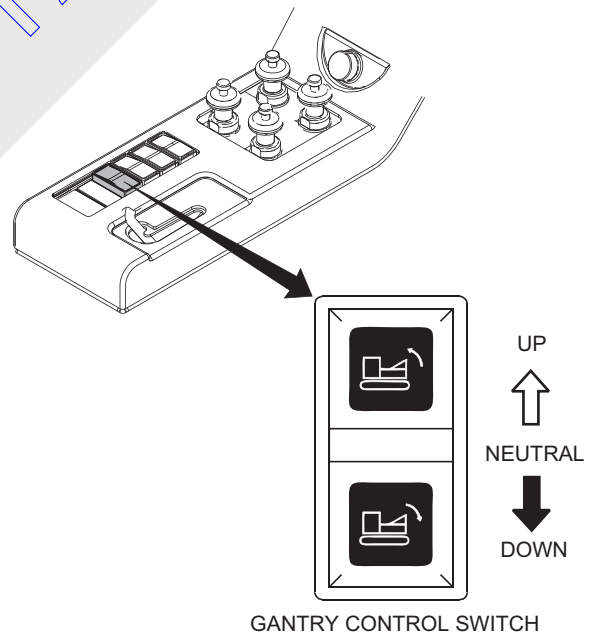
This switch is to control the gantry raising or lowering motion.

**UP:** The gantry rises up.

**DOWN:** The gantry lowers.

**NEUTRAL:** The gantry is held.

Switch returns automatically when hand is released.



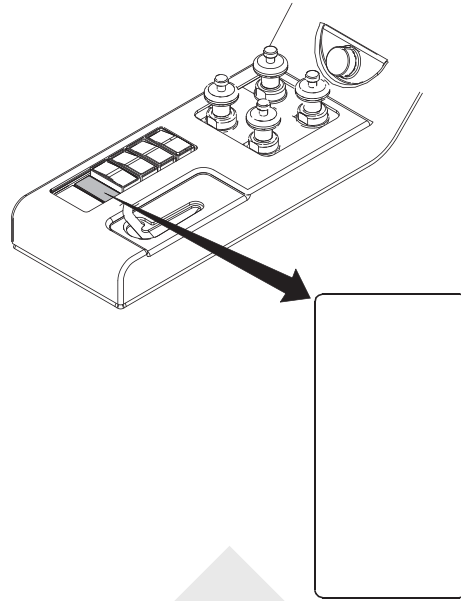
**CAUTION**

When the gantry is raised or lowered, make sure that there is no persons around the gantry area and observe the raising or lowering condition of the gantry.

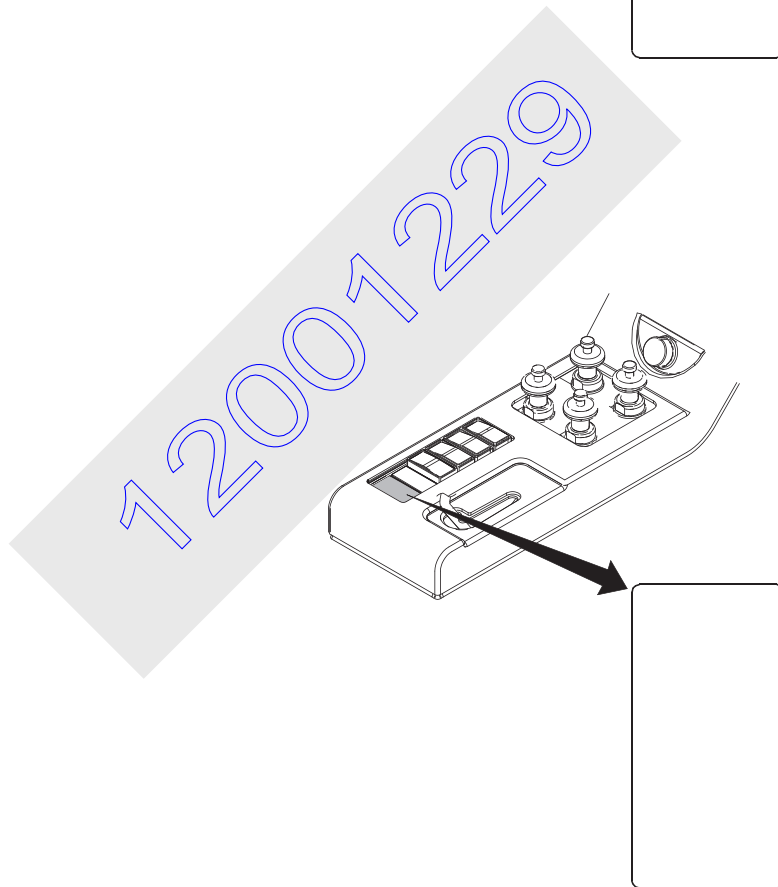
## 2. OPERATION

---

### 8. SPARE



### 10. SPARE



### 11. SWING BRAKE SWITCH

This is a brake to hold the upper machinery stationary and not to swing.

**ENGAGE:** Swing brake is engaged.

**DISENGAGE:** Swing brake is disengaged.

#### **CAUTION**

Do not use the swing brake to stop the upper machinery during swing motion.

This would cause large burden to the boom and swing unit and is very dangerous.

Apply the swing brake after the upper machinery is completely stopped.

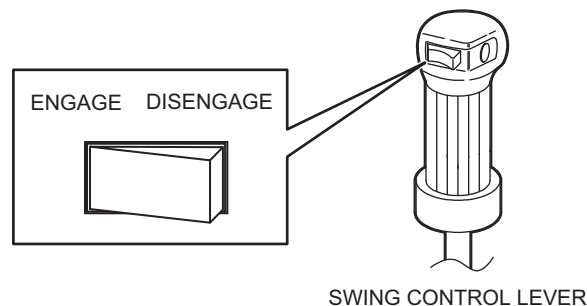
Due to the wind or ground slope main machinery may start swing unexpectedly.

Take extra care when disengaging the swing brake.

If the engine is started with the swing brake disengaged or if the function lock lever is turned to lock position with the swing brake disengaged, the swing brake is kept engaged.

In such case, turn the swing brake to "engage" side once and then turn to "disengage" side.

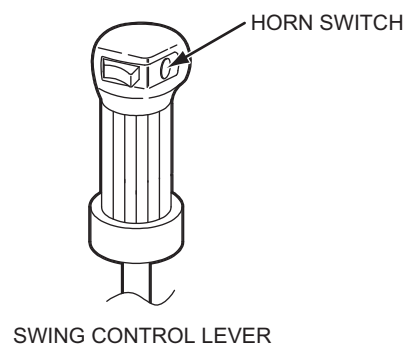
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.



### 12. HORN SWITCH

This switch issues horn sound at the engine start or swing to alarm for personnel. While the switch is being pushed, the horn sounds.

The switch returns to neutral when hand is released.



## 2. OPERATION

### 13. FRONT DRUM BRAKE SELECT SWITCH

### 14. REAR DRUM BRAKE SELECT SWITCH

### 15. THIRD DRUM BRAKE SELECT SWITCH (OPTION)

These switches are to select the required mode in the free fall or neutral brake. As for the detail of free fall operation, refer to the article 2.5 FREE FALL OPERATION (OPTION).

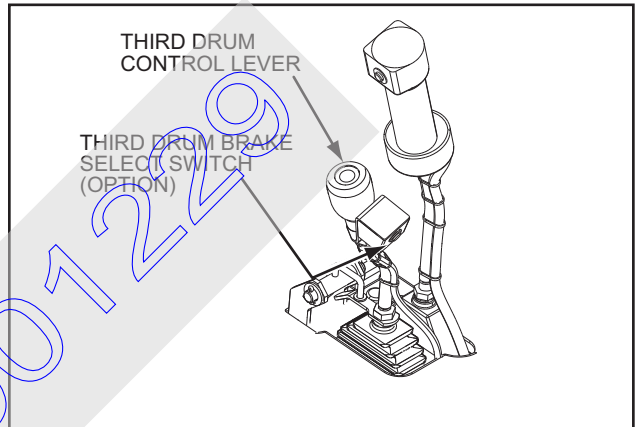
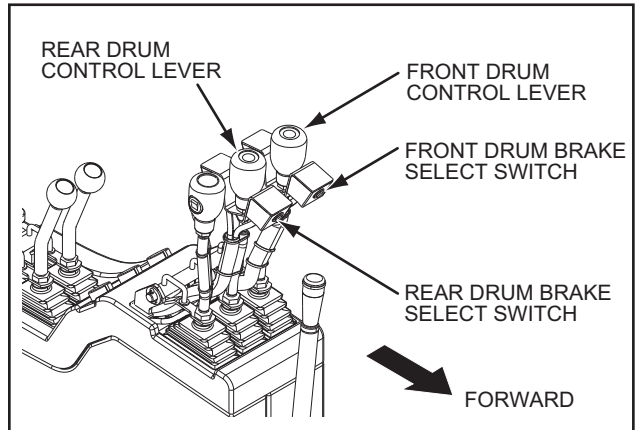
#### (1) FREE FALL MODE

Turns the free fall lock switch to release side and push the switch while pressing the brake pedal fully will make free fall mode. At the same time, free fall indication lamp lights up to advise free fall mode. (Brake turns into brake pedal control.)

#### (2) NEUTRAL BRAKE MODE

Pushing the switch again while pressing the brake pedal fully turns into the neutral brake mode. At the same time free fall indicating lamp goes off. (Brake turns into auto brake.)

For safety it certainly turns to neutral brake mode immediately after the engine start.





**16. FRONT DRUM SPEED ADJUST TRIMMER**

**16. REAR DRUM SPEED ADJUST TRIMMER**

**17. BOOM DRUM SPEED ADJUST TRIMMER**

This trimmer adjusts the drum speed separately to the drum speed control by the control lever.

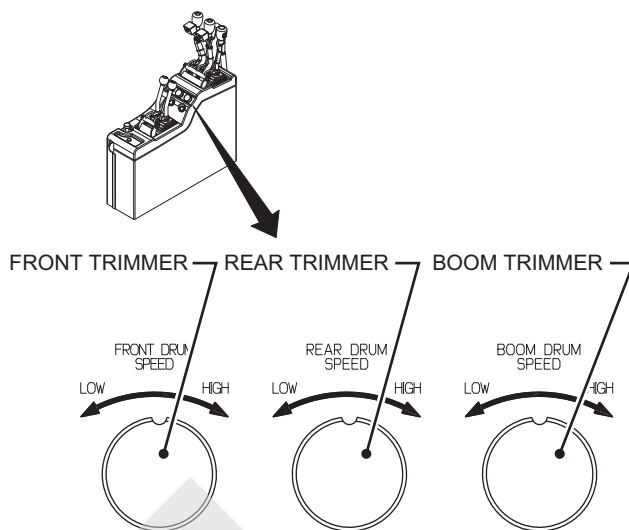
(This makes synchronous speed adjusting with other drum possible.)

**HIGH (RIGHT TURN):**

Drum speed is increased.

**LOW (LEFT TURN):**

Drum speed is decreased.



**18. THIRD DRUM SPEED ADJUST TRIMMER (OPTION)**

This trimmer adjusts the drum speed separately to the drum speed control by the control lever.

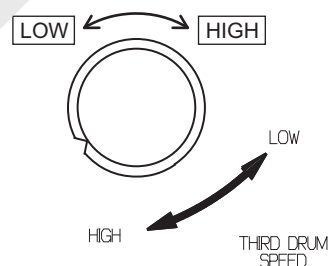
(This makes synchronous speed adjusting with other drum possible.)

**HIGH (RIGHT TURN):**

Hoist speed is increased.

**LOW (LEFT TURN):**

Hoist speed is decreased.

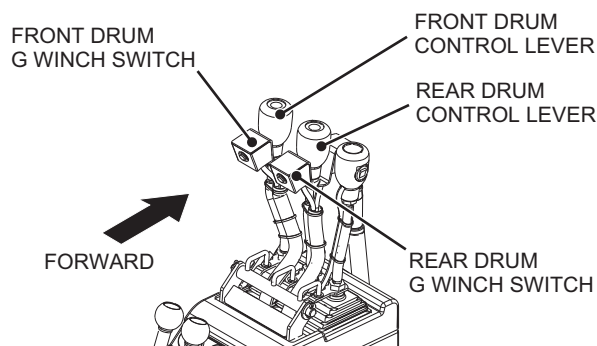


**20. FRONT DRUM G WINCH SWITCH**

**21. REAR DRUM G WINCH SWITCH**

By turning 43. G WINCH MAIN SWITCH ON and pushing this switch makes maximum speed raising or lowering of each winch possible.

(Refer to P.2-104 for control detail.)



## 2. OPERATION

### 22. INCHING SPEED SWITCH

This switch is to make each motion speed of front drum, rear drum, boom drum and propel to inching speed. (Inching operation)

**INCHING SPEED:**

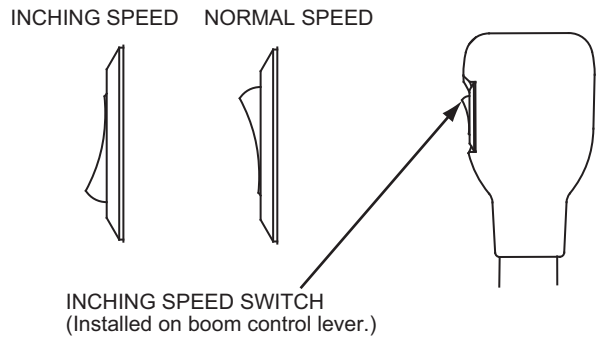
Motion speed of the front drum, rear drum, boom drum and propel becomes 1/4 of the normal speed.

**NORMAL SPEED:**

This is the normal motion speed.

Selection of swing speed is done with swing mode select icon.

(Refer to P.2-93)



### 23. KEY SWITCH

This switch is to start, stop the engine and connect its accessory circuit.

**OFF:**

Engine stop position.  
(Key insert position. Take out position.)

**ACC:**

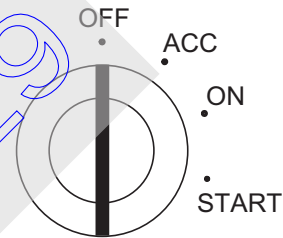
Accessory circuit connected position.

**ON:**

Engine running position.

**START:**

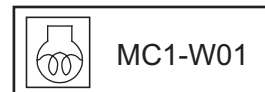
Engine start position.



**Note**

There is no glow preheat switch but control unit (ECU) automatically preheat as required.

During preheating, the monitor in the operator cab indicates [PREHEATING (MC1-W01)] icon.

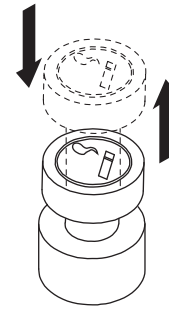


**CAUTION**

When starting the engine, make sure that the function lock lever is in lock position and each control lever is in neutral position.

**24. CIGARETTE LIGHTER**

When pushed in, lighter is held at its position and when heated red, it is popped out. Pull out for use.




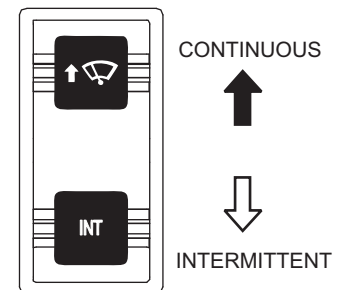
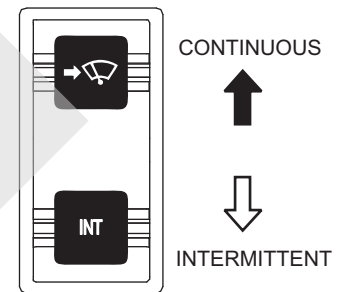
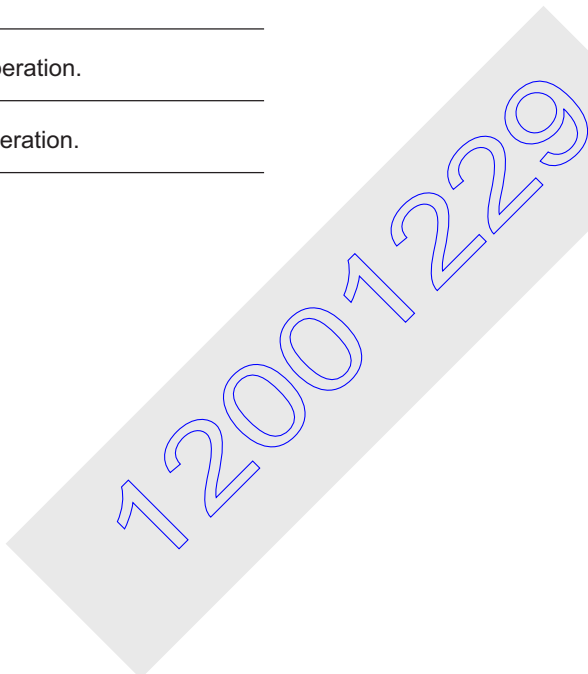
**CAUTION**

If the lighter knob does not pop up within 30 seconds after it is pushed in, pull it out.  
If keep pushed in, wiring may be damaged and may cause fire.

**25. WIPER SWITCH (FRONT WINDOW)**



**26. WIPER SWITCH (SKY LIGHT)**

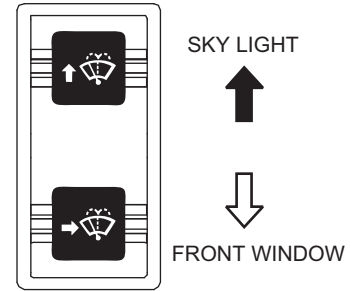
	Continuous operation.
INT	Intermittent operation.



## 2. OPERATION

### 26. WASHER (SKYLIGHT, FRONT WINDOW)

	Washer liquid comes out to sky light.
	Washer liquid comes out to front window.



#### Note

Check the fluid level periodically and refill if required.  
Refer to P.7-53 for the location of the washer tank.

### 27. FRONT DRUM FREE FALL SPEED SELECT SWITCH

### 28. REAR DRUM FREE FALL SPEED SELECT SWITCH

### 30. THIRD DRUM FREE FALL SPEED SELECT SWITCH (OPTION)

In order to make free fall of the hook or load effective while the temperature is low, free fall speed can be selected on each drum.

After 57. HYDRAULIC OIL HEAT CIRCUIT SELECTICON (OPTION) is turned to ON, and when the hyd. oil temperature becomes warm, turn the speed select switch to "speed increase". Lowering characteristics of free fall is improved.

#### SPEED INCREASE:

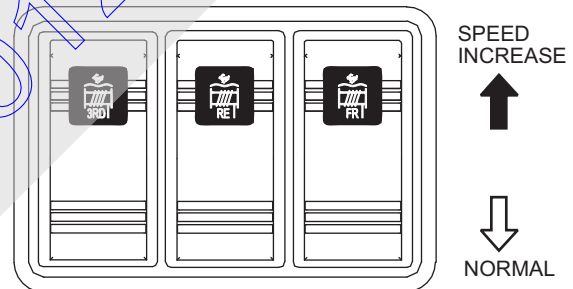
Free fall speed is increased.

This is suitable for light weight free falling work when ambient temperature is low at winter time.

#### NORMAL:

Free fall speed is normal.

This is suitable for normal load free fall work.



#### CAUTION

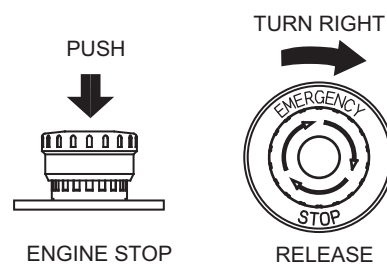
Do not use this switch when the heavy weight free fall work is being done.

Do not release the brake pedal when the hook is grounded with SPEED INCREASE.

The drum rotates automatically to lowering direction and the drum wire rope would be rough-spoiled.

**31. ENGINE EMERGENCY STOP SWITCH**

Push this switch to stop the engine in emergency.  
The switch is held at the pushed position.  
Turn the switch to right to return to the original position.

**Note**

The engine will not start when the switch is being pushed in.

**32. TAGLINE TENSION ADJUST TRIMMER (OPTION)**

This knob is to adjust the tagline rope tension.

**HIGH (RIGHT TURN):**

Tagline rope tension becomes high.

**LOW (LEFT TURN):**

Tagline rope tension becomes low.



When the tagline is not in use, set the knob to LOW side.

The drum speed adjustment cannot be done with the adjusting knob.

12001229

## 2. OPERATION

---

### 33. WORK LIGHT SWITCH

### 34. REAR WORK LIGHT SWITCH (OPTION)

**ON:** Light becomes ON.

**OFF:** Light becomes OFF.

---

#### **CAUTION**

Ensure to turn the work light switch "OFF" when the work is completed.

Failure to turn the switch off may cause battery discharged.

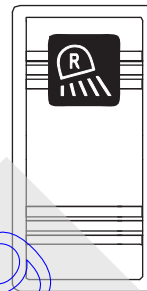
---



ON



OFF



ON



OFF

### 35. DRUM LIGHT SWITCH (OPTION)

This switch is for drum rope winding condition checking light.

**ON:** The light is ON.

**OFF:** The light is OFF.



ON



OFF

12001229

**36. AUXILIARY ACCEL SWITCH**

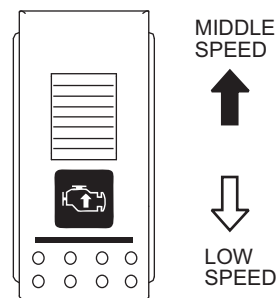
This switch is used when engine speed adjustment cannot be done due to failure of accel grip.

**MIDDLE SPEED:**

Engine speed becomes approx. 1,500 min<sup>-1</sup>.

**LOW SPEED:**

Engine speed becomes approx. 800 min<sup>-1</sup>.



**CAUTION**

Do not use the auxiliary accel switch when the accel grip is normal.

**36. EMERGENCY STOP CHECK SWITCH**

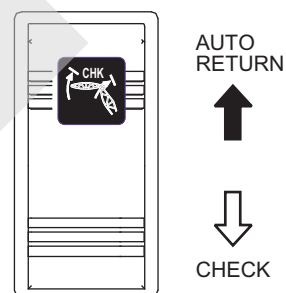
This switch can check the auto-stop function of the boom and jib.

**CHECK:**

Check of the auto-stop function can be done.



Raising or lowering of the boom, raising of the jib or lowering of the hook can not be done.

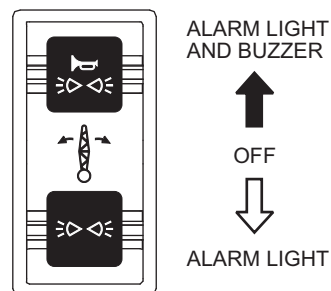
Switch returns automatically when hand is freed.



**37. SWING ALARM SELECT SWITCH**

This switch is to select swing alarm.

 (ALARM LIGHT BUZZER)	Buzzer sounds and swing flasher goes on and off.
 (ALARM)	Swing flasher goes on and off.
OFF	Nothing occurs.



## 2. OPERATION

---

### 38. AUX. ACTUATOR SELECT SWITCH

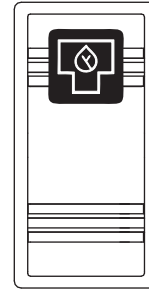
**ON:**

Reeving winch (option) control can be done.

**OFF:**

Gantry, tagline (option) control can be done.

Normally use OFF position.



ON



OFF

### 40. PROPEL SPEED SELECT SWITCH

**HIGH SPEED:** Propel speed is increased.

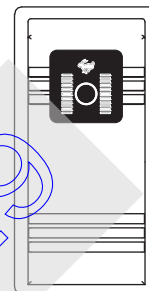
**LOW SPEED:** Propel speed is decreased.

---

**CAUTION**

Do not change the switch during propelling. It may cause deflected propel.

---



HIGH SPEED



LOW SPEED

### 41. SPARE

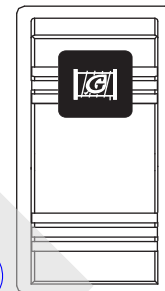
12001229



## 42. SPARE

## 43. G WINCH MAIN SWITCH

This is the main switch to use G winch.  
G winch is a function to realize maximum line speed  
with low engine speed at no load condition.  
(Refer to P.2-104 for detail of control.)

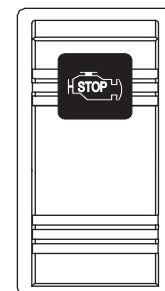


ON  
↑  
↓  
OFF

## 44. AUTO IDLE STOP SWITCH

**ON:**  
Auto idle stop function becomes effective.  
When auto idle stop conditions are filled,  
countdown is indicated on the monitor and engine  
stops at count zero.

**OFF:**  
Auto idle function becomes ineffective.  
Even when other auto idle stop conditions are filled,  
count down does not start.



ON  
↑  
↓  
OFF

## 2. OPERATION

---

### 45. G ENGINE SWITCH

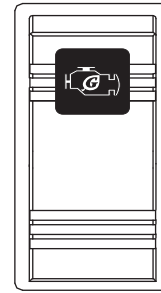
G ENGINE is a function to obtain maximum line speed under no load with maximum engine speed being restricted.

**ON:** G ENGINE

Max. engine speed becomes approx. 1,725 min<sup>-1</sup> and G ENGINE operation becomes possible. But in case of heavy load lifting, lifting speed becomes lower than power mode.

**OFF:** POWER MODE

Max. engine speed becomes approx. 2,100 min<sup>-1</sup> and lifting speed decrease is smaller than G ENGINE and is suitable for heavy load lifting. (Refer to P.2-107 for detail of control.)



ON



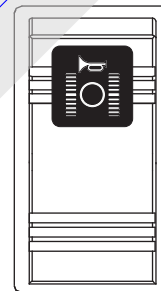
OFF

### 46. PROPEL ALARM SWITCH (OPTION)

This is to select the propel alarm.

**ON:** Buzzer voice alarm is issued.

**OFF:** Nothing occurs.



ON



OFF

12001229

**47. FRONT / REAR DRUM ROTATION****INDICATOR SWITCH  
(OPTION)**

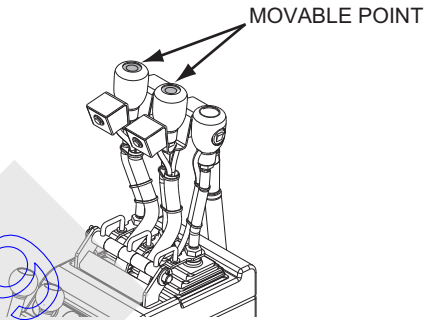
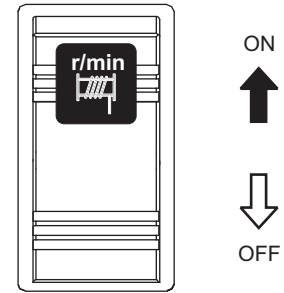
This select switch is to select the grip for sensing the drum start and rotating condition.

**ON:**

The grip top movable point moves based on drum speed.

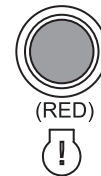
**OFF:**

Nothing occurs.

**48. ENGINE ABNORMAL DETECT LAMP**

This lamp lights up when the engine control unit (ECU) detects engine abnormal.

Normally (in case of no abnormal) it lights up when the engine stops but goes out when engine starts.



## 2. OPERATION

---

### BYPASS SWITCH

#### 50. RELEASE SWITCH MASTER KEY

This is the master key to lock releasing the load safety device, boom over-hoist and hook over-hoist for safety.

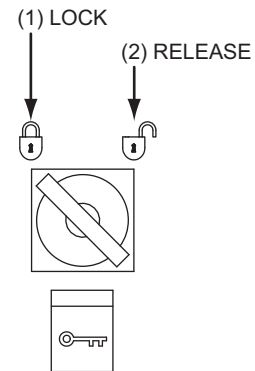
##### (1) LOCK

Release of the auto-stop functions of the load safety device, boom over-hoist and hook over-hoist can not be done.

##### (2) RELEASE

When the key is turned to release side, the auto-stop function of the load safety device, boom over-hoist and hook over-hoist become possible.

The key can be pulled out at LOCK side.



---

#### CAUTION

During work, the key must be kept and be controlled by work responsible person.

---

12001229

**51. FREE FALL LOCK SWITCH**

This is the master key to lock the free fall operation during the work or at the place where the free fall is prohibited for safety.

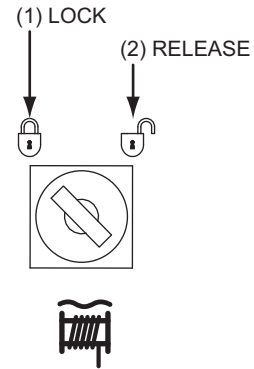
**(1) LOCK**

Free fall of the front, rear and third drum becomes impossible.

**(2) RELEASE**

When the key is turned to RELEASE side, free fall of the front, rear and third drum becomes possible.

- When the switch is in LOCK side, free fall can not be done even when the brake select switch is turned to [FREE FALL] side. The key can be pulled out at the LOCK position.



**CAUTION**

During work the key must be kept and be controlled by work responsible person.

**52. MAIN CONTROLLER 1 BYPASS SWITCH**

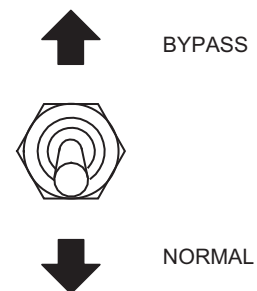
**53. MAIN CONTROLLER 2 BYPASS SWITCH**

**MAIN CONTROLLER 1 BYPASS SWITCH**

When the main controller 1 failed, swing control becomes possible.

**MAIN CONTROLLER 2 BYPASS SWITCH**

When the main controller 2 failed, each of front drum, rear drum, third drum and boom hoist control becomes possible.



**CAUTION**

Do not use these switches other than for emergency evacuation work due to failure of controller.

## 2. OPERATION

---

### ICON IN THE MONITOR

#### 54. SWING MODE SELECT ICON (FREE/HIGH SPEED)

#### 55. SWING MODE SELECT ICON (FREE/LOW SPEED)

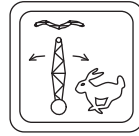
#### 56. SWING MODE SELECT ICON (BRAKE/LOW SPEED)

This icon is to select the swing control and swing speed based on work contents.

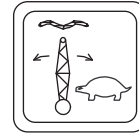
This icon is indicated on the monitor and touching it can select the swing mode.

The selected mode icon is indicated in green.

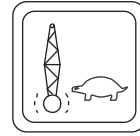
\* Push for more than 1 second.



FREE /  
HIGH SPEED



FREE /  
LOW SPEED



BRAKE /  
LOW SPEED

#### **FREE/HIGH SPEED, FREE/LOW SPEED:**

With the lever neutral mode becomes swing free.  
Select the swing speed based on the work.

#### **BRAKE/LOW SPEED:**

With the lever neutral, swing brake is engaged.  
(Hydraulic brake)

Each mode and its work content

#### **FREE/HIGH SPEED:**

Crane, lifting magnet and clamshell work.

#### **FREE/LOW SPEED:**

Long boom crane work.

#### **BRAKE/LOW SPEED:**

Long boom crane work.

At the long boom crane work, if the select icon is kept to brake/low speed side, operation is easy but hydraulic control is being applied to reduce swing stop shock and swing power is lowered and swing speed becomes slow.

#### **LOW SPEED**

At high idling about 50% of high speed.

At low idling about 70% of high speed.



Mode change must be done when the swing brake switch on the accel grip to ENGAGE and the engine speed is low.

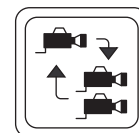
Never change the mode during swing operation.

---

**56. CAMERA SELECT ICON (OPTION)**

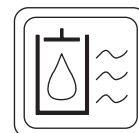
This icon is to select camera indication/non indication or to select camera when multiple cameras are indicated.

\* Push for more than 1 second.

**57. HYDRAULIC OIL HEAT CIRCUIT SELECT ICON (OPTION)**

This select icon is to make free fall of the hook or load effective by heating up the hyd. oil while the temperature is low.

\* Push for more than 1 second.

**ON:**

The device to heat up the hydraulic oil is actuated. (Even with the icon ON, when the hyd. oil temperature becomes about 50° C (122° F) the device becomes OFF and ON when cooled down to 40° C (104° F).)

Use this icon at winter time or morning time.

The icon turns to green when turned ON.

**OFF:**

The heating device does not work.

**Note**

This device heats up the hydraulic oil tank by relieving the portion of hydraulic oil.

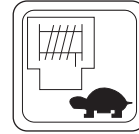
## 2. OPERATION

---

### 58. WORK MODE SELECT ICON

This select icon is to perform the work smoothly based on work content.

\* Push for more than 1 second.



#### **HIGH SPEED:**

Normal work

(Auto variable position)

#### **LOW SPEED:**

Special work

(front and rear drum are low speed fixed position)

The icon turns to green when low speed is selected.

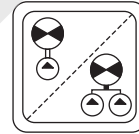
Select LOW SPEED when synchronization of front and rear drum speed is difficult for heavy load such as clamshell.

\* Push for more than 1 second.

### 60. INDEPENDENCE / CONFLUENCE ICON (OPTION)

#### **ON: CONFLUENCE MODE**

This is the suitable mode for heavy work such as bucket work or clamshell work.



#### **OFF: INDEPENDENCE MODE**

This is the mode which has less operation interference when the front drum, the rear drum and the boom hoist drum are operating.

This is suitable for fine control operation.

\* Push for more than 1 second.

### 61. MENU ICON

This icon is used to indicate select item list.

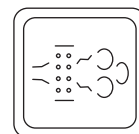


### 62. SOOT BURNING (REGENERATE) ICON

This icon is used to burn accumulated soot in the muffler filter.

(Refer to P.2-77)

\* Push for more than 1 second.

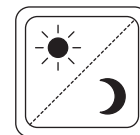




**63. DIMMER ICON**

This icon is used to change the display brightness.

\* Push for more than 1 second.

**64. BOOM / JIB LOWERING ICON**

This icon is used to lower the boom or jib to the area out of the work area.

This icon becomes indicated only when the boom, jib stops at the low limit angle.

\* Push for more than 1 second.

**65. ASSY / DISASSY ICON**

This icon is used to select assy / disassy mode or work mode.

This icon becomes indicated when the mode select becomes possible.

\* Push for more than 1 second.

**66. G ENGINE INDICATING LAMP**

This lamp lights up when G ENGINE is selected.  
(When 45. G ENGINE SWITCH is turned ON.)

**66. G WINCH INDICATING LAMP**

These lamps on both sides turn ON to yellow when 43. G WINCH MAIN SWITCH is turned ON.

When front drum side is set to G winch mode, left side changes from yellow to green.

When rear drum side is set to G winch mode, right side changes from yellow to green.

**67. AUTO IDLE STOP WORK LAMP**

This lamp lights up when engine is topped due to auto idle stop function.

Refer to P.2-86 for details of this function.



## 2. OPERATION

### 68. CONFLUENCE LAMP (OPTION)

This lamp lights up when the confluence circuit is selected.  
(When 60. independence / confluence icon is turned ON)

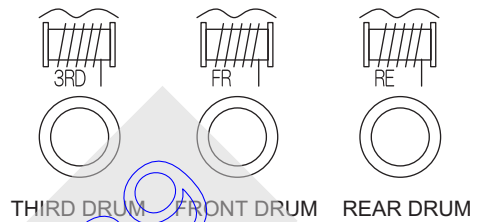


### 70. FRONT DRUM FREE FALL INDICATION LAMP

### 71. REAR DRUM FREE FALL INDICATION LAMP

### 72. THIRD DRUM FREE FALL INDICATION LAMP (OPTION)

This lamp lights up when drum becomes free fall mode.



### 73. INCHING SPEED LAMP

This lamp lights up when 22. INCHING SPEED SWITCH is turned to [Inching speed] side.



### 74. ELECTRIC OIL COOLER WORK INDICATING LAMP

This lamp lights up when the electric oil cooler is working.



### 75. BATTERY LAMP (OPTION)

This lamp indicates the level of auto-idling stop possible or not based on battery charging condition.



#### Green:

Auto-idle stop possible

#### Yellow:

Auto-idle stop possible (for short time)

#### Red:

Auto-idle stop not possible

**76. REMOTE CONTROL CONNECTION LAMP**

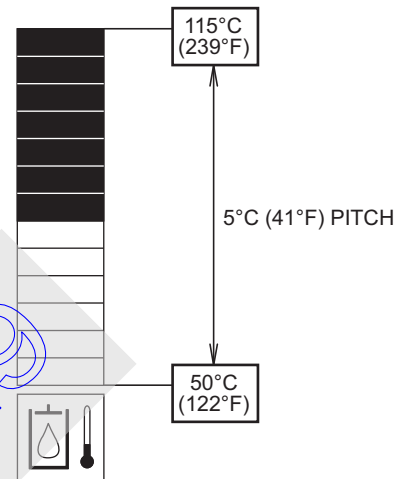
This lamp lights up when the remote control box for translifter is connected to the main machinery.



**77. HYD. OIL TEMP. GAUGE**

This indicates hydraulic oil temperature. Scale is divided by 5° C (41° F) pitch. The highest division indicates higher than 115° C (239° F) and the lowest division indicates lower than 50° C (122° F).

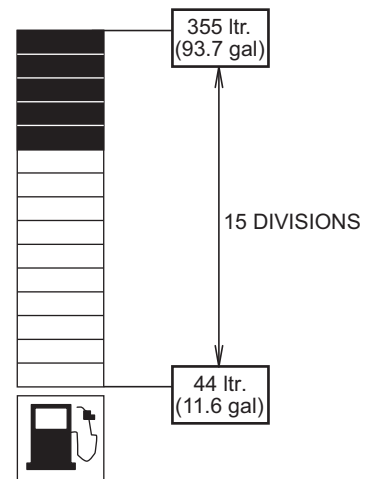
The gauge color change from white to red at higher than 80° C (176° F).



**78. FUEL GAUGE**

This indicates fuel level. Scale is divided into 15. The highest division indicates 355 ltr. (93.7 gal) and the lowest division indicates less than 44 ltr. (11.6 gal).

The gauge color changes from white to red at lowest two blocks.



## 2. OPERATION

### 80. SOOT ACCUMULATION GAUGE

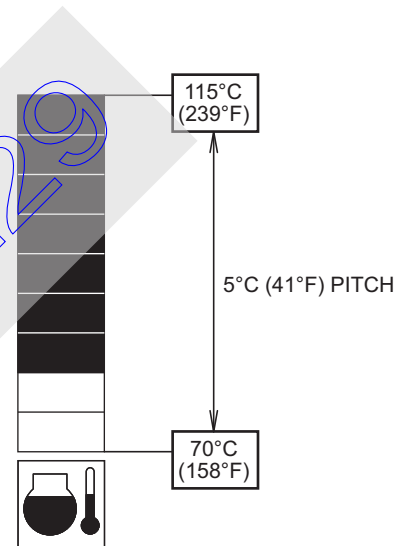
This gauge indicates guide post of soot accumulated in the diesel particulate filter. The gauge color changes from white to yellow at higher than 3 blocks, from yellow to orange at higher than 5 blocks and to red at 10 blocks. (Refer to P.2-77 for detail.)



### 81. ENGINE COOLANT TEMP. GAUGE

This indicates engine cooling water temperature. Scale is divided by 5° C (41° F) pitch. The highest division indicates higher than 115° C (239° F) and the lowest division indicates lower than 70° C (158° F).

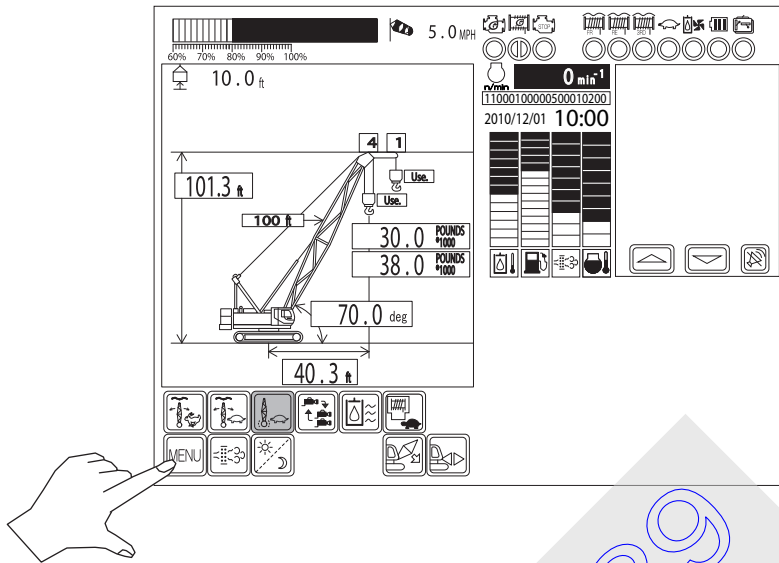
The gauge color changes from white to red at higher than 105° C (221° F).



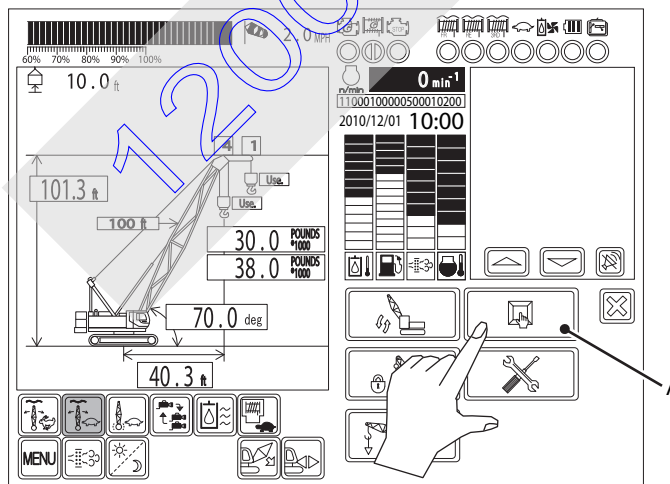
2.2.3 VARIOUS SETTING OF MONITOR

Screen setting, option setting etc are possible.

Push [MENU] icon.

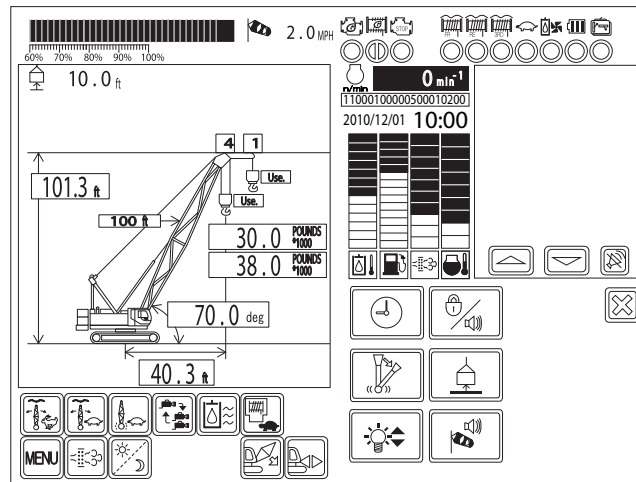


Push [A] in the indicated menu.



## 2. OPERATION

List of setting items are indicated.

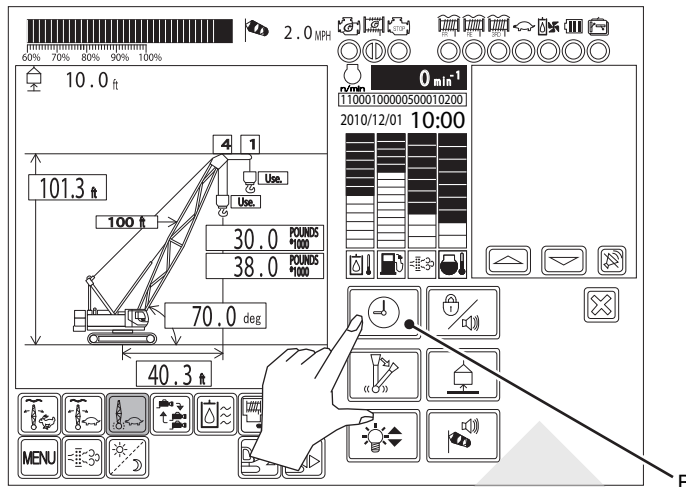


12001229

1. TIME SETTING

Time is set.

(1) Push [B] in the indicated menu.



(2) Presently set year, month, day, time and minute are indicated.

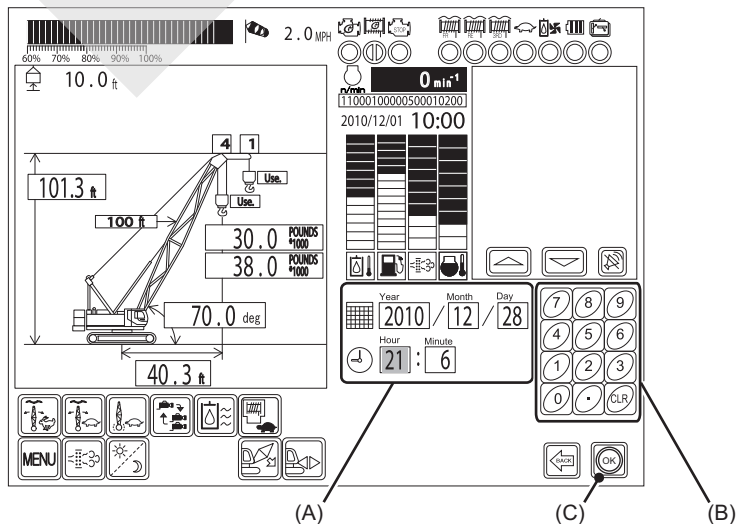
Push the required item to change.

(A) Pushed item is highlighted.

(B) Under this condition, input numbers with the right side number pad.

If there is other area to change, input numbers with the same procedure.

(C) After input, push [OK].



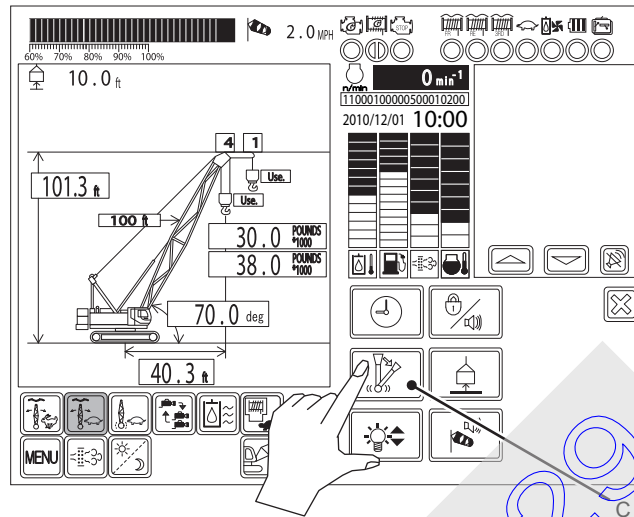
(3) This is to complete setting.

## 2. OPERATION

### 2. SETTING OF LEVER DETENT FORCE (HOLDING FORCE)

Set the mid point detent force (1st speed detent).  
Set the detent force based on requirement.

(1) Push [C] in the menu.



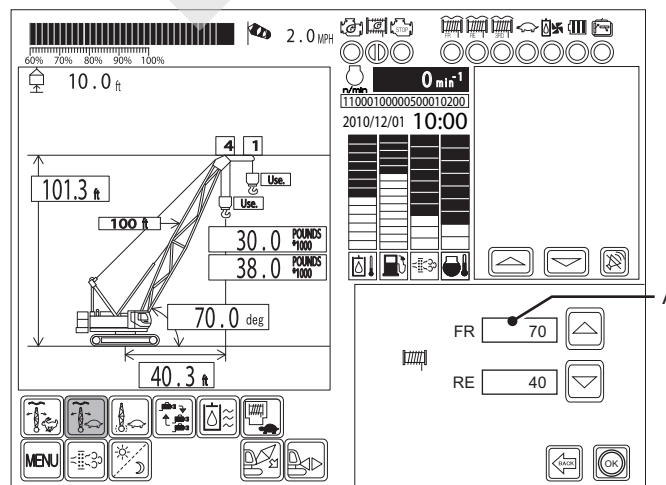
(2) Change the number with [↑] or [↓].

Number can be changed from 0 to 150.

The detent force becomes larger as number becomes higher.

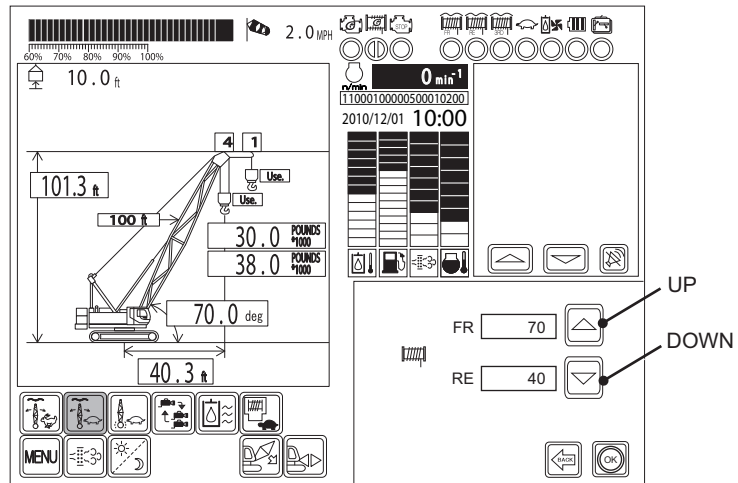
(A) Setting of front drum.

Push [A].





Change the number with [UP] or [DOWN].

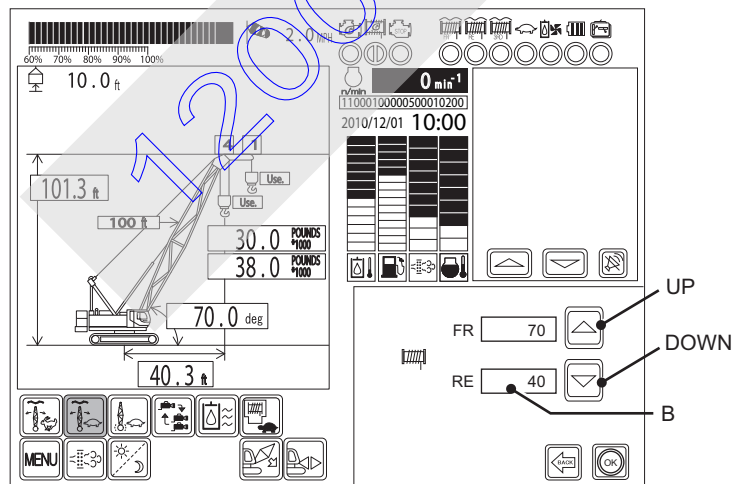


(B) Setting of rear drum.

Push [B].

Change the number with [UP] or [DOWN].

When changing number is completed, push [OK].



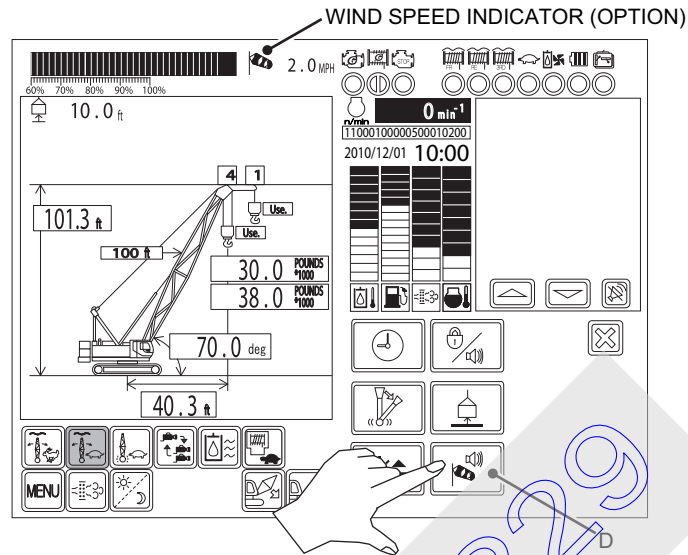
## 2. OPERATION

### 3. SETTING OF WIND SPEED WARNING

#### (OPTION)

In case of wind speed sensor is equipped, set the wind speed data to issue warning.

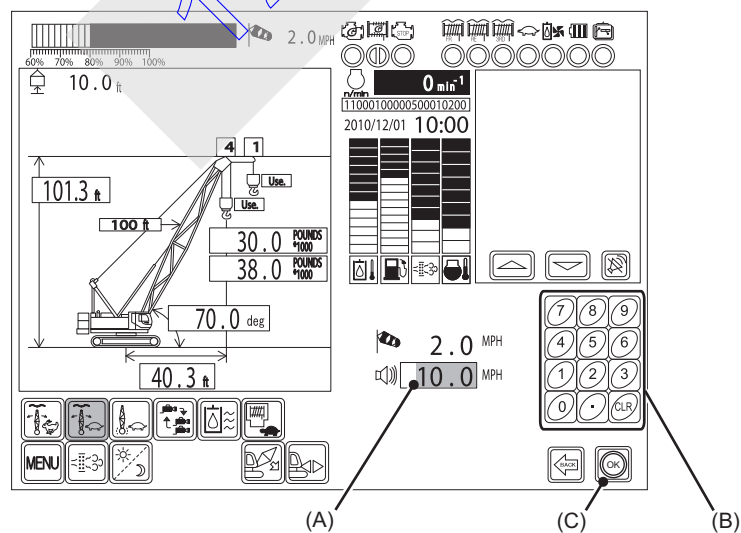
(1) Push [D] in the menu.



(A) Pushed item is highlighted.

(B) Under this condition, input numbers with the right side number pad.

(C) After input, push [OK].



(2) This is to complete setting.

When the wind speed exceeds the set value, wind speed indication turns to red color and buzzer sound is issued.

#### 4. SETTING OF DRUM ROPE LAYER

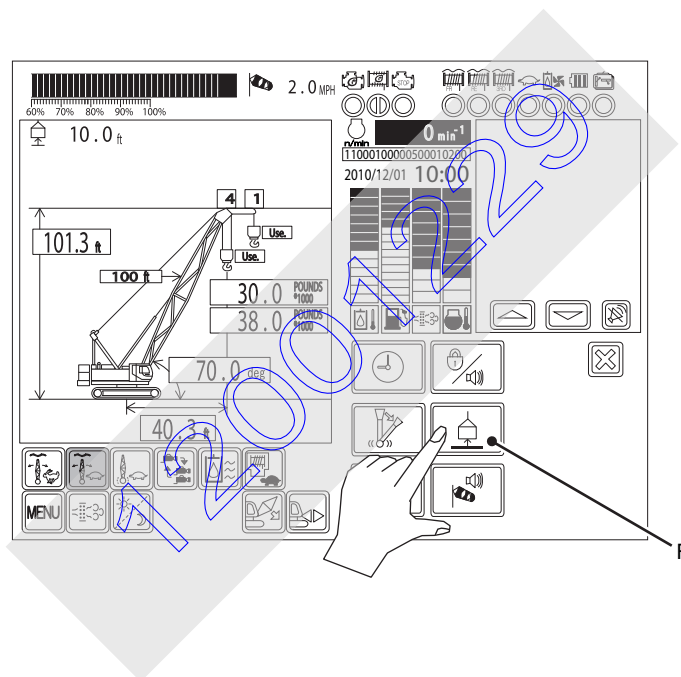
To use load height meter properly, adjustment of drum rope layer becomes required whenever the drum is turned idling for attachment assembly or disassembly.

If the adjustment is not enough, height indication would not vary or indicated value would become out of order. Ensure to adjust.

Each adjustment is required on front drum and rear drum. The same procedure is applied for both.

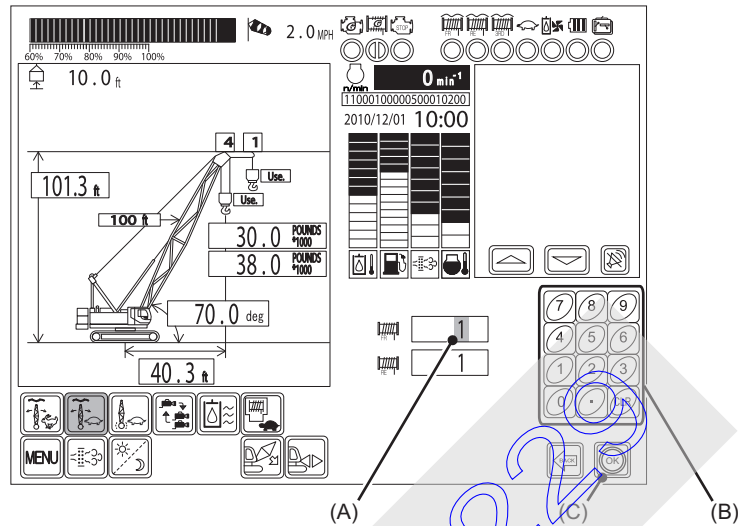
Front drum adjustment is explained here as an example.

- (1) Lift up or lower the main hook and stop the hook when the wire rope changes its layer
- (2) Push [F] in the menu.

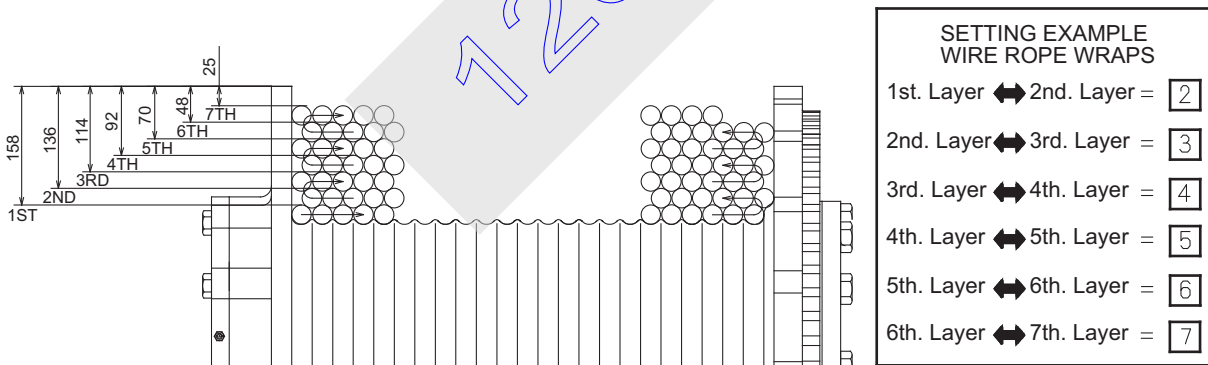


## 2. OPERATION

- (A) Pushing the number portion on FR (front drum) side makes it highlighted.
- (B) Under this condition, input numbers with the right side number pad.  
In case of border between 4th or 5th layer, for example, input [5].
- (C) After input, push [OK].



- Layer number can be checked by measuring distance from drum flange step and the wire rope. Refer to the figure below.



- (3) This is to complete the setting.

6. Check to see that the height indication varies as per setting following the handling method of the height meter.

If there is any abnormality in height indication, the sensor gap adjustment may not be correct.

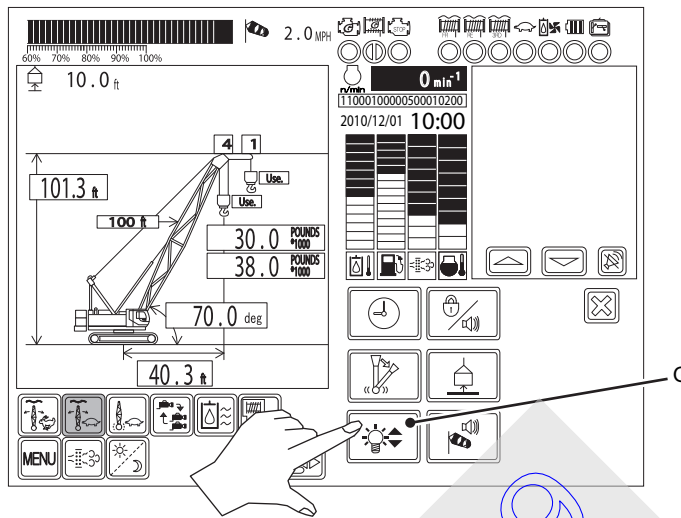
Perform the gap adjustment of the proximity sensor.

If abnormality still exists, receive the inspection by Manitowoc service shop.

5. BRIGHTNESS SETTING OF LCD

Adjust the monitor brightness.

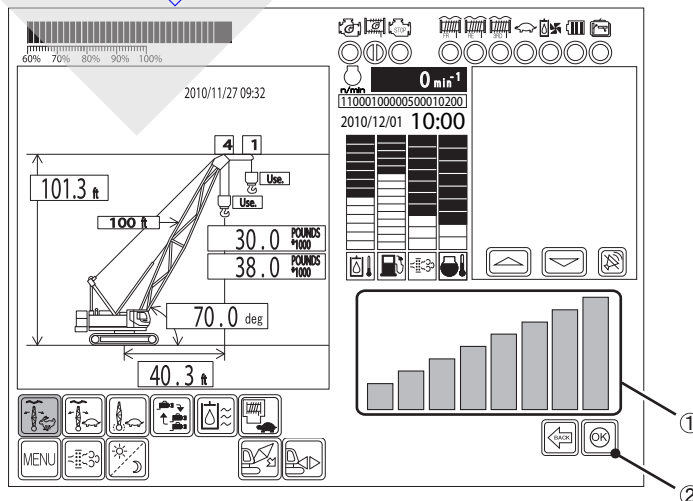
(1) Push [G] in the menu.



(2) 8 step adjustment is possible.

(A) By pushing the bar area, brightness varies. The brightness becomes higher as bar goes toward right (longer bar).

(B) When the required brightness is selected, push [OK].

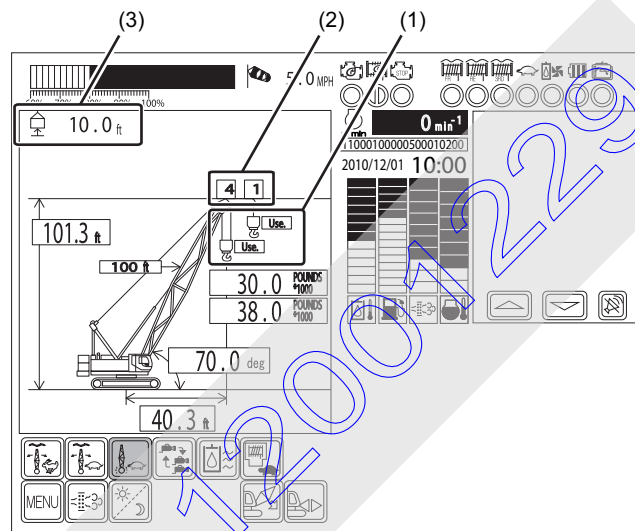


(3) This is to complete setting.

## 2. OPERATION

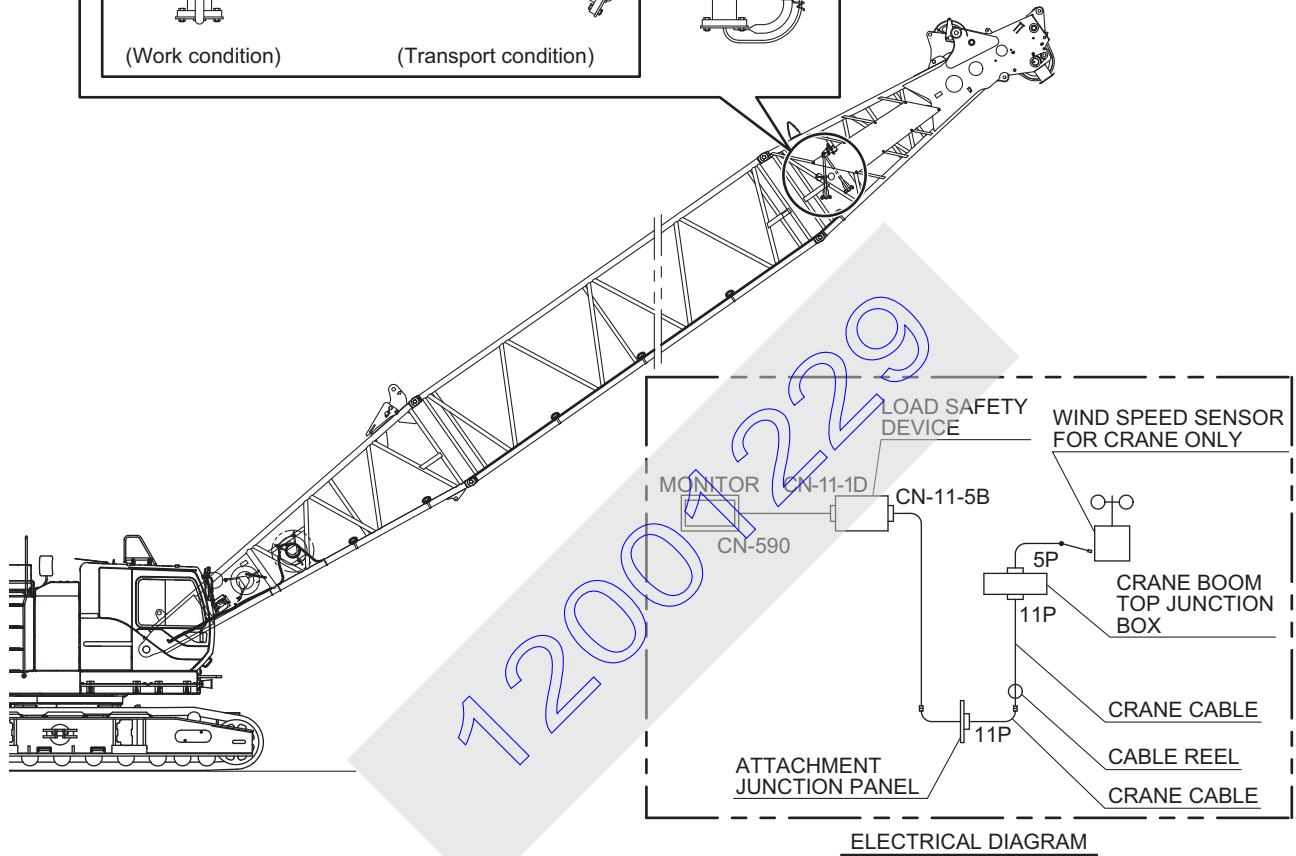
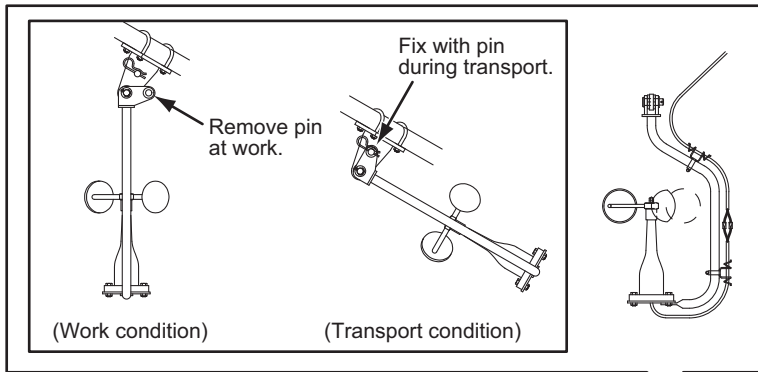
### 6. HANDLING OF THE HEIGHT METER

- (1) Select the hook to be used.  
Push the figure area of the hook to be used.  
Selected hook is indicated dark and non selected hook is indicated light.
- (2) Check to see that the indicated number of part line of the hoist rope matches with actual condition.
- (3) Move the hook to a certain height and push the height indicating area.  
Height value is reset and [0.0m] is indicated.
- (4) If height with winch raising, lowering, boom or jib raising/lowering is higher than zero rest height, plus indication appears and minus indication appears when lower.



2.2.4 WIND SPEED SENSOR INSTALLATION (OPTION)

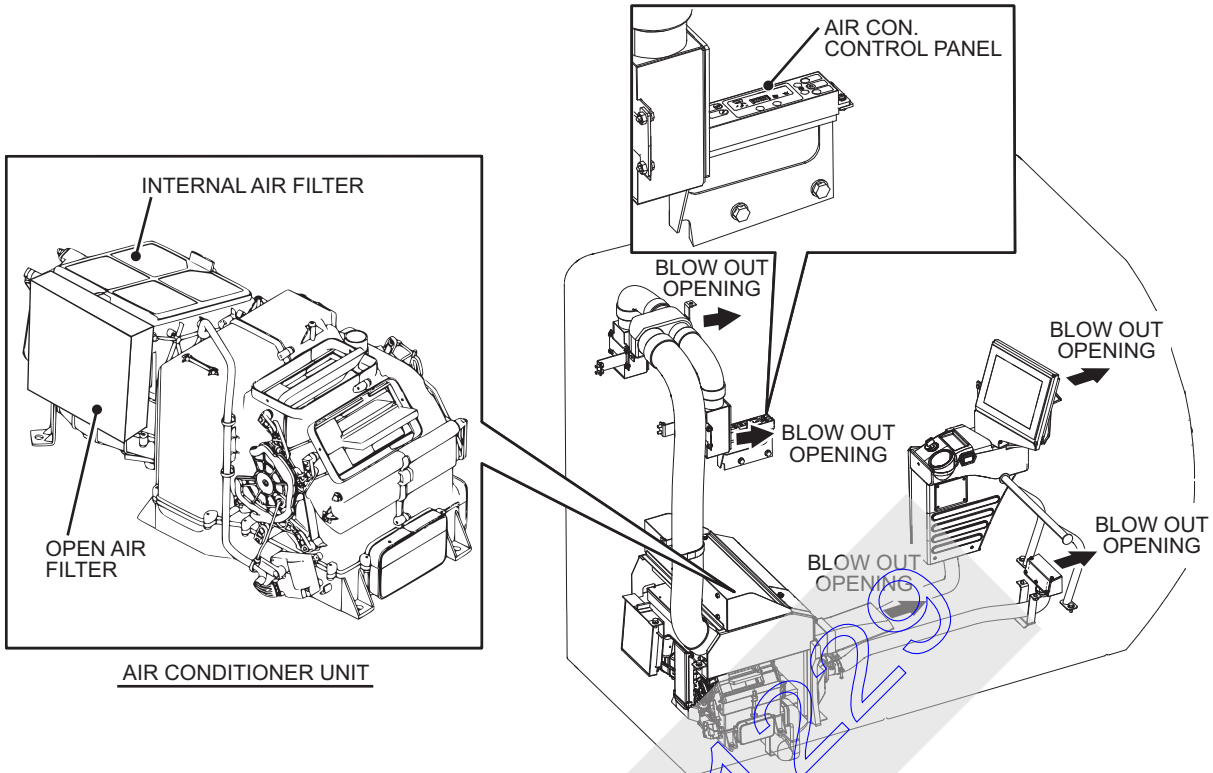
In case of crane



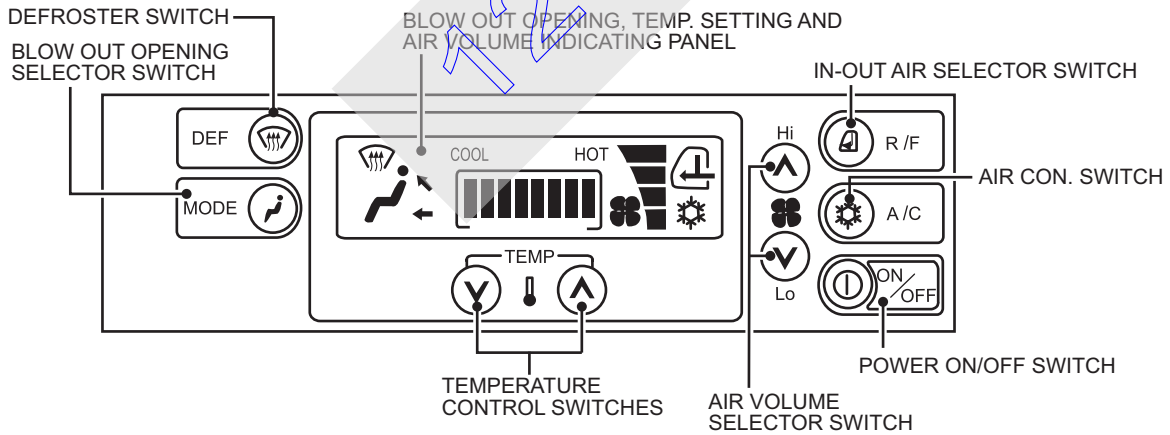
## 2. OPERATION

### 2.2.5 AIR CONDITIONER

#### 1. NAME OF THE AIR CONDITIONER PARTS

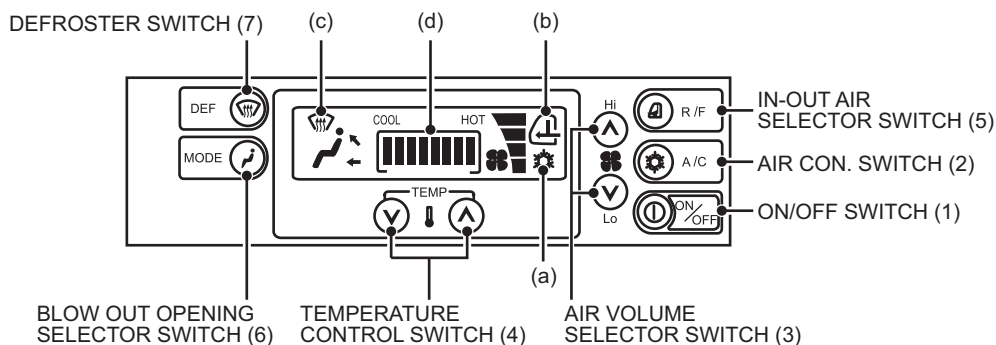


#### 2. NAME OF THE CONTROL PANEL





3. FUNCTION OF EACH CONTROL



**(1) ON/OFF SWITCH  
(POWER SWITCH)**

It turns ON or OFF the air conditioner. When this switch is pushed, air conditioner starts with previous set mode.  
When this switch is pushed at the first time, the air conditioner starts on factory set mode.

**(2) AIR CON. SWITCH  
(AIR CONDITIONER SWITCH)**

Every time when this switch is pushed, the air compressor alternates ON/OFF.  
When the air conditioner is ON, lights up on the LCD display (a).



(a) SWITCH "ON" INDICATION

**(3) AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH  
(FAN SWITCH)**

Air volume can be changed by pushing this switch and is indicated on the LCD display when air conditioner is running.

Pushing (▲) increase air volume.  
Pushing (▼) decrease air volume.

LCD DISPLAY				
AIR VOLUME	LOW	MEDIUM LOW	MEDIUM HIGH	HIGH

**(4) TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH  
(AIR CONDITIONER TEMP. SET)**

Pushing this switch changes temperature setting when the air conditioner is running.  
Set temperature (d) is indicated on LCD display.

Pushing (▲) rises temperature (blowing air temp.)  
Pushing (▼) lowers temperature (blowing air temp.)





(d) INDICATION CONTENT

## 2. OPERATION

### (5) IN-OUT AIR SELECTOR SWITCH (R/F SWITCH)

Every time when this switch is pushed, internal air / open air alternate and it is indicated (b) on LCD display.

 internal air circulation

 out air take in




### (b) INDICATION CONTENT

### (6) BLOW OUT OPENING SELECTOR SWITCH (MODE SWITCH)

Every time when this switch is pushed, blow out opening changes on the following sequence.

Vent → Bi-level → Foot → Vent

They are indicated as shown below.


LCD display			
Blow out opening	Vent	Bi level	Foot
Blow out direction	Upper rear	Upper rear and foot	Foot / *windscreen

\* Air blows from DEF too.  
Blow volume is Foot > DEF.

### (7) DEFROSTER SWITCH (DEF SWITCH)

Every time when this switch is pushed, blow out opening changes to DEF and is indicated (c) on the LCD display.

This is to defog on the inner side of the front glass or to defrost on the outer side of the front glass.

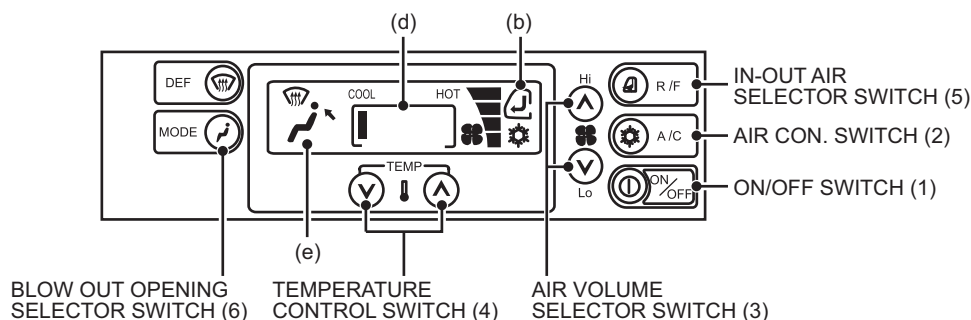
(c) LCD display	
Blow out opening	DEF
Blow out direction	windscreen and *foot

\* Air also blows from DEF.  
Blow volume is Foot < DEF.

## 4. AIR CONDITIONER CONTROL

**(1) To stop or to start air conditioner :**

Push ON/OFF SWITCH (1).

**(2) To cool :**

(A) Push AIR CON. SWITCH (2).

(B) Push the TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH (4) to indicate on the LCD display.

**(d) TEMPERATURE CONTROL INDICATION**

(C) Push the AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH (3) for required air volume setting position.

(D) Push BLOW OUT OPENING SELECTOR SWITCH (6) for VENT position (e).  
(Vent position is recommended in this case.)

**(e) VENT**

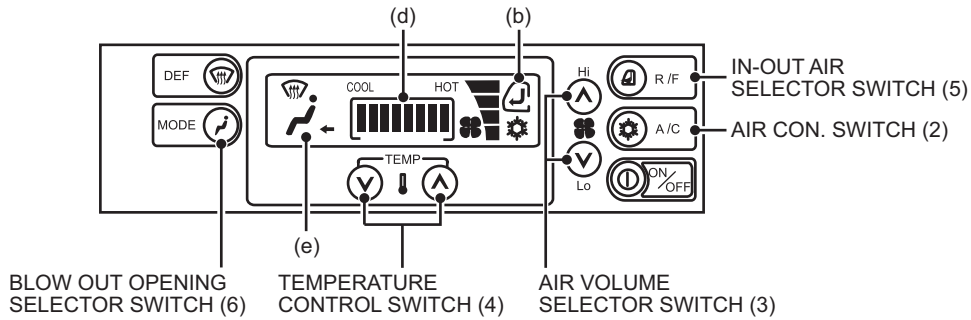
(E) By pushing IN-OUT AIR SELECTOR SWITCH (5), set the selector to internal air circulation (b) (recommended position in this case)  
If air con. cools down too low, adjust the temp. by TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH (4) or adjust the air volume by AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH (3) or both.

**(b) INTERNAL AIR CIRCULATION**

- If AIR CON. SWITCH (2) is not pushed, air con. does not cool but only air flows.
- While defrosting the windscreen do not set the temperature to max. cooling.
- Cold air may make windscreen foggy from outside and it may disturb the operator's vision.

## 2. OPERATION

### (3) To warm:



(A) Push the TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH (4) to indicate on the LCD display.



#### (d) TEMPERATURE CONTROL. INDICATION

(B) Push the AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH (3) for required air volume.

(C) Push BLOW OUT OPENING SELECTOR SWITCH (6) for FOOT position (e).  
(Foot position is recommended in this case.)



(e) FOOT

(D) By pushing IN-OUT AIR SELECTOR SWITCH (5), set the selector to internal air circulation (b).  
(Recommended position in this case.)

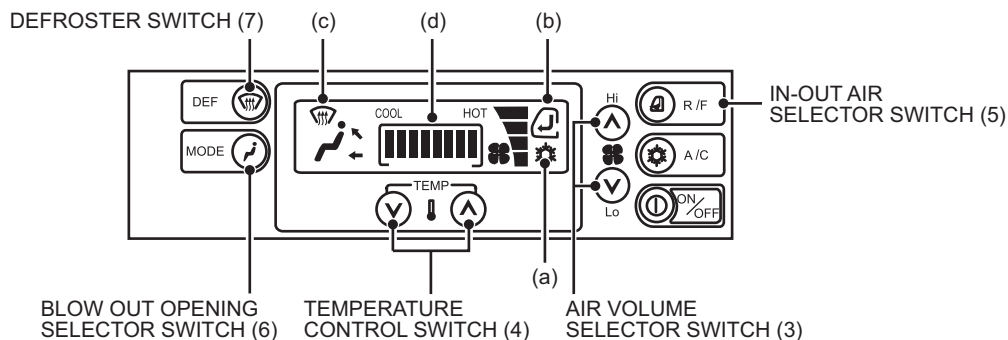


#### (b) INTERNAL AIR CIRCULATION

If air con. warms up too high, adjust the temp. by TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH (4) or adjust the air volume by AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH (3) or both.

- If AIR CON. SWITCH (2) is pushed, air con. operates on dry air warming
- If blow out selector switch is on Foot position, air blows out from defroster too.

**(4) To defrost on the windscreen:**



(A) Push the TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH (4) to indicate (d) on the LCD display.



**(d) TEMPERATURE CONTROL. INDICATION**

(B) Push the AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH (3) for HIGH air volume.

(C) Push DEFROSTER SWITCH (7) to change the blow out opening to DEF position (c).



**(c) DEF**

(D) By pushing IN-OUT AIR SELECTOR SWITCH (5), set the selector to internal air circulation (b).

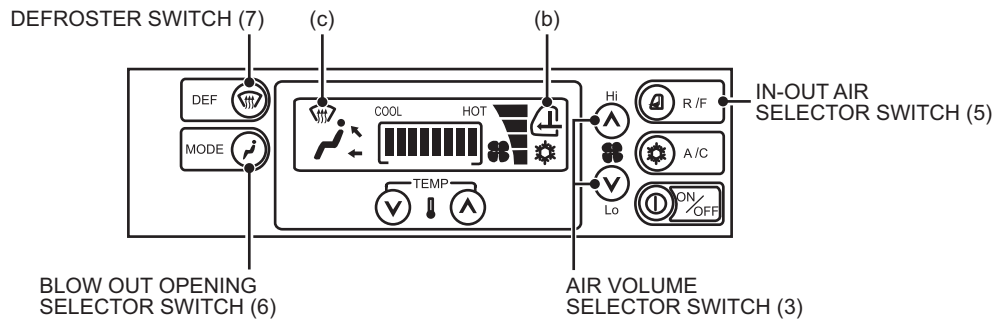


**(b) INTERNAL AIR CIRCULATION**

- By pushing BLOW OUT OPENING SELECTOR SWITCH (6), blow out opening returns to the set opening before DEFROSTER SWITCH (7) is pushed.
- If blow out opening is set to DEF, air blows to foot too.

## 2. OPERATION

### (5) To defog on the windscreen:



(A) Push the AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH (3) for required air volume.

(B) Push the DEFROSTER SWITCH (7) to change the blow out opening to DEF position (c).

(C) By pushing IN-OUT AIR SELECTOR SWITCH (5), set the selector to out air take in.

- If quick defogging is required, set the air volume to HIGH by AIR VOLUME SELECTOR SWITCH (3).
- By pushing BLOW OUT OPENING SELECTOR SWITCH (6), blow out opening returns to the set opening before DEFROSTER SWITCH (7) is pushed.



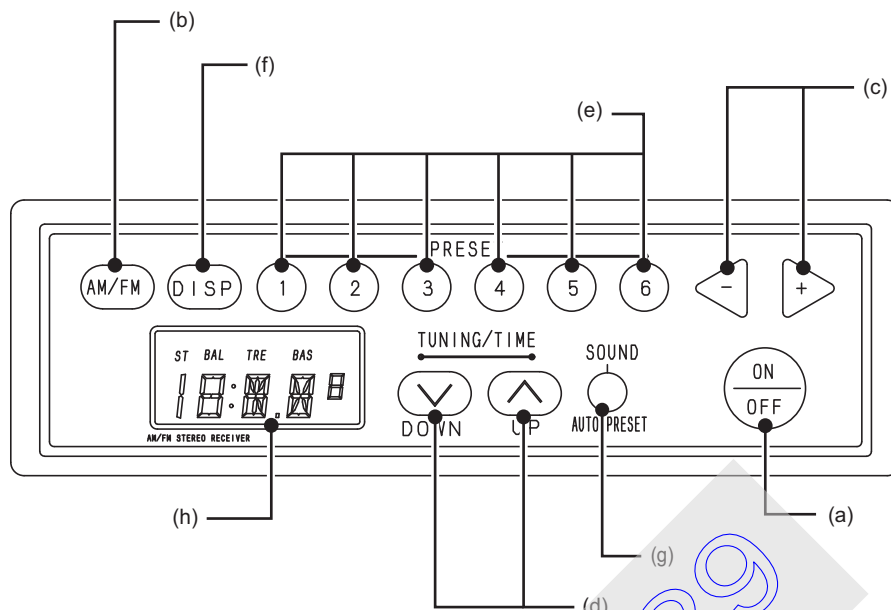
(c) DEF



(b) OUT AIR TAKE IN

2.2.6 AM/FM RADIO

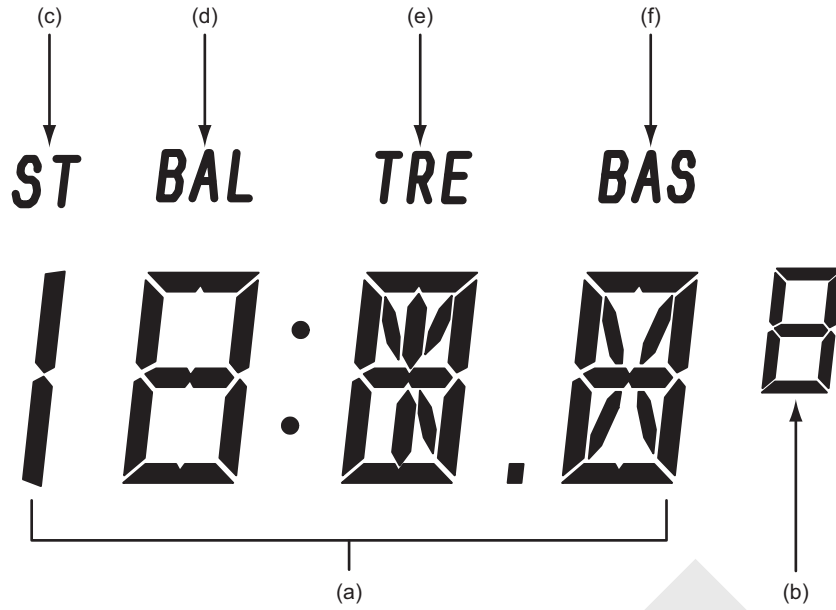
SWITCH NAME



CODE		NAME	FUNCTION
(a)		Power button	Turn radio ON/OFF.
(b)		AM/FM select button	Select band (AM/FM1/FM2)
(c)		Volume button	Control volume.
(d)		Tuning, Each control button	Select frequency, control step for sound control, adjust time.
(e)		Preset button	Call preset frequency and register.
(f)		Display select button (frequency/time)	Select display (frequency/clock)
(g)		Sound control (balance/bass/treble) button	Control sound (balance/bass/treble)
(h)		Display (frequency/time)	Display frequency, clock.

## 2. OPERATION

### LCD DISPLAY



CODE	NAME	FUNCTION
(a)	Segment (large)	To display band name, frequency, time, word/number.
(b)	Segment (small)	To display frequency for FM 50 kHz step system.
(c)	ST picto	Lights up when stereo is received at FM1/FM2.
(d)	BAL picto	Lights up when balance is controlled at sound control.
(e)	TRE picto	Lights up when treble is controlled at sound control.
(f)	BAS picto	Lights up when bass is controlled at sound control.

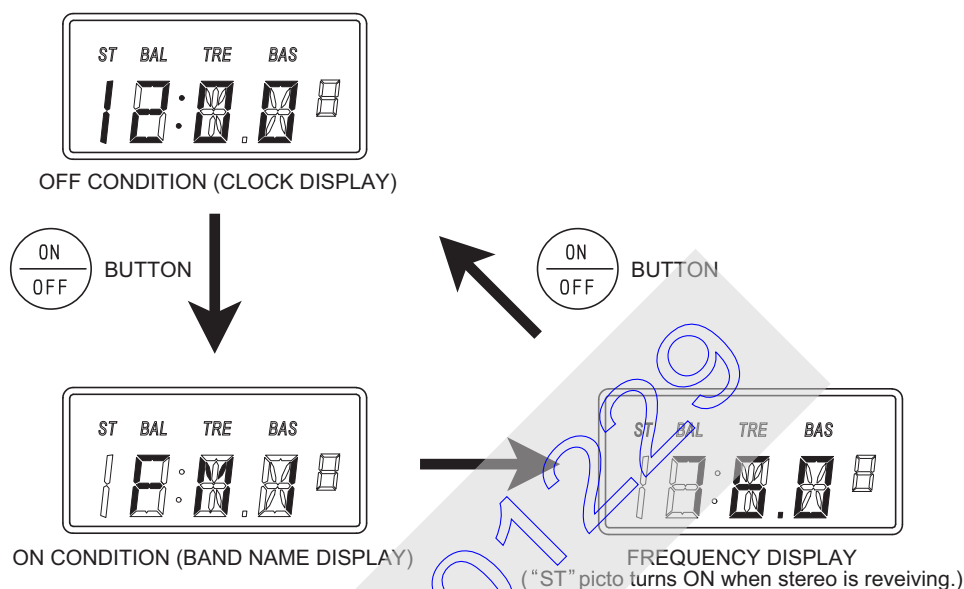


**FUNCTION AND DISPLAY**

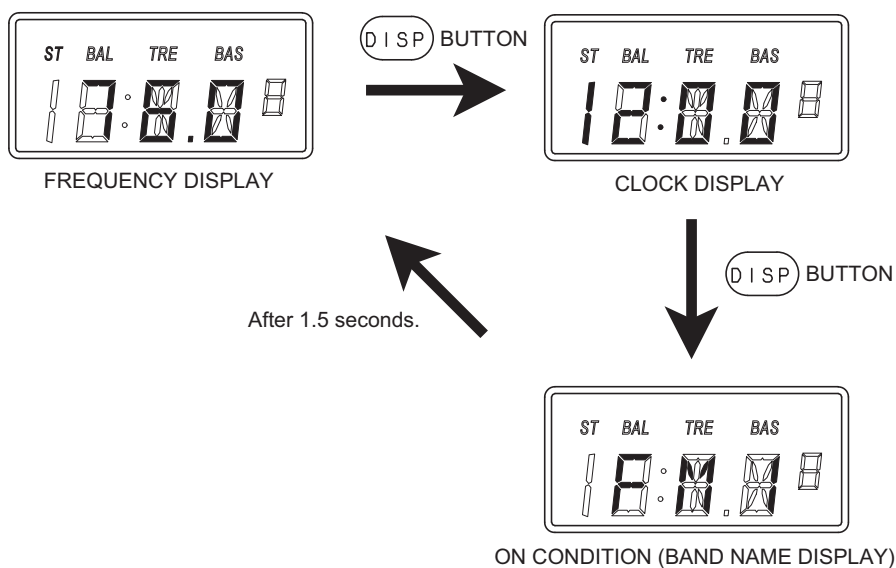
Function and LCD display of this machine is explained here.

**1. Normal condition**

From OFF condition, by pressing "power button" the radio turns ON and receives presently selected frequency.



Under this condition, by pressing "Display select" button (frequency/clock), frequency display and clock display alternates.  
 (When display is changed from Clock display → frequency display, band name is displayed for 1.5 seconds and then changed to frequency displayed.)



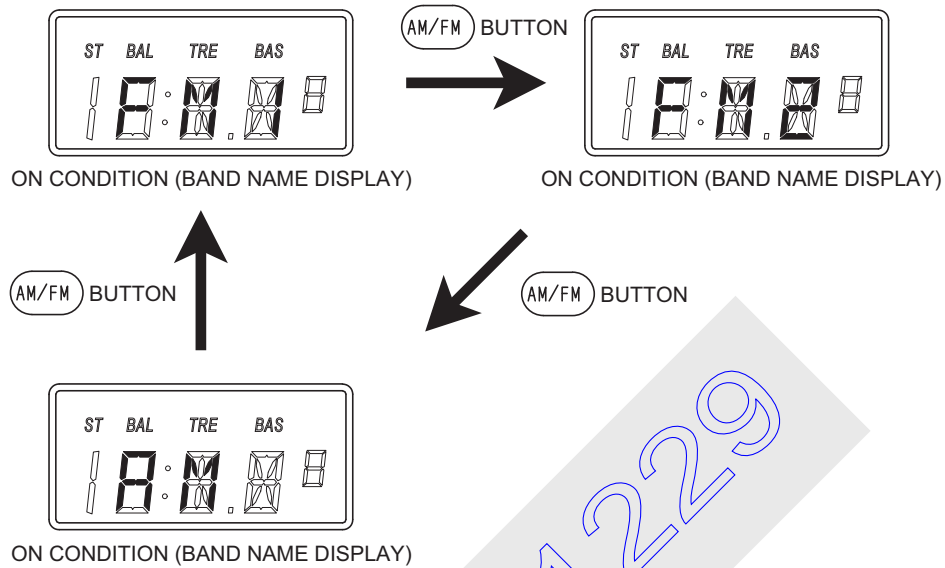
## 2. OPERATION

### 2. Band select

From normal condition by pressing "AM/FM select", button, band is changed.

After band is selected, radio receives the last selected frequency of the band.

Selecting sequence is FM1 → FM2 → AM → FM1.



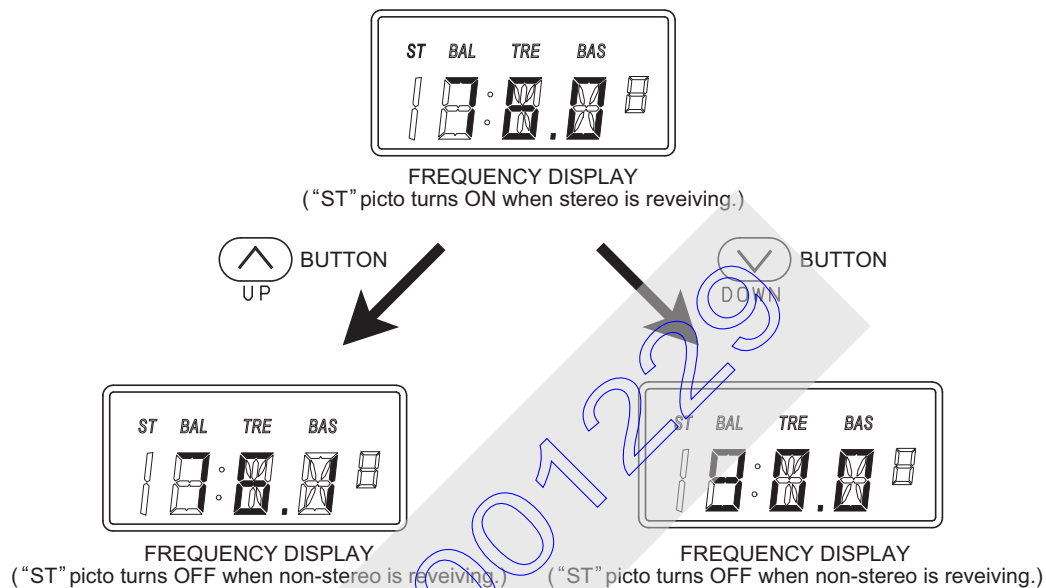
3. Frequency control (1 Step Up or 1 Step Down)

From normal condition, by pressing UP side of "Tuning, various control" button, frequency goes 1 step up.

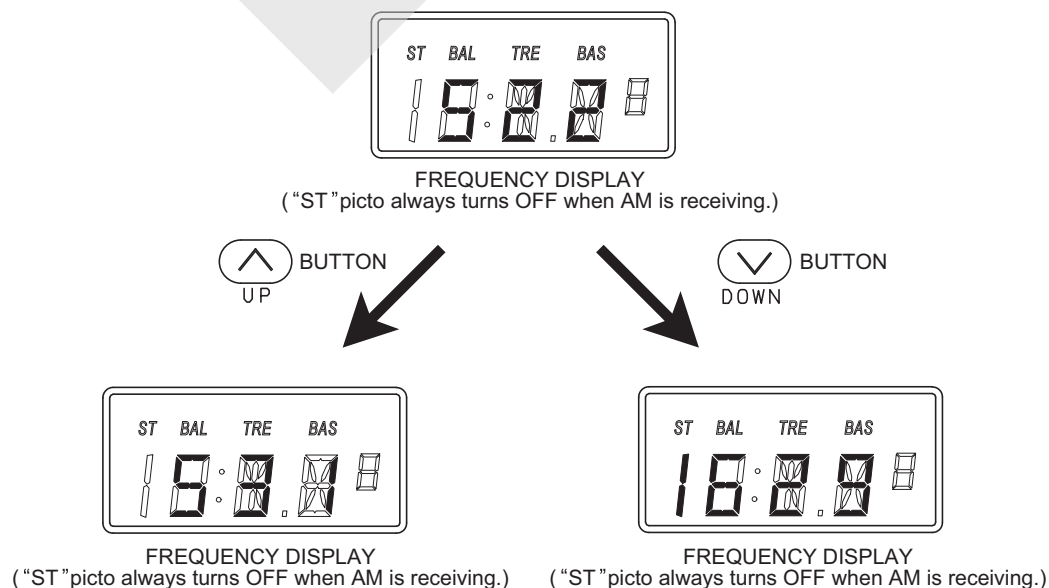
By pressing DOWN side, frequency goes 1 step down.

(At FM receiving, frequency is controlled by 0.1 MHz per 1 step and at AM receiving, by 9 kHz per 1 step.)

When selected band is FM1, FM2.



When selected band is AM.



## 2. OPERATION

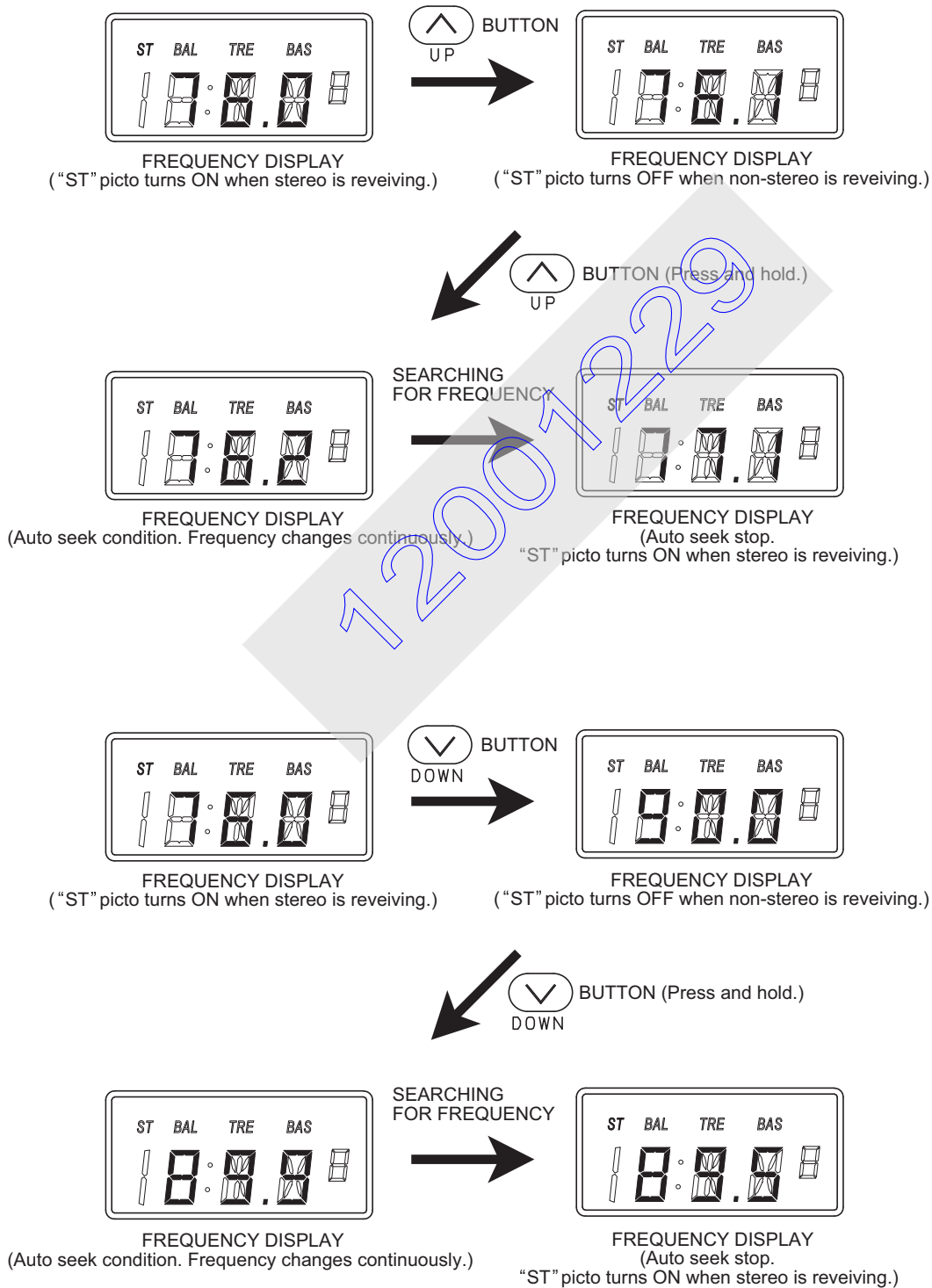
### 4. Frequency control (auto seek)

From normal condition, by press-holding UP side of "Tuning various control" button, frequency goes up by 1 step for continuously.

By press-holding DOWN side, frequency goes down by 1 step for continuously.

By searching for good receiving frequency, auto seeking function stops and radio turns to receiving condition.

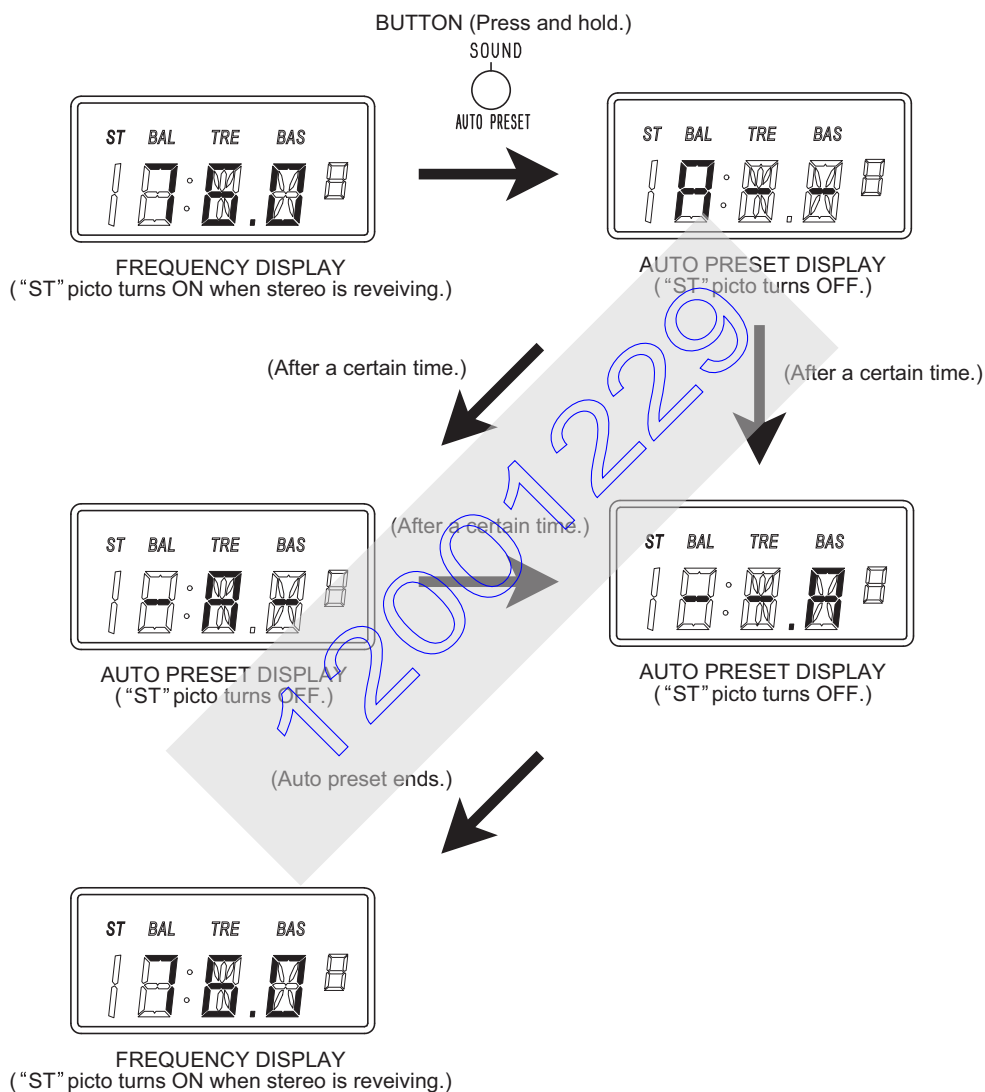
#### Example when selected band is FM1.



5. Frequency control (auto preset)

From normal condition, by press-holding "Sound control button" good receiving frequency is automatically detected and memorized to the preset memory 1 to 6 (auto-preset function). During auto preset, auto preset display as shown below is displayed ("A" display changes a certain interval) and this display ends with 2 beep sounds and preset 1 memorized frequency is received.

Example when selected band is FM1.

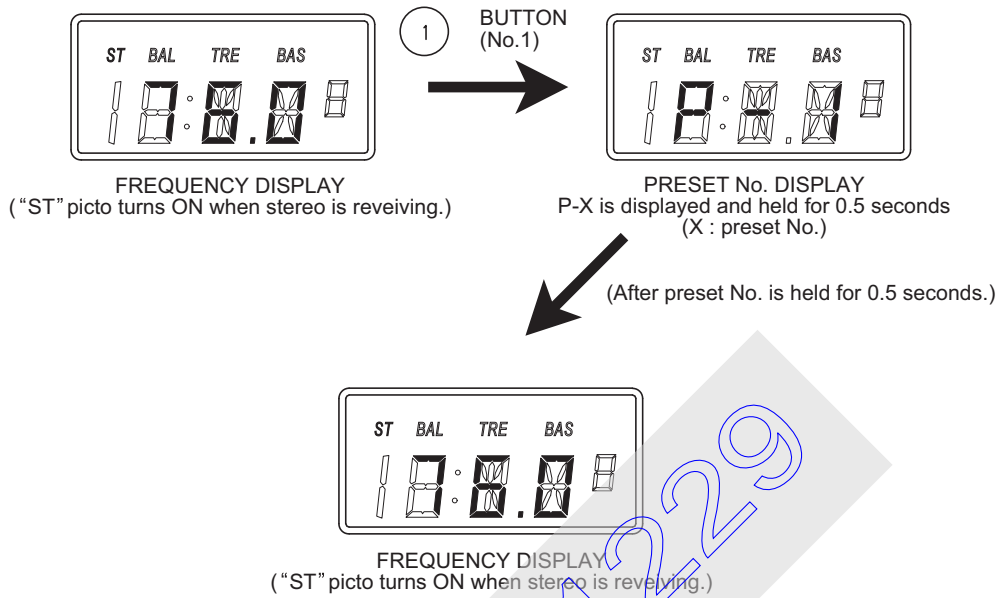


## 2. OPERATION

### 6. Preset call

From normal condition, by pressing "Preset" button (1 to 6), memorized frequency on preset No. is called and received.

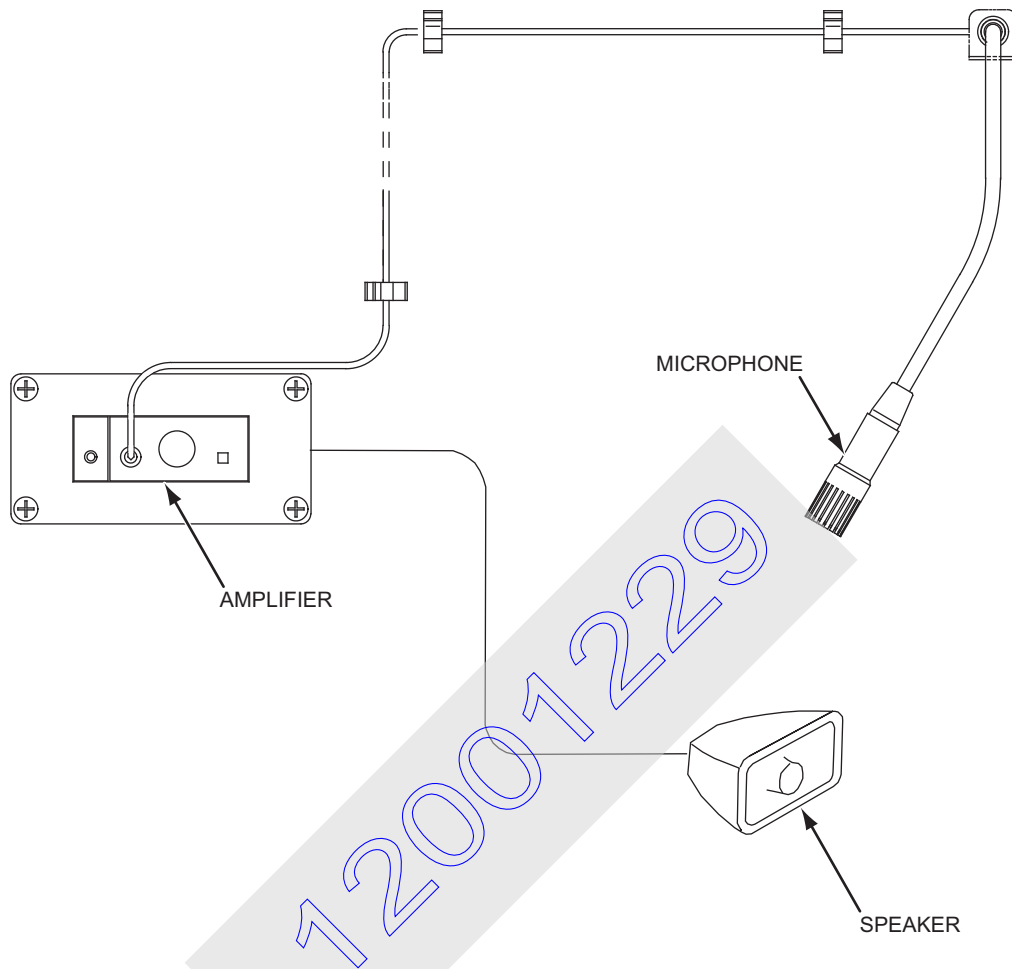
**Example when selected band is FM1 (76.0 MHz is pre-memorized in preset No.1).**



2.2.7 1WAY CALL (TRANSMITTER)

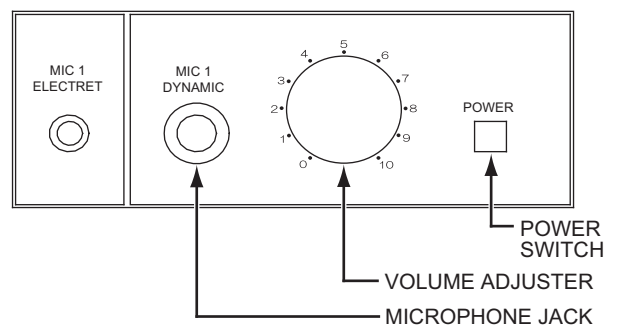
1. CONFIGURATION OF 1WAY CALL

The 1way call comprises the amplifier, microphone, and external speaker.



2. OPERATION INSTRUCTION

- (1) Set the power switch to the "ON" status.
- (2) The operator's voice can be transmitted through the outside speaker by talking to the microphone.
- (3) The volume of the speaker can be adjusted with the volume adjuster.

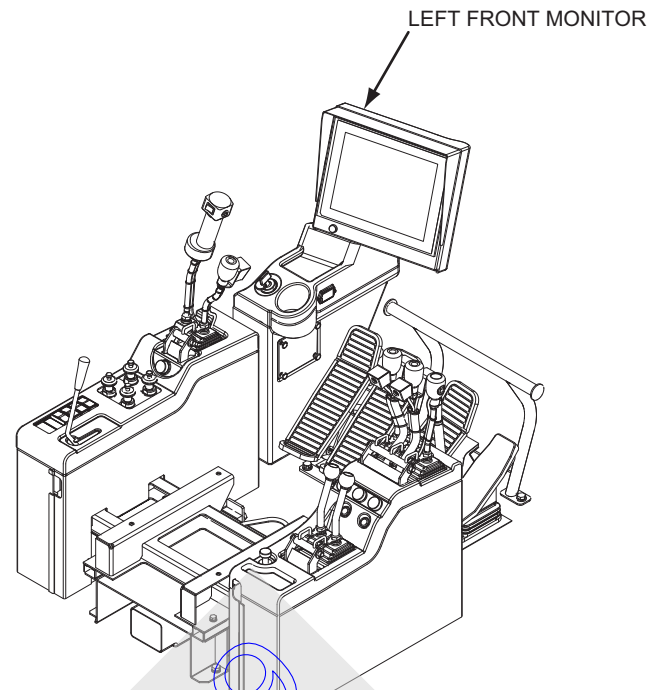


## 2. OPERATION

---

### 2.2.8 CAMERA MONITOR (OPTION)

It can check each drum wire rope winding condition or rear area of main machinery in the operator's cab.



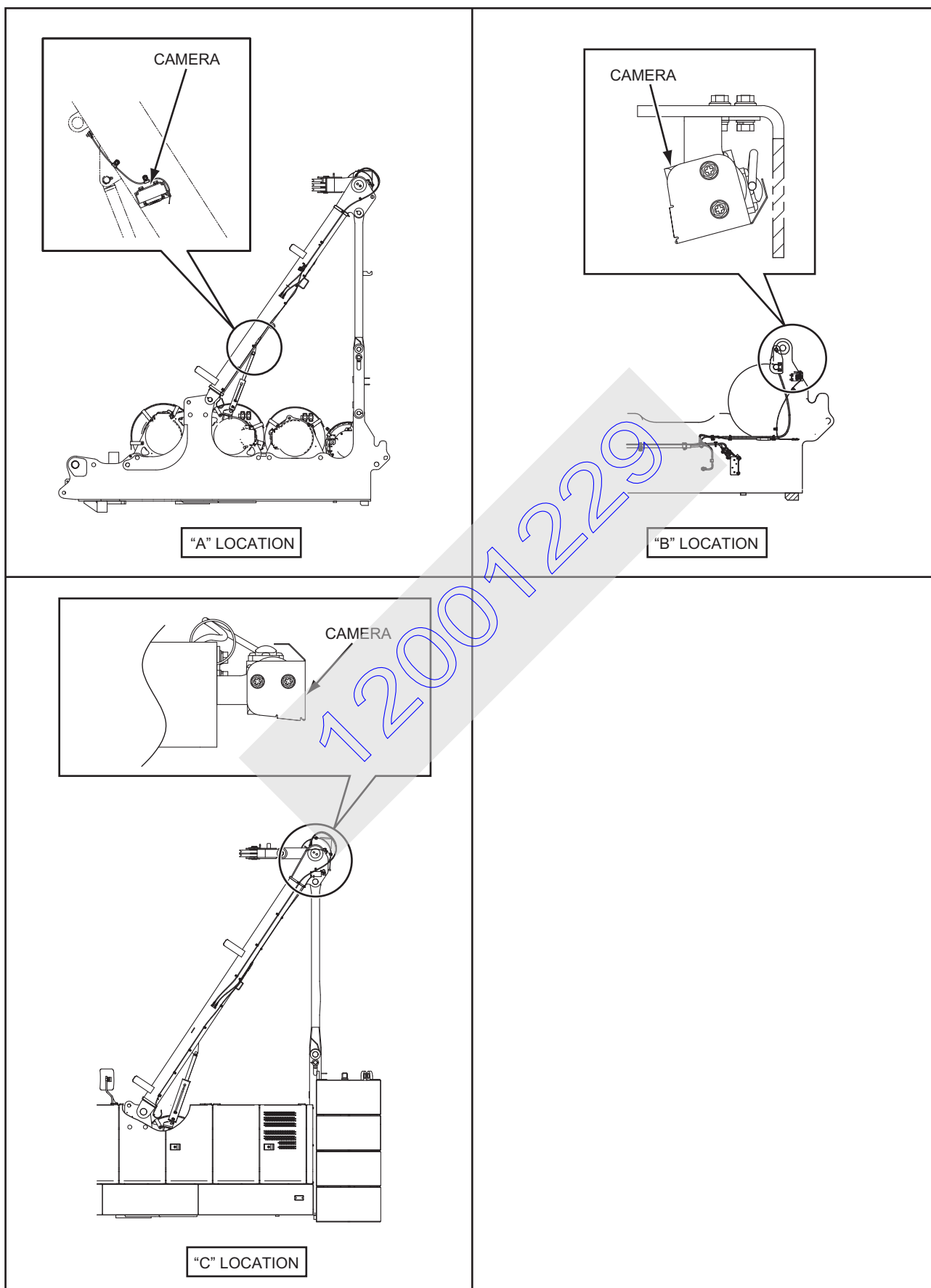
The camera monitor can check the following locations:

- A Front drum  
Rear drum  
Third drum (Option)
- B Boom hoist drum
- C Rear of main machinery

12001229



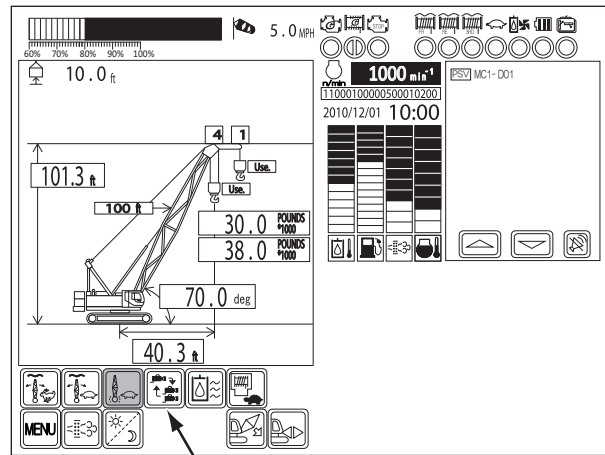
By camera monitor, individually equipped location A, B, C can be viewed by selecting the screen.



## 2. OPERATION

### Image indicating of monitor camera

Push the camera select icon in the monitor. Camera image is indicated on right lower area of the monitor.



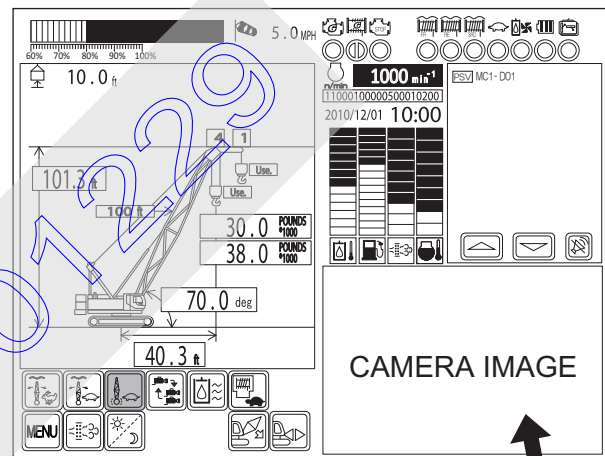
CAMERA SELECT ICON

### Selection of camera

Maximum 4 cameras can be connected.

When more than 2 cameras are connected, camera can be selected in order by touching the camera image indicating area.

Select the required camera.

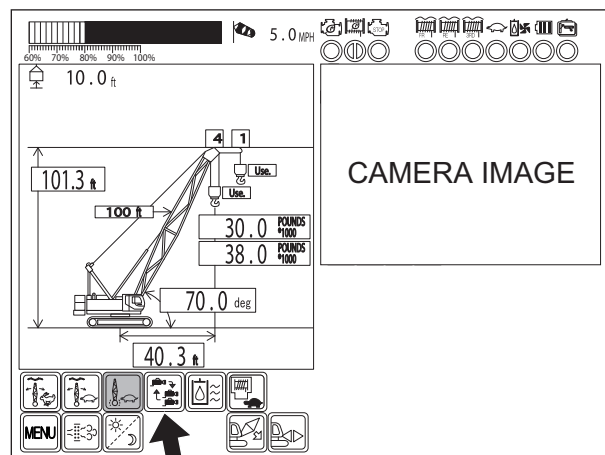


TOUCH

### Change of camera indicating position

When the machine inclination (option) or swing angle are indicated on right lower area of monitor, camera image can be indicated on right upper of the monitor.

When the camera image is indicated on right lower, pushing the camera select icon can change the image indicating position to right upper.



TOUCH

## 2.3 CRANE OPERATION

### 2.3.1 ADJUSTING THE OPERATOR'S SEAT

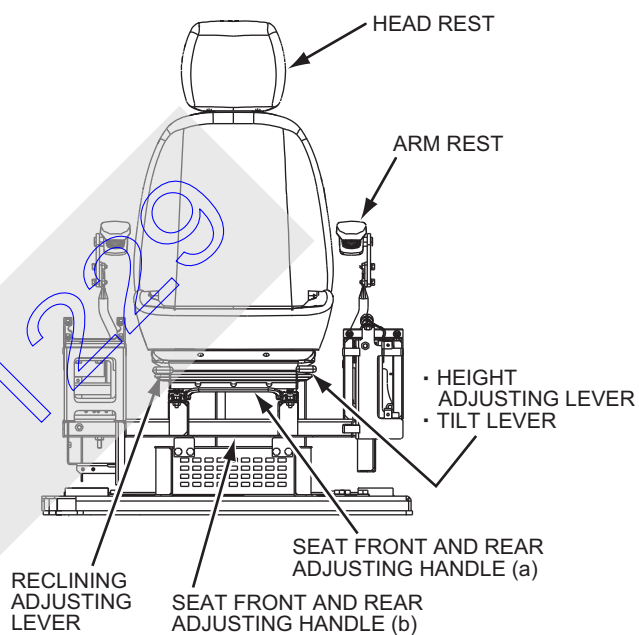
#### **CAUTION**

Adjust the operator seat to the position where the brake pedal can be firmly depressed.

During the seat adjustment, stop the engine and take care no to move the control lever. If the control lever moves, return it to neutral position.

#### 1. HEIGHT ADJUST/TILT LEVER

- (1) When the lever is pulled up, rear portion of the seat tilts up or down.  
(Tilt on 5 steps)
- (2) When the lever is pushed down, front area of seat tilt up or down.  
(Tilt on 5 steps)
- (3) Seat height adjustment can be done by tilting of seat front and rear alternately.



## 2. OPERATION

### 2. RECLINING ADJUSTING LEVER

Adjust the seat back to the required angle by pulling up the lever.

After adjusting, release the lever to fix.

### 3. SEAT FRONT AND REAR ADJUSTING HANDLE

#### (a)

Lift the handle (a) up and move the seat by sliding back and forth.

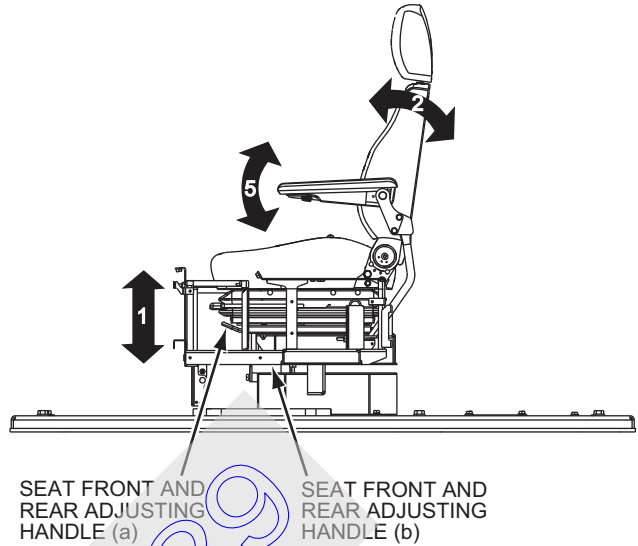
After adjusting to the required position, release the handle and make sure that the seat is firmly locked. (Adjusting range : 160 mm (6-5/16 inch))

### 4. SEAT FRONT AND REAR ADJUSTING HANDLE

#### (b)

Lift the handle (b) up and move the whole of seat and control stand sliding back and forth.

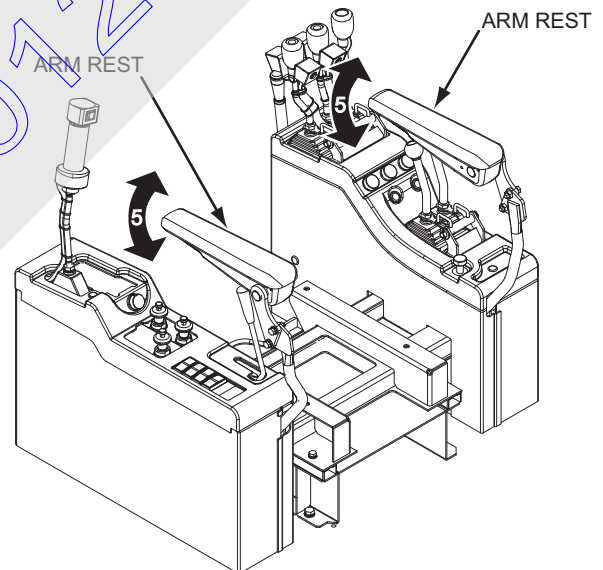
(Adjusting range : 60 mm (2-3/8 inch))



### 5. ARM REST

The arm rest can be lifted up toward rear upper.

In addition, by turning the lower control dial by hand, arm rest angle at normal position can be fine-adjusted up or down.



2.3.2 GETTING ON OR OFF TO THE OPERATOR SEAT

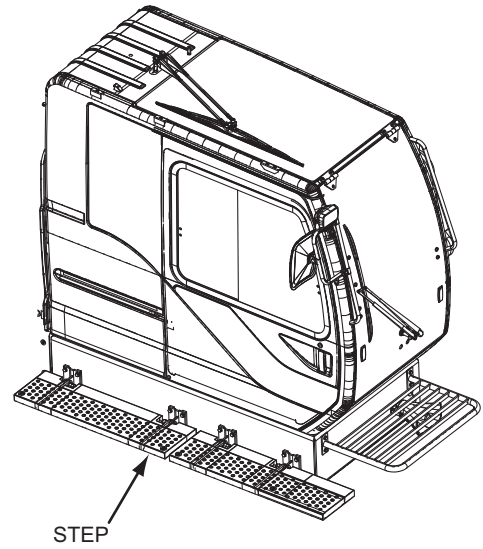
Use the under cab deck step to get on or off the operator seat.

---

**CAUTION**

Take extra care not to have your hand caught during opening or closing the operator's cab door.  
Take extra care not fall off from the step during getting on or off the operator's cab door.

---



12001229

## 2. OPERATION

### 2.3.3 STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE

#### 1. STARTING THE ENGINE

Before starting the engine, set the control levers and switches as follows :

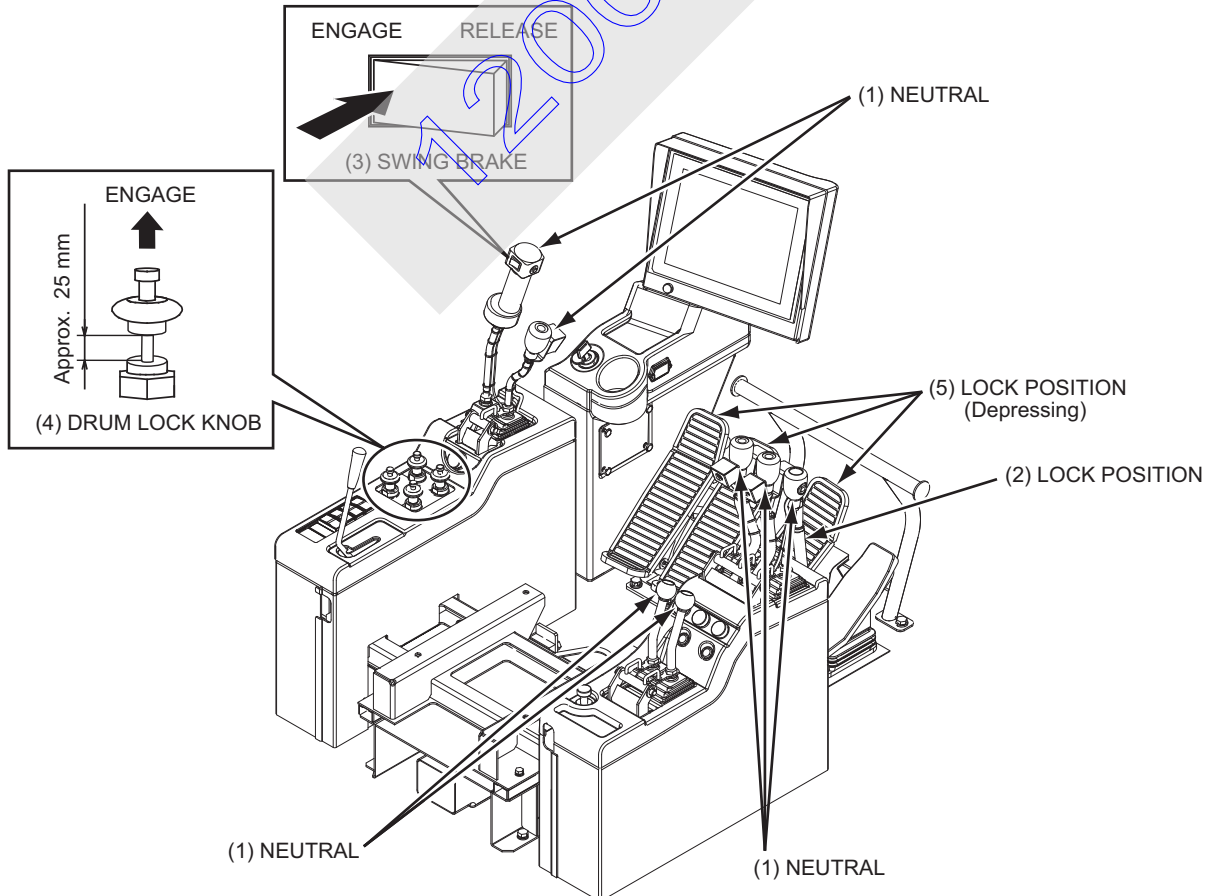
(1)	Front drum, rear drum, third drum (option), boom hoist, swing and propel control lever	Neutral
(2)	Function lock lever	Lock position
(3)	Swing brake switch	Engaging side
(4)	Front drum, rear drum, boom drum and third drum (option) lock knob	Lock side
(5)	Front drum, rear drum and third drum (option) brake pedals Release switch master key, free fall lock switch	Lock position

#### **WARNING**

Ensure to set all the control levers to neutral position before starting the engine to prevent unexpected movement of machinery when the engine is started.

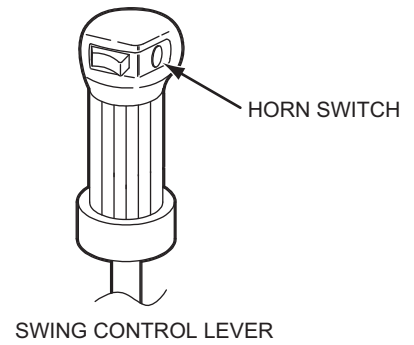
Even if each control lever of front drum, rear drum, third drum (option) is not in neutral position, engine can start.

However each motion can not work without returning the control lever to neutral position once.



**WARNING**

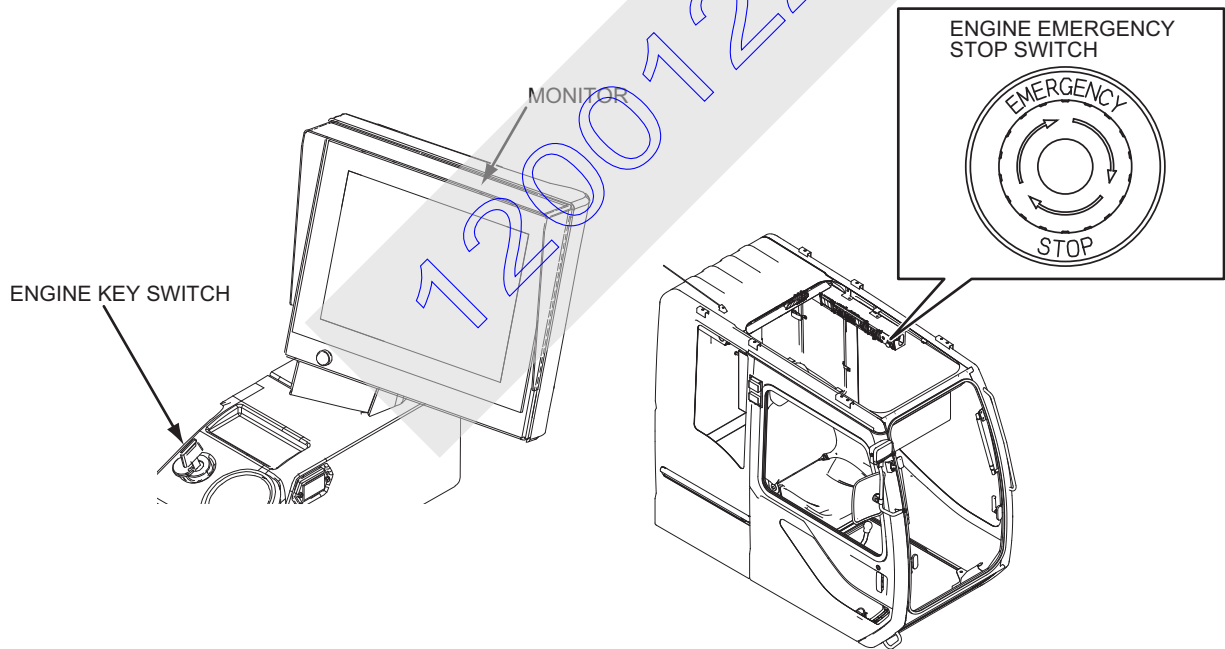
Sound the signal horn to warn the surrounding personnel before starting the engine.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



- (1) Turn the key switch 2 steps to the right (ON position).  
Confirm that the engine abnormal detect lamp lights up at this time.  
Confirm that the engine emergency stop switch is not ON too.

KEY SWITCH

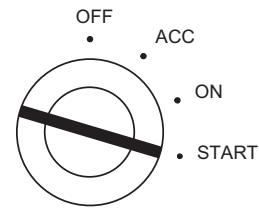
OFF	ENGINE STOP POSITION
ACC	ACCESSORY CIRCUIT CONNECT POSITION
ON	ENGINE RUN POSITION
START	ENGINE START POSITION



## 2. OPERATION

---

- (2) By turning the key switch one step more to the right (START position), the engine starts.  
After the engine starts, immediately release the key.  
The key returns to the ON position automatically.



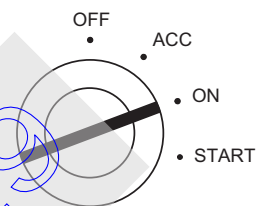
---

### **CAUTION**

Do not allow the starter to run more than 15 seconds continuously.  
If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, release the key and wait for more than 20 seconds, then start the engine again.

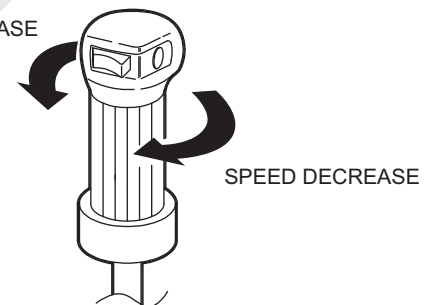
---

- (3) After the engine starts, immediately check the monitor for abnormality.  
If there is any abnormality, stop the engine immediately and seek for the cause.



- (4) To adjust the engine speed, use the accelerator grip.  
If the engine speed adjustment becomes impossible by the accel grip due to accelerator failure, use the auxiliary accel switch.  
(Refer to P.2-25)

SPEED INCREASE



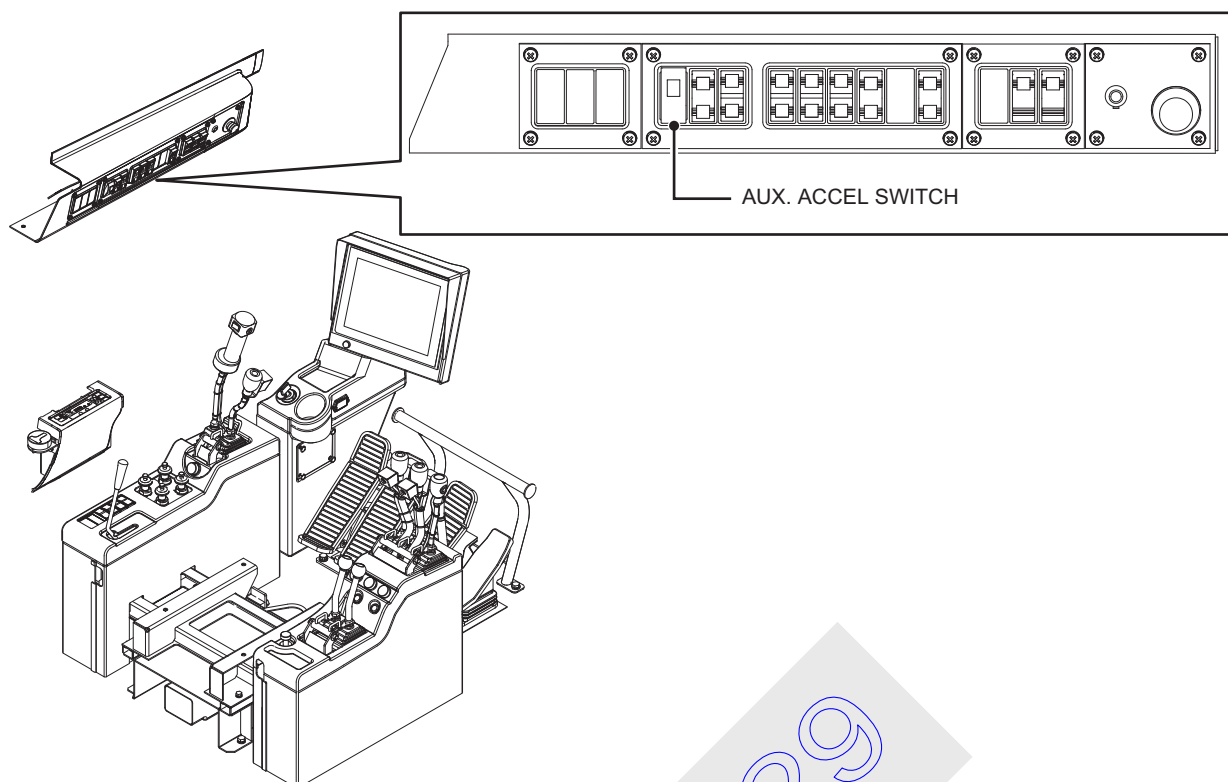
---

### **CAUTION**

Do not operate auxiliary accelerator when the system works properly.  
If auxiliary accel switch is used when the accel grip is normal, engine speed adjustment can not be done with the accel grip.

---





## 2. STARTING ASSIST OF ENGINE AT COLD ATMOSPHERE

When the ambient temperature is low (Approx. 10° C [50° F] or lower), place an engine key switch to the ON position, the preheating function (Glow plug) is worked for approximate 10 seconds automatically. Easier to start the engine when the key switch turns to START after the preheating is completed (10 seconds after the key switch placed to ON position).

And also the cold atmosphere starting mode can be obtained which is the starting performance will be increased when the key switch turns ON with the acceleration grip turns 60% or more.

However, should return the acceleration grip to idle position soon after the engine is started.

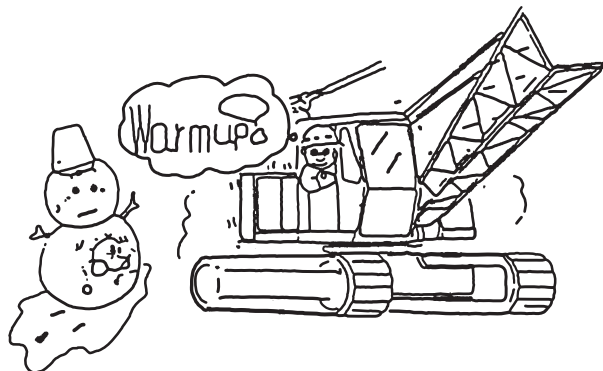
## 3. ENGINE WARMING OPERATION

Allow the engine to run at less than middle engine speed (1,000min<sup>-1</sup>) for 5 to 10 minutes with no load.

Extend the warm-up time to 10 to 20 minutes in a cold area with the same speed.

### **CAUTION**

If the crane is operated immediately without warming up the engine, the engine and the hydraulic components will be worn out earlier than usual or will become damaged.



## 2. OPERATION

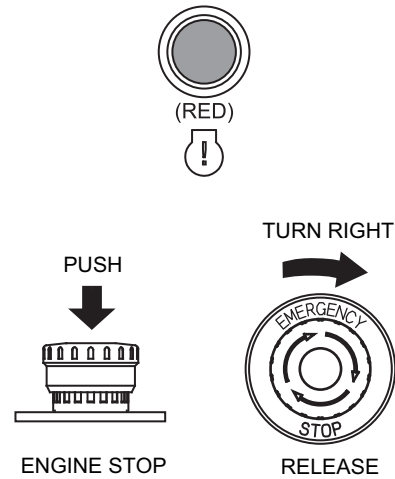
### 4. ENGINE ABNORMAL

When engine abnormal occurs, the engine control unit (ECU) detects it and engine abnormal detect lamp (red) lights up on the monitor.

Immediately turn the key switch to OFF to stop engine and contact the Manitowoc service shop.

If the engine must be stopped urgently, push the engine emergency stop switch.

The switch is held at the pushed position and return to original position when turned right.



### 5. STOPPING THE ENGINE

Before stopping the engine, set the control levers and switches as follows:

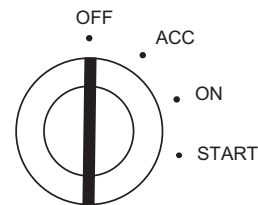
(A)	Front drum, rear drum, third drum (option), boom hoist, swing and propel control lever	Neutral
(B)	Function lock lever	Lock position
(C)	Swing brake switch	Engaging side
(D)	Front drum, rear drum and third drum (option), boom drum lock knob	Lock side
(E)	Front drum, rear drum and third drum (option) drum brake pedals	Lock position

(1) Allow the engine to run at a low speed for approx. 5 minutes with no load before stopping the engine.

(2) Turn the key switch to the OFF position. After the engine is stopped, the power will be cut after awhile.

During this period, message will be indicated on the monitor urging to engage the drum lock.

If the emergency solenoid becomes actuated, the power will be cut after about 90 seconds.



**6. BURNING SOOT (REGENERATION)**

When the soot has accumulated to higher than certain level in the diesel particulate filter, the regeneration mode becomes actuated and burns (regenerates) the soot by raising the exhaust gas temperature.

There are the following modes in burning (regenerating) the soot.

**(1) Refresh mode**

Since non-combusted fuel is accumulated in DPF unit when low idling or light load work continues for long time, automatic refreshing occurs. (This is not regeneration)

**(2) Auto regeneration mode**

Burning (regenerating) the soot occurs automatically and the lever control can be done even during auto-regeneration.

**(3) Manual regeneration mode**

Burning (regenerating) the soot occurs manually and the lever control is not possible during regenerating.

---

** CAUTION**

When the soot accumulation gauge icon starts blinking gray and yellow (explained later) automatically, the load valve is working to raise the exhaust gas temperature. The blinking occurs when the refresh mode or the auto regeneration mode is on.

In such case, avoid starting or stopping the engine as much as possible.

Once the load valve is stopped, fuel so far used to raise the exhaust temperature becomes wasted and parts deterioration may be resulted.

---

## 2. OPERATION

---

### (A) Refresh mode

<Procedure>

- When low idling or light load work continues for long time, refreshing of DPF starts.
- Refresh mode actuates regardless of the soot accumulation amount.
- When this mode is started, engine speed is increased to 1,000 min<sup>-1</sup> and the load valve actuates.

---

#### CAUTION

Under refresh condition and engine speed exceed 1,100 min<sup>-1</sup>, this mode is cancelled.

Since refresh again needs a few minutes to keep that condition, once it is cancelled, it must be started again. When the refreshing is started, keep that condition as long as possible and do not stop the engine or cancel the refreshing.

---

---

#### CAUTION

When non-combusted fuel is accumulated, white smoke may come out of exhaust port and may cause deterioration of DPF unit.

---

- When the soot accumulation gauge icon becomes off (gray color), refresh is completed.
- 

#### CAUTION

Refresh is completed in about 5 minutes.

---

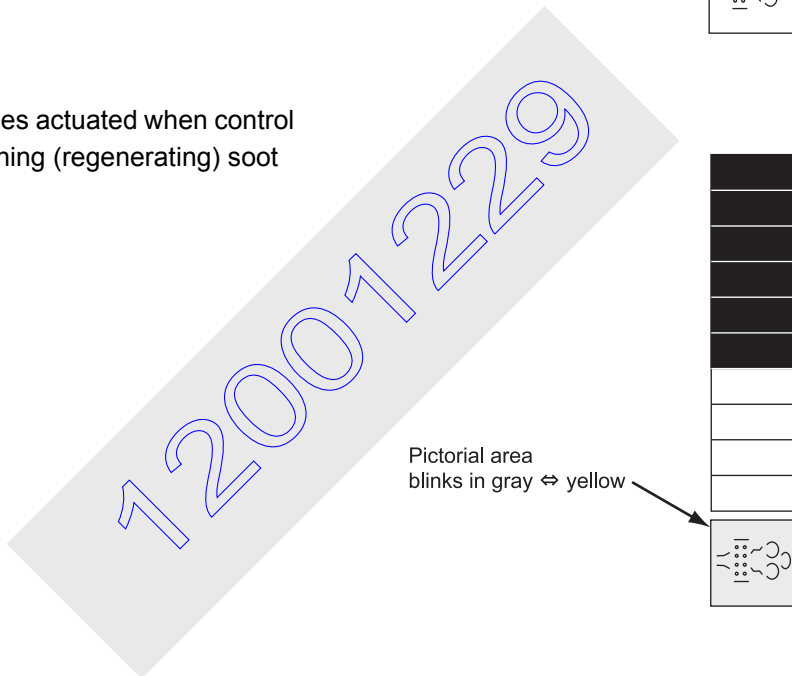
(B) Auto regeneration mode

<Procedure>

- When certain amount of soot is accumulated, auto regeneration starts.  
(When soot gauge is approx. between 3rd to 4th block)



- Auto regeneration becomes actuated when control lever is not used and burning (regenerating) soot start automatically.



## 2. OPERATION

### CAUTION

In the auto regeneration mode, engine idling speed may become higher (max. 900 min<sup>-1</sup>). Load valve condition is displayed and buzzer sound is issued to call for caution.

Furthermore, indication showing auto-regeneration mode becomes displayed and approx. period is also displayed.

- Lever control is possible during auto regeneration.

### CAUTION

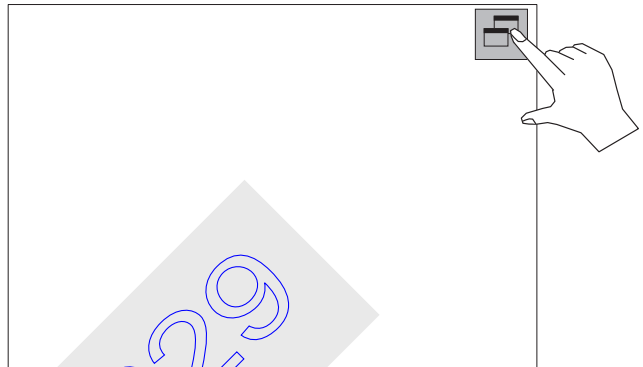
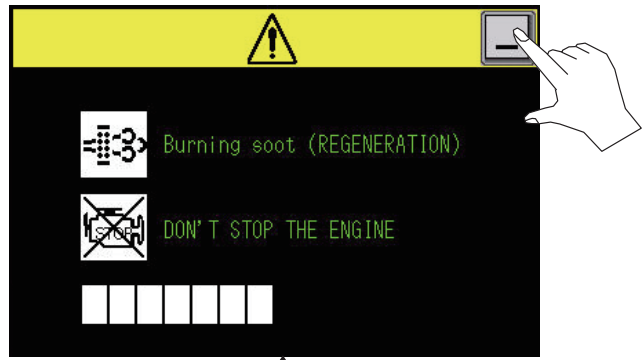
During auto-regeneration, increasing the engine speed may cause louder engine noise.

This is because the regeneration required control is functioning and is not failure.

- When the soot accumulation gauge icon becomes off (gray color), auto regeneration is completed.

### CAUTION

Auto regeneration work will be completed in about 5 to 10 minutes. (It varies depending on volume of soot accumulation.)



Warning screen can be minimized or maximized by touching the icon right above.

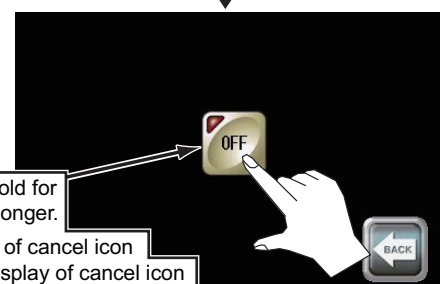
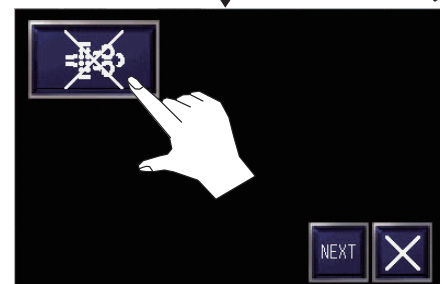
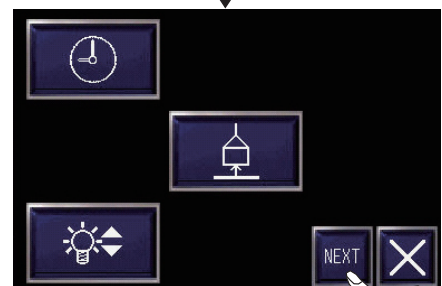
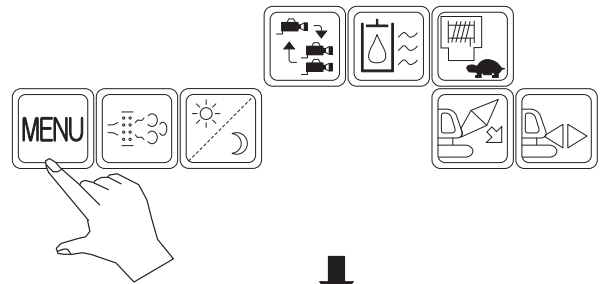
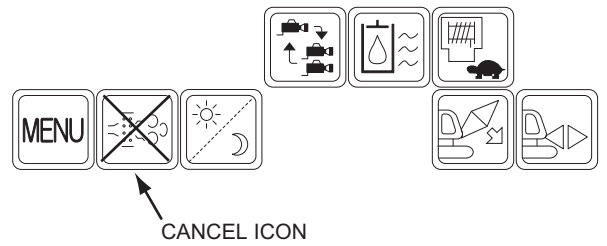
<Cancel>

- During auto regeneration, when the cancel icon is indicated, auto regeneration can be cancelled by pushing the cancel icon.

**CAUTION**

When cancelled, burning (regenerating) soot would not be completed. The soot accumulation gauge would not be reset.

- After cancelled, when the control lever becomes non operational, auto regeneration mode starts again.
- Cancel button is displayed by changing the setting. Display the setting change screen with "Menu" icon and select ON or OFF.



Press and hold for 1second or longer.  
 ON: Display of cancel icon  
 OFF: Non display of cancel icon

12001229

## 2. OPERATION

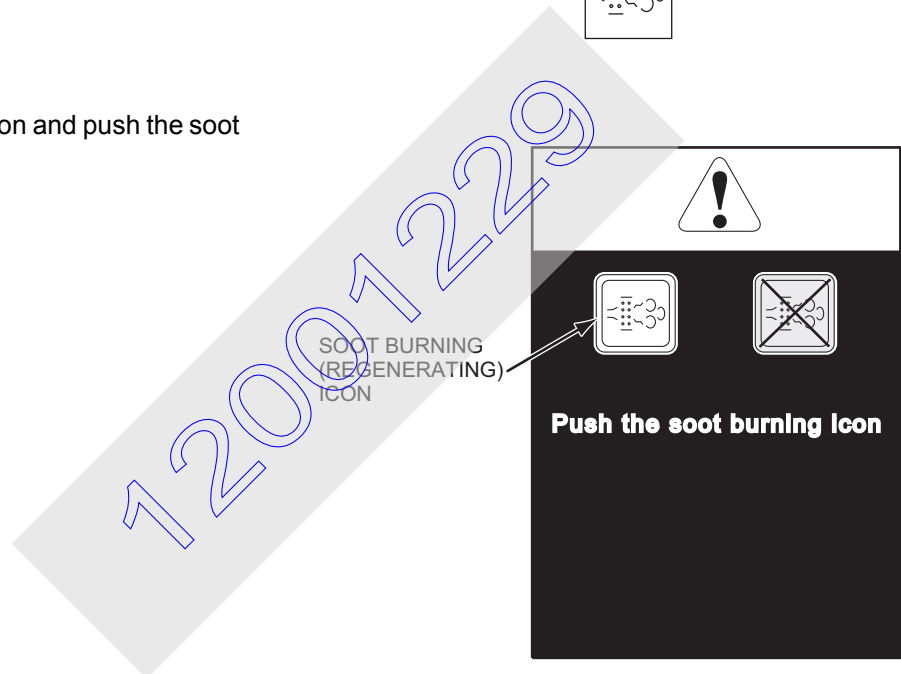
### (C) Manual regeneration mode

<Procedure>

- When the soot accumulation gauge becomes in the range of 5 to 8 bars, request of manual regeneration becomes indicated in main monitor as pop-up.



- Make machine in idling condition and push the soot burning (regenerating) icon.



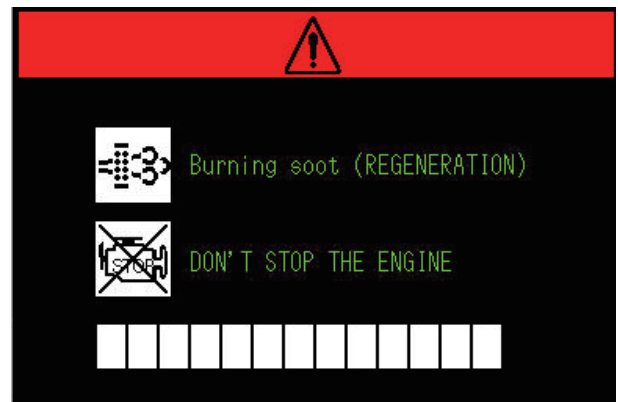


- Manual regeneration becomes actuated and soot burning (regenerating) work starts.

**Note**

During manual regeneration mode, engine speed becomes fixed to 1,000 min<sup>-1</sup> and the load valve becomes actuated.

During manual regeneration, soot accumulation gauge icon blinks gray and yellow alternately and time gauge becomes displayed on right lower of the screen to show that the regeneration is on.



- During manual regeneration, lever control becomes impossible.
- Idling speed returns to original and soot accumulation gauge icon turns off (gray). When soot accumulation gauge is reset, manual regeneration is completed.

**Note**

Manual regeneration work will be completed in about 15 to 20 minutes. (It varies depending on volume of soot accumulation.)

Since soot burning (regeneration) work raises the temperature in the diesel particulate filter to a certain level, it will complete work earlier if the temperature in the diesel particulate filter is higher.

Soot burning (regeneration) work will complete earlier right after crane work than in cold engine.

When engine is cold, soot burning (regeneration) work actuates after warming the engine. Therefore it may take longer than 20 minutes.

## 2. OPERATION

<Cancel>

- Even when the manual regeneration request screen is indicated and responding to request is not possible, cancel can be selected.

### Note

Selecting cancel against request of regeneration is limited.

When the soot accumulation gauge becomes 8 bars, cancel icon will not be indicated.

Perform regeneration work as soon as possible.

### CAUTION

When cancelled, burning (regenerating) soot would not be completed. The soot accumulation gauge would not be reset.

- When machine operation becomes necessary even during manual regeneration work, manual regeneration work can be suspended by pushing cancel icon.

### Note

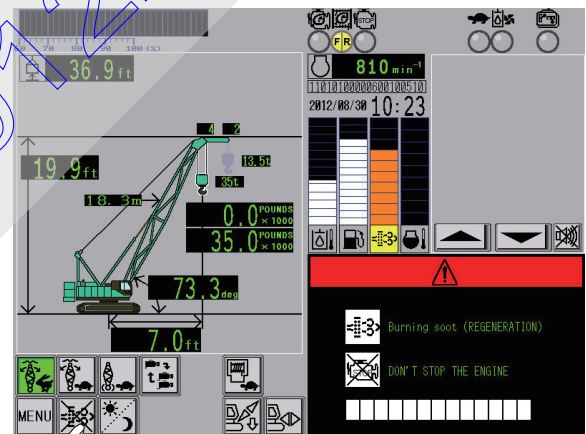
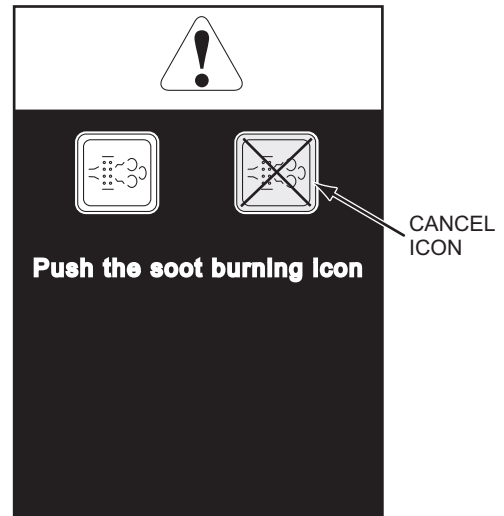
Selecting cancel against request of manual regeneration is limited.

When the soot accumulation gauge becomes 8 bars during manual regeneration, cancel icon will not be indicated.

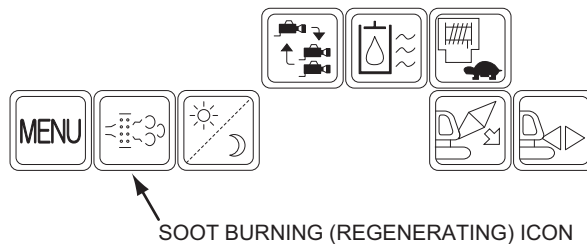
Maintain the present condition until completion.

### CAUTION

When cancelled, burning (regenerating) soot would not be completed. The soot accumulation gauge would not be reset.



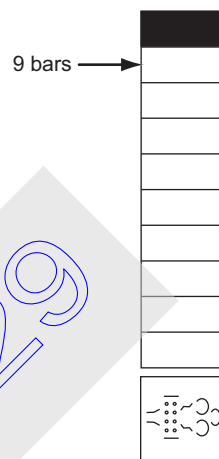
- After cancelled, request screen would not be indicated until soot becomes accumulated further and soot accumulation gauge would become increased by one more bar. However, since regeneration is always possible, push soot burning (regenerating) icon indicated in main monitor whenever it becomes ready.



**CAUTION**

When long time has elapsed under manual regeneration request screen being indicated and accumulation gauge becomes 9 bars, forcible soot regeneration will occur to prevent failure of the diesel particulate filter.

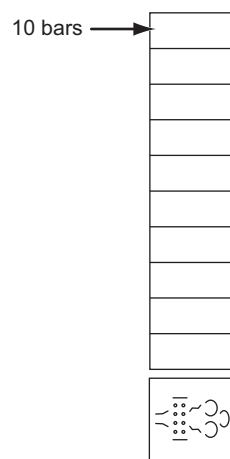
Take extra care on this. In this case, maintain the condition until the regeneration is completed.



**CAUTION**

When the soot accumulation gauge becomes 10 bars, the diesel particulate filter would be failed and error would be indicated in the main monitor.

Contact the nearest Manitowoc service shop and request of replacing the diesel particulate filter and error reset.



**CAUTION**

Do not wash the engine area with high pressure water. During engine running (specially during the diesel particulate filter is under burning (regeneration) work, if the high pressure water hit the diesel throttle etc. water may enter into the engine and may cause damage to the engine.

## 2. OPERATION

### 2.3.4 AUTO IDLE STOP FUNCTION

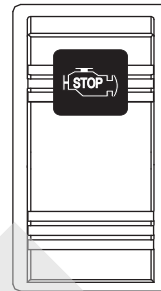
This function is designed to stop the engine during waiting for operation of the vehicle to thereby consume less fuel.

44. When the AUTO IDLE STOP SWITCH is turned ON, countdown begins as soon as required conditions are satisfied.

When the count reaches zero, the engine is stopped.

When the AUTO IDLE STOP switch is ON the ongoing state of satisfaction of the auto idle stop conditions is displayed.

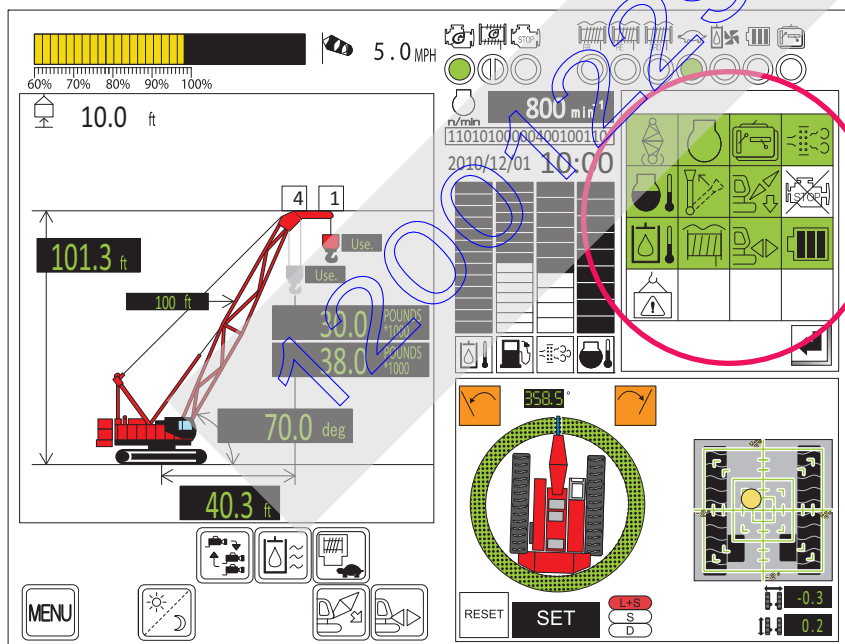
\* In the event of occurrence of an error, this state is not displayed, since priority is given to display of the error message.



ON



OFF
















**Explanations of the conditions**

Required conditions are as described below.

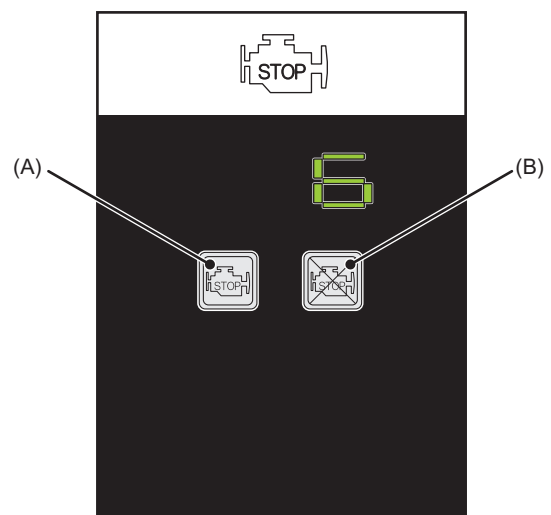
When requirements are met, the applicable conditions light up in green color.

When all of the conditions are satisfied, the countdown begins.

\* As to "13. Lifting load" the countdown begins, even if the required conditions are not satisfied. But, the countdown time spent will be longer than normal.

1		Swing brake	The swing brake shall be ON.
2		Engine rotational speed	The engine rotational speed shall be 760 to 840 min <sup>-1</sup> .
3		Remote control	Remote control for transfer lifter/self installation and removal device shall not be connected yet.
4		DPF regeneration	DPF regeneration shall not be ongoing.
5		Engine water temperature	The engine water temperature shall be within the specified range.
6		Control lever	All control levers shall in the neutral position.
7		Self supporting storage mode	LMI shall not be in the self supporting storage mode.
8		AIS cancel	It shall be at least 5 min after the AIS CANCEL icon is pushed.
9		Hydraulic oil temperature	The hydraulic oil temperature shall be within the specified range.
10		Winch mode	All winches shall be in the neutral brake mode.
11		Assembly/disassembly mode	LMI shall not be in the assembly/disassembly mode.
12		Battery	The battery balance shall be above specified level.
13		Lifting load	The lifting load shall be lower than specified.

When the conditions are satisfied, the countdown message shown below is displayed. When the numeric value displayed reaches zero, the engine is stopped. When the icon A is pushed, the engine is stopped, even if the countdown is on the way. When the icon B is pushed, the engine is stopped. When this icon is pushed, the subsequent countdown does not start for 5 min.



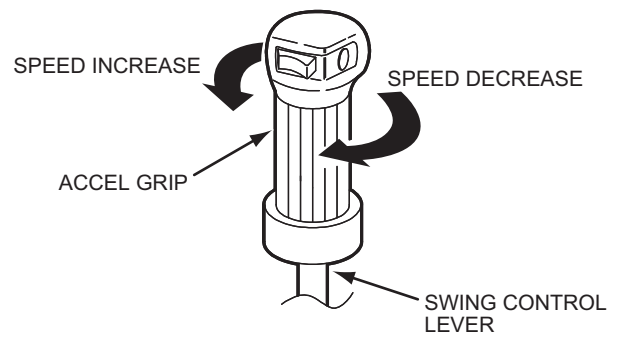
## 2. OPERATION

---

When the engine is stopped due to the auto idle stop function, the engine can be restarted by turning the accelerator grip.

Turn the accelerator grip by approx. 1/4 to put it back in the low idle position.

\* Start with the key switch is also available, same as the case of normal start of the engine.



---

### Note

During auto idle stop of the engine, the battery is consumed. When you leave the operator seat, be sure to turn OFF the key switch.

---

12001229

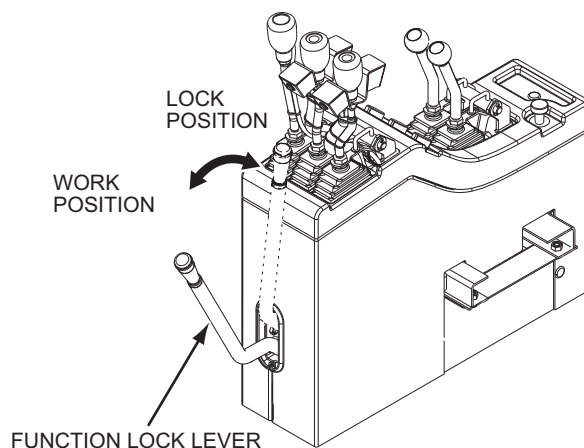
### 2.3.5 FUNCTION LOCK LEVER

When operating the machine, place the function lock lever in the WORK position.

When leaving the operator's seat, be sure to place this lever in the LOCK position.

When this lever is placed in the LOCK position, the machine does not operate even if any control lever is operated accidentally.

Ensure to place the function lock lever to LOCK position after the work is completed and during transportation.



#### Note

If the function lock lever is set to the "LOCK" position while any of front drum, rear drum boom hoist drum and propel control lever lock is operated, rotation of the drum or propel is stopped.

Under this condition, even if the function lock lever is turned to "WORK" position again, no motion becomes operational.

After the control lever is returned to neutral position, the control becomes possible again.

#### **! DANGER**

**Do not set the function lock lever to the "LOCK" position during operation.**

**Otherwise, all the operation functions are suddenly stopped, causing extreme danger.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

## 2. OPERATION

---

### 2.3.6 PROPELLING OPERATION

---

#### **WARNING**

Strictly observe the following before propel.

Confirm that people and obstacles are kept out of the propelling area

Sound the horn to warn the surrounding people.

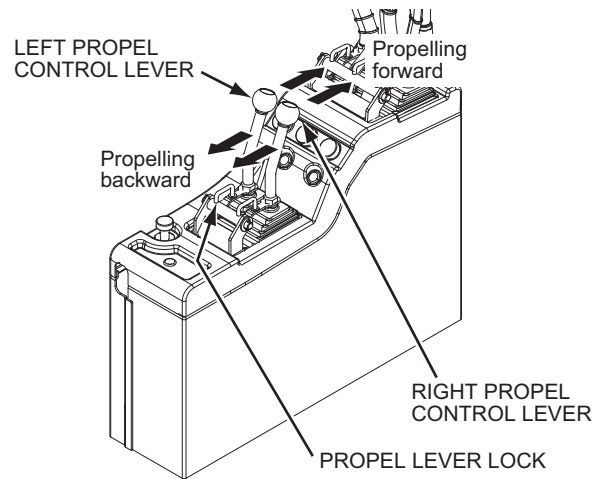
Be especially careful, when the boom is long, boom angle is large, ground is uneven, or when a load is lifted.

For stability of swinging and traveling, refer to P.8-17.

Use a signal person to direct operation.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

---



12001229



Propel speed is regulated by turning the accelerator grip, and by proportionally pushing and pulling the propel control levers.

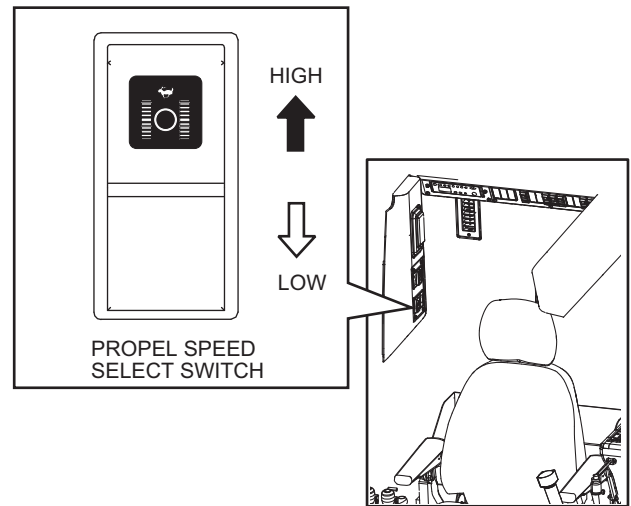
High and low propel speed is regulated by operating the propel speed selector switch.

**High speed**

Use this speed on good ground conditions.

**Low speed**

Use this speed when a tractive force is required on bad ground conditions.



When the propel speed selector switch is placed in the High speed position, pivot turn and spin turn due to large propel resistance cannot be operated.

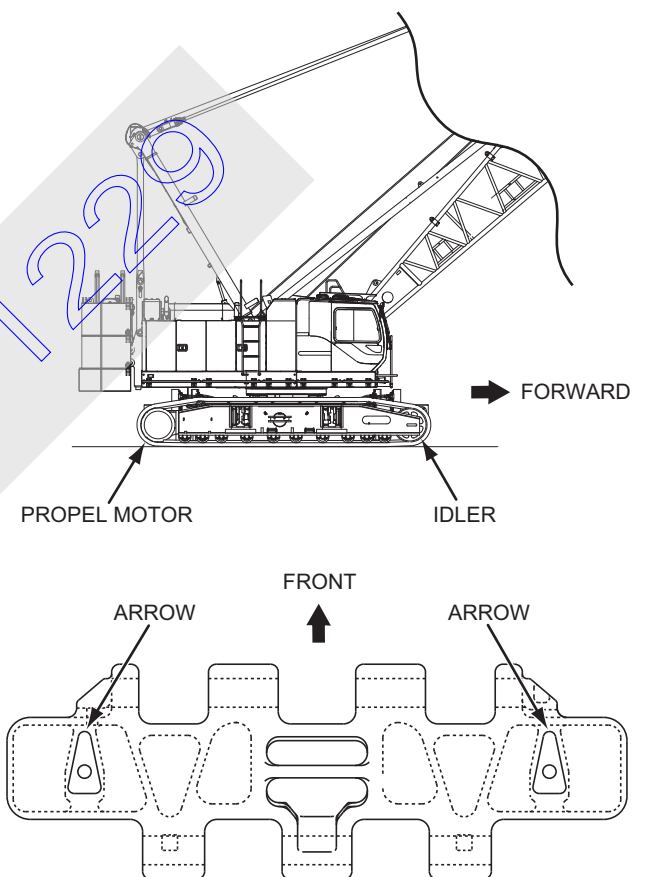
Turn the switch to Low speed position for pivot turn and spin turn.

Since the machine may propel partially on a rough terrain, adjust propelling by the stroke of the propel control levers.

In order to identify front and rear of the lower machinery easily, the crawler shoes have "△" marks.

Propelling forward is propelling toward the idler side, and propelling backward is propelling toward the propel motor side.

When the cab positions to the propel motor side, use caution with propelling operation in reverse only.



## 2. OPERATION

1. Release the propel control lever lock.
2. Select High or Low speed by propel speed select switch based on the propel work.
3. It is possible for the machine to perform propelling forward/backward and pivot turn/spin turn/large radius turn by operating the right and left propel control levers.
4. Engage the control lever lock when you do not want to propel the machine.

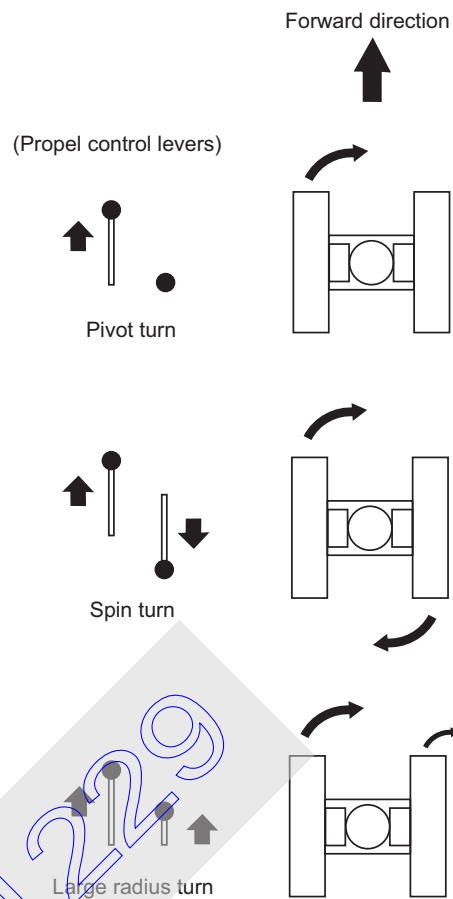
### **WARNING**

Do not perform sudden starts/stops/operation of the machine. Failure to observe this warning may result in serious accidents due to collision or boom windage.

If the front or rear drum is operated while propelling the machine, it may cause danger because the propel speed changes or the direction slants. To operate these actions simultaneously, lower the machine speed and slowly operate the drum.

### **CAUTION**

Provide gentle slope so that the machine does not suddenly tilt and fall down at the beginning and end positions of slope.



## 2.3.7 SWINGING OPERATION

**WARNING**

Before starting any swing operations, ensure the area in the swing path of the hook and/or load, and the tail swing area, is clear of all obstructions and personnel.

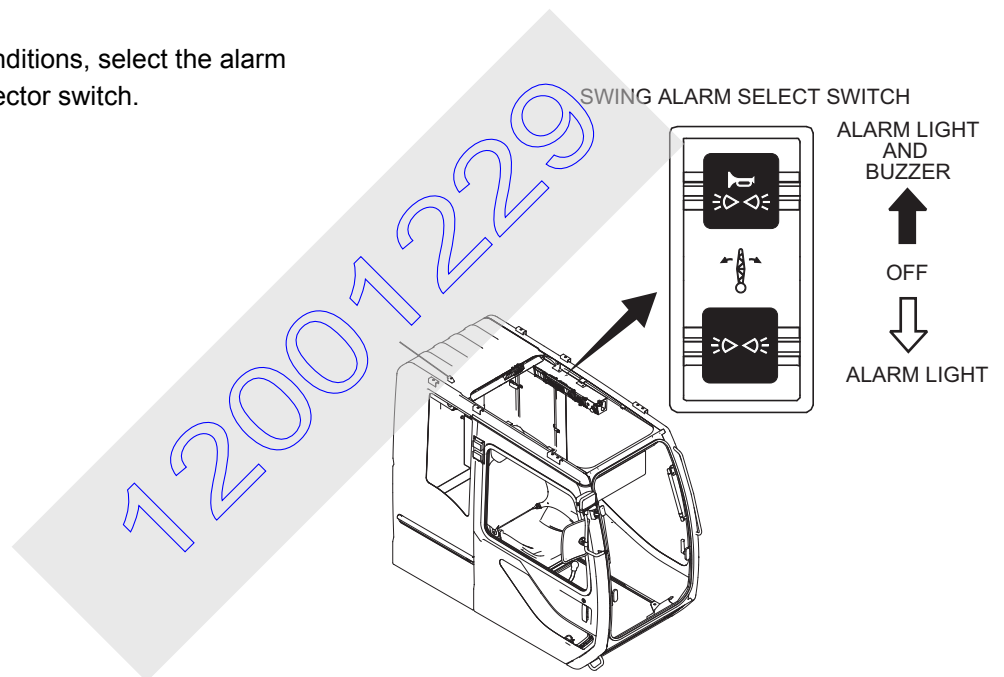
Sound signal horn to warn personnel.

For stability of swinging (P.8-17).

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

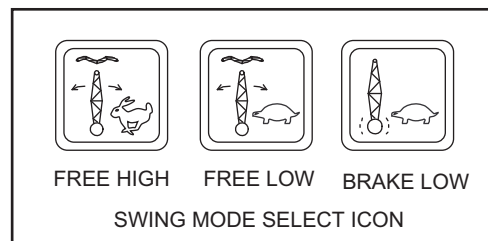
Swing speed is regulated by turning the accelerator grip, and by proportionally pushing and pulling the swing control lever.

1. According to working conditions, select the alarm with the swing alarm selector switch.



## 2. OPERATION

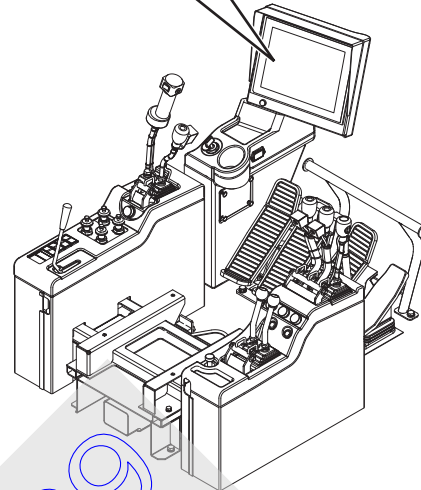
2. Select the neutral mode (FREE HIGH, FREE LOW or BRAKE) by swing mode select icon.  
At the brake mode or free low, swing max. speed becomes lowered.



### **WARNING**

When the brake mode is selected, do not return the swing control lever to the neutral position too quickly in order to avoid shocks to the machine and booms.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.



### EACH MODE AND WORK CONTENT

Free mode (High)	Crane, Lifting magnet, Clamshell work
Free mode (Low)	Long boom crane work
Brake mode (Low)	Long boom crane work

3. Release the swing lock pin and swing brake.

**CAUTION**

Since the upper machinery may swing naturally due to the wind or ground inclination, pay attention to release the swing brake.

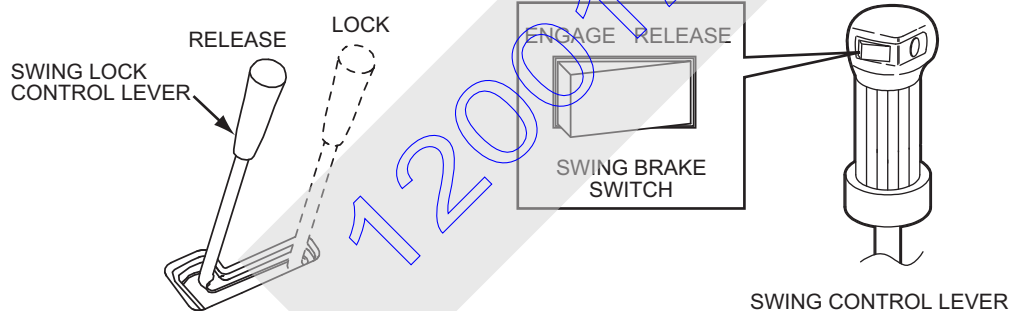
Engaging the swing lock pin or swing brake during machine swing may result in attachment damage or machine turn over.

When engine is started while the swing brake is released, or function lock lever is turned from LOCK position to WORK position, swing brake keeps engaged position.

In such case, turns the swing brake switch to engaged position once and then to released position.

This would release the swing brake.

If the function lock lever is in LOCK position, swing brake is engaged regardless of swing brake switch position.



## 2. OPERATION

---

4. Push the swing control lever forward to swing the upper to the left and pull the lever backward to swing the upper to the right.

To stop the swing motion

### FREE MODE

Slowly move the lever in the opposite direction.

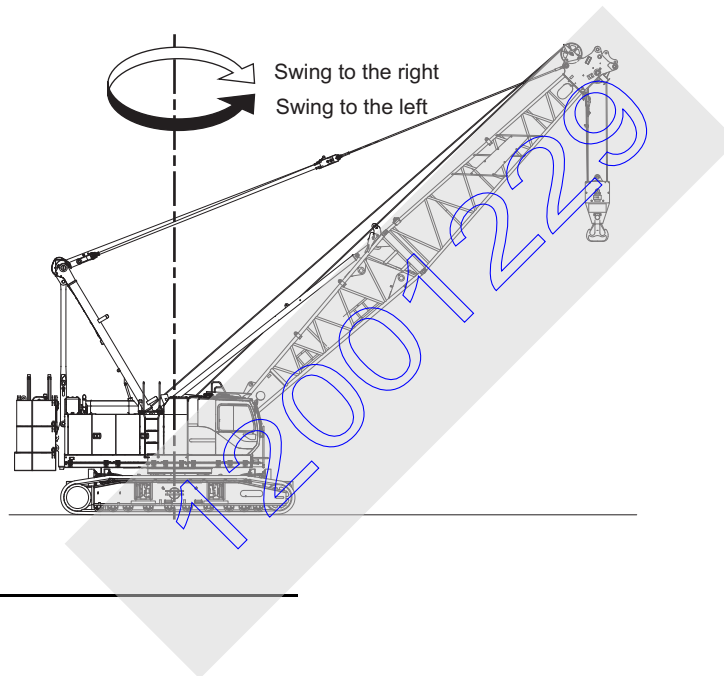
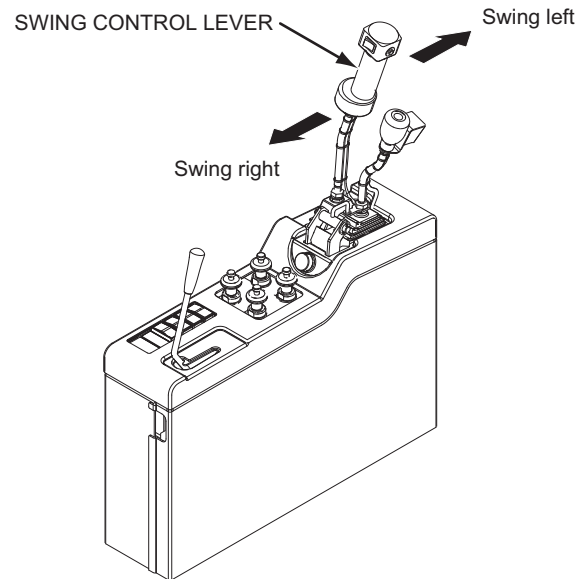
### BRAKE MODE

Slowly return the lever to the neutral position.

In case of strong wind or on the slope, the upper machinery may start swinging by itself.

Therefore engage the swing brake.

For long time stop, engage the swing lock pin.



---

### CAUTION

Do not use the swing parking brake for the purpose of stopping the swing motion.

Always check to ensure that the load is hanging free and directly under the boom tip before swinging.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

---

5. When pausing operations, set the machine straight ahead, and then, engage the swing lock.

---

### CAUTION

Engaging the lock pin with the machine in any position other than the swing lock position- (Machine set straight ahead) may lead to the damage of the machine.

---

## 2.3.8 BOOM RAISING/LOWERING OPERATION

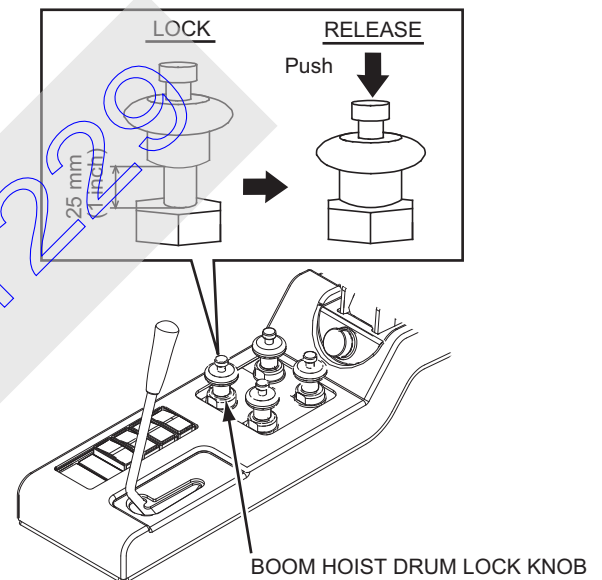
**WARNING**

Before operating the boom, ensure that the area above and beneath the boom is clear of all obstacles and personnel.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

Speed of boom hoist can be adjusted by turning the accelerator grip and pressing or pulling up the boom operating lever and the maximum speed of boom up and down motion can be also adjusted by operating the drum speed adjusting knob.

1. Release the drum lock by pushing the boom hoist drum lock knob.



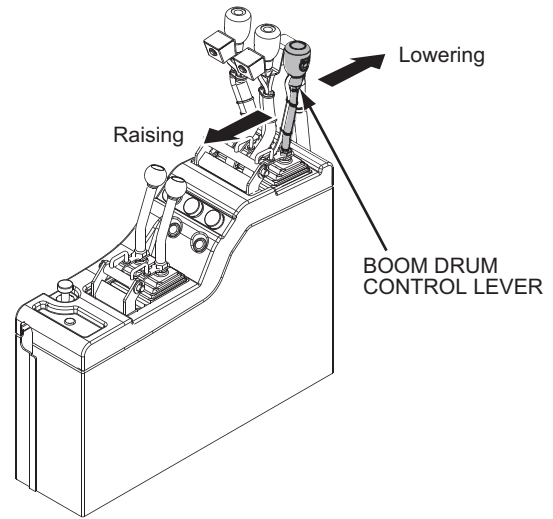
## 2. OPERATION

### 2. Boom raising/boom lowering

Push the boom drum control lever forward to lower the boom, and pull the lever backward to raise the boom.

When the boom is not lowered by operating the boom drum control lever to the boom lowering side, it is possible that the drum lock is engaged in the ratchet of the drum.

In this case, move the boom drum control lever to the boom raising side slightly, then move the lever to the lowering side again.



### **WARNING**

**Operate the control lever slowly. Abrupt control lever operation may create the shock to the main machinery or boom on load swinging and is very dangerous.**

### 3. Stopping

When the boom drum control lever is returned to neutral, the drum brake actuates automatically and the boom is stopped and is held.

### **CAUTION**

When returning the control lever to neutral, ensure that it is returned surely to the neutral position.

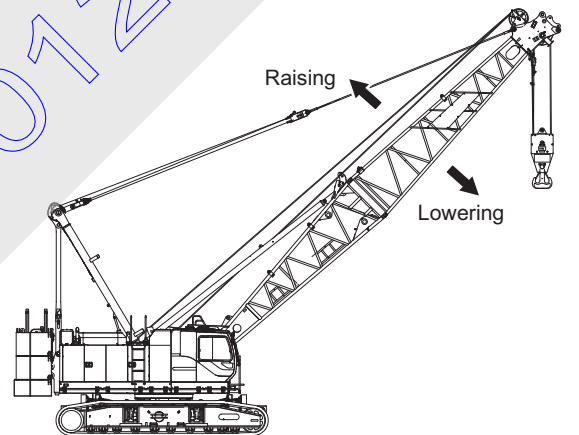
### **CAUTION**

Do not make the boom or jib to come close to the hook. When the hook contacts the boom or jib, boom or jib wire rope may damage.

### **DANGER**

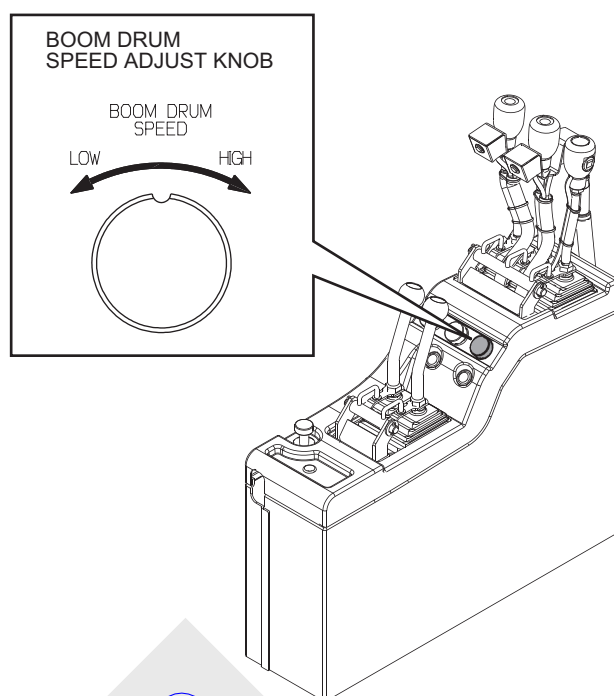
**Never engage the drum lock during lowering the boom.**

**The drum or drum lock pawl may be damaged.**





4. Adjust the drum speed by the drum speed adjust trimmer based on the work condition.



5. When the boom approaches the upper limit angle, the hoisting speed is reduced. The angle to start the speed reduction differs depending on the engine speed.

It reduces the speed approximately 10 degrees before the upper limit angle in the case of HIGH IDLE and approximately 3 degrees before the upper limit angle in the case of LOW IDLE.

6. Be sure to stop the engine, and engage the drum lock before leaving the operator's seat.

To engage the drum lock, push and hold the button, and then fully pull the knob up. Fully pull it up, although the resistance against pulling may be altered halfway.

Check to see if the boom control lever is returned to neutral and then engage the lever lock.

Turn the function lock lever to "LOCK" position.

## 2. OPERATION

---

### 2.3.9 HOOK RAISING/LOWERING OPERATION

---

**⚠ WARNING**

Ensure that there are no obstacles or personnel on the hook or load moving area.

---

**⚠ DANGER**

Perform the crane work with **NEUTRAL BRAKE** side.

**FREE FALL** side may fall the load by operator's error.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---

**⚠ DANGER**

Do not actuate the drum lock while the hook is lowered.

Otherwise, the drum or drum lock may be damaged.

---

**⚠ WARNING**

When making lifts, strictly follow the capacity charts for determining the loads that can be handled as supplied by the manufacturer.

Follow good operating practice and procedures as outlined in this manual.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

---

Raising and lowering speed is regulated by turning the accelerator grip and by proportionally pushing and pulling the drum control lever.

The maximum raising and lowering speed of the drum is regulated by operating the drum speed adjusting knob.

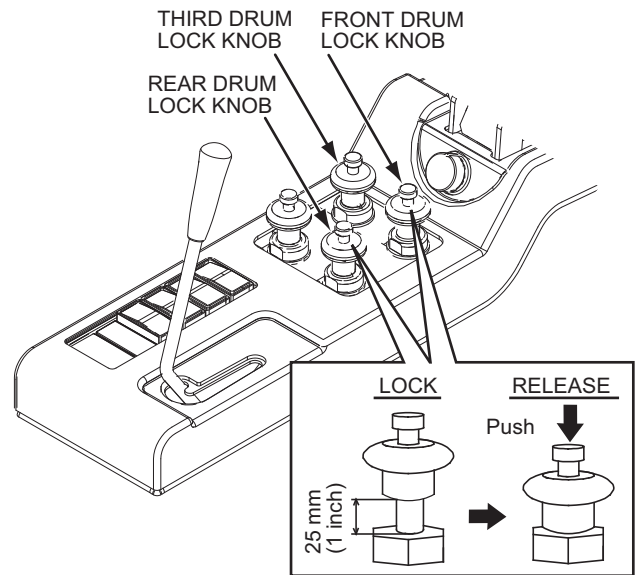
1. Ensure that the "FREE FALL INDICATOR LAMP" stays out.
2. Release the drum lock by pushing the front, rear and third hoist drum lock knob.

**⚠ DANGER**

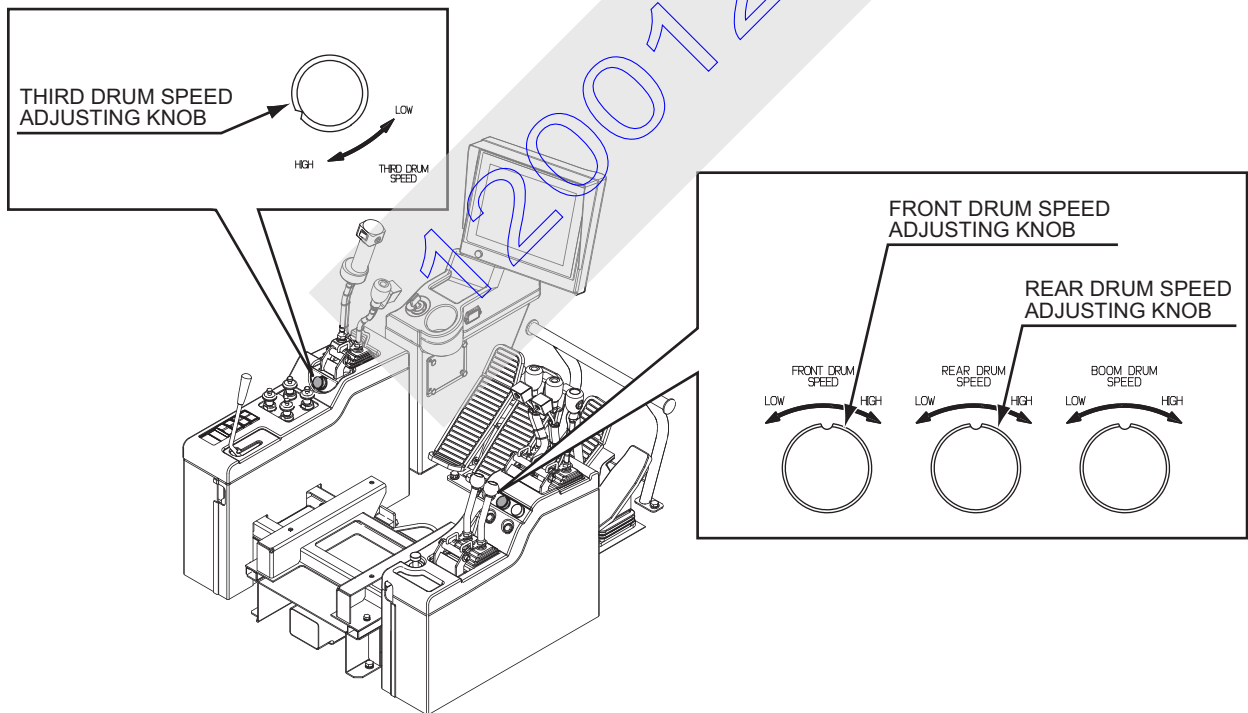
Before releasing the drum lock confirm that the drum brake mode is in the **NEUTRAL BRAKE MODE**.

If not, move the switch to the **NEUTRAL BRAKE MODE**.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



3. According to working condition, adjust the maximum speed of the drum with the drum speed adjusting knob.



## 2. OPERATION

### Hook Raising/Lowering Operation

(1) RAISING

Pull the drum control lever toward the raising side to hoist a load.

(2) LOWERING

Push the drum control lever forward to lower the load.

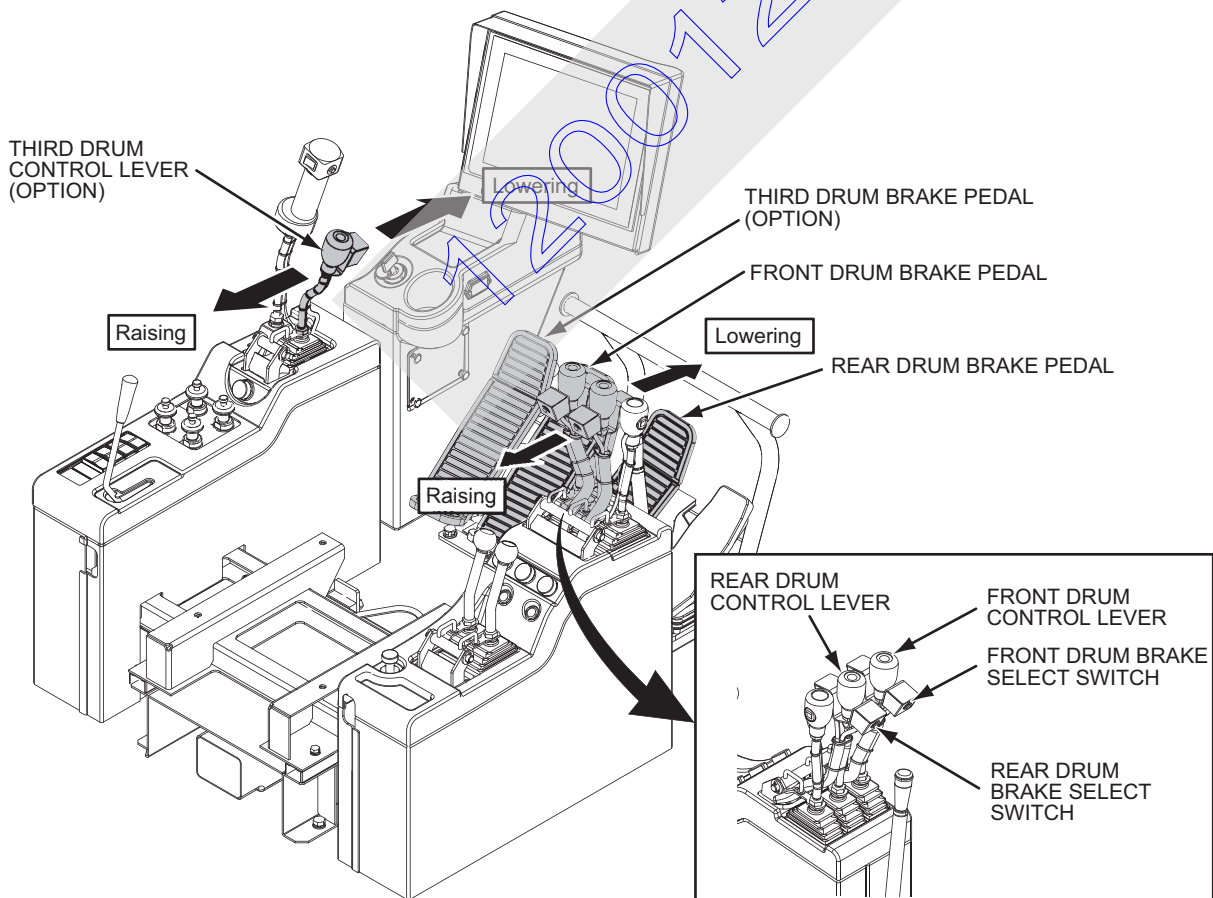
When the hook is not lowered by operating the drum control lever to the lowering side, it is possible that the lock is engaged in the ratchet of the drum. In this case, slightly move the control lever to the raising side, then move to the lowering side again.

(3) STOPPING

When the drum control lever is returned to the neutral position, the automatic brake operates to stop the load.

**CAUTION**

When returning the control lever to neutral, ensure that the lever is surely returned to neutral position.



When the load is held in the air for a long time, engage the drum lock.

To engage the drum lock, fully pull the knob up. The pulling resistance may vary but pull it fully.

---

**WARNING**

**Operate the control lever slowly. Abrupt control lever operation may create the shock to the main machinery or boom on load swinging and is very dangerous.**

---



---

**WARNING**

**Even in case of neutral brake, engage the pedal lock of the brake pedal.**

---

**Note**

In case of the brake with combination of brake pedal, neutral brake mode does not function. Whenever auto-stop occurs during hook raising or lowering, immediately return the control lever to neutral.

---

When the drum control lever is returned to neutral, auto-brake actuates and the hook stops.

When the lifting load is to be held in the air for long time, engage the drum lock.

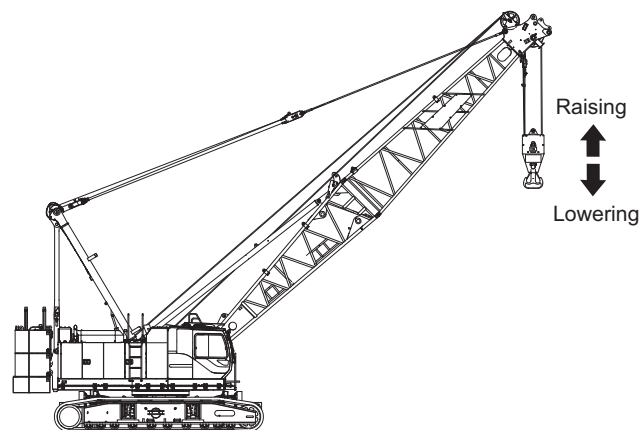
When the drum lock is to be engaged, pull the knob up completely. Although pull up resistance may change on its half way, pull up to the end.

---

**Note**

In case of the confluence mode, simultaneous operation of the front drum with 1st speed and the rear drum with 2nd speed cannot be done due to hydraulic system complexity.

---



12001229

## 2. OPERATION

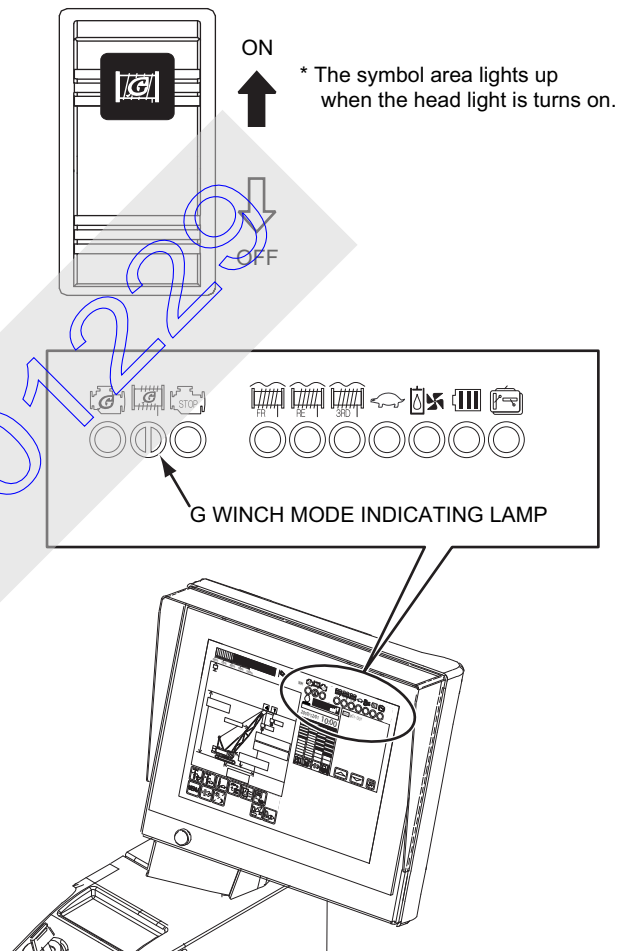
### G winch control

G winch is a function to realize maximum line speed with low engine speed at no load condition. Control as per the following procedure.

#### **CAUTION**

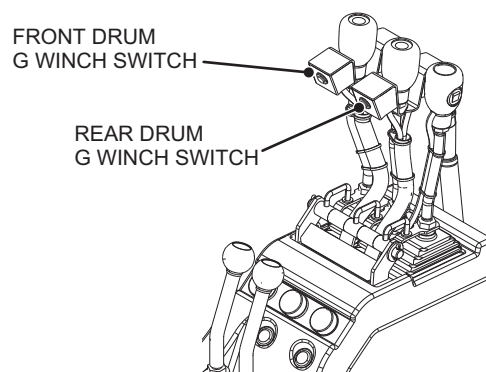
G winch cannot be controlled with load condition to prevent damage to the units.

- (1) Turn ON the G winch main switch on the upper area of the cab back face.  
After machine judges low idle and lever neutral condition, the yellow lamp in the monitor lights up.



G winch mode	G winch individual select switch which is set on the front and rear control lever becomes effective. * Detail is explained later.
Normal mode	G winch function cannot be used.

- (2) Turn ON the G winch individual switch.  
 Between the front and rear winches, by turning ON the individual select switch which is provided on the high speed required winch lever, high speed function becomes possible afterward.



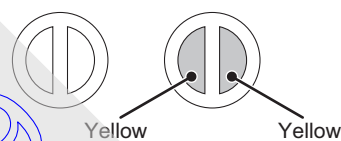
### Work condition of G winch individual select switch.

- (A) G winch main switch is ON.
- (B) Engine is low idling condition.
- (C) There is no lifting load.
- (D) The post processing unit is not in the soot burning (regenerate) condition.  
 (Soot burning - regenerate lamp is OFF)
- (E) The control lever is in neutral position.
- (F) When condition (A) to (E) are met, push either front drum or rear drum individual select switch.  
 The monitor symbol shown on right figure turns ON.

- a : Front drum is in G winch mode  
 (a side: green light ON)
- b : Rear drum is in G winch mode  
 (b side: green light ON)

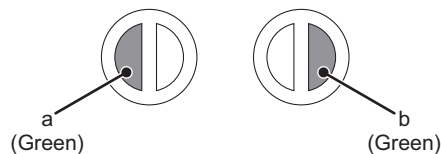
\* Under green light ON condition, pushing the switch again can cancel the G winch mode.

### G WINCH MAIN SWITCH



### When "individual select" is effective.

#### FRONT DRUM    REAR DRUM



### CAUTION

Under the G ENGINE, when the normal winch mode is turned to G winch mode, engine speed is raised to 900 min<sup>-1</sup>. But this is not abnormal.

## 2. OPERATION

---

- (3) When the individual select lamp is turned ON, preparation is completed. Start each lever control. High speed raising or lowering becomes possible.

After selecting the G winch individual, only one control can function as G winch mode.

When the lever is returned to neutral once, this function is cancelled. If the function has to be used again, push the individual select switch when the lever is in neutral.

If [the work condition of G winch individual select switch] is missed before lever control, normal mode is resumed.

---

### CAUTION

In the lowering control, initial speed may become slower in certain times. This is caused by function of the counterbalance valve and is not abnormal.

In case that the front and rear drum speed adjust knob are not in maximum position, maximum speed can not be obtained even under this function. Ensure to set them to maximum position.

---

- (4) When the following warnings are issued, this function cannot be used.

**W-48: Actual revolution is higher than directive revolution.**

\* When the above warning is issued, lower the lifting load and turn OFF the key switch.

If the warning does not disappear after restart of the engine, contact Manitowoc service shop.



**G ENGINE control**

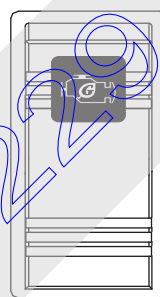
G ENGINE is a function to obtain maximum line speed under no load with maximum engine speed being restricted.

This is effective to save fuel consumption which otherwise is caused by unnecessary engine high speed.

**CAUTION**

Under G ENGINE condition, enough energy for heavy load work with high speed may not be obtained. Ensure to turn to power mode.

- (1) Turn the G ENGINE switch on the upper area of can back face to ON side.  
Green lamp in the main monitor lights up after lever neutral is detected.

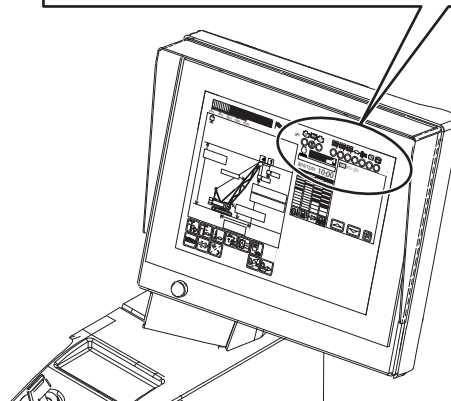
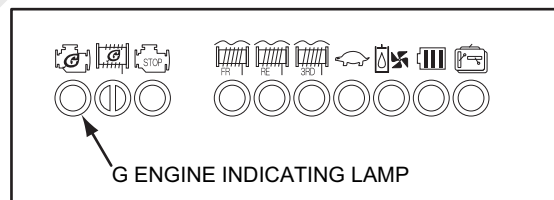


ON (G ENGINE)  
\* The symbol area lights up when the head light is turns on.

OFF (POWER MODE)

- (2) When the following warnings are issued, this function can not be used.  
Power mode is resumed forcibly.

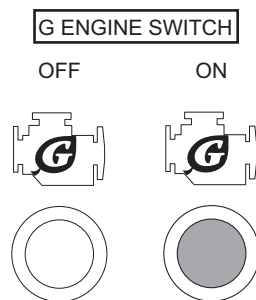
- W-46: Qmax cut SOL output FB - abnormal.**
- W-47: Qmax cut SOL output abnormal.**
- W-48: Actual revolution is higher than directive revolution.**



## 2. OPERATION

---

\* When the above warning is issued, lower the lifting load and turn OFF the key switch.  
If the warning does not disappear after restart of the engine, contact Manitowoc service shop.



12001229

## 2.4 FREE FALL OPERATION (OPTION)

The use of the free fall must be limited to excavating operations with the bucket.

When lifting or lowering the bucket during the FREE FALL mode, be sure to follow the procedures below.

---

**⚠ DANGER**

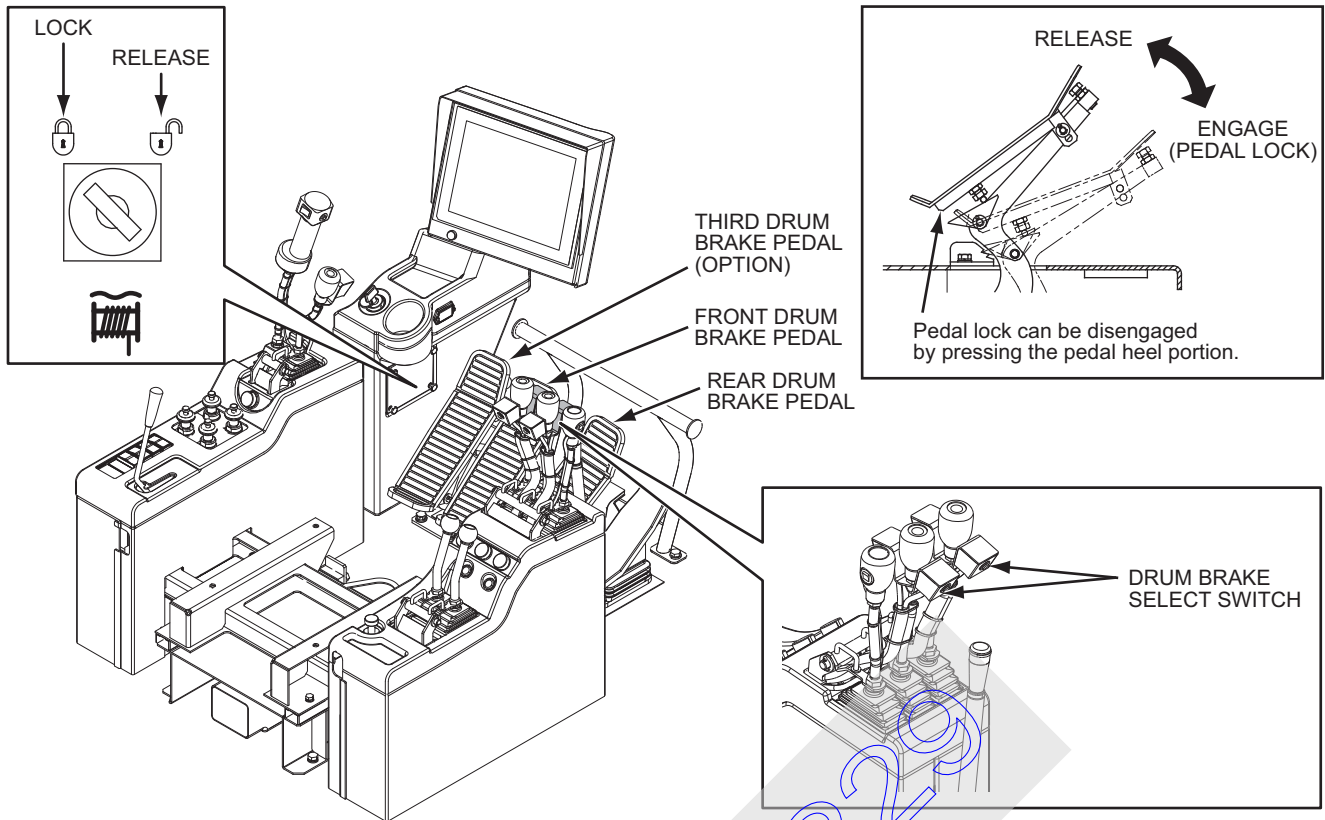
**Perform the crane work with NEUTRAL BRAKE side.**

**Crane work with FREE FALL side may drop the load by operation error.**

---

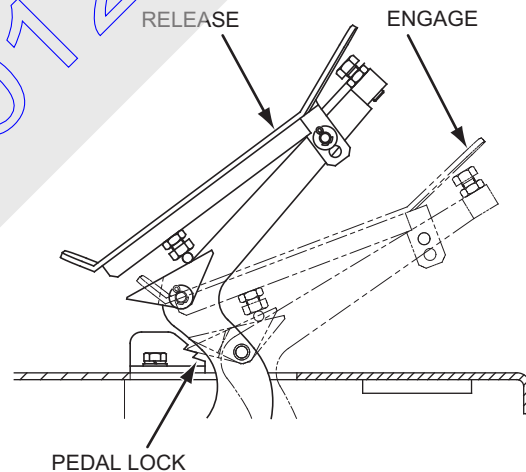
1. Set the "Free Fall Lock Switch" (with key in the left side stand) to the "Release" position.
  2. Set the control lever to the neutral position, and with the brake pedal depressed fully, push the brake selector switch at once.  
The free fall indicator lamp in the monitor lights up to indicate that the brake is in the free fall condition. At this condition, press the brake pedal at its heel portion to disengage the pedal lock and gradually release the brake pedal.  
The lifting load starts lowering.
- When the brake pedal is depressed slightly, the pedal vibrates a little. Depressing the pedal further from this point will actuate the brake.

## 2. OPERATION



### 3. Free fall

- (1) Depress the brake pedal fully.
- (2) Return the drum control lever to the neutral position.
- (3) Slowly release the brake pedal to free fall the bucket.
- (4) Lowering speed is adjusted by adjusting pressure to the brake pedal.



### **CAUTION**

Do not apply abrupt brake during lowering a load with FREE FALLING.

Do not handle the drum lock control during lowering a load with FREE FALLING.

Do not push the drum brake select switch during lowering a load with FREE FALLING.

Do not control the lever during lowering a load with FREE FALLING.

If the free fall lowering speed is high, lifting load control may become difficult.

Use lower speed as much as possible.

4. Raising  
Pulling the drum control lever backward, raising is possible even while the brake pedal remains depressed.
5. Lowering (Power Lowering)  
After pushing the drum control lever forward, lowering is possible even while the brake pedal remains depressed.
6. Stopping  
Depress the brake pedal, and return the drum control lever to the NEUTRAL position.  
The drum is stopped.  
When the pressing amount is small, the brake pedal reacts with "knocking".  
Increase the pressing amount.  
When the load is held in the air for a long time, press the drum brake select switch again to turn into the NEUTRAL BRAKE mode and engage the drum lock.  
Ensure that the free fall indication lamp goes out.

---

**CAUTION**

When the control lever is returned to neutral, the lifting load starts free falling.  
Press the brake pedal.  
If the load is heavy and pedal pressing amount is small, the load may still fall.  
Therefore take extra care.

---

## 2. OPERATION

In case of empty hook, if the free fall speed select switch is turned to speed increase side, lowering speed is increased.

### **CAUTION**

When changing the free fall speed select switch is turned to increase side, do not release brake pedal with the hook on the ground.

The drum automatically rotates to lowering side and this may cause rough spooling.

In case of free-falling the heavy load, do not use free fall speed select switch.

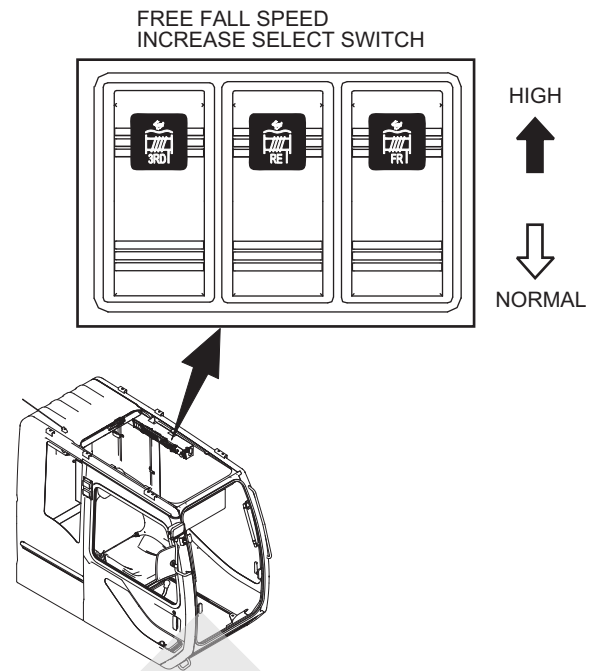
A shock occurs at speed changing.

With the free falling, if auto-stop occurs due to load safety device or over-hoist preventive device, press the brake pedal first and then return the control lever to neutral position.

If the control lever is return to neutral before pressing the brake pedal, the lifting load may be dropped.

Take extra care on this.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious accident.



12001229

Free Brake mode switching		
	Brake → Free	Free → Brake
Function lock lever	Work position	Work position
Free fall lock switch	Release	Release
Drum control lever	Neutral	Neutral
Brake pedal	Depress	Depress
Brake select switch	Push (Once)	Push (Once)
Free lamp	Light up	Goes out
Mode	Free	Brake

6. Switching from "FREE FALL MODE" to "BRAKE MODE"

While the "FREE FALL MODE" is selected, set the drum control lever to the NEUTRAL position, and fully depress the brake pedal.

Push the brake selector switch on the control lever again.

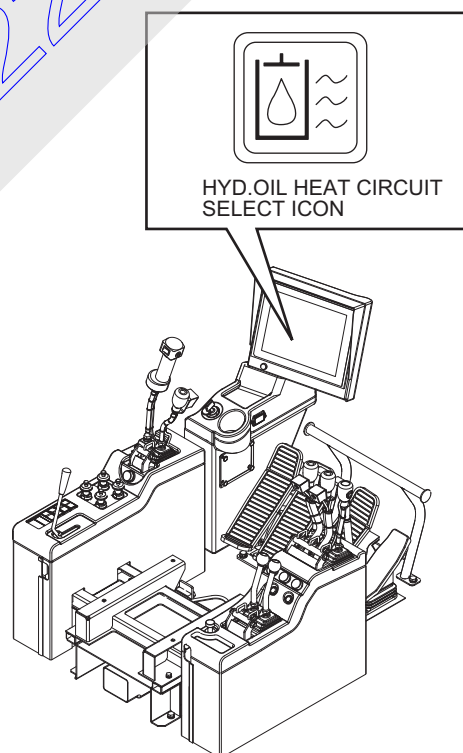
The free fall indicator lamp in the monitor goes out to indicate that the "BRAKE MODE" is selected.

The speed may be slow when the light bucket is lowered by free fall in the cold weather.

In such cases, turn ON the "hydraulic oil heat circuit select icon".

Produce an increase in the hydraulic oil temperature to a certain temperature.

12001229



## 2. OPERATION

---

When the hydraulic oil has been replaced, the feeling of brake operation may change from the experience in the past.

In this case, consult our designated service shop.

When the messages as shown right are indicated on the cluster gauge during the operation, the free fall movement will be disabled.

Lower the lifting load and hook to the ground and turn OFF the key switch.

Power supply will be shut off about 90 seconds later.

Then, restart the engine and start the operation when the message indication disappeared.

If the messages as shown right are still indicated even if the engine has been restarted, stop the operation and contact our designated service shop.



---

### DANGER

**When the error message is indicated, do not stop the engine with the sling load and hook held in the air.**

**If failed to observe this caution, the sling load or the hook may fall.**

---

12001229



## 2.5 CLAMSHELL OPERATION

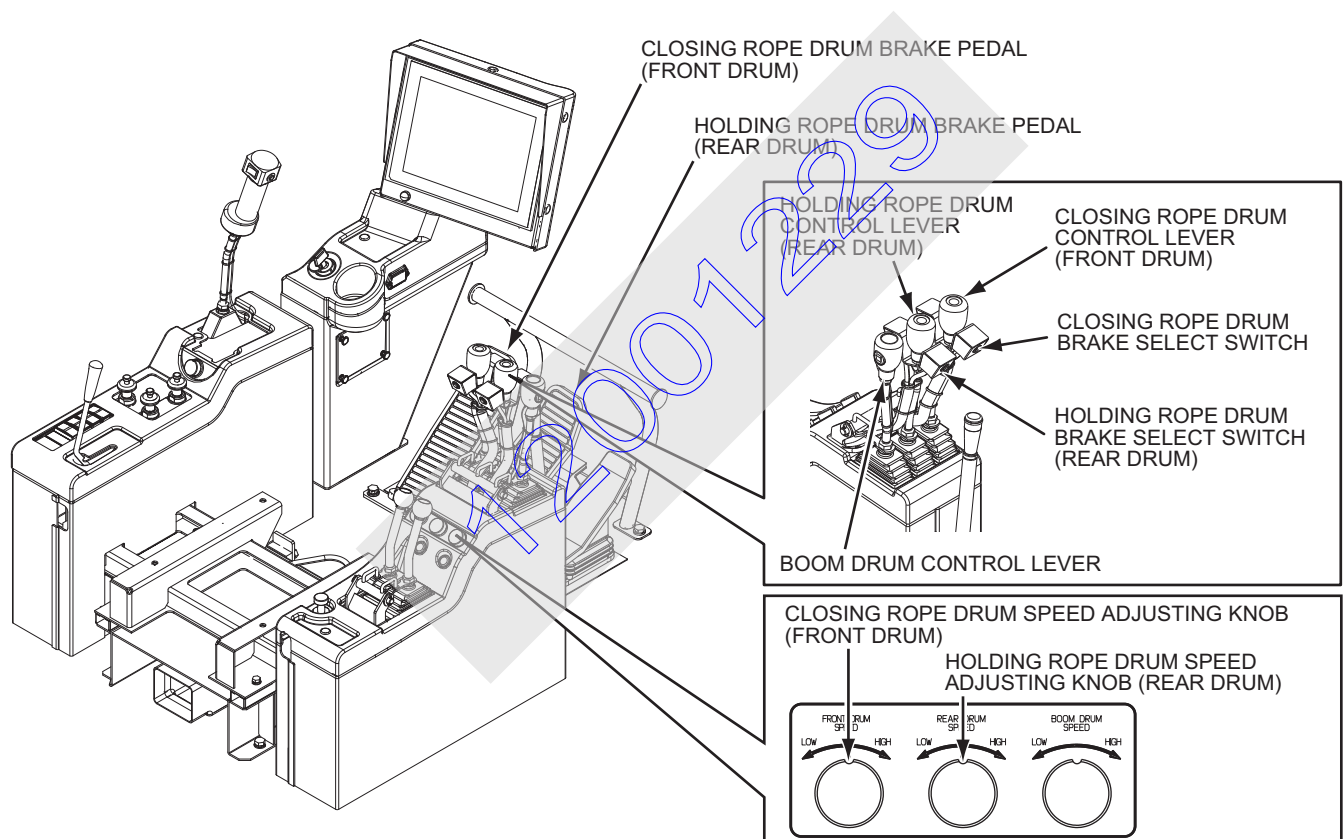
In clamshell operation, the control levers and brake pedals are called with the designations shown in the following figure.

The basic control is the same as crane operation.

### **CAUTION**

Since the clamshell needs repeating of bucket raising/lowering or swing operation, it is likely that the damage to the hoist drum or boom, pin wear or missing or loosening bolts or missing occur.

Ensure to make pre-work or post work inspection surely.



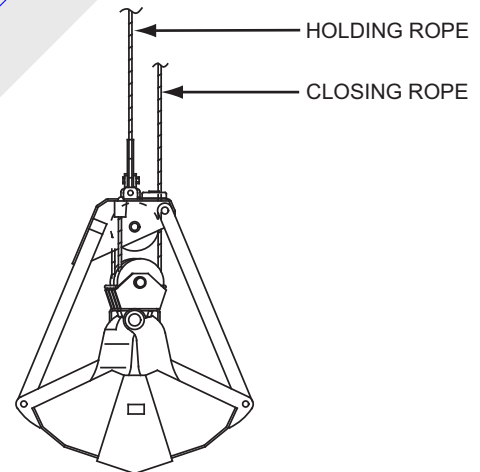
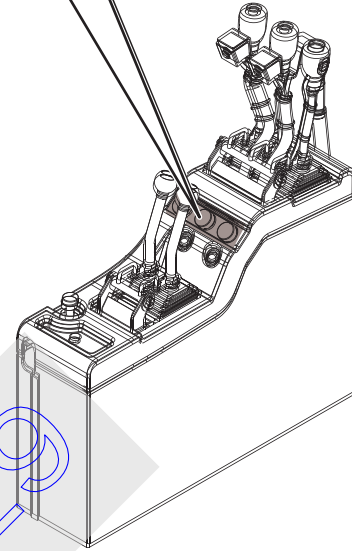
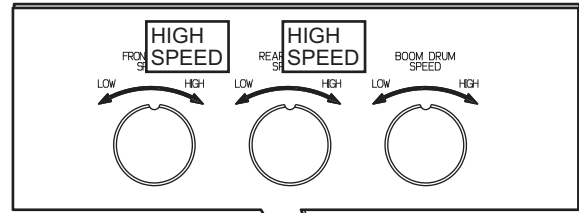
### **CAUTION**

After the work is completed, lower the bucket on the ground and press the closing or holding rope brake pedals and engage the pedal locks and turn to the brake mode and engage each drum lock and then engage the rotation lock on tagline drum after engine is stopped.

## 2. OPERATION

### 2.5.1 PREPARATION WORK

1. Select the capacity of the clamshell bucket to meet the machine specification.  
(Rated load, bucket weight, size)
2. Set the hydraulic tag line rope for bucket swing prevention to the bucket and check for its proper tension.
3. Set the drum speed adjusting knob to maximum.



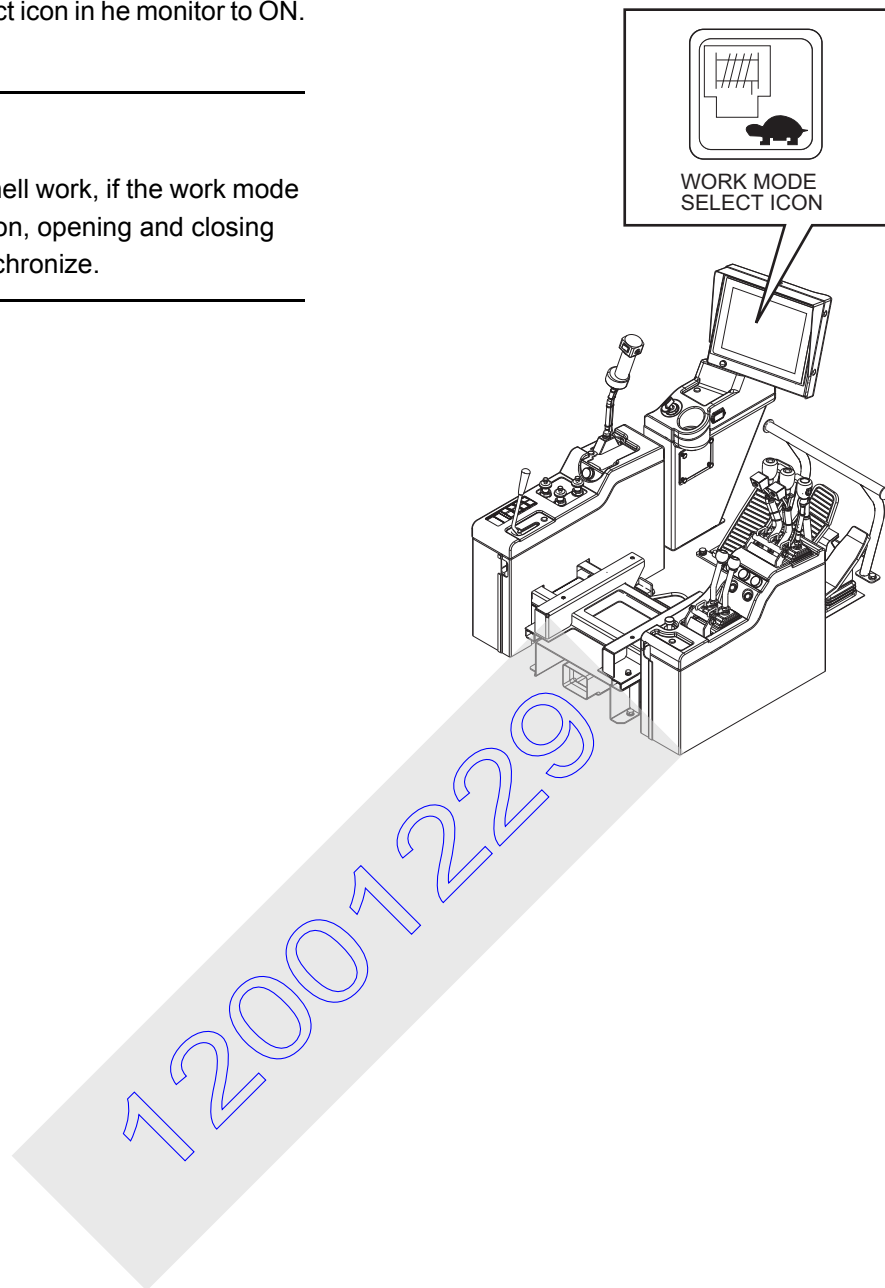
#### Note

As for the drum speed adjusting knob, closing rope and holding rope would not be synchronized other than at maximum speed position.

4. Turn the work mode select icon in the monitor to ON.

**Note**

In case of heavy load clamshell work, if the work mode select icon is in "OFF" position, opening and closing rope may not be able to synchronize.



## 2. OPERATION

5. In case of bucket lowering of clamshell work with free fall mode, change to free fall mode referring to "FREE FALL OPERATION". (P.2-109)
6. Turn the FREE FALL LOCK switch (with key) on the left side stand to the RELEASE side.
6. Press both closing and holding brake pedals and push the drum brake select switch on each control lever to make both brakes to free fall conditions. Confirm the free fall condition with the free fall indicating lamps.
7. Adjust the engine speed with the accel grip.
8. In case the clamshell work load safety device and rated load is specified, load safety device will function.

### CAUTION

Take extra care not to cause overload in the clamshell work. Set the load about 60% to 70% of the clamshell work rated load.  
(Work at about 60% to 70% of the wire rope rated load.)  
Do not shut off the load safety device at the clamshell work.  
Work with the overload condition may cause damage or serious accident such as overturn of to the main machinery or boom.

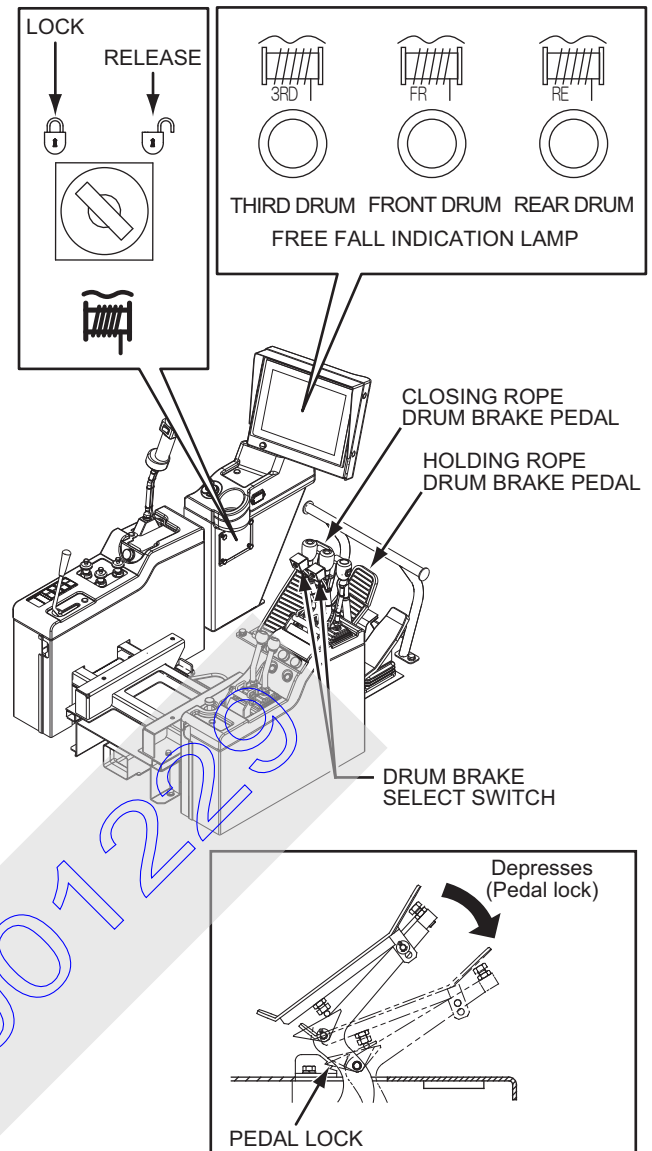
10. Setting of the controller of the load safety device.
  - **In case clamshell lifting capacity is specified.**  
This machine specifies clamshell lifting capacity. When clamshell work has to be done, set the monitor screen as follows.  
Follow the instruction of the selection shown on the screen.

The selection items are attachment type, boom length.

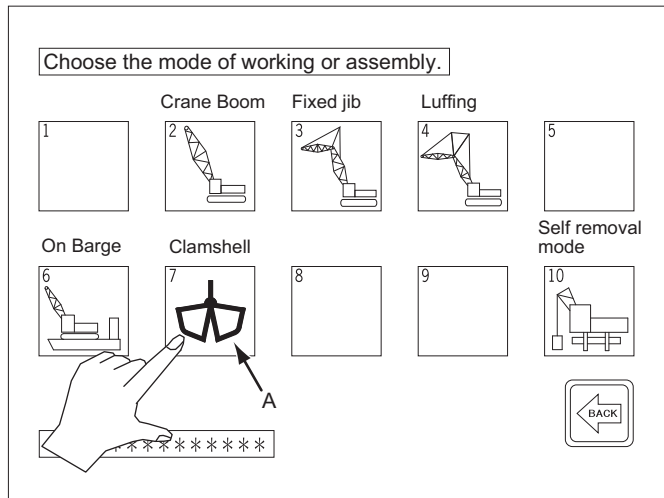
#### Setting example

Attachment type	Clamshell
Boom length	17.3 m (60 ft)

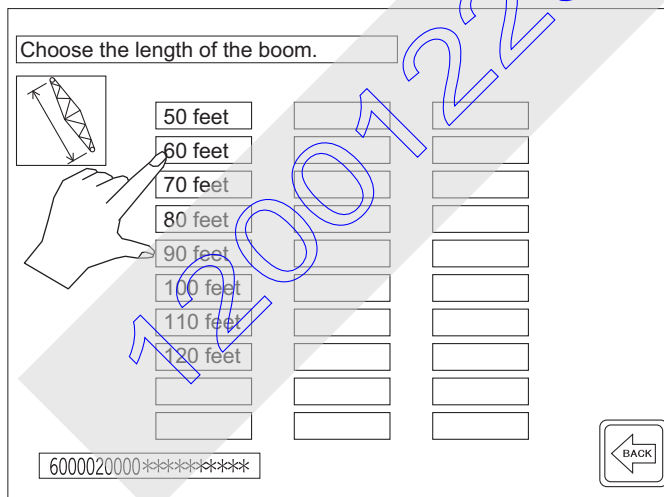
Select in order from (1) to (3).  
If input item is in error, push [BACK] icon to return to the previous screen.  
Refer to P.8-14.



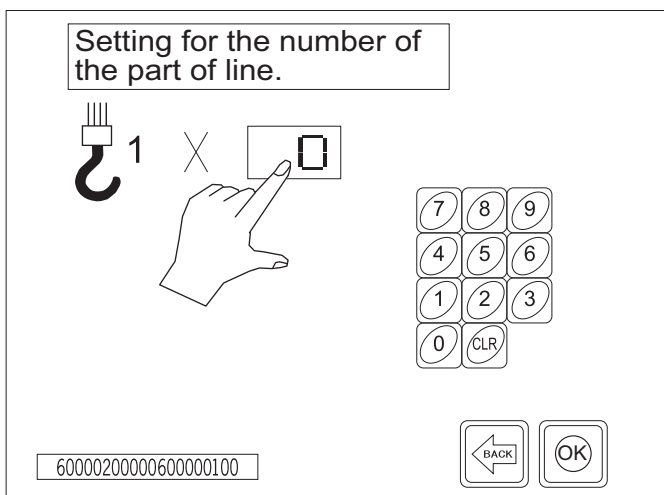
- (1) Attachment select screen becomes indicated.  
 Select [A].



- (2) Boom length select screen becomes indicated.  
 Select [60 feet].

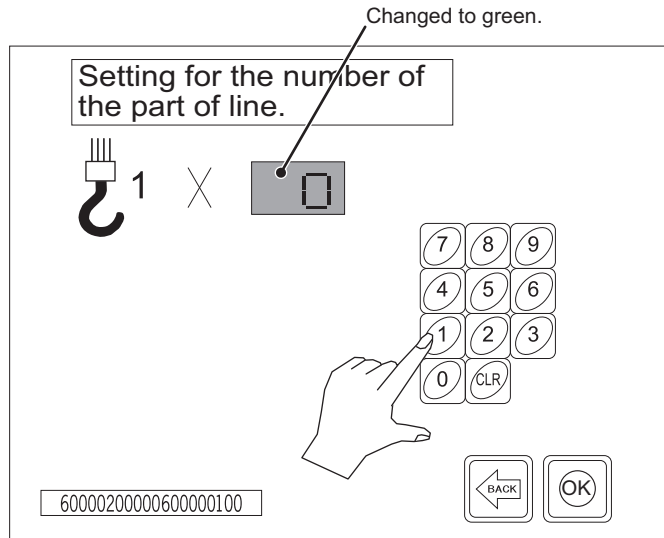


- (3) Push [0] in the number of part line setting.

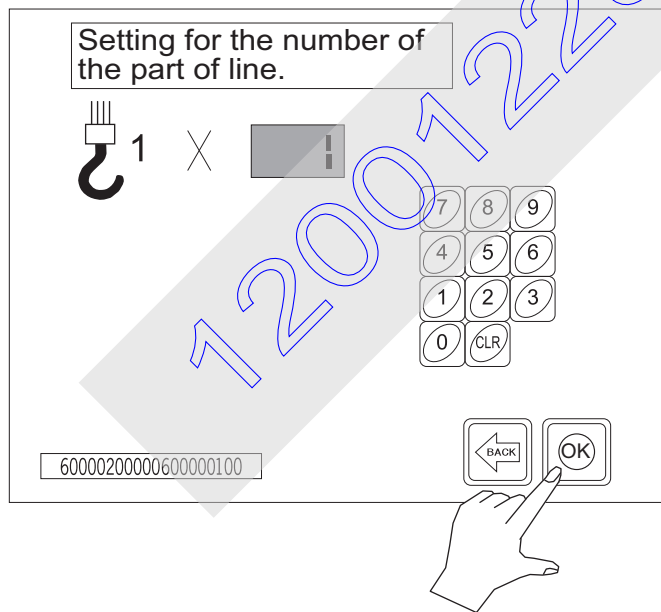


## 2. OPERATION

(4) Push [1] by the number pad.



(5) Push [OK].  
Setting is completed.



## 2.5.2 CLAMSHELL WORK

**CAUTION**

Total weight of bucket and material should not exceed the rated load.

The rated load is decided by machine stability and boom strength.

Never do abrupt acceleration or abrupt deceleration which may cause side load at swing work.

These may damage to the boom or guy line and is very dangerous.

**CONTROL LEVER AND BRAKE PEDAL OPERATION IN CLAMSHELL WORK**

No.	Work condition	Closing rope		Holding rope		Control condition and Caution
		Front drum control lever	Front drum brake lever	Rear drum control lever	Rear drum brake pedal	
1	Digging material	Hoist	* Pedal released (Return)	Neutral (Free condition)	Half brake	Control the holding wire rope by rear drum brake and adjust the bucket bite.
2	Hoist	Hoist	* Pedal released (Return)	Hoist	* Pedal released (Return)	Raise both closing wire rope and holding wire rope together to control not to allow one side loosening.
3	Stop	Neutral	Pedal pressed	Neutral	Pedal pressed	Stop bucket raising motion.
4	Swing	-	-	-	-	
5	Releasing material	Neutral	* Pedal released (Return)	Neutral	Pedal pressed	While swinging, release material and open bucket and keep opening.
6	Swing	-	-	-	-	Move bucket to digging position by swinging.
7	Lowering (Prepare for digging)	Neutral	(Half brake) or Pedal released	Neutral	(Half brake) or Pedal released	Lower bucket with half brake. Take care not to twist rope.

\* mark : Even brake pedal is pressed, raising motion is possible.

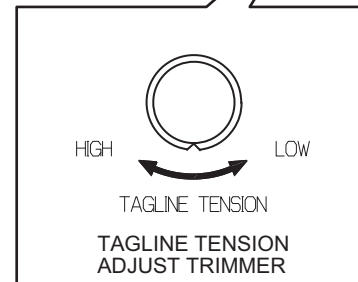
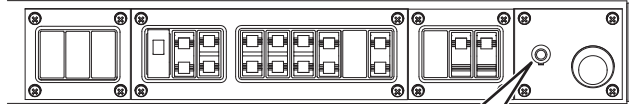
The above is one example of clamshell work.

According to the work condition, combination work is possible such as swinging with raising bucket and releasing material.

## 2. OPERATION

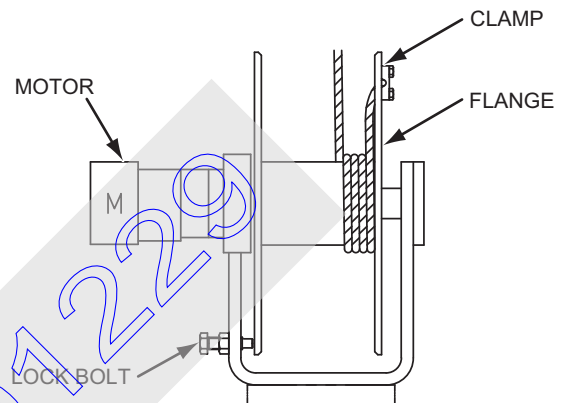
### 2.6 HANDLING OF HYDRAULIC TAGLINE (OPTION)

1. Stop the engine, and set the tagline tension adjusting knob to the lowest setting (fully turn to the left).
2. Remove the lock bolt from the drum flange and lock the bolt with nut.
3. Reeve the wire rope end through the outside of the drum flange, and fix it with a clamp.



#### **WARNING**

When starting the engine, ensure to turn the tagline tension adjust knob to minimum (turn left) and then start the engine.





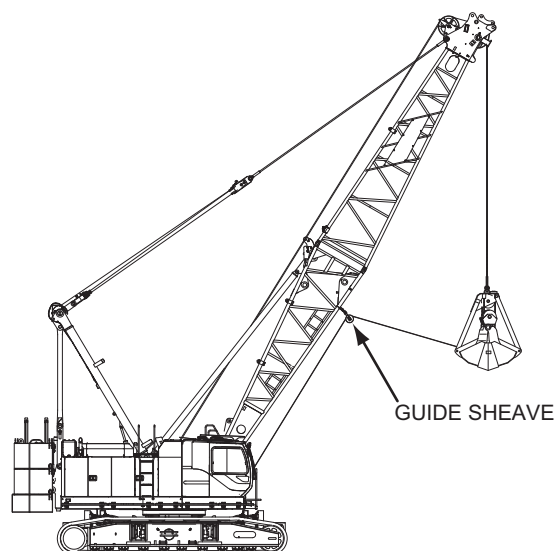
4. Set the other end of the wire rope to the bucket via the guide sheave.
5. Confirm that the tagline tension adjusting knob is at the lowest setting (fully turned to the left), and then start and idle the engine.

---

**WARNING**

**Do not stand close to the drum or tagline wire rope since the tagline rope may be suddenly tensioned or slackened when starting or stopping the engine. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---



6. To wind up the rope on the drum, turn the tagline adjusting knob somewhat to the higher setting, while tensioning the wire rope.

---

**WARNING**

**When the tagline rope is slack, the winding motion suddenly starts by operating the tension adjusting switch. Keep clear of the drum and tagline rope. Make sure to turn the adjusting switch to the weakest position (turning fully counterclockwise) when you come close to the drum and tag line rope. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---

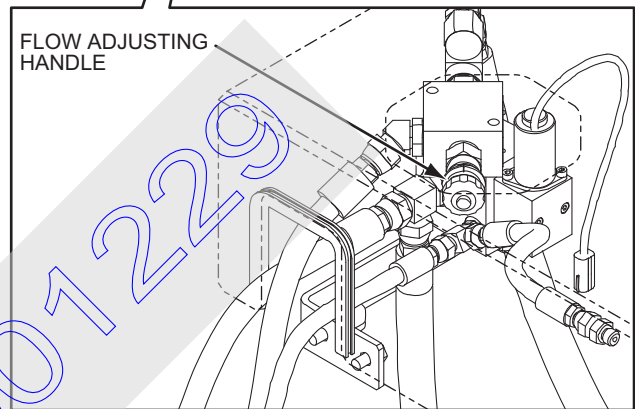
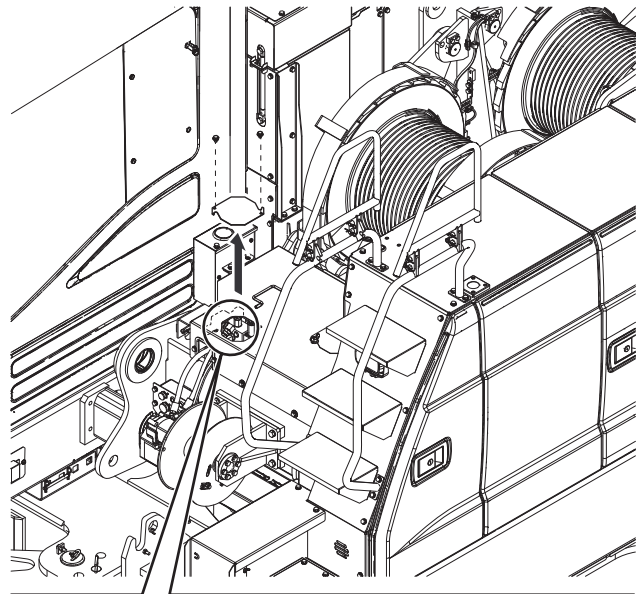
## 2. OPERATION

6. Adjust the wire rope tension with the tagline adjusting knob. Be sure to turn it carefully.  
Turn to the right: Tension increases.  
Turn to the left: Tension decreases.
7. Turn the flow adjusting handle in case of winding speed need to be changed.  
Remove the swing motor cover to access the adjusting handle.

Turn clockwise (Right turn):  
Winding speed decrease (Flow decrease)

Turn counterclockwise (Left turn):  
Winding speed increase (Flow increase)

At the time of shipment, the flow adjusting handle set up at fully counterclockwise position (high speed side).



### Note

When not using the tagline:  
Fully wind up the wire rope on the drum, and fix the wire rope end.  
Set the tension adjusting knob to the lowest setting (fully turn to the left).  
Fix the drum flange with the lock bolt.

## SPECIFICATION

		HYD. Tagline
Relief pressure	MPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )	13.7 (140)
Wire rope type		FC 6 X W (19) Right-hand Regular lay
Breaking strength	kN (kgf)	56.9 (5.91)
Wire rope dia.	mm	10
Wire rope length	m (ft)	45 (148)
Wire rope tension	kN (kgf)	1.67 (170)

## 2.7 HANDLING OF VIBRO HAMMER

### 1. CAUTIONS WHEN USING

(1) Be sure to use a vibro hammer within the rated load.

Total load as below must be within the crane rated load.

- When driving a pile in :  
Total load = (Hook weight + Pile weight + Vibro hammer weight)
- When extracting a pile :  
Total load = (Hook weight + Pile weight + Vibro hammer weight + Centrifugal force [Vibration force] of vibro hammer x 1/4)

(2) Use of Lifting Wire Rope

Place a lifting wire rope in a way that vibration starting force of the vibro hammer is not transmitted directly to the hook.

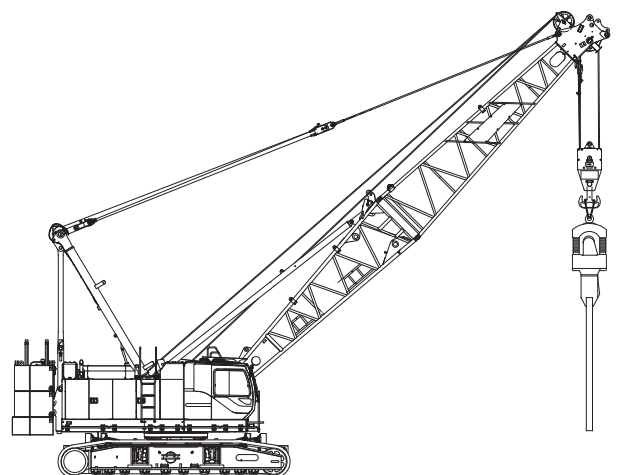
### 2. CAUTIONS WHEN WORKING

#### **CAUTION**

Do not turn the free fall speed select switch to speed increase side in vibro hammer work.  
Otherwise the hoist rope may cause rough spooling.

(1) When starting operation

Place the vibro hammer on the head of the pile, and start with the winch wire rope loosened.



## 2. OPERATION

---

(2) While operating

### **CAUTION**

If the buffer spring becomes contacted, vibration of the vibro hammer would be transmitted directly to the hook, wire rope or boom and damage may be caused.

---

Adjust the hook lowering speed so that the buffer springs does not become tight (closely compressed). Do not operate with the vibro hammer only or rille lifted in the air (idling).

---

### **DANGER**

In pile extracting work by the vibro hammer, while checking the pile with the vibro and raising the load to the extent that the machine rear is lifted up intended to extract the pile with the machine lowering reaction may lead to severe impact to the various portion of the machine and serious accident.

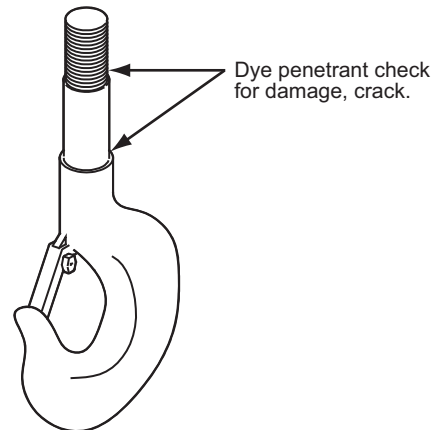
**Never operate such overload work in the vibro work.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

---

(3) When stopping operation

In order to minimize resonance generated when stopping as much as possible, place the vibro hammer on the head of the pile, and stop operation.



3. CHECK AND MAINTENANCE

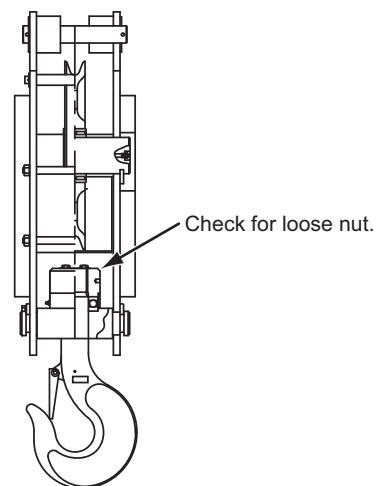
Since larger loads and vibrations are repeated in a short time in vibro hammer operation comparing with crane operation, damage to the boom and hook, etc. and looseness of screws are likely to occur.

Be sure to check carefully before and after operation.

If any abnormality is found, immediately repair or replace.

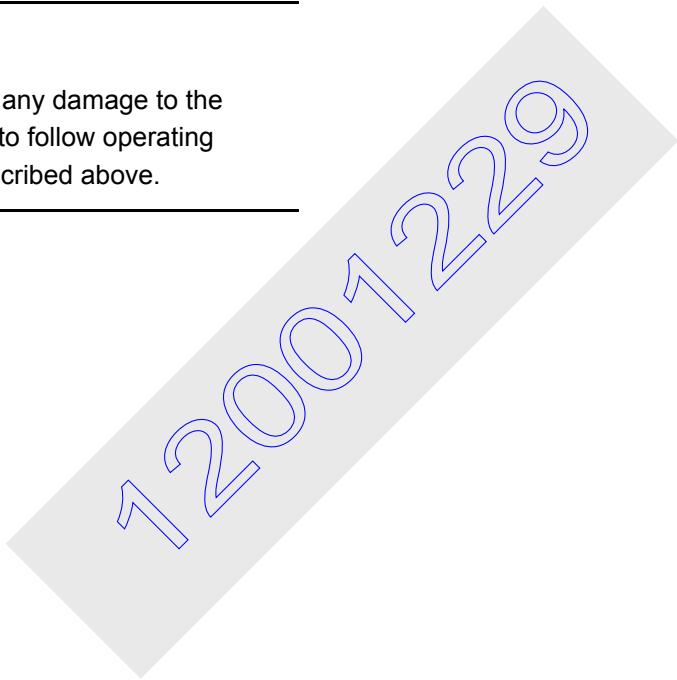
Consult the Manitowoc service shop for disassembly inspection of the hook (dye penetrant check).

Check for looseness or missing of the counterweight nuts once every 5 months.



**CAUTION**

The warranty does not cover any damage to the equipment caused by failure to follow operating instructions and cautions described above.



## 2. OPERATION

---

### 2.8 HANDLING OF REEVING WINCH (OPTION)

Use the reeving winch when the hoist wire rope is to be reeved on the hook.

The reeving winch is used to reeve the wire rope which has been wound on the hoist drum through the boom point sheave and to the hook sheave.

---

**CAUTION**

Do not use the reeving winch for other purpose than mentioned below.

- Reeving work of hoist wire rope between boom point sheave and hook sheave during assembly work
- 

#### Specification

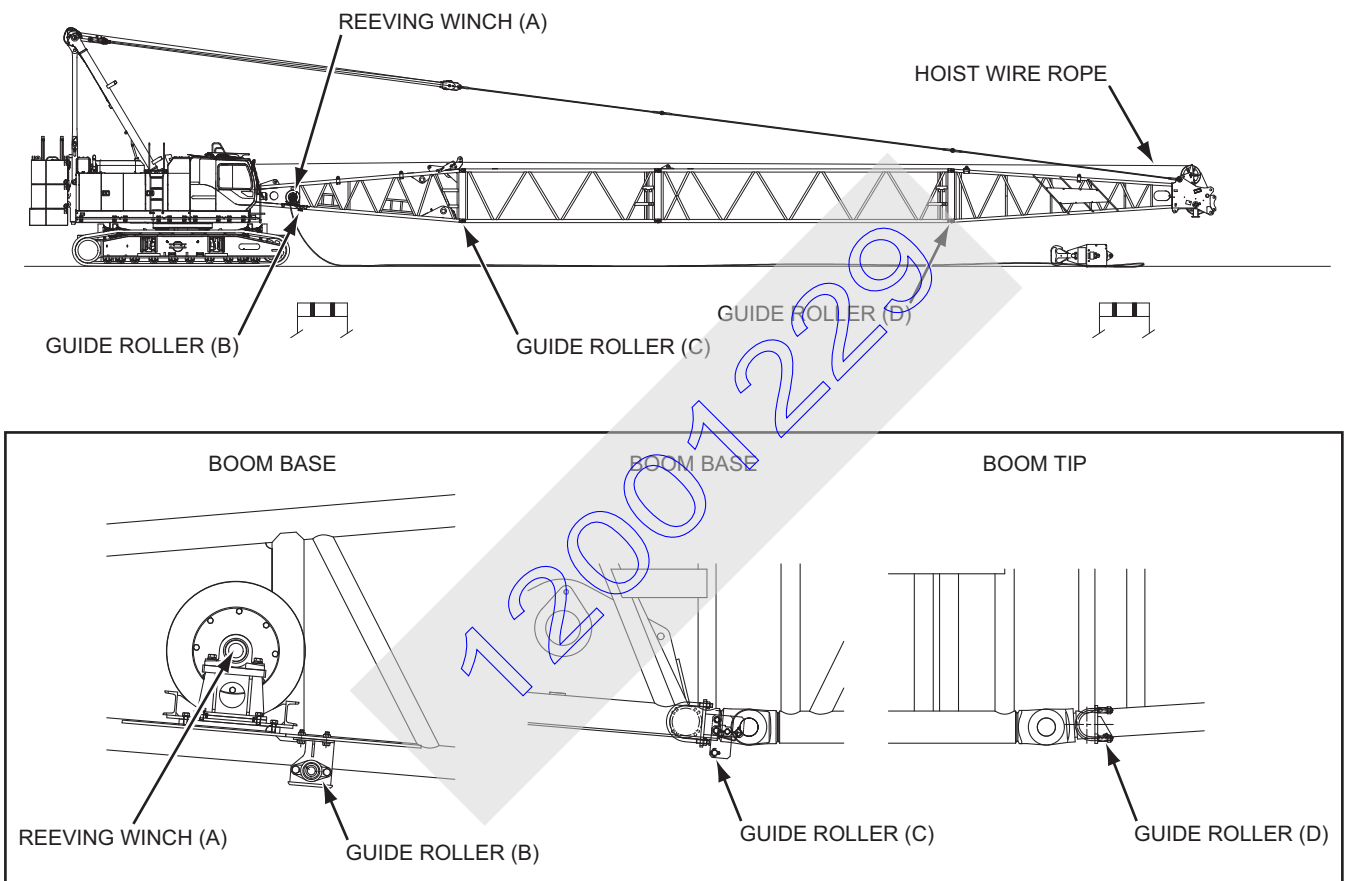
		Reeving winch
Relief pressure	MPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )	12.7 (130)
Wire rope type		FC 6 X W (19) Right-hand Regular lay
Breaking strength	kN (kgf)	37 (3.78)
Wire rope dia.	mm	8
Wire rope length	m (ft)	260 (853)
Wire rope tension	kN (kgf)	6.54 (667)

2.9.1 PREPARATION BEFORE HANDLING REEVING WINCH

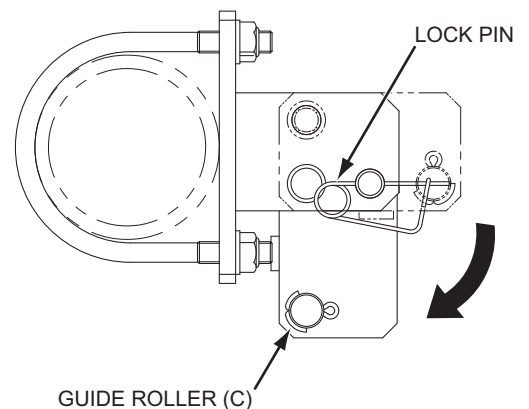
**CAUTION**

- Use hand protection such as leather glove to avoid injuries when handling the wire rope.
- Take extra care for moving wire rope to avoid an accident of being caught or entanglement.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injury or loss of life.

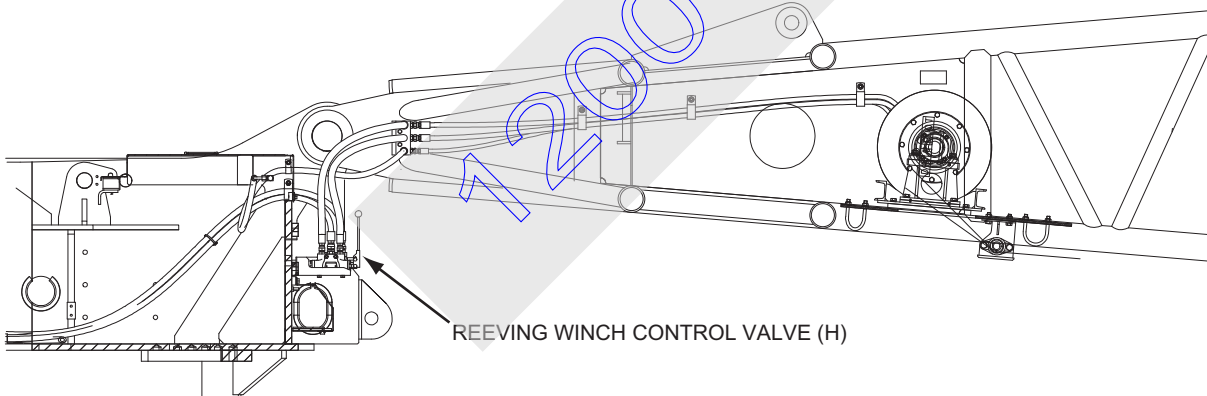
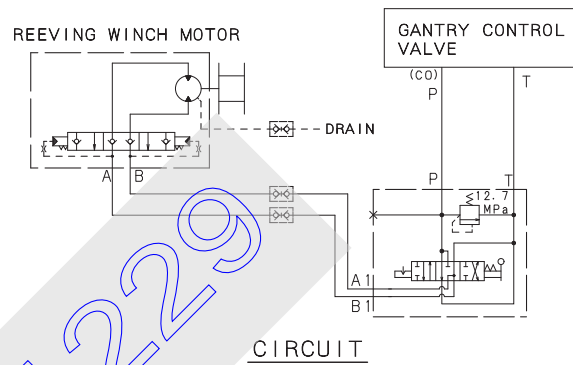
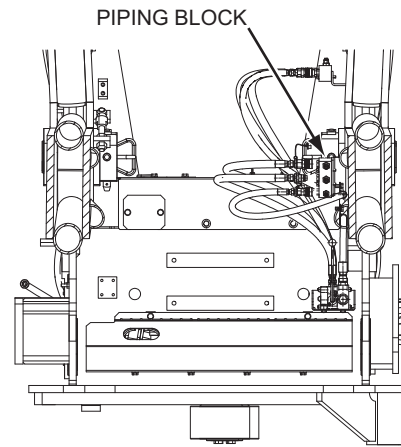


1. Set the boom in horizontal condition.
2. Place the hook to be used near the boom point. Put the hook down on the ground, since a standing hook may fall.

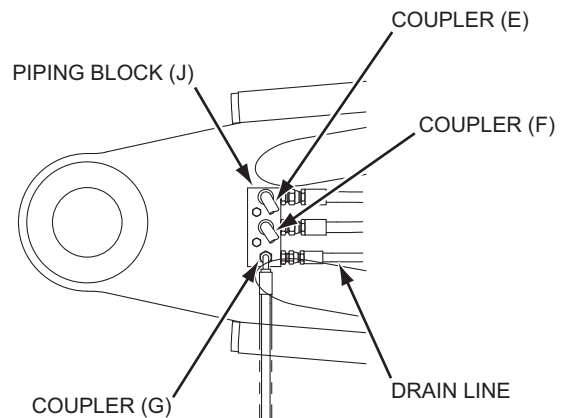


## 2. OPERATION

3. Take out the roller of the guide roller (C) to the work positions and secure with the lock pin.



4. Connect the hoses from the reeving winch control valve (H) to the piping block (J) on the boom base left side with each hose coupler (E) (F) (G). Connect each hose coupler so that the male and female fitting of the piping block (J) match each other.

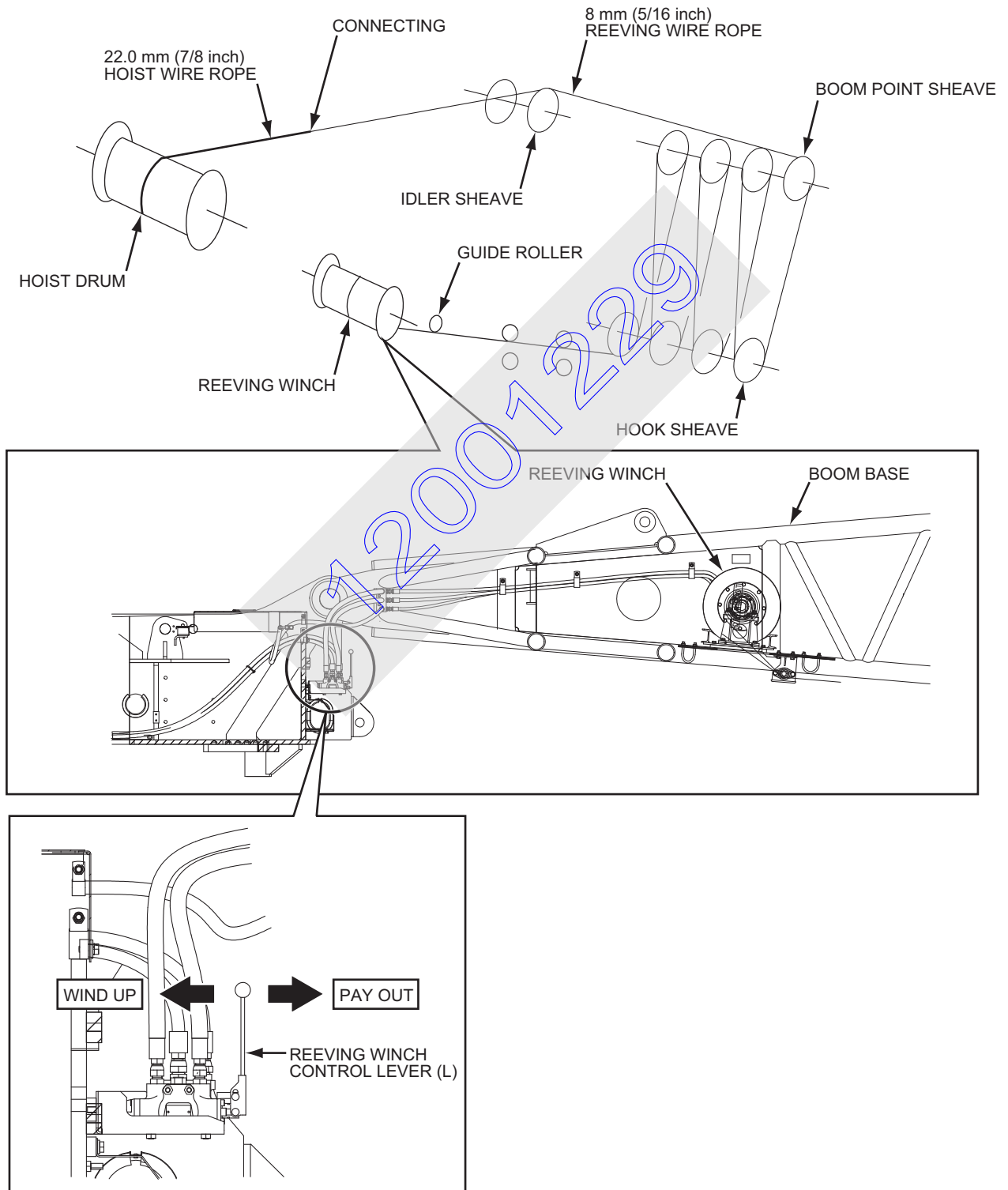




2.9.2 HANDLING PROCEDURE OF REEVING WINCH

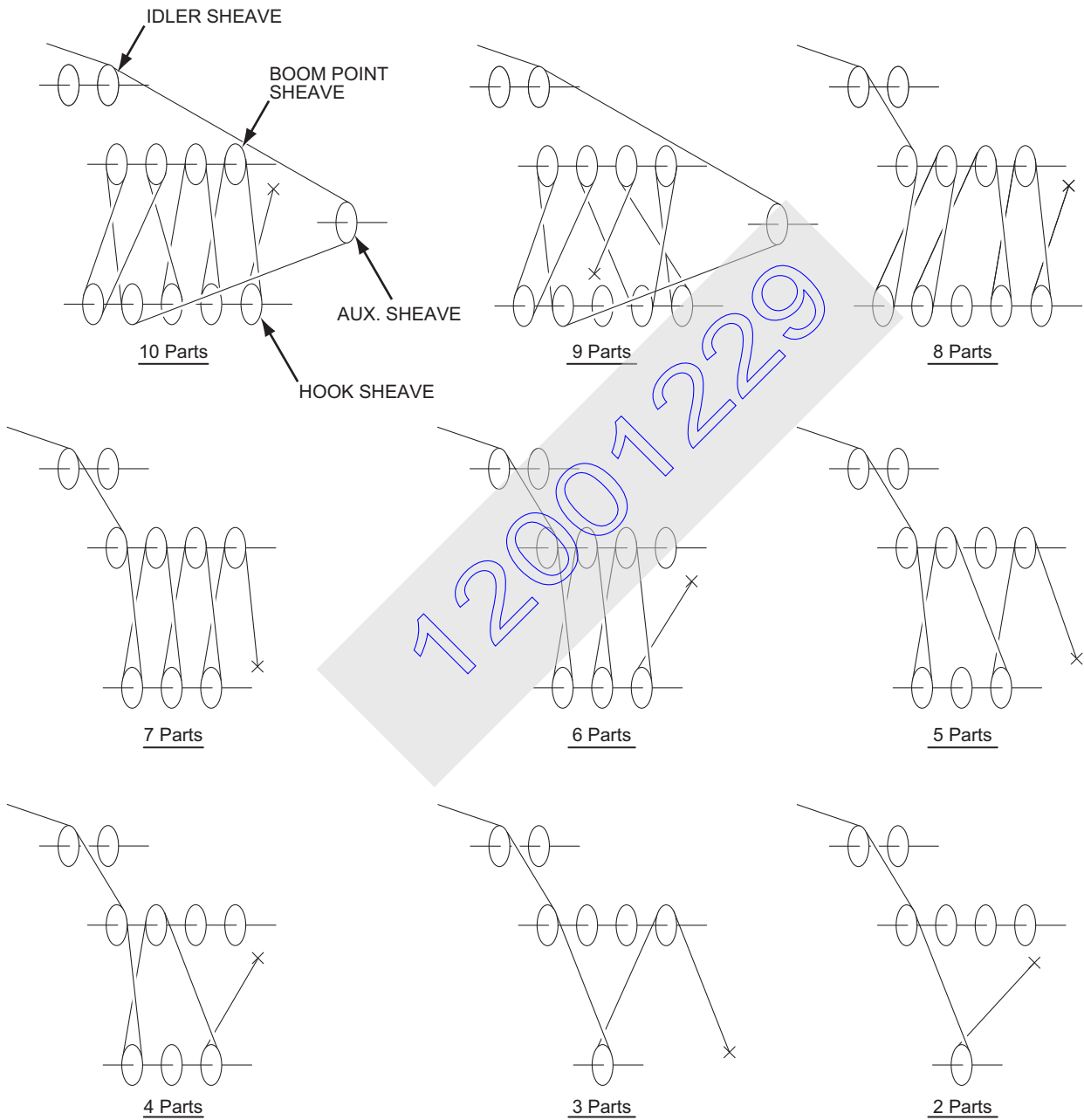
Reeving of hoist wire rope between the boom point sheave and the hook sheave is explained here.

1. Start the engine and set to idling (800 min<sup>-1</sup>).
2. Pay out the hoist wire rope to be reeved between the boom point and the hook to around the top boom idler sheave area.



## 2. OPERATION

- Turn the reeving winch control lever (L) to pay out side and pay out the reeving winch wire rope from the boom foot to the boom point area.  
In this case, pay out the reeving winch wire rope for some extra length for part line of the hoist wire rope.
- Reeving wire rope shall be through the point sheave and hook sheave from the opposite side of the hoist wire rope.

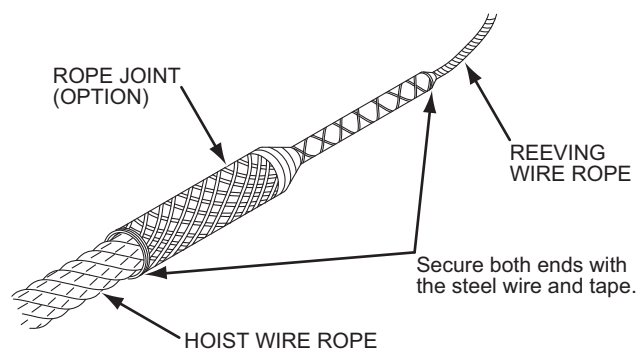


(This figure is view from the boom tip side.)

5. Connect the hoist wire rope and the reeving wire rope between the point sheave and the idler sheave or before passing through the idler sheave. If the rope joint as shown right is used to connect both wire ropes, disconnection after reeving would be easier.

Push in both hoist wire rope and the reeving wire rope fully and draw through the wire ropes by hand for a few times to stretch the joint area.

Secure both ends with the steel wire tightly to connect the hoist wire rope and the reeving wire rope.



### CAUTION

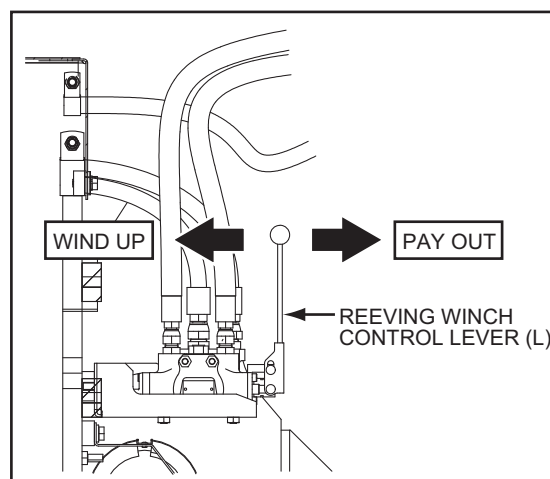
- Use rope joint commercially available in the market. (Do not use a hand made one)
- Do not use the rope joint damaged in the joint area.
- If the insertion into the rope joint is not enough, wire rope may slip out. Insert firmly and secure with the steel wire tightly.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious accident.

6. Turn the reeving winch control lever (L) slowly to the wind up side and take up the reeving wire rope slack around the boom lower face and between both sheaves.

6. Then by turning the hoist wire rope drum control lever to lowering side and setting the lowering side to free fall and slowly turn the reeving winch control lever (L) to wind up side to wind up the hoist wire rope between both sheaves.

At this time, make sure that the reeving wire rope runs under the guide rollers (B) (C) (D) of the boom lower face and not interfering with the boom lattice pipe.



## 2. OPERATION

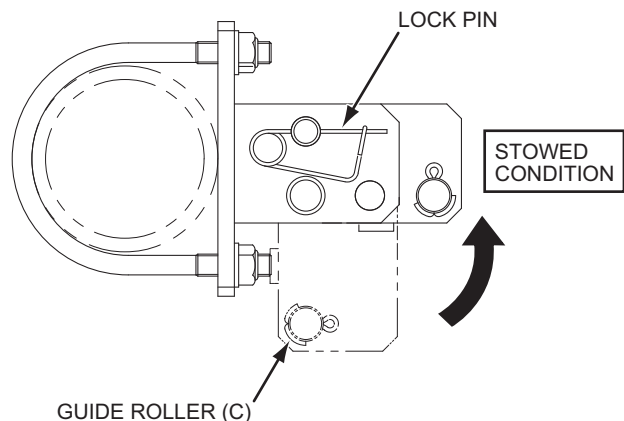
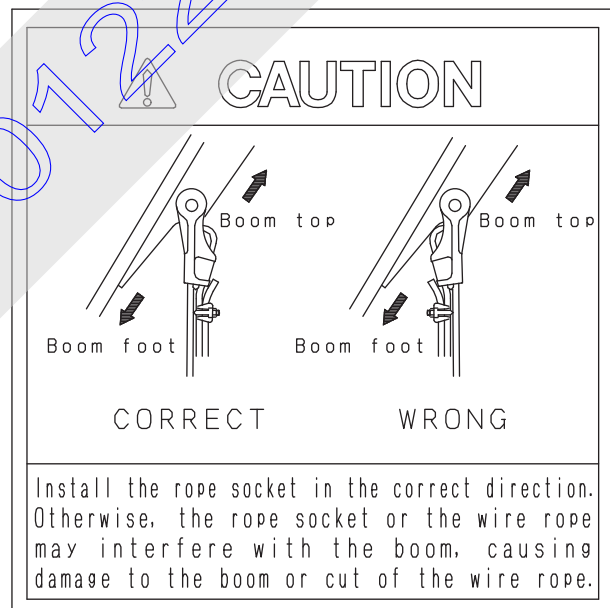
### CAUTION

Proceed on winding up work without applying tension on both wire ropes.

If both wire ropes are tensioned, rope joint may break or the boom may be damaged.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

7. When the winding up work of the hoist wire rope is completed, stop the hoist drum and return the reeving winch control lever (L) to neutral.
8. Disconnect the rope joint and wind up the paid out reeving winch wire rope completely to the drum of the reeving winch (A).  
Secure the reeving wire rope to the drum with the steel wire.
10. Pass the hook over-hoist limit switch weight through the hoist rope end and attach the rope socket to the hoist rope end and secure them to the boom point area with the bolts , nuts and the splits pins.  
Open the split pins to approx. 60 degrees.
11. Return the guide roller (C) installed on the boom base to the stowed position and secure with the lock pins.



## 2.9 OPERATION IN WEATHER CHANGE AND SPECIAL CIRCUMSTANCE

This article explains countermeasures in operation when strong wind, lightning, electric shock or radio wave interference occurs.

### 2.9.1 CAUTION AGAINST WIND

#### **⚠ DANGER**

Lifting load swinging due to strong wind may lead to serious accident such as overturn of the machine.

Strictly observe the following precautions to prevent accident.

Failure to observe these precautions may lead to serious accident, injuries or loss of life.

#### 1. INFLUENCE OF WIND

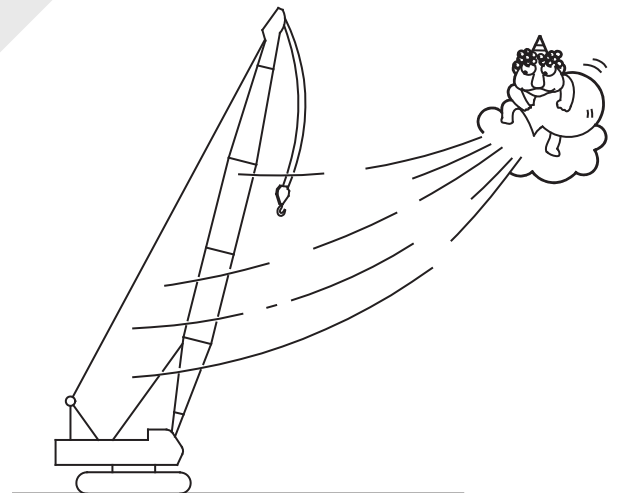
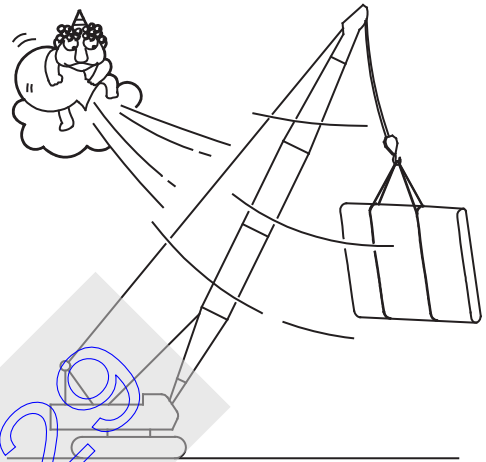
Influence of the wind on the machine becomes larger in proportion to the size of a lifted load, lifting height, and boom length.

The following conditions are very dangerous, so utmost care is necessary for operation.

(1) When lifting a load of wide area, against which the wind blows hard, the wind could cause the overturn of the machine and damage to the boom.

The wind could also blow the load against the boom, and could cause damage.

(2) When the boom is fully raised without a load, the wind could blow the boom backward resulting in an overturn of the machine.



## 2. OPERATION

### 2. CAUTIONS FOR WIND

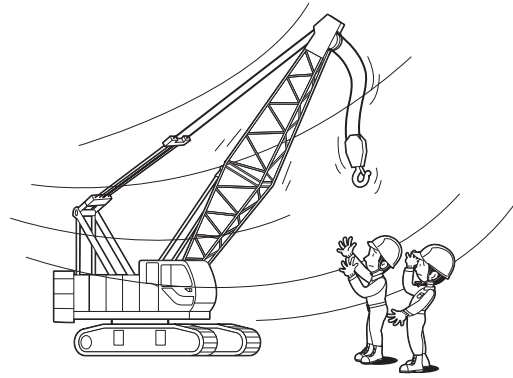
When performing crane operation in strong wind, utmost cautions are required according to the wind speed, machine condition and working environment.

The wind speed is different on the ground than in the high air.

It is also different on flat ground and in city air.

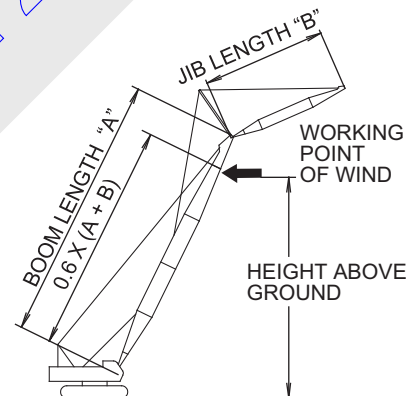
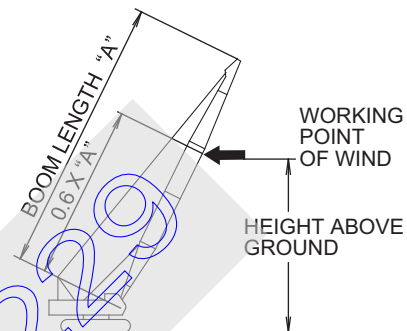
Always consider these conditions and take proper measures to meet the situation.

The wind speed mentioned here means the instantaneous wind speed. When the wind speed exceeds 22 MPH stop the work.



### 3. METHOD OF WIND SPEED MEASUREMENT

- (1) If an instantaneous anemometer is provided in the machine, measure the wind speed with the anemometer provided.
- (2) If an instantaneous anemometer is not provided in the machine, the wind speed given by a weather report can be converted to the instantaneous wind speed based on convention chart in P.2-137.
- (3) The instantaneous wind speed can be approximated by the Beaufort chart (refer to P.2-138).  
The position where the wind works against the machine is the height above the ground.



Wind speed in the weather report is average wind speed in 10 minutes.  
 This must be converted into instantaneous wind speed.

**Conversion Table of Wind Speed [m/s (MPH)]**

Height above ground : m (ft)	Wind speed 3 m/s (6.7 MPH)				Wind speed 5 m/s (11.2 MPH)				Wind speed 8 m/s (17.9 MPH)				Wind speed 10 m/s (22.4 MPH)			
	Flat area		City area		Flat area		City area		Flat area		City area		Flat area		City area	
	Av.	Inst.	Av.	Inst.	Av.	Inst.	Av.	Inst.	Av.	Inst.	Av.	Inst.	Av.	Inst.	Av.	Inst.
5 (17)	2.7 (6.0)	9.8 (21.9)	2.5 (5.6)	10.0 (22.4)	4.5 (10.0)	11.7 (26.2)	4.2 (9.4)	11.4 (25.5)	7.1 (15.9)	14.5 (32.4)	6.7 (15.0)	14.0 (31.3)	8.9 (19.9)	16.3 (36.5)	8.4 (18.8)	15.8 (35.3)
10 (33)	3.0 (6.7)	10.2 (22.8)	3.0 (6.7)	10.2 (22.8)	5.0 (11.2)	12.3 (27.5)	5.0 (11.2)	12.3 (27.5)	8.0 (17.9)	15.4 (34.4)	8.0 (17.9)	15.4 (34.4)	10.0 (22.4)	17.5 (39.1)	10.0 (22.4)	17.5 (39.1)
15 (50)	3.2 (7.2)	10.4 (23.3)	3.3 (7.4)	10.5 (23.5)	5.4 (12.1)	12.7 (28.4)	5.6 (12.5)	12.9 (28.9)	8.6 (19.2)	16.0 (35.8)	8.9 (19.9)	16.3 (36.5)	10.7 (23.9)	18.2 (40.7)	11.1 (24.8)	18.7 (41.8)
20 (66)	3.4 (7.6)	10.5 (23.5)	3.6 (8.0)	10.8 (24.2)	5.6 (12.5)	12.9 (28.9)	6.0 (13.4)	13.3 (29.8)	9.0 (20.1)	16.5 (36.9)	9.5 (21.3)	17.0 (38.0)	11.2 (25.0)	18.8 (42.1)	11.9 (26.6)	19.5 (43.6)
25 (82)	3.5 (7.8)	10.7 (23.9)	3.8 (8.5)	11.0 (24.6)	5.9 (13.2)	13.2 (29.5)	6.3 (14.1)	13.6 (30.4)	9.4 (21.0)	16.9 (37.8)	10.1 (22.6)	17.6 (39.4)	11.7 (26.2)	19.3 (43.2)	12.6 (28.2)	20.2 (45.2)
30 (99)	3.6 (8.0)	10.8 (24.2)	4.0 (8.9)	11.2 (25.0)	6.0 (13.4)	13.3 (29.8)	6.6 (14.8)	13.9 (31.1)	9.6 (21.5)	17.1 (38.3)	10.6 (23.7)	18.1 (40.5)	12.0 (26.8)	19.6 (43.8)	13.2 (29.5)	20.9 (46.8)
40 (132)	3.8 (8.5)	11.0 (24.6)	4.2 (9.4)	11.5 (25.7)	6.3 (14.1)	13.6 (30.4)	7.1 (15.9)	14.5 (32.4)	10.1 (22.6)	17.5 (39.4)	11.3 (25.3)	18.9 (42.3)	12.6 (28.2)	20.2 (45.2)	14.1 (31.5)	21.8 (48.8)
50 (164)	3.9 (8.7)	11.1 (24.8)	4.5 (10.0)	11.7 (26.2)	6.6 (14.8)	13.9 (31.1)	7.5 (16.8)	14.9 (33.3)	10.5 (23.5)	18.0 (40.3)	12.0 (26.8)	19.6 (43.8)	13.1 (29.3)	20.8 (46.5)	15.0 (33.6)	22.8 (51.0)
75 (260)	4.2 (9.4)	11.4 (25.5)	5.0 (11.2)	12.2 (27.3)	7.0 (15.7)	14.4 (32.2)	8.3 (18.6)	15.7 (35.1)	11.2 (25.0)	18.8 (42.1)	13.2 (29.5)	20.9 (46.8)	14.0 (31.3)	21.7 (48.5)	16.5 (36.9)	24.8 (55.5)
100 (328)	4.4 (9.8)	11.6 (25.9)	5.3 (11.9)	12.6 (28.2)	7.4 (16.6)	14.8 (33.1)	8.9 (19.9)	16.3 (36.5)	11.8 (26.4)	19.4 (43.4)	14.2 (31.8)	21.9 (49.0)	14.7 (32.9)	22.4 (50.1)	17.8 (39.8)	26.7 (59.7)

Note 1: Wind speed may be higher than the above value near tall buildings.

## 2. OPERATION

### Beaufort Wind Scale Chart

Approximate wind speed at 10 m (33 ft) height from the open and flat ground	Details
m/s (MPH)	On land
Less than 0.3 (0.7)	Calm, smoke rises vertically.
0.3 (0.7) to less than 1.6 (3.6)	Smoke drift indicates wind direction, still wind vanes.
1.6 (3.6) to less than 3.4 (7.6)	Wind felt on face, leaves rustle, vanes begin to move.
3.4 (7.6) to less than 5.5 (12.3)	Leaves and small twigs constantly moving, light flags extended.
5.5 (12.3) to less than 8.0 (17.9)	Dust, leaves, and loose paper lifted, twigs move.
8.0 (17.9) to less than 10.8 (24.2)	Many whitecaps, leaf in small trees begin to sway.
10.8 (24.2) to less than 13.9 (31.1)	Larger tree branches moving, whistling in wires, hard to walk under an umbrella.
13.9 (31.1) to less than 17.2 (38.5)	Whole trees moving, resistance felt walking against wind.
17.2 (38.5) to less than 20.8 (46.5)	Twigs broken, cannot walk against wind.
20.8 (46.5) to less than 24.5 (54.8)	Slight structural damage occurs, chimney broken, slate blows off roofs.
24.5 (54.8) to less than 28.5 (63.8)	Seldom experienced on land, trees broken or uprooted, and considerable structural damage.
28.5 (63.8) to less than 32.7 (73.1)	Scarcely experienced, damages occur in wide areas.
32.7 (73.1) or more	

12001229



**COUNTERMEASURE AGAINST WIND (CRANE)**

Take the following actions based on wind speed at work area.

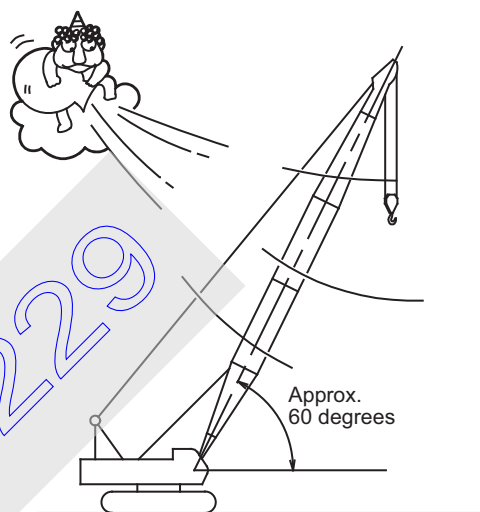
Take the same action in case strong wind is expected after work.

The wind speed here means

[Instantaneous wind speed]

- **In case the wind speed is 22 to 35 MPH stop the work and take the following actions.**

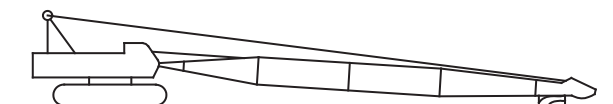
1. Lower the load on the ground and remove it from the hook.
2. Set the boom angle to approx. 60 degrees.
3. Swing the machine to receive the wind at the counterweight side.  
(Receive the wind at the back face of the boom.)
4. Lock the winch and swing brake and stop the engine.



- **In case wind speed is higher than 35 MPH lower the boom on the ground taking the following actions.**

1. In case when the wind speed is 35 to 67 MPH and the attachment can be lowered on the ground.

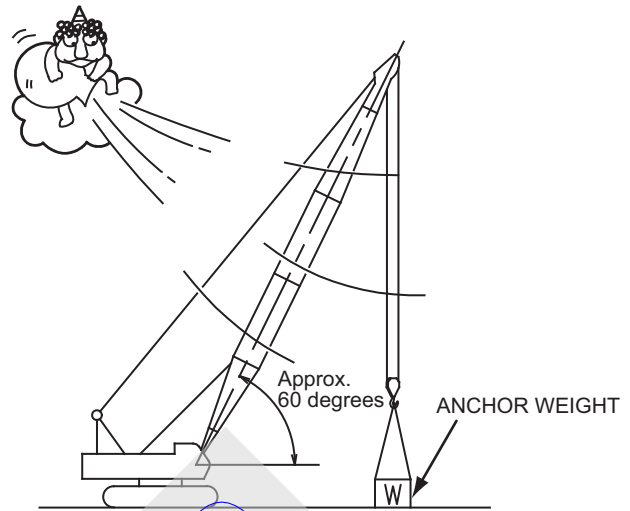
- (1) Lower the load on the ground and remove it from the hook.
- (2) Lower the boom on the ground.  
If swing is necessary, swing with approx. 60 degrees boom angle.
- (3) Lock the winch and swing brake and stop the engine.



## 2. OPERATION

2. In case when the wind speed is 22 to 67 MPH and the attachment cannot be lowered on the ground, take the following actions with the emergency anchor weight prepared as shown below.

- (1) Lower the load on the ground and remove it from the hook.
- (2) Set the boom angle to approx. 60 degrees.
- (3) Swing the machine to receive the wind at the counterweight side.  
(Receive the wind at the back face of the boom.)
- (4) Connect the hook to the anchor weight and apply tension the hoist rope.
- (5) Lock the winch and swing brake and stop the engine.



### CRANE ANCHOR WEIGHT

Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle (degrees)	Anchor weight t (lbs)
15.2 to 26.4 (50 to 90)	60	-
30.5 to 42.7 (100 to 140)		0.8 (1,800)
45.7 to 61.0 (150 to 200)		2.6 (5,800)
64.0 to 70.1 (210 to 230)		3.6 (8,000)

- **In case wind speed is higher than 67 MPH.**  
Ensure to lower the attachment on the ground as per the previously mentioned procedure.

**COUNTERMEASURE AGAINST WIND (WITH JIB)**

Prepare the anchor weight as shown below.

1. Lower the load on the ground and remove it from the hook.
2. Set the boom angle to approx. 60 degrees.
3. Swing the machine to receive the wind at the counterweight side.  
(Receive the wind at the back face of the boom.)
4. Connect the hook to the anchor weight and apply tension to the hoist rope.

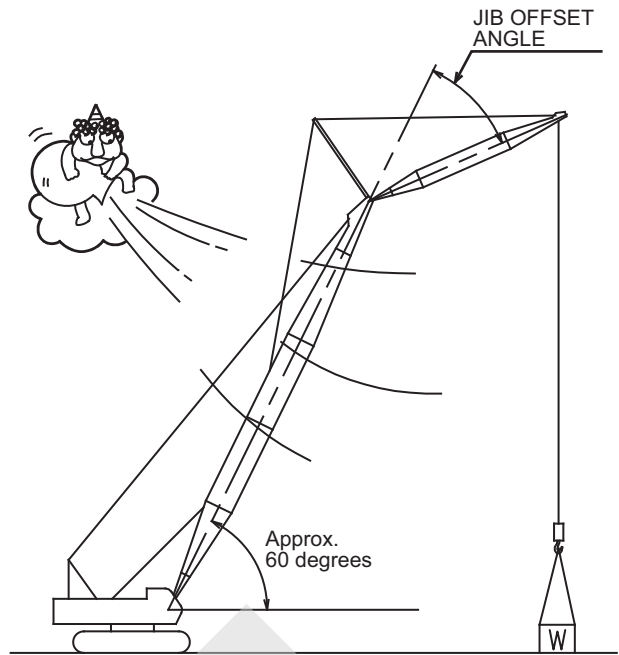
**ANCHOR WEIGHT (WITH JIB)**

Jib length m (ft)	Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle (degrees)	Anchor weight t (lbs)	
			Offset angle 10 degrees	Offset angle 30 degrees
8.1 (30)	26.4 to 36.6 (90 to 120)	60	1.7 (3,800)	1.1 (2,500)
	38.8 to 51.8 (130 to 170)		3.6 (8,000)	2.9 (6,500)
	54.9 to 61.0 (180 to 200)		5.2 (12,000)	4.2 (9,300)
12.2 and 15.2 (40 and 50)	26.4 to 36.6 (90 to 120)		1.8 (4,000)	1.0 (2,300)
	38.8 to 51.8 (130 to 170)		3.7 (8,200)	2.6 (5,800)
	54.9 to 61.0 (180 to 200)		5.3 (12,000)	3.8 (8,400)
17.3 and 21.3 (60 and 70)	26.4 to 36.6 (90 to 120)		2.0 (4,500)	0.9 (2,000)
	38.8 to 51.8 (130 to 170)		3.8 (8,400)	2.4 (5,300)
	54.9 to 61.0 (180 to 200)		5.5 (13,000)	3.5 (7,800)

## 2. OPERATION

---

5. Lock the winch and swing brake and stop the engine.



- **In case when the wind speed is expected to exceed 67 MPH.**  
Lower the boom on the ground in advance.

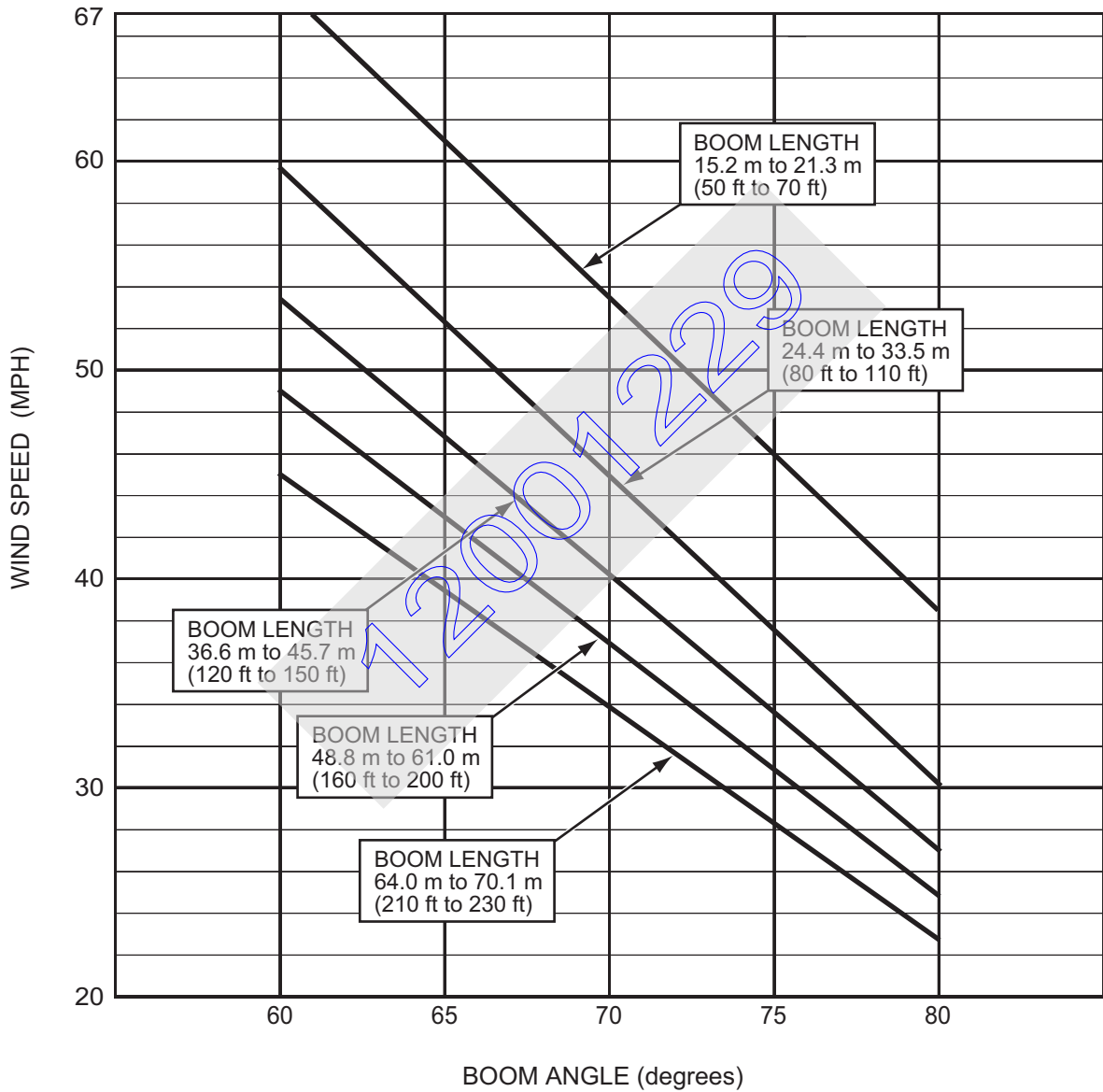
12001229

— Tip —

This shows the wind speed increase when raising the boom.

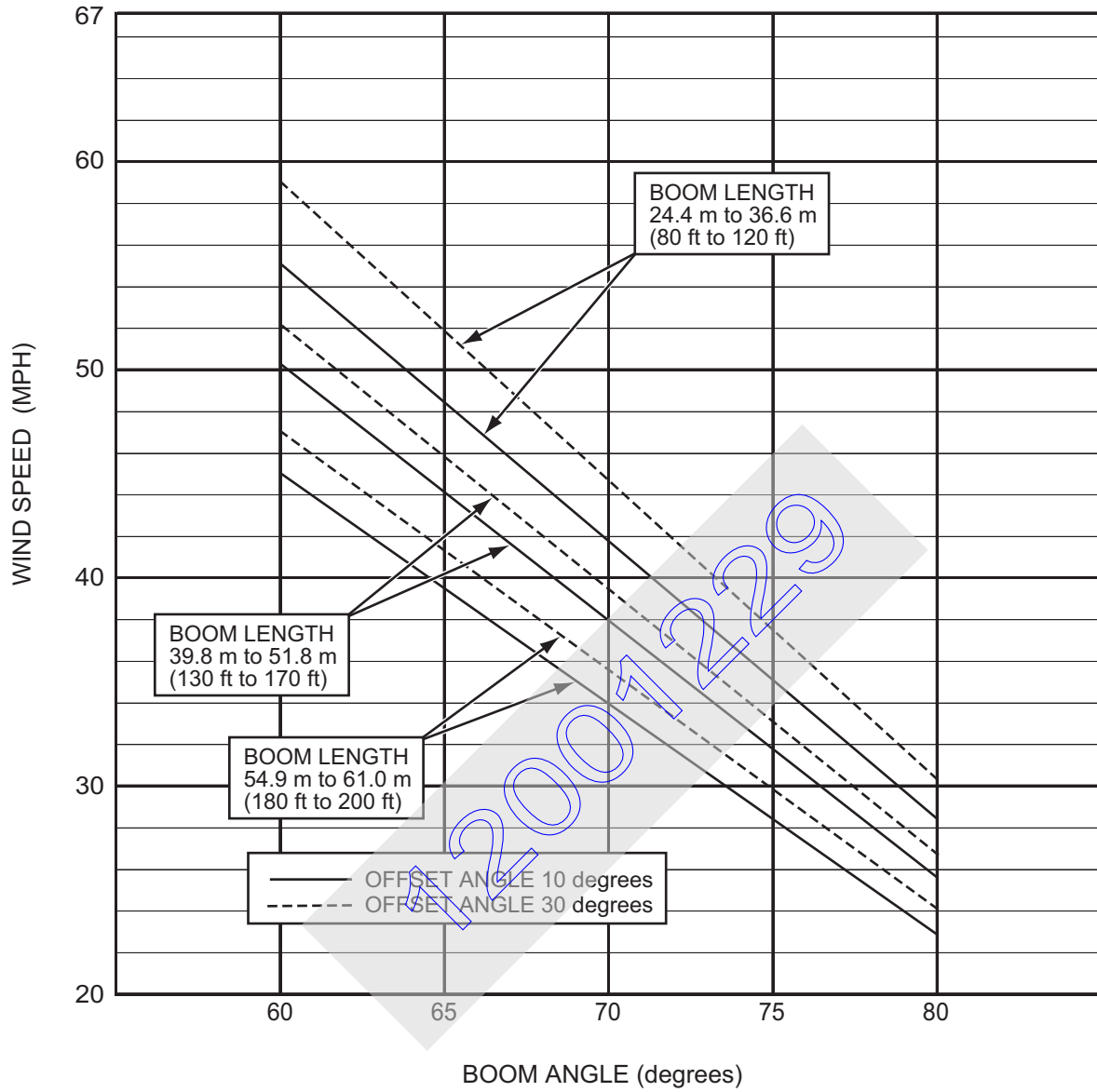
Wind effect becomes larger with longer boom length or larger boom angle.

CRANE

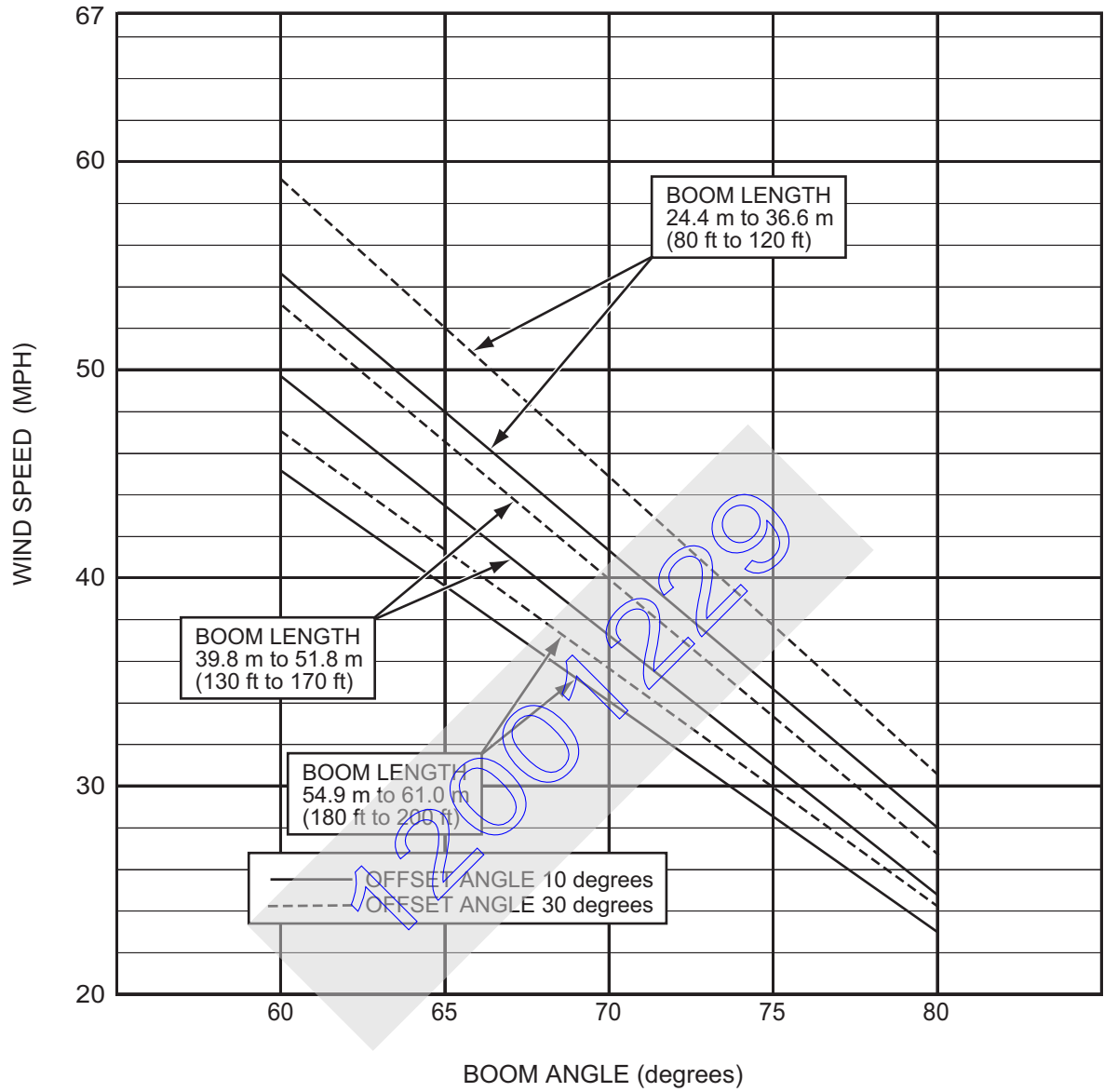


## 2. OPERATION

WITH 9.1 m (30 ft) JIB

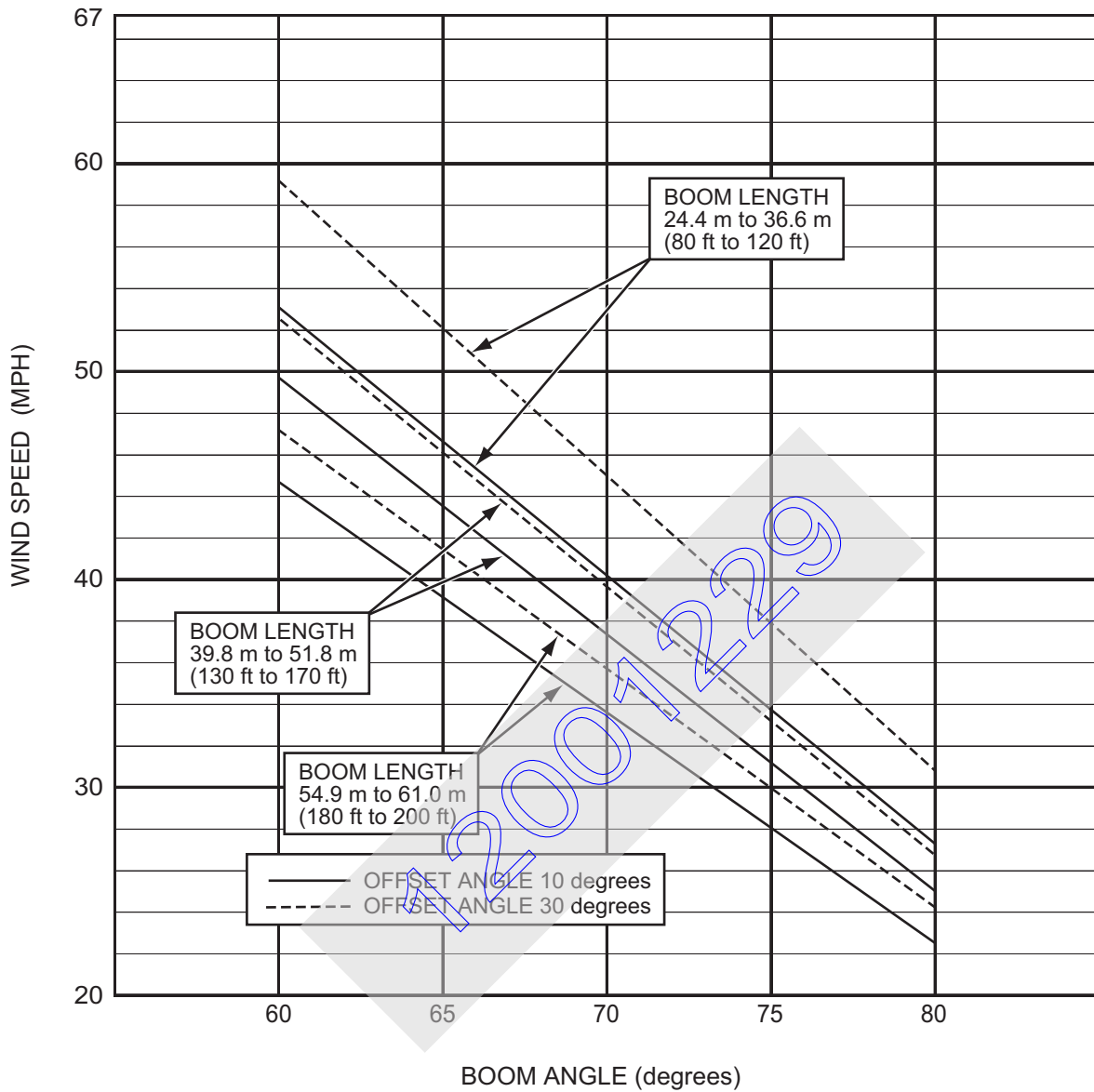


WITH 12.2 m (40 ft) JIB and 15.2 m (50 ft) JIB



## 2. OPERATION

WITH 18.3 m (60 ft) JIB and 21.3 m (70 ft) JIB





### 2.9.2 CAUTION AGAINST ELECTRIC SHOCK

If the machine or load comes close to the power lines, danger of electric shock becomes possible.

---

** DANGER**

There is a possibility of serious accident such as injuries or loss of life of personnel when the crane boom or lifting load comes close to or contact with the power line.

Furthermore, accident would be extended to :

- Power supply cut to general homes and factory.
- Power supply cut to hospital affecting life of patients.
- Affect to the traffic such as power cut to the traffic signal etc.

These may cause secondary accident.

Whenever crane work is to be done near the power line, strictly observe the following precautions and to prevent such accident.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries.

---

** DANGER**

While the boom or lifting load is touching the power line, do not get off the machine.

If person get off the machine while holding a part of machine, person will be electrocuted.

Never hold any part of machine.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

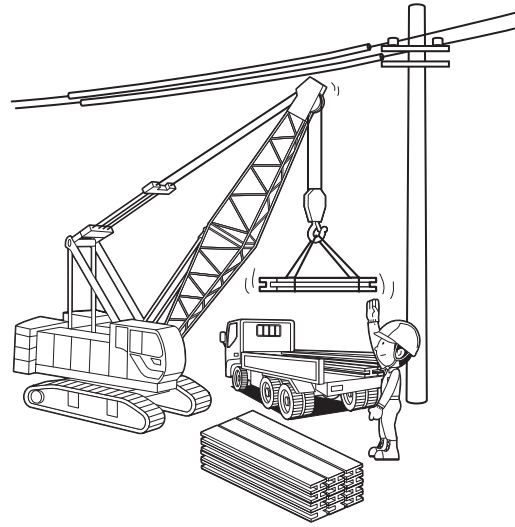
---

## 2. OPERATION

---

1. Hold a meeting with Power Company to understand the dangerous location in advance.
2. Place a signal person and keep safety distance between the machine, lifting load and the power line.

Refer to P.1-28 for safety distance.



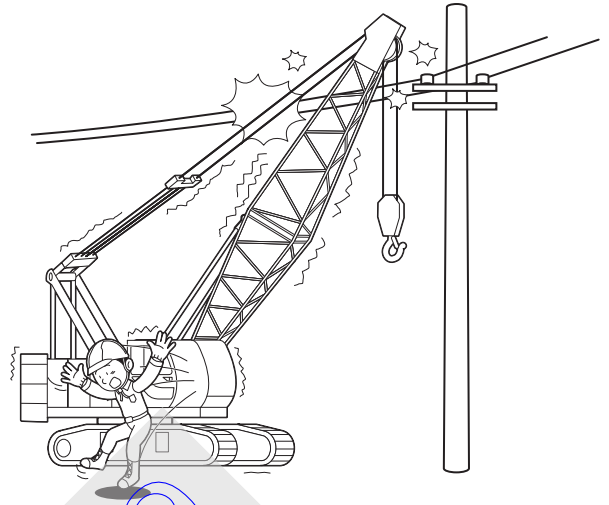
3. If coming close to the power line is unavoidable, advise the power company and obtain the protective insulated tube to prevent electric shock.

12001229

### ACTION IN CASE ACCIDENT OCCURS

Should the accident occur, take the following actions immediately to minimize damage.

- (1) Advise the nearest power company office.
- (2) Operator without getting panicked, should remove the boom or lifting load from the power line.  
If removing is not possible, it is safer to stay on the machine.  
Operator would be electrocuted by getting off the machine holding a part of machine.
- (3) Should someone be injured, immediately take emergency treatment such as artificial respiration or heart massage.
- (4) If the power line is cut, do not allow any person to come close to the hanging power lines.
- (5) Inspect the machine (specially on load safety device) for proper function before reuse.



12001229

## 2. OPERATION

---

### 2.9.3 CAUTION AGAINST RADIO WAVE INTERFERENCE

If the machine is operated near the radio or TV transmitting station, boom, wire rope or hook may be charged with electricity.

If charged it may lead to the danger such as trouble in slinging to the hook or damage to the safety device.

---

#### CAUTION

When working near the transmitting station's antenna, the boom or wire rope may function as an extra large antenna and may be charged with electricity and the high voltage may be induced at the end of the hook and may be heated.

Touching the hook may cause burns due to the electric shock or heat.

The computer installed on the machine may lose proper function. Take extra care in operating the machine.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

---

#### PREVENTIVE MEASURE

1. Use insulating gloves.
2. Connect the grounding wire to the hook.
3. Wrap around the hook with insulating materials.
4. Use nylon rope (belt type) for sling.

Consult Manitowoc service shop if computer equipment installed on the machine is failed.

12001229

**2.9.4 CAUTION AGAINST LIGHTNING**

When the machine is hit with lightning, fatal accident is likely to the operator or surrounding personnel.

Various portion of machine may also be damaged.

1. Take the following actions immediately when the thunder cloud appears and lightning is expected.
  - (1) Stop the work and lower the lifting load on the ground.  
If the boom can be lowered, lower it on the ground.
  - (2) Engage the brake/lock (hoist, swing) and stop the engine and turn the key to OFF.
  - (3) Get away from the machine and surrounding area.
  
2. If the machine is hit with lightning, check the following points.
  - (1) Is there any burning out or damage?
  - (2) Do all the electrical devices or load safety devices work properly?
  - (3) Does each function work properly?

12001229

## 2. OPERATION

---

### 2.9.5 COUNTERMEASURE AGAINST EARTHQUAKE

Earthquake is unpredictable for its time or size.  
It is essential to prepare always against earthquake.

1. Preparation against earthquake.  
Lower the boom on the ground after completion of daily work.
2. Action when earthquake occurs.  
Stop work immediately and stop the machine and turn the engine key to OFF position.  
Evacuate to the safety place taking care about fallen materials.
3. Inspect the following points when re-starting the machine.
  - (1) Ground condition of the machine placed.
  - (2) Damage of the machine.
  - (3) Function of the machine.

Do not operate the machine until the damage is repaired.

12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

This machine is provided with various load safety devices to operate the machine safely.

The machine conditions are detected with various devices and are controlled with the controller and are displayed with the monitor to prevent damage to the crane due to overload, overhoist or to prevent overturning of crane. Ensure to use this device to operate the crane safely and inspect and maintain the device periodically.

If the device becomes failed, repair immediately before re-starting the work.

Safety device of this machine

- Load safety device
- Hook overhoist preventive device (Crane, aux. sheave, jib)
- Boom overhoist preventive device

---

**CAUTION**

- The load safety device is important to operate the crane safely. Make sure that the device works properly and use this device surely during work.
  - If the load safety device is used improperly, released in undue way, or maintenance and repair being neglected, machine may be damaged or may face with serious accident such as turnover.
  - The load safety device is important device to work in safe manner. Even if the load safety device functions correctly, wind influence, ground collapsing or incorrect adjustment of device may cause machine damage or turnover. Exercise caution to reduce electric shock or radio wave interference. If there is a possibility of strong wind, earthquake or lightening, stop work immediately.
  - Never operate the crane by releasing the load safety device auto stop switch or release switch master key. Never use the load safety auto stop release switch other than on inspection and maintenance purpose. The release master key must be kept in a place that the site foreman has determined to be the safest place.
-

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

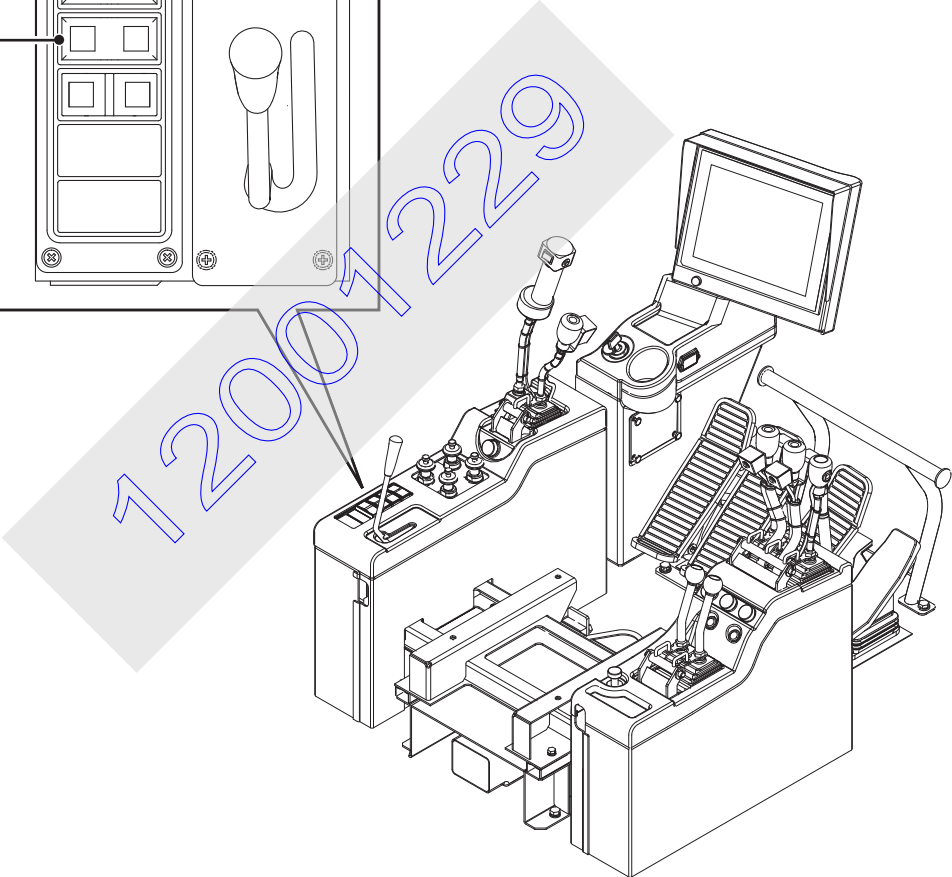
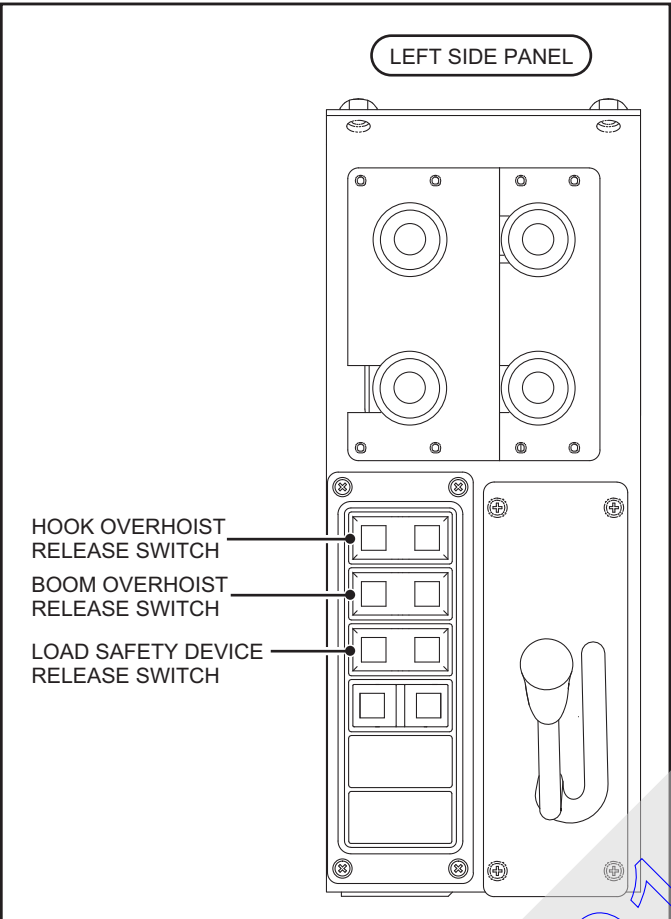
---

#### CAUTION

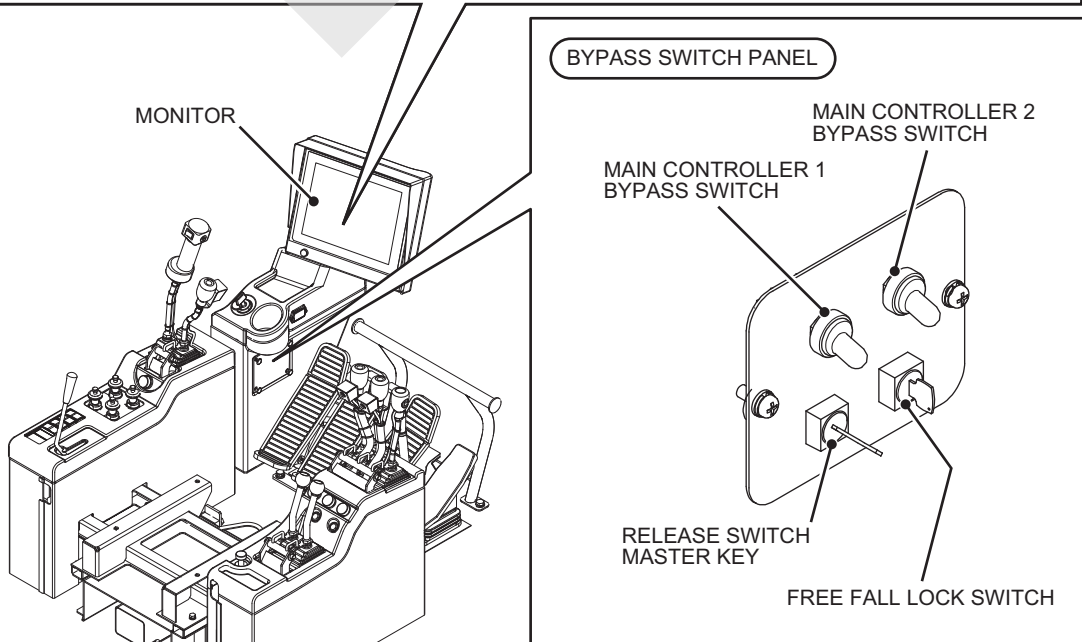
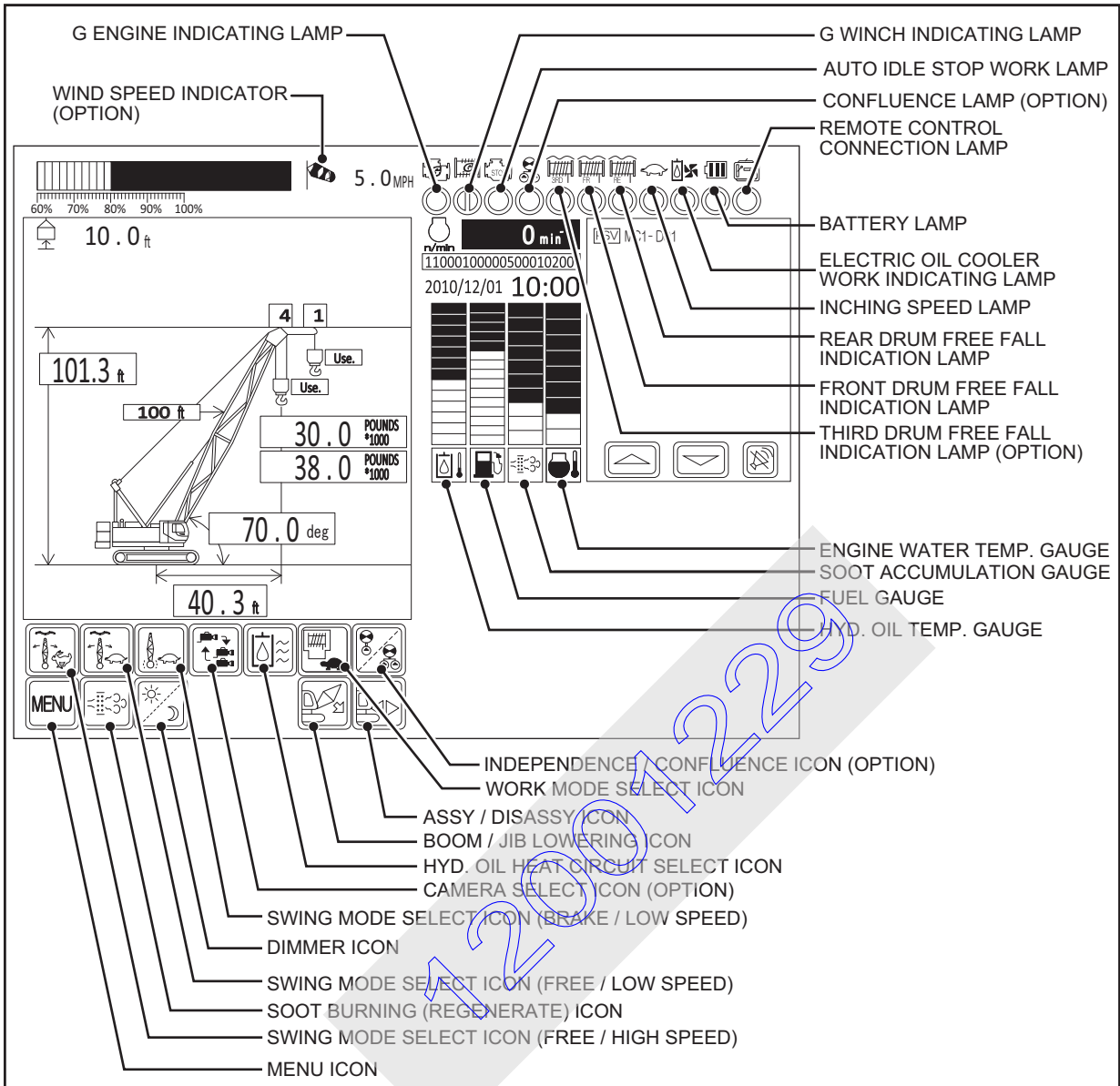
- Never operate the crane with releasing the release switch and release switch master key of the hook overhoist and boom overhoist. Never use the release switch of the hook overhoist preventive device and the boom overhoist preventive device other than at the safety device failure, damage, emergency evacuation or for inspection, and maintenance.
  - Never adjust the length of hook overhoist weight wire or boom limit striker and angle sensor of angle of the load safety device since they are pre-adjusted. The release master key must be kept following the instruction of work control person.
- 

12001229





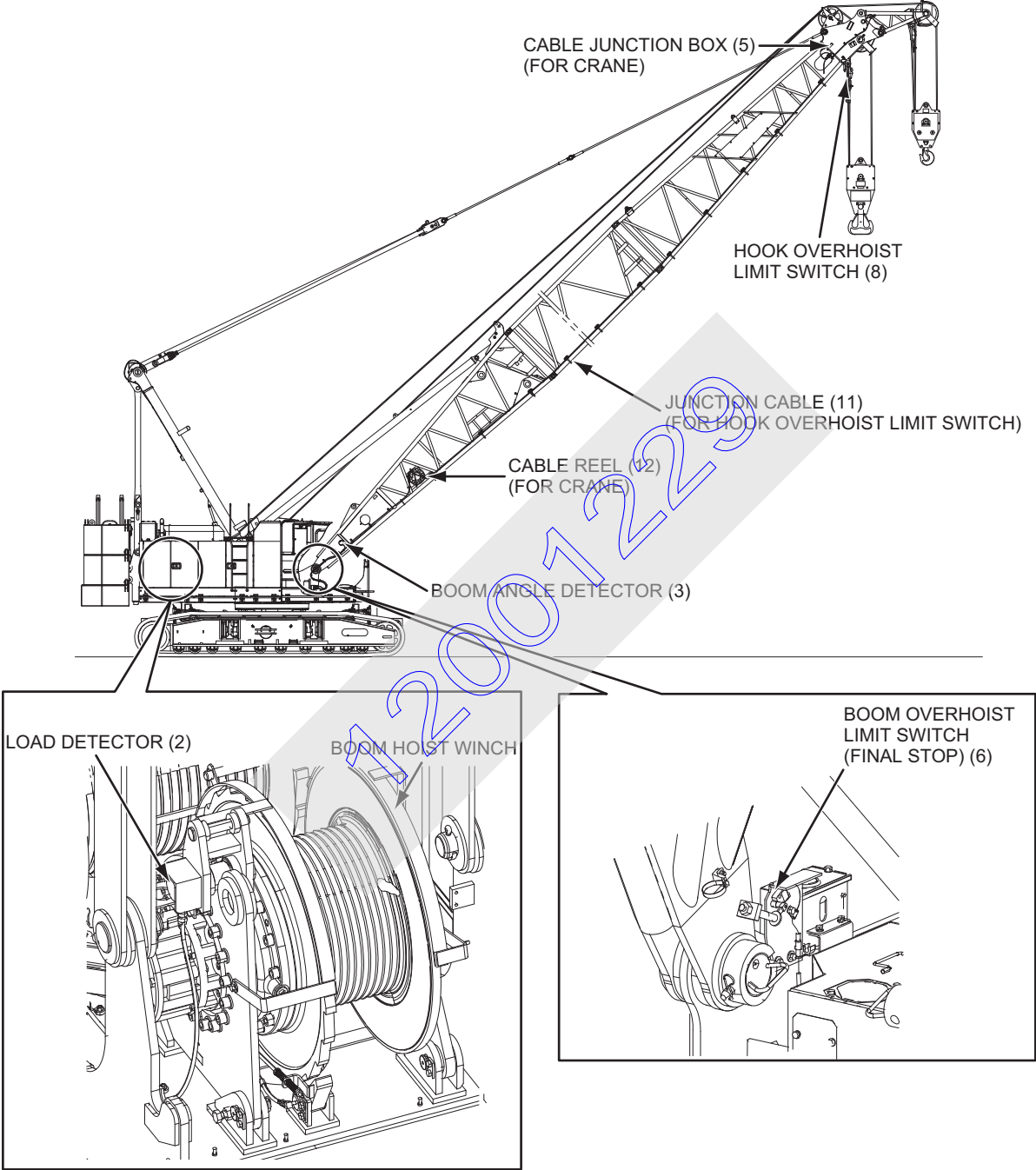
### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE



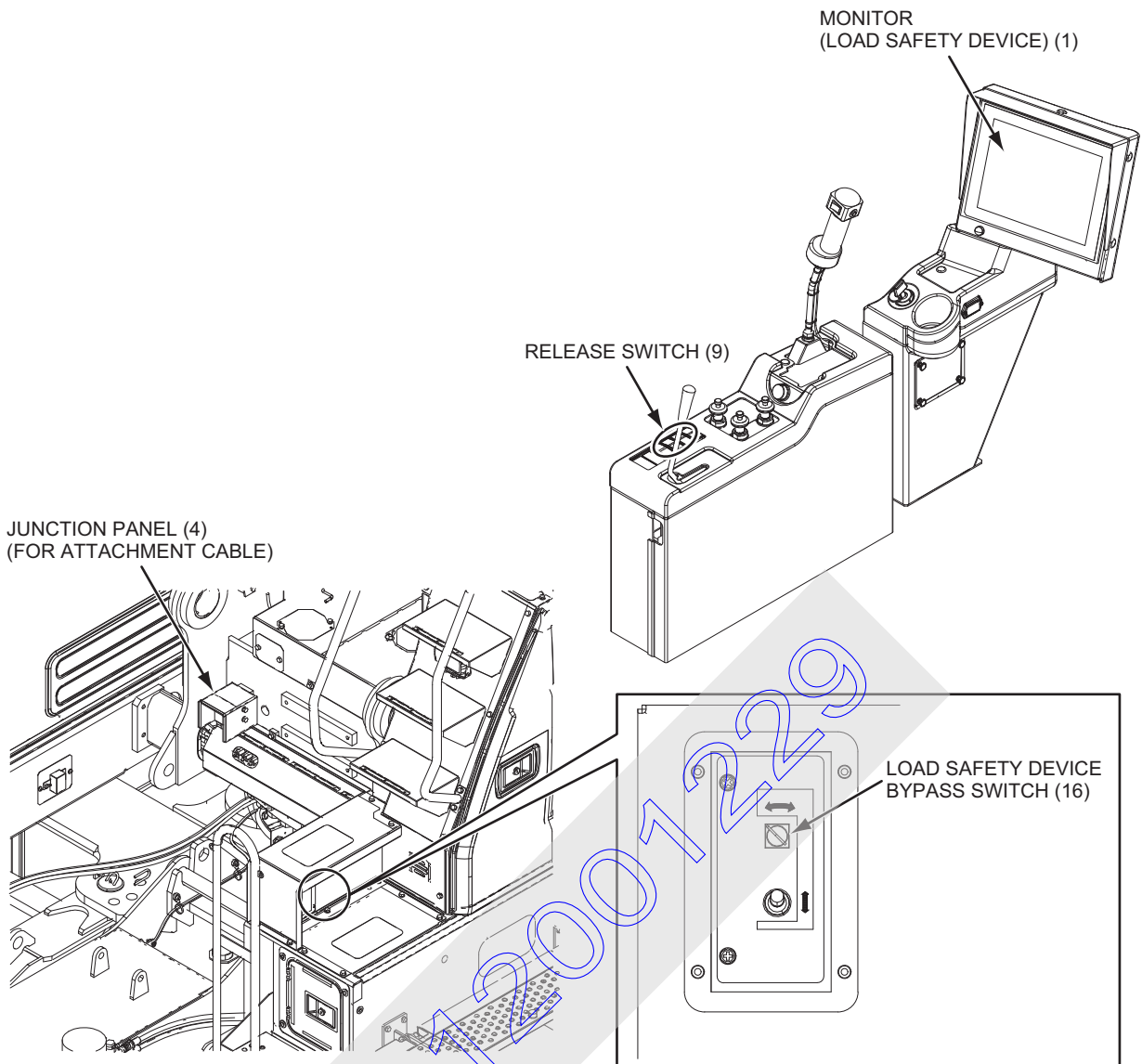
3.1 ARRANGEMENT OF EQUIPMENTS

The item number and part name in the figures of arrangement of equipment correspond to the numbers in the description up to topic 3.4.

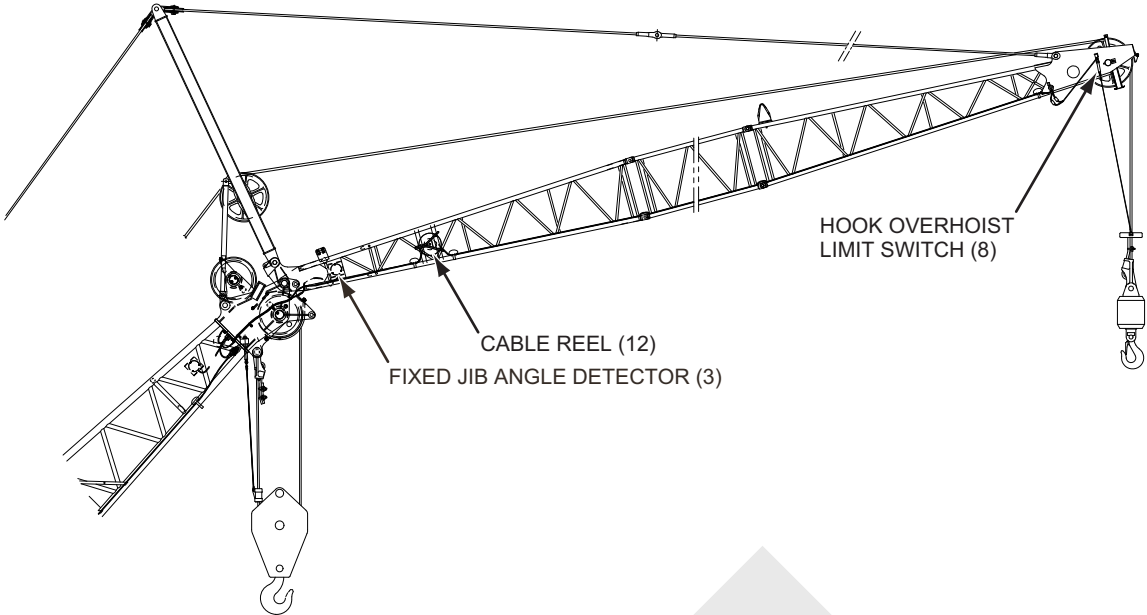
CRANE



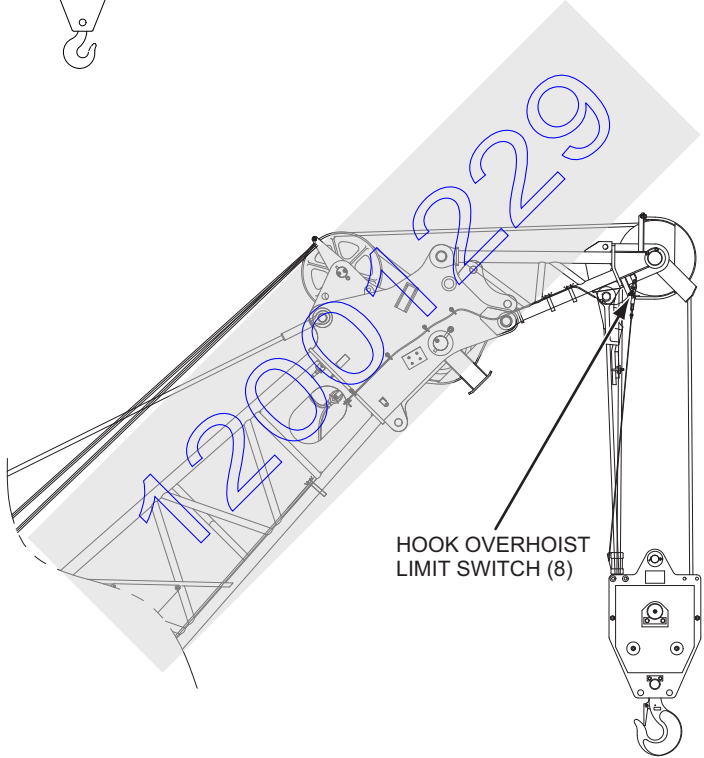
### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE



FIXED JIB

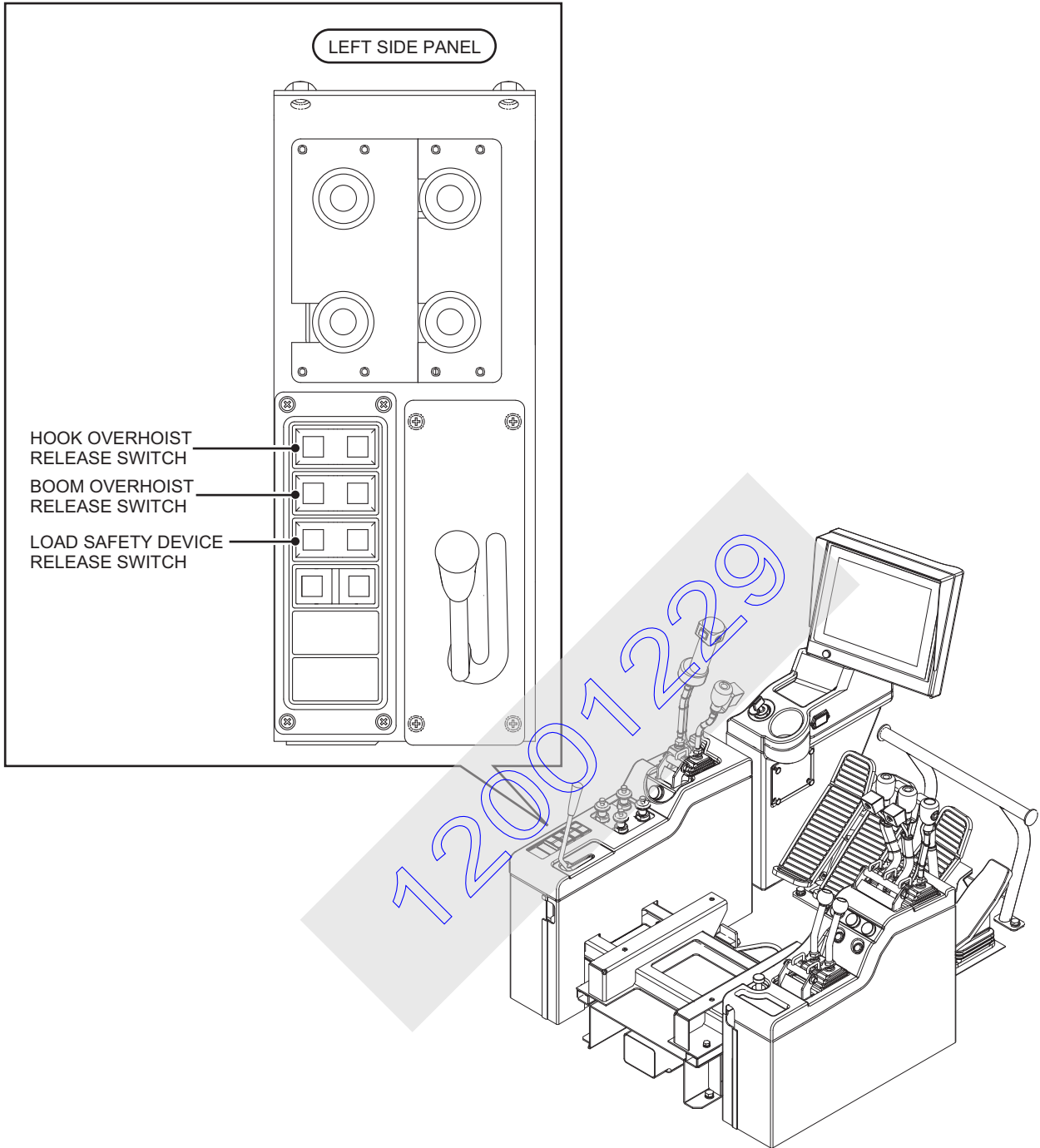


AUXILIARY SHEAVE

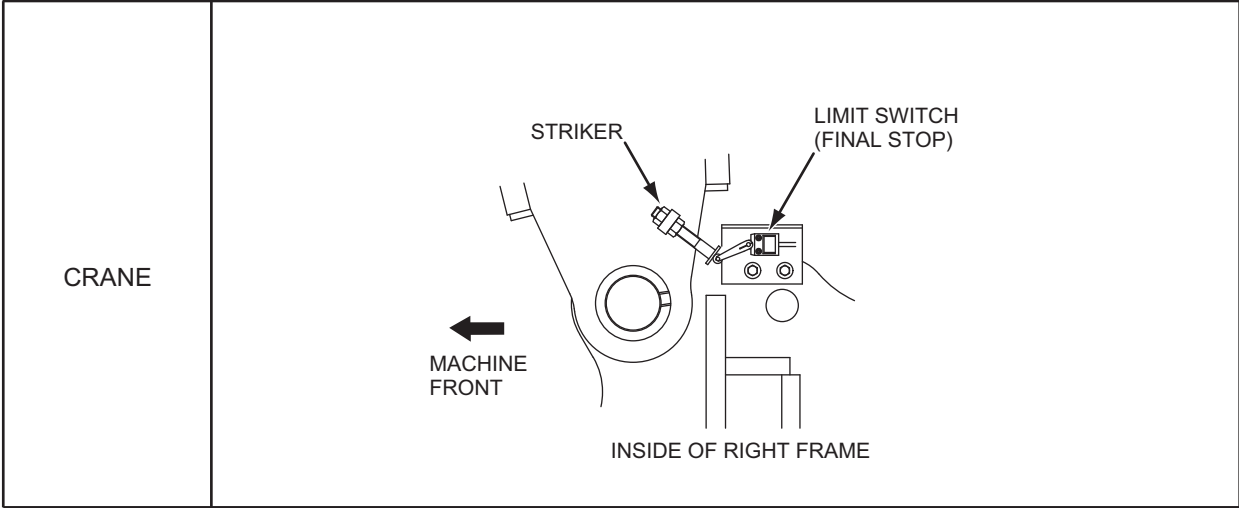


### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### DETAIL OF OPERATOR CAB LEFT SIDE STAND PANEL



DETAIL OF BOOM OVERHOIST LIMIT SWITCH



12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

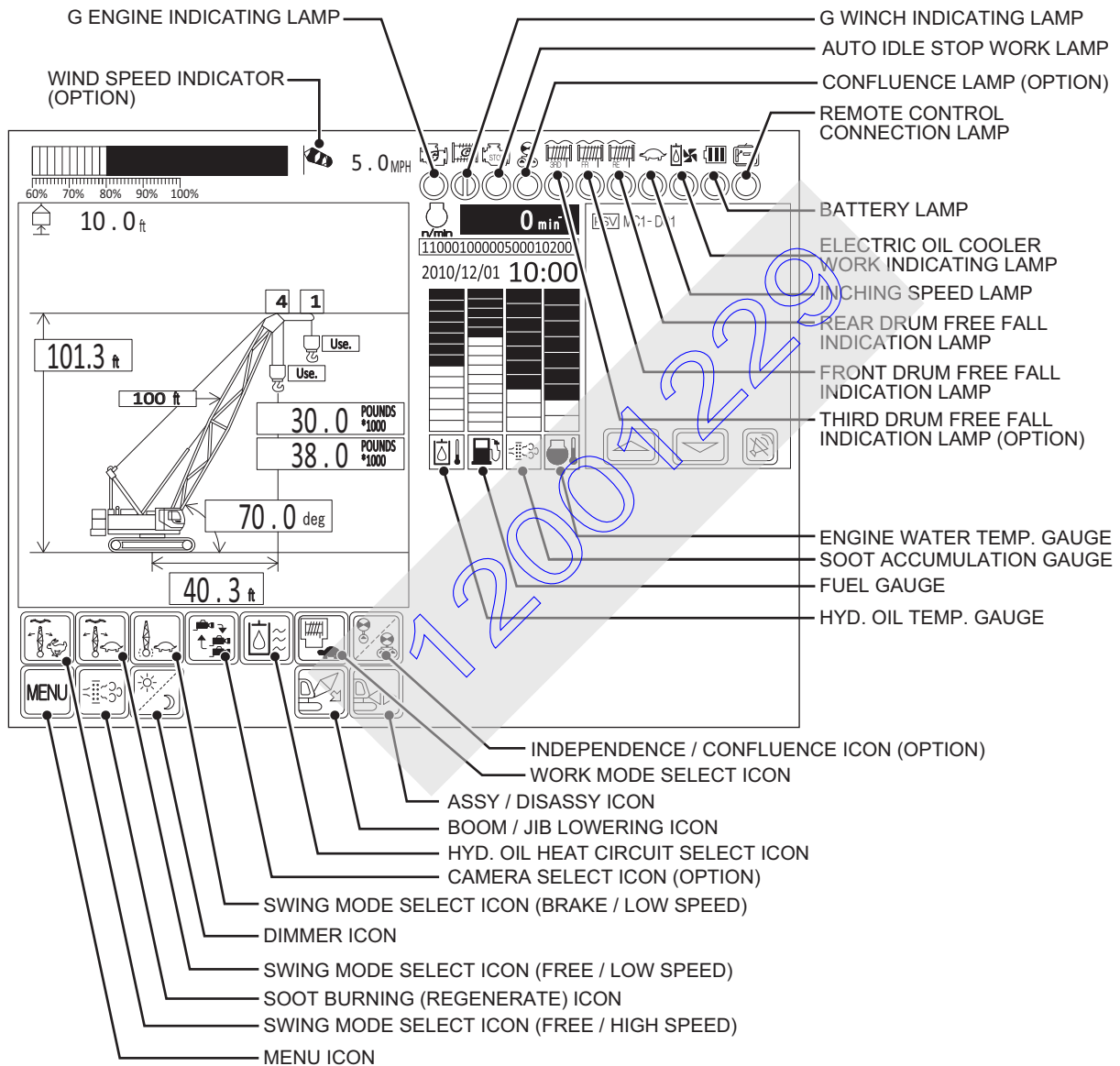
## 3.2 TYPE AND FUNCTIONS OF EQUIPMENTS

### MONITOR (LOAD SAFETY DEVICE) (1)

This monitor indicates the machine condition, and issues the signal for the alarms and stop as required.

**Note**

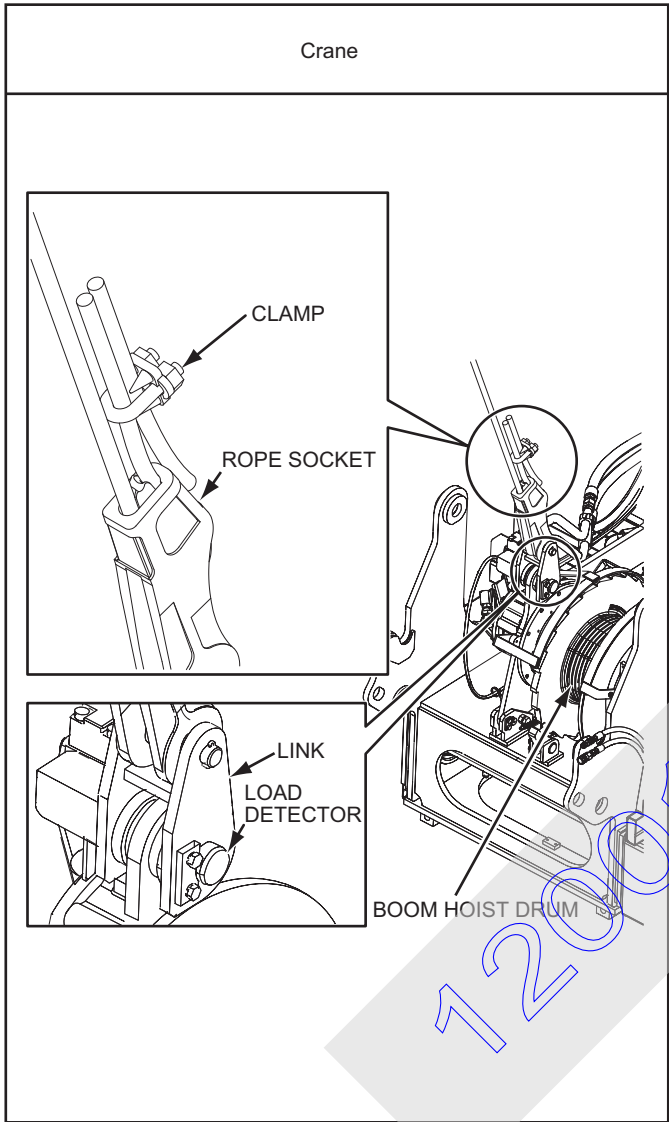
All numeral values in the (1) MONITOR in the chapter 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE give an example only.





**LOAD DETECTOR (2)**

This pin detects load.



**ANGLE DETECTOR (3)**

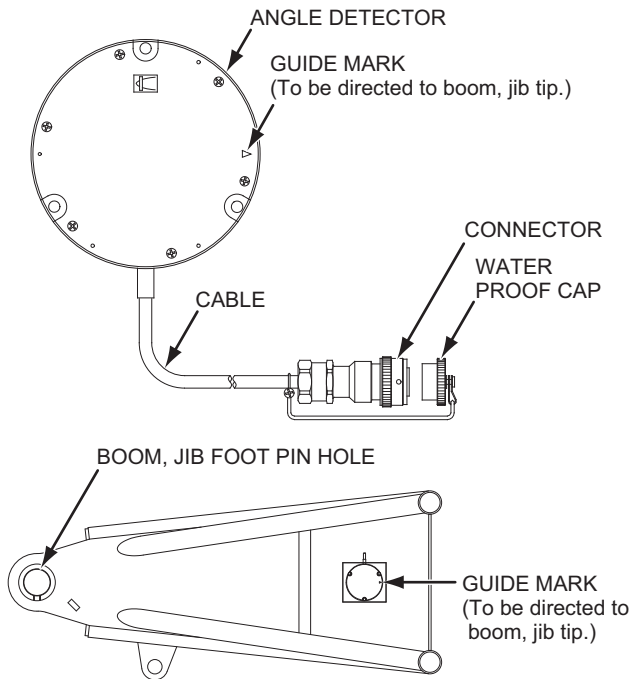
This device detects the angle of boom and jib.

**Note**

Take note a guide mark direction when re-installing an angle detector to the boom, jib base after removing it for maintenance etc., the mark should be directed to the boom, jib tip.

If in case install it 180 degrees opposite direction, movement of the work radius indication will be reverse against the actual boom, jib movement.

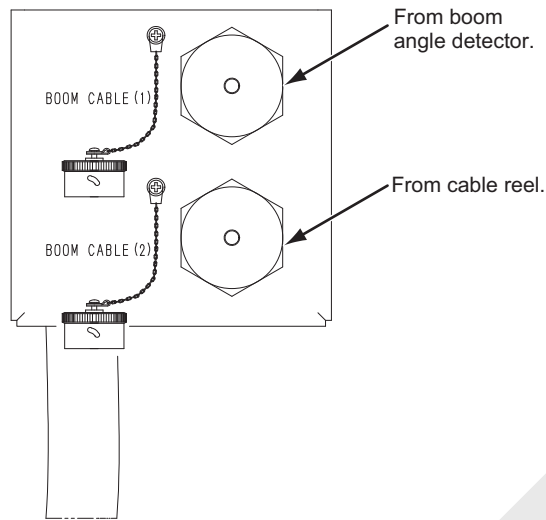
Especially for installation to the fixed jib base need to be extremely careful as no angle indication is available.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### ATTACHMENT JUNCTION PANEL (4)

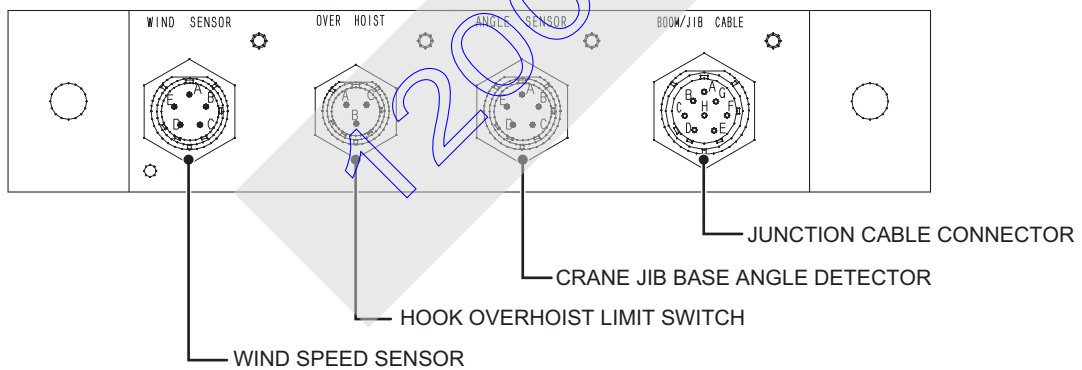
This is the connecting area for the attachment detector cable to operator's cab cable.



#### CABLE JUNCTION BOX (5)

This is the junction box for detector and limit switch.

- FOR CRANE BOOM TOP

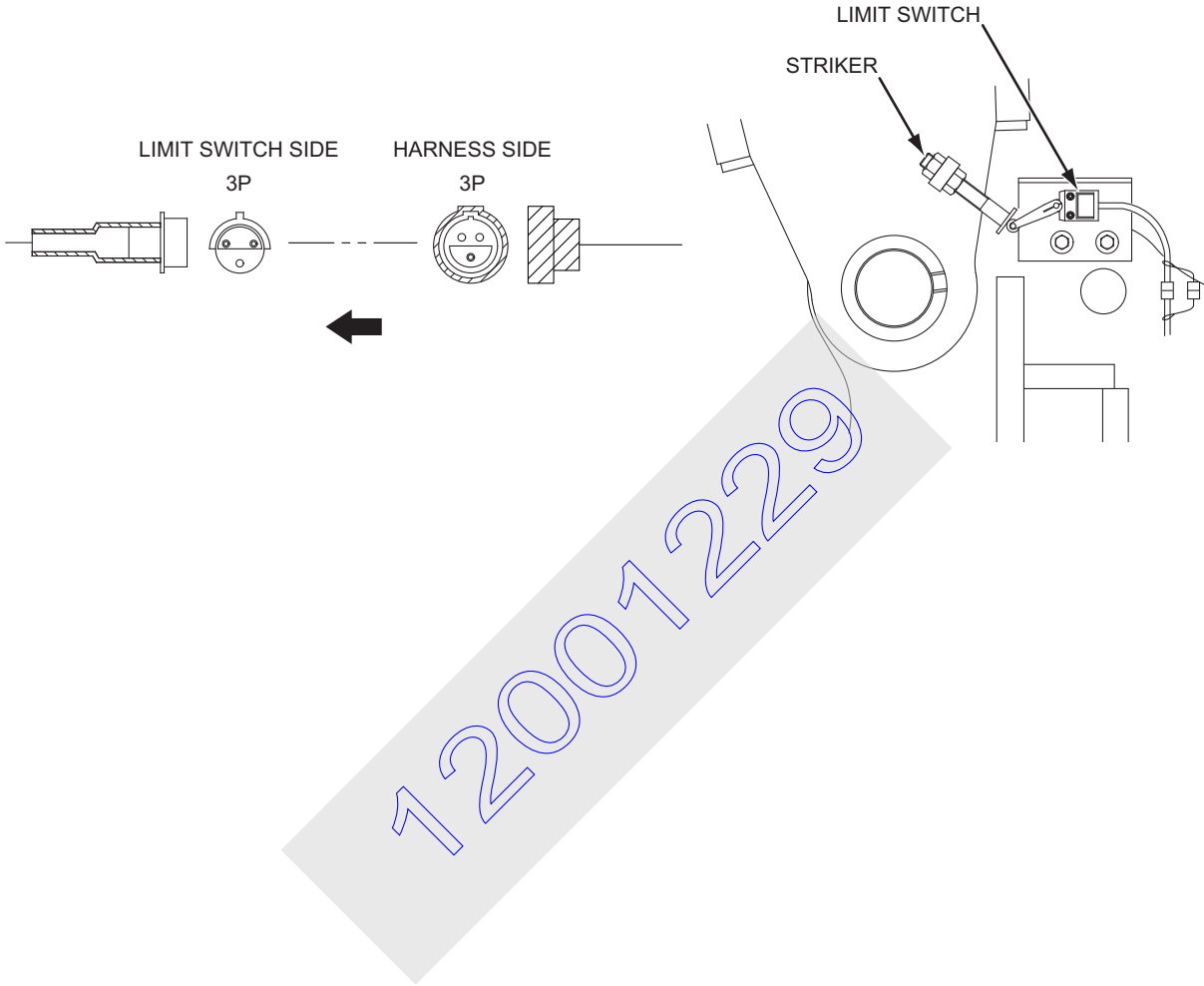


**CRANE BOOM OVERHOIST LIMIT SWITCH (6)**

This prevents the boom from overhoisting.

This is the final stop limit switch. When crane is auto stopped due to this limit switch actuated, auto-stop can not be released.

If used as the tower crane, auto-stop does not function even when the boom overhoist limit switch (6) is kicked.

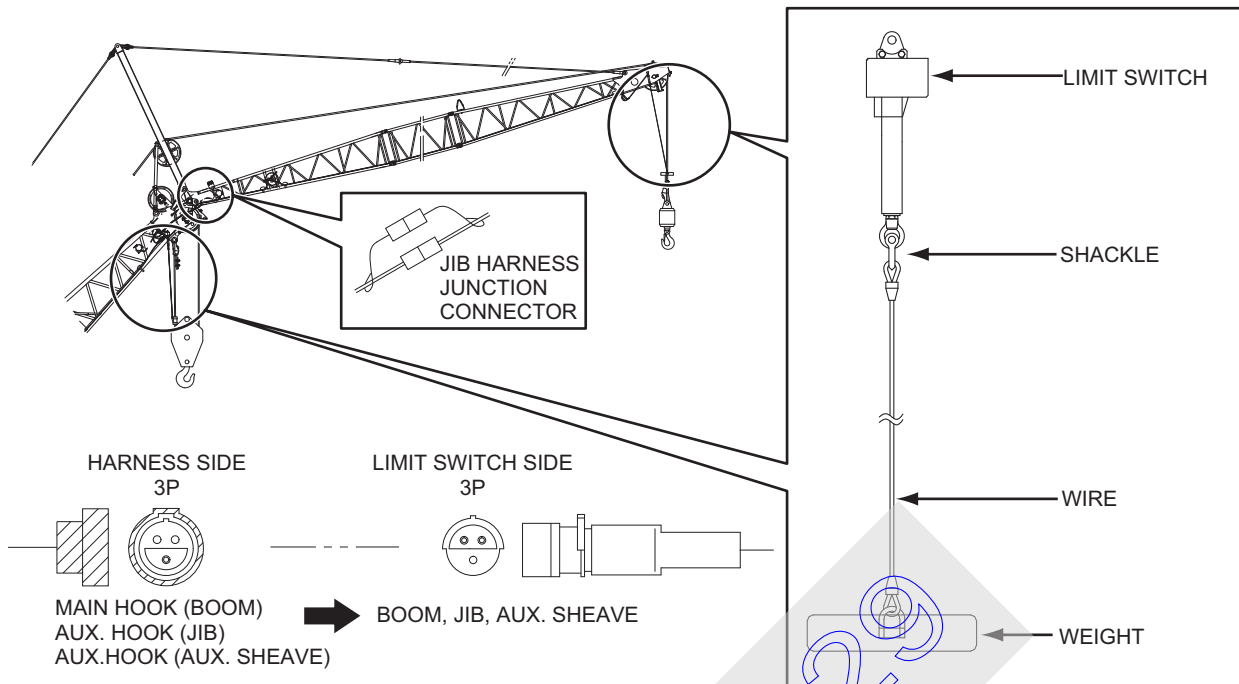


12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

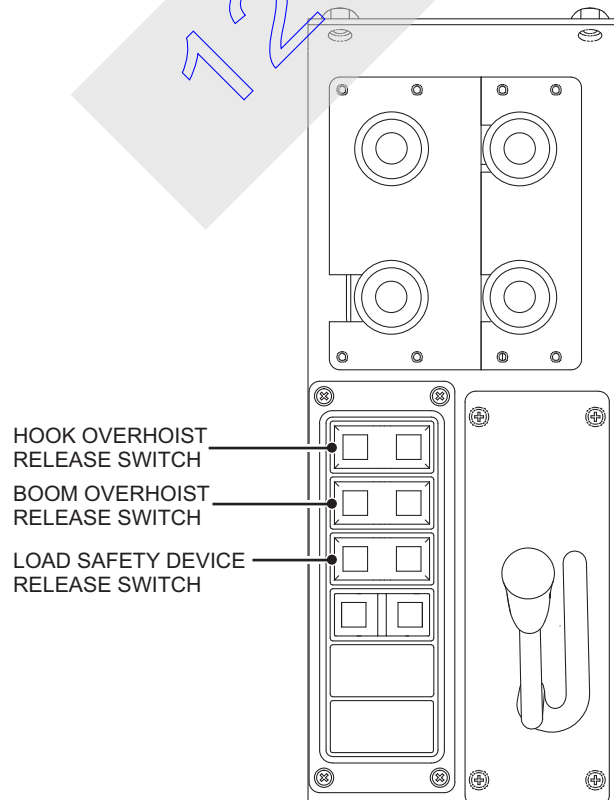
#### HOOK OVERHOIST LIMIT SWITCH (8)

This switch prevents the hook from overhoisting.



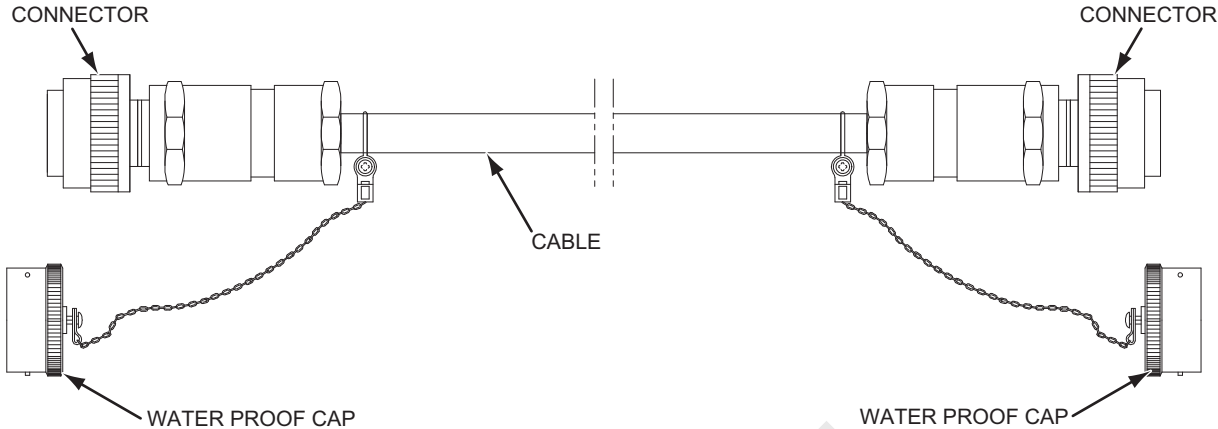
#### RELEASE SWITCH (9)

This switch releases auto-stop function.  
(Refer to P.3-70)



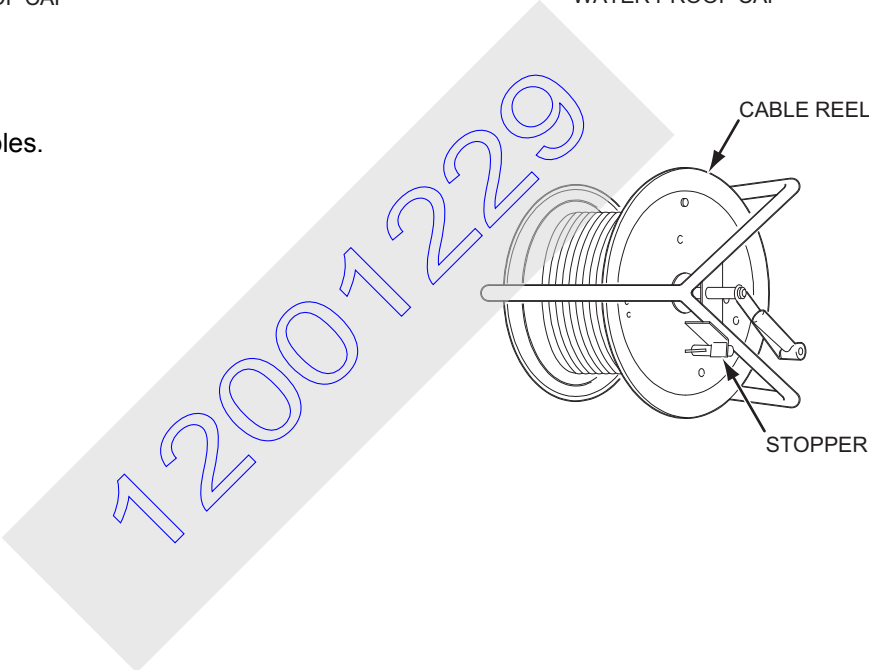
**JUNCTION CABLE (10)**  
**(CRANE: FOR HOOK OVERHOIST)**

Connect from each cable junction box (5) to the attachment junction panel (4).



**CABLE REEL (12)**

This is to wind up various cables.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### OVERLOAD ALARM LAMP (LOAD SAFETY DEVICE OUTSIDE INDICATION LAMP) (13) (OPTION)

The overload alarm lamp (load safety device outside indication lamp) is used to issue alarm with the red lamp to outside of machine when the attachment is to be self erected, disassembled, stowed or at boom overhoisted in case of assembly/disassembly configuration.

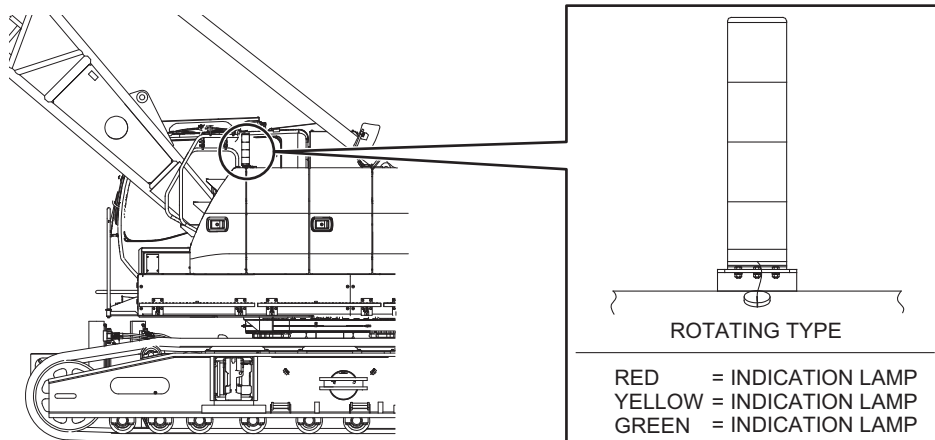
Content of 3 color lamp indication

- Load ratio lower than 90%: Green lamp light up
- Load ration between 90 to 100%: Yellow lamp light up
- Load ration higher than 100%: Red lamp light up

Indicated status	Red	Yellow	Green	Buzzer
Load ratio is less than 90%			○	
Load ratio ranges from 90 to 100%		○		○
Load ratio is 100% or more	○			○
Hook overhoist			○	
Boom overhoist (crane)			○	
Tower overhoist			○	
Tower jib overhoist			○	
Tower jib overlowering	○			○
Assembly configuration (at assembly and disassembly)	○			
While the overload release switch is actuated	○			○

#### CAUTION

Do not operate crane while red lamp is ON.  
Do not modify the overload alarm lamp circuit.



**CONTROLLER (LOAD SAFETY DEVICE) BYPASS SWITCH (16)**

This switch is used to release the auto-stop function when the controller (load safety device) becomes failed.

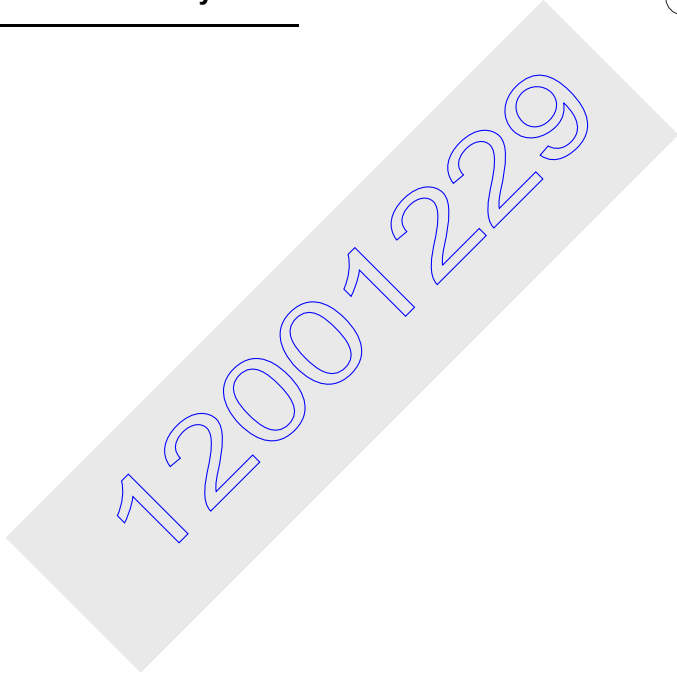
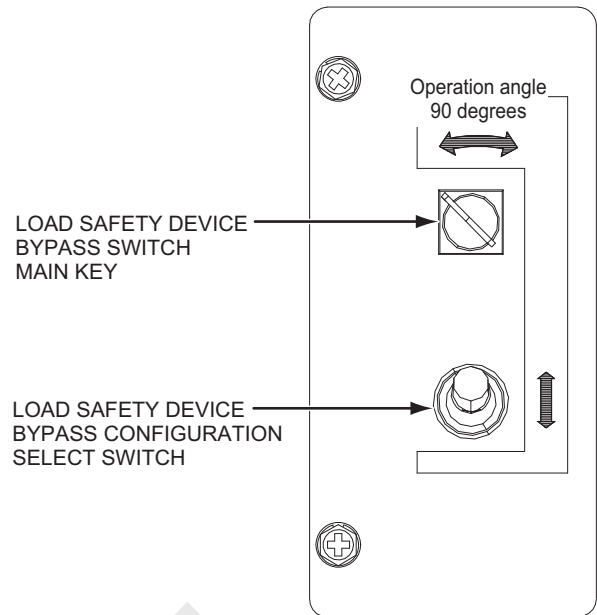
**⚠ DANGER**

**When the controller is functioning properly, bypass function does not become functional even when the bypass switch is released.**

**During the crane work with using the bypass switch, indication, warning or auto-stop does not work.**

**(Auto-stop function by overhoist preventive device works.)**

**Repair or replace the controller immediately.**

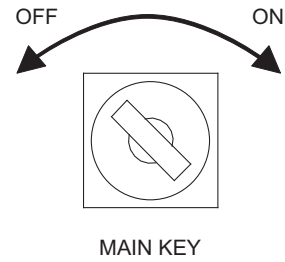


### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

- LOAD SAFETY DEVICE BYPASS SWITCH MAIN KEY

In case of load safety device failure, the following configuration select switch becomes effective by turning the main key to ON.

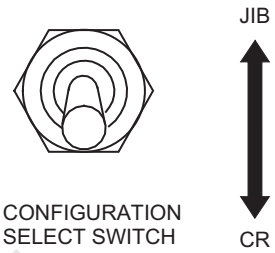


- LOAD SAFETY DEVICE BYPASS CONFIGURATION SELECT SWITCH

While the main key is turned ON, selecting the configuration can release each auto-stop function.

JIB: Select when the luffing configuration is to be selected. (Not used.)

CR: Select when the crane configuration is to be selected.



On this model, use the machine with this switch turning to "CR" position.

12001229

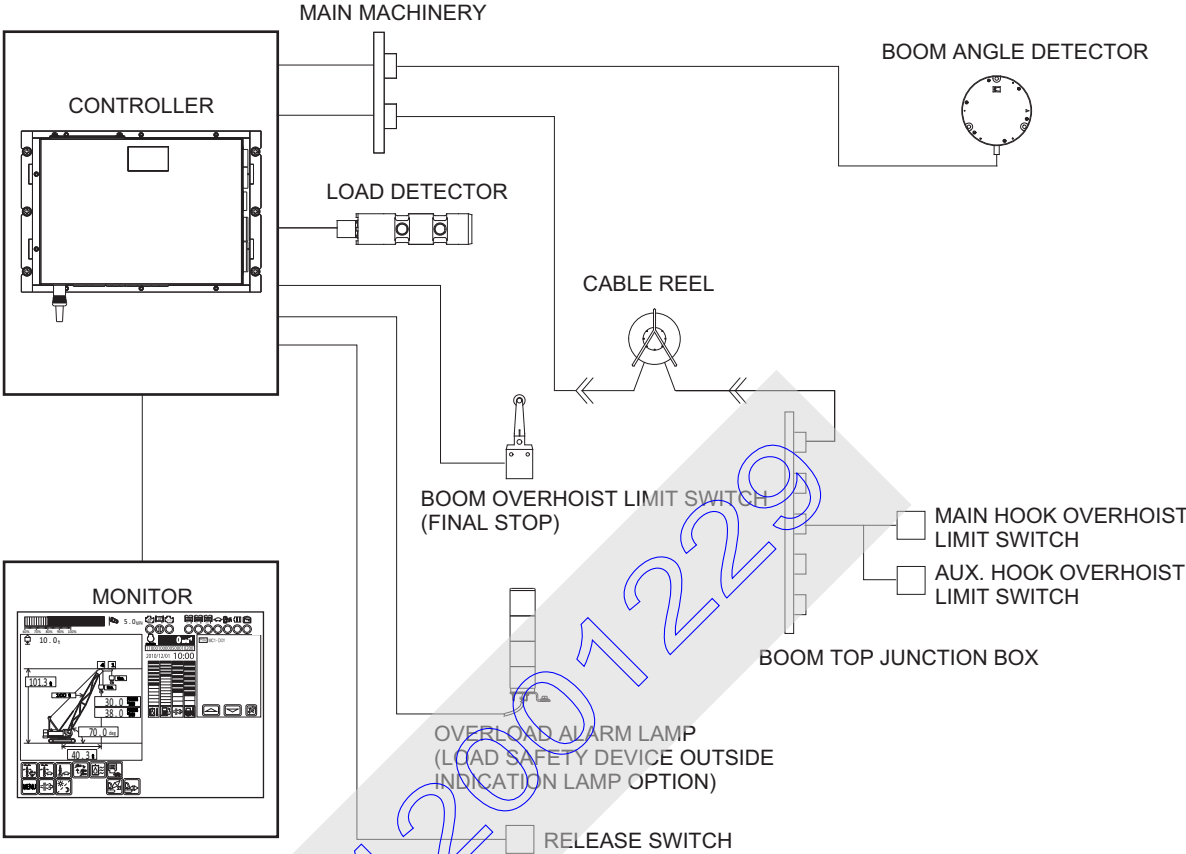


3.3 CONNECTING PROCEDURE OF WIRING

3.3.1 CRANE ATTACHMENT

1. DIAGRAM OF SYSTEM

(1) Crane



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

#### 2. CONNECTING PROCEDURE

---

**⚠ CAUTION**

The cable should be handled with care in order to avoid damage.

Do not pull or fasten.

---

When assembling the basic machine and attachment, make the connections as follows.

When disassembling, disconnect the connectors in the reverse order.

Before connecting the connectors, make sure that no water remains in the connectors section of the connector.

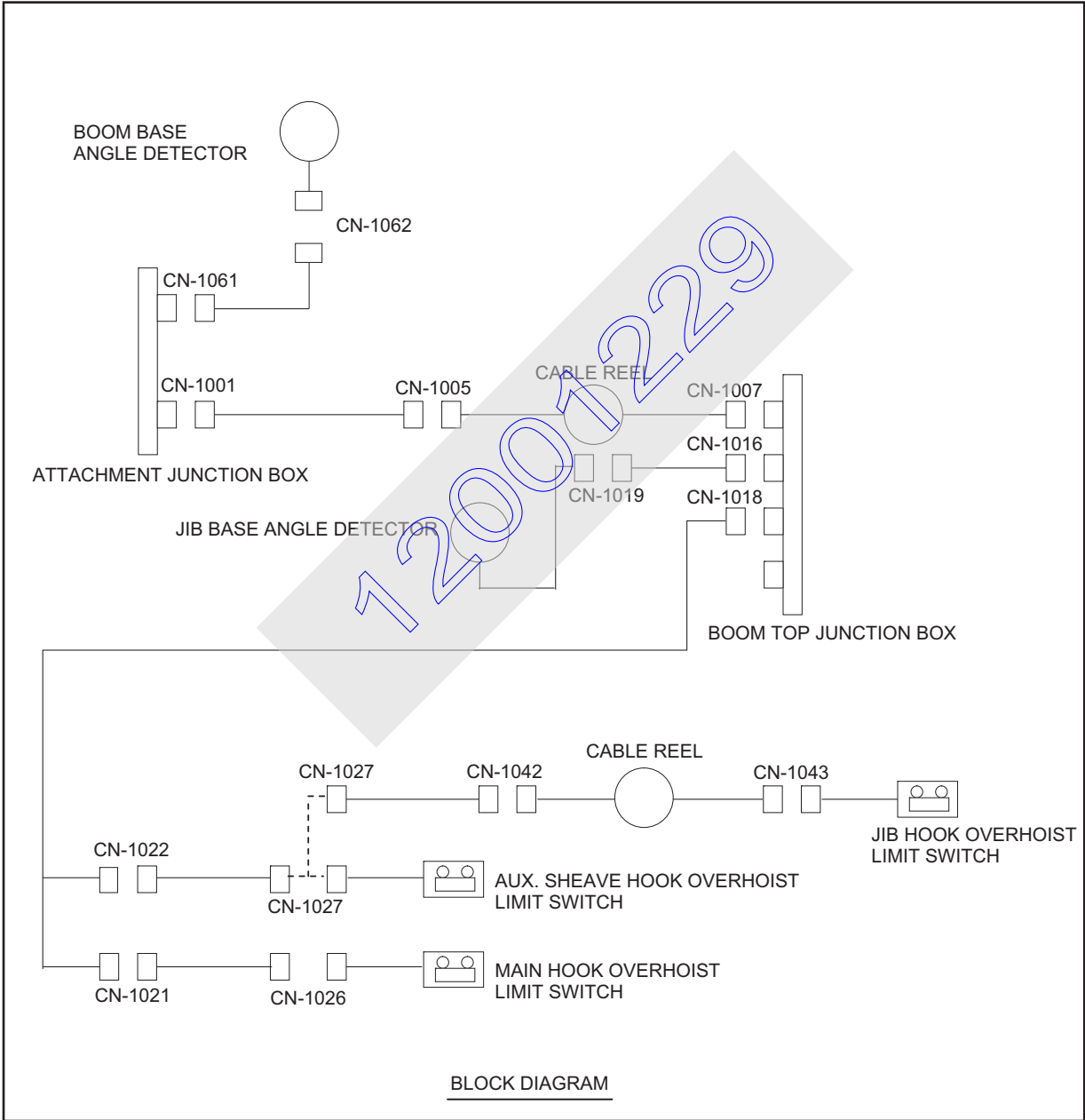
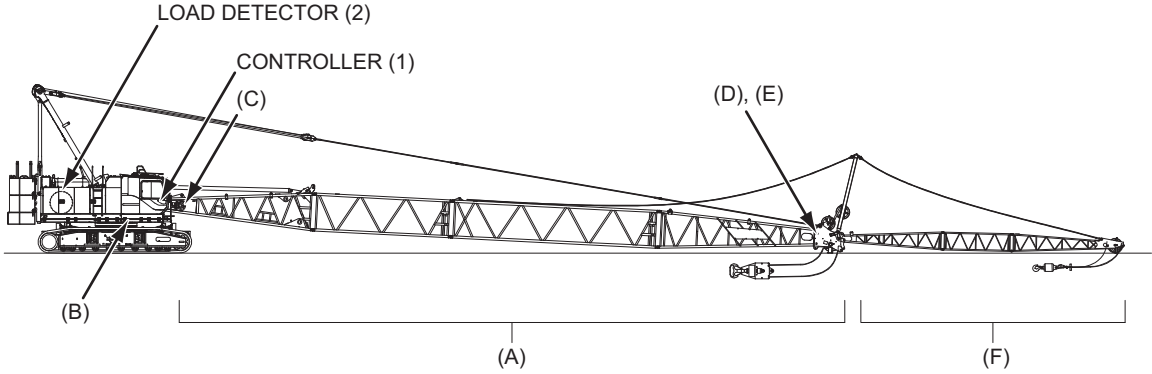
- (1) Insert the connector tightly and tighten firmly.
  - (2) Connect the removed caps together.
  - (3) After disconnecting, install the cap securely.
- 

**⚠ CAUTION**

Overload preventive device may not work correctly if water enters into connectors.

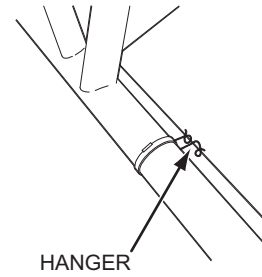
---

12001229

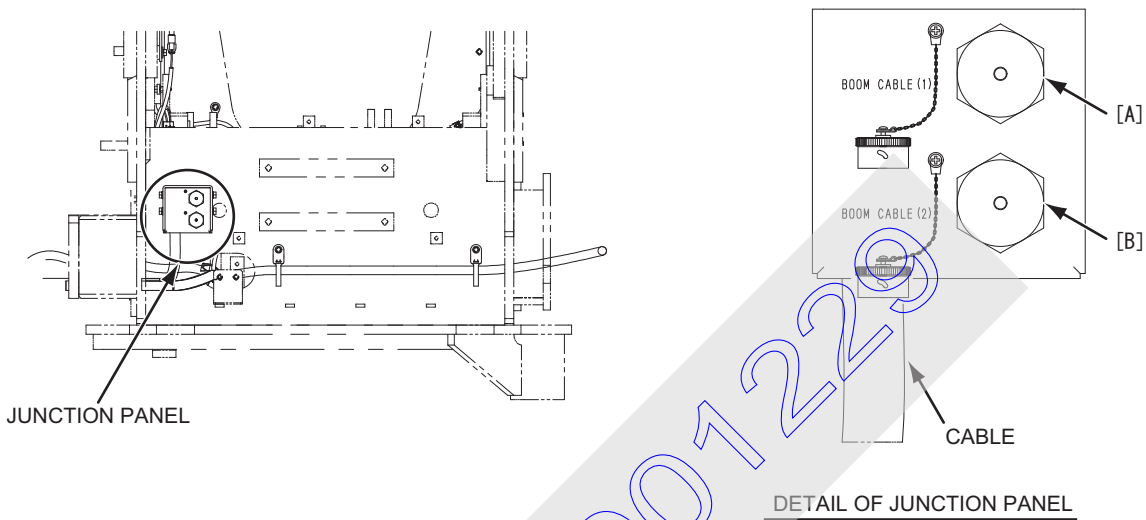


### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

(A) Secure the junction cable or limit switch cable to the boom or the jib with hangers.



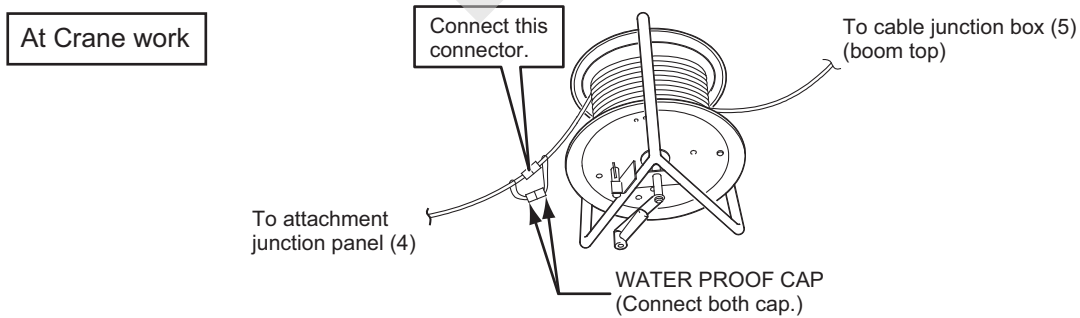
(B) Connection of attachment harness and main machine harness



[A]... Connect the junction cable 1 (from boom angle detector).

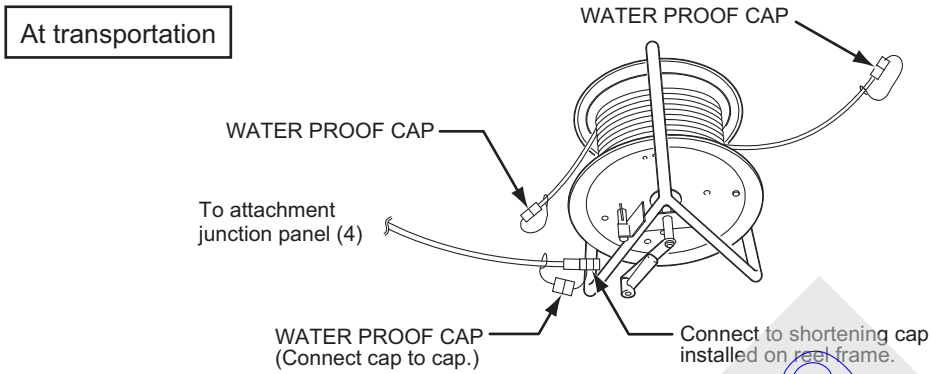
[B]... Connect the junction cable 2 (from cable reel).

(C) Connection of the cable reel area (12)



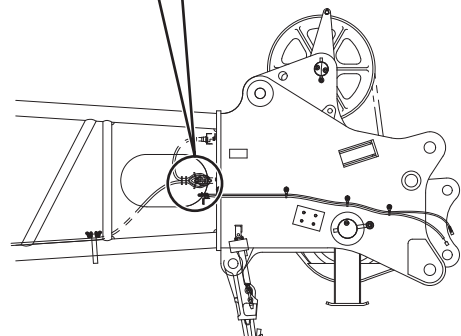
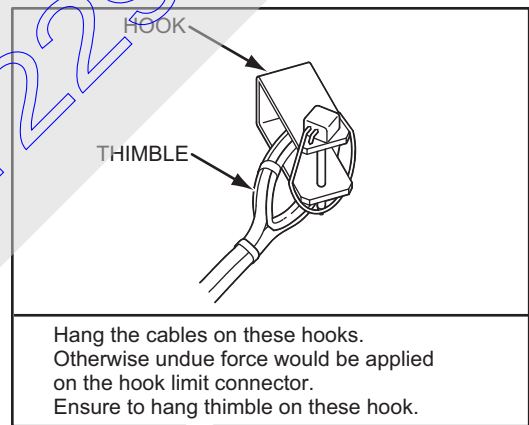
**WARNING**

Do not operate crane while the water proof caps are connected to the cable. The auto-stop and alarming will not be issued when hook overhoist occurs. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.



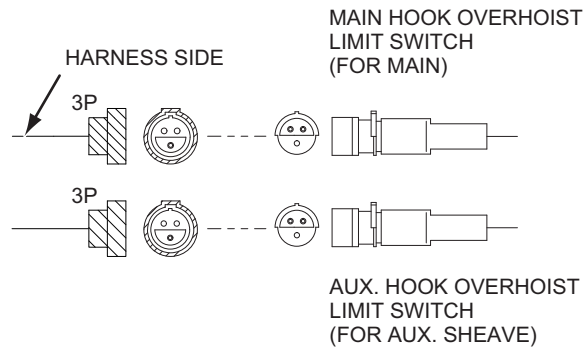
(D) Connection of boom top area

The cable support hook is provided on the boom top area. Hang the cables on these hooks. Otherwise undue force would be applied on the hook limit connector. Ensure to hang thimble on these hooks.

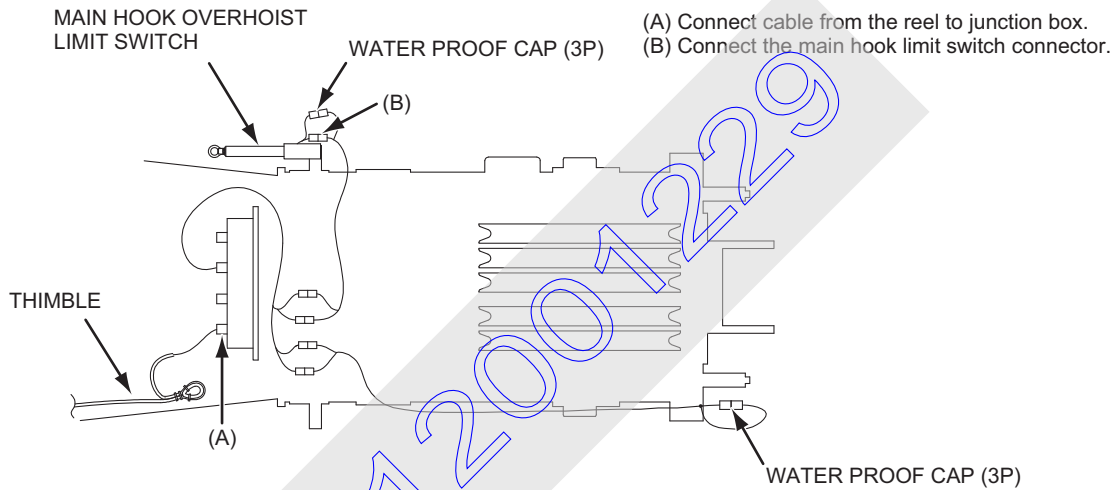


### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

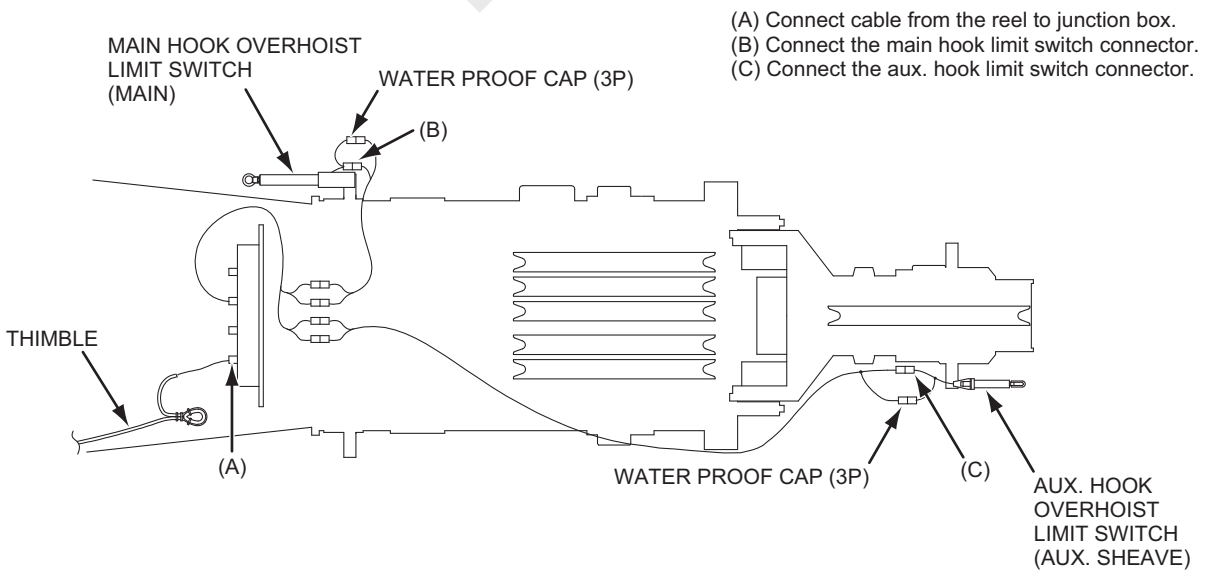
(E) Connection of hook overhoist limit switch area  
(Crane work with aux. sheave)



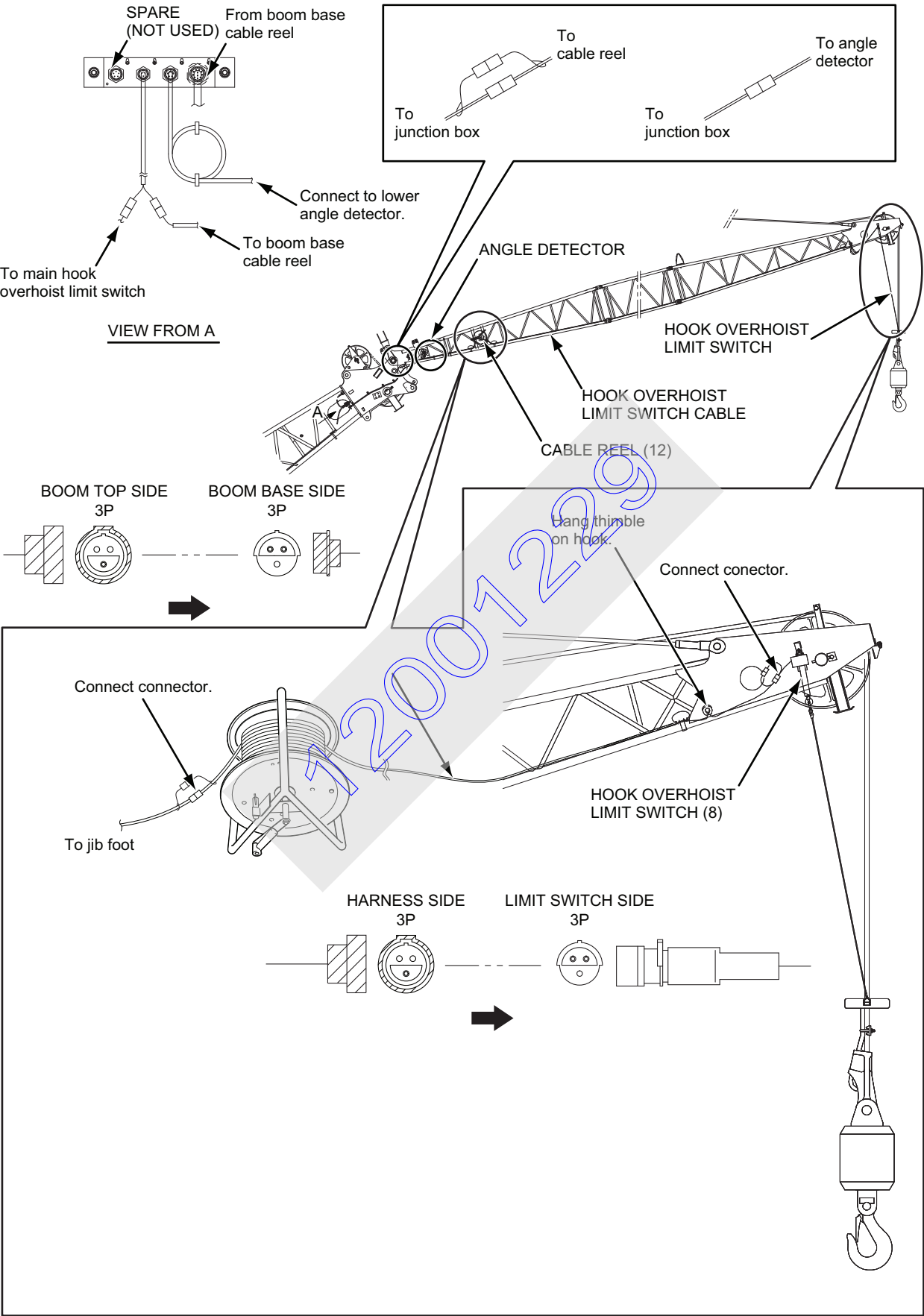
In case without the aux. sheave



In case with the aux. sheave



(F) Connection of jib area (in case with fixed jib)



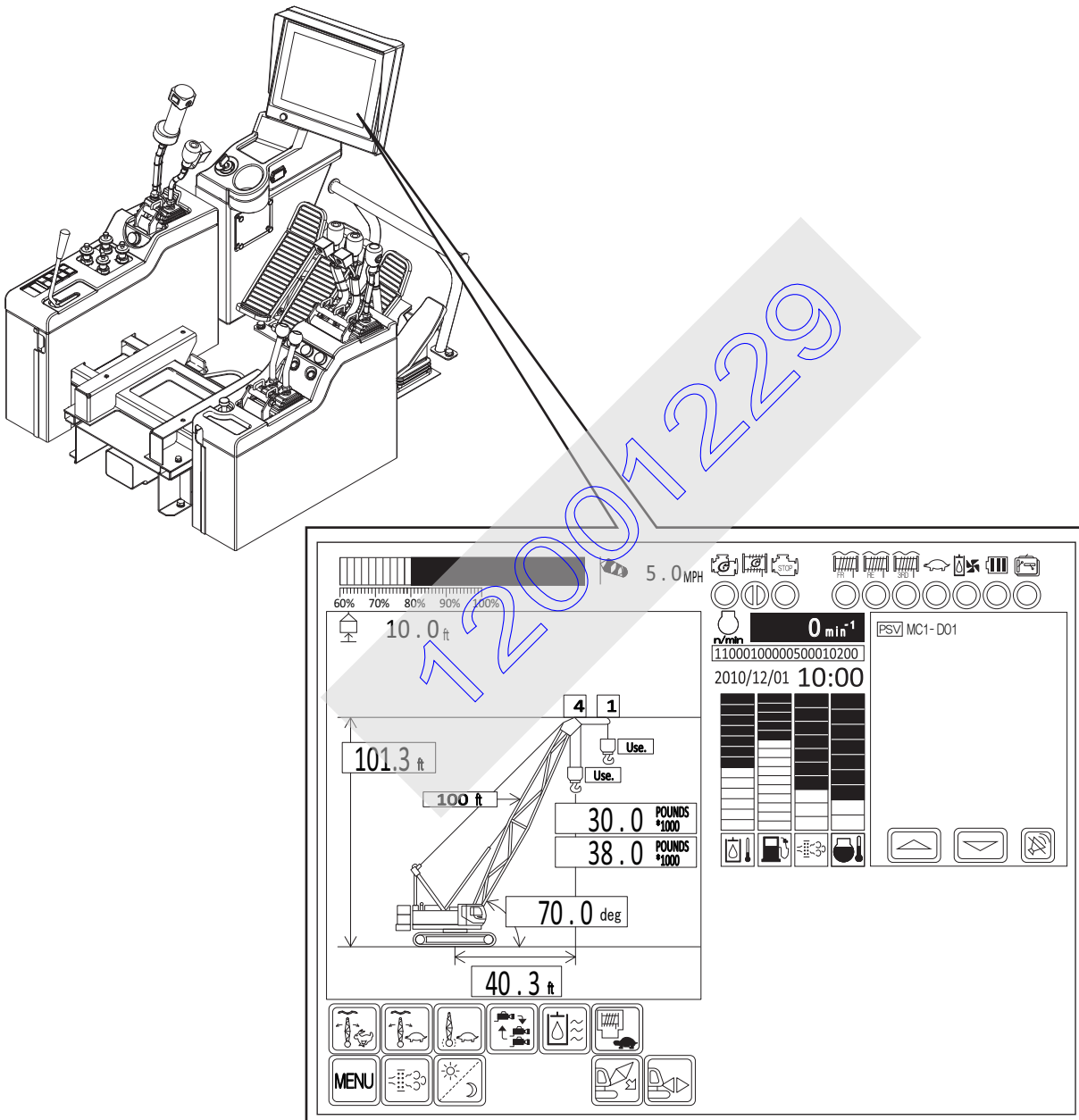
### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 3.4 FUNCTION OF MONITOR

Change the sheet if it is dirty or damaged.

#### **CAUTION**

Do not press the touch panel screen with sharp object such as tool or handle with undue force to avoid monitor failure.



#### **CAUTION**

All values in the figure are for reference only.



### 3.5 OPERATING PROCEDURE OF MONITOR

Referring to the setting items (following), perform necessary setting.

Setting item	Classification of operation		
	Daily operation	Operation after changing attachment	Operation at initial erection
(1) Setting of crane configuration	X	O	O
(2) Selection of main/aux. lifting	<input type="checkbox"/>	O	O
(3) Setting of working area limit value	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

O : Necessary X : Unnecessary  : If necessary

Since the set value is memorized in the controller even by stopping the engine and turning the power off, resetting is not required.

12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

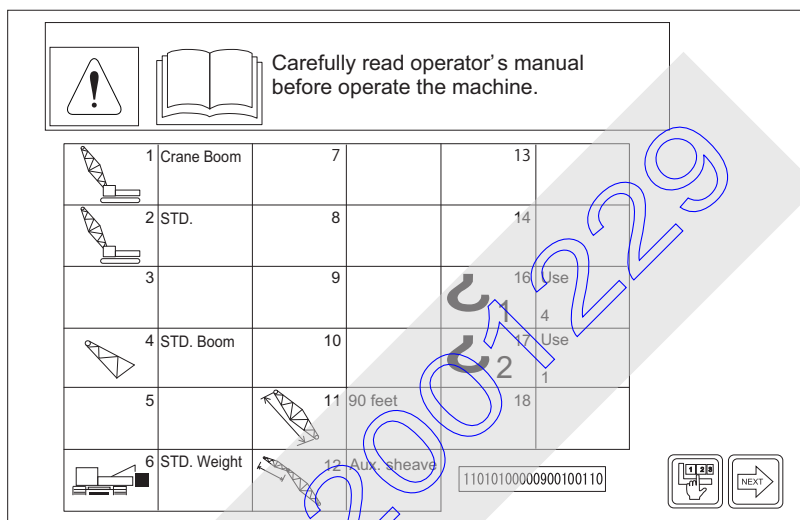
#### 1. TURNING POWER ON

When the key switch is set to the ON position, power is automatically supplied to the monitor. If power is not supplied to the monitor, check the fuse. When power is supplied to the monitor, the following screen is displayed on the monitor as follows.

#### CAUTION

It may take several seconds to start the monitor and display this.

Meanwhile, do not operate the crane.



Read the operator manual carefully before operating the machine.

The crane configuration is indicated on the screen. Check to see that this configuration matches with the actual crane configuration.

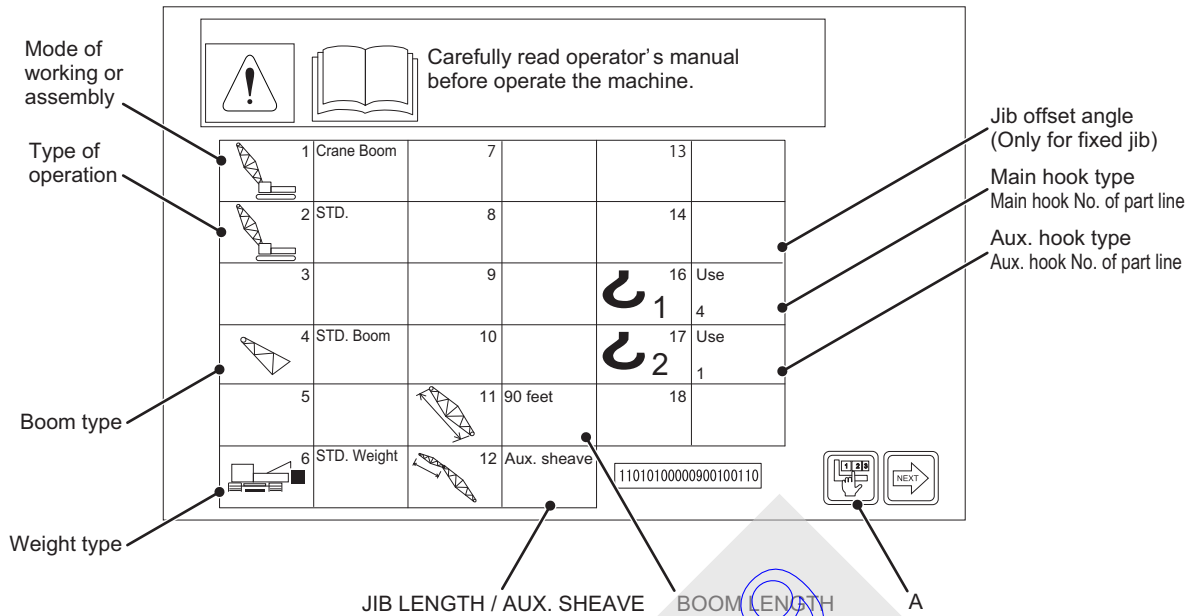
If so, push [NEXT] icon. If not matches, re-setting would be required.

Push [A] icon and start re-setting referring to 3.5.1 SETTING OF CRANE CONFIGURATION.

#### Note

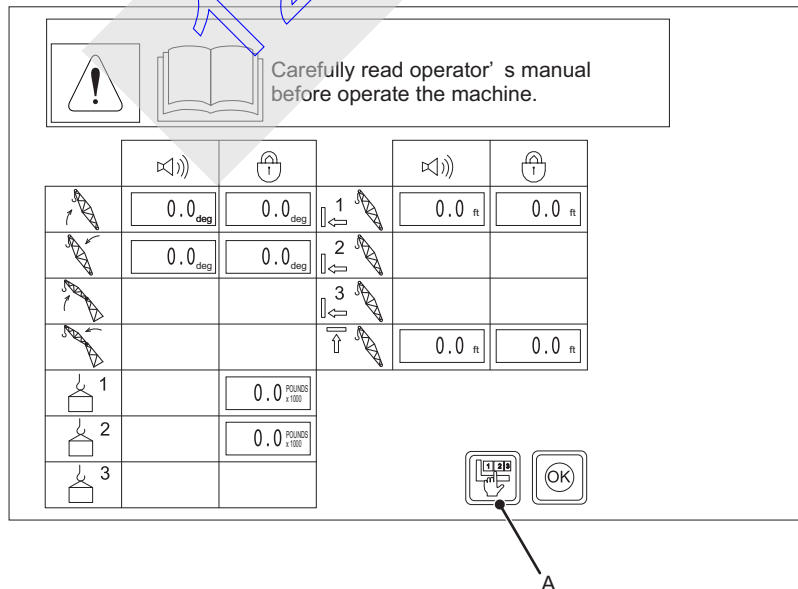
Optional items or a custom specification are indicated in the blank on the monitor.

2. SCREEN EXAMPLE



Then setting condition of work area limit becomes indicated. After checking the content, push [OK] icon.

By pushing [A] icon, setting can be changed. Reset referring to 3.5.3 SETTING OF WORK AREA LIMIT VALUE.

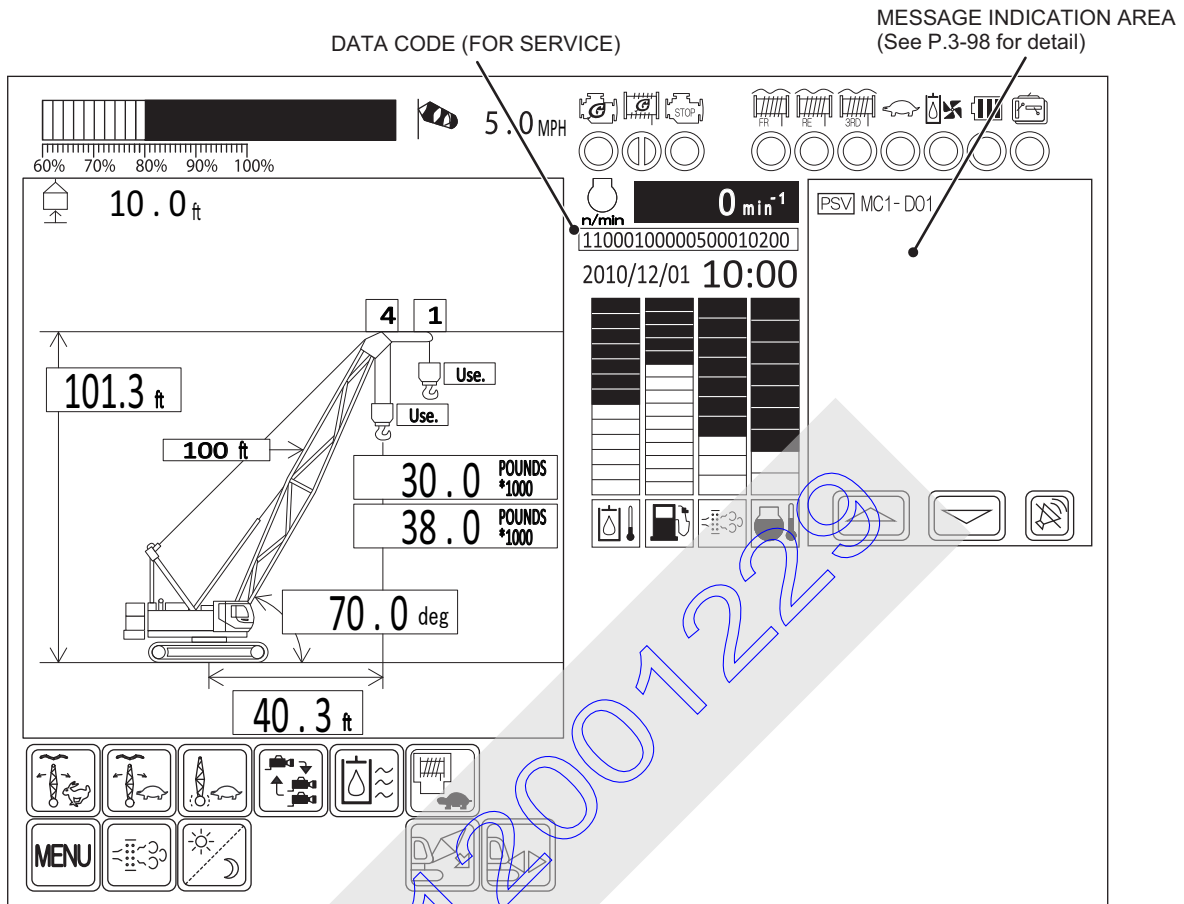


### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

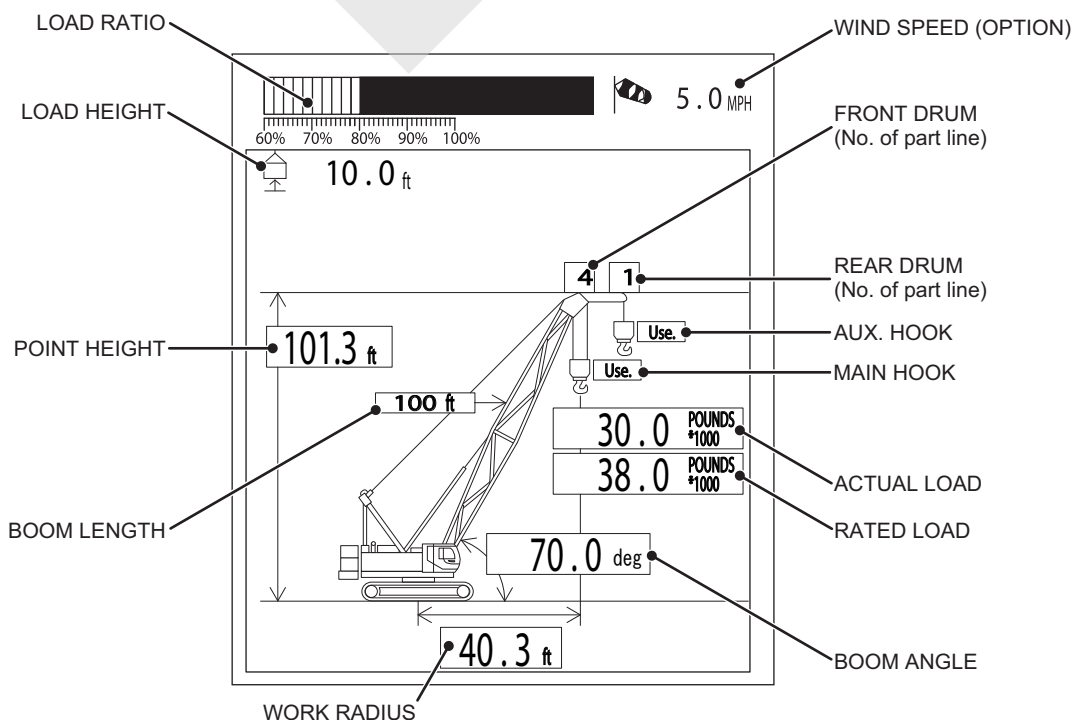
Main screen is displayed and the crane is ready to operate.

(Main screen example)

- In case of crane



#### MONITOR



#### LOAD SAFETY DEVICE INDICATION AREA

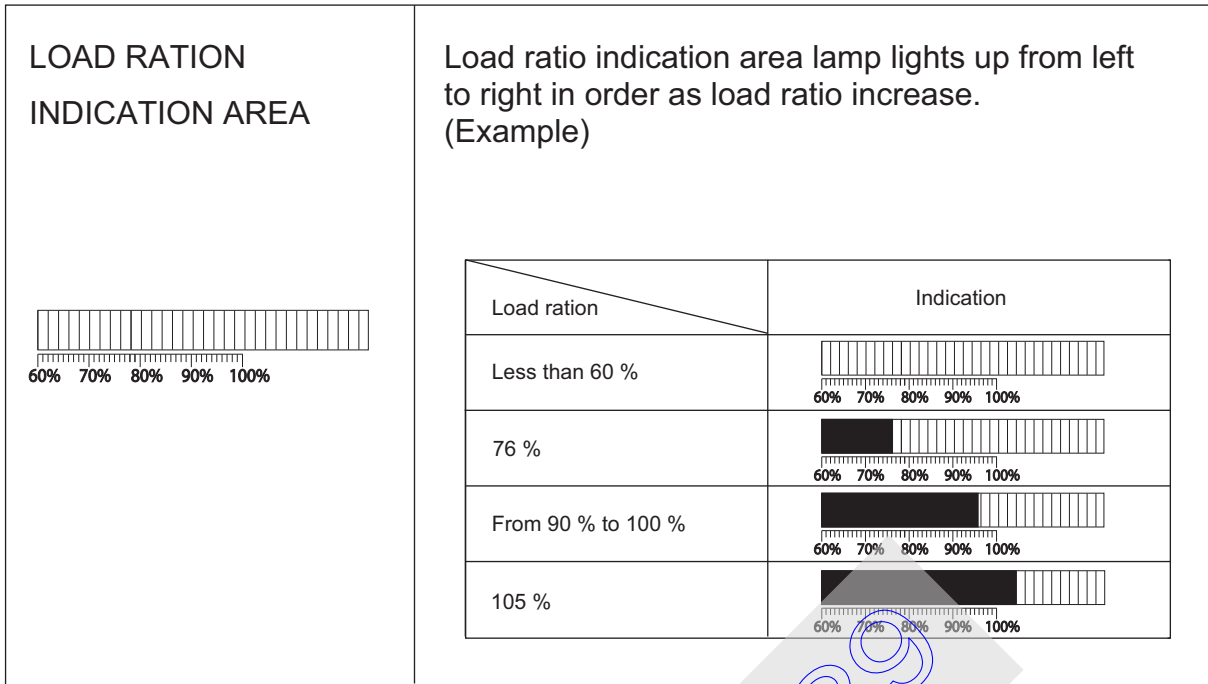
3. HOW TO READ LOAD SAFETY DEVICE INDICATION

(1) Digital indication (value)  
(Example of indication)

<p>BOOM ANGLE INDICATION</p> <p><b>70.0 deg</b></p>	<p>Indicate boom angle by 0.1 degrees unit.</p>	<p>BOOM LENGTH</p> <p><b>100 feet</b></p>	<p>Indicate selected boom length.</p>
<p>JIB ANGLE INDICATION</p> <p><b>45.0 deg</b></p>	<p>Indicate jib angle by 0.1 degrees unit. (Only for tower)</p>	<p>JIB LENGTH</p> <p><b>40 feet</b></p>	<p>Indicate selected jib length. (Only for tower with fixed jib)</p>
<p>JIB OFFSET ANGLE INDICATION</p> <p><b>44.5 deg</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For tower, indicate jib offset angle by 0.1 degrees unit.</li> <li>For fixed jib, indicate selected angle.</li> </ul>	<p>FRONT DRUM NO. OF PART LINE</p> <p><b>4</b></p>	<p>Indicate input No. of front hook rope No. part line.</p>
<p>POINT HEIGHT INDICATION</p> <p><b>101.3 ft</b></p>	<p>Indicate boom or jib point height by 0.1 ft unit.</p>	<p>REAR DRUM NO. OF PART LINE</p> <p><b>1</b></p>	<p>Indicate input No. of rear hook rope part line.</p>
<p>WORK RADIUS INDICATION</p> <p><b>40.3 ft</b></p>	<p>Indicate work radius by 0.1 ft unit.</p>	<p>MAIN HOOK</p> <p><b>Use</b></p>	<p>Indicate selected type of main hook.</p>
<p>ACTUAL LOAD</p> <p><b>30.0 POUNDS *1000</b></p>	<p>Indicate actual load by 0.1 klbs unit.</p>	<p>AUX. HOOK</p> <p><b>Use</b></p>	<p>Indicate selected type of aux. hook.</p>
<p>RATED LOAD</p> <p><b>38.0 POUNDS *1000</b></p>	<p>Indicate rated load by 0.1 klbs unit.</p>	<p>WIND SPEED INDICATION (OPTION)</p> <p><b>5.0 MPH</b></p>	<p>Indicate wind speed by 0.1MPH.</p>
<p>LOAD HEIGHT INDICATION</p> <p><b>30.0 ft</b></p>	<p>Indicate hook position from zero rest position by 0.1 ft unit.</p>		

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### (2) Load ratio indication



12001229

3.5.1 SETTING OF CRANE CONFIGURATION

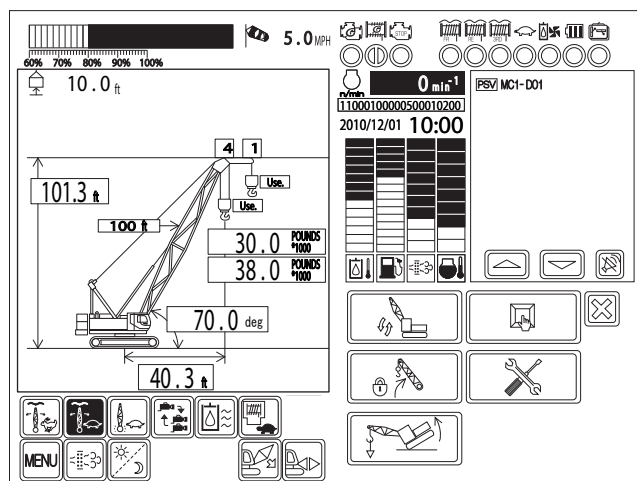
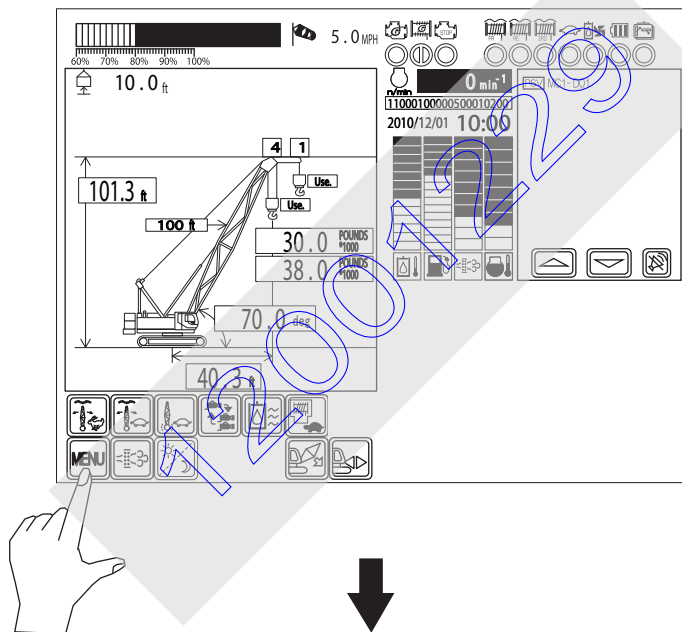


Check to see if crane configuration is properly set to prevent serious accident.

Crane configuration setting is required on type of attachment, boom length, with/without aux. sheave and type of hook.

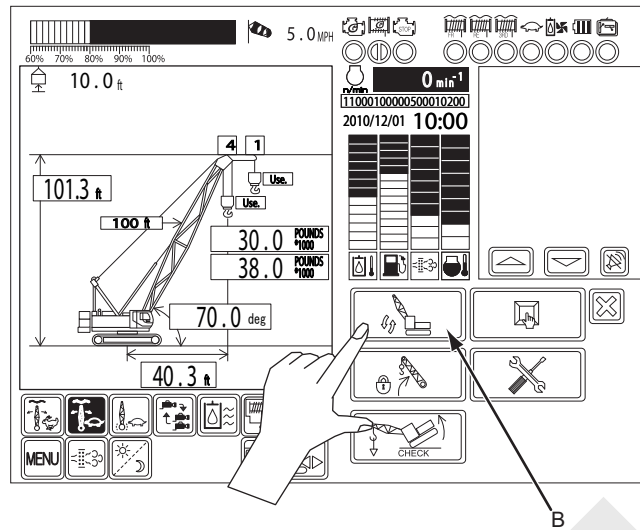
1. SETTING PROCEDURE

- (1) Push [MENU] icon while the main screen is indicated.  
Menu screen is now indicated.

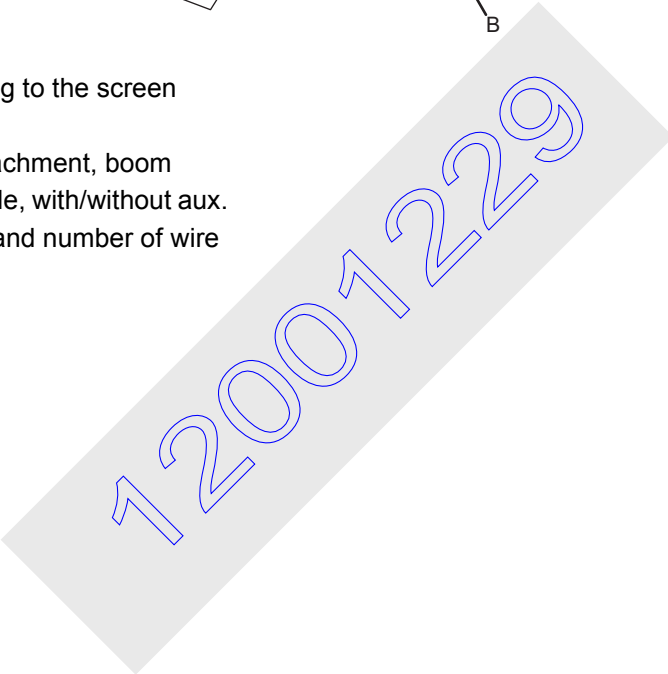


### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

- (2) On the selected screen, match the [B] mark and push [SET] icon.



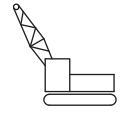

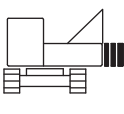
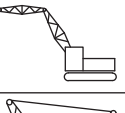
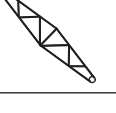
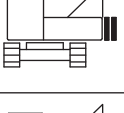
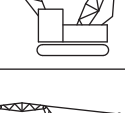
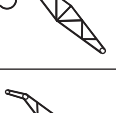
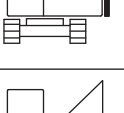
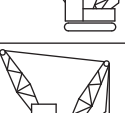
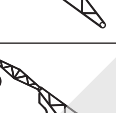
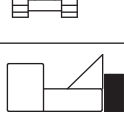
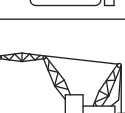

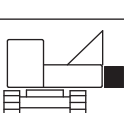

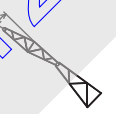
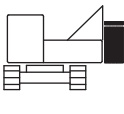

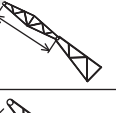

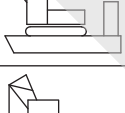
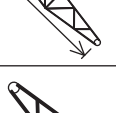
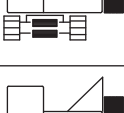
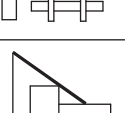

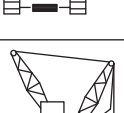
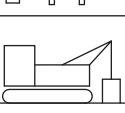
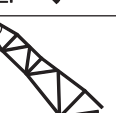
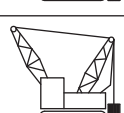


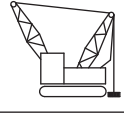
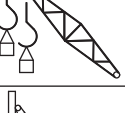

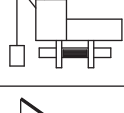



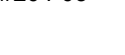


- (3) After this, select items according to the screen instruction.  
Selection items are type of attachment, boom length, type of jib, jib offset angle, with/without aux. sheave, main hook/aux. hook and number of wire rope part line.




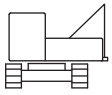
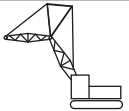




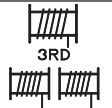
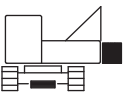

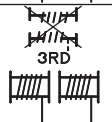
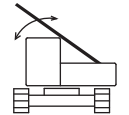

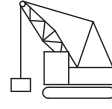
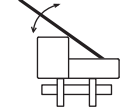


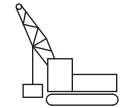


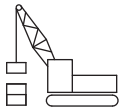
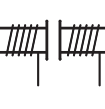
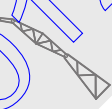
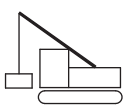
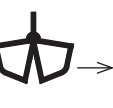

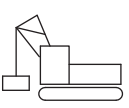



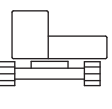

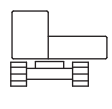
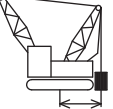
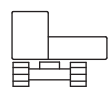
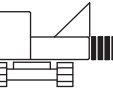
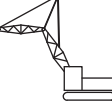
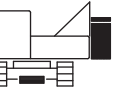
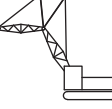


2. DETAIL OF ATTACHMENT SYMBOL

\* These are the symbols used on this machine.

* 1		16		31	
CRANE		BOOM ONLY (WITH HOOK)		COUNTERWEIGHT (VERTICAL 3)	
2		* 17		32	
LUFFING or TOWER		BOOM ONLY (WITHOUT HOOK)		COUNTERWEIGHT (VERTICAL 2)	
3		18		33	
HL CRANE		WITH AUX. SHEAVE (WITH HOOK)		COUNTERWEIGHT (VERTICAL 1)	
4		* 19		34	
HL LUFFING		WITH AUX. SHEAVE (WITHOUT HOOK)		COUNTERWEIGHT (VERTICAL 2) CRAWLER RET.	
5		20		35	
SHL CRANE		FIXED JIB (WITH HOOK)		FULL COUNTERWEIGHT WITHOUT CARBODY WEIGHT	
6		21		36	
SHL LUFFING		WITH FIXED JIB (WITHOUT HOOK)		LESS COUNTERWEIGHT WITHOUT CARBODY WEIGHT	
* 7		* 22		37	
CLAM SHELL		JIB OFFSET ANGLE		ADD. COUNTERWEIGHT WITHOUT CARBODY WEIGHT	
8		* 23		38	
DRAG LINE		JIB LENGTH		ADD. COUNTERWEIGHT TWO CARBODY WEIGHT	
9		* 24		39	
FLOATING CRANE		BOOM LENGTH		FULL COUNTERWEIGHT WITHOUT CARBODY WEIGHT	
* 10		* 25		* 40	
SELF REMOVAL (BOOM BASE)		BOOM TOP (STD)		FULL COUNTERWEIGHT ONE CARBODY WEIGHT	
11		* 26		41	
SELF REMOVAL (MAST)		BOOM TOP (LUFFING 1)	LF	SHL WEIGHT (LARGE)	
12		27		42	
SELF REMOVAL (COUNTERWEIGHT)		BOOM TOP (LONG)		SHL WEIGHT (MIDDLE)	
13		28		43	
PICK and CARRY		BOOM TOP (LUFFING 2)	LF	SHL WEIGHT (SMALL)	
14		29		44	
SIMULTANEOUS HOIST		BOOM TOP (LIGHT)	LT	SELF REMOVAL (BOOM BASE 2)	
15		30		45	
PILE DRIVER		BOOM TOP (HEAVY)	HD	SELF REMOVAL (MAST 2)	

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

* 46	HOOK 1	 1	61	WITHOUT COUNTERWEIGHT		76	TOWER CRANE	
* 47	HOOK 2	 2	62	WITHOUT THIRD DRUM		77	SHL MAST RADIUS	
* 48	HOOK 3	 3	63	DOUBLE DRUM WITH THIRD DRUM		78	LESS COUNTERWEIGHT ONE CARBODY WEIGHT	
49	FRONT DRUM IN USE	 FR	64	DOUBLE DRUM WITHOUT THIRD DRUM		79	MAST CONTROL	
50	REAR DRUM IN USE	 RE	65	SELF REMOVAL (SHL MAST)		80	MAST CONTROL (2)	
51	THIRD DRUM IN USE	 3RD	66	WITH POINT SHEAVE		81	SELF REMOVAL (CBWT)	
52	SINGLE DRUM		67	WITHOUT POINT SHEAVE		82	SELF REMOVAL (CWT PILE UP)	
53	DOUBLE DRUM		68	JIB (WITH AUX. SHEAVE)		83	SELF REMOVAL (MAST 3)	
54	CLAM SHELL (SIDE WAY PULL POSSIBLE)		69	STOP		84	SELF REMOVAL (BOOM BASE 3)	
55	CLAM SHELL (NO SIDE WAY PULL)		70	ALARM		85		
56	WITH HOOK POCKET		71	CRAWLER FULL EXT.		86		
57	WITHOUT HOOK POCKET		72	CRAWLER MID EXT.		87		
58	SHL WEIGHT RADIUS		73	CRAWLER FULL RET.		88		
59	COUNTERWEIGHT (VERTICAL 4)		* 74	FIXED JIB CRANE		89		
60	FULL COUNTERWEIGHT ONE CARBODY WEIGHT		75	LUFFING CRANE		90		

3. SETTING EXAMPLE

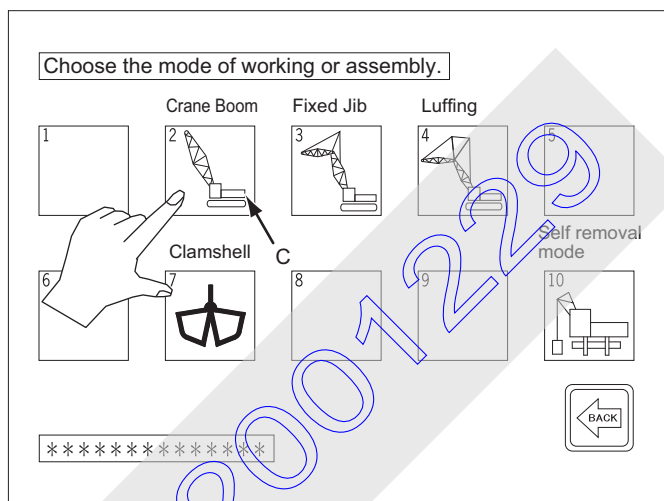
- Attachment type ..... Crane
- Boom length ..... 90 feet
- Jib type ..... Aux. sheave
- Main, Aux. hook ..... Main hook = Use, Aux. hook = Use
- Number of rope part line ..... Main hook = 4, Aux. hook = 1

Select in order from (1) to (8).

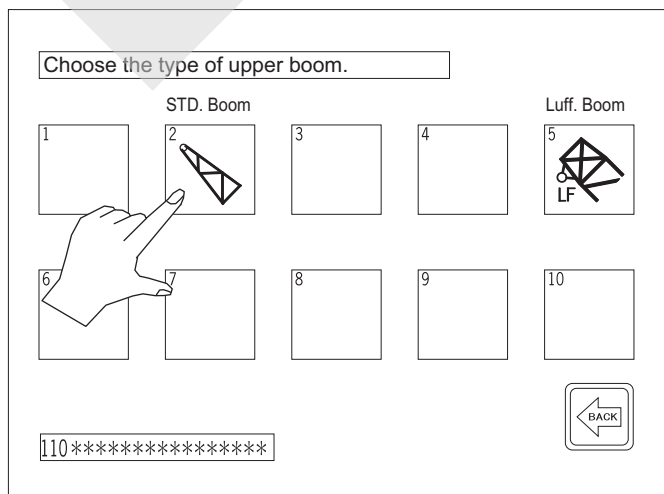
If input item is in error, push [BACK] icon to return to the previous screen.

(1) Attachment select screen becomes indicated.

Select [C].



(2) Select [STD. Boom].



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

(3) Weight select screen becomes indicated.

Select [STD. Wight].

Choose the type of counterweight

STD. Weight			CWT No.1-3	
1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10

11010\*\*\*\*\*

(4) Boom length select screen becomes indicated.

Select [90 feet].

Choose the length of the boom.

50 feet	150 feet	
60 feet	160 feet	
70 feet	170 feet	
80 feet	180 feet	
90 feet	190 feet	
100 feet	200 feet	
110 feet	210 feet	
120 feet	220 feet	
130 feet	230 feet	
140 feet		

1101010000\*\*\*\*\*

(5) Aux. sheave select screen becomes indicated.

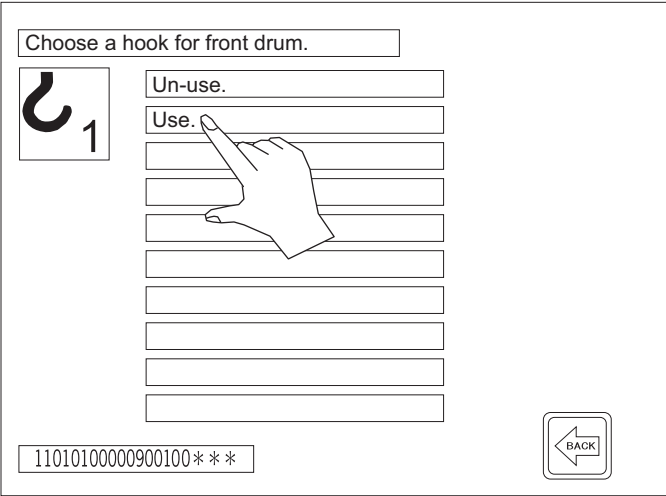
Select [Aux. sheave].

Choose the auxiliary sheave.

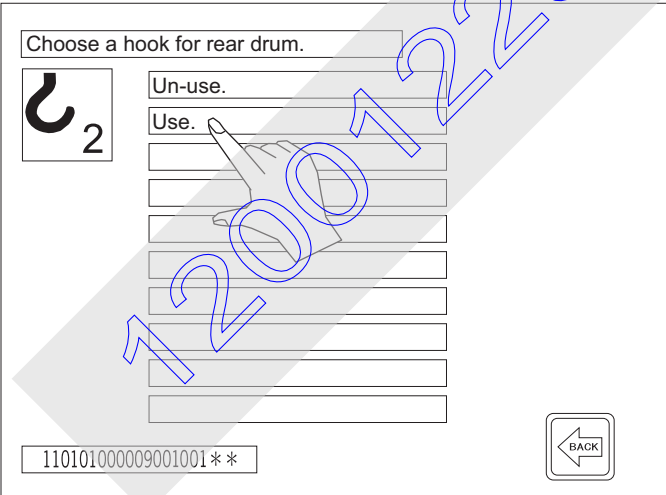
Un-use		
Aux. sheave		

1101010000090\*\*\*\*\*

(6) Main hook select screen becomes indicated.  
Select [Use.].



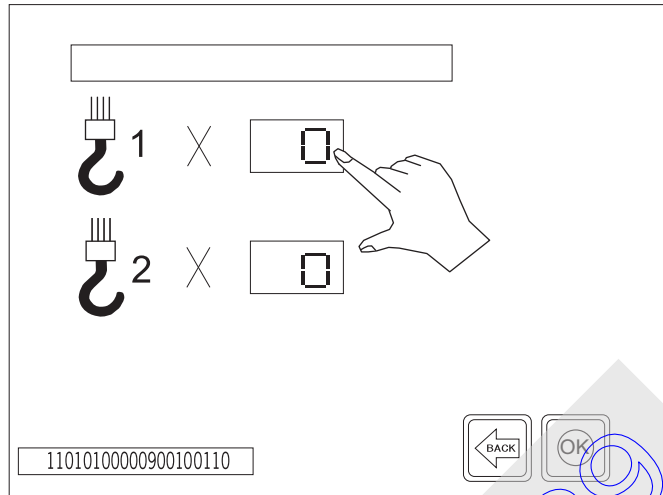
(7) Aux. hook select screen becomes indicated.  
Select [Use.].



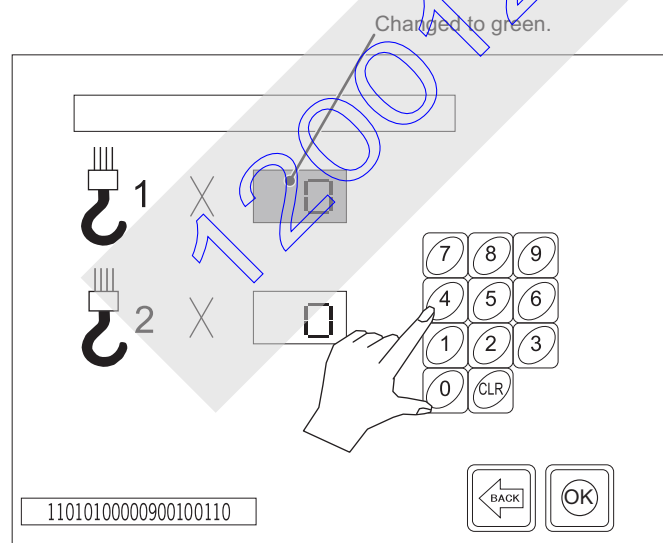
### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

(8) Finally number of part line input screen becomes indicated.  
Input [4] into Main and [1] into Aux.

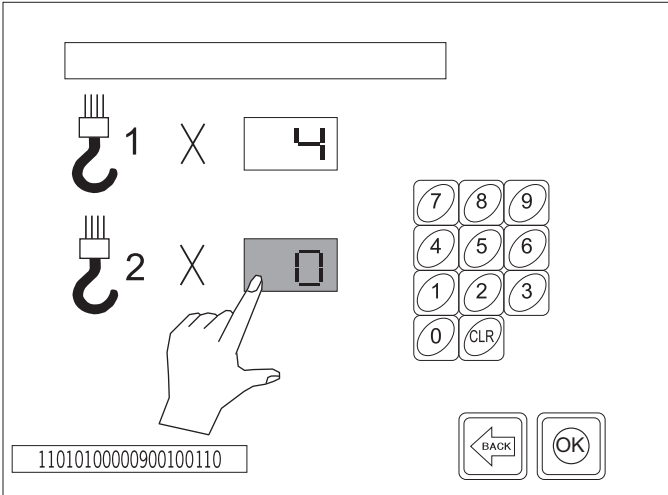
(A) Push [0] in the front drum number of part line setting.



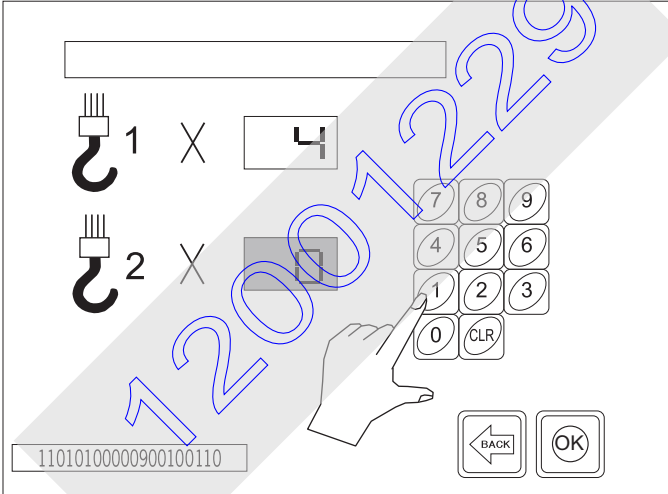
(B) Push [4].



(C) Push [0] in the rear drum number of part line setting.



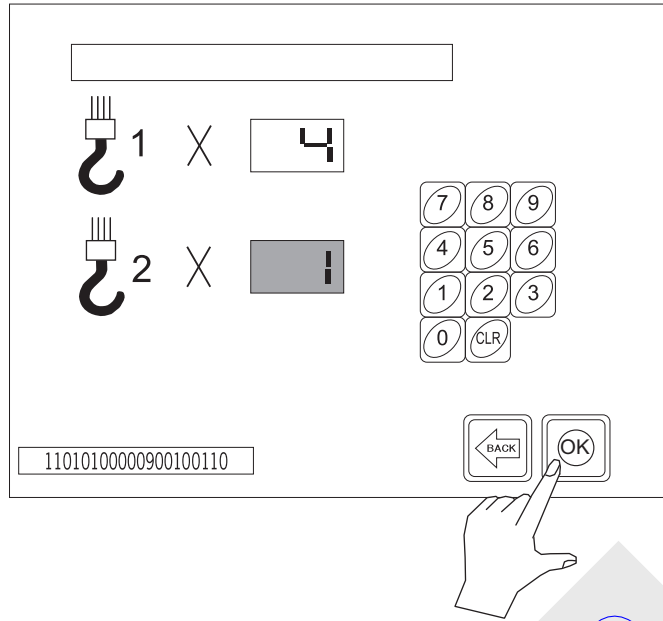
(D) Push [1] by the number pad.



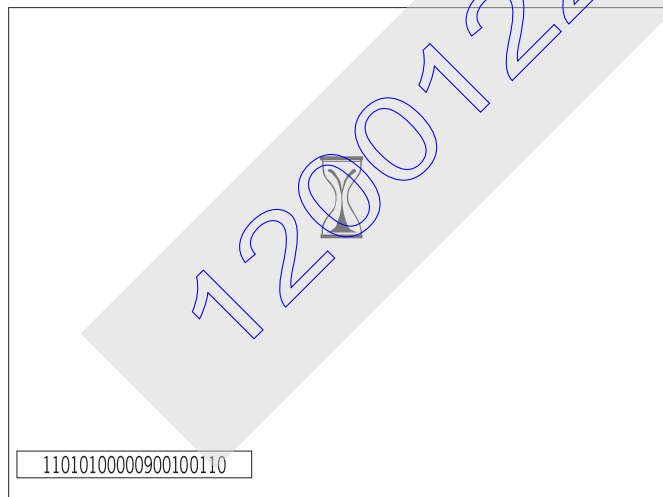
### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

(E) Push [OK].

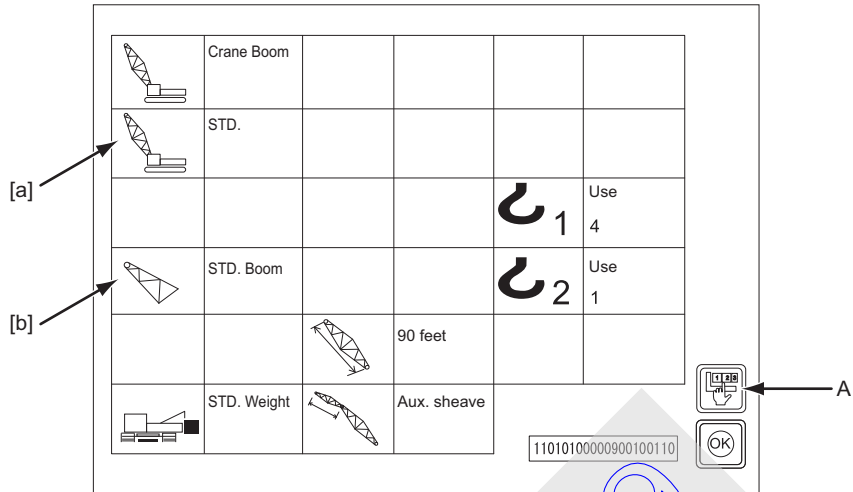


(F) Data is searched.





(G) When data is searched, result of selection becomes indicated. Check if the selected items are correct. If correct, push [OK]. The screen returns to main screen. If not correct, push [A]. Then screen returns to (1) and start re-input.



**Note**

In case the selection is limited to only one choice, select screen is neglected and only result is indicated. (In the screen example, they are [a] to [b].)

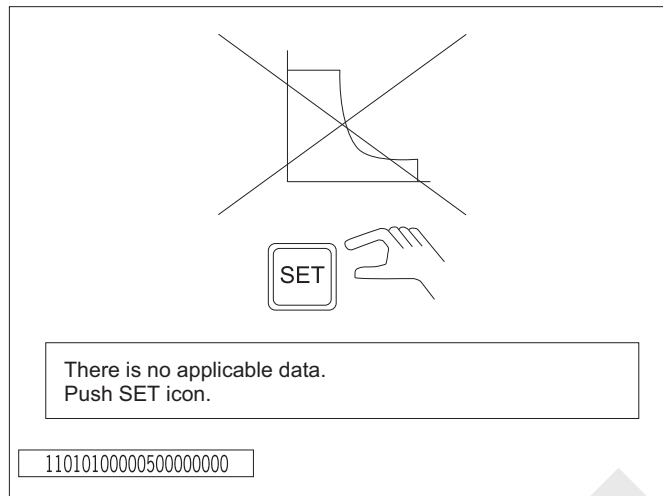
12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

#### SETTING CONFIRMATION

When all select and input are completed, the screen returns automatically to main screen.



---

#### Note

If error occurs, after all settings are completed.

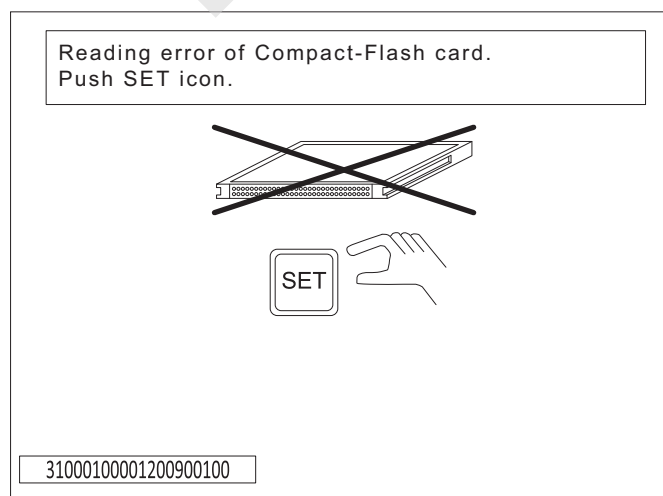
Corresponding data reading starts by the monitor.

If corresponding data is in correct, an error message will be displayed and a buzzer sounds. Push [SET] icon and reset.

Check for equipped attachment and start resetting.

If the data in the data card cannot be read out, the following screen will be displayed.

Contact the Manitowoc authorized service shop.



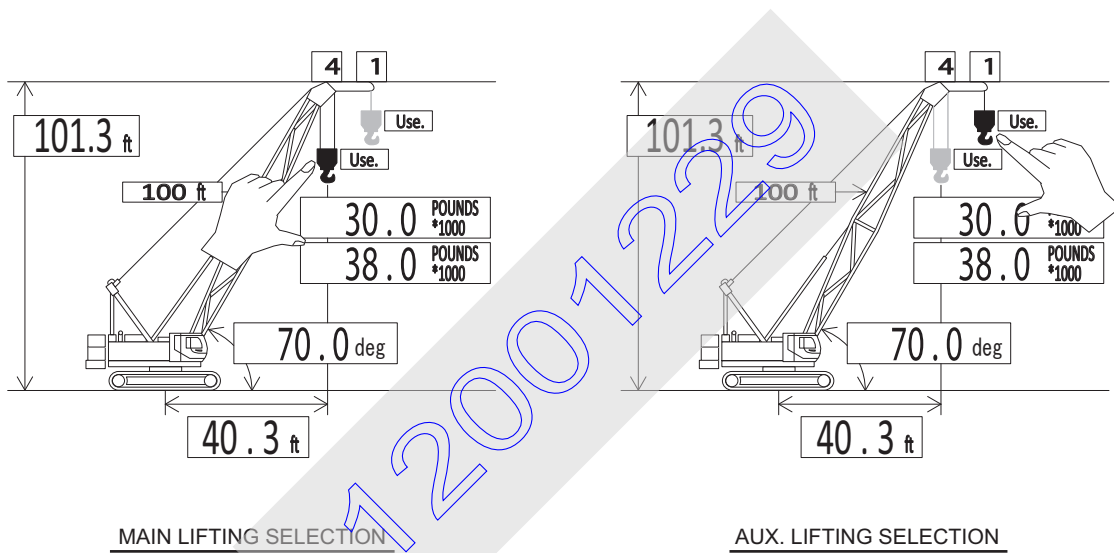
3.5.2 SELECTION OF MAIN LIFTING / AUXILIARY LIFTING



**Check always if the crane configuration is properly set to avoid serious accident.**

In case both of main hook (front drum) and auxiliary hook (rear drum) are equipped, ensure to select main lifting (front drum) or auxiliary lifting (rear drum) based on actually used hook to change capacity. Selecting procedure is as follows.

Push figure of actually used hook for work.  
Selected hook is indicated brightly and non -elected hook is indicated semi transparently.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 3.5.3 SETTING OF WORK AREA LIMIT VALUE

In case of work requiring area limitations, the work area limiting function can be utilized for upper and lower boom angles, maximum load, maximum work radius, and maximum height. (Work area limiting function)  
Items which can be set by area limit are boom upper and lower angle, maximum load, maximum work radius and maximum height.

As for items other than maximum load, pre-notice point and stop point can be individually set.

When only stop point is set, pre-notice would be issued on the specified point. (See table below)

When the boom comes closer to the pre-notice point, intermittent sound is issued and continuous sound is issued to the stop point.

Operation toward danger side is auto-stopped.

As for intermittent and continuous sound are issued only when operated toward danger side. Even when the machine reaches to each limit value, the operation lever is in neutral position (or toward safe side) sound is not issued. With this setting, boom contacting accident due to careless mistake during work can be prevented.

#### POSSIBLE SETTING IN THE WORK AREA LIMIT VALUE

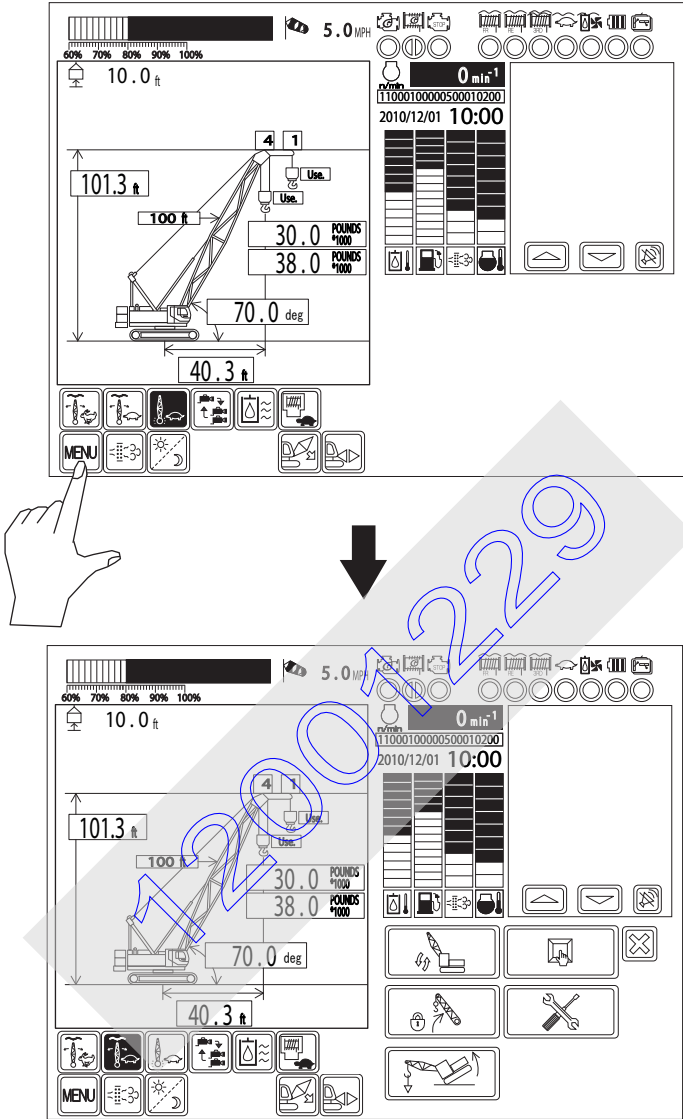
Symbol	Limit item	Setting unit	Pre-notice point
A	Boom upper/lower angle limit value	Set with 0.1 degrees unit	5 degrees before (in case pre-notice point is not set)
B	Lifting load limit value (front and rear drum)	Set with 100 pounds unit	90%
C	Work area limit value (front and rear drum)	Set with 0.1 feet unit	1 feet before (without pre-notice point)
D	Max. height limit value	Set with 0.1 feet unit	1 feet before (without pre-notice point)
E	Jib upper/lower angle limit	Set with 0.1 degrees unit	5 degrees before (without pre-notice point)

A to E above can be set at the same time (multiple setting). Set value once is memorized until changed even if the power is cut.

Intermittent sound is issued before reaching to limit value and if limit value is exceeded, continuous sound is issued and machine is auto-stopped.

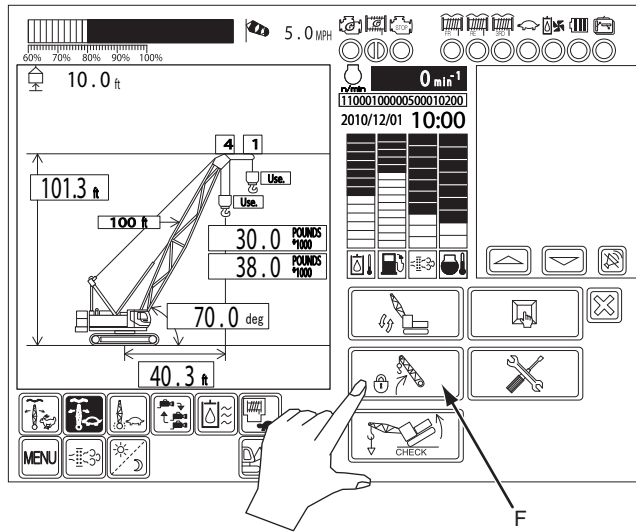
1. SETTING

- (1) With the main screen being indicated on the indication area, push [MENU] icon.  
Menu screen becomes indicated.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

(2) Push [F] in the menu.



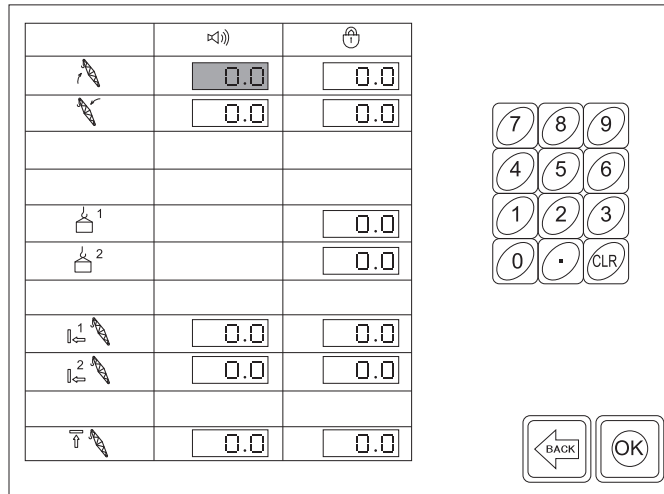
(3) Work area limit setting screen becomes indicated.

(The screen example is crane case.)

Push the figure area if new setting is required.



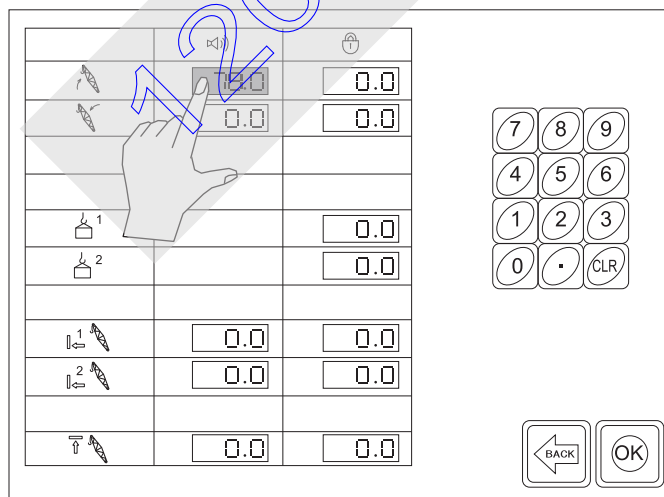
Number pad is displayed on right part of the screen and input is ready now.



#### (4) SETTING METHOD

(Ex.) In case of boom upper limit angle  
(Pre-notice point) setting

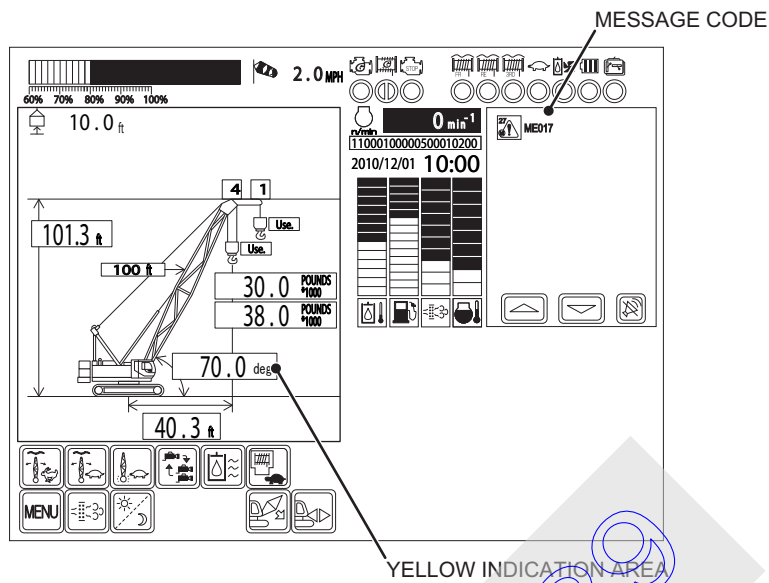
- Raise the boom to the angle where pre-notice is required to issue.
- Push the figure area of the boom upper limit angle (pre-notice point).
- Indicated figure is the present boom angle.



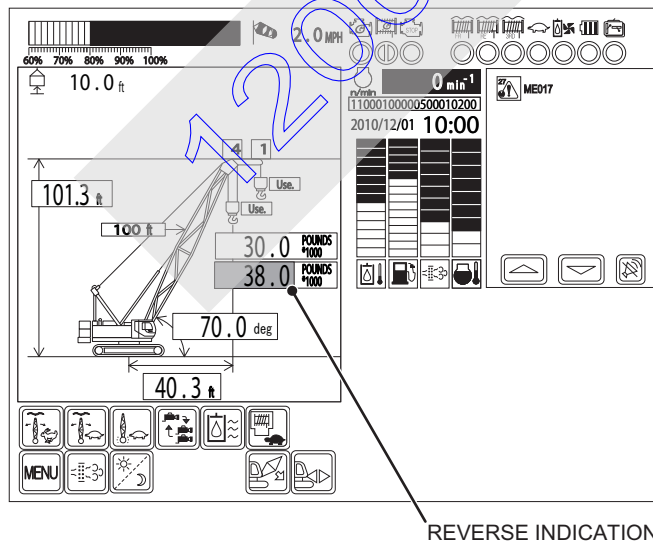
- If fine adjustment is required, input figure with the number pad.
- If the present figure is correct, figure input is not necessary.
- When figure is decided, push [OK] icon.  
This is to complete the work area setting.  
\* If other item input is to be continued, set the other items in the same way before pushing [OK].

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

On items where the area limit setting is completed, figure area becomes yellow indication when the crane enters into the pre-notice area and corresponding message code becomes indicated.



When the load limit is input, the rated load indication area becomes reverse indication (green background/black letters).



- Max height cannot be set individually for main lifting and aux. lifting.  
In the main lifting mode, limit function becomes actuated when the boom point reaches to the set point.  
In the aux. lifting mode, limit function becomes actuated when the jib point (or aux. jib point) reaches to the set point.
- The load limit value is to input variation of figure only.



**Pre-notice point and alarming point  
(stop point)**

On the item with both pre notice and alarming points are possible to set, pre-notice point must be set to more safety side than alarming point.

If this rule is not followed, caution message is indicated and setting will not be accepted.

Re-setting is necessary in such case.

**If cancelling becomes required during input work**

Cancelling is possible right after placing the cursor on setting required item and pushing the [OK] icon.

Pushing the [BACK] icon returns the screen to the previous one and restart is possible.

**If this function is not used**

If for each [0.0] is displayed, the item's limit function is OFF.

Therefore set each item as [0.0] if the item function is not to be used.

Place the cursor on [0.0] required item and push [CLR] icon to indicate [0.0].

Then push [OK] icon.

12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

#### 3.6 SWING LIMITATION DEVICE (OPTION)

##### 1. INTRODUCTION

Swing limitation device (option) is a safety device that allows the operator to stop the upper machinery at any pre-set limit position (right and left).

When machine reaches any pre-set limit position, the controller automatically stops swing motion of upper machinery and prevents upper machinery from passing the swing limit position.

The operator can swing the upper machinery in the opposite direction.

This device assists the contact prevention from obstacle and not to provide automatic stop function without load swinging under any swing operation or swing speed.

Ensure to stop operation with your own operation before reaching left (or right) limit position taking indication and warning into account.

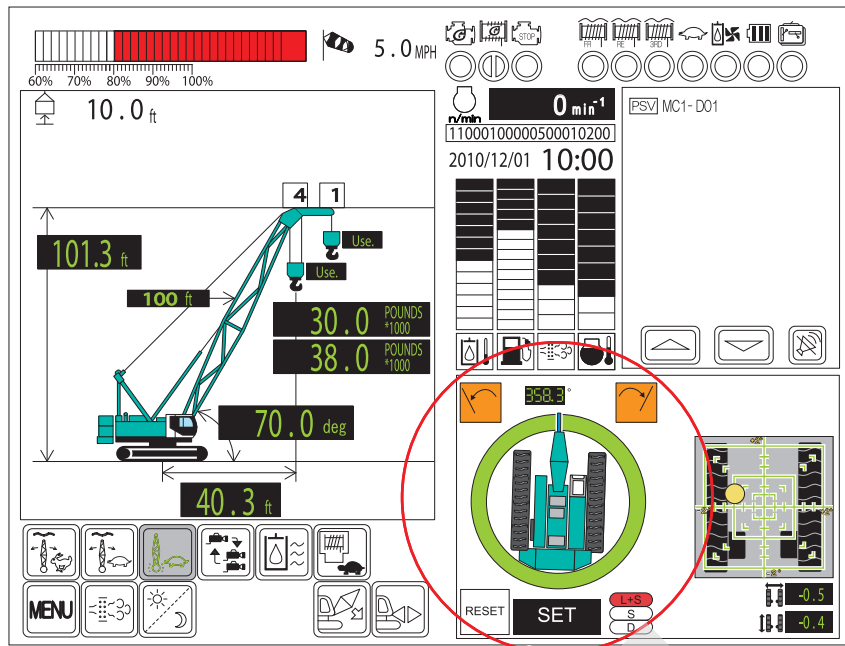
Since the crane may overrun the left (or right) limit position by its inertia, set the limit position with some allowance.



**Make sure to reduce the swing speed in order to prevent the accident by attachment damage when the left (or right) limit position comes closer. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

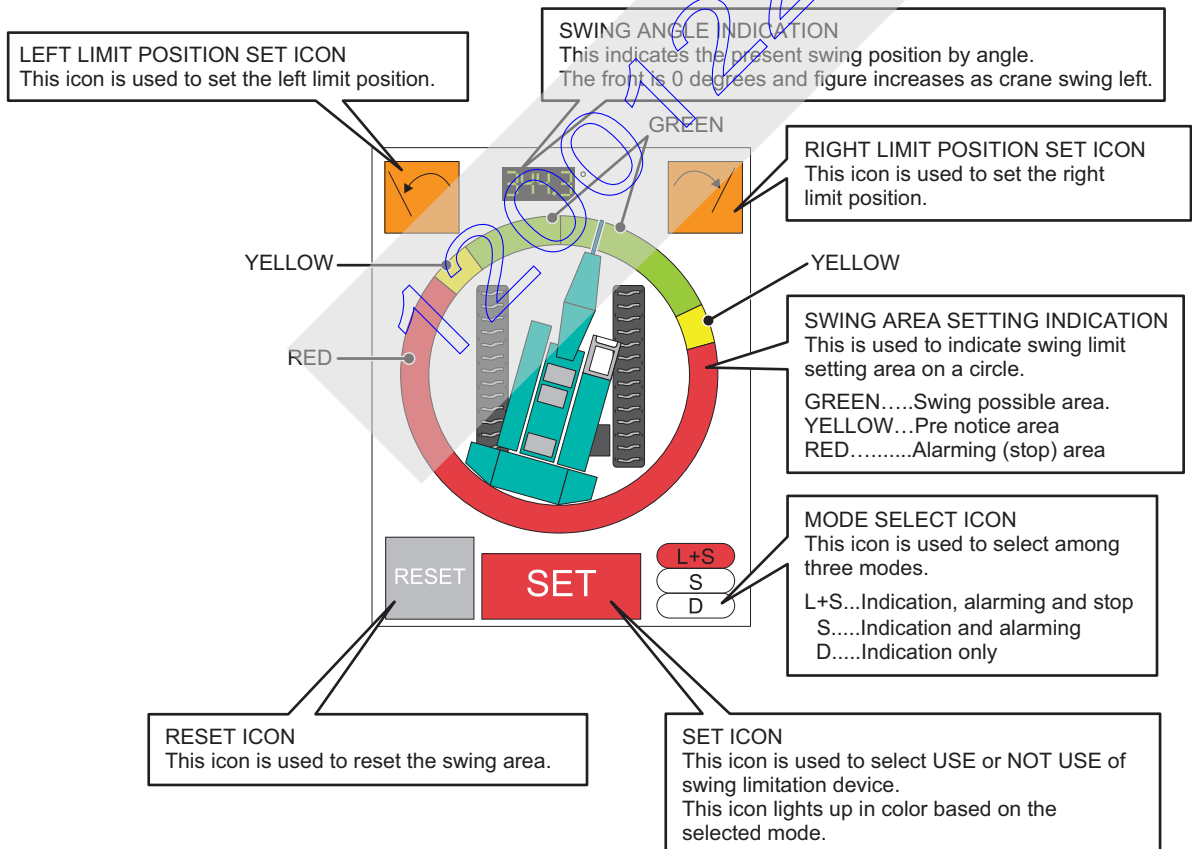
---

Machine equipped with this option has the monitor indication on its right lower part of screen.



SWING LIMITATION DEVICE

2. INDICATION AREA



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 3. MODE

The following three modes are provided in this device. Select mode based on the situation. Use mode select icon for selecting mode. The color of the [SET] icon can tell the present set mode.

Each mode differs as explained below (1) to (3) but setting method of limit area, resetting and function are common to all modes.

(1) D mode...Limit area is divided to three colors (green, yellow, red) Alarming or auto-stop is not issued.

(2) S mode...Limit area is divided to three colors (green, yellow, red) In the yellow area, intermittent buzzer sound is issued and in red color continuous buzzer sound is issued.

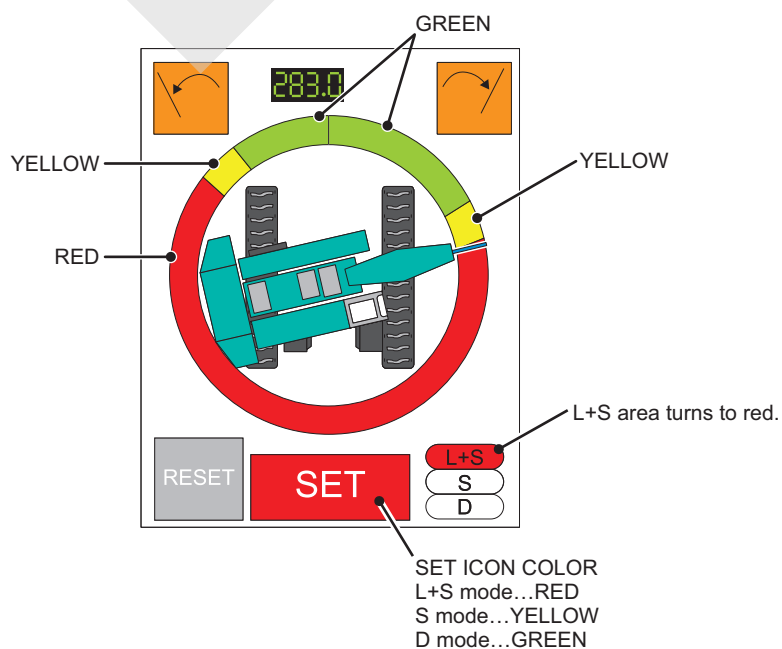
In the yellow color area, intermittent sound pitch becomes higher as machine comes closer to red area (danger side).

(3) L+S mode...Swing speed becomes about 1/3 of the normal swing speed. In addition to the function of the S mode, swing motion toward danger side stops when entered into red area.

(Ex.) When entered into right the red area, right swing stops.

At 5 seconds after entering into red area, swing parking brake also actuates automatically.

The swing parking brake will only be released during operation toward safety side (left side in the example below) or when the crane comes out of red area.



INDICATION EX. OF L+S MODE)



**Ensure to check the selected mode before starting work.**

**If the wrong mode is selected, alarming or stopping does not function properly and it may cause accident.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

---

If the mode is changed after the limit area is set, the mode (function) is changed with the continuing condition of the limit area setting.  
Therefore limit area re-setting is not required.

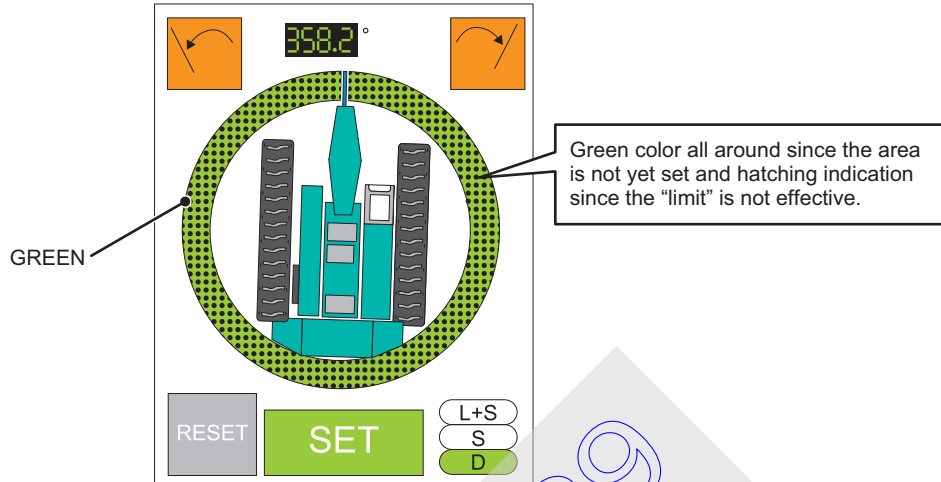
12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 4. LIMIT AREA SETTING METHOD

##### (1) Initial setting

(A) When engine is started, screen indicates as shown below.

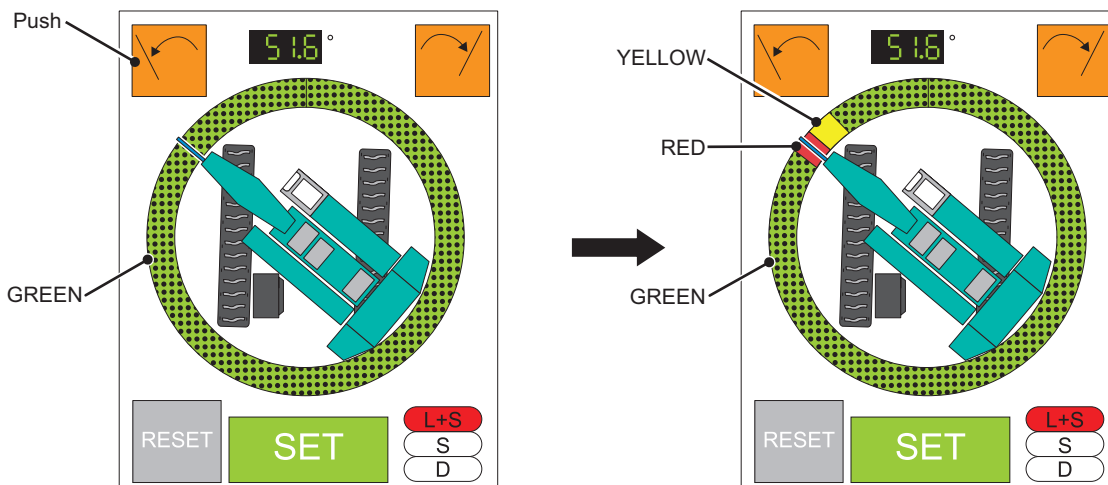


(B) Swing the crane to the place just before the obstacle on the left side and stop and push the icon [LEFT LIMIT POSITION SET].

Since the crane may overrun the limit position by its inertia, set the limit position with some allowance.

The boom facing area changes its color to red and right next to this area to yellow. When the position setting has to be adjusted more exactly after [LEFT LIMIT POSITION SET] icon is once pushed, swing to the exact position and again push [LEFT LIMIT POSITION SET] icon.

Red and yellow indication area are renewed.

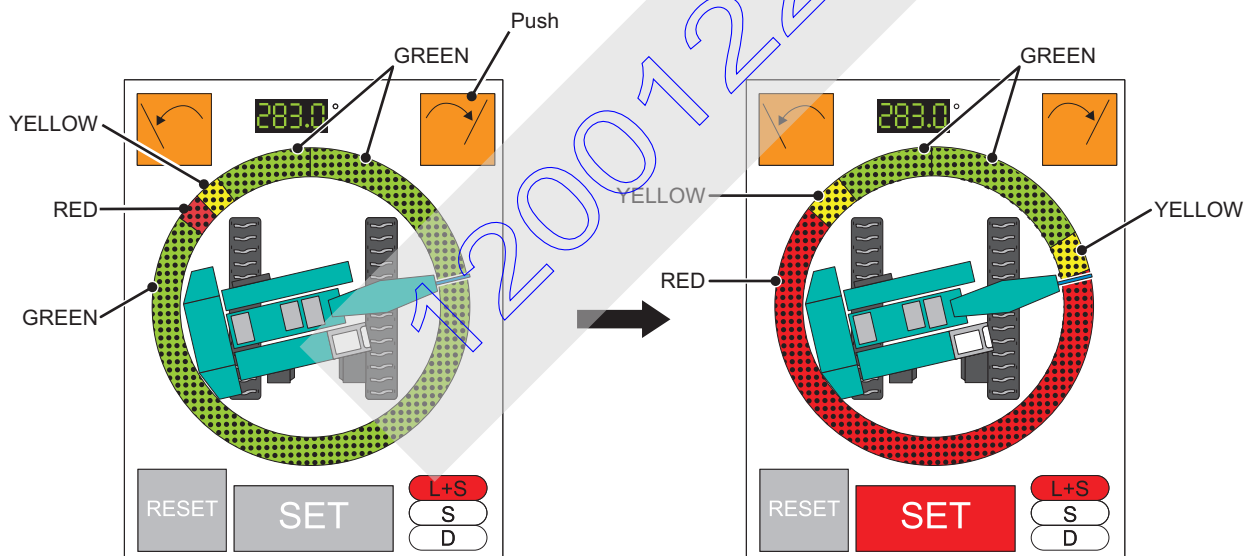


- (C) Swing the crane to the place just before the obstacle on the right side and stop and push the icon [RIGHT LIMIT POSITION SET].
- The crane figure swings to right. Push [RIGHT LIMIT POSITION SET] icon after stop.
- The swing area is set. When the position setting has to be adjusted more exactly after [RIGHT LIMIT POSITION SET] icon is once pushed, swing to the exact position and again push [RIGHT LIMIT POSITION SET] icon.
- Red and yellow indication area is renewed.

**Note**

To determine the swing area, it is surely needed to set both sides.

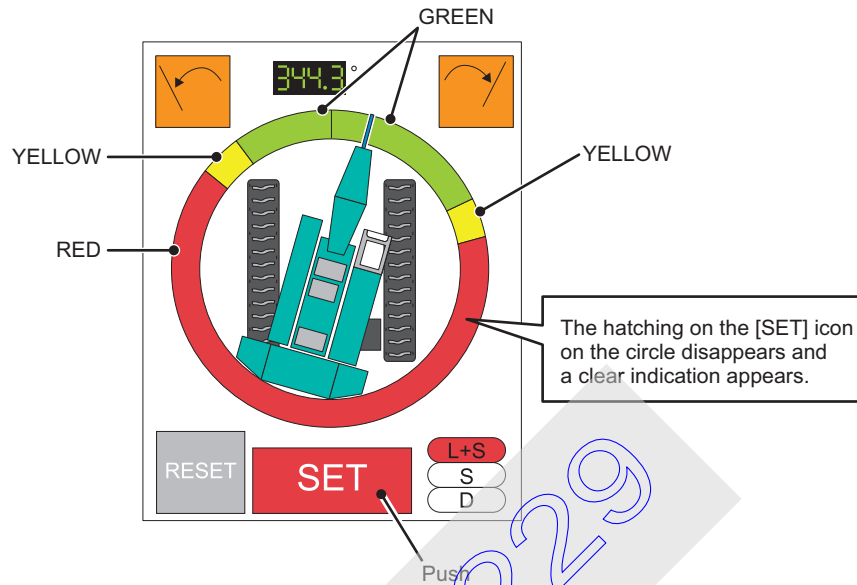
In case there is no obstacle on the right side, swing the crane far enough to the position where automatic stop does not disturb crane work and push [RIGHT LIMIT POSITION SET].



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

- (D) After changing the swing mode to the brake mode, push [SET] icon.  
Hatching indication on the circle disappears and setting is now completed.  
The mode selected becomes effective (Indication, alarming and stopping).



---

#### **WARNING**

With the hatching indication just after engine start, limit function does not work and swing motion is free.

If the limit function is necessary, ensure to set the limit area.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---

#### Note

Contrary to the above, it is also possible to set the limit position from right side to left side.

---

#### Note

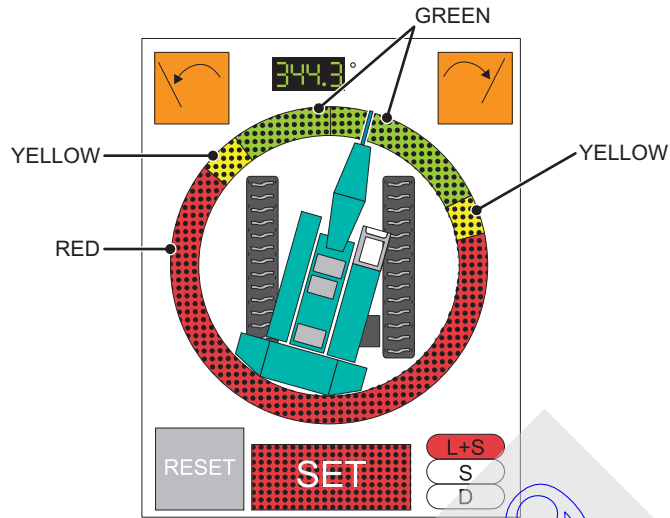
If [SET] icon is pushed without changing the swing mode to the brake mode, mode setting cannot be done. Ensure to change to the brake mode and then push [SET] icon again.

---



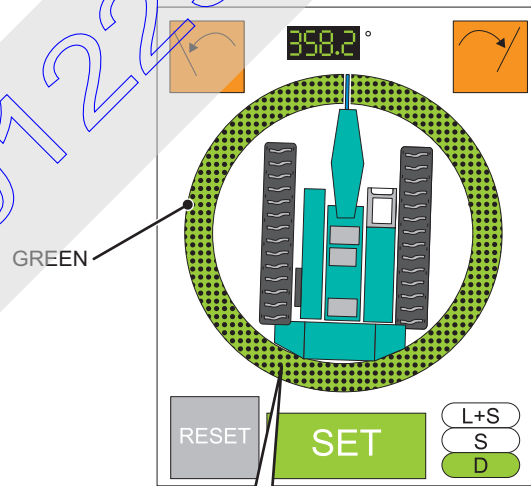
(2) In case of restart of the engine after stopping upon setting completed once.

(A) [SET] icon and the circle with hatching are indicated.



(B) If resetting of set area is not necessary, push [SET] icon.  
[SET] icon and hatching on the circle disappear and setting is completed.

(C) To set the area again, push [RESET] icon.  
The screen returns to the one shown right. Set again based on new setting procedure (P.3-56).



Green color all around since the area is not yet set and hatching indication since the "limit" is not effective.

#### **WARNING**

With the intermittent indication just after engine start, limit function does not work and swing motion is free.

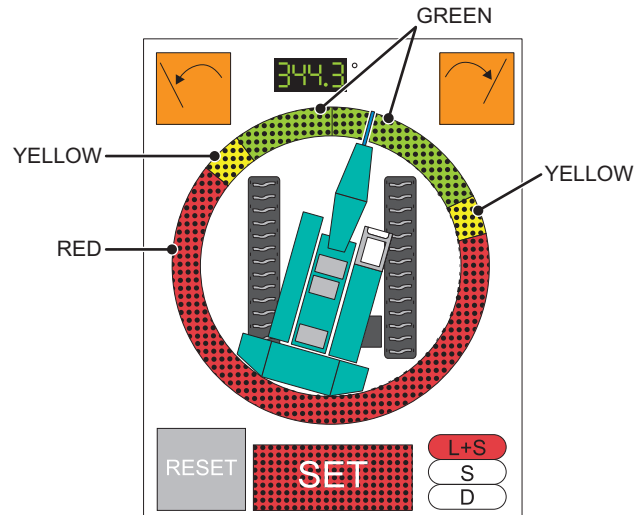
If the limit function is necessary, ensure to set the limit area.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

(3) In case crane propelled.

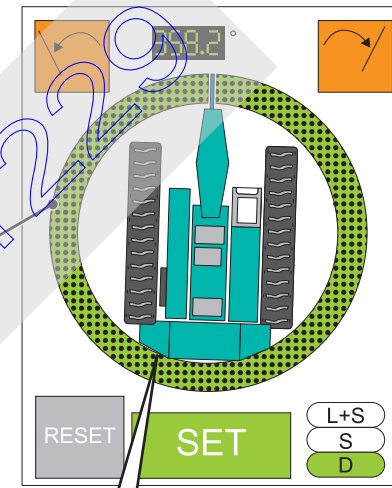
(A) At the moment when the propel lever is operated, the screen becomes as shown right and work condition of limit function becomes cancelled.



(B) To set again, push [RESET] icon. The screen returns to the one shown right. Set again based on new setting procedure (P.3-56).

#### **CAUTION**

If the crane propels, positional relation with the obstacle changes.  
Ensure to set again.



Green color all around since the area is not yet set and hatching indication since the "limit" is not effective.

(4) In case that the limit has to be cancelled temporarily.

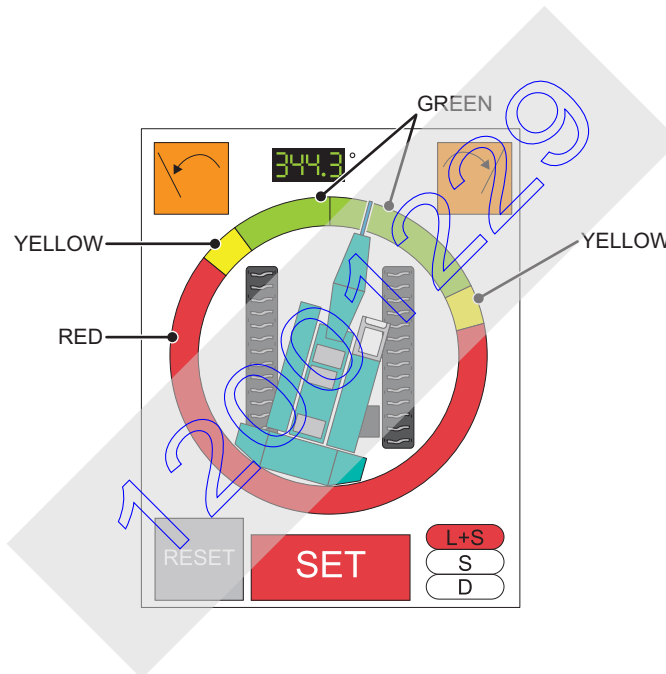
(A) Pushing [SET] icon once changes the condition of [SET] icon to the starting condition (Indication of [SET] icon and hatching appears on the circle). Under this condition, limit function becomes ineffective and swing becomes free.

(B) In order to resume limit function, push [SET] icon once. [SET] icon indication and hatching on the circle disappears and the limit function becomes effective.

#### 5. FUNCTION

Function of L+S mode is explained here as an example.

(1) Figure below shows that the crane is in safe area after setting limit area.

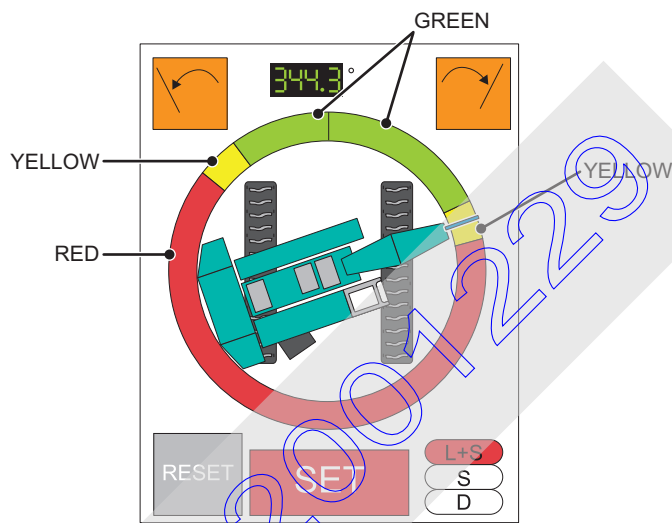


### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

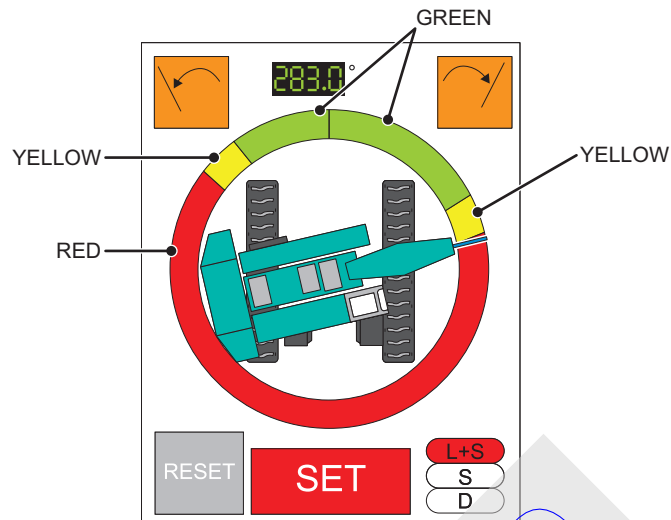
---

- (2) From this condition, if the crane swings to right, crane figure turns right.  
\* Only in case of L+S mode, swing speed is reduced to 1/3 of normal speed to decrease shock at time of stop.

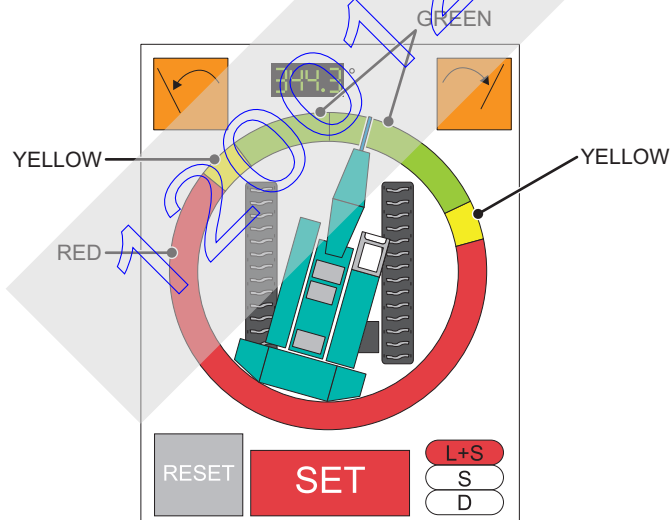
- (3) If crane continues to swing right and the front of the boom enters into yellow color area on circle, intermittent alarming sound is issued.  
Decrease swing speed by lowering engine speed or releasing the lever etc. Intermittent warning sound becomes higher pitch as the crane comes closer to red color area.  
Intermittent warning area is 10 degrees.



- (4) If the crane continues to swing further and the front of the boom enters into red area on circle, continuous warning sound is issued and swing motion stops.



- (5) After swing motion stops, swing left to return the crane to safe area (green area immediately).



- (6) If the crane swing to right, (1) to (5) motions become opposite.

**Caution point on indication**

Timing of intermittent warning and continuous warning (timing of auto-stop) may slightly shift from the moment when color on circle changes (green to yellow, yellow to red).

Therefore operate the crane with allowance.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

## 3.7 FUNCTION OF GROUND INCLINE INDICATOR (OPTION)

### 1. INTRODUCTION

This device is to detect inclination of crane main machinery and to indicate and issue warning. Improve ground condition enough for crane work so that warning from this device will not be issued.

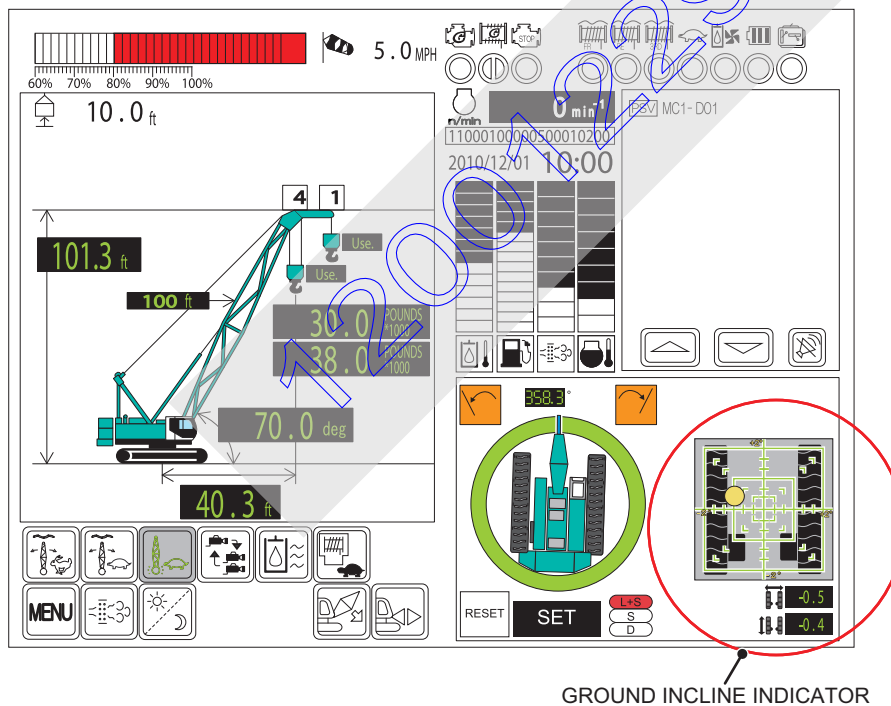


Periodical check shall be made to obtain error between actual indicated value and the crane lower frame angle.

If the error becomes large, adjustment is necessary.

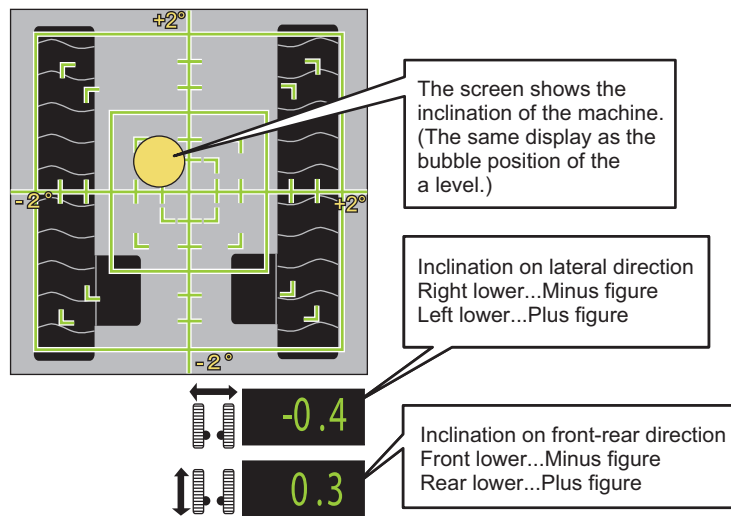
Contact Manitowoc service shop.

Machine equipped with this option has the monitor indication on its right lower part of the screen.



GROUND INCLINE INDICATOR

2. INDICATOR



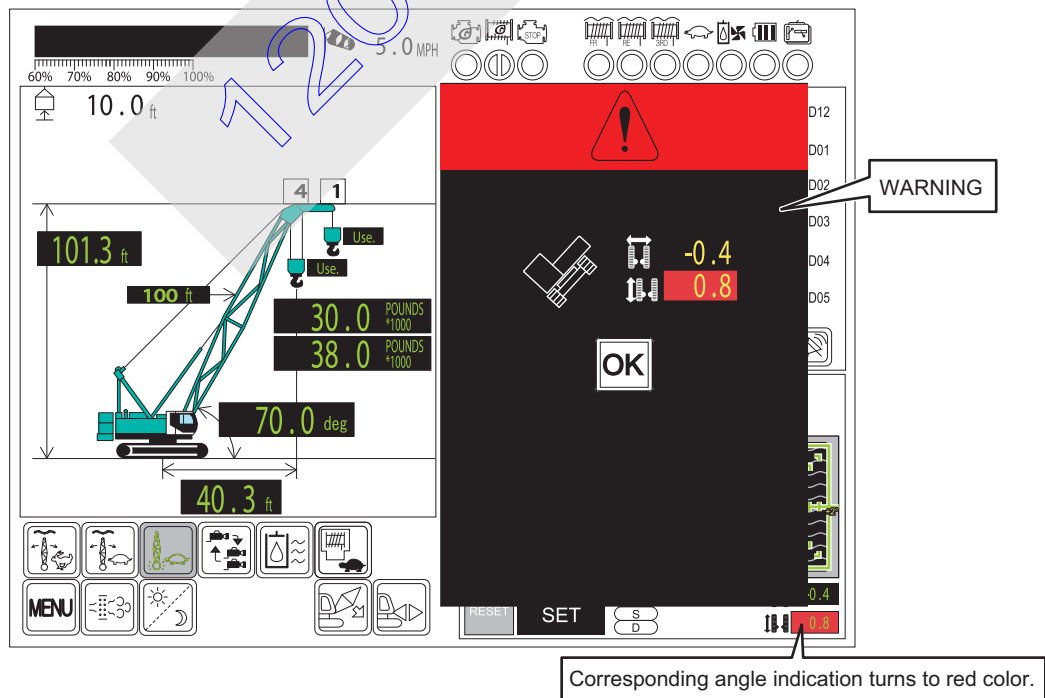
The above figure indicates example of condition that right rear part is lower.

Either front or rear indication exceeds  $\pm 0.5$  degrees, warning is indicated.

This function issues only indication and the crane will not stop.

Check the crane condition and push [OK] button.

Warning indication disappears.



If indication appears before starting work or without load lifting, ground improvement is necessary.

Improve the ground so that the indication becomes within  $\pm 0.5$  degrees.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

#### 3.8 LOAD HISTORY

This machine is provided with the recording function of the machine condition in order to make investigation of cause easier when accident occurs.

12001229



### 3.9 ALARMING AND AUTO-STOP

#### 3.9.1 CONTENT OF ALARMING AND AUTO-STOP

When the machine condition becomes closer to danger situation, alarming is issued and machine stops automatically. (See table below)

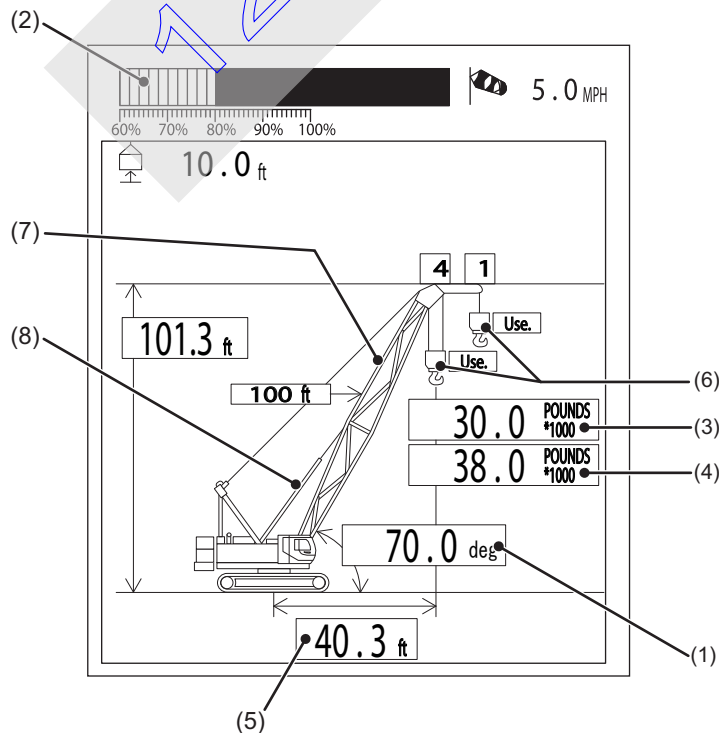
When the machine stops automatically, operate the machine toward safety side immediately.

#### CRANE

Hazardous conditions	Indication, Stop											
	Color change in indicator								Code display **	Buzzer		Auto-stop
	Boom angle (1)	Load ratio (2)	Actual load (3)	Rated load (4)	Work radius (5)	Hook (6)	Boom (7)	Back-stop (8)		Overload warning buzzer	Overhoist warning buzzer	
Load ration more than 90%	-	Yellow	-	-	-	-	-	-	ME024	Intermittent	-	-
Load ration more than 100%	-	Red	-	-	-	-	Red	-	ME005	Continuous	-	Stop
Main hook overhoist	-	-	-	-	-	Red	-	-	ME017	-	Continuous*	Stop
Aux. hook overhoist	-	-	-	-	-	Red	-	-	ME017	-	Continuous*	Stop
Boom overhoist	Red	-	-	-	-	-	Red	-	ME008	-	Continuous*	Stop
Boom overhoist (Limit)	Red	-	-	-	Red	-	Red	Red	ME021	-	Continuous	Stop
Boom overhoist (Backstop No.2)	Red	-	-	-	Red	-	Red	Red	ME060	-	Continuous	Stop
Boom overlowering	Red	-	---	0.0	Red	-	Red	-	ME007	Continuous	-	Stop

\* Only when operated toward danger side.

\*\* See P.3-107.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 3.9.2 CONTENT OF AUTO-STOP

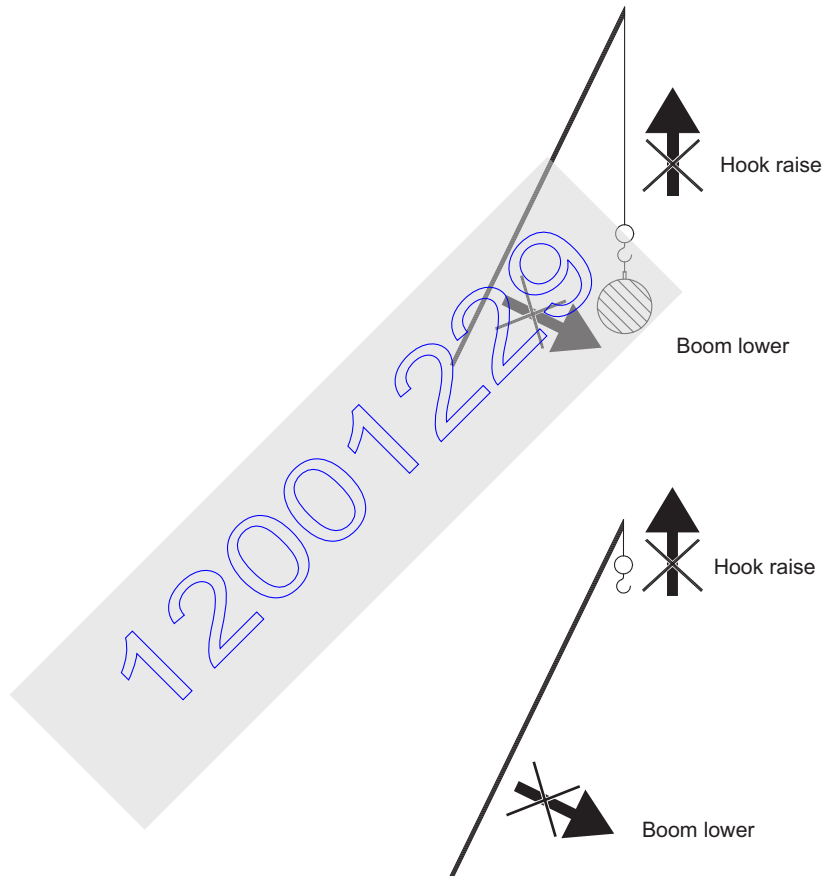
When the machine stops on each danger condition, machine does not move to X direction on the following figures.

Direction without X mark is safety side and machine moves without handling the release switch.

Whenever machine auto-stops, operate the machine toward safety side immediately.

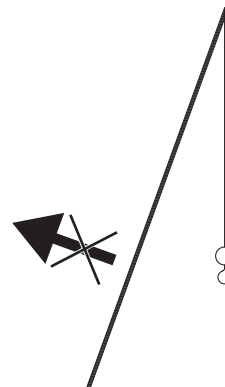
##### 1. IN CASE OF CRANE

###### (1) Overload

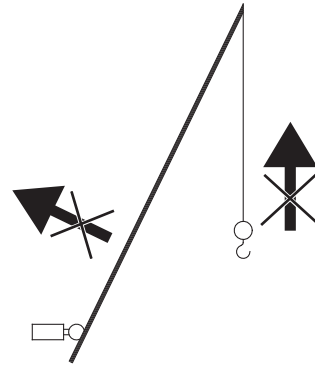


###### (2) Hook overhoist Boom overlowering

###### (3) Boom overhoist



(4) Boom overhoist  
(Final stop limit switch control)



Normally when boom overhoist occurs, controller functions to stop automatically. If auto-stop function is being released and operated, the final stop limit switch control becomes actuated and machine auto-stops. In this case, auto-stop can not be released.

12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

#### 3.9.3 RELEASING AUTO-STOP

---

**⚠ DANGER**

Never operate the crane with the auto-stop releasing switch turning to [RELEASE] side to avoid serious accident.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---

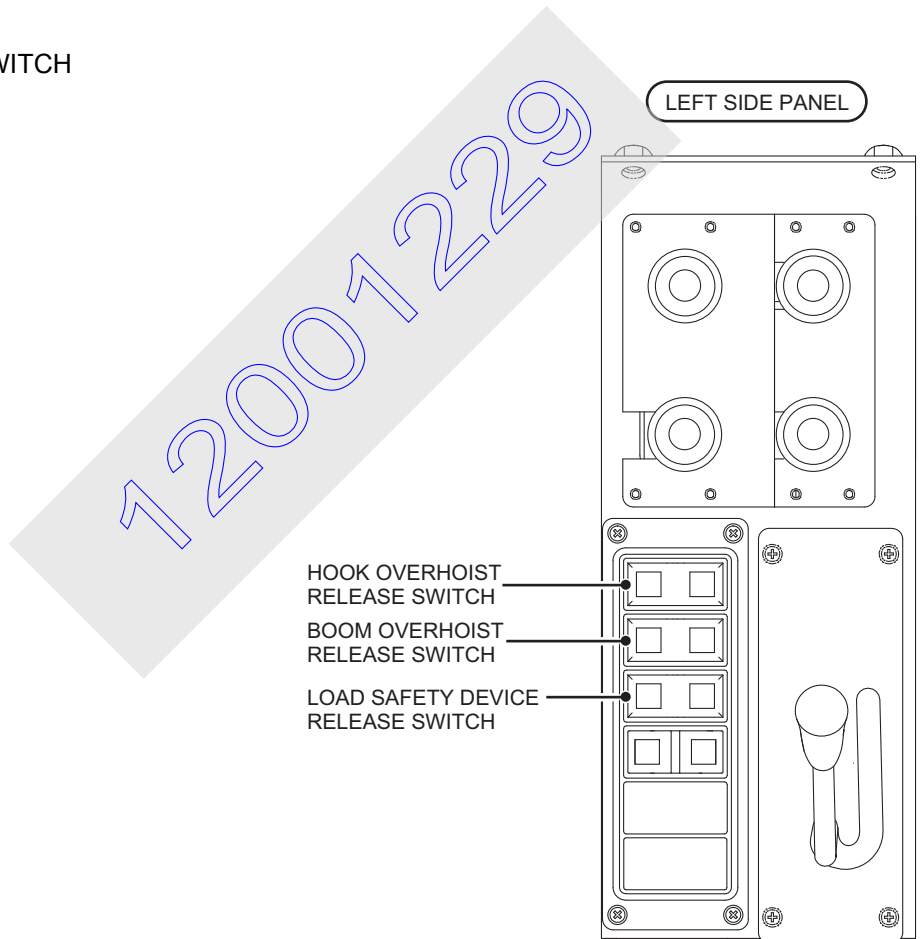
**⚠ DANGER**

Never use the auto stop releasing switch other than for maintenance purpose to avoid serious accident.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---

#### 1. AUTO-STOP RELEASING SWITCH



2. HANDLING PROCEDURE OF AUTO-STOP RELEASING SWITCH

Use this switch only when auto-stop function must be released and crane operation must be continued such as emergency or maintenance work.

When the switch (2), (3), (4) is operated, release switch master key (1) must be turned to [RELEASE] position.

(1) RELEASE SWITCH MASTER KEY

This switch controls the auto-stop release function of overload, boom overhoist and hook overhoist.

The key can be pulled out at [LOCK] position.

Auto-stop release function by the release switch does not work at [LOCK] position and works only at [RELEASE] position.

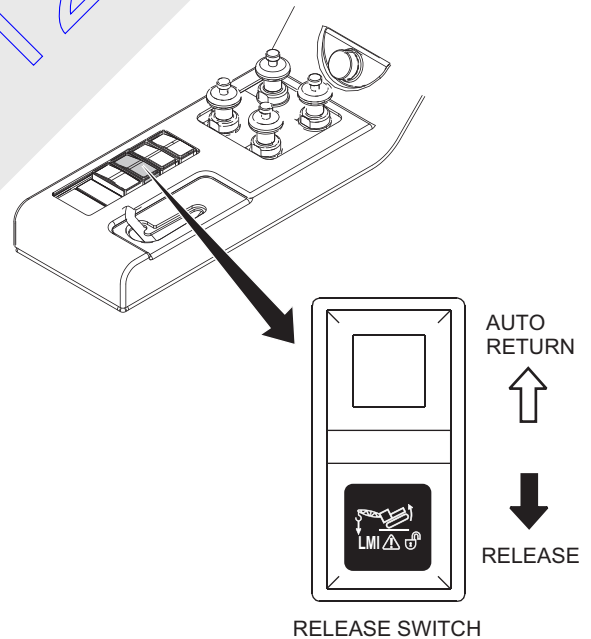
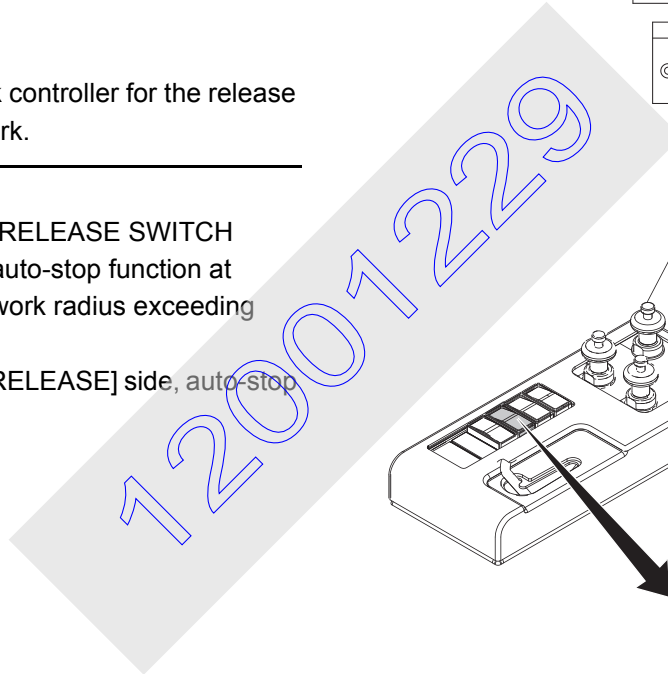
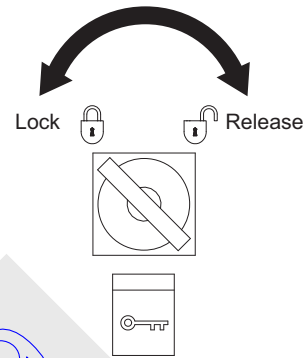
**CAUTION**

Follow the instruction of work controller for the release master key control during work.

(2) LOAD SAFETY DEVICE RELEASE SWITCH

This switch can release auto-stop function at overload condition or at work radius exceeding condition.

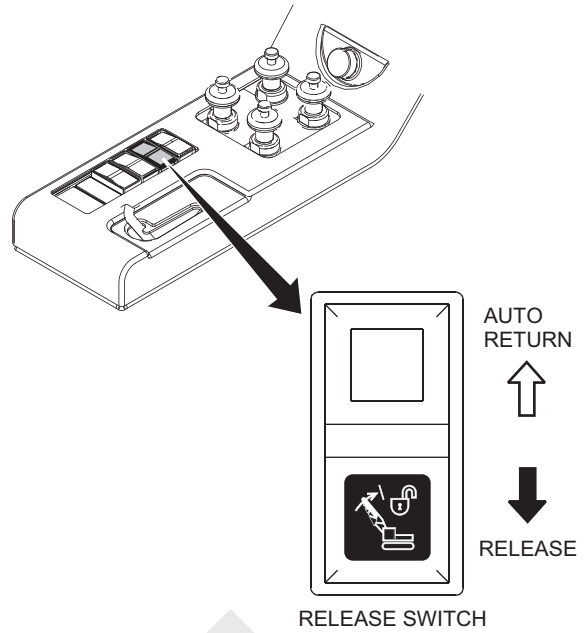
By turning the switch to [RELEASE] side, auto-stop can be released.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### (3) BOOM OVERHOIST RELEASE SWITCH

This switch can release auto-stop function when boom overhoist or jib overhoist occurs.  
By turning the switch to [RELEASE] side, auto-stop can be released.



#### (4) HOOK OVERHOIST RELEASE SWITCH

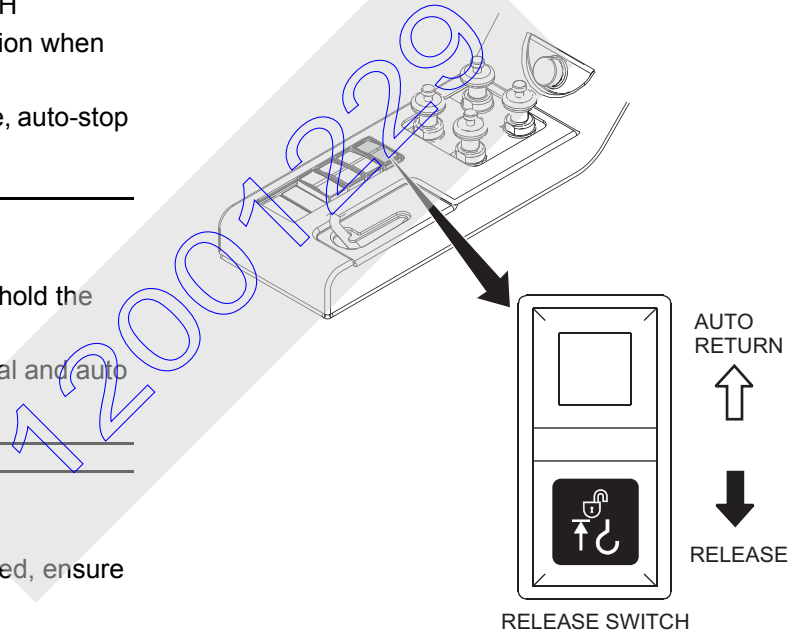
This switch can release auto-stop function when hook overhoist occurs.  
By turning the switch to [RELEASE] side, auto-stop can be released.

#### **CAUTION**

When auto-stop function is to be released, hold the switch to release side with hand.  
When hand is freed, switch returns to neutral and auto stop function resumes.

#### **CAUTION**

When the auto-stop function is to be released, ensure to use the corresponding release switch.  
Using the other release switch cannot release the required function.



3. HANDLING AT BOOM STOWING

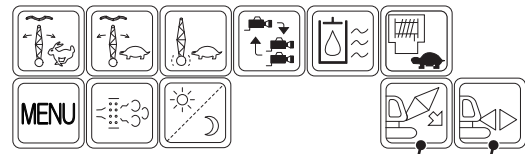
(1) In case of crane

Lower the boom until auto-stop occurs.

When the crane auto-stops, push [boom/jib lowering] icon in the monitor for more than 1 second.

The crane is turned to boom lowering mode and auto-stop is released and boom lowering becomes possible.

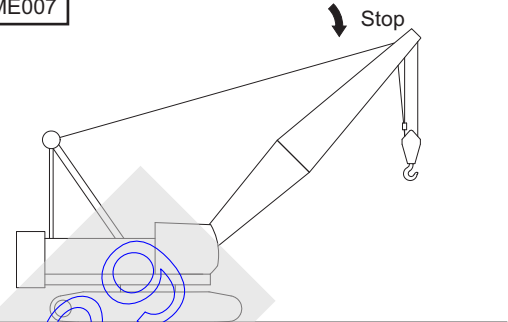
However when the weight of hook overhoist contacts the ground, auto-stop occurs due to hook overhoist preventive device. To lower the boom further, return the control lever to neutral once and push [Assy/disassy] icon for one time (1 second). Then the crane turns to Assy/disassy mode and auto-stop due to hook overhoist is released and boom lowering becomes possible.



BOOM/JIB LOWERING ICON  
ASSY/DISSASSY ICON

MESSAGE

ME007



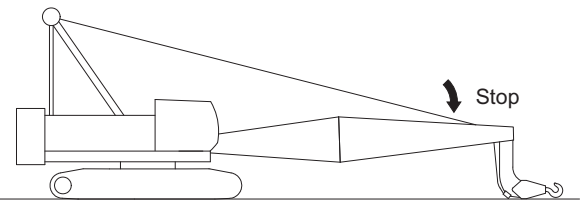
Push



Stop release

MESSAGE

ME017



Push



Stop release

**Note**

Push [Assy/disassy] icon or [Boom/Jib] lowering icon for more than 1 second.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 4. AUTO-STOP RELEASING AT BOOM ASSEMBLY OF DISASSEMBLY WORK

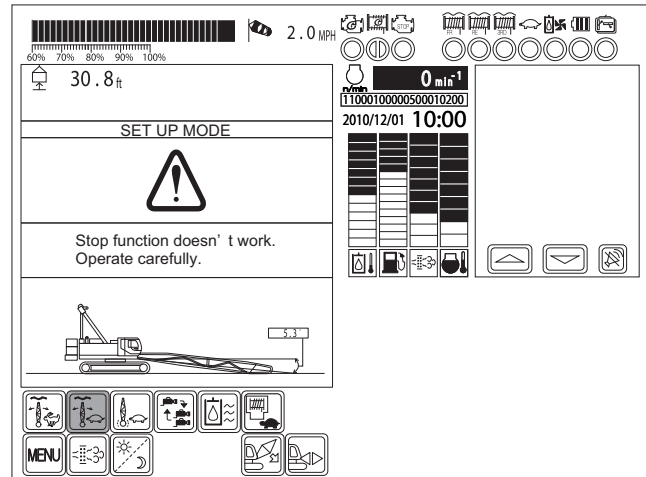
When load safety device, angle detector or hook overhoist limit switch are not connected such as main machinery or attachment assembly or disassembly work, auto-stop due to load safety device or hook overhoist preventive device occurs or alarming is issued.

By pushing [Assy/disassy] icon, load safety device turns to Assy/disassy mode and auto-stop and alarming sound are released. When crane turns to Assy/ disassy mode, load safety device indication becomes only boom angle indication and caution message indication.

After assembly/disassembly work is completed and boom is to be erected, push [Assy/disassy] icon once again. Then the crane turns to work mode. If the boon is erected without changing to work mode, crane is turned to work mode automatically when the boom angle exceed about 15 degrees (for tower 40 degrees).

Therefore when the boom is erected, crane does not turn to Assy/disassy mode even pushing the icon. Assy/disassy mode is cancelled when the power supply is cut.

Therefore ensure to push [Assy/disassy] icon again whenever power is turned ON.



---

#### Note

Push [Assy/disassy] icon for more than one second.

---

#### Note

When the boom is erected or the load is applied on the load cell, the mode does not change to Assy/disassy mode.

---

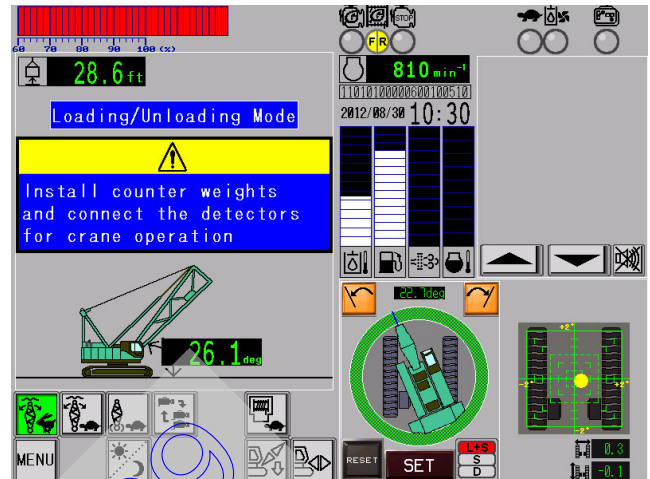


5. STOP RELEASE MODE WHEN TRANSPORTATION WITH BOOM BASE ATTACHED.  
(ONLY MACHINE WITH REDUCED WEIGHT SPECIFICATION)

For machine with the reduced weight specification, counterweight is not installed during transportation. Therefore the machine becomes transportation mode unless the machine is out of the work mode applicable range shown in "4. AUTO-STOP RELEASING AT BOOM ASSEMBLY OF DISASSEMBLY WORK" and crane work configuration, tower work configuration.

When the machine becomes transportation mode, the monitor of the load safety device displays message requesting weight installation, detector connection and angle display.

Under the transportation mode, front drum, rear drum winch third drum become auto-stop condition for both raising and lowering motion and only boom drum becomes functional for raising and lowering. Machine can move to other mode either by lowering boom angle to work mode range shown in "4. AUTO-STOP RELEASING AT BOOM ASSEMBLY OF DISASSEMBLY WORK" or by installing the required counterweight and connecting the detector.



**Note**

If the counterweight detector is removed under the crane work configuration (or under tower work configuration), the machine becomes all stop condition rather than transportation mode.

When the machine becomes under all stop condition, install the weight detector to make machine to safe disassembling condition and then remove the weight detector.

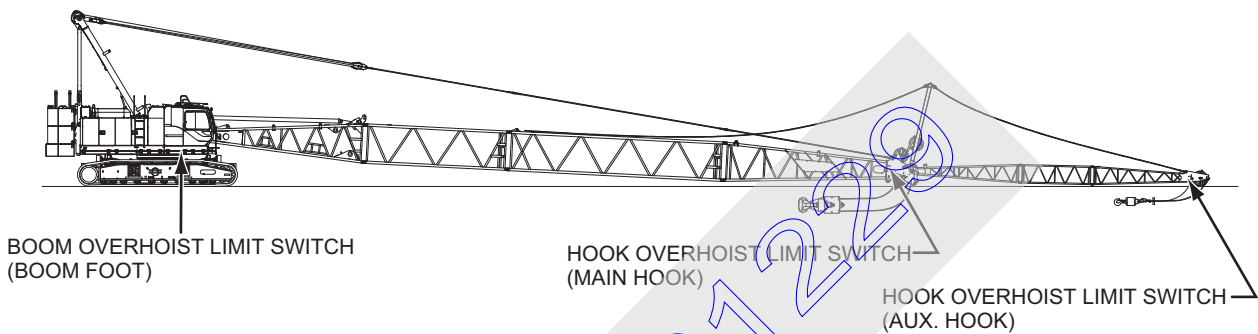
### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 3.10 INSPECTION

##### 3.10.1 INSPECTION PROCEDURE WHEN BOOM IS RAISED AFTER ATTACHMENT ASSEMBLY WORK IS COMPLETED

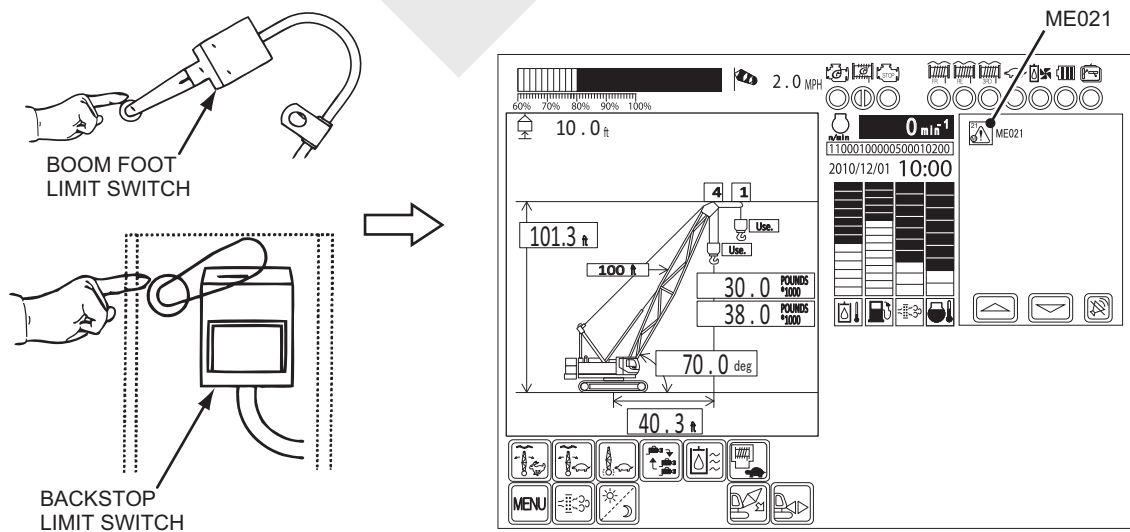
After attachment assembly work is completed, check the function of safety related device and make sure that there is no abnormality before raising the boom. At checking work, limit switch may have already actuated. Pull the limit switch once and set it to safety condition and then inspect as follows.

#### CRANE ATTACHMENT



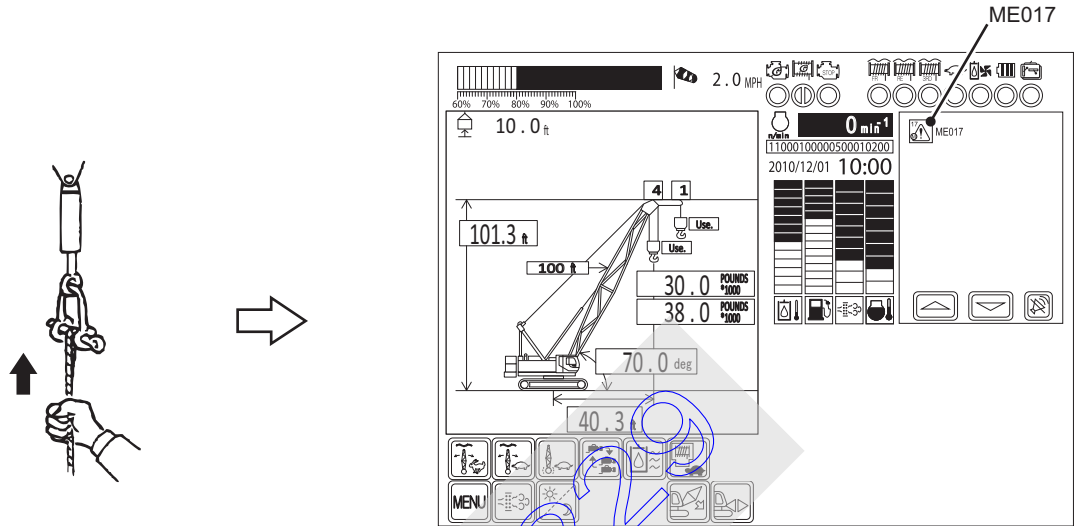
#### INSPECTION OF BOOM OVERHOIST LIMIT SWITCH

Push the boom foot right limit switch roller by hand and check that the [boom figure] [boom backstop figure] in the indication area of [boom angle] [work radius] turns to red color and message [ME021] becomes indicated in the message indication area.



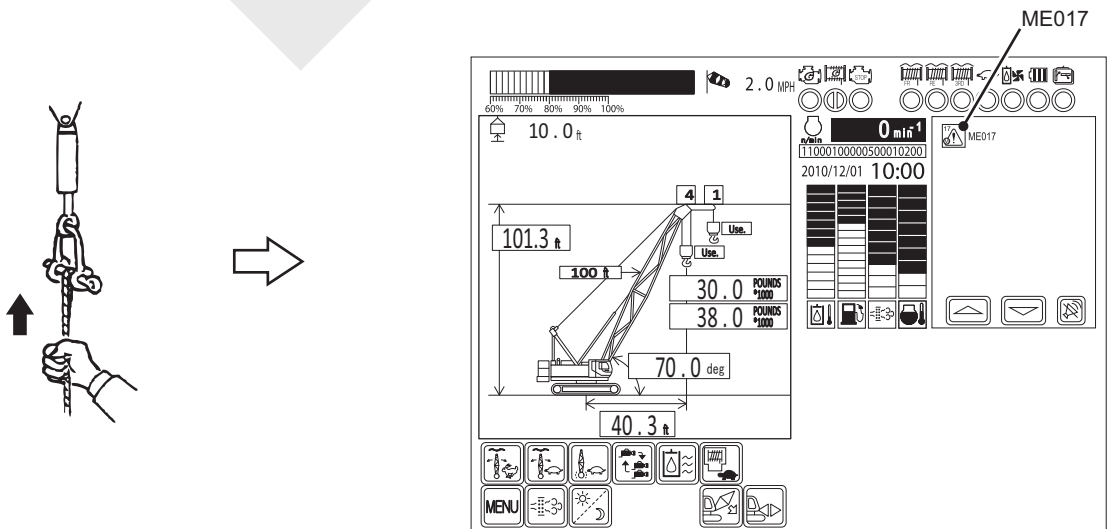
**INSPECTION OF MAIN HOOK OVERHOIST LIMIT SWITCH**

Lift up the limit switch weight rope and check that the hook figure in the display turns to red color and the message [ME017] becomes indicated in the message display area. Pull down the rope by hand and check that this message becomes disappeared.



**INSPECTION OF AUX. HOOK OVERHOIST LIMIT SWITCH**

Lift up the limit switch weight rope and check that the hook figure in the display turns to red color and the message [ME017] becomes indicated in the message display area. Pull down the rope by hand and check that this message becomes disappeared.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

---

#### 3.10.2 INSPECTION AFTER ERECTING ATTACHMENT

Check to see that there is no abnormality of auto-stop, alarming functions and display indication. Auto-stop angle on boom overhoist side is as shown on the next table. Auto-stop angle on boom overlowering side (work radius exceeding) varies depending on boom length.

Attachment	Type of overhoist	Stop type	Auto-stop angle
Crane	Boom overhoist	Controller (angle against ground)	78 degrees to 81.4 degrees
		Limit switch (angle against machine)	83.5 degrees to 84.5 degrees

12001229

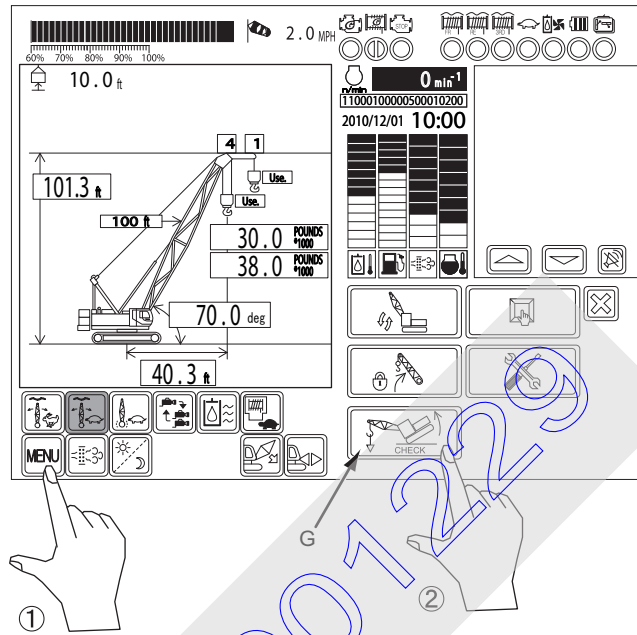
**INSPECTION OF OVERLOAD (LOAD SAFETY DEVICE) WITH THE MONITOR**

If it is difficult to test auto-stop function due to overload by lifting the actual load, check can be done in the display.

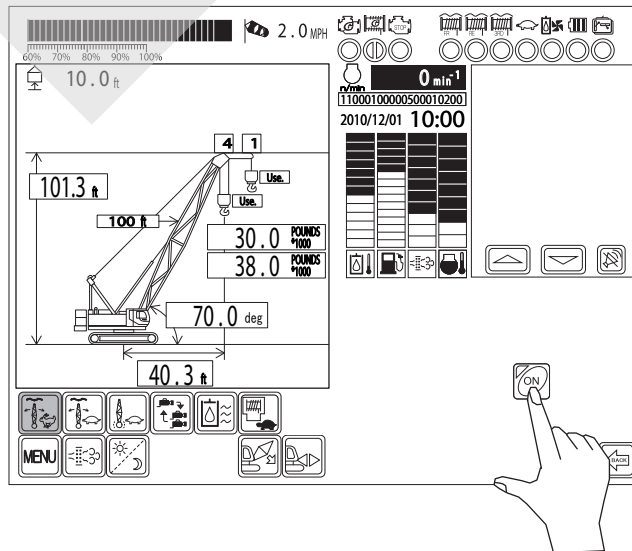
Perform this test in "WORK" position.

The test will not work in assembly/disassembly mode.

Push [MENU] icon to indicate menu and push [G].

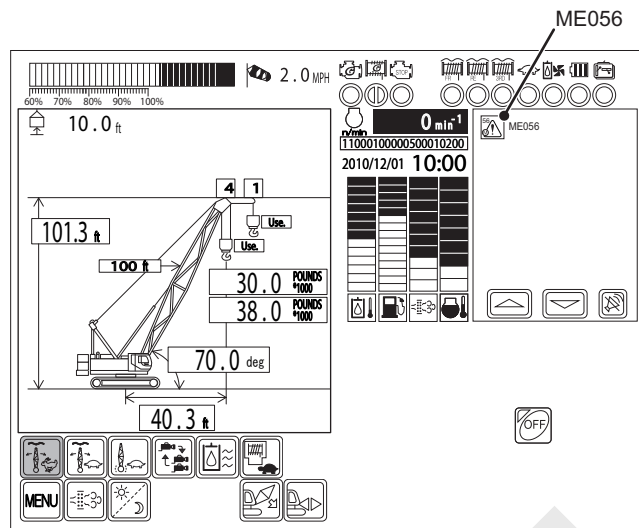


Push [ON] icon.



### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

The crane turns to the simulated overload condition and auto-stop occurs. (Overload check mode)



Check to see that hook raising or boom lowering cannot be done.

During check mode, message [ME056] appears in the message area.

After motion check, push [OFF] icon. Check mode is completed.

### 3.11 CAUTIONS IN HANDLING LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

1. WELDING WORK

When welding to machine, stop the engine and turn the key switch to OFF.

For further insurance, disconnect all the connectors on the backside of the monitor and controller.

2. RADIO WAVE INTERFERENCE

If the radio wave interference is received from the near radio station, contact Manitowoc service shop.

3. STATIC ELECTRICITY INTERFERENCE

If the monitor surface is rubbed strongly with dry nylon cloth etc. static electricity may be generated.

This static electricity has harmful effect to the monitor function. Do not rub strongly.

12001229

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### 3.12 ABNORMALITY INDICATION AND ITS ACTION

When abnormality occurs, its message is indicated in the message indication area. When the error code appears the buzzer sounds.

Buzzer can be stopped by pushing the buzzer stop icon in the message indication area. In addition when error code of the load detector or angle detector appears, the machine auto-stops.

The display indicates the code as listed below, contact with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer.

**Note**

The table contains all the error codes.  
There are some error codes which would not be displayed depending on the model.

Code	Message
P0045	VNT actuator failure.
P0047	VNT solenoid valve 1 low voltage
P0048	VNT solenoid valve 1 high voltage
P0049	Turbo charger revolution overrun
P0087	Common rail pressure control failure.
P0088	Common rail pressure control failure.
P0096	Intake air temperature sensor (intake manifold) - rationality
P0097	Intake air temperature sensor (intake manifold) - out of range (Out of range low)
P0098	Intake air temperature sensor (intake manifold) - out of range (Out of range high)
P00AF	VNT actuator failure.
P0102	Air-flow sensor failure (Low)
P0103	Air-flow sensor failure (High)
P0104	Air flow sensor - out of range
P0108	Boost pressure sensor - out of range (Out of range high)
P0112	Intake air temperature sensor (air flow sensor built-in) - out of range (Out of range low)
P0113	Intake air temperature sensor (air flow sensor built-in) - out of range (Out of range high)
P0117	Engine coolant temperature sensor - rationality
P0118	Engine coolant temperature sensor - out of range (Out of range low)
P0122	Intake throttle valve-opening sensor 1 out of range (Out of range low)
P0123	Intake throttle valve position sensor 1 - out of range (Out of range high)
P0182	Fuel Temp. sensor failure (Low)
P0183	Fuel Temp. sensor failure (High)
P0187	Fuel Temp. sensor failure (Low)
P0188	Fuel Temp. sensor failure (High)
P0191	Common rail pressure sensor malfunction
P0192	Common rail pressure sensor (main) - out of range (Out of range low)
P0193	Common rail pressure sensor (main) - out of range (Out of range high)
P0197	Common rail pressure sensor (aux.) - out of range (Out of range low)
P0198	Common rail pressure sensor (aux.) - out of range (Out of range high)
P0200	Engine ECU failure.



Code	Message
P0201	Fuel injector - disconnection (#1cyl)
P0202	Fuel injector - disconnection (#2cyl)
P0203	Fuel injector - disconnection (#3cyl)
P0204	Fuel injector - disconnection (#4cyl)
P0205	Fuel injector - disconnection (#5cyl)
P0206	Fuel injector - disconnection (#6cyl)
P0217	Overheat
P0219	Engine overrun
P0234	Turbocharger over boost
P0237	Boost pressure sensor - out of range (Out of range low)
P0263	Correction quantity of cylinders #1 error
P0266	Correction quantity of cylinders #2 error
P0269	Correction quantity of cylinders #3 error
P0272	Correction quantity of cylinders #4 error
P0275	Correction quantity of cylinders #5 error
P0278	Correction quantity of cylinders #6 error
P0335	Crankshaft position sensor - disconnection
P0336	Crankshaft position sensor - rationality
P0340	Camshaft position sensor - disconnection
P0341	Camshaft position sensor - rationality
P0401	EGR low flow
P0402	EGR high flow
P0404	EGR valve 1 stick
P0405	EGR lift sensor 1 circuit low input
P0406	EGR lift sensor 1 circuit high input
P0407	EGR lift sensor 2 circuit low input
P0408	EGR lift sensor 2 circuit high input
P0489	EGR solenoid 1 malfunction
P0490	EGR solenoid 1 malfunction
P0524	Engine oil pressure Too Low
P0540	Preheat circuit malfunction
P0545	Exhaust temp. sensor failure (Upper stream)(Low)
P0546	Exhaust temp. sensor failure (Upper stream)(High)
P0605	Flash ROM error
P0606	CPU malfunction (Hardware detection)
P0607	Monitoring IC malfunction in CPU
P0611	ECU charge circuit malfunction
P0617	Starter switch - rationality
P0628	Suction control valve for fuel supply pump - circuit (Circuit low)
P0629	Suction control valve for fuel supply pump - circuit (Circuit high)
P0642	ECU sensor supply 1 failure (Low)
P0643	ECU sensor supply 1 failure (High)
P0652	ECU sensor supply 2 failure (Low)
P0653	ECU sensor supply 2 failure (High)
P0686	Main relay malfunction
P06D3	Air flow sensor power supply failure Short to GND
P06D4	Air flow sensor power supply failure (High)

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message
P0704	Clutch switch malfunction
P0850	Neutral switch malfunction
P1062	VNT solenoid valve 2 low voltage
P1063	VNT solenoid valve 2 high voltage
P1067	VNT solenoid valve 3 low voltage
P1068	VNT solenoid valve 3 high voltage
P1071	Turbo speed sensor failure (High)
P1072	Turbo speed sensor failure (Low)
P1132	Acceleration sensor circuit low voltage
P1133	Acceleration sensor circuit high voltage
P1142	Throttle control low voltage
P1143	Throttle control high voltage
P119F	Common rail pressure sensor - rationality
P1211	Fuel injector driver circuit 1 - circuit (Circuit low)
P1212	Fuel injector driver circuit 1 - circuit (Circuit high)
P1214	Fuel injector driver circuit 2 - circuit (Circuit low)
P1215	Fuel injector driver circuit 2 - circuit (Circuit high)
P1229	Excessive supply pump pressure
P1266	Insufficient Supply pump pressure
P1401	EGR valve 2 stick
P1402	EGR solenoid 2 malfunction
P1403	EGR solenoid 2 malfunction
P1407	EGR solenoid 3 malfunction
P1408	EGR solenoid 3 malfunction
P1416	EGR cooler overheat.
P1417	EGR cooler water temp. sensor failure (Low)
P1418	EGR cooler water temp. sensor failure (High)
P1427	Differential pressure sensor - out of range (Out of range low)
P1428	Differential pressure sensor - out of range (Out of range high)
P1458	EGR actuator malfunction (Slight)
P1459	EGR actuator malfunction (Tertiary)
P1601	Fuel injector adjustment data abnormal
P1676	Fuel cut relay failure.
P2002	DPF system malfunction
P200C	DPF over temperature
P2032	Exhaust temp. sensor failure (2nd from upper stream) (Low)
P2033	Exhaust temp. sensor failure (2nd from upper stream) (High)
P2100	Intake throttle valve DC motor failure.
P2101	Intake throttle valve - functional
P2103	Intake throttle valve DC motor failure.
P2120	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch D" Circuit "
P2121	Accelerator sensor 1Voltage Abnormal
P2122	Accelerator pedal position sensor 1 -out of range (Out of range low)
P2123	Accelerator pedal position sensor 1 -out of range (Out of range high)
P2126	Accelerator sensor 2Voltage Abnormal
P2127	Accelerator pedal position sensor 2 -out of range (Out of range low)
P2128	Accelerator pedal position sensor 2 -out of range (Out of range high)

Code	Message
P2228	Barometric pressure sensor - out of range (out of range low)
P2229	Barometric pressure sensor - out of range (out of range high)
P244A	DPF pressure difference (Low)
P244B	DPF pressure difference (High)
P2458	DPF manual regeneration error
P2463	DPF regeneration operation error
P24A2	DPF fuel additive quantity too much
P2633	Fuel pump Magnetic valve2 failure (OPEN/GND short circuit)
P2634	Fuel pump Magnetic valve2 failure (+B short circuit)
P2635	Fuel Pump A" Low Flow/Performance "
U0073	CAN Communication error (Engine)
U1001	CAN communication error.(Mechatronics controller , Diag CAN)
U110A	CAN communication disrupt (Mechatronics controller)
U1122	Communication error (EGR)
U1123	Communication error (VNT)
ME034	Crane configuration setting is wrong.
ME035	A moment real load exceeds minimum value.
ME036	The malfunction of the load cell for the boom(1).
ME037	The malfunction of the load cell for the boom(2).
ME038	The malfunction of the load cell for the jib(1).
ME039	The malfunction of the load cell for the jib(2).
ME044	The malfunction of the boom base angle sensor.
ME045	The malfunction of the boom tip angle sensor.
ME046	The malfunction of the mast angle sensor.
ME047	The malfunction of the jib base angle sensor.
ME048	The malfunction of the jib tip angle sensor.
ME049	CEN Option Setting Error
ME050	ML test mode
ME051	Options unmatched of civil engineering mode.
ME053	Transmission or ML failure.
ME054	DPF Regeneration control not possible.
ME055	Between ECU-ML transmission abnormal.
ME068	Writing error of operator identification ID and/or password.
ME069	Writing error of WORKING AREA LIMIT values.
ME086	MC1 redundancy switch is operating.
ME087	MC2 redundancy switch is operating.
ME089	Time out error of synchronizing check during the MC1 start-up process.
ME090	Time out error of synchronizing check during the MC2 start-up process.
ME092	Error No.1 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Optional item setting)
ME093	Error No.2 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Crane data)
ME094	Error No.3 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Manufacturer adjustment data)
ME095	Error No.4 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Temporary adjustment data)
ME096	Error No.5 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Crane operation data)
ME097	Error No.6 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Data for each case)
ME099	Error No.8 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Failure history data)
ME100	Writing error of optional item setting.
ME101	Writing error of crane data.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message
ME102	Writing error of manufacturer adjustment data.
ME103	Writing error of temporary adjustment data.
ME104	Writing error of crane operation data.
ME105	Writing error of the data of each case.
ME107	Writing error of failure history data.
ME108	Error of the MC crane model number unmatched.
ME109	Error of the MC optional item setting unmatched.
ME110	Communication error between touch panel monitor.
ME111	Time out error of MC1 & MC2 adjustment response.
ME112	CAN communication error with MC1.
ME113	CAN communication error with MC2.
ME114	CAN communication sending error with MC1 & MC2.
ME115	Error No.9 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Failure history data of MC1)
ME116	Error No.10 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Failure history data of MC2)
ME117	Writing error of failure history data for MC1.
ME118	Writing error of failure history data for MC2.
ME119	Error No.11 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (Operator identification ID and/or password)
ME120	Error No.12 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (WORKING AREA LIMIT values)
ME121	Access error to NOR flash memory in ML. Setting values can not be written.
ME122	MC1 & MC2 reset is detected.
ME123	Writing error of system information for MC1 or MC2.
ME124	Writing error of optional item setting for MC1 or MC2.
ME125	Writing error of adjustment data for MC1 or MC2.
ME126	Writing error of crane operation data for MC1 or MC2.
ME127	Writing error of No.2. manufacturer adjustment data.
ME128	Error No.13 of ML internal setting values abnormality. (No.2 manufacturer adjustment data)
MC1-A01	Not use
MC1-A02	Not use
MC1-A03	Fr. drum motor speed adjusting trimmer
MC1-A04	Re. drum motor speed adjusting trimmer
MC1-A05	Jib (third) motor speed adjusting trimmer
MC1-A06	Boom motor speed adjusting trimmer
MC1-A07	Not use A/D
MC1-A08	Hand throttle potentiometer
MC1-A09	Foot throttle potentiometer
MC1-A10	Hydraulic oil temperature sensor
MC1-A11	Tagline trimmer
MC1-A12	Control primary pressure sensor
MC1-A13	Swing pump pressure sensor
MC1-A14	Swing operation pressure sensor (R)
MC1-A15	Swing operation pressure sensor (L)
MC1-A16	Qmax cut pressure sensor
MC1-A17	Power shift pressure sensor
MC1-A18	Power supply voltage watch
MC1-A19	Inclination sensor (X)
MC1-A20	Inclination sensor (Y)

Code	Message
MC1-A21	Fr. drum clutch pressure sensor
MC1-A22	3rd. drum clutch pressure sensor
MC1-A23	Re. drum clutch pressure sensor
MC1-D01	Main pump power control proportional valve
MC1-D02	Boom pump power control proportional valve
MC1-D03	Swing speed control
MC1-D04	Swing reaction proportional valve
MC1-D05	Boom pump control proportional valve
MC1-D06	Fr. electromagnetic detent
MC1-D07	Re. electromagnetic detent
MC1-D08	Main pump control proportional valve 1
MC1-D09	Main pump control proportional valve 2
MC1-D10	Tagline proportional valve
MC1-D11	Left swing proportional valve
MC1-D12	Right swing proportional valve
MC1-C01	Fr. drum clutch CLM
MC1-C02	Fr. drum clutch ESM
MC1-C03	Re. drum clutch CLA
MC1-C04	Re. drum clutch ESA
MC1-C05	3rd. drum clutch CLT
MC1-C06	3rd. drum clutch EST
MC1-C07	Not use
MC1-C08	Swing parking brake
MC1-C09	Adjustment mode
MC1-C10	Hyd. oil heat
MC1-C11	Qmax cut
MC1-C12	Swing flasher
MC1-C13	Not use
MC1-C14	Not use
MC1-C15	Battery relay energizing
MC1-C16	Load safety device bypass switch reset
MC1-C17	Solenoid valve
MC1-C18	E/G warning
MC1-C19	Sub Air conditioner ON
MC1-C20	Swing brake mode select
MC1-C21	Sub battery relay energizing
MC1-C22	Key return
MC1-C23	Tower latch cylinder relay
MC1-C24	Camera power
MC1-C25	Not use
MC1-C26	Manual regeneration
MC1-C27	E/G restart
MC1-C28	Control primary pressure cut
MC1-C29	Fr. drum turn detecting grip
MC1-C30	Re. drum turn detection grip
MC1-C31	Safety relay

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message
MC1-C32	E/G stop relay
MC1-C33	Swing voice alarm (not used)
MC1-C34	Re. / 3rd. drum change
MC1-C35	Not use
MC1-C36	3rd. drum turn detection grip
MC1-H01	Not use
MC1-H02	OVERLOAD AUTO STOP IS BEING RELEASED
MC1-H03	FLASH MEMORY DATA FAILURE
MC1-H04	MC ADJUSTMENT IS IRRELEVANT
MC1-H05	RECEIVING ERROR FROM ML
MC1-H06	RECEIVING ERROR FROM MC2
MC1-H07	Not use
MC1-H08	SYSTEM INFORMATION ABNORMAL (E10-4)
MC1-H09	OPTIONAL ITEM SETTING ABNORMAL 1 (E10-1)
MC1-H10	OPTIONAL ITEM SETTING ABNORMAL 2 (E10-2)
MC1-H11	OPTIONAL ITEM SETTING ABNORMAL 3 (E10-3)
MC1-H12	ADJUSTMENT DATA ABNORMAL (E10-5)
MC1-H13	CRANE OPERATION DATA ABNORMAL (E10-6)
MC1-H14	ERROR OF THE DISTINGUISHING SIGNAL BETWEEN MC1 AND MC2. (E10-7)
MC1-H15	ERROR OF PREVIOUS MC1 OR MC2 START-UP MODE DISCREPANCY. (E10-8)
MC2-A01	Not use A/D
MC2-A02	Not use A/D
MC2-A03	Fr. motor pressure sensor
MC2-A04	Re. motor pressure sensor
MC2-A05	3rd. motor pressure sensor
MC2-A06	Not use A/D
MC2-A07	Fuel level sensor
MC2-A08	Fr. independence/confluence pressure sensor
MC2-A09	Re. independence/confluence pressure sensor
MC2-A10	Not use A/D
MC2-A11	Constant horse power pressure sensor
MC2-A12	Not use A/D
MC2-A13	Not use A/D
MC2-A14	Not use A/D
MC2-A15	Not use A/D
MC2-A16	Boom raise pressure sensor
MC2-A17	Boom lower pressure sensor
MC2-A18	Fr. drum hoisting pressure sensor
MC2-A19	Fr. drum lowering pressure sensor
MC2-A20	Re. drum hoisting pressure sensor
MC2-A21	Re. drum lowering pressure sensor
MC2-A22	3rd. drum hoisting pressure sensor
MC2-A23	3rd. drum lowering pressure sensor
MC2-D01	Boom raising speed control
MC2-D02	Boom lowering speed control
MC2-D03	Fr. drum hoisting speed control
MC2-D04	Fr. drum lowering speed control

Code	Message
MC2-D05	Re. drum hoisting speed control
MC2-D06	Re. drum lowering speed control
MC2-D07	3rd. drum hoisting speed control
MC2-D08	3rd drum lowering speed control
MC2-D09	Constant horse power
MC2-D10	Fr. drum motor control
MC2-D11	Re. drum motor control
MC2-D12	3rd drum motor control
MC2-C01	Not use
MC2-C02	Not use
MC2-C03	Not use
MC2-C04	Not use
MC2-C05	not use
MC2-C06	not use
MC2-C07	Not use
MC2-C08	Not use
MC2-C09	Not use
MC2-C10	Not use
MC2-C11	Not use
MC2-C12	Not use
MC2-C13	Not use
MC2-C14	Not use
MC2-C15	Fr. drum motor boost
MC2-C16	Oil cooler motor
MC2-C17	Fr. independence/confluence
MC2-C18	Re. independence/confluence
MC2-C19	Hydraulic pressure load addition
MC2-C20	Not use
MC2-C21	Re. drum motor boost
MC2-C22	3rd. drum motor boost
MC2-C23	Not use
MC2-C24	Not use
MC2-C25	Not use
MC2-C26	Fr. drum operation signal
MC2-C27	Re. drum operation signal
MC2-C28	3rd. drum operation signal
MC2-C29	Fr. drum C/V
MC2-C30	Re. drum C/V
MC2-C31	Not use
MC2-C32	Not use
MC2-C33	Not use
MC2-C34	Not use
MC2-C35	Not use
MC2-C36	3rd. drum C/V
MC2-H01	Not use
MC2-H02	OVERLOAD AUTO STOP IS BEING RELEASED
MC2-H03	FLASH MEMORY DATA FAILURE

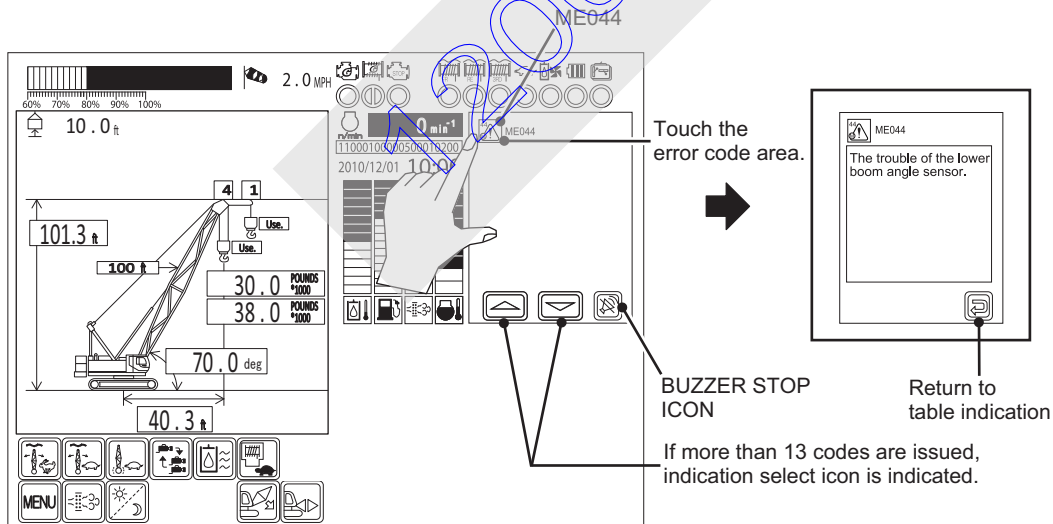
### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message
MC2-H04	MC ADJUSTMENT IS IRRELEVANT
MC2-H05	RECEIVING ERROR FROM ML
MC2-H06	RECEIVING ERROR FROM MC1
MC2-H07	Not use
MC2-H08	SYSTEM INFORMATION ABNORMAL (E10-4)
MC2-H09	OPTIONAL ITEM SETTING ABNORMAL 1 (E10-1)
MC2-H10	OPTIONAL ITEM SETTING ABNORMAL 2 (E10-2)
MC2-H11	OPTIONAL ITEM SETTING ABNORMAL 3 (E10-3)
MC2-H12	ADJUSTMENT DATA ABNORMAL (E10-5)
MC2-H13	CRANE OPERATION DATA ABNORMAL (E10-6)
MC2-H14	ERROR OF THE DISTINGUISHING SIGNAL BETWEEN MC1 AND MC2. (E10-7)
MC2-H15	ERROR OF PREVIOUS MC1 OR MC2 START-UP MODE DISCREPANCY. (E10-8)

#### Note

When the angle detector is replaced, adjustment of the load safety device becomes necessary. Contact Manitowoc service shop for replacement or adjustment.

Normally error is indicated by its code. By pushing the indicated code area, detail can be indicated.





### 3.13 MESSAGE TABLE

Various messages are indicated based on crane condition. These are not errors.



The display indicates the code as listed below.  
Follows the instruction shown.

#### Note

The table includes all codes.  
There are some codes which are not displayed based on models.

Code	Message	Condition, Action
MC1-W01	ENGINE PREHEAT	The message is displayed when the engine cooling water temperature is 0 degrees or less with the key switch turned ON.
MC1-W02	PREHEAT COMPLETED	The message is displayed for 5 seconds after the operation is complete.
MC1-W03	CHARGING PROBLEM	The charging circuit is malfunctioned. Consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer. * Note: That it is not fault even this item is momentarily displayed immediately after the engine is started.
MC1-W04	PILOT PRESSURE (PRIMARY) ABNORMAL	The control primary pressure is abnormal. Stop operation at once, and consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer. * Note : That it is not fault even this item is momentarily displayed immediately after the engine is started.
MC1-W05	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE	The engine oil pressure is abnormal. Stop the engine at once, and consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer.
MC1-W06	ENGINE WATER LEVEL	The cooling water level in the radiator is insufficient. Refill the radiator with cooling water.
MC1-W08	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE	The cooling water temperature is excessively high. Idle the engine to lower temperature, and consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer.
MC1-W09	ENGINE OIL FILTER	The engine oil filter is clogged. Replace the filter.
MC1-W10	ENGINE AIR FILTER	The engine air cleaner is clogged. Clean or replace the element.
MC2-W11	EMPTY FUEL	The fuel level is insufficient. Refuel.
MC1-W12	HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE	The hydraulic oil temperature is excessively high. Adjust the engine speed to the medium level to lower the oil temperature, and consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message	Condition, Action
MC1-W13	FRONT WINCH COOLING CIRCUIT OIL TEMPERATURE	The temperature of clutch cooling oil of the front drum is excessively high. Idle the engine at a high speed to lower the oil temperature. If this item frequently appears during normal operations, consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer. At the same time, inform the Manitowoc service of the details of the operation (lifting load, free fall distance, speed, and duration).
MC1-W14	REAR WINCH COOLING CIRCUIT OIL TEMPERATURE	The temperature of clutch cooling oil of the front drum is excessively high. Idle the engine at a high speed to lower the oil temperature. If this item frequently appears during normal operations, consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer. At the same time, inform the Manitowoc service of the details of the operation (lifting load, free fall distance, speed, and duration).
MC1-W15	WINCH FILTER CLOGGED	The winch cooling line filter is clogged. Replace the filter cartridge. This item may appear during cold weather even when the filter is not clogged. If the item disappear during warm-up, the cartridge does not need to be replaced.
MC1-W16	FRONT SAFETY ESM SOLENOID VALVE IS ENERGIZED	The front drum clutch emergency system is actuated. The free fall of the front drum cannot be normally performed. Place a load and the hook onto the ground, and turn the key switch to the OFF position. Then, consult your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer. DO NOT operate the key switch with a load or the hook hung in the air, since it may cause drop of the load or the hook.
MC1-W17	REAR SAFETY ESA SOLENOID VALVE IS ENERGIZED	The front drum clutch emergency system is actuated. The free fall of the front drum cannot be normally performed. Place a load and the hook onto the ground, and turn the key switch to the OFF position. Then, consult your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer. DO NOT operate the key switch with a load or the hook hung in the air, since it may cause drop of the load or the hook.
MC1-W18	3RD SAFETY EST SOLENOID VALVE IS ENERGIZED	The front drum clutch emergency system is actuated. The free fall of the front drum cannot be normally performed. Place a load and the hook onto the ground, and turn the key switch to the OFF position. Then, consult your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer. DO NOT operate the key switch with a load or the hook hung in the air, since it may cause drop of the load or the hook.
MC1-W19	HOOK OVER HOIST RELEASE SWITCH IS OPERATING	The hook overhoist automatic stop release switch is actuated.
MC1-W20	BOOM OVER HOIST RELEASE SWITCH IS OPERATING	The boom overhoist automatic stop release switch is actuated.
MC2-W21	ML BYPASS SWITCH IS OPERATING	The moment limiter redundancy switch is actuated. The moment limiter is malfunctioned, and automatic stop operation due to overload and the overhoisted hook block is impossible. Immediately stop the operation, or return extremely carefully, and consult with your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message	Condition, Action
MC1-W22	DPF OPTION SETTING ABNORMAL	Option setting does not match with engine spec. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W23	FRONT DRUM ROTATION SENSOR ADJUSTMENT	Front drum rotation sensor is not functioning properly. Adjust sensor position. If not corrected even after adjustment, contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W24	REAR DRUM ROTATION SENSOR ADJUSTMENT	Rear drum rotation sensor is not functioning properly. Adjust sensor position. If not corrected even after adjustment, contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC2-W31	FRONT DRUM NEGA BRAKE ABNORMAL	Front drum nega brake function may be abnormal. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC2-W32	REAR DRUM NEGA BRAKE ABNORMAL	Rear drum nega brake function may be abnormal. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC2-W33	3RD. DRUM NEGA BRAKE ABNORMAL	3rd. drum nega brake function may be abnormal. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W35	BATTERY RELAY ABNORMAL	Battery relay contact may be adhered. Inspect battery relay. Replace if the deposited at the contact point of the relay.
MC1-W36	PROPEL LEVER INTERLOCKED	Propel lever is kept ON. Pilot pressure is cut. Return propel lever back to neutral.
MC2-W37	FRONT DRUM LEVER INTERLOCKED	Front drum is stopped since front drum lever is kept ON. Return front drum lever back to neutral.
MC2-W38	REAR DRUM LEVER INTERLOCKED	Rear drum is stopped since rear drum lever is kept ON. Return rear drum lever back to neutral.
MC2-W39	3RD. DRUM LEVER INTERLOCKED	3rd. drum is stopped since 3rd. drum lever is kept ON. Return 3rd. drum lever back to neutral.
MC2-W40	BOOM DRUM LEVER INTERLOCKED	Boom drum is stopped since boom drum lever is kept ON. Return boom drum lever back to neutral.
MC1-W41	REMOTE CONTROLLER CONNECTED	Remote control is connected. Disconnect remote control for crane work.
MC1-W42 MC2-W42	MC1, 2 CHARGE SIGNAL ABNORMAL	Charge signal differs on each MC. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W44 MC2-W44	MC1, 2 FUNCTION LOCK SIGNAL ABNORMAL	Function lock signal differs on each MC. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W45 MC2-W45	MC1, 2 INCHING SPEED SELECT SIGNAL ABNORMAL	Inching speed select signal differs on each MC. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W46	Qmax CUT SOL OUTPUT OFF ABNORMAL	Qmax cut solenoid relay contact is adhered at energize side. The engine revolution will be restricted not to raising the maximum revolution. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W47	Qmax CUT SOL OUTPUT ON ABNORMAL	Qmax cut solenoid relay is not functioned. The engine revolution will be restricted not to raising the maximum revolution. Contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W48	ACTUAL ROTATION IS HIGHER THAN NO LOAD ROTATION	Either front or rear winch motor is running over speed or engine speed is over. Contact Manitowoc service shop.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message	Condition, Action
MC1-W49	HIGH LOAD TORQUE	The engine reached to the maximum torque situation, be sure, there is a possibility of stopping the engine by further engine load due to the abrupt operation is taken. Avoid abrupt lever operation and work with the care. Although the warning will be released by decline the engine load, if frequently happen it, there is a possibility of clogging the fuel filter, recommend replace the filter earlier.
MC1-W50	JOY STICK ABNORMAL	Joy stick accel switch exceeds neutral range. Return it to neutral position. If error continues even at neutral position, contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC1-W51	BACK UP FUSE BLOWN OUT	Back up fuse (F-4) of each controller is blown off. Replace with new one.
MC2-W52	HOOK OVERHOIST LS	MC2 detects hook overhoist. Check ML or hook overhoist signal and then contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC2-W53	BOOM OVERHOIST LS	MC2 detects boom overhoist. Check ML or boom overhoist signal and then contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC2-W54	JIB OVERHOIST LS	MC2 detects jib overhoist. Check ML or jib overhoist signal and then contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC2-W55	BOOM BACKSTOP No.1 LS	MC2 detects boom backstop No.1 overhoist. Check ML or boom backstop No.1 overhoist signal and then contact Manitowoc service shop.
MC2-W56	BOOM BACKSTOP No.2 LS	MC2 detects boom backstop No.2 overhoist. Check ML or boom backstop No.2 overhoist signal and then contact Manitowoc service shop.
ME001	Out of working angle.	Out of capacity set range.
ME002	Hook over hoist release switch is operating.	The hook overhoist automatic stop release switch is actuated.
ME003	Boom/Jib over hoist release switch is operating.	The boom overhoist automatic stop release switch is actuated.
ME004	Overload release switch is operating.	Overload status is canceled.
ME005	Over load condition.	The loading ratio exceeds the specified level. Lower the load to the ground or raise the boom.jib.
ME006	Head wind is strong.	The guy line support force becomes lower than the specified level.
ME007	Boom is lowered too much.	The boom is out of the maximum working radius area. Raise the boom.
ME008	Boom is raised too much.	The boom is out of the minimum working radius area. Lower the boom.
ME011	Boom is lowered too much.	The boom is out of maximum working radius area. Raise the boom.
ME012	Boom is raised too much.	The boom is out of minimum working radius area. Lower the boom.
ME013	Jib is lowered too much.	The jib is out of maximum working radius area. Raise the jib.
ME014	Jib is raised too much.	The jib is out of minimum working radius area. Lower the jib.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message	Condition, Action
ME015	Mast is raised too much.	The mast is out of minimum working radius area. Lower the mast
ME016	Mast is lowered too much.	The mast is out of maximum working radius area. Raise the mast.
ME017	Hook over hoist.	The hook exceed the overhoist limit position. Lower the hook.
ME018	Hook over hoist.	The hook exceed the overhoist limit position. Lower the hook.
ME019	Mast cylinder limit switch has not been turned on.	The support is not out of stowed position. for mast. Extend the mast support.
ME020	Detecting limit switch for high gantry position has not been turned on.	The gantry is not raised for mast raising. Raise the gantry.
ME021	Boom over hoist.	The boom overhoist limit switch is actuted. Lower the boom.
ME022	Jib over hoist.	The jib overhoist limit switch is actuated. Lower the jib
ME024	Overload precautions.	Loading ratio is 90% or more.
ME025	Reached the load limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	Lifting load exceeds the lifting load limit value set by operator. Lower the load or raise the jib or boom.
ME026	Reached 90% of the load limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	Lifting load exceeds 90% of the lifting load limit value set by operator.
ME027	Boom angle reached upper limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	The boom reaches the boom angle upper limit point (stop point) set by operator. Lower the boom.
ME028	Boom angle reached lower limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	The boom reaches the boom angle lower limit point (stop point) set by operator. Raise the boom.
ME029	Jib angle reached upper limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	The jib reaches the jib angle upper limit point (stop point) set by operator. Lower the jib.
ME030	Jib angle reached lower limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	The jib reaches the jib angle lower limit point (stop point) set by operator. Raise the jib.
ME031	Working radius reached limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	The boom reaches the working radius limit point (stop point) set by operator. Raise the boom or jib.
ME032	Boom point elevation reached limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	The boom reaches the boom height limit point (stop point) set by operator. Lower the boom.
ME033	Jib point elevation reached limitation value of WORKING AREA LIMIT function.	Operator set height limit is reached. Lower the jib.
ME034	Crane configuration setting is wrong.	The attachment set data is abnormal. Re-set the attachment.
ME052	Data unmatch of civil engineering mode.	Setting posture is not civil engineering mode. Perform re setting.
ME056	Inspection mode for overload condition.	Load safety device check mode (See P.3-79 )
ME058	Set the swing brake mode.	Apply the swing parking brake and set to the swing brake mode.

### 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Code	Message	Condition, Action
ME060	Boom over hoist.	The boom overhoist No.2 limit switch is actuated. Lower the boom.
ME061	Jib winch wire rope is tightened a little more than normal.	The tension of the hoist wire rope exceeds the forecast alarm value, during erecting the tower. Loosen the jib hoist wire rope.
ME062	Jib winch wire rope is abnormally tightened.	The tension of the hoist wire rope exceeds the alarm value, during erecting the tower. Loosen the jib hoist wire rope.
ME063	ML crane configuration does not correspond to the counter weight detecting signal.	The input signal from the counterweight detector does not match the data. Check the counterweight detector or check for proper counterweight selecting in the attachment setting.
ME064	ML crane configuration does not correspond to the carbody-weight weight detecting signal.	The input signal from the carbody-weight detector does not match the data. Check the counterweight detector or check for proper counterweight selecting in the attachment setting.
ME066	Danger!! The jib tip touches at the ground.	The jib connecting pin is not pulled out at lowering of maximum tower length. Pull out the pin. (Only 7200G)
ME067	Boom winch wire rope is abnormally tightened.	Loosen the boom hoist rope before operate the mast.
ME081	Front winch over pay out	The front drum over pay out preventive device is actuated. Operate the front drum toward wind up direction.
ME082	Rear winch over pay out	The rear drum over pay out preventive device is actuated. Operate the rear drum toward wind up direction.
ME083	Third winch over pay out	The third drum over pay out preventive device is actuated. Operate the third drum toward wind up direction.
ME088	Connect the weight	Counterweights detection is not completed. Confirm wiring connection.

### 3.14 CHECKING PROCEDURE OF LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Check the following point of the load safety device once a year.

#### 1. CHECK OF WORK RADIUS INDICATION

- (1) Indicate the work radius in the certain point within the work area in lowering motion of boom.
- (2) Measure the actual work radius with measuring tape and check if it matches with the work radius indication value.

#### 2. CHECK OF WORK RADIUS INDICATION

- (1) Lift a load weight which is exactly known in advance.
- (2) Check if the load (lifting load + hook weight + sling wire weight) matches exactly with the load indication value.

If indication value and actually measured value differ significantly, contact Manitowoc service shop.

12001229

12001229



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

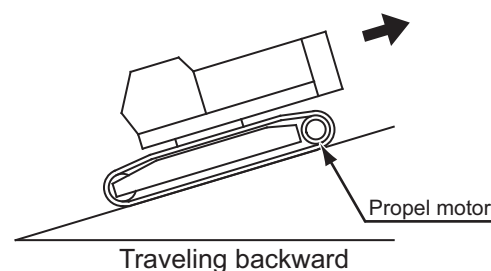
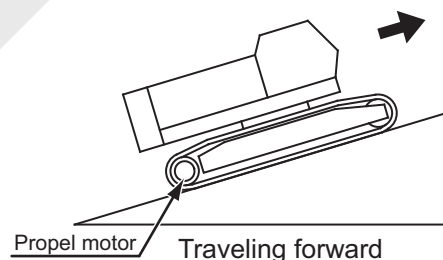
### 4.1 SWING AND PROPEL STABILITY

1. Without carbody weight

Attachment	Counterweight ton (lbs)	All-round swing			Propelling on slope	
		Crawler extend	Crawler retract	When jacked up without crawler	Forward	Backward
Without attachment (Base machine only)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	△(No abrupt lever control)	×	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	×	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	×	×	×	×	×
With boom base (Boom angle : 30 degrees or less)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	○	×	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	△(Slope:8 deg. or less)	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	△(No abrupt lever control)	×	×	×	△(No abrupt lever control)

○ : Able to be operated  
 △ : Able to be operated with conditions  
 × : Unable to be operated

- (1) The table above shows the values for operation on firm ground.  
 On weak ground, operate with care after curing the ground.
- (2) As a principle, swinging on a trailer is prohibited.
- (3) Maximum slope angle is 21.8 degrees (40%).  
 This may become lower depending on condition (ground, crane configuration).
- (4) Travelling forward means the case where the counterweight is at the lower slope and the traveling backward where it is at the upper slope.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 2. With carbody weight

Attachment	Counterweight ton (lbs)	All-round swing			Propelling on slope	
		Crawler extend	Crawler retract	When jacked up without crawler	Forward	Backward
Without attachment (Base machine only)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	○	×	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	△ (Slope:5 deg. or less)	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	△ (No abrupt lever control)	×	×	×	△ (No abrupt lever control)
With boom base (Boom angle : 30 degrees or less)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	○	△ (No abrupt lever control)	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	△ (Slope:12 deg. or less)	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	○	×	×	×	○

○ : Able to be operated  
 △ : Able to be operated with conditions  
 × : Unable to be operated

(1) The table above shows the values for operation on firm ground.

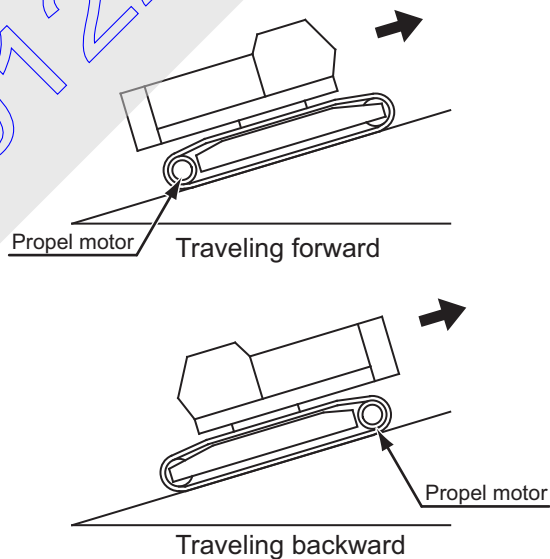
On weak ground, operate with care after curing the ground.

(2) As a principle, swinging on a trailer is prohibited.

(3) Maximum slope angle is 21.8 degrees (40%).

This may become lower depending on condition (ground, crane configuration).

(4) Travelling forward means the case where the counterweight is at the lower slope and traveling backward where it is at the upper slope.



## 4.2 ASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

This article explains assembly of the main machinery for unloading, changing to work configuration.

---

### **WARNING**

**Assembly of main machinery would be dangerous if the wrong procedure is taken.**

**Hold the enough pre-work meeting to prevent accident and proceed the work safely.**

**Do not insert finger or hand into any pin holes when aligning the holes or inserting/removing the pins.**

**Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---

### **WARNING**

**The main machinery assembly place may receive a large load. Place the strong steel plates on the ground.**

**Provide enough capacity of an assisting crane, sling rope or shackle to be used.**

**Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious accident.**

---

#### 1. CHECK POINT PRIOR TO WORK

- Have a qualified supervisor who is competent in assembly and disassembly procedures.
- Ensure to hold a pre-work meeting for safety. Review potential hazards and hazardous locations in the course of work.
- Make every worker aware of work contents, procedure and signal.
- Inspect assisting crane or material for their fitness.

#### 2. SECURING PLACE

- Select enough room place with firm and level ground for assembling work. Take ground improvement or place steel plates if required.
- Secure setting place for assisting crane and access route of vehicles.
- The ground shall be drained unless the place is in marshes or wetland.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

### 3. PREPARATION BEFORE WORK

- Secure the setting place of assisting crane and prepare the required lifting gears, protective materials and tools.
- Secure required number of workers for the work. (Crane operators, assistant operators, slinging workers and signal persons)
- Take appropriate action to keep personnel off the work area other than workers during work.

### 4. CAUTIONS DURING ASSEMBLY WORK

- During assembly work, install the waterproof cap on the cable end of the hook over-hoist preventing device.  
During crane work, wire the over-hoist cable properly and remove the waterproof cap.
- Refer to "8.2 DIMENSION, WEIGHT OF EACH COMPONENT" for weight, dimension during assembly.
- The operator has to be informed if any person moved to out of sight from the operator or at hazardous location when equipment or machine part moves.

12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

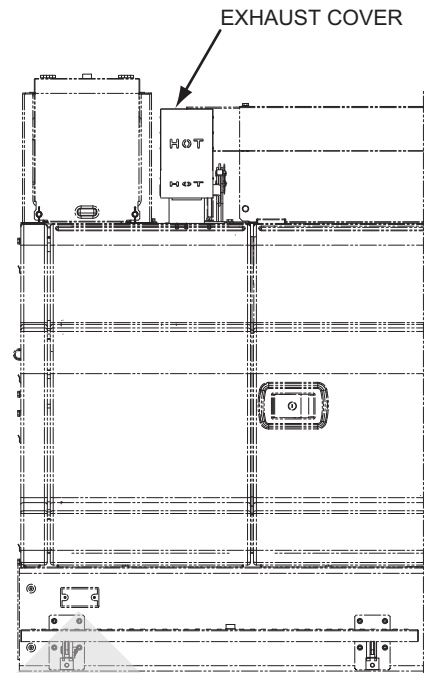
### 5. OPEN EXHAUST COVER

- An exhaust cover is installed to keep exhaust gas away from person on the platform when engine is running.

The exhaust cover must be kept open when engine is running, and in the stowed position during transportation.

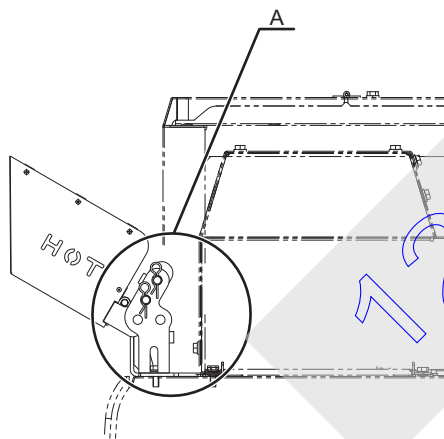
#### OPERATION

- Remove the lock pins and rotate the exhaust cover toward outer side before starting engine.
- Secure the exhaust cover with the lock pins.
- Reverse order to put the cover back when transportation.

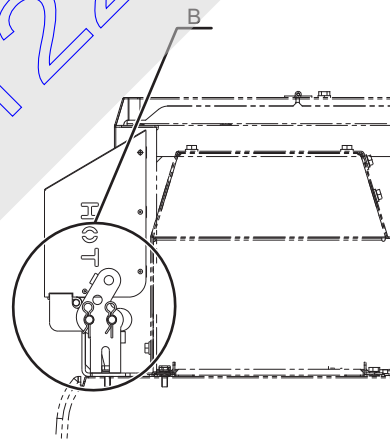


(Rear side)

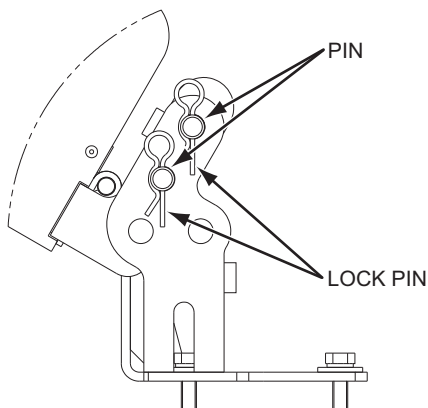
(Front side)



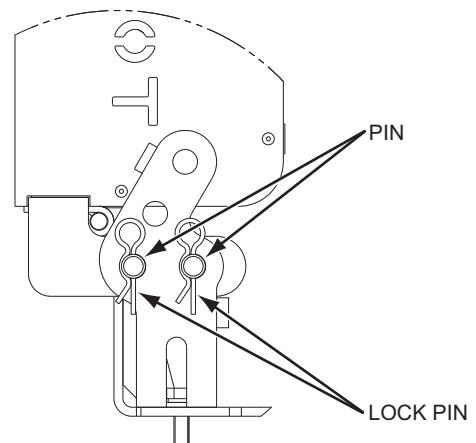
WORKING



TRANSPORTATION



SECTION A



SECTION B

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### Note

If crane works with the exhaust cover closed, engine output would become lowered.  
Ensure to work with the exhaust cover opened.

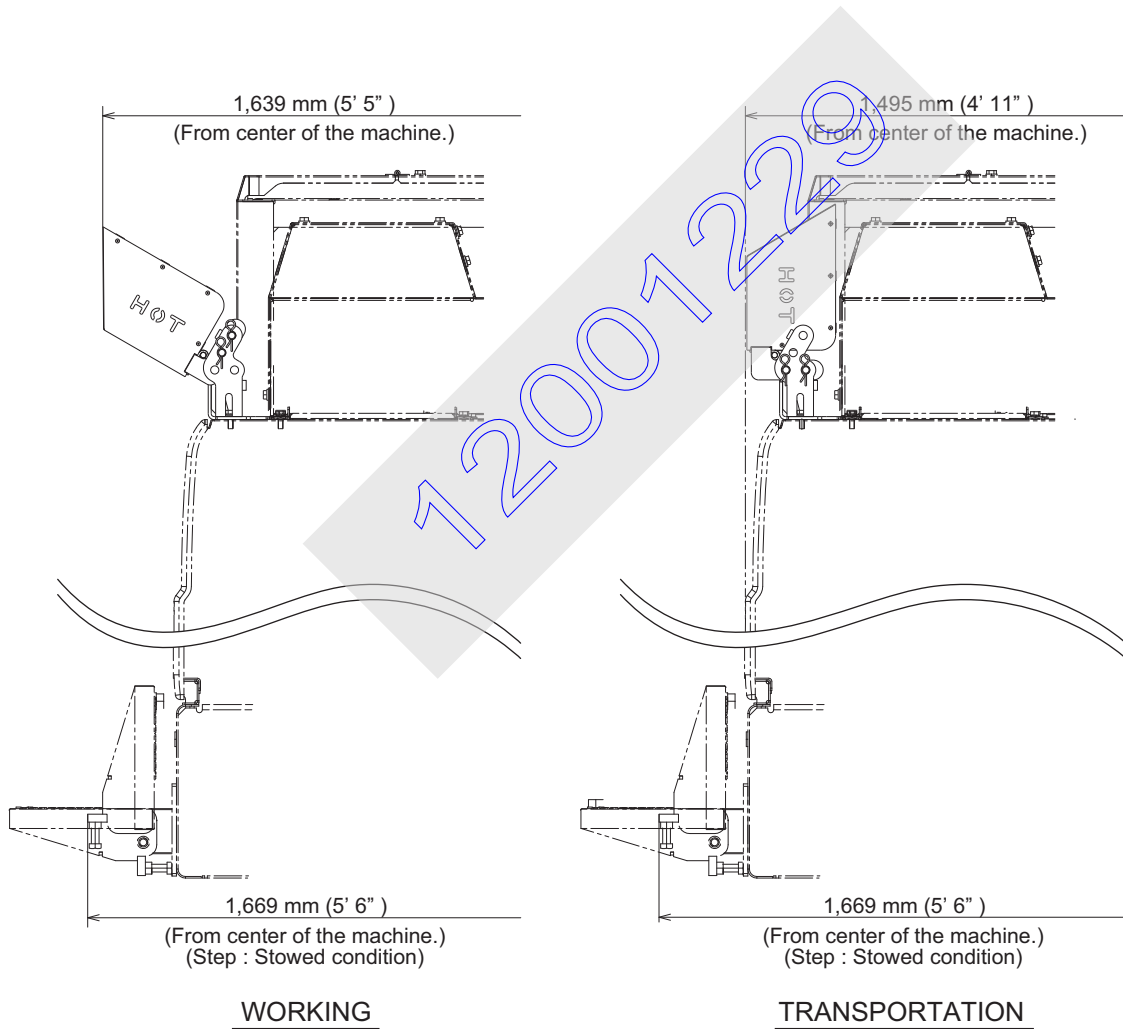
### CAUTION

The exhaust cover may be hot.

### CAUTION

Watch your head when walking/moving on the platform.

### WIDTH OF THE MACHINE



### 4.2.1 UNLOADING MAIN MACHINERY FROM TRAILER

#### 1. GENERAL

This article explains unloading or loading of the main machinery from the trailer using the transliifter. Although the main machinery can be transported with boom base attached, remove the boom base if the main machinery weight must be reduced.



**Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.**

---

Check the following points before starting the work.

#### (1) PLACE

Ground must be hard. Ground has been improved and steel plates have been placed.

#### (2) MEETING FOR WORK PROCEDURE AND SAFETY

Prior to work, meeting must be held for work procedure and safety with all related personnel and confirmation of each personnel's role and responsibility.

#### (3) PRE-WORK INSPECTION

Conduct the pre-work inspection.



**Do not raise the boom to higher than 10 degrees angle when loading into trailer.**

**Main machinery may overturn backward.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

---

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 2. TRANSLIFTER

Translifter is an auxiliary device for removing or installing the crawlers or to use during loading or unloading the crane main machinery from the trailer.

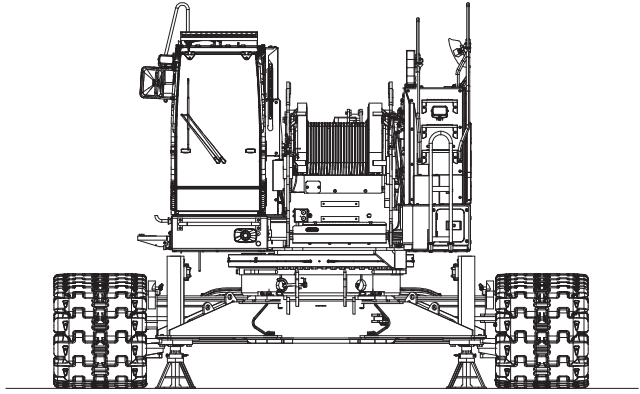
Use the translifter in the wide, level and firm ground taking the trailer access direction, assisting crane for crawler lifting into account.

The translifter vertical cylinder force may reach to max. 35 t (77,160 lbs) per piece. Ensure to check the ground condition.

For safety, place the steel plates under the float.

Float dimension: 40 cm (1' 4") X 40 cm (1' 4")

Float area: 1,550 cm<sup>2</sup>



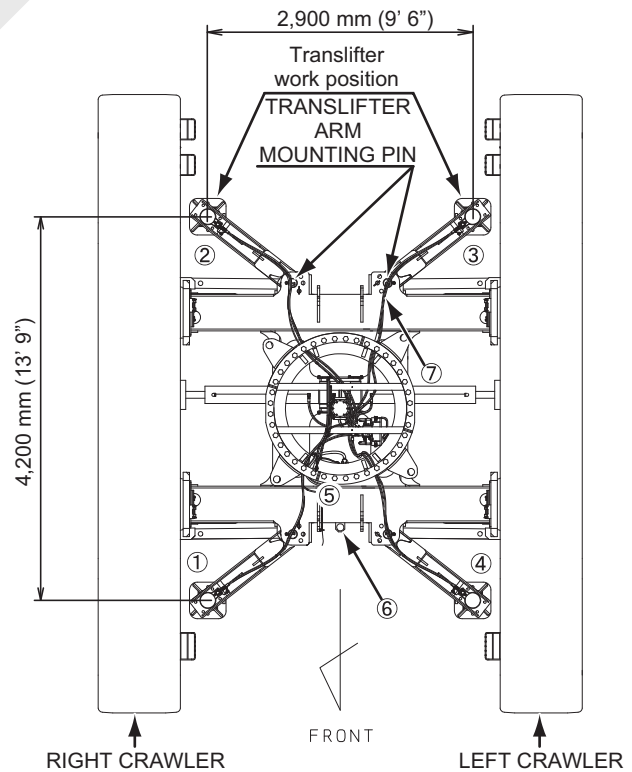
**To prevent overturning of the main machinery, ensure to engage the swing brake and swing lock when the translifter is handled.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

#### (1) CONSTRUCTION OF TRANSLIFTER

Translifter is composed of the following units and parts.

- (A) Four vertical cylinders to push up and hold the main machinery  
1, 2, 3, 4
- (B) Remote control switch box 5
- (C) Level gauge 6
- (D) Vertical cylinder hose 8 pieces 7





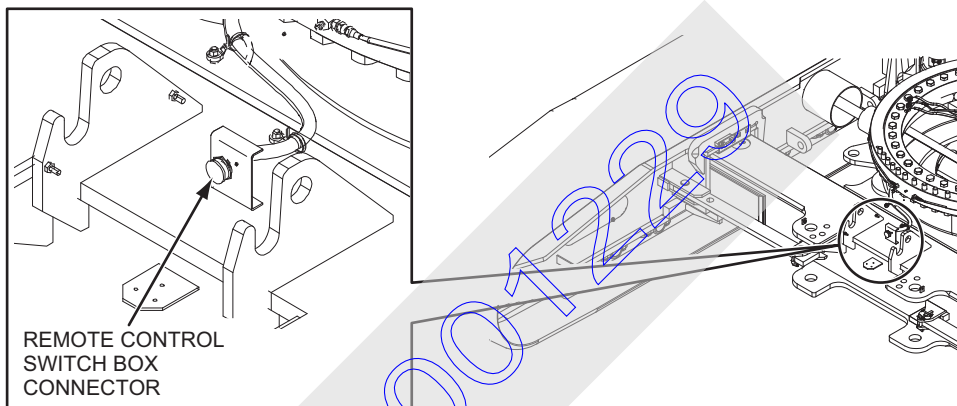
(2) HANDLING THE REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH BOX

**! DANGER**

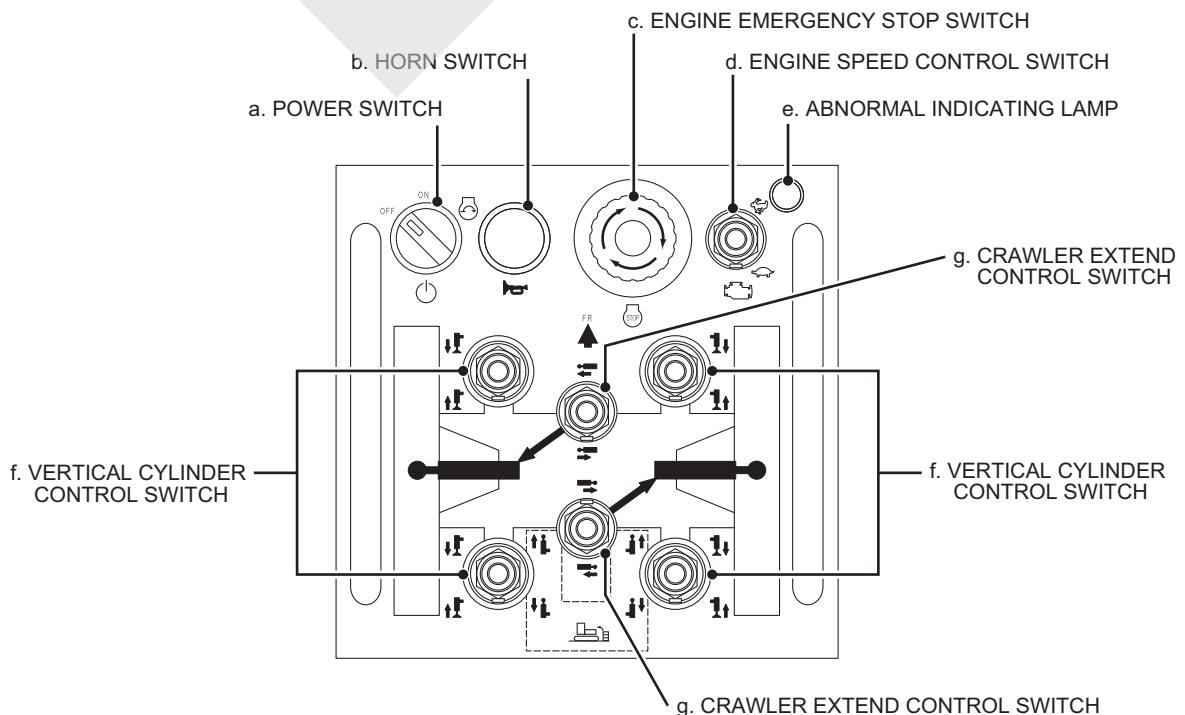
When the trans-lifter is to be used, ensure to remove all the counterweights and the carbody weight.

If the trans-lifters are used with these weights installed, a serious accident such as overturning of the main machinery or damaging the trans-lifter may be caused.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.




REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH BOX



REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH BOX

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### a. Power switch

OFF	Power off. By turning to this position can stop the engine.
ON	Power is supplied to crane portion.
	Engine starts. When hand is released, switch automatically returns to ON position.



### b. Horn switch

Pushing this switch sounds horn.

### c. Engine emergency stop switch

Push this switch to stop engine in emergency case.  
Switch stays at pushed position. Turning switch to right or pulling switch returns to original position.

### d. Engine speed control switch





	Engine speed increase
	Engine speed decrease

### e. Abnormal indicating lamp

This lamp turns ON when the engine abnormality occurs. When this lamp is ON, check the detail of abnormality by the cab monitor and take appropriate action.





### f. Vertical cylinder control switch

This switch is used to control the translifter.

 or 	Cylinder extends (jack up)
 or 	Cylinder retracts (jack down)

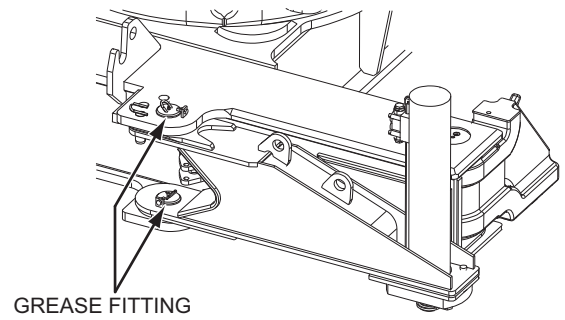
### g. Crawler extend control switch

This switch is used to control the crawler ext/ret cylinder.

 or 	Crawler extends.
 or 	Crawler retracts.

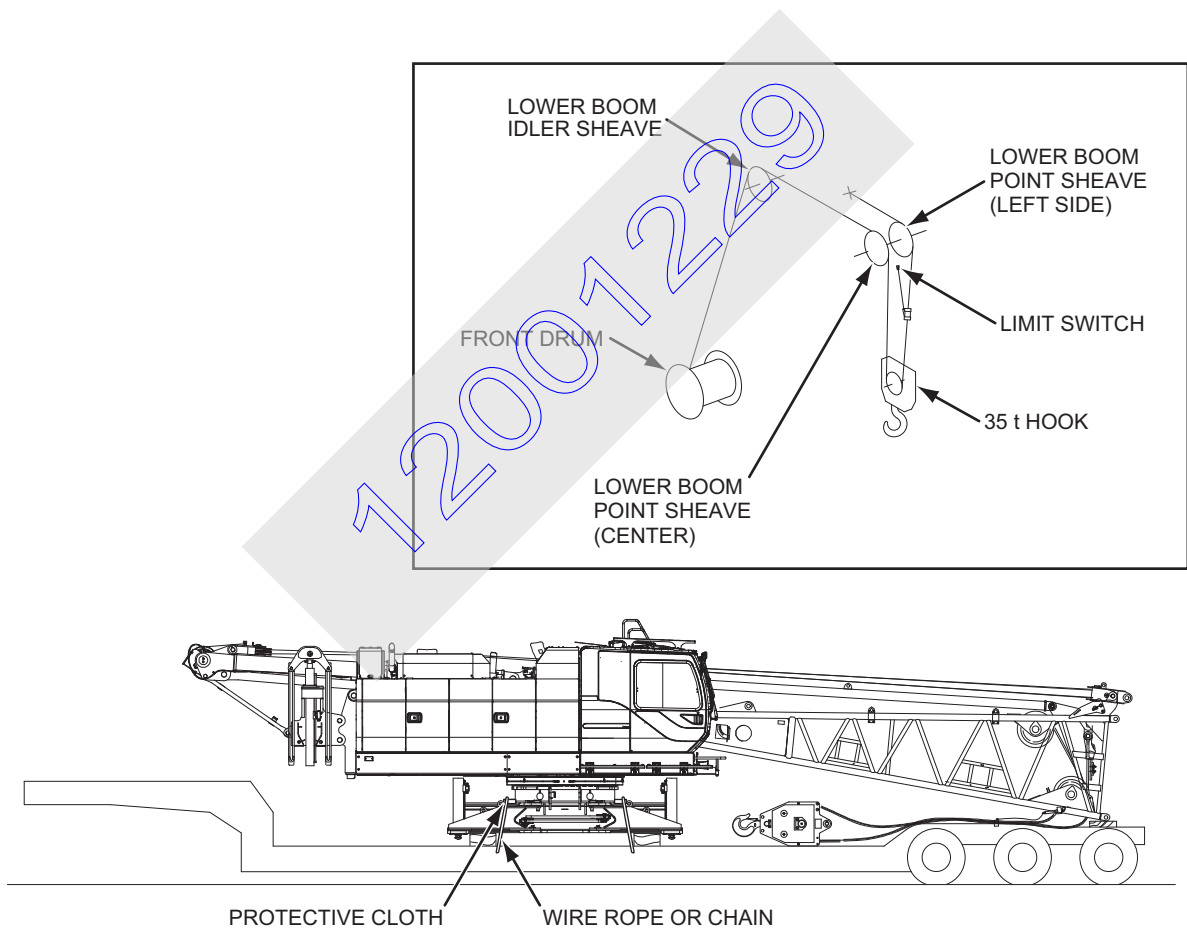
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (3) Apply grease periodically on the translifter mounting pin.  
(8 locations)



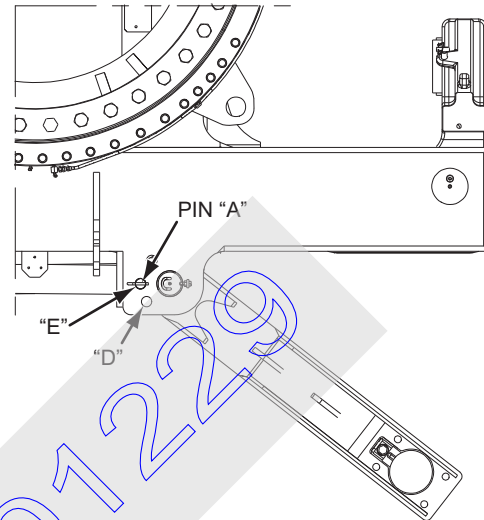
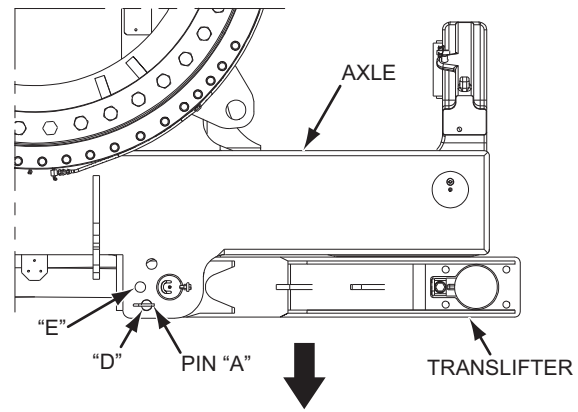
### 3. UNLOADING OF MAIN MACHINERY FROM THE TRAILER

- (1) After checking the ground condition, park the trailer on the leveled place.  
(2) Remove the wire rope and chain from the axle.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (3) Pull out the pin "A" securing the translifter at "D" area.  
Align the translifter fixing hole with "E" and secure with pin "A".



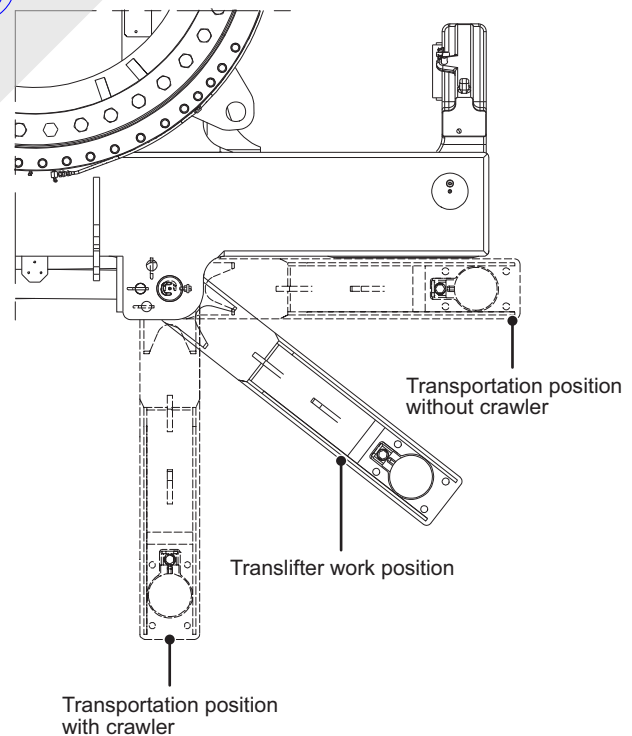
### **⚠ DANGER**

Crane work prohibited at "transportation position with crawler".

If the machine swings at this position, the machine would overturn to rear side.

Ensure to set the machine to "translifter work position".

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

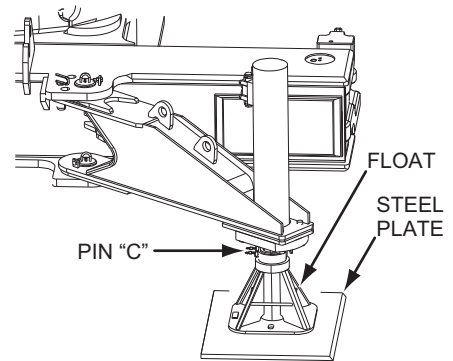


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (4) Install the float to the vertical cylinder and fix with the pin "C".  
Place the steel plates under the float for safety.

### **CAUTION**

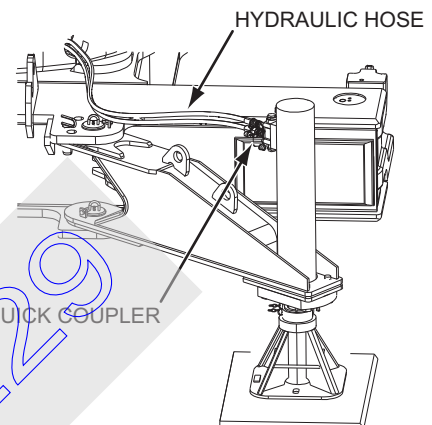
The float weight approx. 30 kg (66 lbs).  
Install or remove the float with two persons to prevent injuries on waist.



- (5) Ensure that the hydraulic hoses are connected to the vertical cylinders.  
(Hydraulic hose 4 locations total 8 pieces)

### **CAUTION**

Check to see that the coupler does not come apart when pulled.



- (6) Start the engine and set the speed to low.  
(Approx. 800 min<sup>-1</sup>)
- (7) Engage the swing brake and keep the swing lock pin inserted and set the function lock lever to LOCK position (Upper side).
- (8) Extend the vertical cylinder by handling the vertical cylinder remote control switch box until a slight gap can be seen between the lower face of the main machinery and the loading deck of the trailer.  
When handling the vertical cylinder, keep the main machinery in horizontal position by looking at the level gauge.  
Ensure to place all four floats surely on the ground.

### **WARNING**

Check if there is any abnormality on the ground condition of the float contacting area to prevent overturning of the machine.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

### **WARNING**

To prevent overturn of the main machinery, ensure to engage the swing brake and lock when handling the transliifter.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

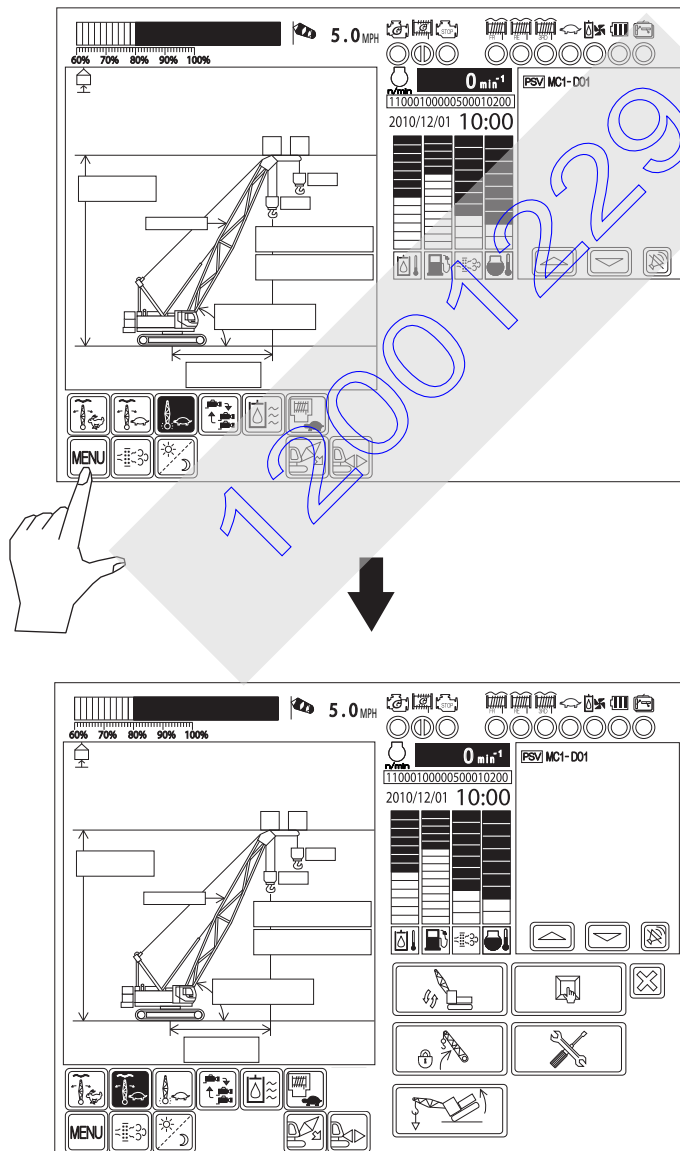
### (9) SETTING OF LMI

When removing or attaching the counterweights, set up the LMI as shown below.

#### Note

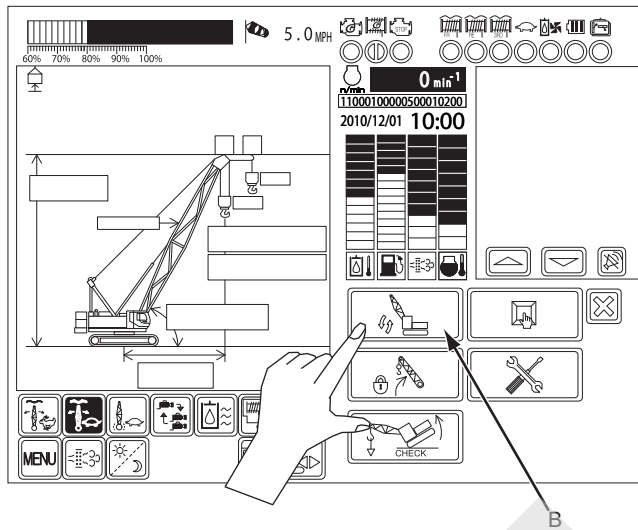
The machine may be stopped by the automatic stop function, leading to impossibility of work, unless you carry out this setting.

- a. Push [MENU] icon while the main screen is indicated.  
Menu screen is now indicated.

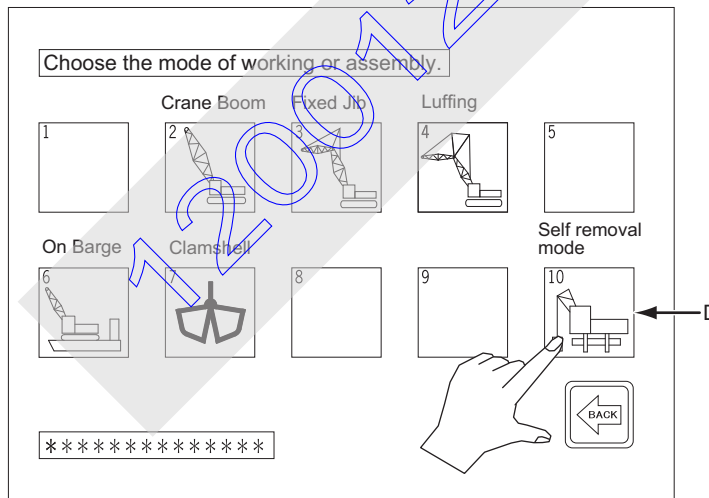


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- b. On the selected screen, match the [B] mark and push [SET] icon.

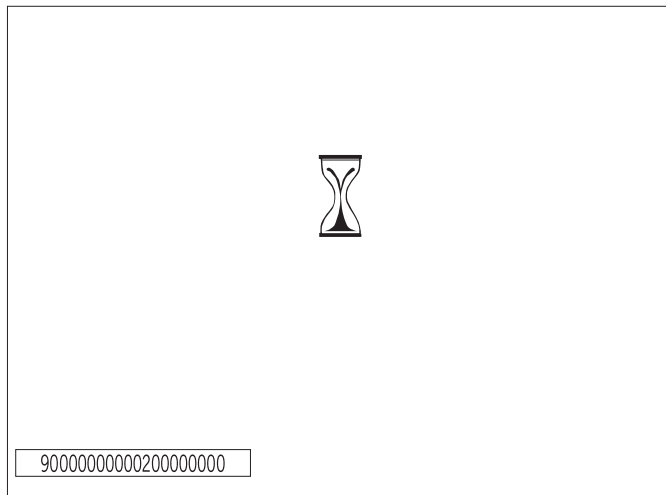


- c. The mode select screen becomes indicated.  
Select [D].



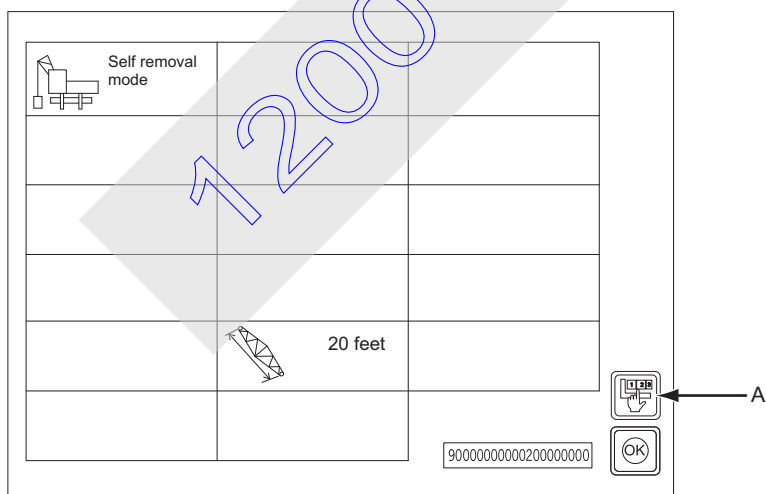
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

d. Data is searched.



e. When data is searched, result of selection becomes indicated. Check if the selected items are correct. If correct, push [OK].

The screen returns to main screen. If not correct, push [A]. Then screen returns to "a." and start re-input.



### Note

In case the selection is limited to only one choice, select screen is neglected and only result is indicated.



### (10) RAISING GANTRY

#### **! DANGER**

Do not allow any person to enter under or inside of the gantry or boom.

Do not touch the wire rope or sheave during winding up the boom hoist wire rope.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in a serious injuries or loss of life.

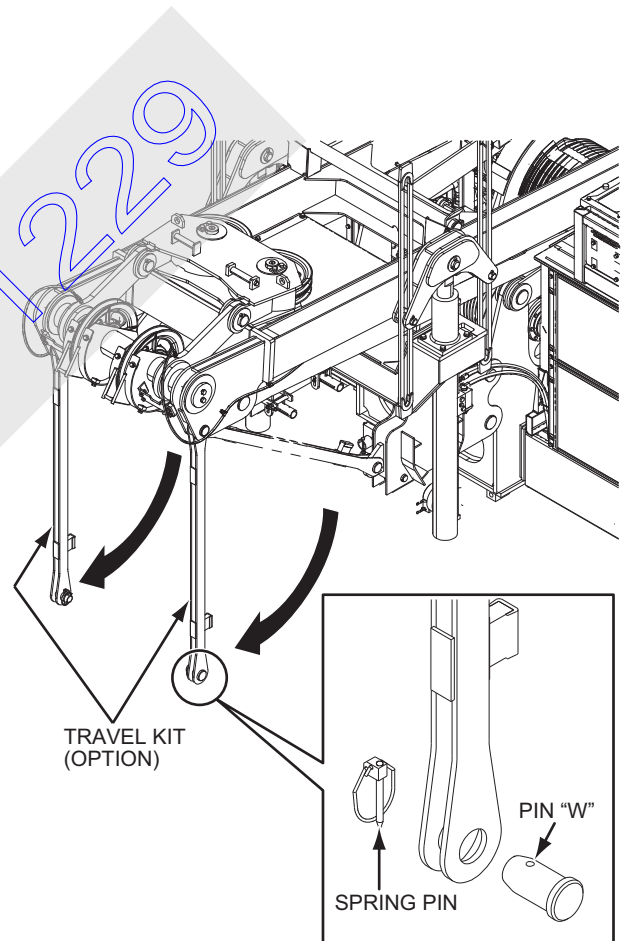
#### **! CAUTION**

Ensure to perform the gantry raising work with the boom placed on the ground.

Take extra care on slack or tension of the boom hoist wire rope.

Raise the gantry from the transportation position to work position.

- a. Pull out the pin "W" fixing the travel kit and remove the travel kit from the upper frame. (Pin "W" is fixed with the spring pins.)
- b. Start the engine and set the speed to approx. 1000 min<sup>-1</sup>.



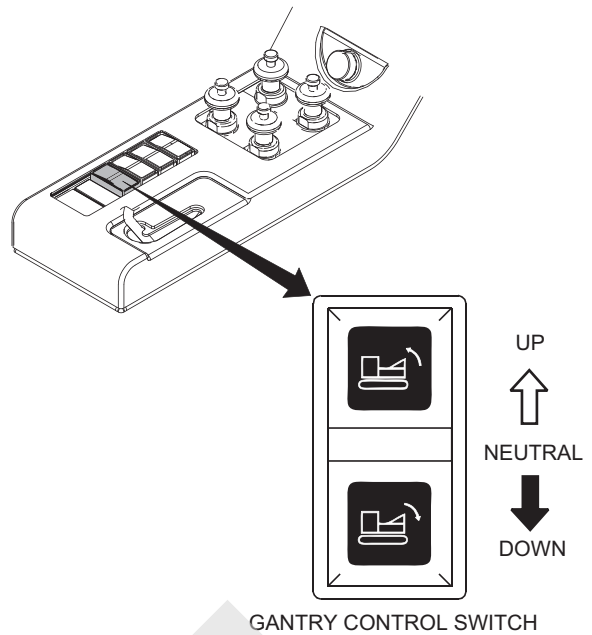
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- c. By turning the gantry control switch to [UP] side (outer side), the gantry can be pushed up with the cylinder.

### **CAUTION**

Before starting the gantry control switch, ensure that there is no person under or near the gantry and sound the horn.

During work or raising the boom hoist, do not operate the gantry control switch if the boom hoist wire rope is tensioned.

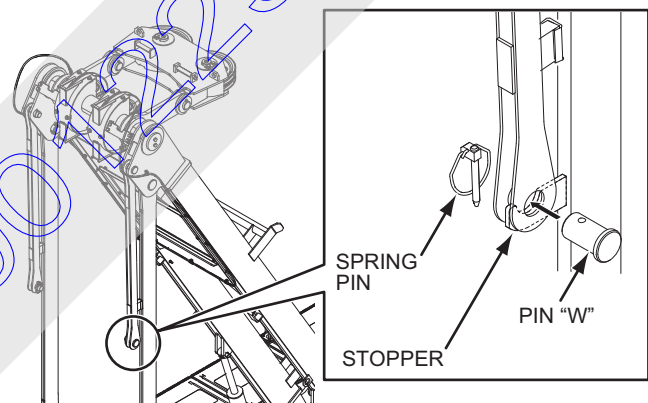


- d. When the gantry comes to WORK position, insert the pin "W" into the travel kit and fix it to the stopper.

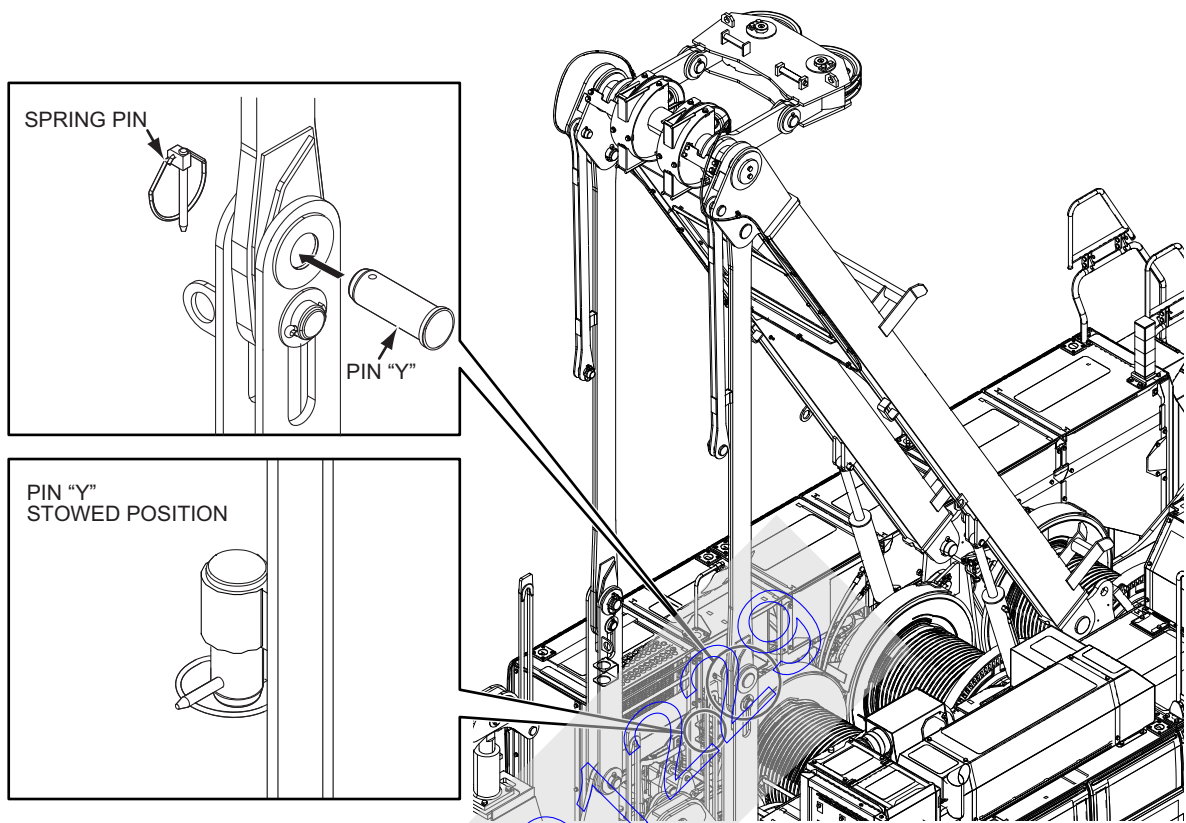
### **DANGER**

Never raise the gantry using the boom hoist wire rope or using the assisting crane.

The gantry may suddenly drop immediately when the fixing pin is pulled out during gantry lowering. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.



- e. Insert the pin "Y" into the gantry and retain with the spring pins.



- f. Wind up the wire rope slowly until the slack is taken up.  
In this case, wind up the wire rope to the drum neatly by applying tension on the rope to avoid rough spooling.

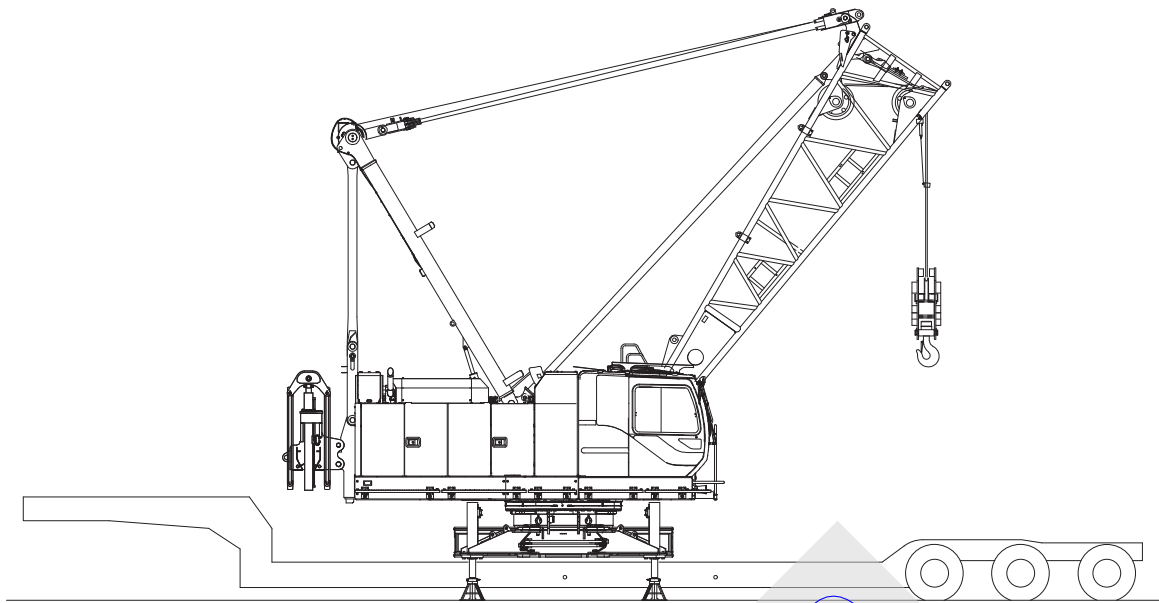
**WARNING**

**Place the signal person to prevent accident of being caught.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

#### 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

- (11) Rise the boom base to approx. 50 degrees and engage the drum lock.



12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(12) Lift the main machinery further up and let the trailer go out under the main machinery.

Effective gap of the main machinery :  
1,093 mm (3' 7")

---

### **CAUTION**

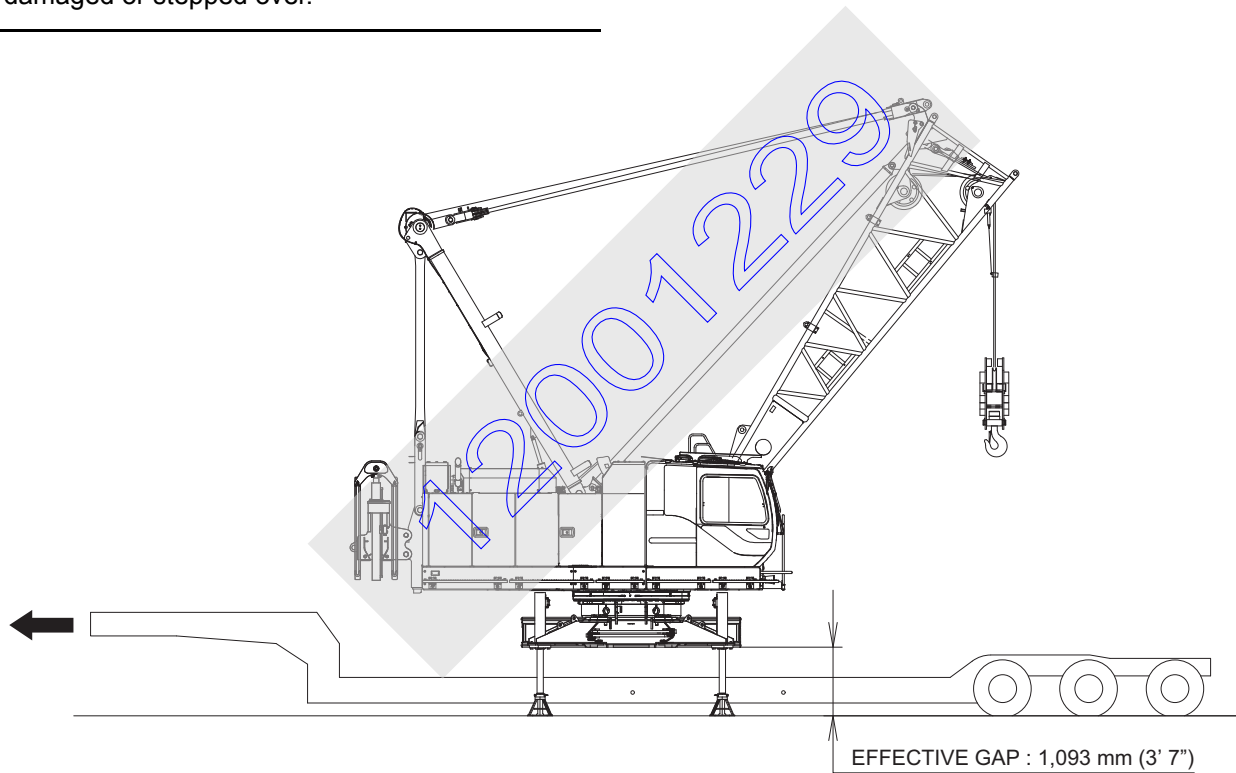
Extend the four vertical cylinders so that the front/rear and left/right become horizontal.

---

### **CAUTION**

When unloading the machinery from the trailer, bundle and secure the propel, high/low speed select and drain hose together to the lower machinery so that they are not damaged or stepped over.

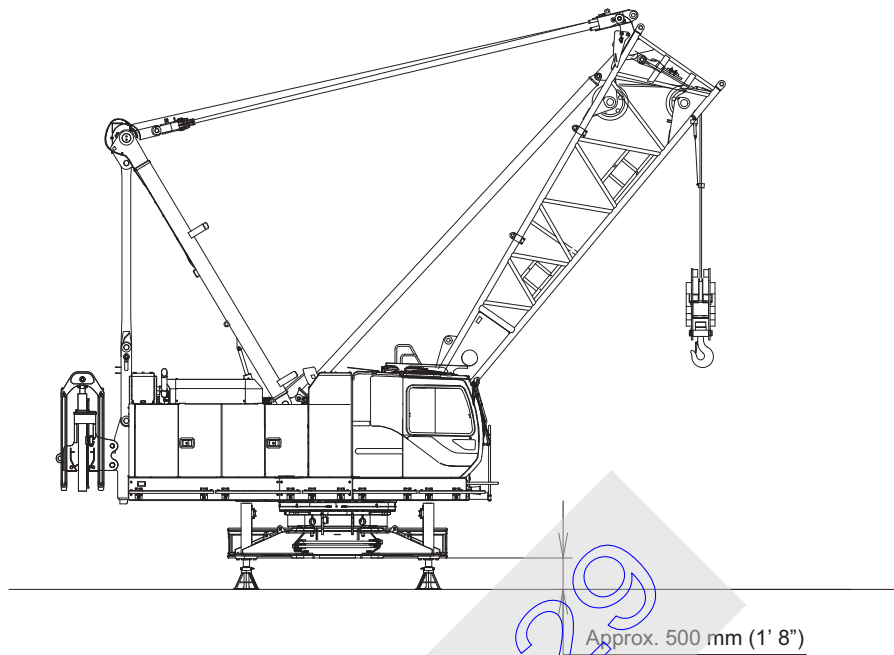
---



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

- (13) Retract the vertical cylinder until the clearance between the lower machinery and the ground becomes approx. 500 mm (1' 8").



### 4.2.2 CRAWLER INSTALLATION

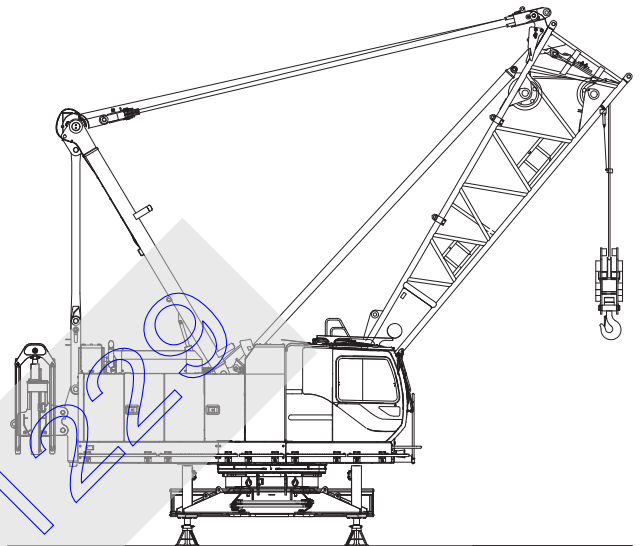
#### 1. PREPARATION OF CRAWLER FRAME INSTALLATION [USING TRANSLIFTER]

There are two ways of the crawler frame installation, one with self installation using the boom base of the main machinery and the other using an assisting crane. Perform safer way as required.

#### [TOOL]

- Translifter
- Attached tool set
- Assisting crane (25,000 kg class)  
(In case using an assisting crane)
- Protective cloth (for lifting sling)
- Sling wire rope 2 pieces (attached)

This article explains the installation of both crawlers using the translifter from the condition that the counterweight is removed, the gantry is lowered and the translifter piping has been connected.



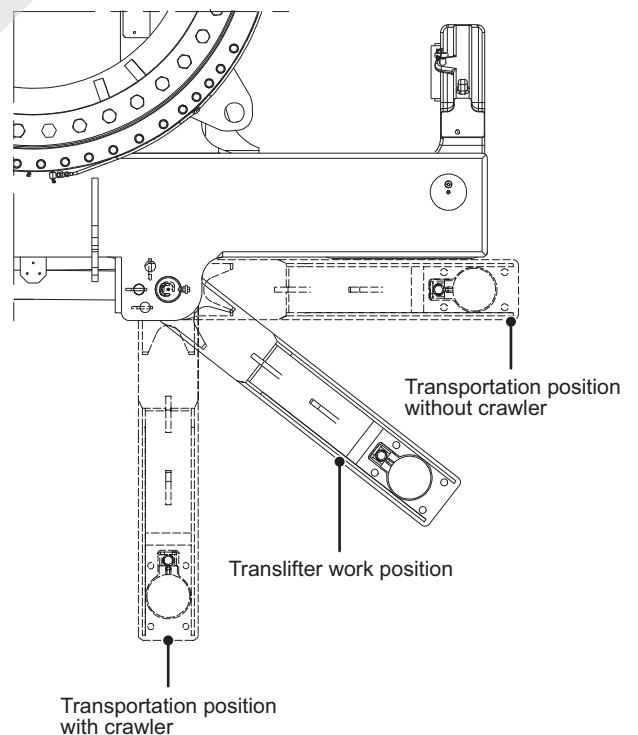
#### **⚠ DANGER**

Crane work prohibited at "transportation position with crawler".

If the machine swings at this position, the machine would overturn to rear side.

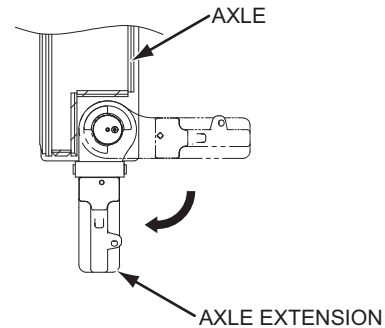
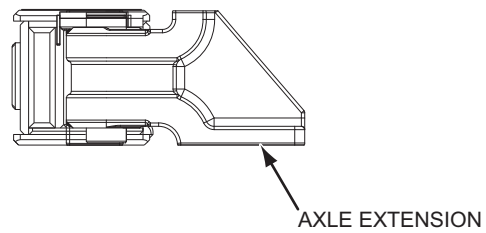
Ensure to set the machine to "translifter work position".

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

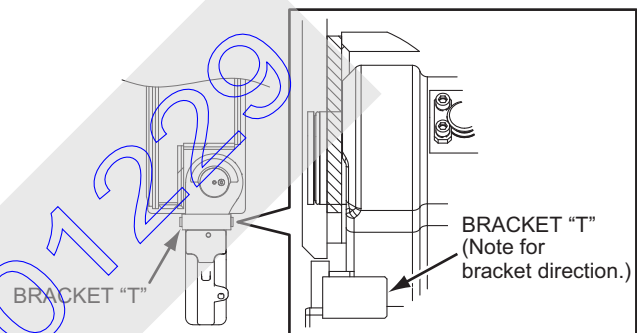


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (1) Swing the upper machinery to 90 degrees against the axle direction to install the crawlers.
- (2) Set the axle extension to the extended position. Turn all four axle extensions for 90 degrees toward outside to make them parallel to the axles.



- (3) Extend the axle extension and then set the bracket "T" as shown.



- (4) Turn the upper machinery front to the connector side of the translifter remote control box of the lower machinery.
- (5) Ensure to engage the swing brake and swing lock after swing.
- (6) Check to see that all four vertical cylinders are contacting the ground.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (7) Set the clearance from the lower surface of the axle to the ground as approx. 800 mm (2' 8").  
At this time, adjust the height by checking the level gauge to keep the lower machinery horizontal.
- (8) Check to see that clearance adjusting shims between the crawler and axle are removed.

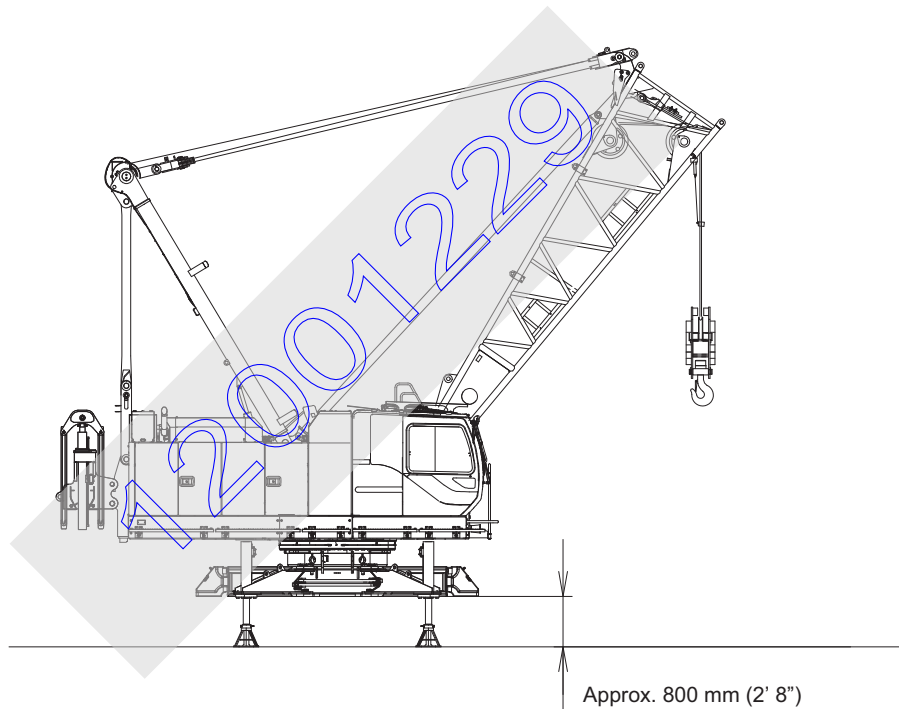
---

### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not swing when the crawler/propel hydraulic hoses are to be connected to prevent accident of being caught.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

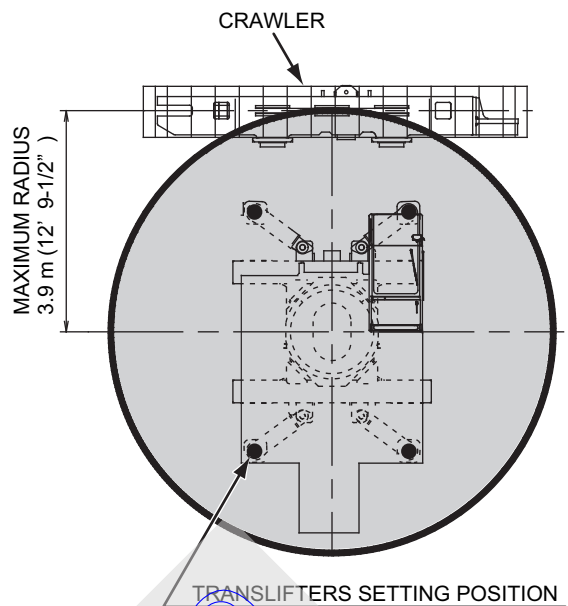
---



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 2. INSTALLATION OF THE FIRST CRAWLER

- (1) Bring the trailer with the first crawler as close as possible to the machine.  
Make sure the crawler is turned in the proper direction.  
The upper machine can swing 360 degrees with lifting the first crawler.  
(Without the other side of the crawler installed.)



#### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not exceed 3.9 m (12' 9-1/2") load radius.  
Otherwise the machine may tip over.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

- (2) Swing the upper structure to orient it toward the crawler.

#### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not operate the machine abruptly when the machine is standing with translifter.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(3) Ensure that the crawler connecting links are connected.

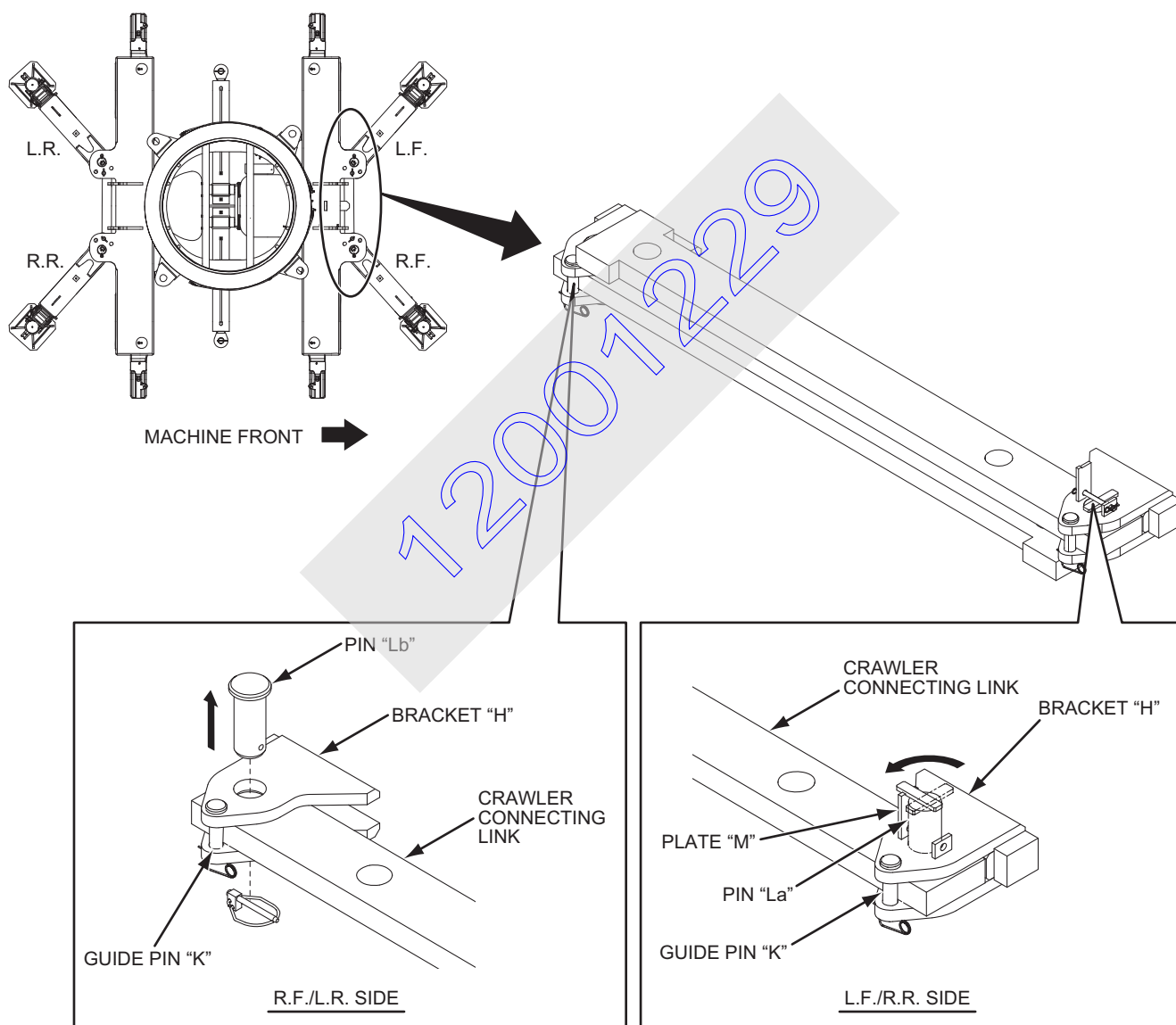
(4) Insert the link between the carbody bracket "H" and ensure that the guide pins "K" are connected.

(Same work on 4 locations)

Handling of the crawler connecting links differs between those of "LF", "RR" and those of "RF", "LR".

Place pins "La" of left front side and right rear side against the plate "M".

Pull out pins "Lb" of right front and left rear side in advance.



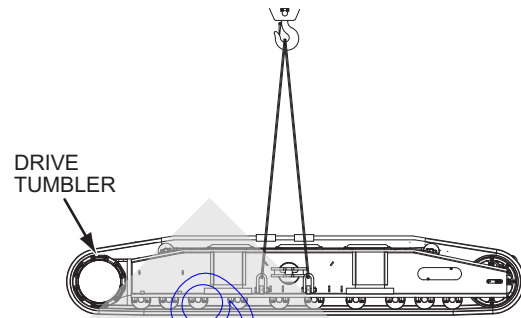
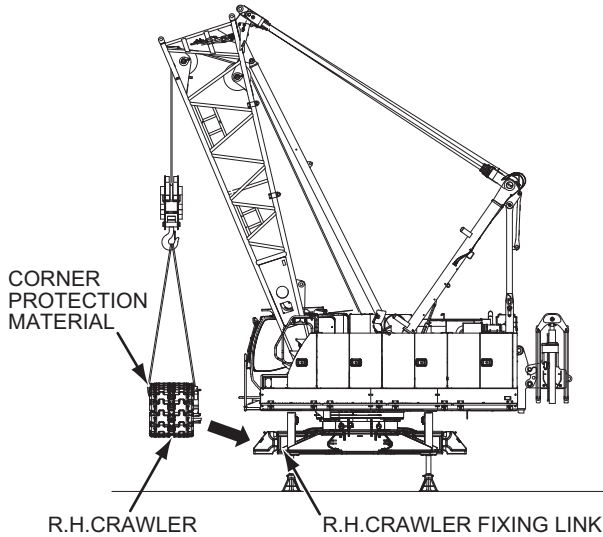
(5) Apply grease on upper, lower and side face of the axle to make crawler sliding easier.  
(4 locations)

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(6) Lift up the crawler with the lower boom.

Crawler weight :  
11.9 t (26,301 lbs) (one side)

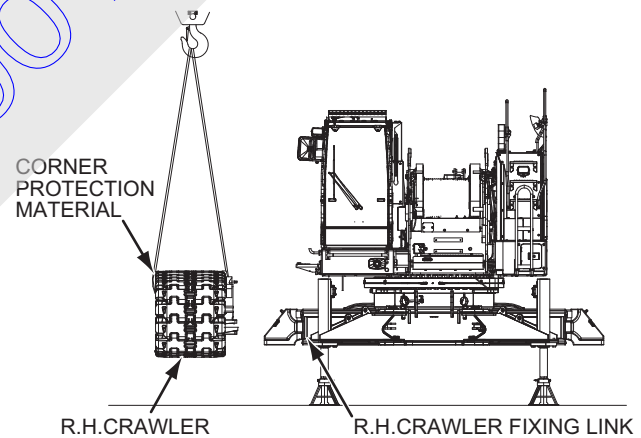
Hold the right crawler, use corner protection materials so that wire does not bite into shoes.



In case of using an assisting crane, follow the procedure as shown right.

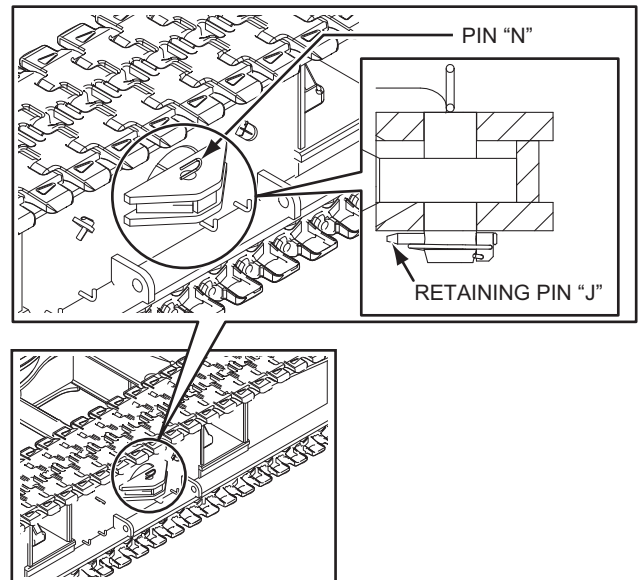
### **CAUTION**

Control the assisting crane to prevent the sling wire rope interfering with the deck during the crawler lifting in.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

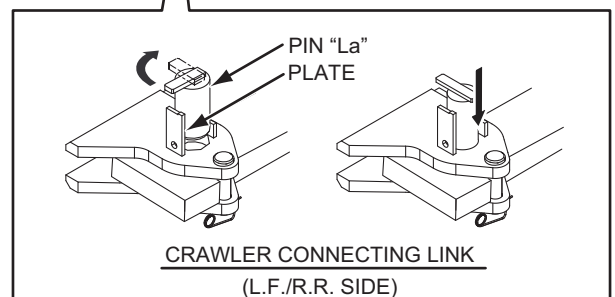
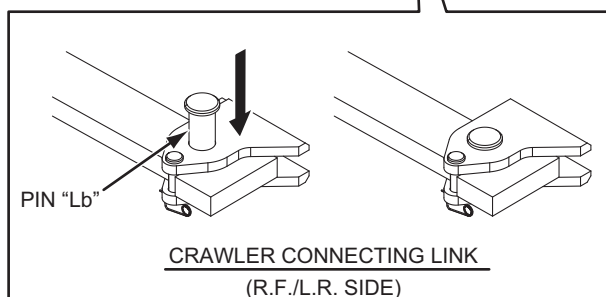
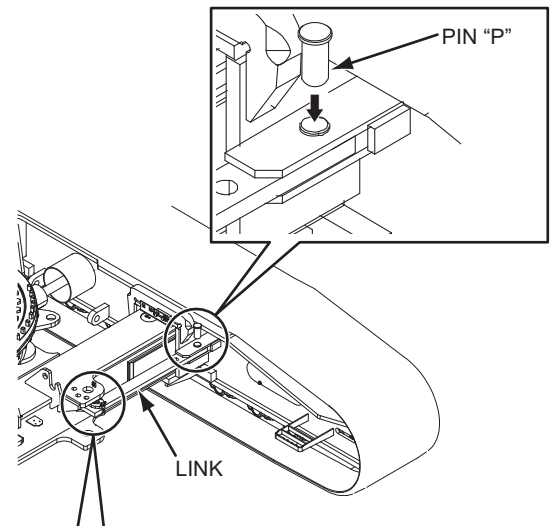
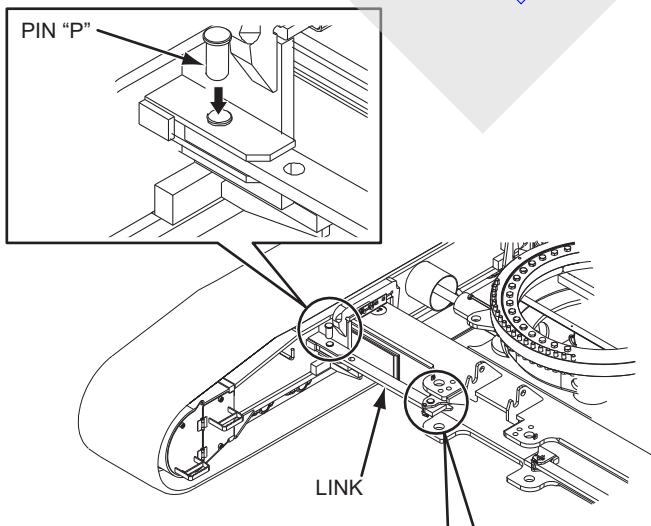
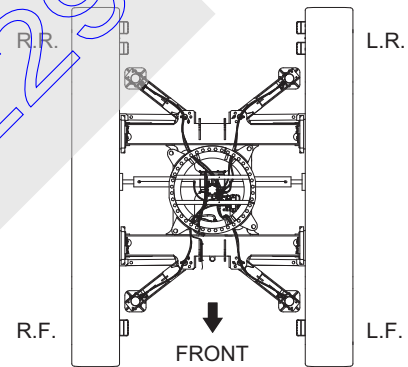
- (7) Insert the crawler to the front and rear axle extensions with the lower boom.
- (8) Remove the retaining pin "J" and pull out the pin "N". Extend the crawler ext/ret cylinder with the remote control switch and connect the crawler frame and the crawler ext/ret cylinder. Secure the crawler and cylinder with the pin "N".



### **! DANGER**

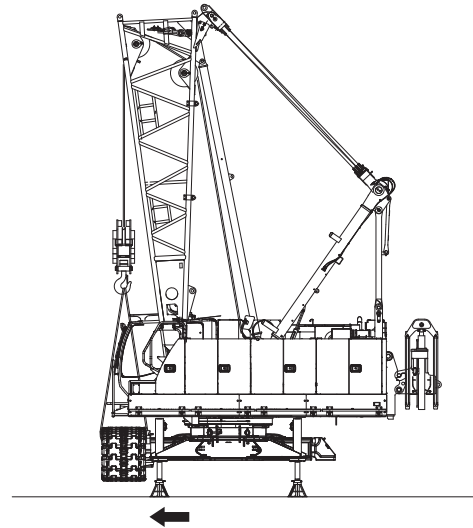
Check to see that no personnel is between the crawler and the main machinery to prevent accident of being caught. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

- (9) While holding the crawler with the lower boom, retract the extend cylinder and pull in the crawler to inner side of the work (extended) position.
- (10) Extend the link and insert the pin "P".
- (11) Rotate the pin "La" which has been placed against the plate and place it against the crawler connecting link. (Left front side)



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (12) While holding the crawler with the lower boom, extend the crawler to the work position by extending the cylinder and check that the pin "La" and "Lb" which has been placed on the link is inserted into the link hole.



In case of using an assisting crane, follow the procedure as shown right.

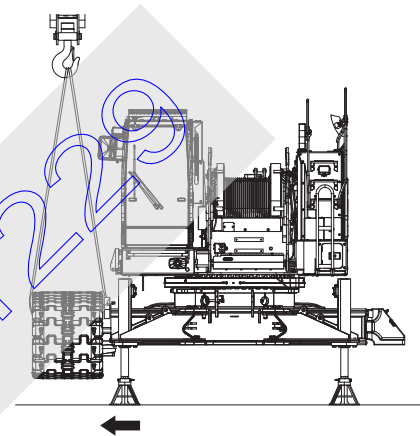
### CAUTION

In order to prevent interference of wire rope with the deck when the crawler is retracted, loosen the sling wire rope just before the deck and inner side of the shoe upper face comes close (approx. 50 mm (2")).

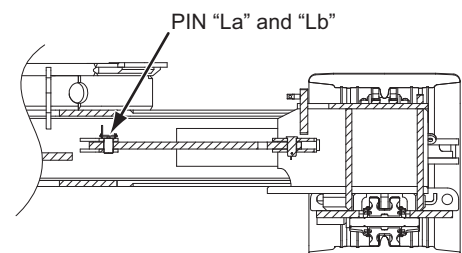
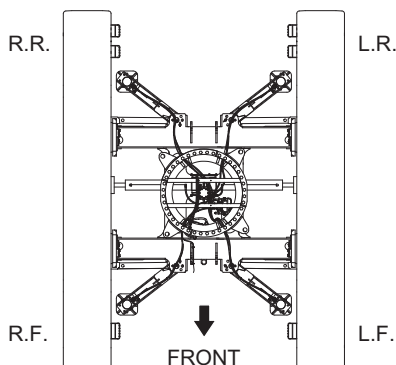
### CAUTION

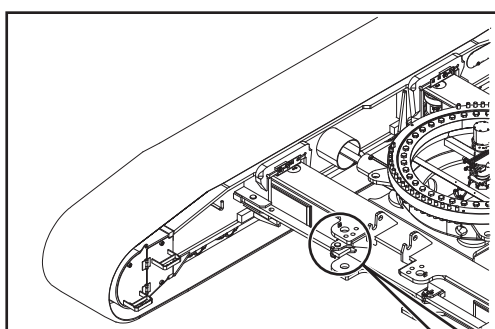
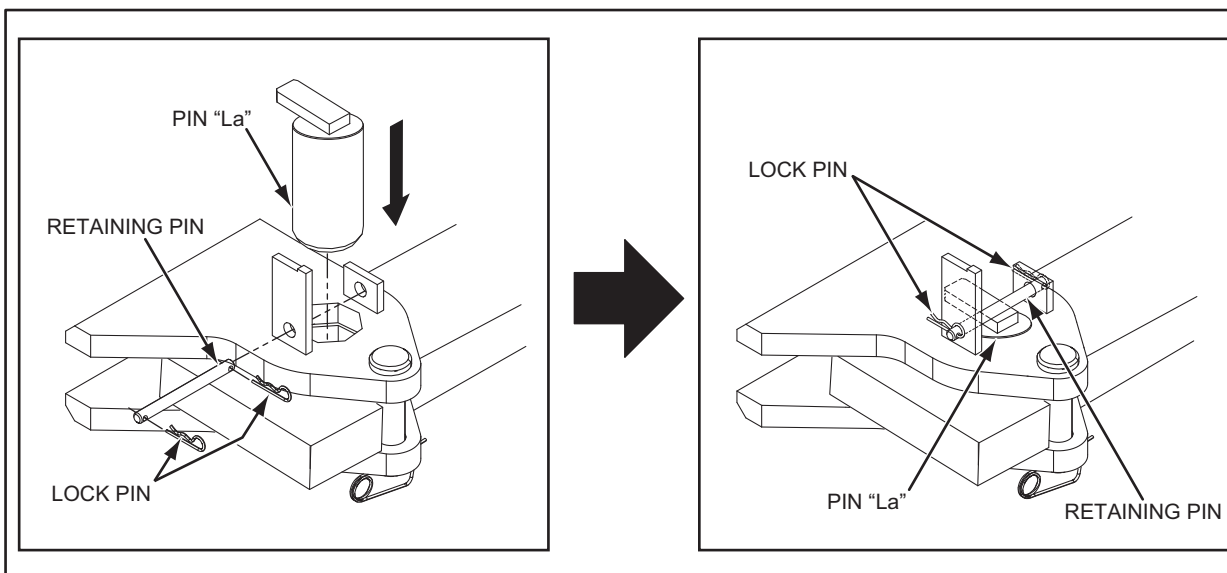
When the crawler is pulled in with the extend cylinder, lift up the main machinery with the transliifter and hold it in horizontal position. If the crawler is inclined for right or left way, keep crawler in horizontal position by extend cylinder or vertical cylinder.

Pulling the crawler forcibly with the ext/ret cylinder while the crawler is inclined may damage the crawler.

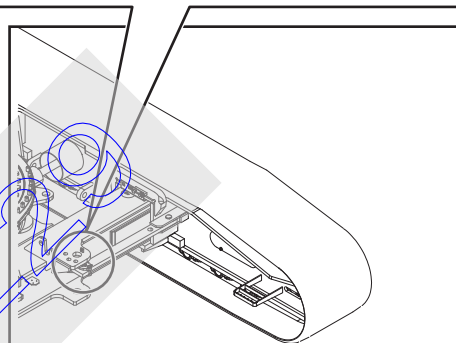


- (13) Set the retaining pin, lock pin as shown right to prevent pin "La" and "Lb" from coming out. (2 locations on one side)

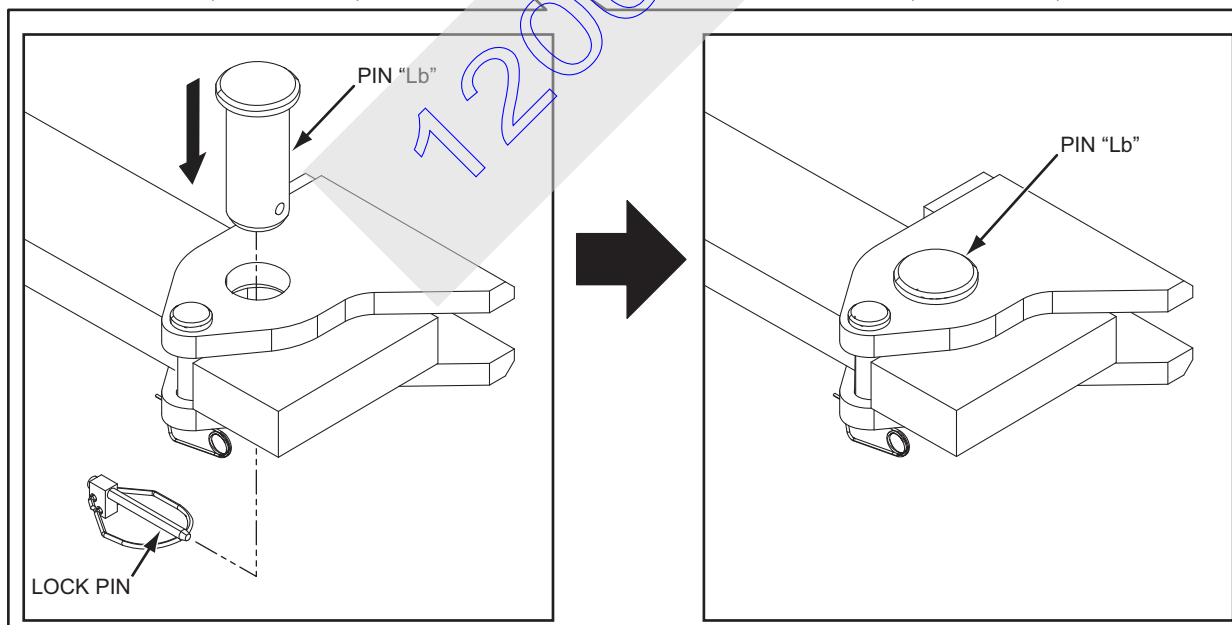




CRAWLER CONNECTING LINK  
(R.F./L.R. SIDE)



CRAWLER CONNECTING LINK  
(L.F./R.R. SIDE)



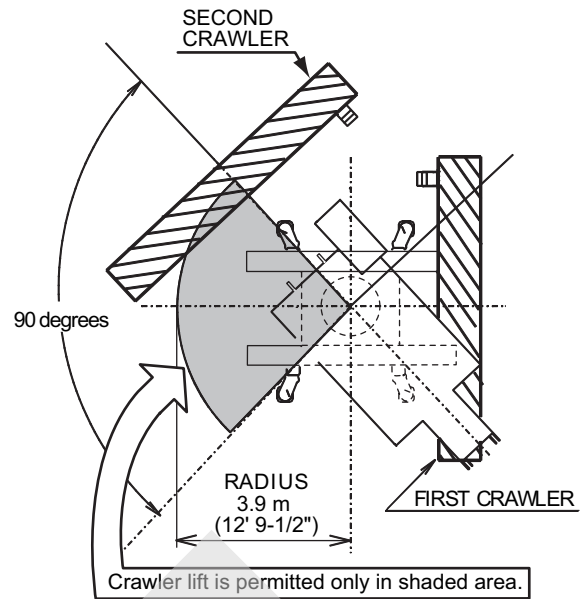
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 3. INSTALLATION OF THE SECOND CRAWLER

- (1) Bring the trailer with the second crawler as close to the machine as possible.  
Ensure adequate clearance for trailer.  
Make sure the crawler is in the proper direction.

#### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not swing over center of the transliﬂer cylinders (90 degrees) while lifting the second crawler.  
Do not exceed 3.9m (12' 9-1/2") load radius.  
Otherwise the machine may tip over.  
Crawler lift is permitted only in shaded area.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

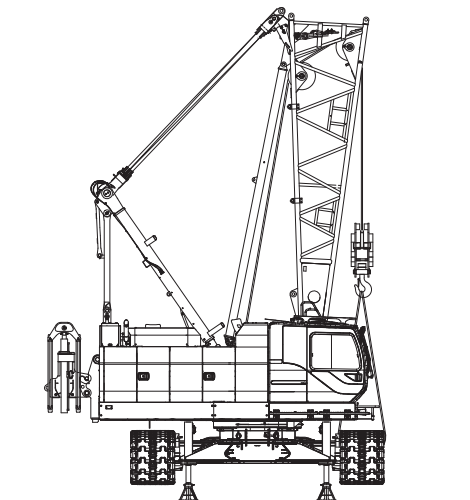


- (2) Swing the upper structure to orient it toward the crawler.

#### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not operate the machine abruptly when the machine is standing on transliﬂer.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

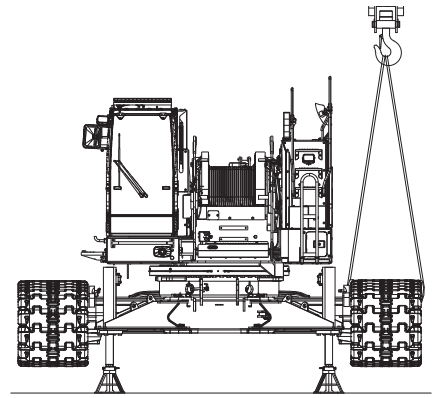
- (3) Install the other crawler in the same procedure.





## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

In case of using an assisting crane, install with the procedure as shown right.



- (4) When both crawlers are installed completely, hold the main machinery horizontally and retract the four vertical cylinders until the crawlers are placed completely on the ground.

12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(5) Swing the main machinery to make the clearance between the crawler and axle larger and insert the adjusting shims.

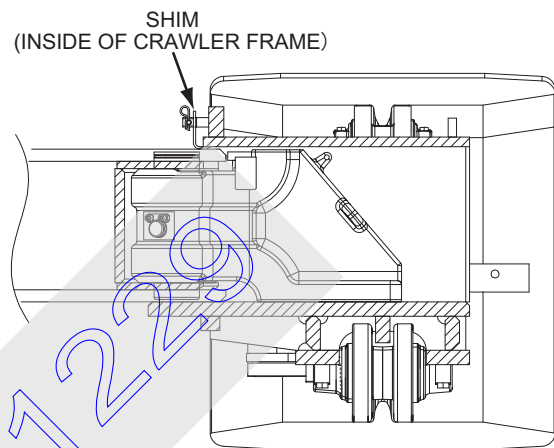
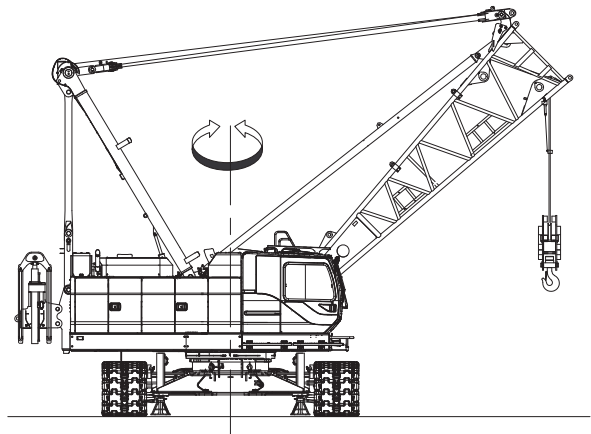
Each shim has its number stamped. Install it to meet with that of frame side.

(Four places on front and rear axles)

### CAUTION

Ensure to insert the adjusting shims in the clearance between the crawler and axle.

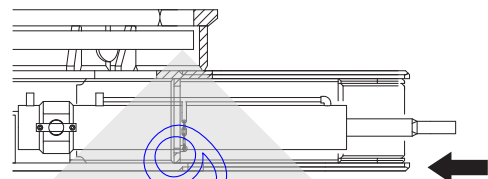
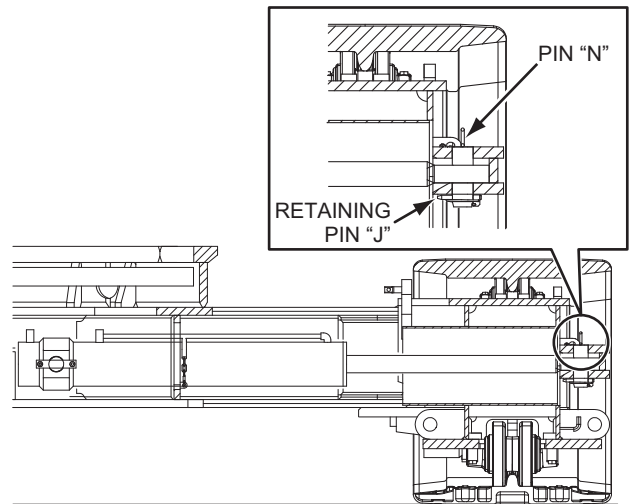
Otherwise the crawler would become inclined and would cause premature wear of the shoes or the lower rollers on one side only.



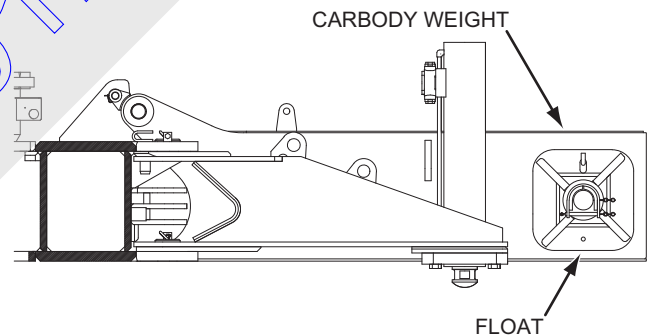
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (6) Take out the pin "N" which has connected the crawler ext/ret cylinder and the crawler and retract the cylinder fully.

Confirm that the cylinder has been retracted and then insert the pin "N" to the pin hole of the crawler side bracket and insert the retaining pin "J".



- (7) After installation of carbody weight, stow the float to its stowing position of the carbody weight.



- (8) When both crawler installation is completed, stop the engine.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(9) When the propel motor cover bolt "R" are taken out, the cover opens.

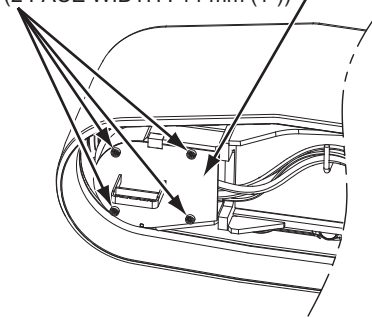
Connect the propel hydraulic hoses for both (right and left) at their quick coupler portions.

(4 pieces on one side)

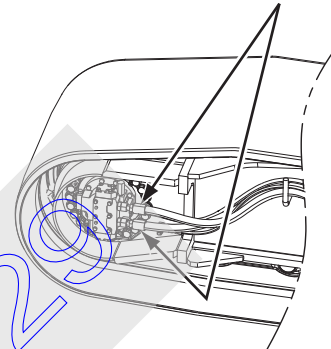
After connection, pull the hose to check for firm connection on both sides.

BOLT "R" (M16)  
HEX.WRENCH  
ZT22A14000 (2 FACE WIDTH : 14 mm (1"))

COVER



QUICK COUPLER



### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not swing when the propel hydraulic hoses are being connected or disconnected to prevent accident of being caught.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

### **⚠ CAUTION**

Connect the quick coupler after the engine is stopped and the piping pressure is lowered.

If the piping pressure is remained, connection would be impossible or oil would jump out.

Connect the quick coupler after the dust, dirt are wiped off.

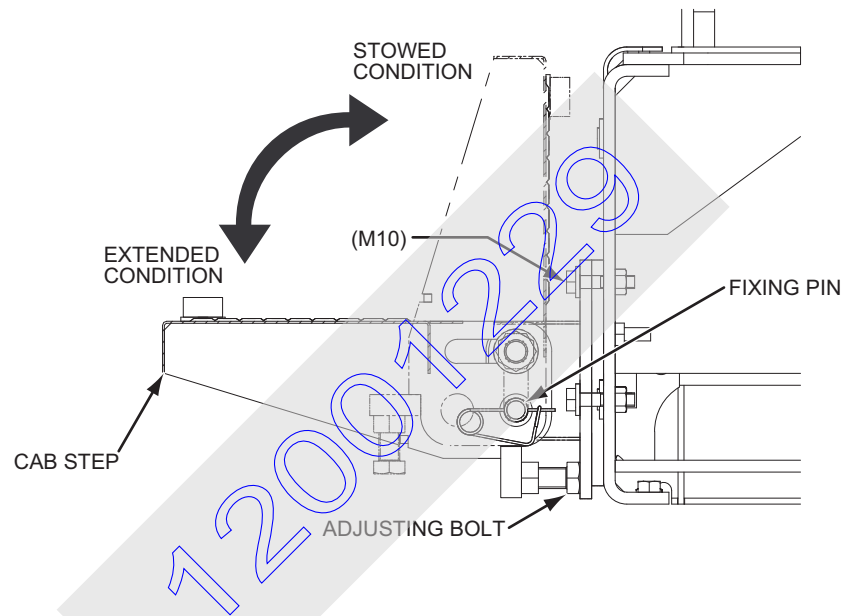
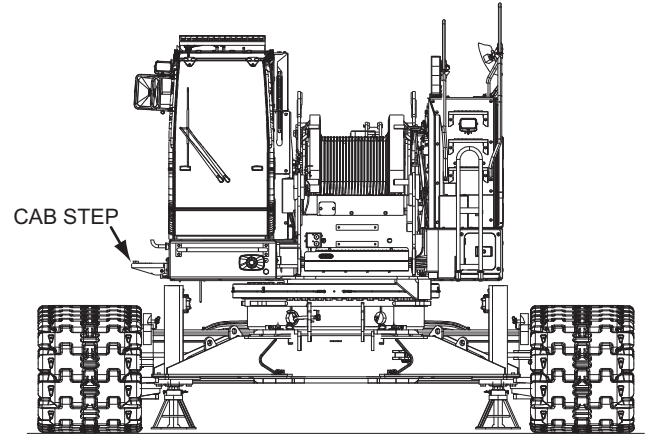
If the quick coupler connection is not enough, oil leak or damage to the propel motor or reduction unit may occur.

### 4.2.3 CAB STEP EXTENSION

This machine's carbody weight is composed of two pieces.

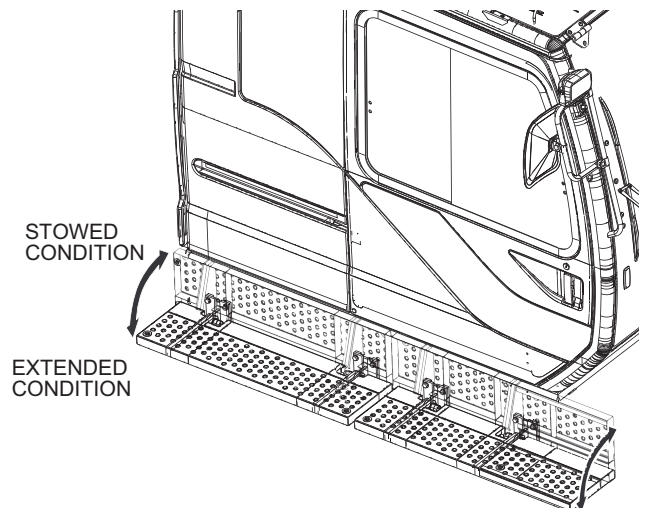
Never use the carbody weight other than specified one.

There are two ways of the carbody weight installation, one with self installation using the boom base of the main machinery and the other using an assisting crane. Perform safer way as required.



#### EXTENSION

1. Remove the fixing pin and lift up the outer end of the step full and then rotate it toward outer side to extend to horizontal position.
2. If the step is not horizontal after extended, adjust two bolts to make the step in horizontal position.
3. Secure one side of each step with the fixing pin to prevent it from rotating.



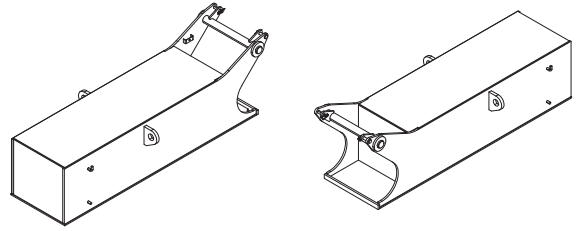
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.2.4 CARBODY WEIGHT INSTALLATION

This machine's carbody weight is composed of two pieces.

Never use the carbody weight other than specified one.

There are two ways of the carbody weight installation, one with self installation using the boom base of the main machinery and the other using an assisting crane. Perform safer way as required.



#### EACH WEIGHT

Carbody weight	Weight
No.1 WEIGHT (1)	3.25 t (7,165 lbs)
No.2 WEIGHT (2)	3.25 t (7,165 lbs)

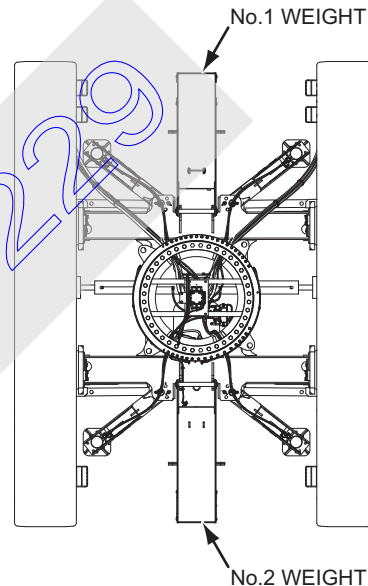
#### 1. PREPARATION OF CARBODY WEIGHT INSTALLATION

Before installing the carbody weight, check that the machine is in the following conditions.

- The gantry is in WORK position.
- Main machinery is placed on firm and level ground.
- The crawler is extended to the extended position.



**Check the swing and propel stability (P.8-17) to prevent overturn of the machine. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**



When installing the carbody weight, prepare the tools as listed below.

#### [TOOL]

- Attached tool set
- Assisting crane (25,000 kg class or larger)  
(In case using an assisting crane)
- Sling wire rope  $\Phi 25$  mm X 8 m (1" X 26' 3") 2 pieces
- Light weight shackle Nominal 10,000 kg 2 pieces

There are two ways to install the carbody weight.  
One is to use an assisting crane and the other is to use  
the machine boom base.

### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not stand under lifted carbody weight or between carbody weight and the basic machine to avoid accident of drop or being caught. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

Lift the carbody weights with the boom base or assisting crane, and install them by hooking them with the carbody brackets. When removing them, lift them with the boom base or assisting crane in a similar manner.

### 2. CARBODY WEIGHT INSTALLATION

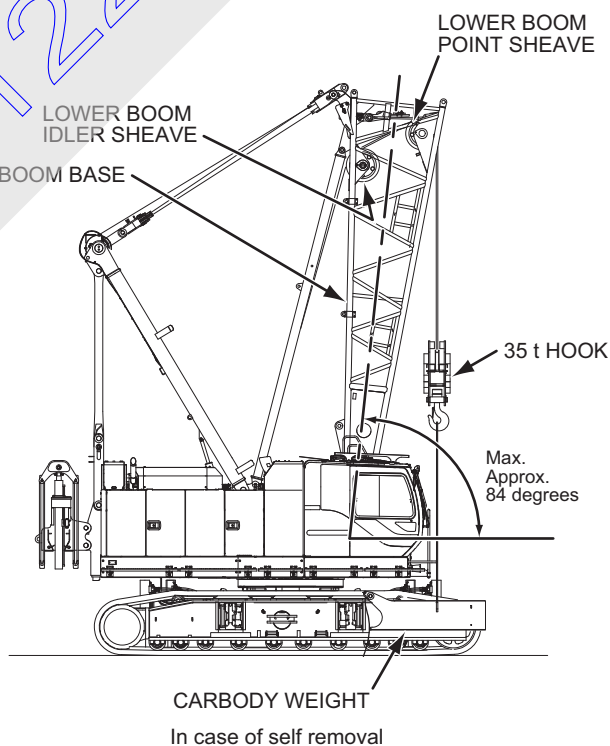
#### (1) Installation of No.1 WEIGHT

(A) Attach the shackle to the lifting bracket of the carbody weight and lift up with the lower boom or assisting crane.

### **⚠ DANGER**

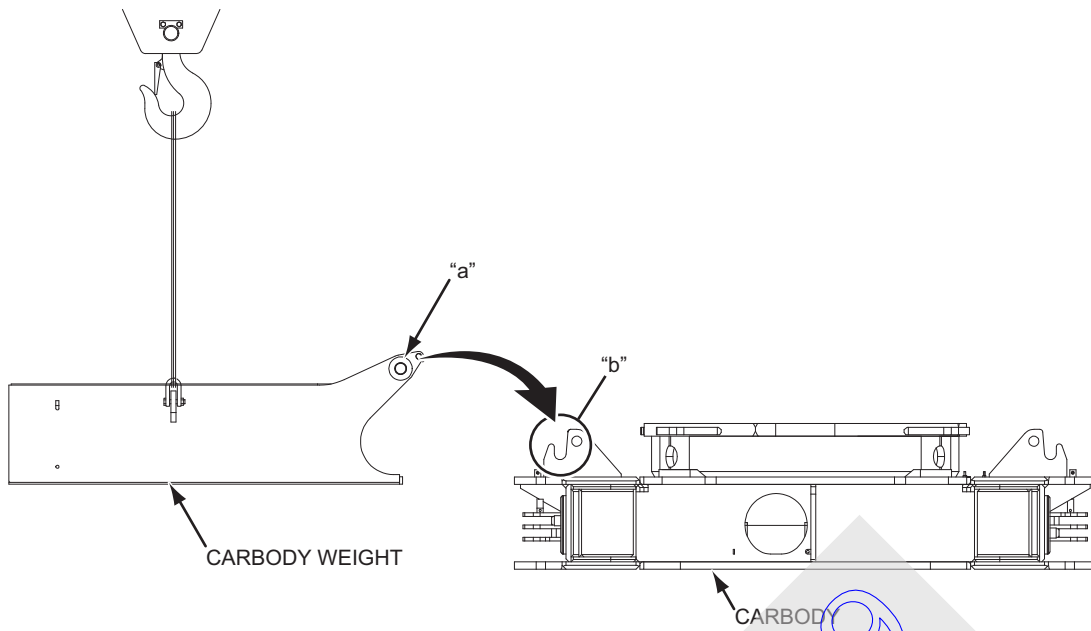
**Do not allow any persons to enter under the lifting carbody weight or between the carbody weight and main machinery to prevent accident of falling or being caught.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries.**

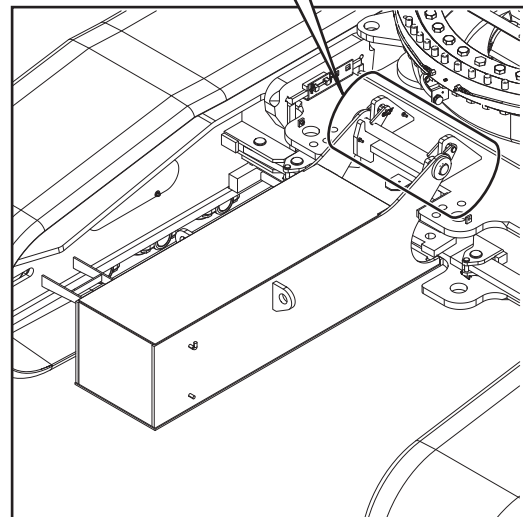
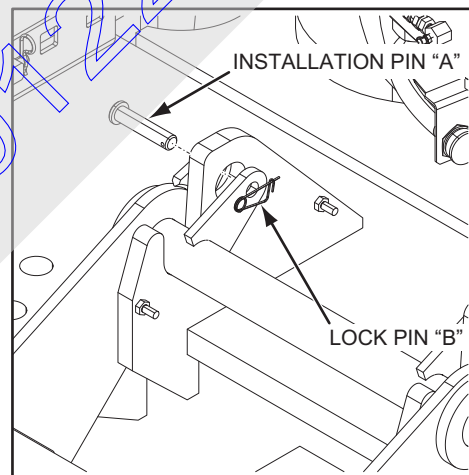


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(B) Install the "a" area of the carbody weight to the "b" area of the carbody.



(C) Insert the carbody weight installation pin "A" and secure it with the lock pin "B".

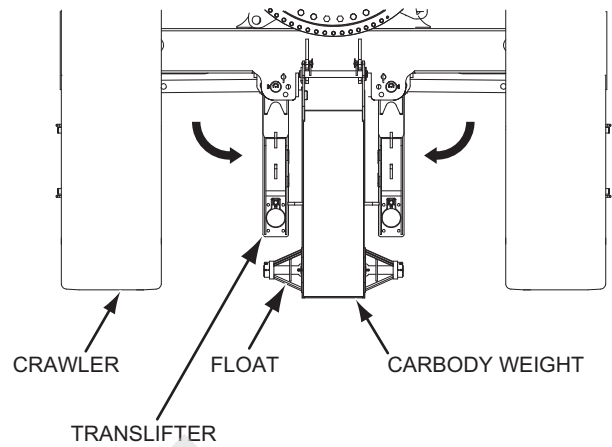




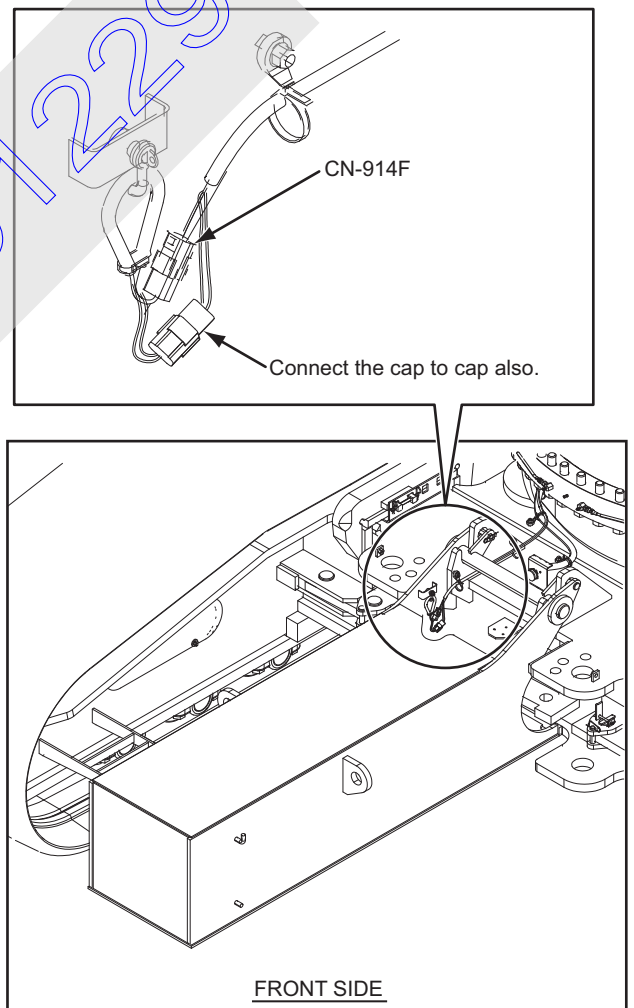
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (2) Installing No.2 WEIGHT  
Install No.2 WEIGHT in the same way as No.1 WEIGHT.

- (3) Set the translifter as shown right.  
Stow the float to the carbody weight.

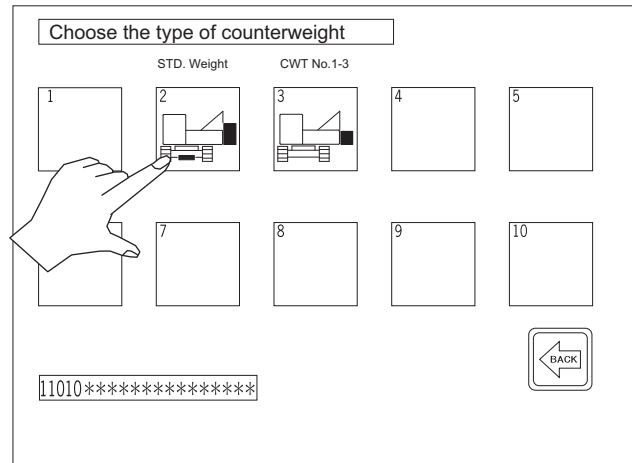


- (4) If the weight detect unit is equipped, connect the detect harness installed in the front side weight and main machinery harness. Connect the cap to cap also. The detect harness installed on the rear side weight is not to be connected.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

In setting the LMI, ensure to select the item matched with the actual weight condition.  
If unmatched item is selected, error [ML-ME064] would be displayed in the monitor and the buzzer would sound.



### IN CASE OF WEIGHT REDUCED SPECIFICATION

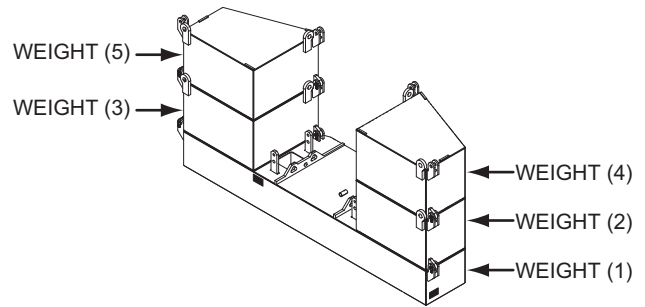
In case of the weight reduced specification, if the carbody weight is not equipped, leave the main machinery harness cap as installed.

12001229

4.2.5 ASSEMBLING THE COUNTERWEIGHTS (USING SELF REMOVAL DEVICE)

EACH WEIGHT

Counterweight	Weight
WEIGHT (1)	11.6 t (25,600 lbs)
WEIGHT (2) (4)	5.75 t (12,680 lbs)
WEIGHT (3) (5)	5.75 t (12,680 lbs)



- The following conditions must be satisfied for counterweight mounting firm horizontal ground.
- Select the site of assembly for assembling and hoisting up the WEIGHT (1). Lay on underlay for the WEIGHT (1).  
The base plate's underlay eases connecting the counterweight links.

**WARNING**

When making lifts, strictly follow the capacity charts supplied by the manufacturer for determining the loads that can be handled. Follow good operating practices and all procedures as outlined in this manual when attempting to lift any load. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

**WARNING**

The load line can break if the hook block contacts the end of the boom. This is called "two blocking". Two blocking can be caused by lowering the boom without paying out load line. Two blocking can pull jibs and lattice crane booms over backwards or cause damage to the tip. Always keep adequate space between the hook block and boom point. Lower the hook when lowering the boom. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

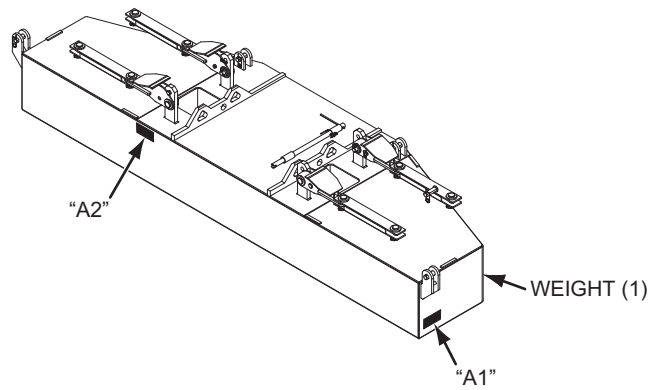
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### **CAUTION**

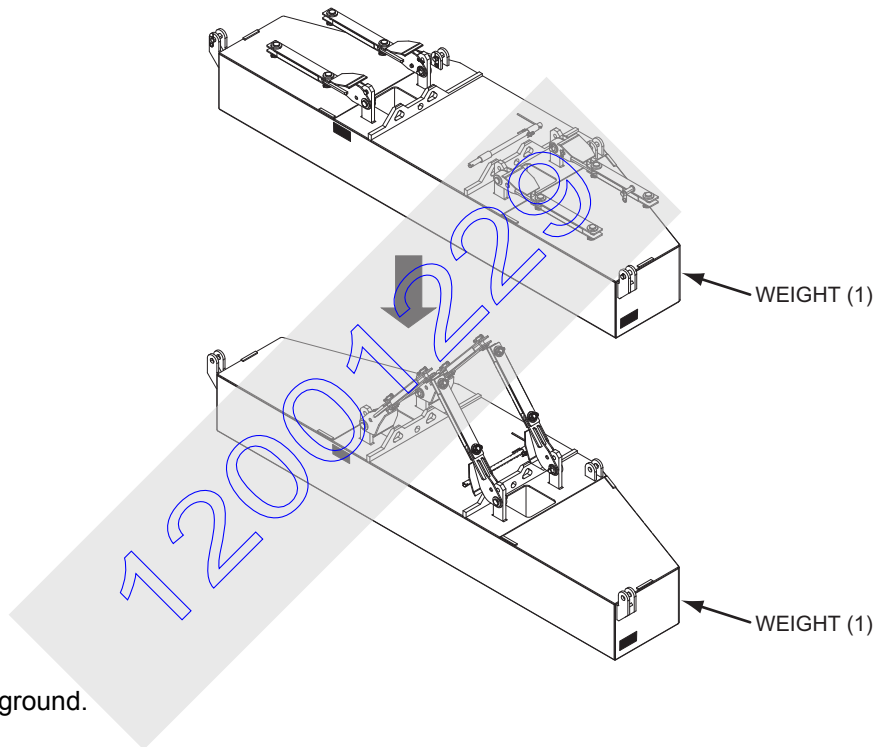
Check the labels (allow "A1" or "A2") to confirm that the counterweights are of the specified ones for the main machinery before assembling.

25,600 lbs  
11,600 kg

Detail "A"



1. Raise the links then fix the links with spring pins and lock pins.



2. Place WEIGHT (1) on the flat ground.

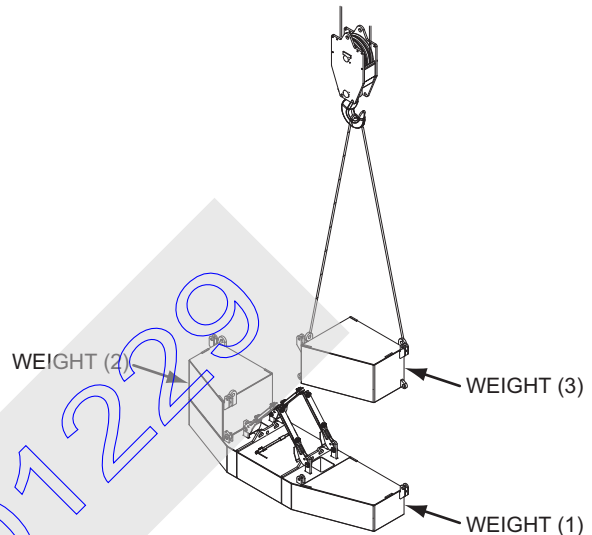
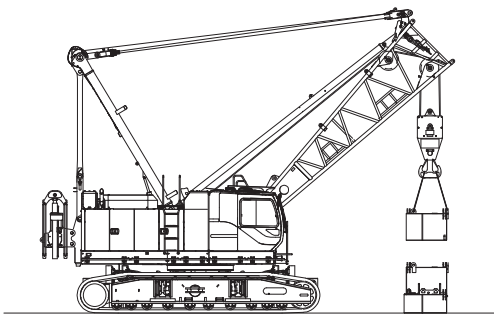
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- Lift up right and left WEIGHTS (2), (3) with the machinery or with an assisting crane and place them on WEIGHT (1).

### **WARNING**

Do not lift more than one weight at a time. Lifting brackets may break.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

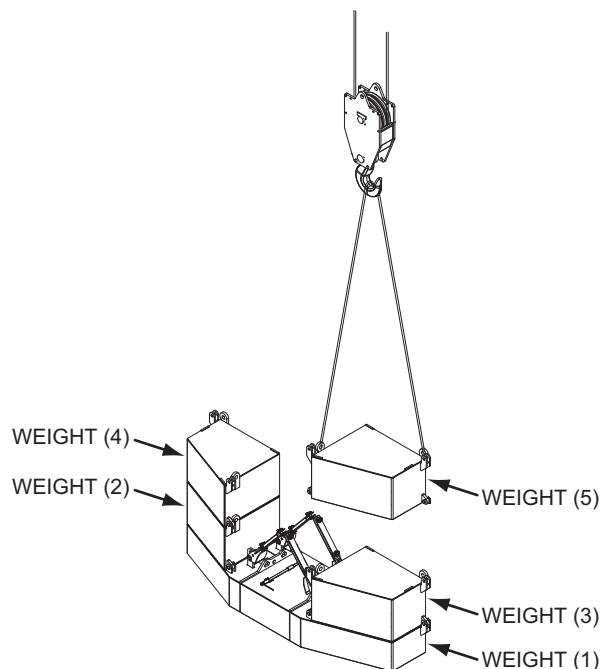


### **DANGER**

Do not allow any person to enter under the lifting load to prevent accident of being crushed.

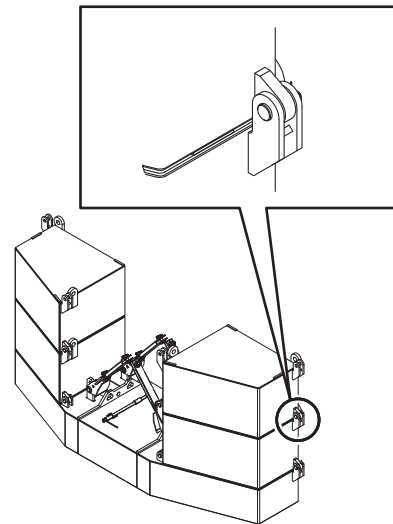
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

- Place right and left WEIGHTS (4), (5) in the same way as WEIGHTS (2), (3).

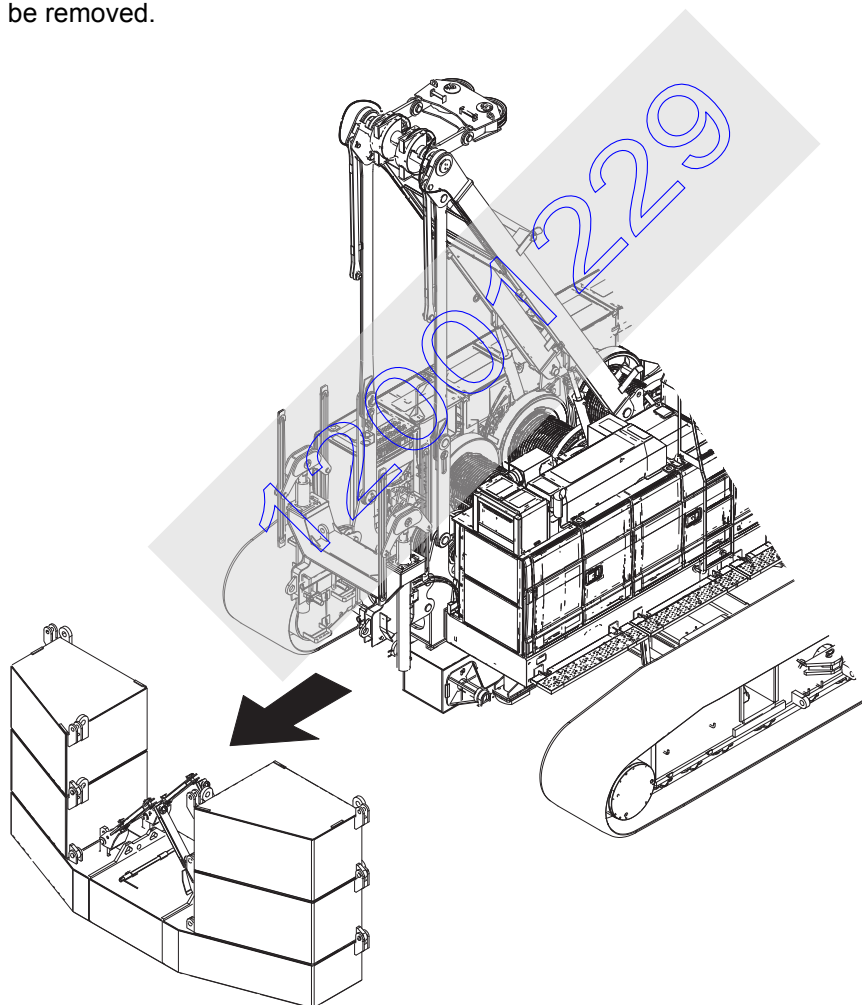


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- Secure right and left counterweights with the connecting pins respectively and retain them with the spring pins. (8 locations)

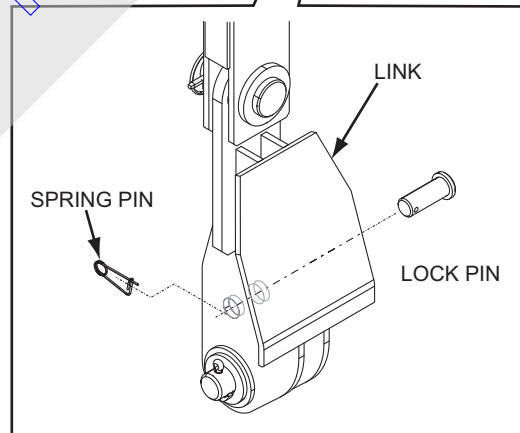
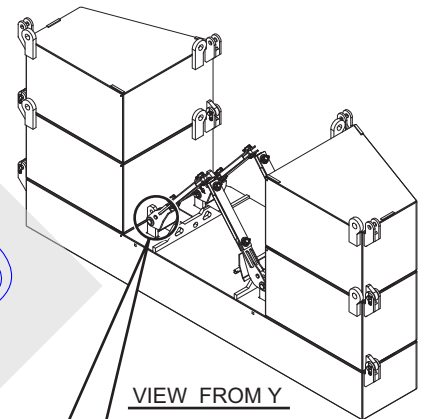
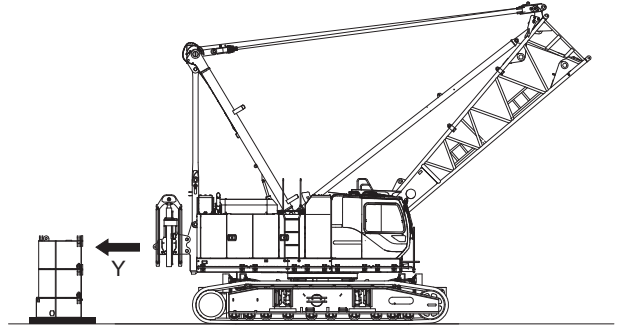


- Move the crane to the position where the counterweight can be removed.



### 4.2.6 SETTING THE COUNTERWEIGHT LINK

1. Lean the links on WEIGHT (1) against the plate on WEIGHT (1) as shown on "VIEW FROM Y" by removing pin and lock pin.



12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

### 4.2.7 INSTALLATION OF COUNTERWEIGHTS TO MACHINE (USING SELF REMOVAL DEVICE)

---

#### CAUTION

Perform the work on firm and level ground. (within 1% of ground inclination).

If the ground inclination exceeds 1%, bending load would be applied on counterweight raising cylinder and cylinder rod may be damaged by bending.

---

#### CAUTION

Perform the work with engine speed lower than 1000 rpm.

If the engine speed exceeds 1000 rpm, cylinder speed would become higher and unexpected force would be applied on the cylinder at start or stop.

This may result cylinder rod damage by bending.

---

#### 1. Installation of counterweight lifting link

- (1) Propel the machine to the position that the counterweight lifting links can be connected to the counterweight lifting section.

#### CAUTION

Slowly propel the machine while paying attention to prevent any interference of the basic machine with the counterweights.

---



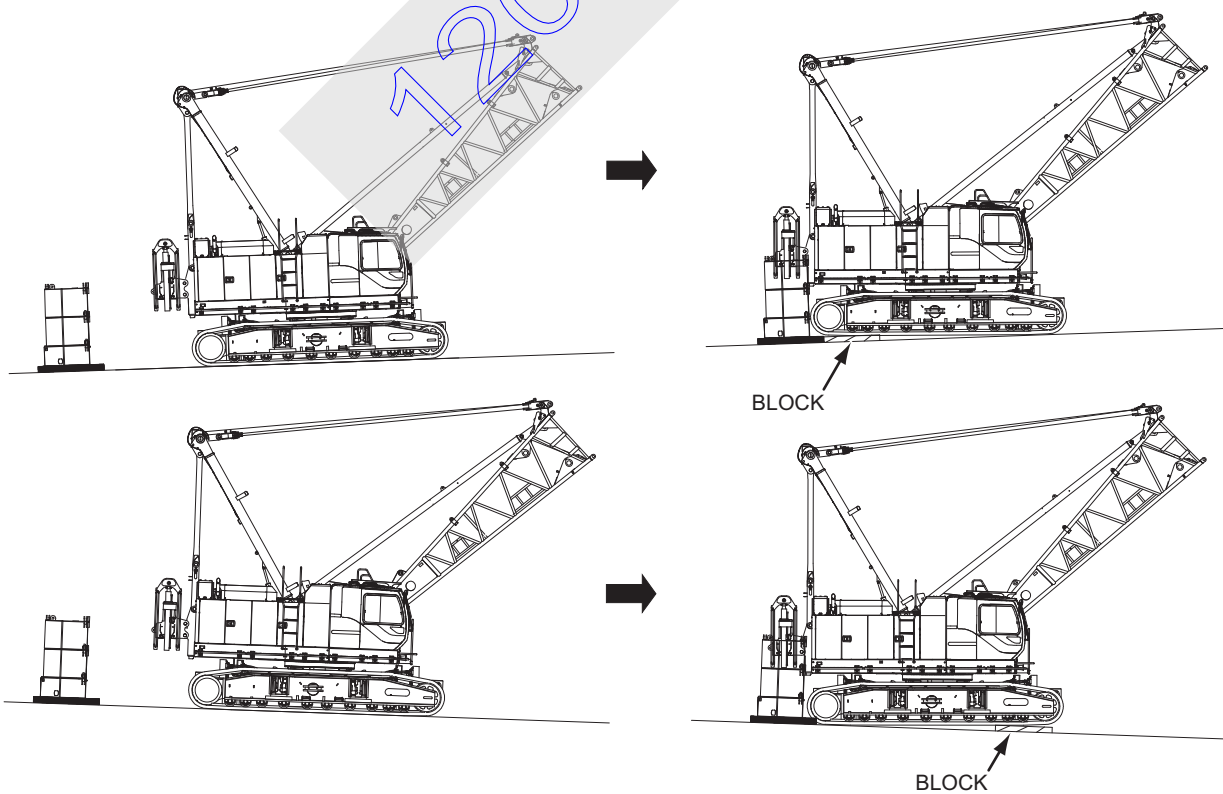
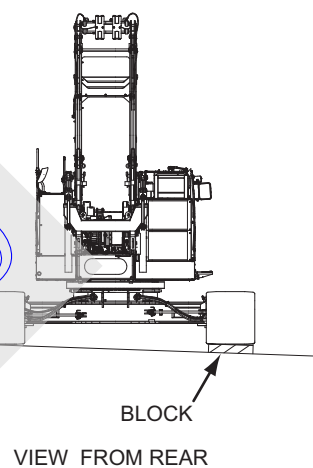
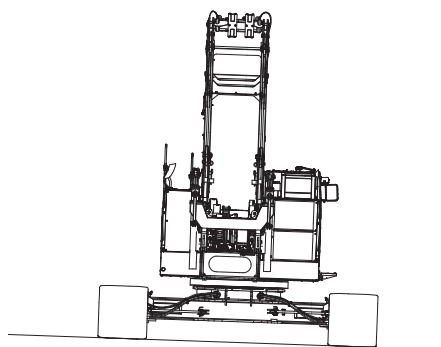
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(2) Set the machine horizontally.

### **WARNING**

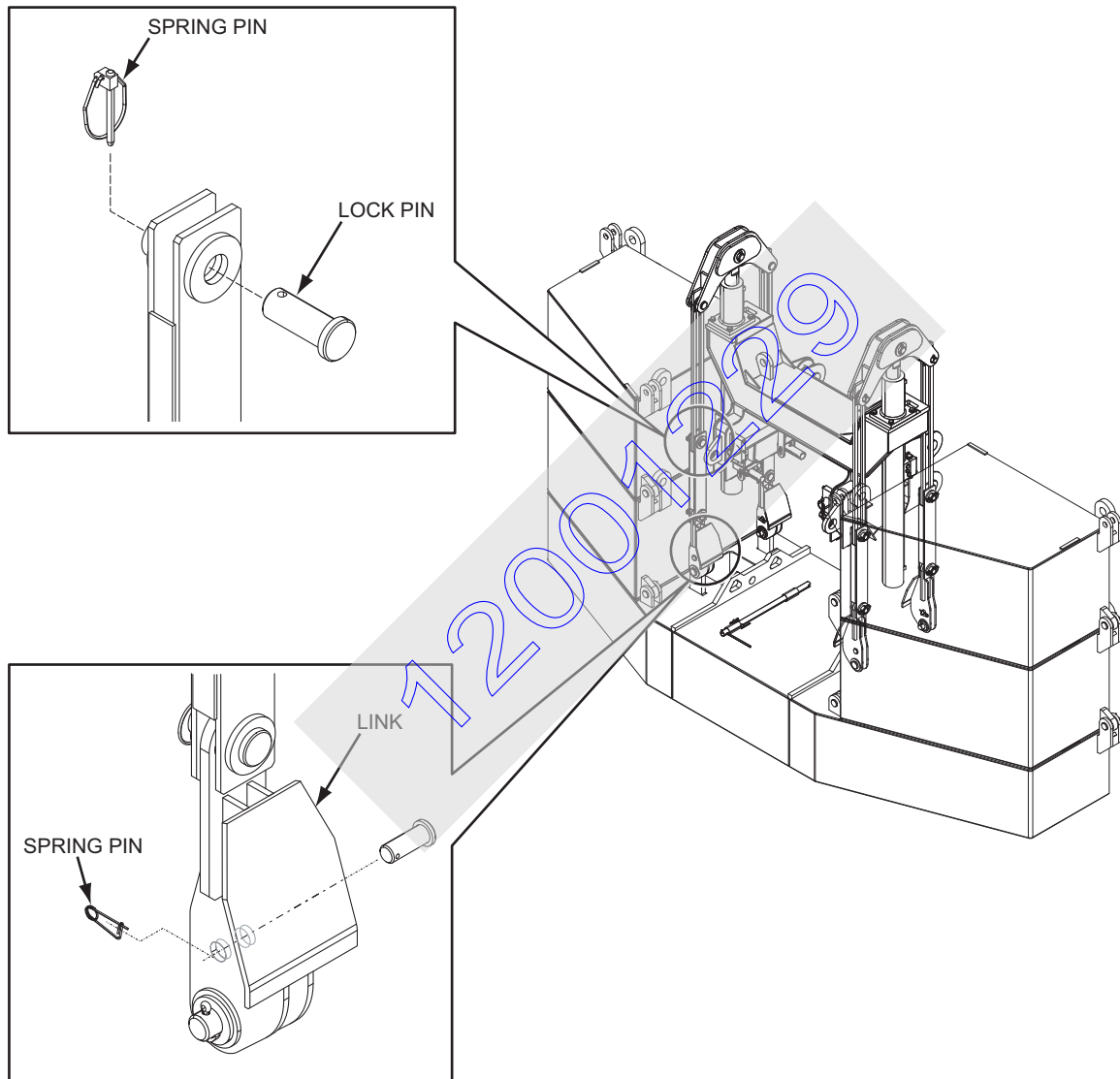
Before installing the counterweight, make sure that the machine is flat. If the machine is inclined, then make the machine flat by wood block etc. Do not support the machine by translifter, when the counterweight is lifted by the counterweight lift cylinder.

Failure to observe this warning may result in serious injury or loss of life.



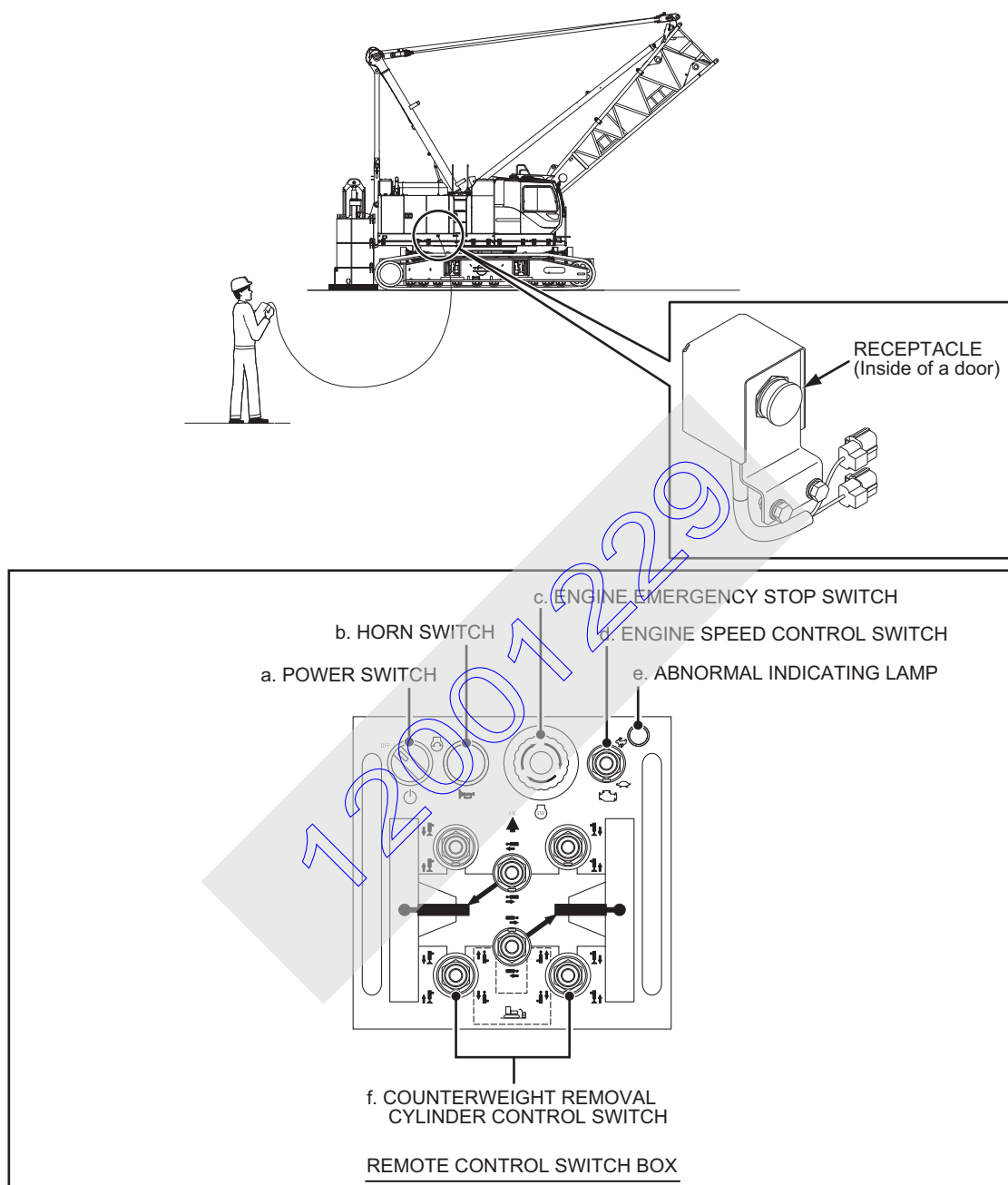
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (3) Install the counterweight lifting links to the counterweight.
- (A) Stand counterweight links by setting pin and lock pin again.
- (B) Connect the links by pin and lock pin as shown in this drawing.



### 2. Installation of counterweights to swing frame

- (1) Open the guard and connect the remote control cable to the receptacle.



### **CAUTION**


Adjust counterweight inclination only with [RAISE] side of cylinder control. If adjusted by one side only with [LOWER] side, load may concentrate on one side cylinder only at [LOWER] stop.

This may result cylinder rod damage by bending.

If counterweight inclination occurs at cylinder retraction, adjust inclination once by [RAISE] side of cylinder control and then retract both (left and right) cylinders at the same time.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### a. Power switch

OFF	Power off. By turning to this position can stop the engine.
ON	Power is supplied to crane portion.
	Engine starts. When hand is released, switch automatically returns to ON position.

### b. Horn switch



Pushing this switch sounds horn.

### c. Engine emergency stop switch

Push this switch to stop engine in emergency case.

Switch stays at pushed position. Turning switch to right or pulling switch returns to original position.

### d. Engine speed control switch





	Engine speed increase
	Engine speed decrease

### e. Abnormal indicating lamp

This lamp turns ON when the engine abnormality occurs. When this lamp is ON, check the detail of abnormality by the cab monitor and take appropriate action.

### f. Counterweight removal cylinder control switch

This switch is used to control the counterweight removal cylinder.

 or 	Cylinder extends (jack up)
 or 	Cylinder retracts (jack down)

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (2) Set the engine speed to approx. 1000 min<sup>-1</sup>.
- (3) Operate the remote control to lift the counterweight.

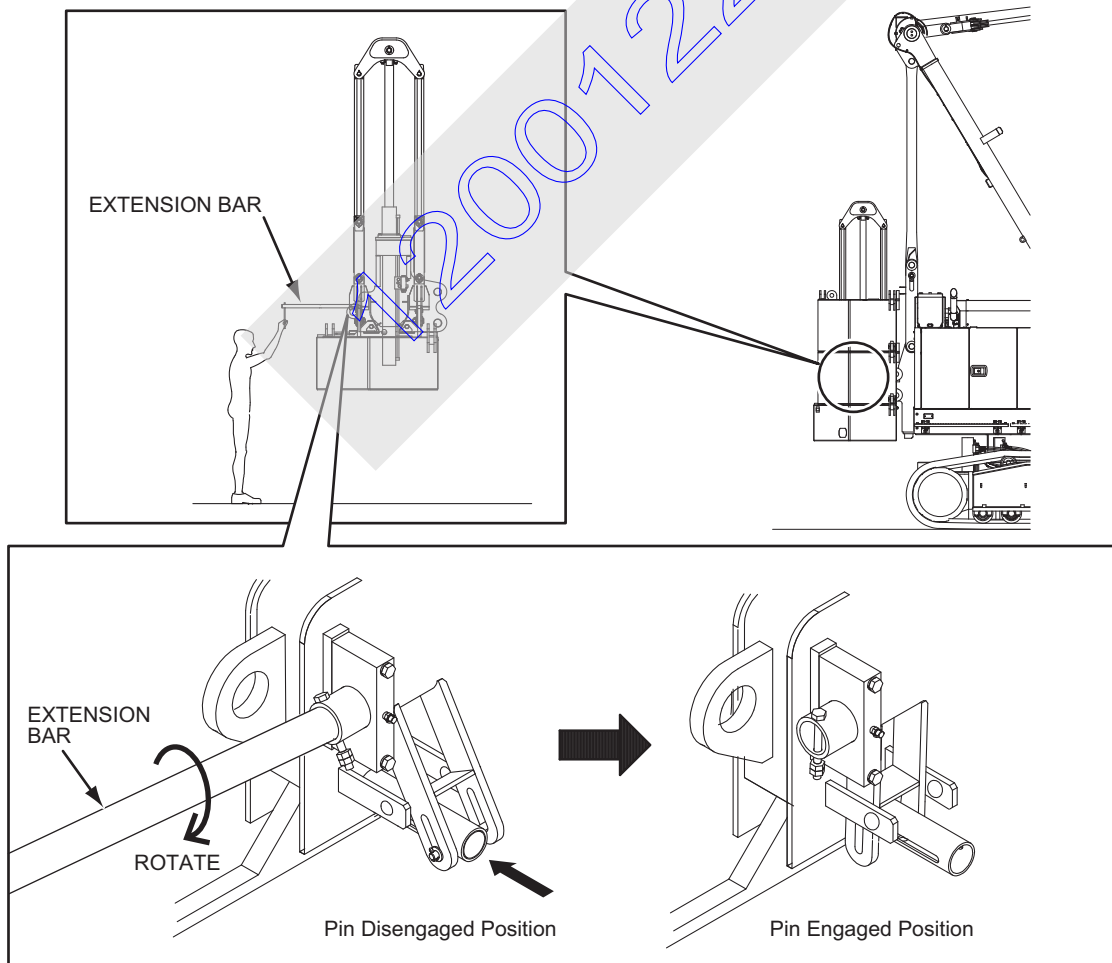
### **⚠ DANGER**

Slowly lift the counterweight.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

### **⚠ DANGER**

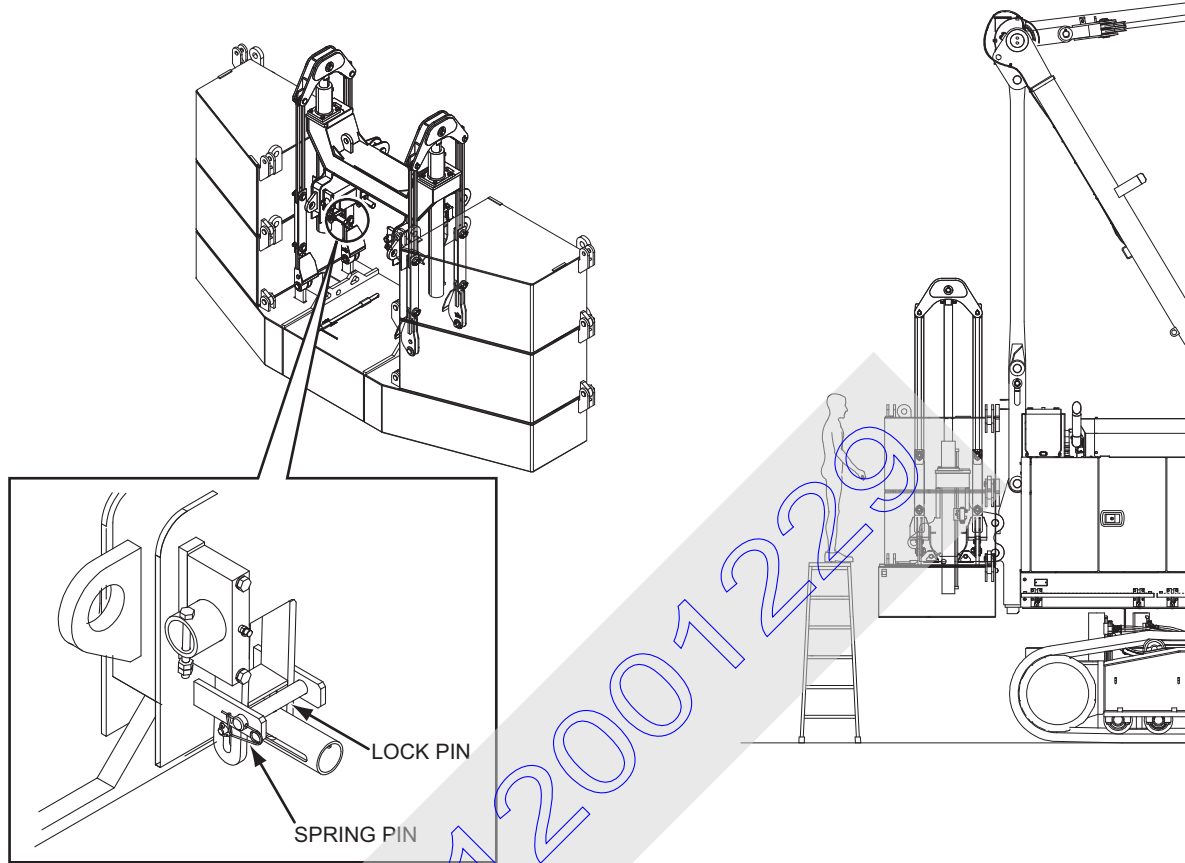
When lifting the counterweights, equalize the motions of the right and the left cylinders to keep horizontality.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

- (4) Set the weight support pin using extension bar.

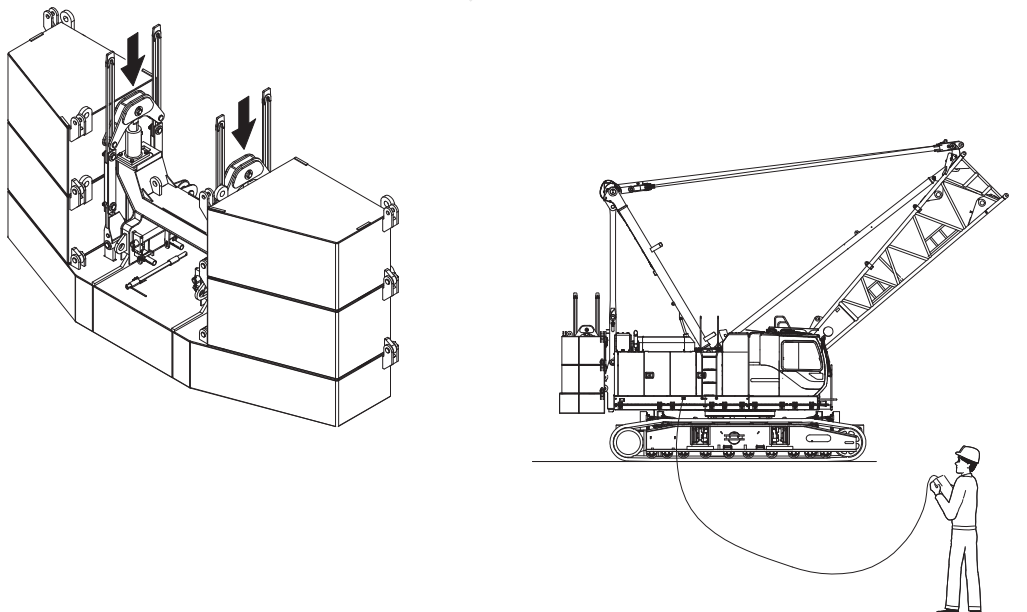


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (5) Retract the cylinder by approx. 50 mm (2").  
Then counterweight unit is supported by pin.
- (6) Go up onto WEIGHT (1) using the ladder.
- (7) Set the lock pin and spring pin.

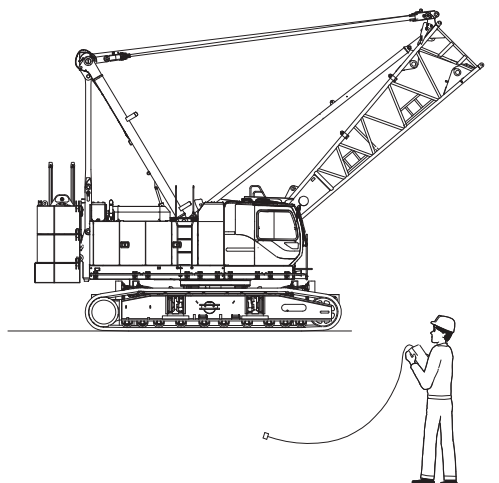


- (8) Fully retract the cylinder.

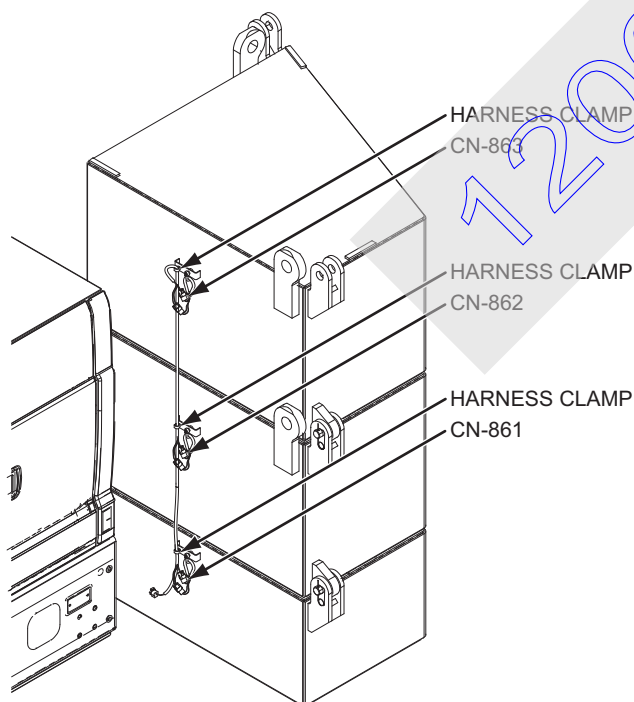


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

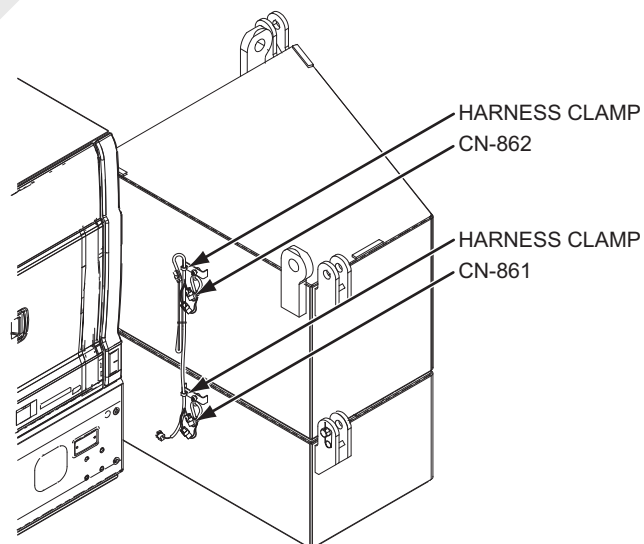
(9) Disconnect and store the remote control cable.



(10) If the counterweight quantity detect unit is equipped, connect the detect harnesses installed on all of the counterweights and the main machinery harness. Connect the cap to cap also. After connection of connectors, secure the harnesses with the clamps.



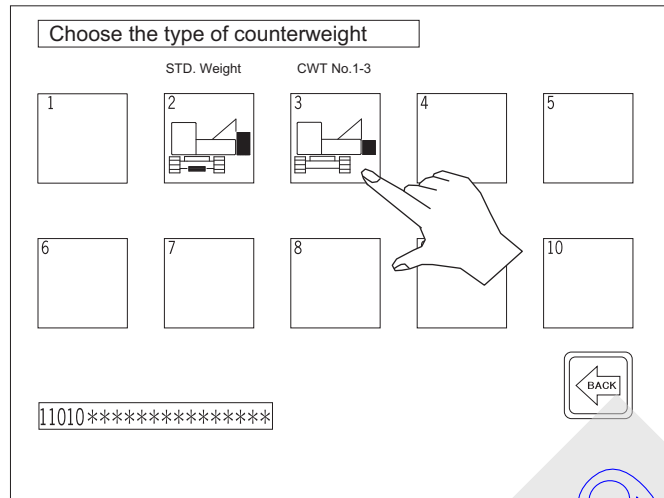
IN CASE OF STANDARD WEIGHT



IN CASE OF WEIGHT REDUCED SPECIFICATION

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

In setting the LMI, ensure to select the item matched with the actual weight condition.  
If unmatched item is selected, error [ML-ME063] would be displayed in the monitor and the buzzer would sound.



### IN CASE OF WEIGHT REDUCED SPECIFICATION

In case of the weight reduced specification, if the counterweight quantity is small, connect the main machinery harness connectors from lower side in order.

12001229



### 4.3 DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

This article explains disassembly of main machinery and loading to trailer for transportation.

---

**⚠ WARNING**

**Disassembly of main machinery would be dangerous if the wrong procedure is taken. Hold the enough pre-work meeting to prevent accident and proceed the work safely. Do not insert finger or hand into any pin holes when aligning the holes or inserting/removing the pins. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---

**⚠ WARNING**

**The main machinery disassembly place may receive a large load. Place strong steel plates on the ground. Provide enough capacity of an assisting crane, sling rope or shackle to be used. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious accident.**

---

1. CHECK PRIOR TO WORK

- Ensure to hold a pre-work meeting for safety.
- Make every worker aware of work contents, procedure and signal.
- Inspect assisting crane or material for their fitness.

2. SECURING PLACE

- Select enough room place with firm and level ground for assembling work.  
Take ground improvement or place steel plates if required.
- Secure setting place for assisting crane and access route of vehicles.

12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

### 3. PREPARATION BEFORE WORK

- Secure the setting place of assisting crane and prepare the required lifting gears, protective materials and tools.
- Secure the required numbers of workers for the work.  
(Crane operators, assistant operators, slinging workers and signal persons)
- Take appropriate action to keep personnel off the work area other than workers during work.

### 4. CAUTIONS DURING TRANSPORTATION WORK

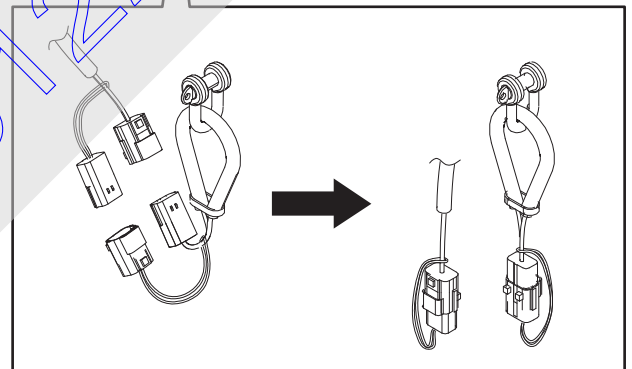
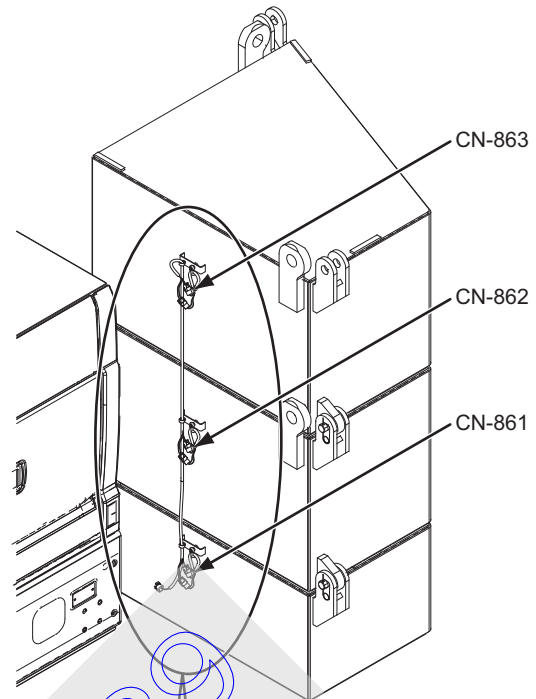
- During transportation work, install the waterproof cap on the cable end of the hook over-hoist preventing device.  
During crane work, wire the over-hoist cable properly and remove the waterproof cap.
- In case of machine transportation on the trailer, the permit issued by the related authority may be required.  
Follow the related regulation regarding the weight and dimension for transportation.  
Refer to "8.2 DIMENSION, WEIGHT OF EACH COMPONENT" for weight, dimension during disassembly.

12001229

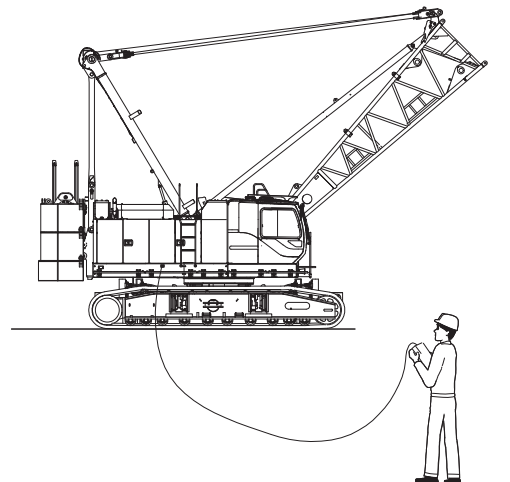
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.3.1 REMOVE THE COUNTERWEIGHTS FROM THE MACHINE (USING SELF REMOVAL DEVICE)

1. If the counterweight quantity detect unit is equipped, disconnect the detect harnesses installed on all of the counterweights from the main machinery harness.  
After disconnection, put the water proof caps on both detect harnesses and the main machinery harnesses.

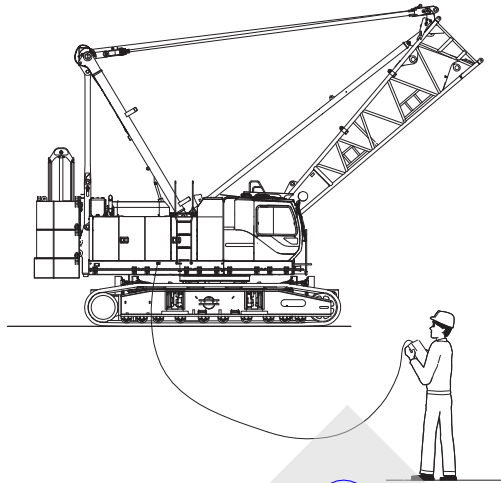
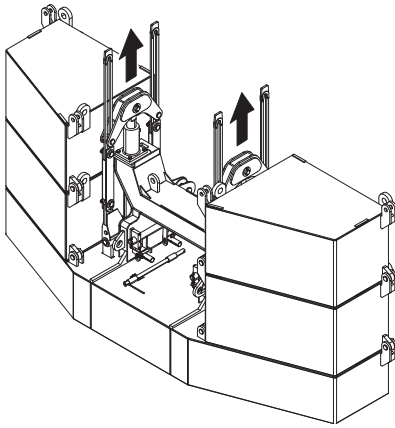


2. Connect the remote control cable to the receptacle located under the right deck.



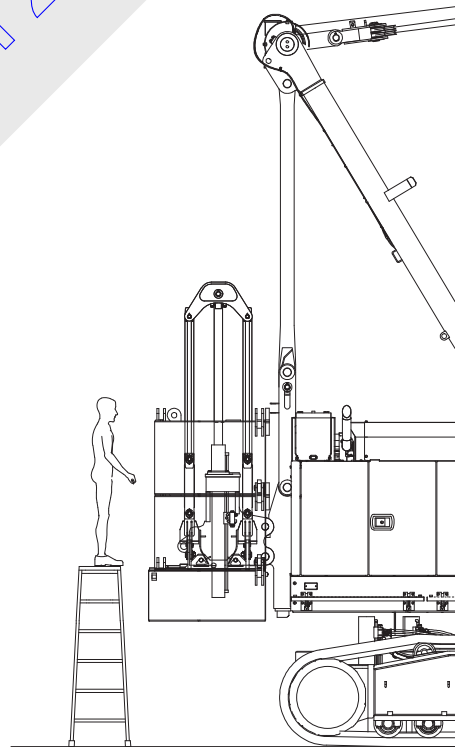
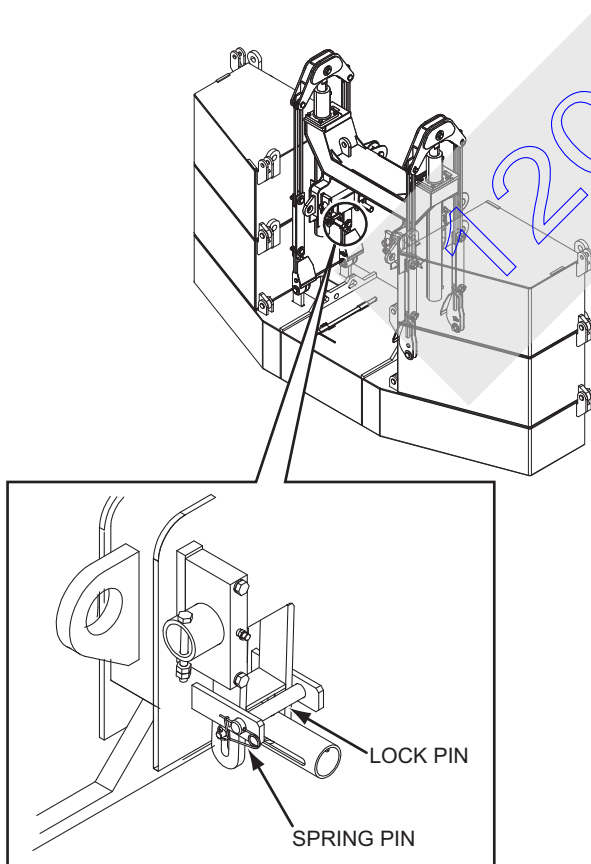
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

3. Fully extend the cylinder.



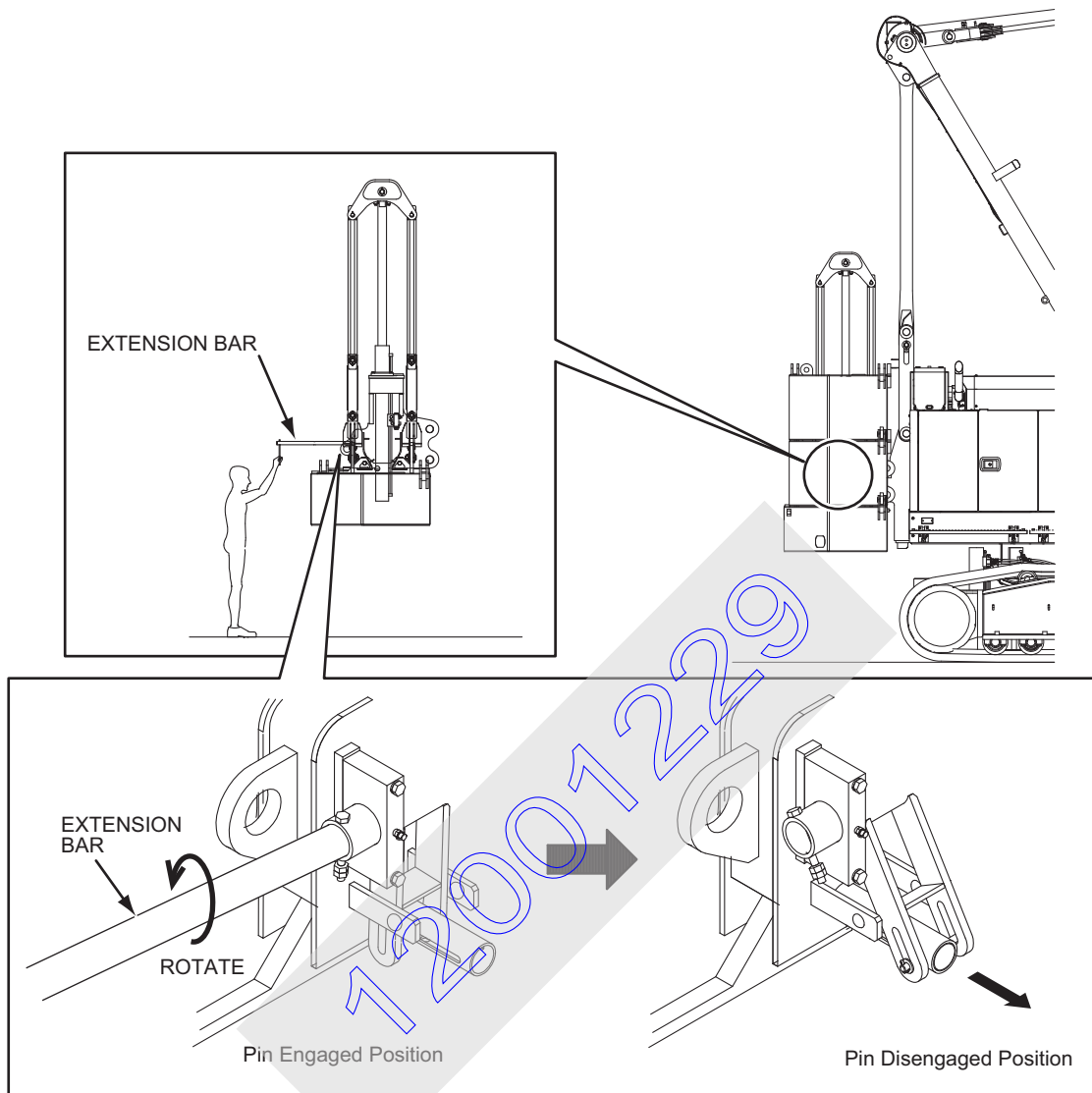
4. Go up onto WEIGHT (1) using the ladder.

5. Pull out the lock pin and spring pin.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

6. Pull out the weight support pin using an extension bar.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

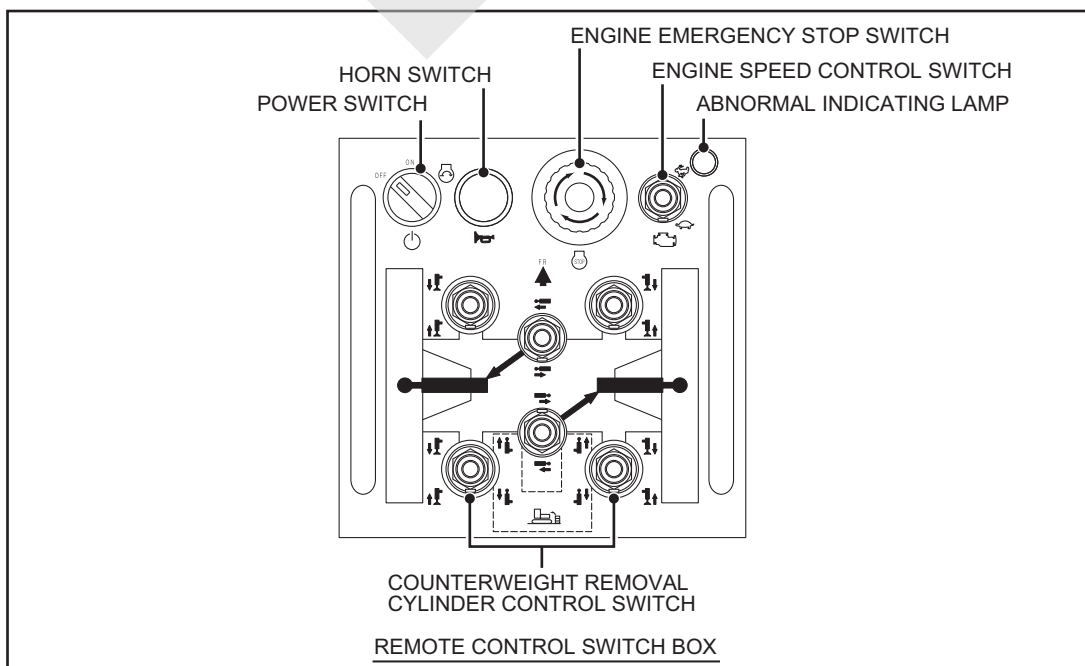
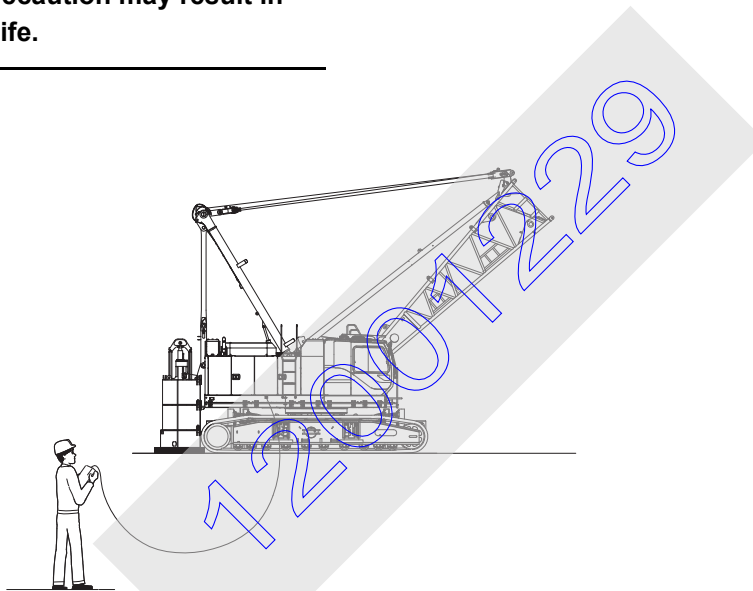
6. Operate the remote control to lower the counterweight until the counterweight is placed on the ground.

### **⚠ DANGER**

Slowly lower the counterweight.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

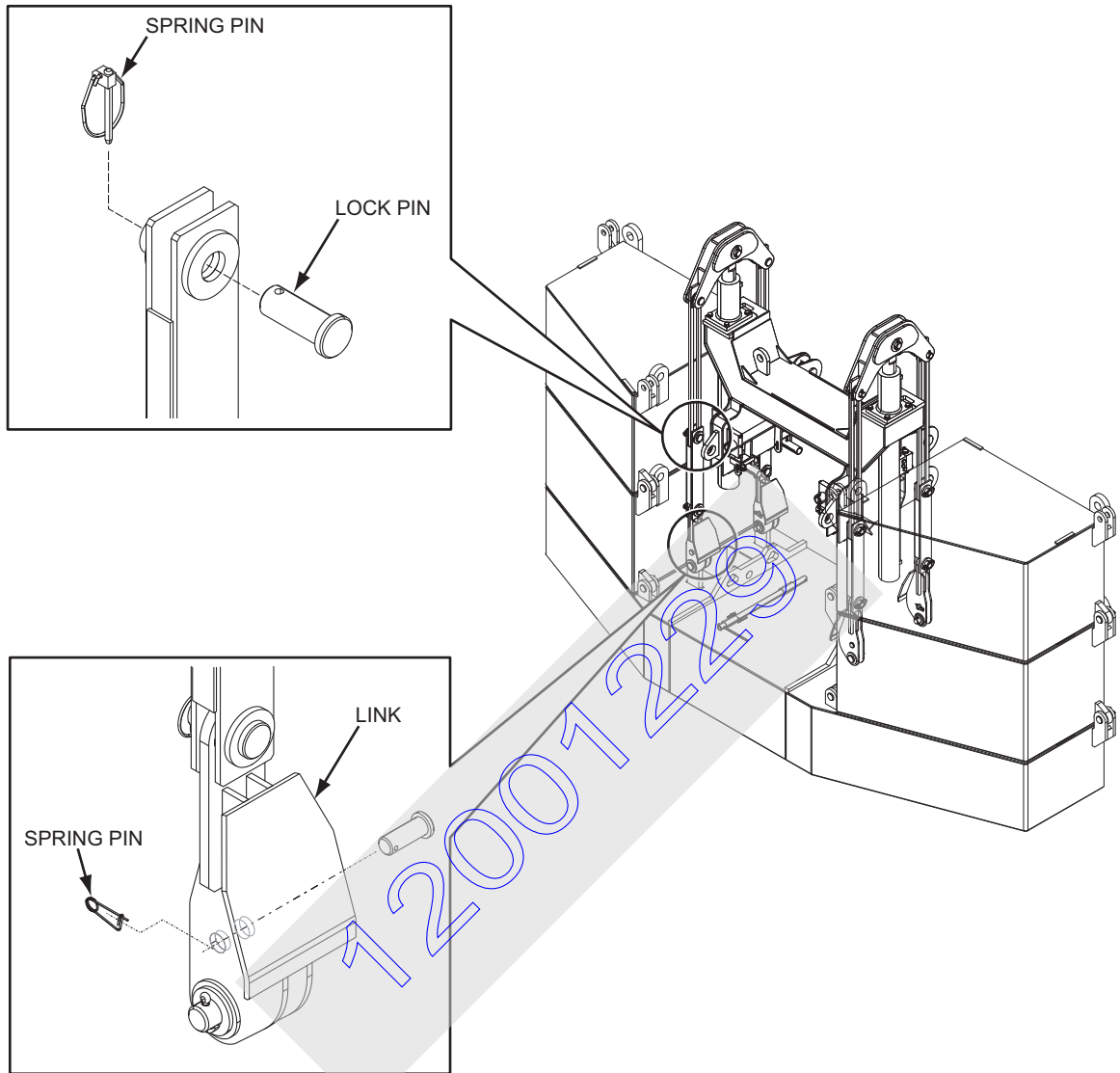
### **⚠ DANGER**

When lowering the counterweights, equalize the motions of the right and the left cylinders to keep horizontality.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

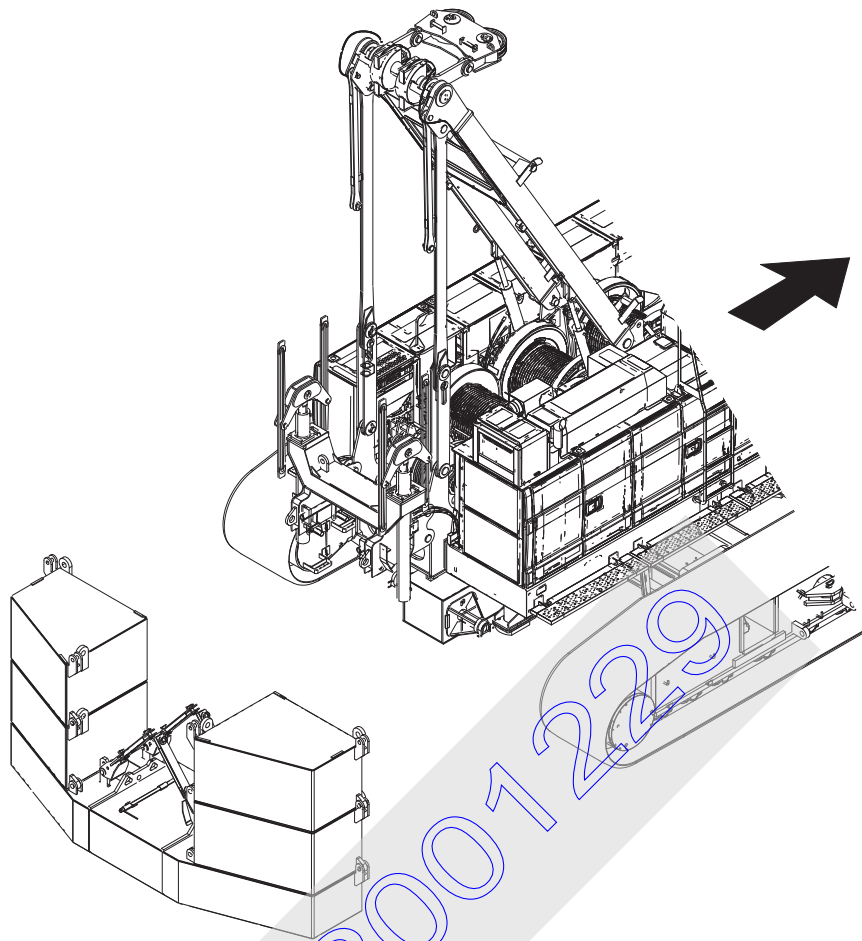
7. Disconnect the links by removing pin and lock pin.



#### 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

8. Travel straight to keep the base machine away from the counterweights.



10. Disconnect the remote control cable from the base machine.



### 4.3.2 DISASSEMBLY OF THE COUNTERWEIGHT (USING SELF REMOVAL DEVICE)

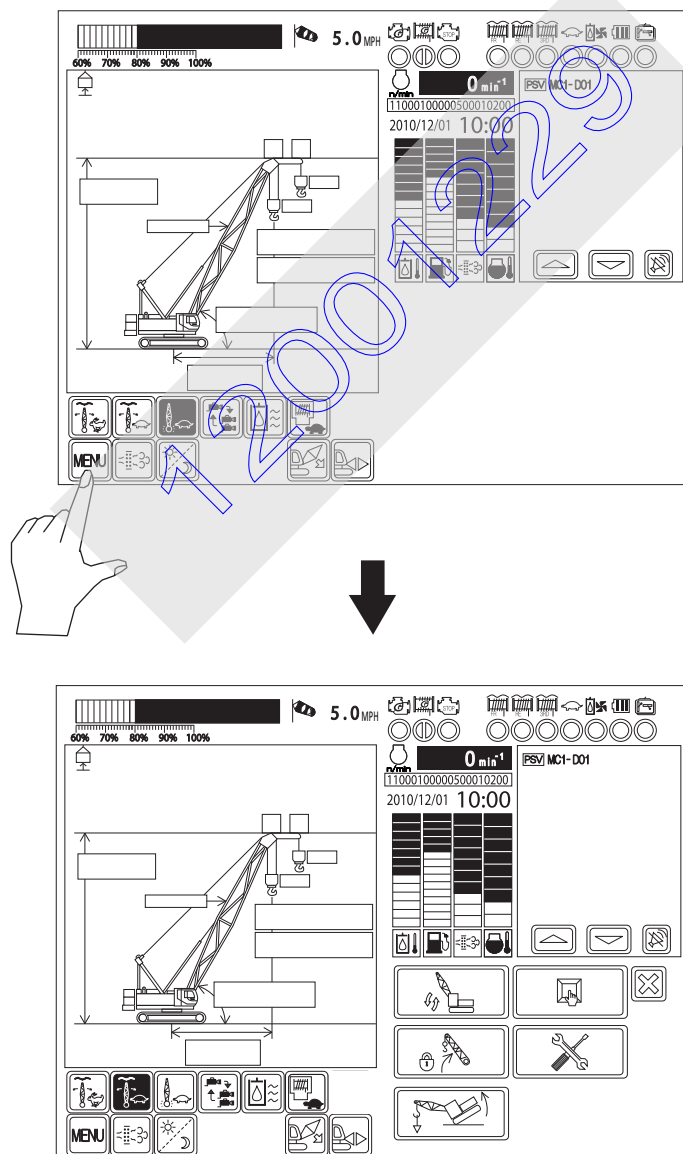
#### 1. SETTING OF LMI

When removing or attaching the counterweights, set up the LMI as shown below.

**Note**

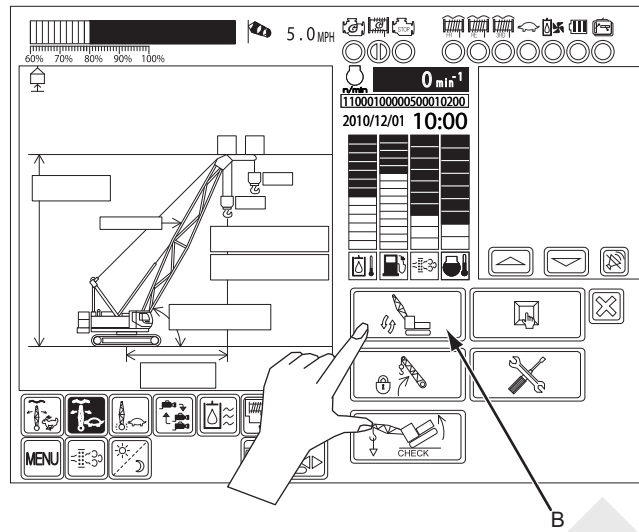
The machine may be stopped by the automatic stop function, leading to impossibility of work, unless you carry out this setting.

- (1) Push [MENU] icon while the main screen is indicated.  
Menu screen is now indicated.

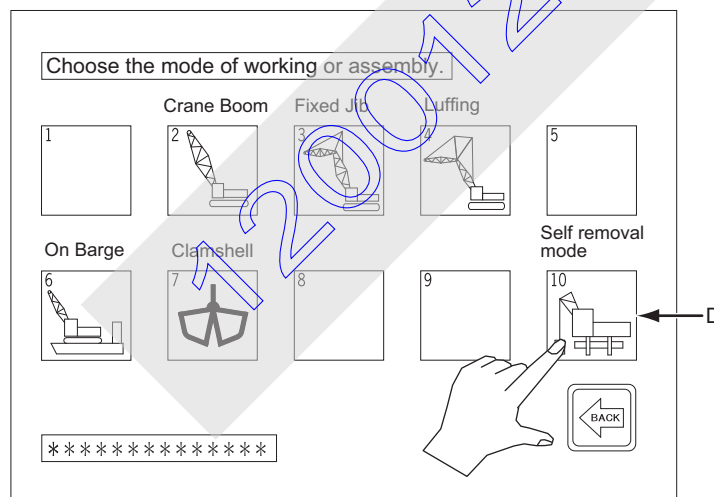


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

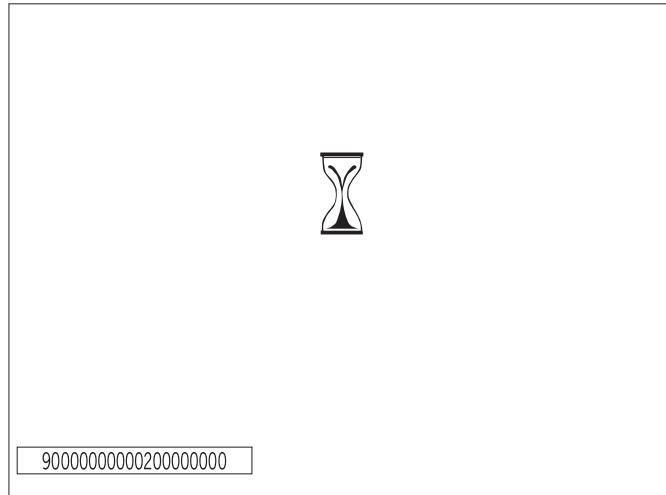
- (2) On the selected screen, match the [B] mark and push [SET] icon.



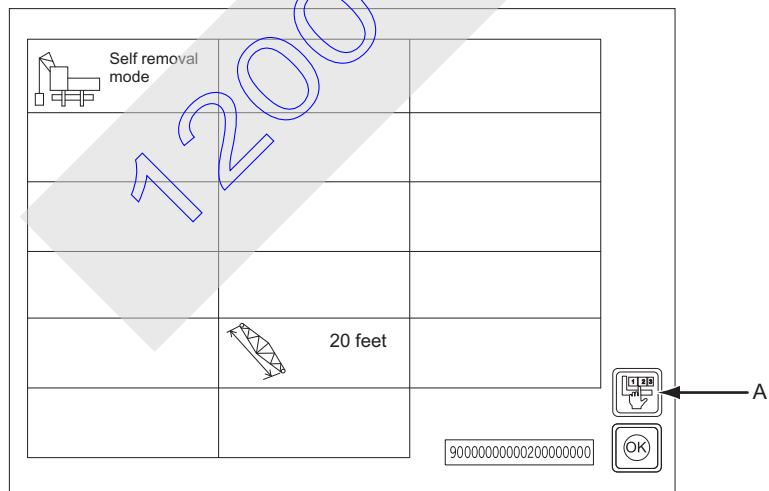
- (3) The mode select screen becomes indicated.  
Select [D].



(4) Data is searched.



(5) When data is searched, result of selection becomes indicated. Check if the selected items are correct. If correct, push [OK]. The screen returns to main screen. If not correct, push [A]. Then screen returns to (1) and start re-input.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- Remove a set of WEIGHTS (4), (5) by disconnecting pins, lock pins and a link.

---

**WARNING**

Do not lift more than three weights at a time. Lifting brackets may break.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

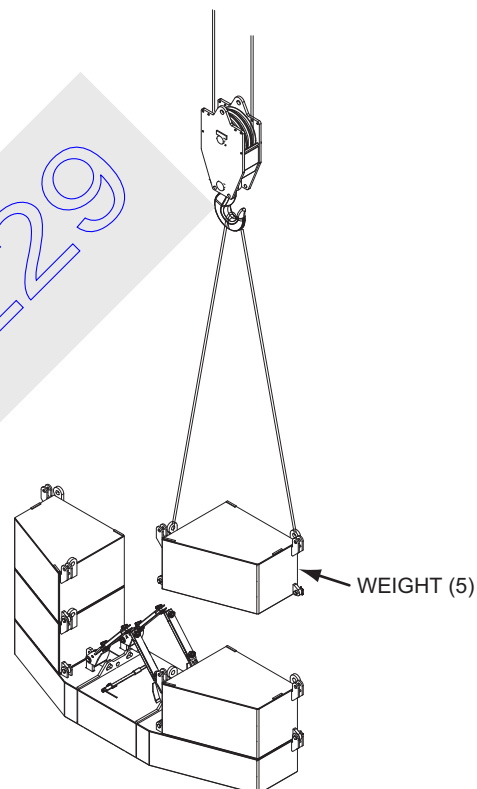
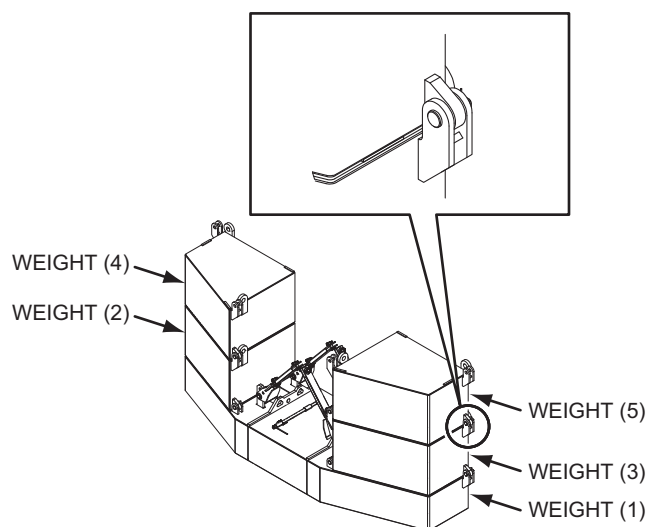
---

**WARNING**

Do not lift more than one weight at a time. Lifting brackets may break.

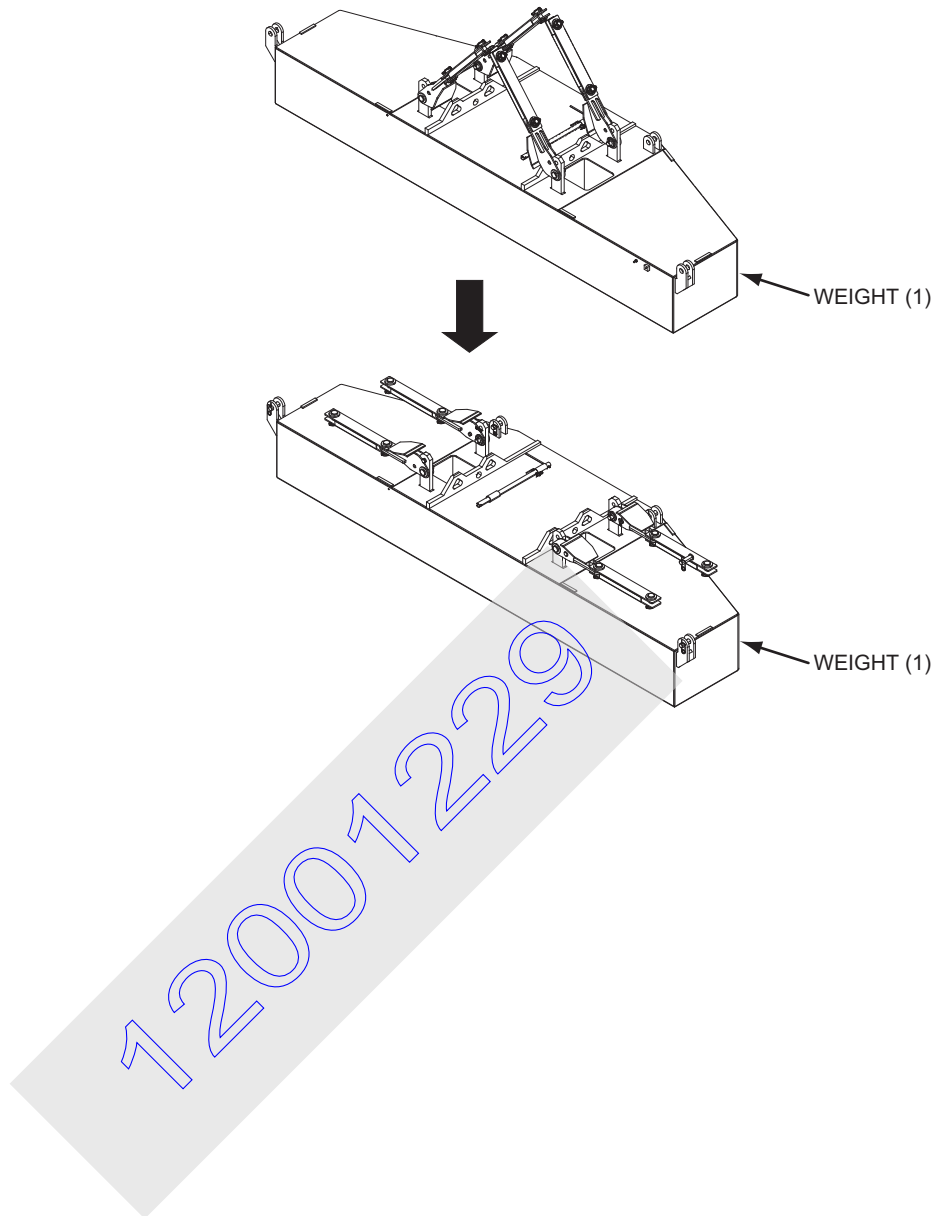
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

---



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

3. Lower the links by removing the pin and lock pin.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.3.3 CARBODY WEIGHT REMOVAL

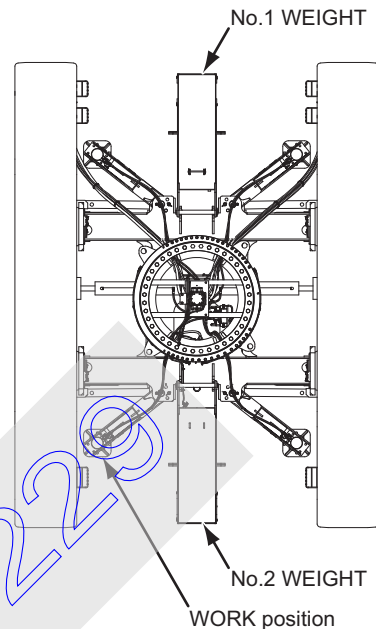
#### EACH WEIGHT

Carbody weight	Weight
No.1 WEIGHT (1)	3.25 t (7,165 lbs)
No.2 WEIGHT (2)	3.25 t (7,165 lbs)

#### 1. PREPARATION FOR CARBODY WEIGHT REMOVAL

Before removing the carbody weight, check that the main machinery is under the following conditions.

- The gantry is in WORK position.
- The main machinery is placed on level and firm ground.
- The crawlers are extended to WORK position.
- The translifter is set to the "WORK" condition and the floats are set to the translifter vertical cylinder side.



#### **WARNING**

**Check the swing and propel stability (P.8-17) before work to prevent overturn of the machinery.**

When removing the carbody weight, prepare the tools as listed below.

#### [TOOL]

- Attached tool set
- Assisting crane (25,000 kg class or larger)  
(In case using an assisting crane)
- Sling wire rope  $\Phi 25$  mm X 8 m (1" X 26' 3") 2 pieces
- Light weight shackle Nominal 10,000 kg 2 pieces

There are two ways to remove the carbody weight. One is to use an assisting crane and the other is to use the machine boom base.

---

** DANGER**

**Do not stand under lifted carbody weight or between carbody weight and the basic machine to avoid accident of drop or being caught. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

---

Lift the carbody weights with the boom base or assisting crane, and remove them by hooking them with the carbody brackets.

---

** WARNING**

**If the assisting crane cannot be prepared, the carbody weights can be installed by setting the nylon sling and the chain block to the lug on the top of boom base. In such a case, be extremely careful of the chain block operation. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

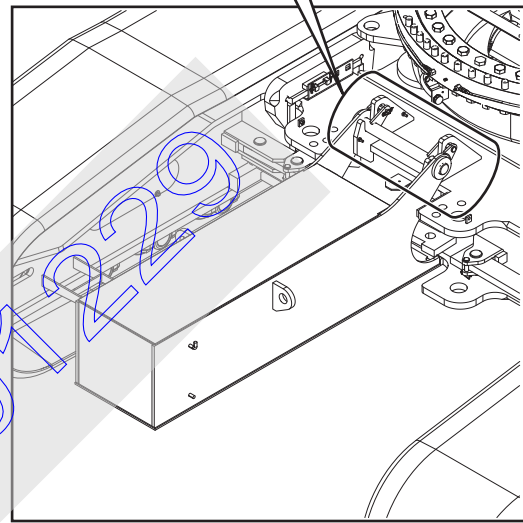
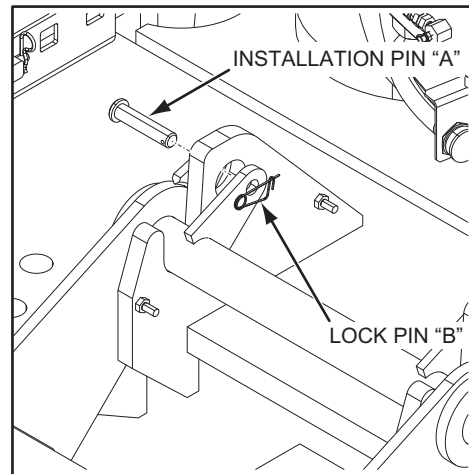
---

12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 2. REMOVAL OF CARBODY WEIGHT

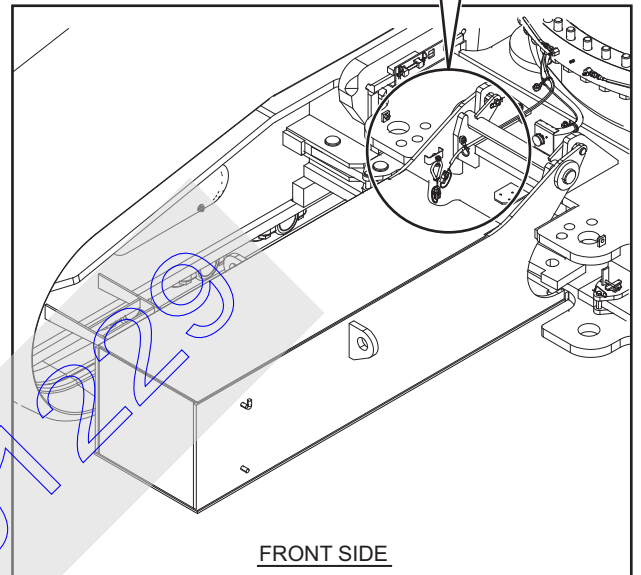
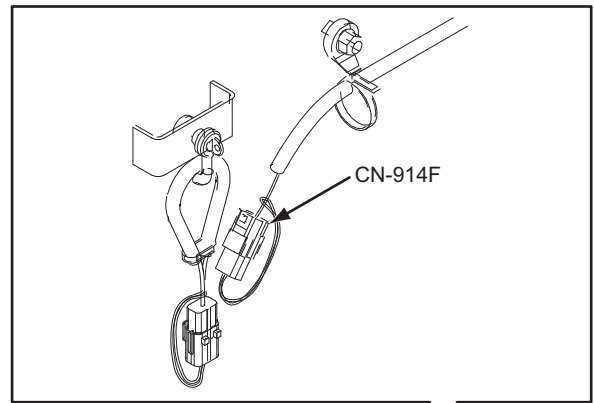
- (1) Take out the lock pin "B" and remove the carbody weight installation pin "A".





## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (2) If the counterweight quantity detect unit is equipped, disconnect the detect harnesses installed on the front side counterweights from the main machinery harness.  
After disconnection, put the water proof caps on both detect harnesses and the main machinery harnesses.



12001229

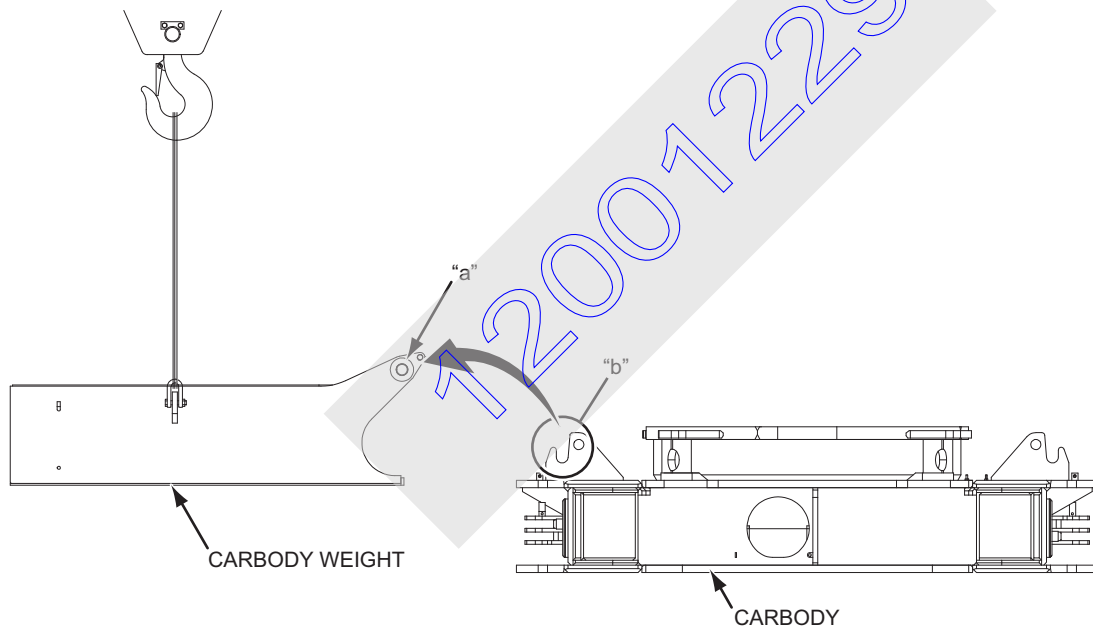
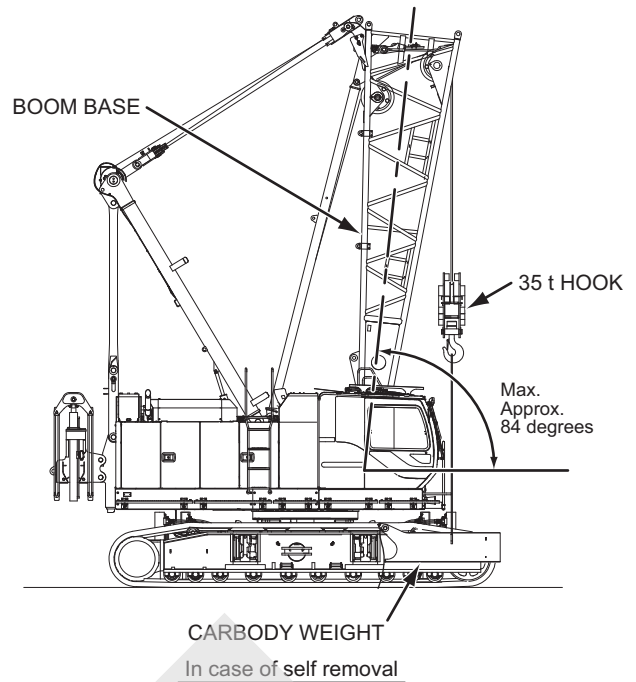
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (3) Lift up No.1 carbody weight using the boom base and assisting crane and disconnect "a" area of carbody weight from "b" area of the carbody.

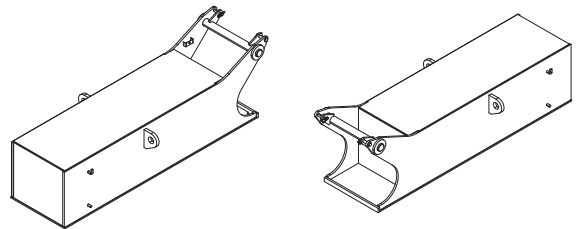
### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not allow any personnel to enter under the lifting carbody weight or between the weight and the main machinery to prevent accident of falling or being caught.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

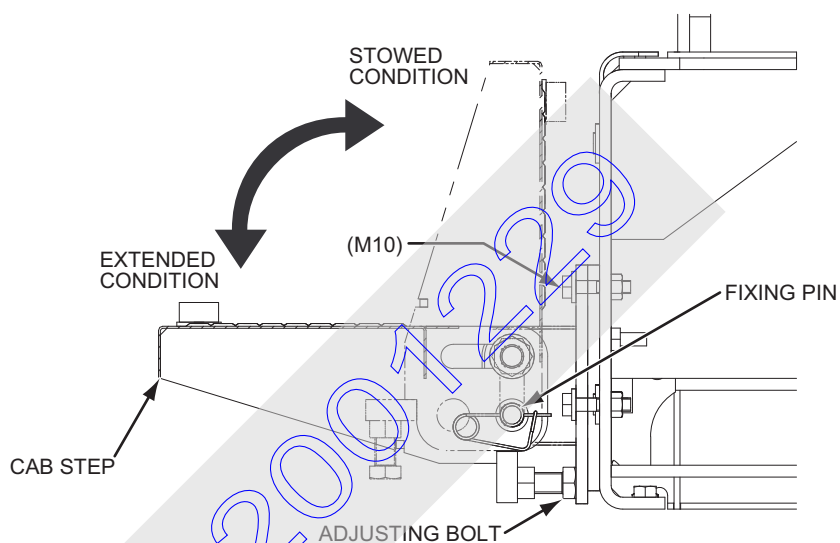
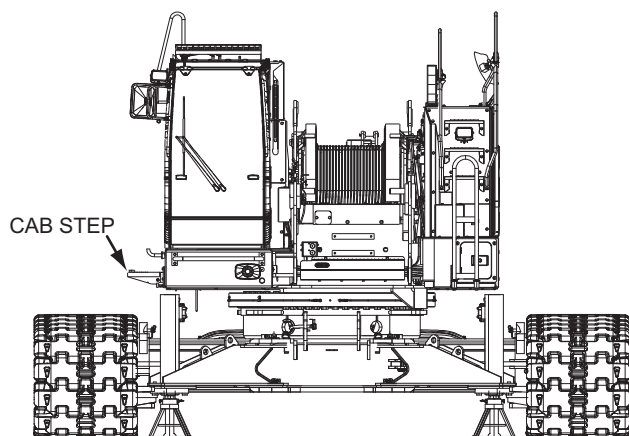


- (4) Remove No.2 carbody weight from the carbody in the same way as No.1 carbody weight.



### 4.3.4 STOWING CAB STEP

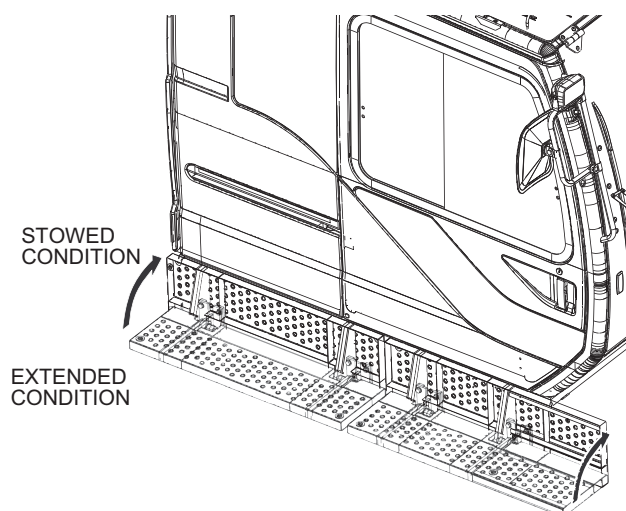
Stow the cab step by the following procedure for transportation.



1. Remove the fixing pin and rotate the cab step to stowing condition.
2. Lower the cab step down and secure one side of each step with the fixing pin.

**Note**

To make transportation width to 2,990 mm (9' 10"), remove all side steps completely.



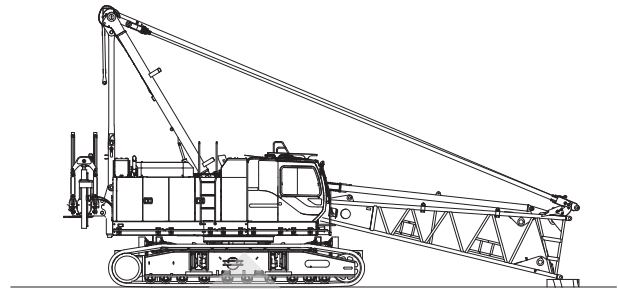
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.3.5 CRAWLER REMOVAL

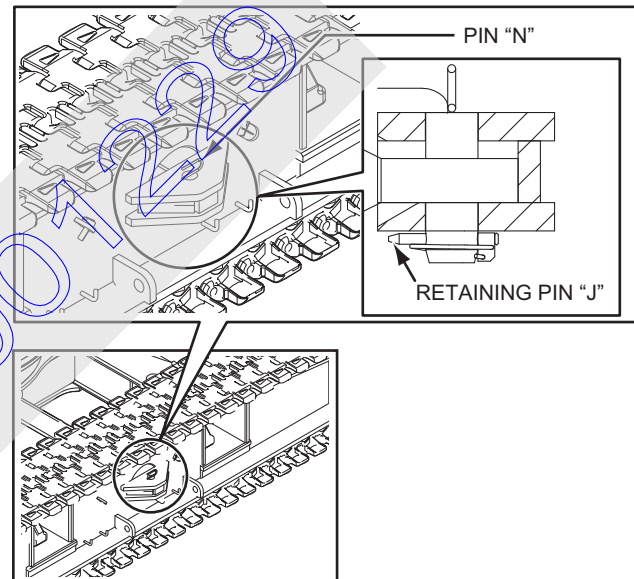
#### 1. PREPARATION FOR CRAWLER REMOVAL [WITH TRANSLIFTER]

There are two ways of the crawler removal, one with self removal or using the boom base of the main machinery and the other using an assisting crane. Perform safer way as required.

- (1) Place the machine on the level and firm ground. The crawlers are in the work (extended) position. The counterweight must be removed.

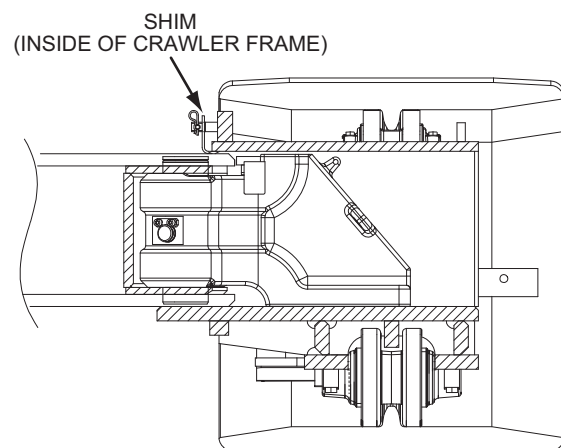


- (2) Remove the retaining pin "J" and pull out the pin "N". Extend the crawler ext/ret cylinder with the remote control switch and connect the crawler frame and the crawler ext/ret cylinder. Secure the crawler and cylinder with the pin "N".



- (3) Swing the upper machinery to make the clearance between the crawler and the axle larger and then take out the adjusting shims.

Face the upper machinery toward propelling direction and set it parallel with the crawler. Engage the swing brake and swing lock for safety. Stop the engine.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (4) When the propel motor cover bolt "R" are taken out, the cover opens.  
Connect the propel hydraulic hoses for both (right and left) at their quick coupler portions.  
(4 pieces on one side)

### **WARNING**

Do not swing when the propel hydraulic hoses are being connected or disconnected to prevent accident of being caught.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

### **DANGER**

After the quick coupler is disconnected, wipe off the dust or dirt and put the attached dust caps to prevent them from getting dirty.

Disconnection of quick coupler must be done after the engine is stopped and inner pressure becomes lowered.

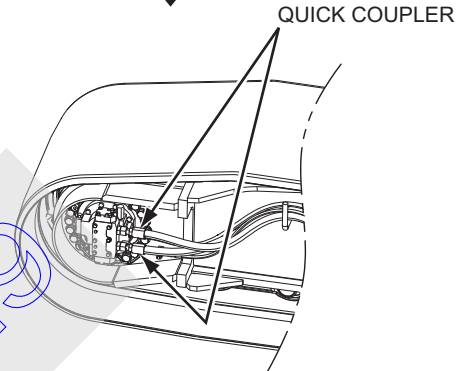
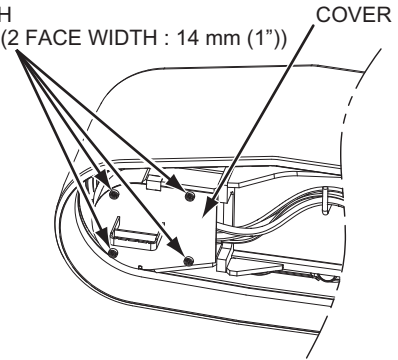
If the piping pressure is remained, disconnection would be impossible or oil would jump out.

When the coupler ring is stiff and can not move, tap on the coupler lightly with wooden hammer.

Do not hit hard with the steel hammer.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

BOLT "R" (M16)  
HEX.WRENCH  
ZT22A14000 (2 FACE WIDTH : 14 mm (1"))

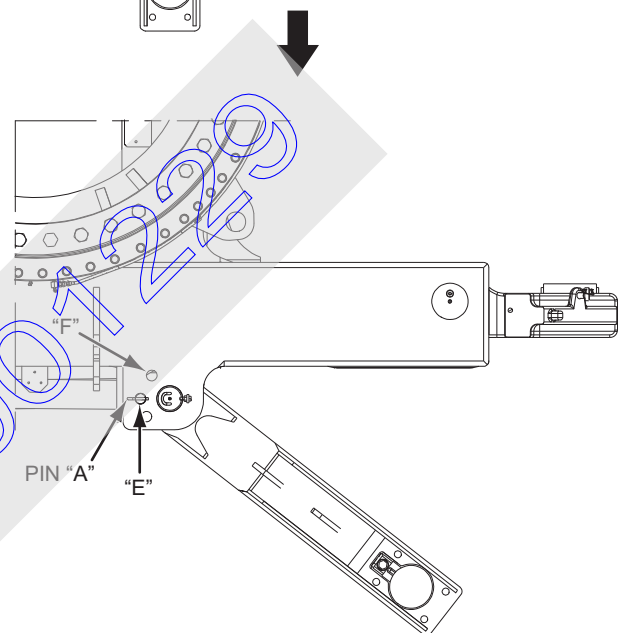
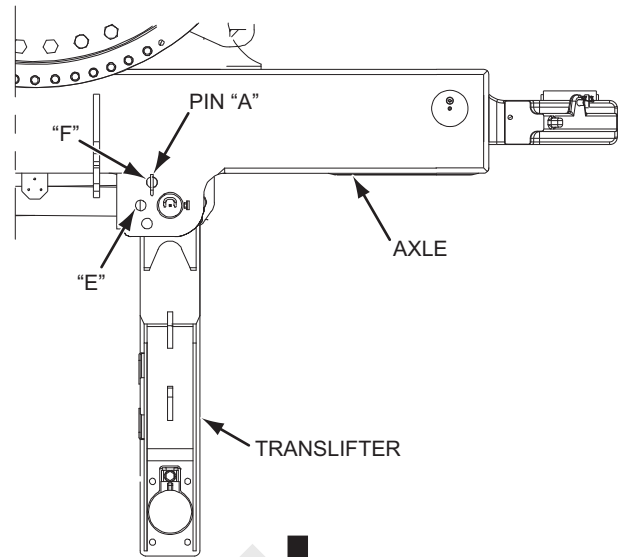


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(5) Translifter is in WORK position.

Pull out the pin "A" securing the translifter at "F" area.

Align the translifter fixing hole with "E" and secure with pin "A".



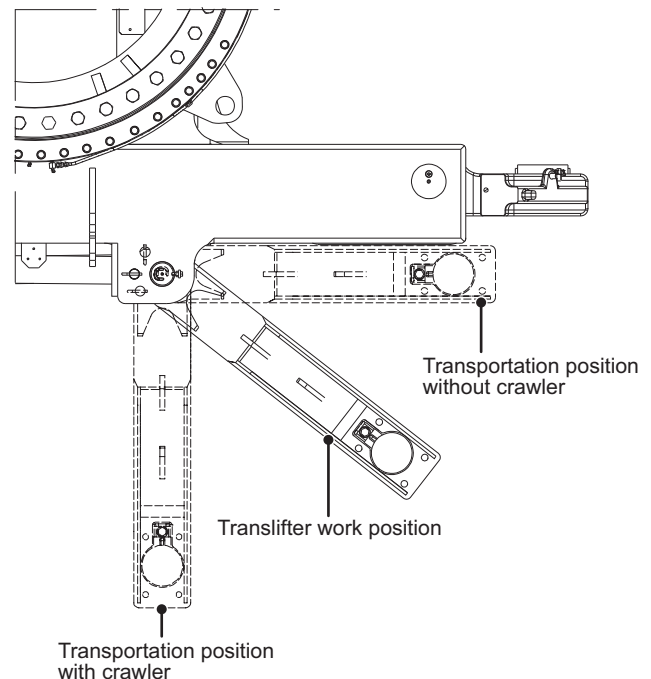
### **⚠ DANGER**

Crane work prohibited at "transportation position with crawler".

If the machine swings at this position, the machine would overturn to rear side.

Ensure to set the machine to "translifter work position".

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

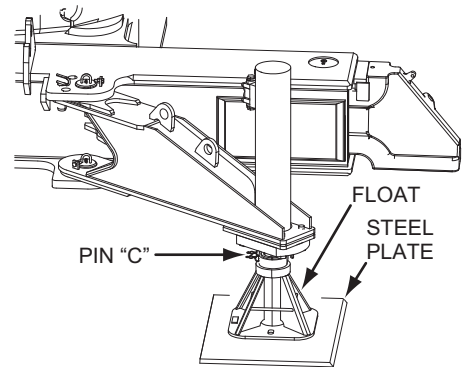
- (6) Install the float to the vertical cylinder and fix with the pin "C".  
Place the steel plates under the float for safety.

---

**CAUTION**

The float weight approx. 30 kg (66 lbs).  
Take two persons to install a float to prevent waist injuries.

---



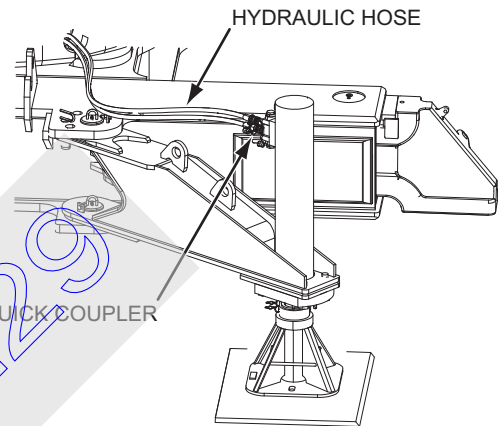
- (7) Ensure that the hydraulic hoses are connected to the vertical cylinders.  
(Hydraulic hose : 4 locations 8 pieces)

---

**CAUTION**

Check that the quick coupler does not disconnect when pulled.

---



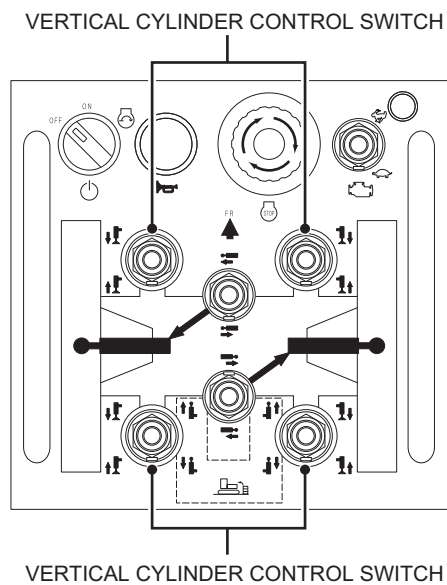
12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

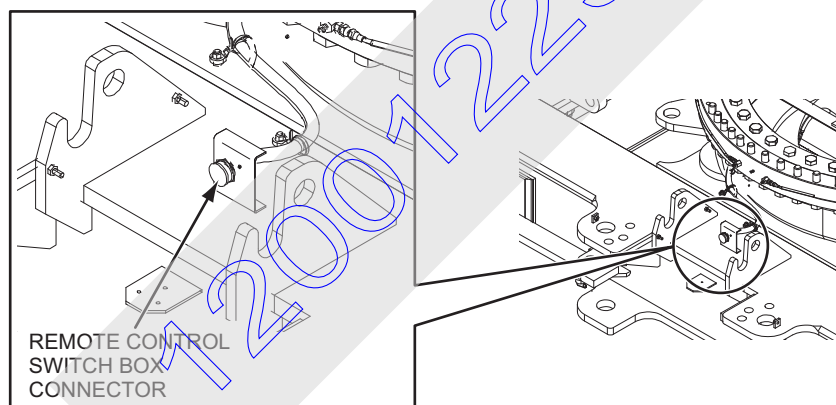
### (8) HANDLING THE VERTICAL CYLINDER

#### CONTROL SWITCH

There are 4 vertical cylinder control switches.  
Pushing the switch extends the cylinder and pulling the switch retracts the cylinder.  
The switch returns to neutral when hand is freed.



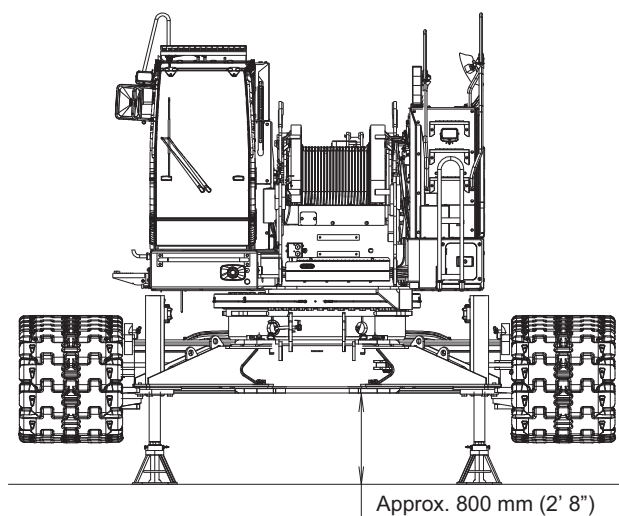
#### REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH BOX



- (9) Start the engine and set the speed to LOW (approx. 800 min<sup>-1</sup>).

By handling the vertical cylinder control switch, lift up the main machinery slightly to make a slight clearance between the shoes and roller and then make sure that there is no abnormality on the ground.

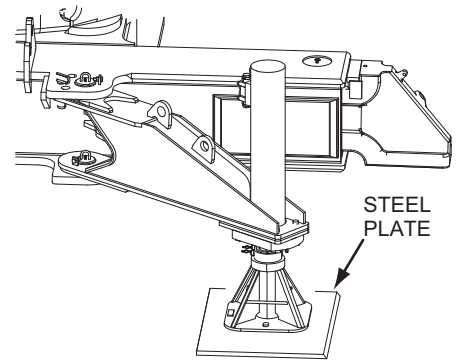
Lift up the main machinery further until the clearance between the lower surface of the main machinery and the ground becomes approx. 800 mm (2' 8").





## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- When handling the vertical cylinders, keep watching the level gauge to hold the main machinery in horizontal position.
- The translifter vertical cylinder's counterforce may become 35 t (77,160 lbs) per one cylinder. Ensure to check for ground strength. Place the steel plate under the float for safety.



---

**WARNING**

Ensure to check for abnormality on the vertical cylinder contacting ground to prevent overturn of main machinery.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---

---

**WARNING**

Ensure to engage the swing brake and the swing lock when handling the translifter to prevent overturn of the main machinery.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

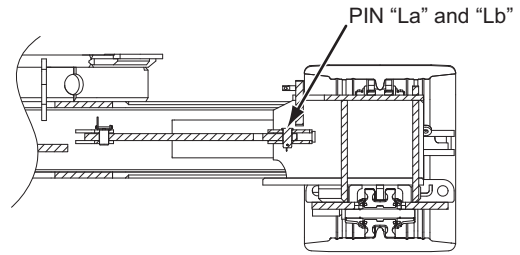
---

12001229

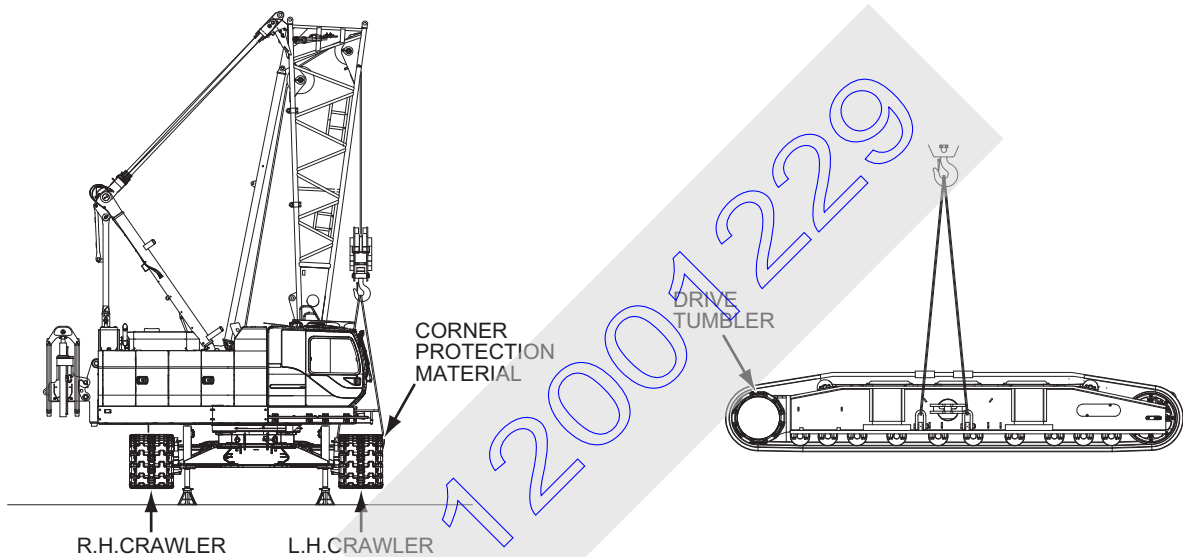
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 2. CRAWLER REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the pin "La", "Lb" and disconnect the crawler from the link.



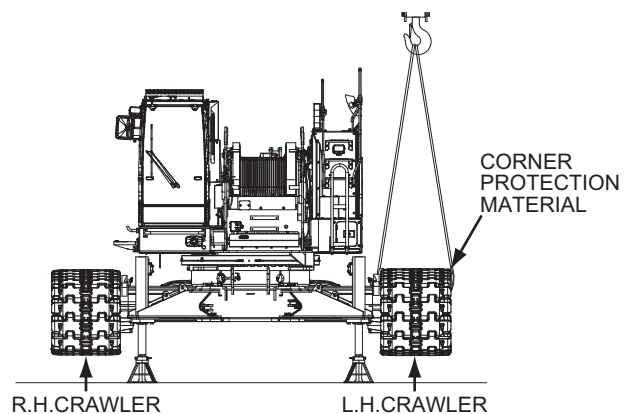
- (2) Hold the left crawler, use corner protection materials so that wire does not bite into shoes. Refer to P.8-7 [WEIGHT AND DIMENSION IN DISASSEMBLY] as for one side crawler weight.



In case of using an assisting crane, remove with the procedure as shown right.

#### **CAUTION**

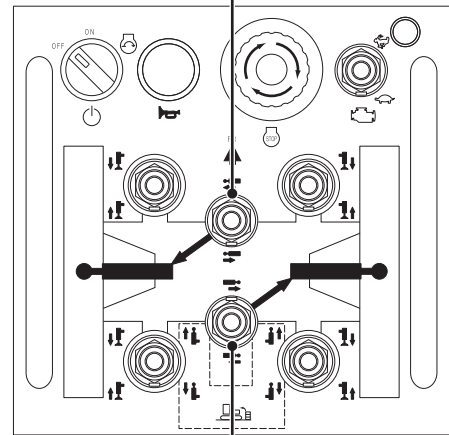
When taking out the crawler, control the lifting crawler position with the assisting crane to prevent the wire rope interfering with the deck.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

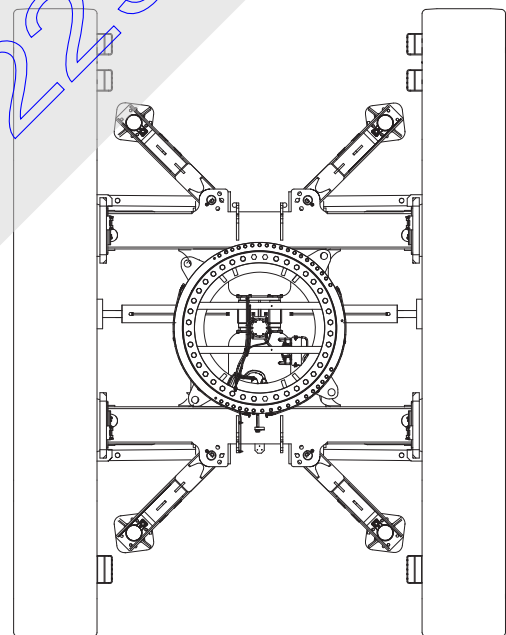
- (3) While the crawler is being held, extend the left side crawler toward outer side by controlling the left crawler extend control switch of the remote controller.

CRAWLER EXTEND CONTROL SWITCH



CRAWLER EXTEND CONTROL SWITCH

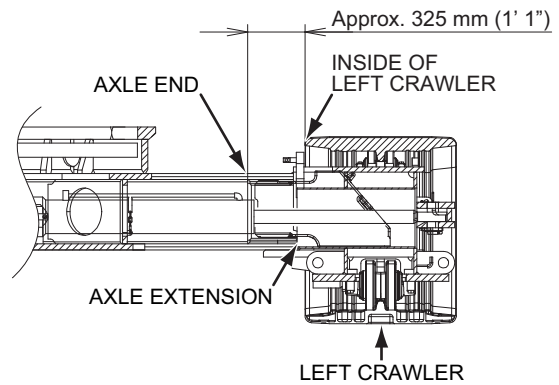
REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH BOX



12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (4) Push out the crawler until the distance between the crawler end and the axle end of the lower machinery becomes approx. 325 mm (1' 1") (approx. 1/3 of the axle extension).



### **⚠ DANGER**

If the crawler comes out of the axle extension, the crawler would fall off.

Ensure that the axle extension is surely supported with the crawler.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

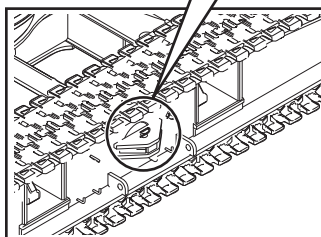
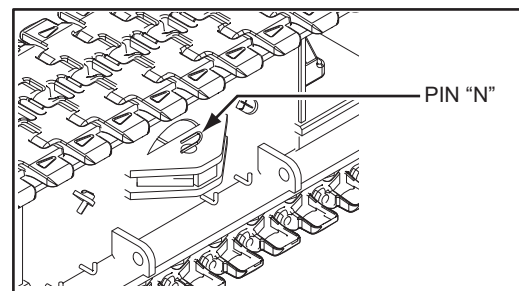
### **⚠ CAUTION**

When pushing out the crawler with the extending cylinder, lift up the main machinery with the transifter and keep it in horizontal position and push out so that the crawler side face keeps parallel with the main machinery.

If the crawler inclines to left or right, adjust the crawler position to parallel by handling the extension cylinder in and out or vertical cylinder up or down.

If the crawler is pushed out forcibly with the extending cylinder while being inclined, the crawler may be damaged.

- (5) Remove the pin "N" which connects the crawler frame and crawler extending cylinder.



### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not allow any personnel to enter between the crawler and the main machinery to prevent accident of being caught.

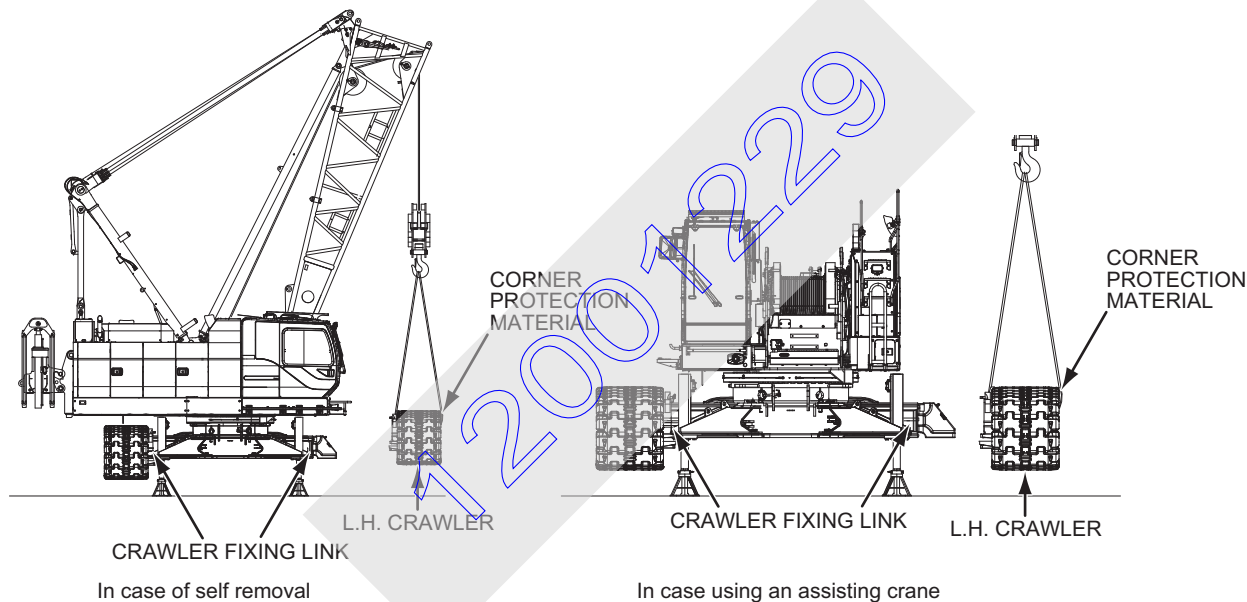
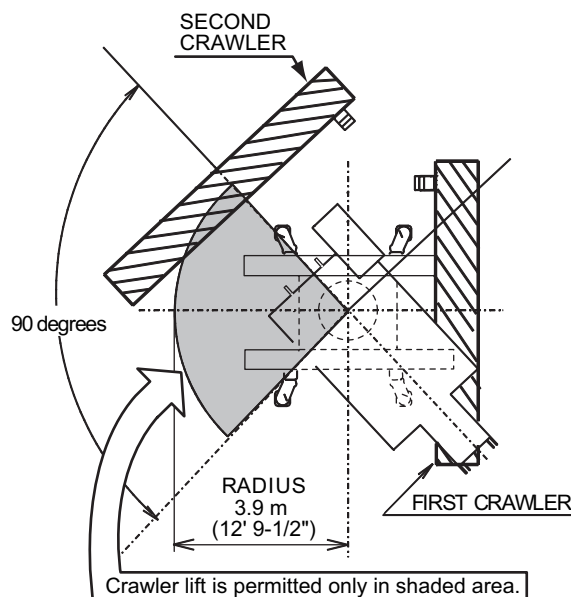
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (6) Lift up the left hand crawler with the boom base or assisting crane and remove it from the axle extension.

### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not swing over center of transflifter cylinder (90 degrees) while lifting the second crawler.  
Do not exceed 3.9 m (12' 9-1/2") load radius.  
Other wise the machine may tip over.  
Lift is permitted only in shaded area.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



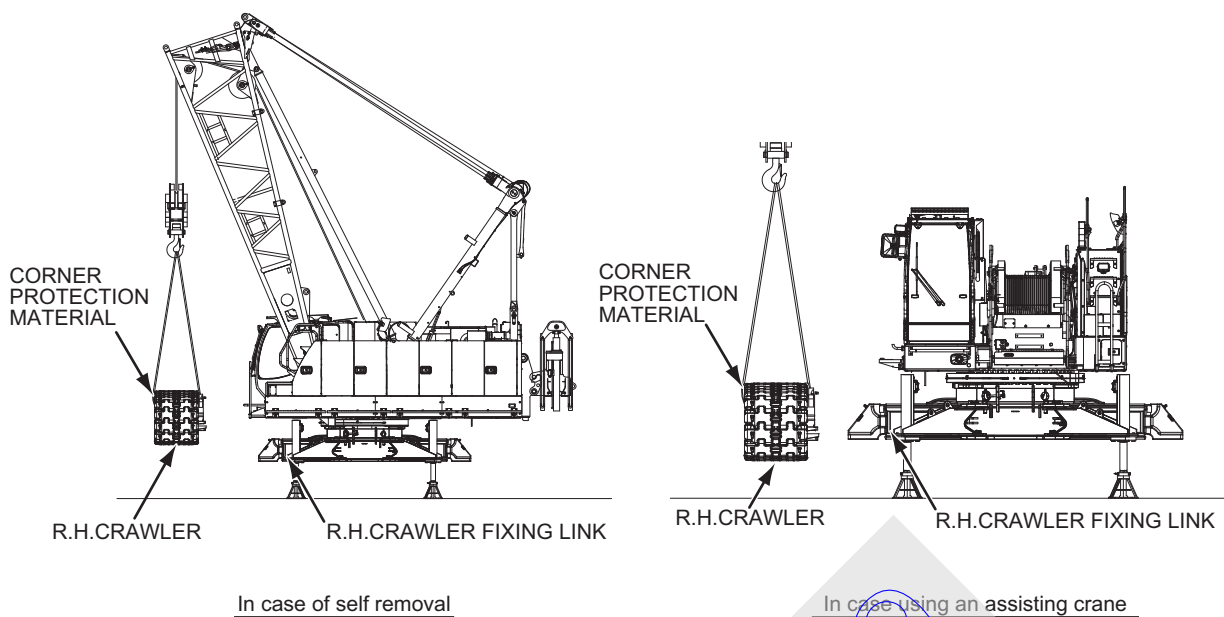
### **⚠ CAUTION**

When the crawler is to be pulled out from the axle, move very slowly to avoid load being applied abruptly on the assisting crane.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

(7) Remove the right hand crawler in the same way as the left hand crawler.



---

### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not swing the upper machinery when only one side of the crawler is attached to avoid overturn of the machinery.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---

### **⚠ CAUTION**

When taking out the crawler, control the lifting crawler position with the assisting crane to prevent the wire rope interfering with the deck.

---

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

(8) Place the removed crawler onto the trailer.

(9) Retract the crawler extend/retract cylinder fully.

---

**⚠ DANGER**

Do not exceed 3.9 m (12' 9-1/2") load radius.  
Otherwise the machine may tip over.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in  
serious injury or loss of life.

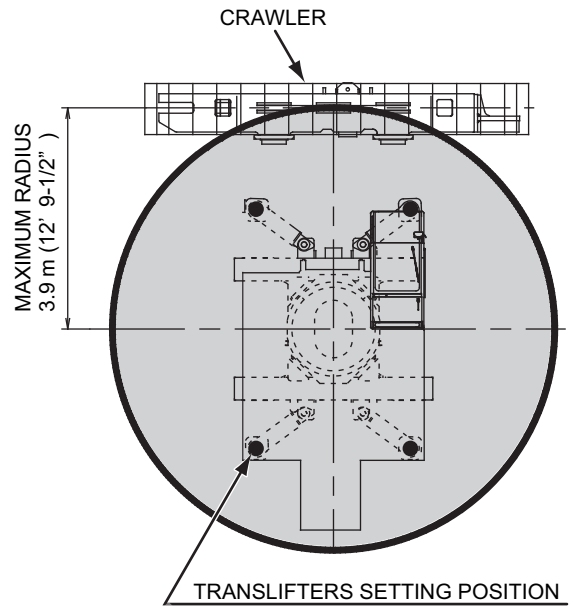
---

---

**⚠ DANGER**

Do not operate the machine abruptly when the  
machine is standing with translifter.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in  
serious injury or loss of life.

---



12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

### 4.3.6 MAIN MACHINERY LOADING INTO TRAILER

Check the following points before starting work.

- **PLACE**  
Ground must be hard. Ground has been improved and steel plates have been placed.
- **MEETING FOR WORK PROCEDURE AND SAFETY**  
Prior to work, meeting must be held for work procedure and safety with all related personnel and confirmation of each personnel's role and responsibility.
- **PRE-WORK INSPECTION**  
Conduct the pre-work inspection.
- Transporting the main machinery on the trailer may require the permit issued by authorities concerned. Refer to P.8-7 for weight and dimensions during disassembly.  
Prepare large enough trailer for the machinery weight.

---

** DANGER**

**Do not raise the boom to higher than 10 degrees angle when loading into trailer.**

**Main machinery may overturn backward.**

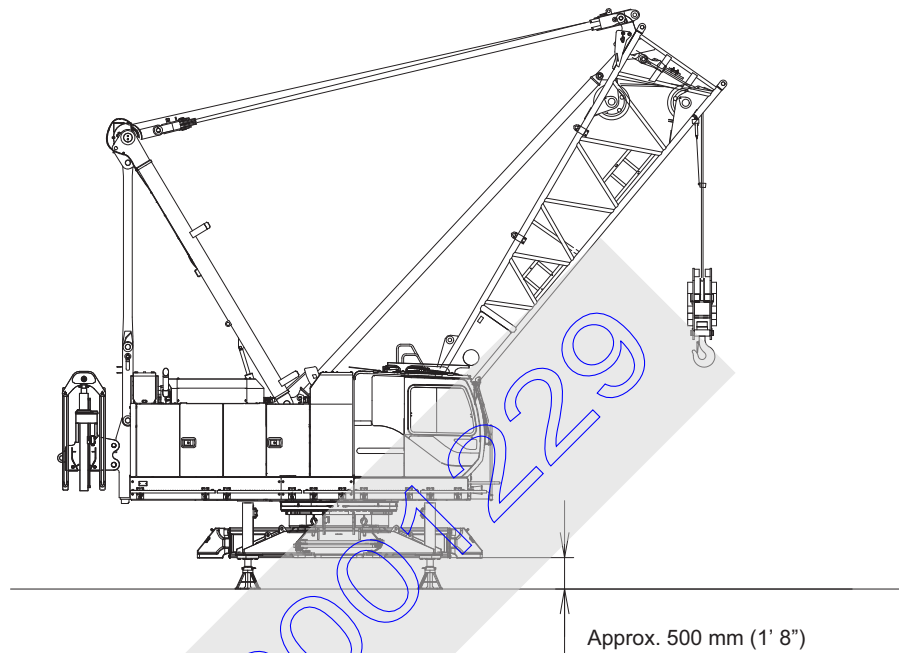
**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

---

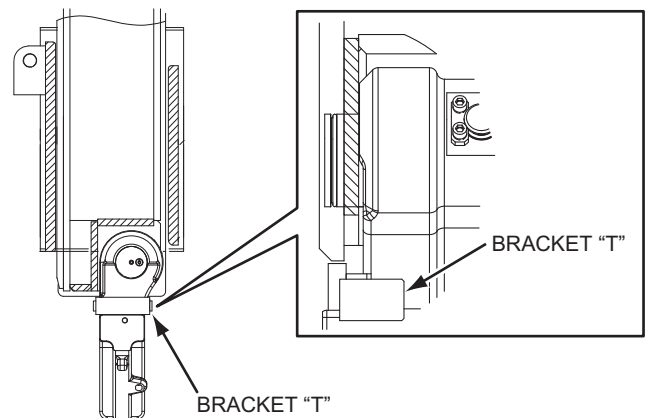


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

1. With the axle lower face is lifted up to approx. 500 mm (1' 8") above the ground with cylinder, start the engine and set the speed to LOW (approx. 800 min<sup>-1</sup>).
2. Swing the upper machinery so that it becomes parallel with the axle and engage the swing brake and insert the swing lock pin and turn the function lock lever to LOCK (UP) position.



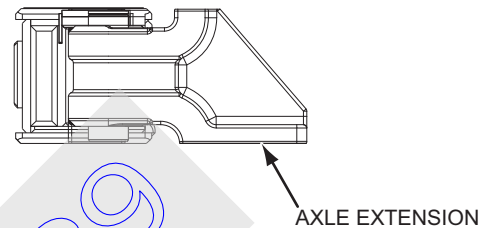
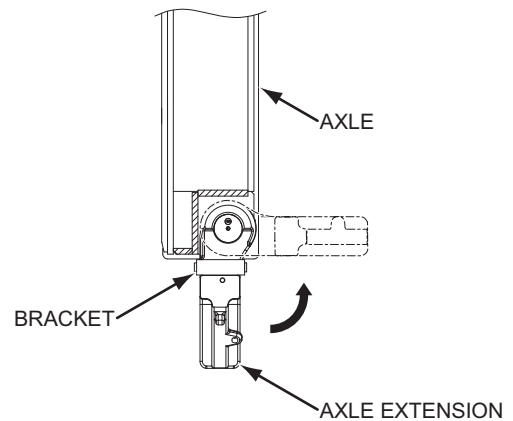
3. Remove the bracket "T" which has been inserted to the foot are of the axle extension.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

4. Rotate all four axle extensions for 90 degrees toward inside to make them right angle with axles.



---

### **⚠ DANGER**

When handling the translifter, make sure that all the counterweights are removed to prevent overturn of the main machinery.

---

### **⚠ CAUTION**

In case that the translifter control valve and the hydraulic source hose in the upper frame front block are connected, take extra care not to make translifter pick up the hose during swing movement.

---

### **⚠ CAUTION**

Take extra care that the each hose of propel, high low speed select or drain hose would not be jammed or run over during loading into the trailer.

---

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- Lift up the main machinery to the height so that the trailer can drive in under the machinery with the vertical cylinders.

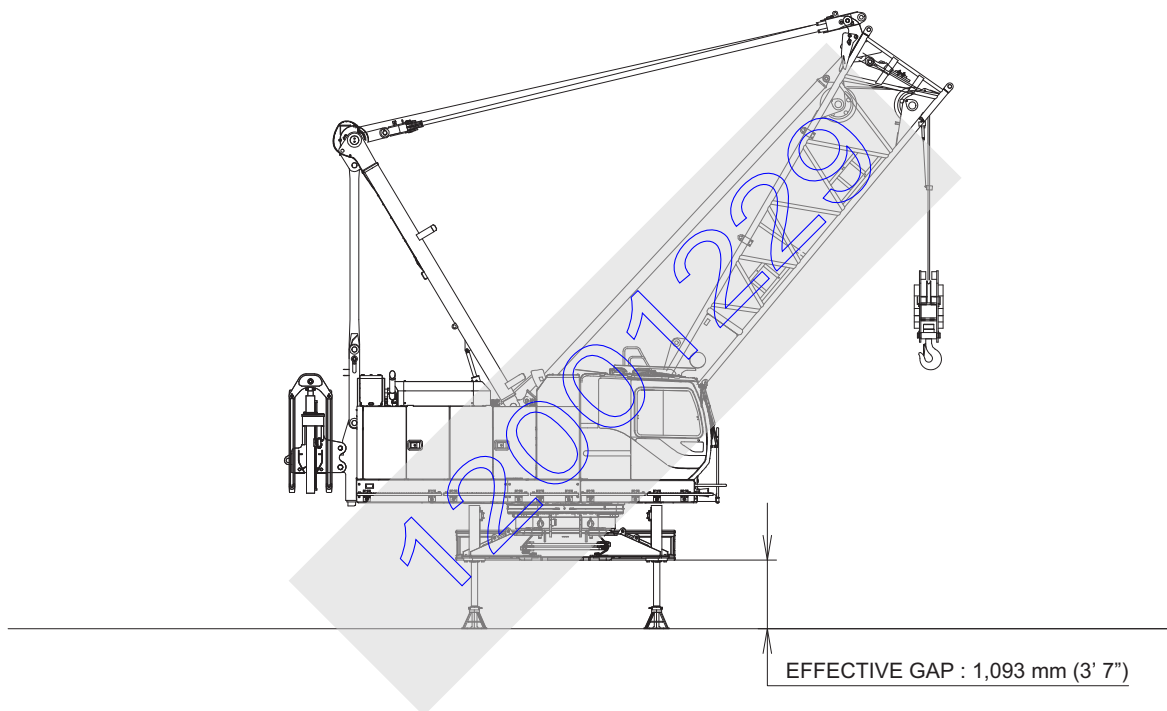
Effective gap of the main machinery :

1,093 mm (3' 7")



Ensure that there is no abnormality on the float contacting ground before lifting up to prevent overturn of the main machinery.

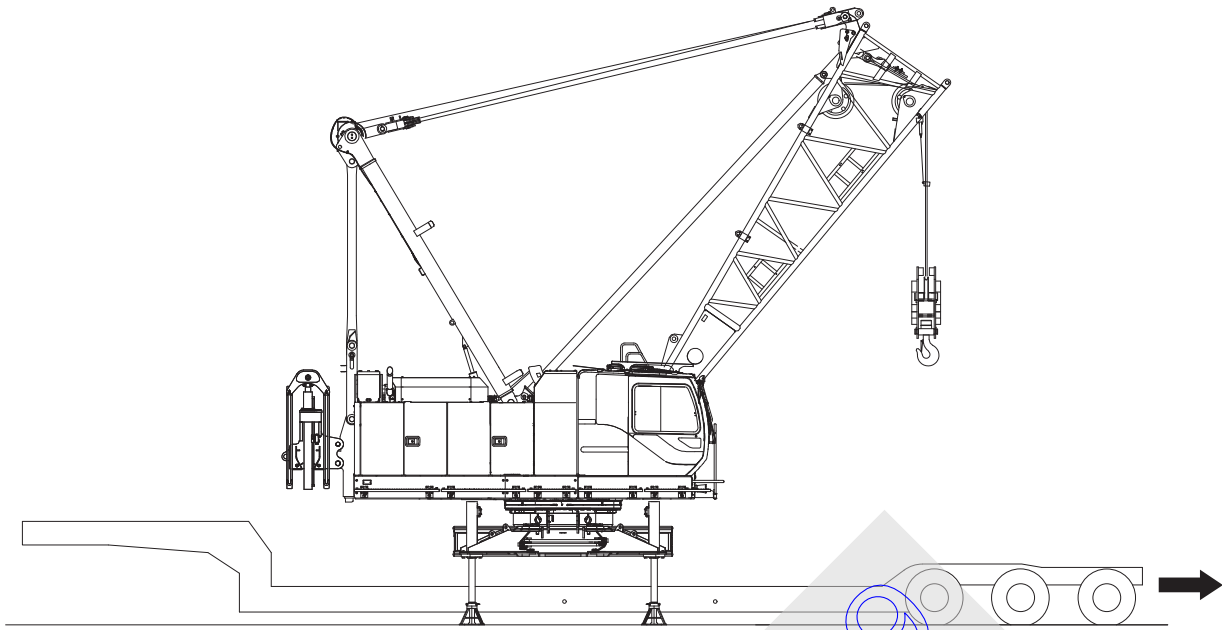
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.



#### 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

6. Drive the trailer backward to park under the main machinery.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

6. Make sure that the trailer loading deck comes just under the lower machinery.
7. Set the block bases (thicker than 120 mm) under the lower machinery so that the machine can be settled on them.

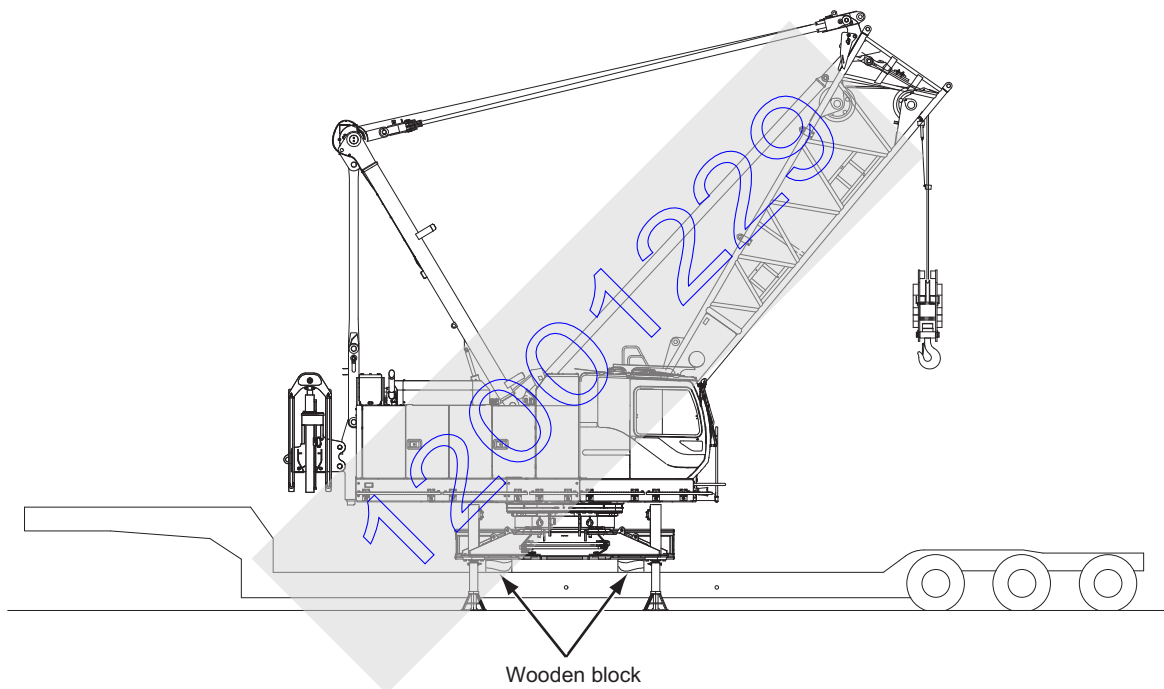
---

**WARNING**

**Do not swing with the vertical cylinders retracted to avoid turn-over of the trailer.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

---



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

8. Retract the vertical cylinder fully and place the main machinery on the trailer and then stop the engine.

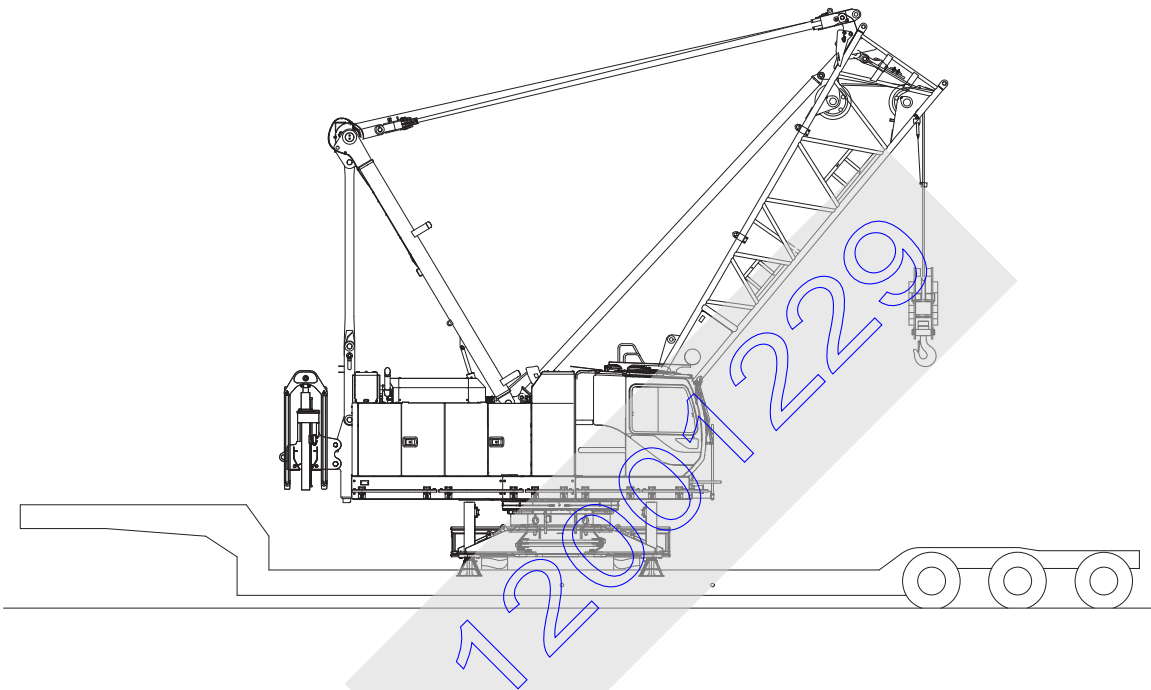
---

**WARNING**

Do not swing the main machinery while the vertical cylinders are retracted to prevent overturn due to losing balance of the trailer.

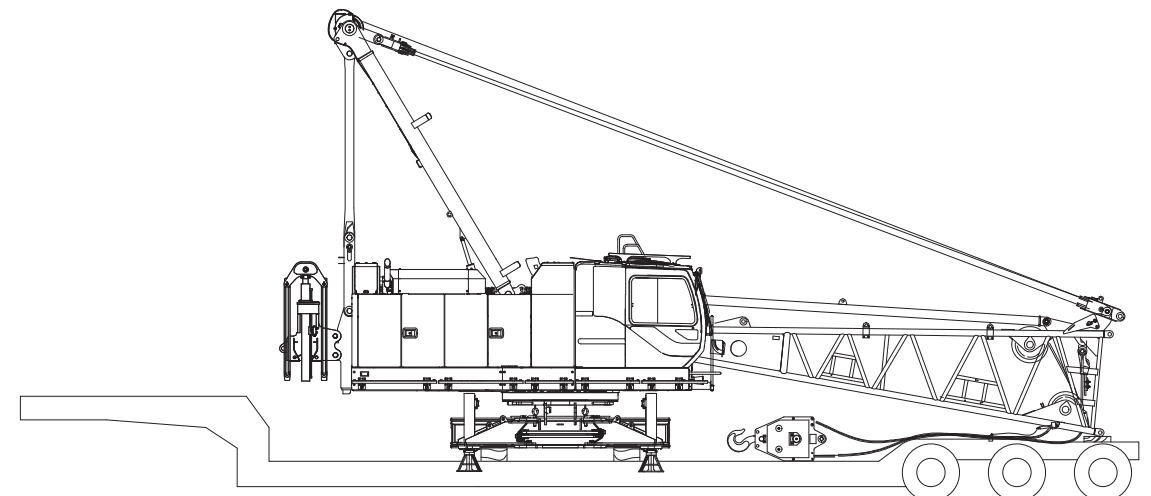
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---



### 10. LOWERING BOOM BASE

Slowly lower the boom base, and place the tip of it onto the trailer.



### 11. LOWERING THE GANTRY

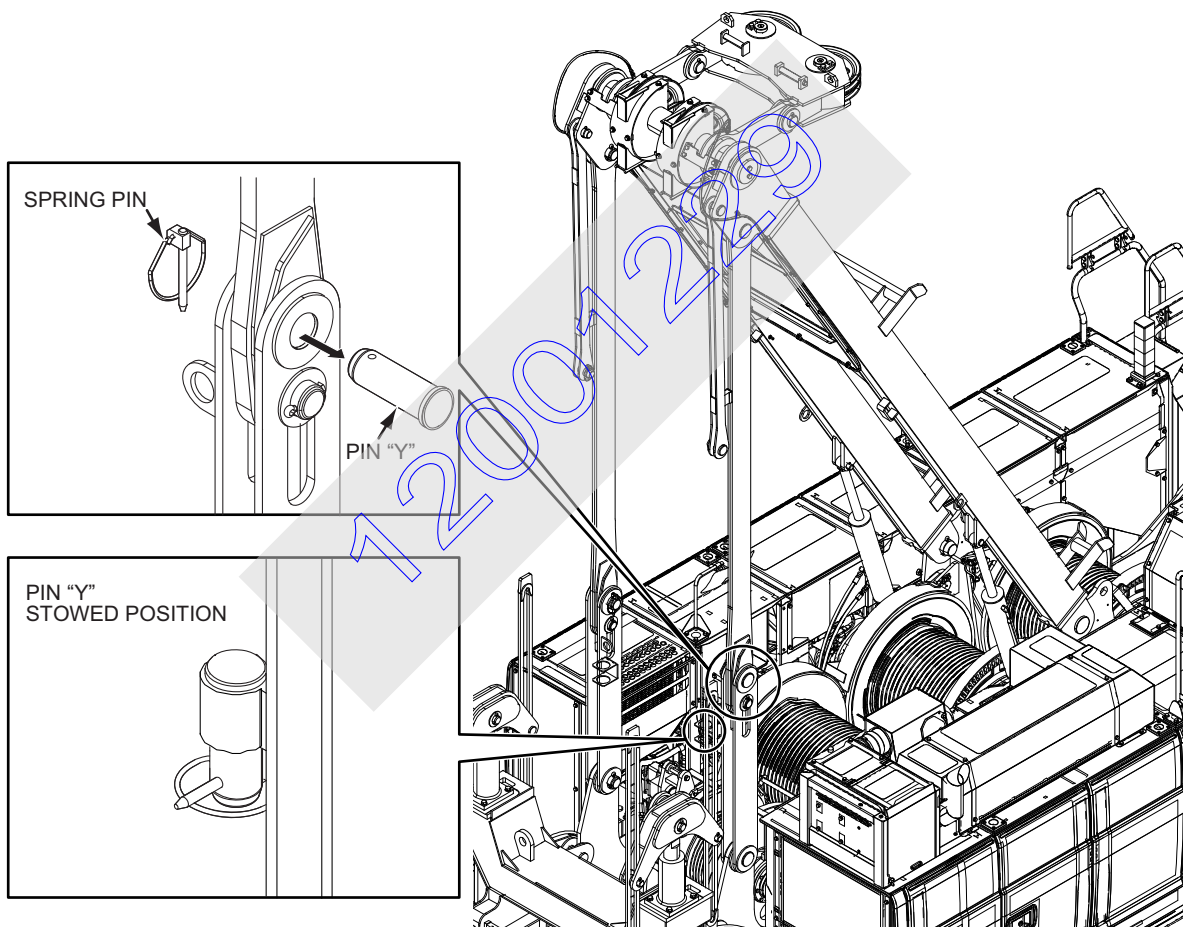
#### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not allow any personnel to enter under or inside the gantry.

Do not touch the wire rope or sheave during paying out the boom hoist wire rope.

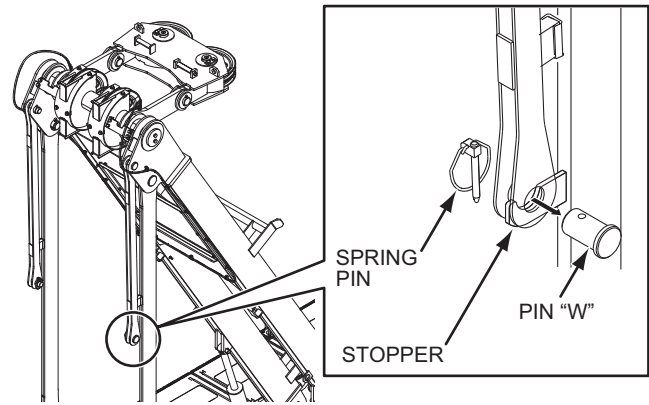
Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

- (1) Take out the spring pin and pull out the pin "Y" from the gantry and stow to the stowing location.



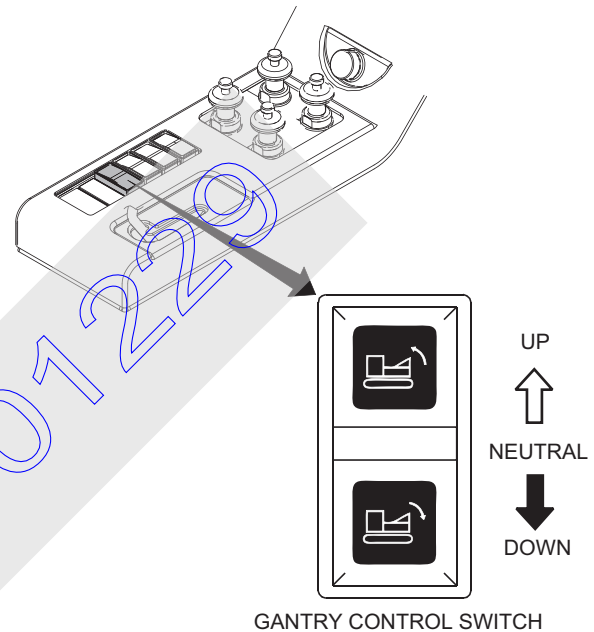
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (2) Pull out the pin "W" from the travel kit and remove the travel kit from the stopper.



- (3) Set the engine speed to 1,000 min<sup>-1</sup>.

- (4) Turning the gantry control switch to [LOWER] side (inside) lowers the gantry.  
At this time, pay out the boom hoist rope to prevent the boom base from coming afloat.



### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not enter under the gantry to avoid accident of being caught due to sudden drop of the gantry.

### **⚠ DANGER**

Never raise the gantry using the boom hoist wire rope or using the assisting crane.  
The gantry may suddenly drop immediately when the fixing pin is pulled out during gantry lowering.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

### **⚠ CAUTION**

Before starting the gantry control switch, ensure that there is no person under or near the gantry and sound the horn.  
During work or raising the boom hoist, do not operate the gantry control switch if the boom hoist wire rope is tensioned.  
Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious accident.



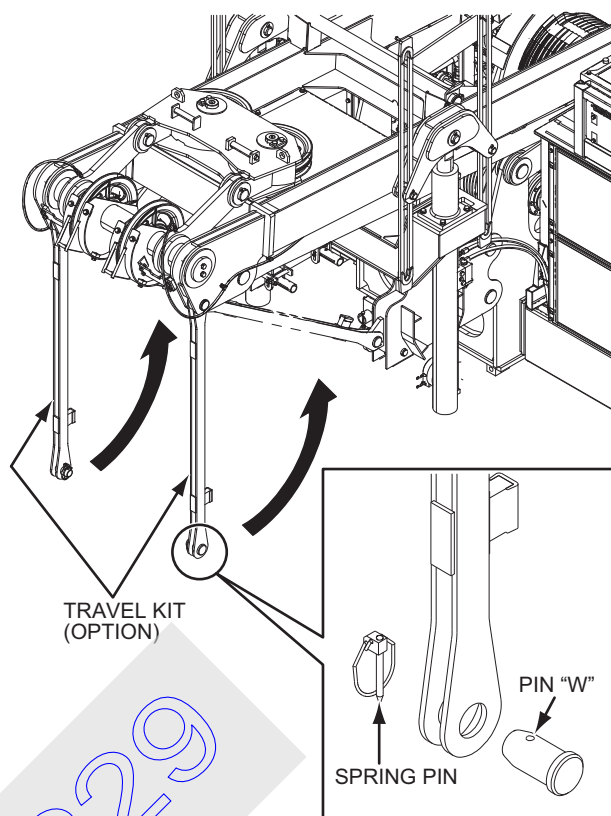
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (5) Connect the travel kit and upper frame with pin "W" and retain with the spring pin.

### **⚠ DANGER**

Ensure to connect the travel kit as figure shown, otherwise the boom may fall down when the gantry is in low position.

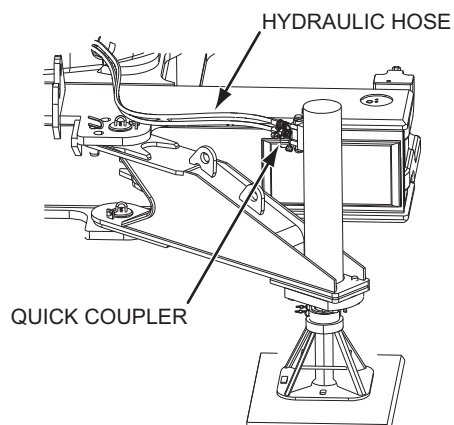
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



12. Stop the engine and stow the translifter as per the following procedure.

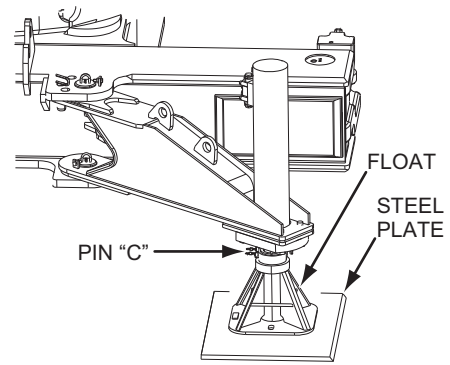
(1) Engage the swing brake and keep the swing lock pin inserted and set the function lock lever to the LOCK (upper) position.

(2) Disconnect the hydraulic hose from the vertical cylinder.  
(Hydraulic hose 4 locations total 8 pieces)



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

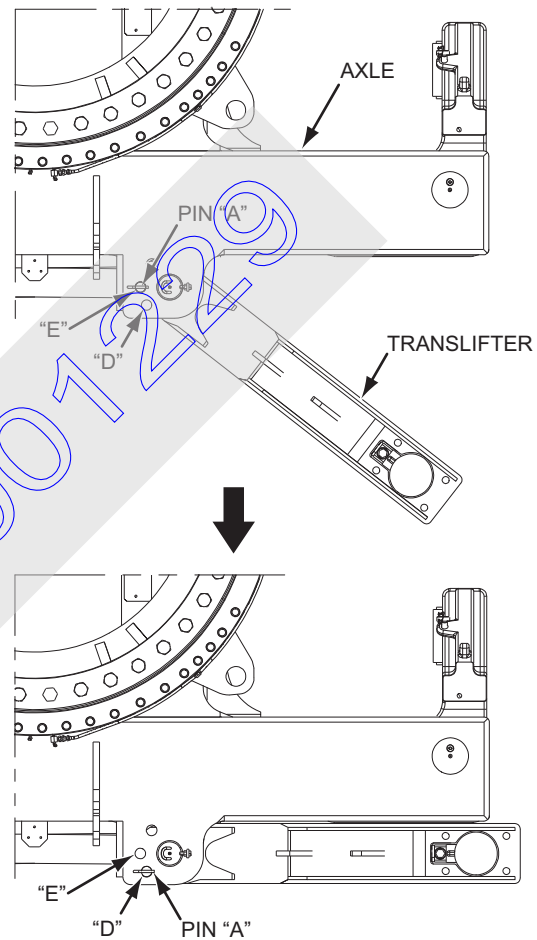
- (3) Remove the pin "C" as shown right and remove the float from the vertical cylinder.  
Load the float on the trailer and secure them to prevent falling off the trailer.



### **CAUTION**

The float weighs approx. 25 kg (55 lbs).  
Take two persons to install a float to prevent waist injuries.

- (4) Pull out the pin "A" securing the translifter at "E" area.  
Align the translifter fixing hole with "D" and secure with pin "A".



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- Secure down the axle to the trailer with the wire rope or chain to prevent cargo collapsing during transportation.

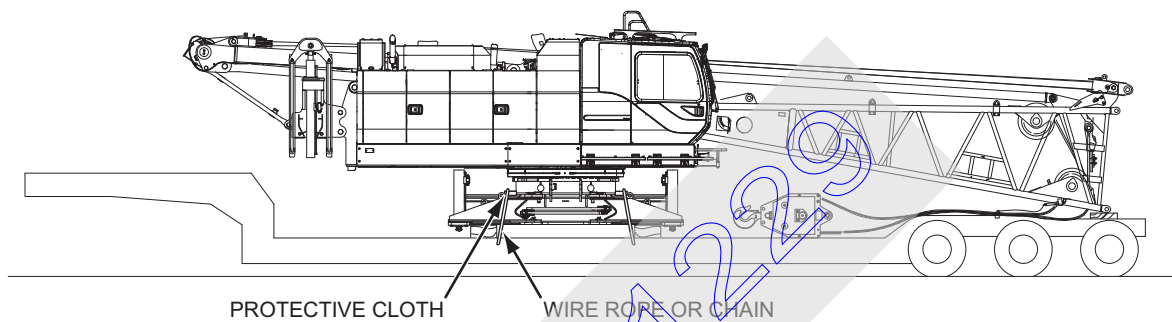
---

### **CAUTION**

Take extra care that each hose of propel, high/low speed select or drain hose would not be jammed or run over during loading into the trailer.

---

Refer to P.8-7 [WEIGHT AND DIMENSION AT DISASSEMBLY] for the weight and dimension during disassembly work.



- Close and lock the door cab, window, door and guard then stow the cab entrance step.
- In case of transportation with the boom base removed, refer to the next page.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

### 4.4 TRANSPORTATION

In case of transportation of the machine or attachment with the trailer or truck, there is various combination of different weight, type of trailer or truck and the transportation configuration differ.

Take enough time to review width, height, length and weight to make safe transportation.

In case of public road transportation, there is some limit of width, height, length and weight.

Submit the necessary document to the related authority office to obtain the permit.

For detail, refer to the related traffic regulation.

Refer to P.8-7 for disassembly dimension and weight.



**Do not exceed weight limit or dimension limit.**

**Do not perform unreasonable transportation since it may lead to accident involving person or property.**

**Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---

- Make sure that the swing lock, each drum lock is engaged.
- Make sure that each control lever, switch is in neutral position or stop position.
- Make sure that the room lights or outside lights are off and the engine is stopped.
- Make sure that the step, back mirror or any protruding object is stowed.
- Place the wooden blocks under the carbody or axle extension to prevent slippage incase of loading the machinery on to the trailer.
- Secure down the load onto the trailer or truck firmly with the wire rope or chain to prevent them from cargo collapsing.
- In case of transportation with the crawler removed, do not secure the axle extension side and secure the axle side.

## 4.5 LIFTING OF WHOLE MAIN MACHINERY

Check the following points before starting actual work :

1. Location

- (1) Ground must be level and firm, with steel plates used if necessary.
- (2) There is enough swing space for assisting crane and access space for trailer and truck.

2. Confirmation of work procedure and safety practice.

Prior to assembly work, all personnel concerned must confirm work procedure, safety practice, and understand their individual role and responsibility.

3. Machine inspection.

Basic machine must be inspected for proper operating condition before beginning work.

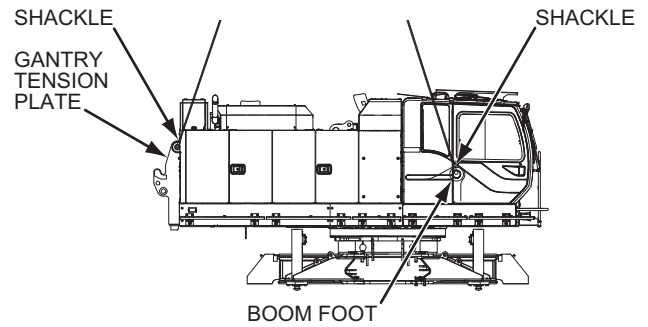
12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.5.1 UPPER STRUCTURE (WITH CARBODY) LIFTING PROCEDURES

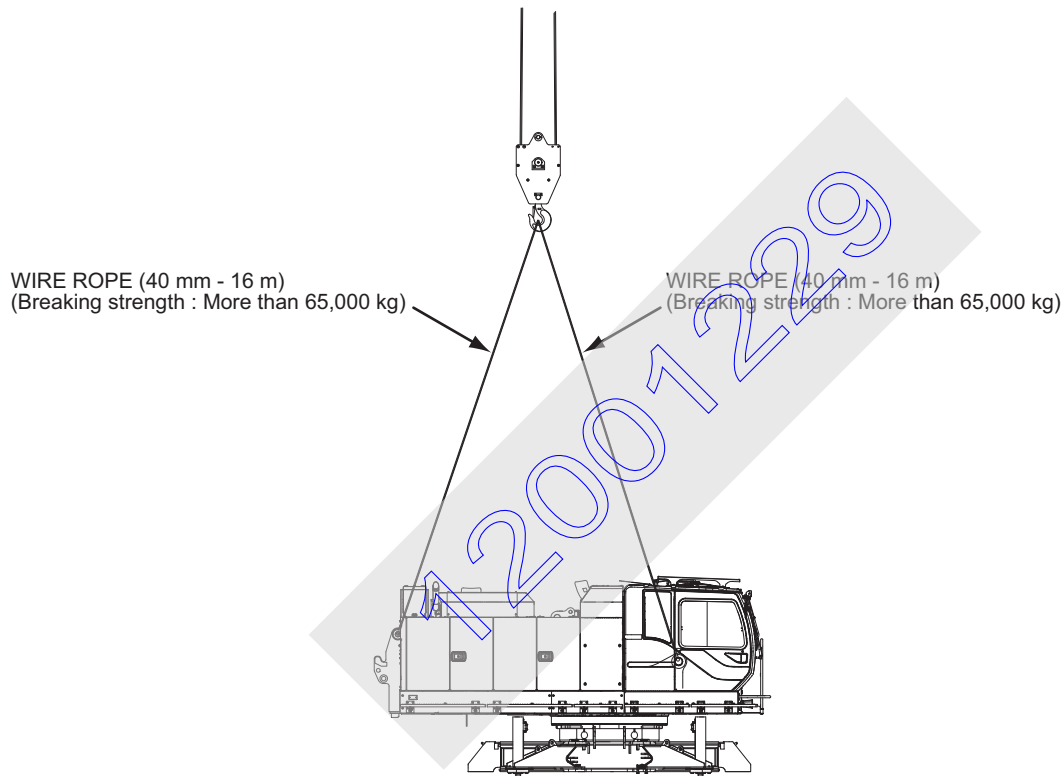
#### 1. INSTALLATION

- (1) Reeve the lifting ropes around the boom foot pins and the gantry tension member pins with the shackle.



#### **CAUTION**

Using a short wire rope or lifting with positions other than specified, may cause damages to the machine.



### 4.5.2 LOADING/UNLOADING THE MACHINE FROM/ONTO A TRAILER

#### 1. LOADING ONTO A TRAILER

- (1) Position a trailer under the lifted machine.  
Lower the machine onto the trailer.
- (2) Set the block bases (thicker than 120 mm) under the lower machinery so that the machine can be settled on them.

---

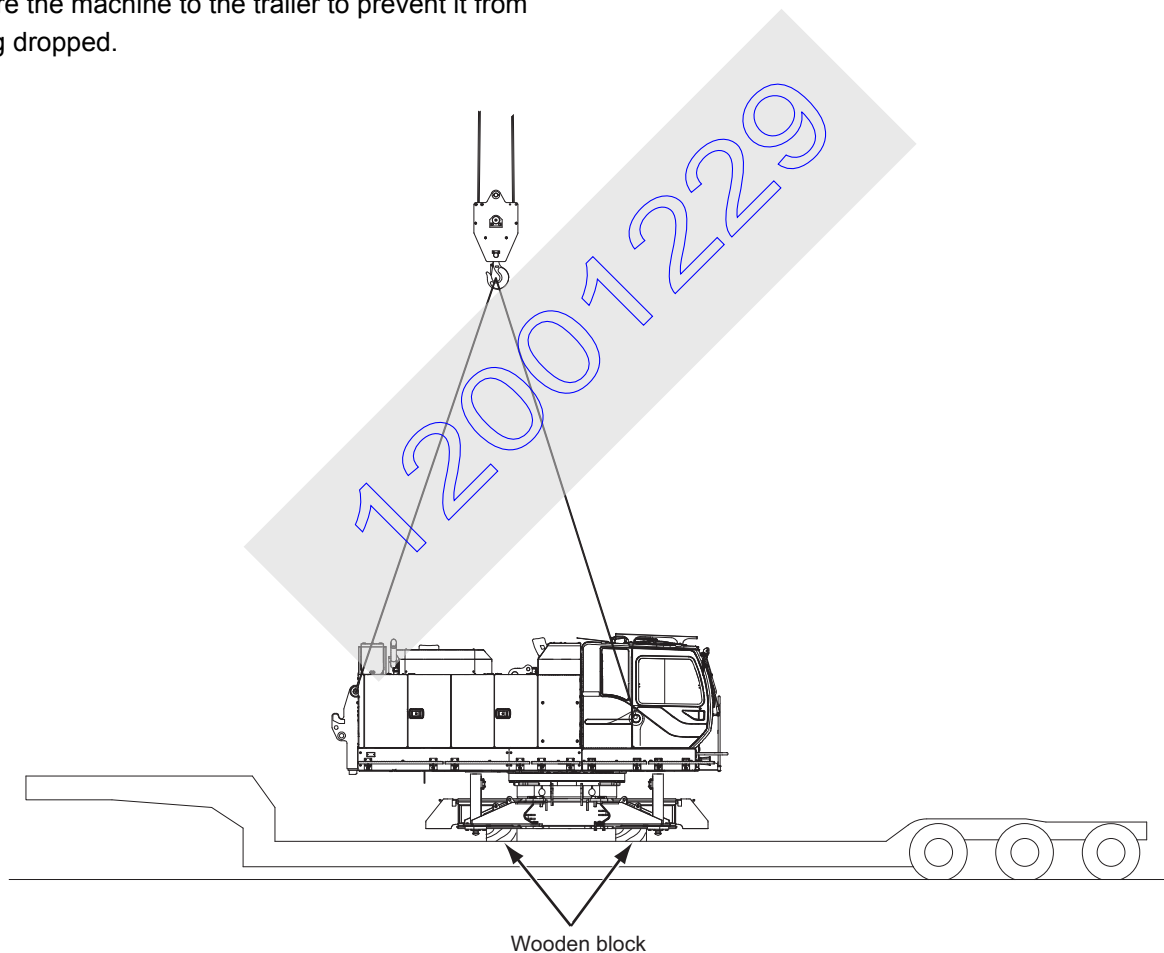
**WARNING**

**Do not swing with the vertical cylinders retracted to avoid turn-over of the trailer.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

---

- (3) Secure the machine to the trailer to prevent it from being dropped.



#### 2. UNLOADING FROM A TRAILER

Unload the machine from a trailer, refer to "4.2.1 UNLOADING MAIN MACHINERY FROM TRAILER".

### 4.5.3 INSTALLATION OF CRAWLER

Install the crawlers, refer to "4.2.2 CRAWLER INSTALLATION".

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

### 4.5.4 INSTALLATION OF GANTRY TO REVOLVING FRAME

1. Reeve through the ropes around the gantry peak pin, and lift the gantry with the assisting crane.

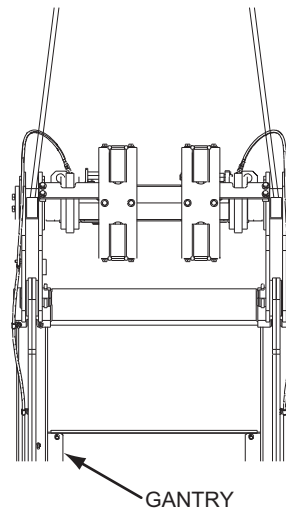
---

#### **⚠ DANGER**

Use undamaged ropes and slings for lifting gantry.  
Do not use the hook without safety latch, or use damaged slings to lift the gantry.

Failure to observe this caution may lead to the sudden fall of the gantry.

---

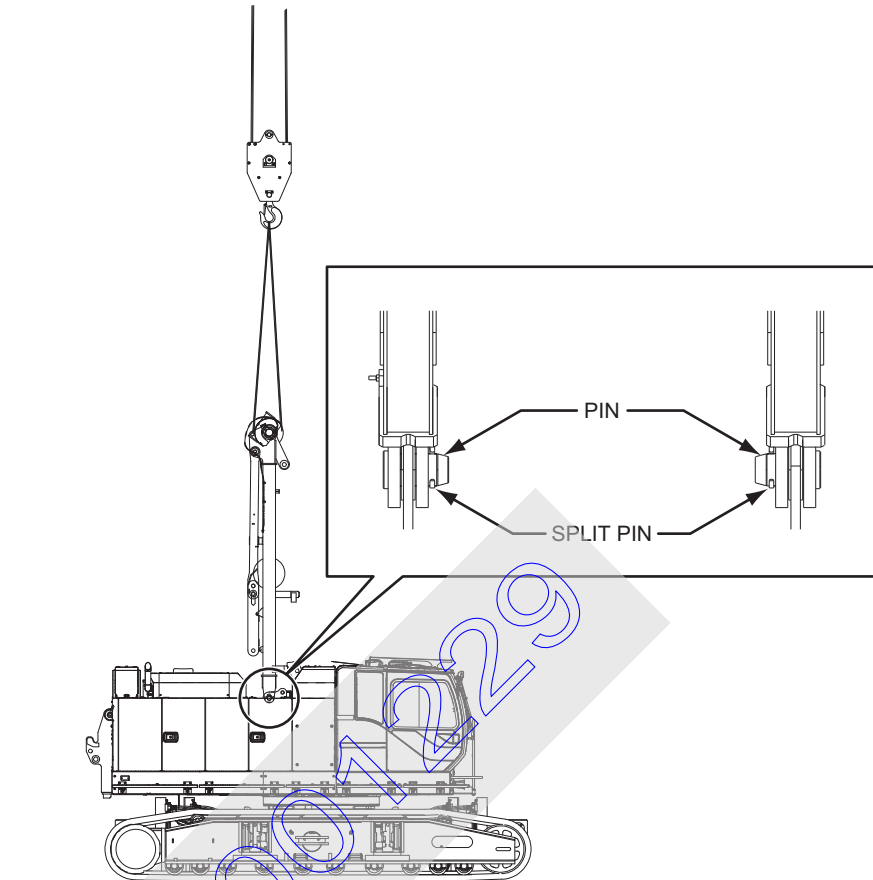


12001229



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

2. Install the compression foot of the gantry to the basic machine.



### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not stand under the gantry to avoid accident of being caught due to sudden drop of gantry. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not put your finger into a pin hole.

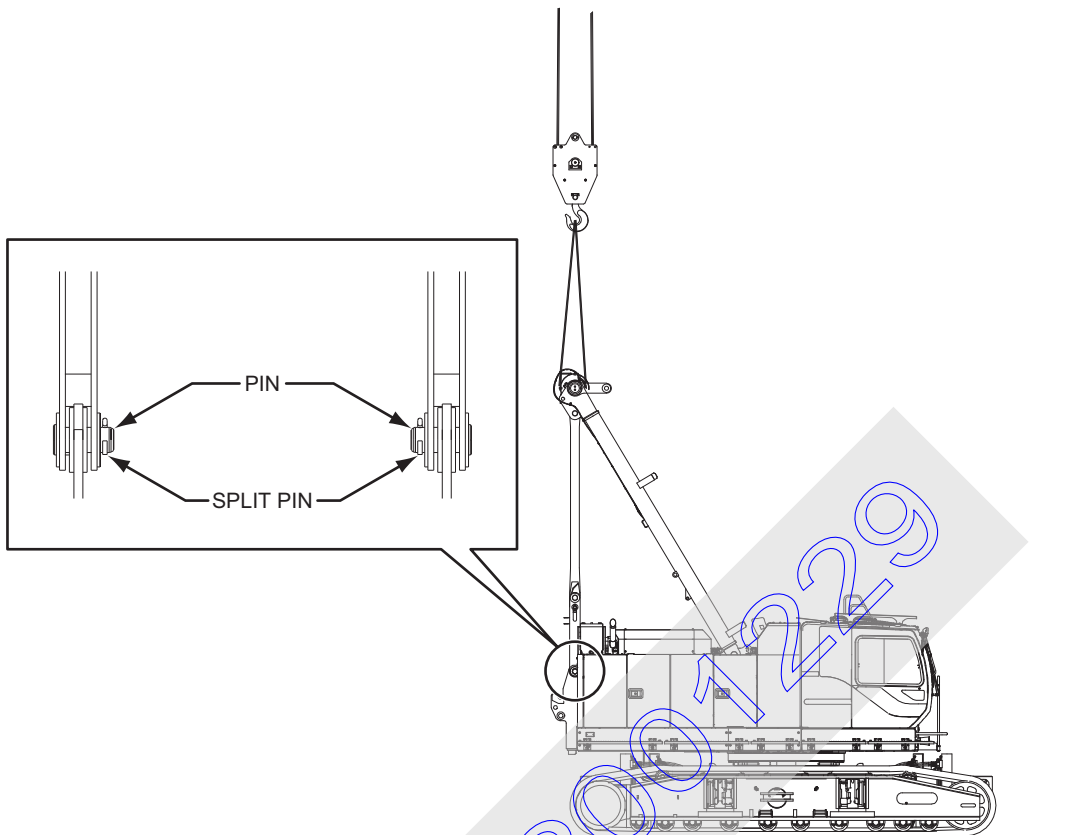
#### Note

Generously apply grease to the pin hole.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

3. Slowly lower the gantry toward the rear of the basic machine, and connect the tension member to the frame plate with the pins.



---

### **WARNING**

Do not stand under the gantry to avoid being caught if the gantry suddenly drops. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

---

---

### **WARNING**

Do not put your finger into a pin hole.

---

---

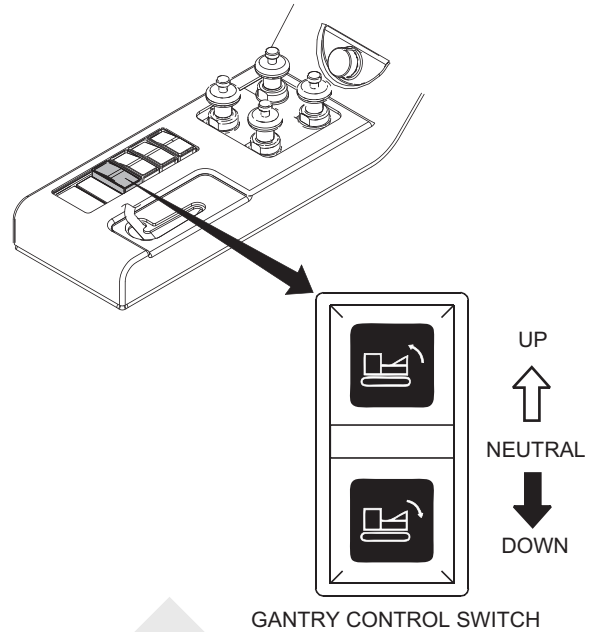
### Note

Generously apply grease to the pin hole.

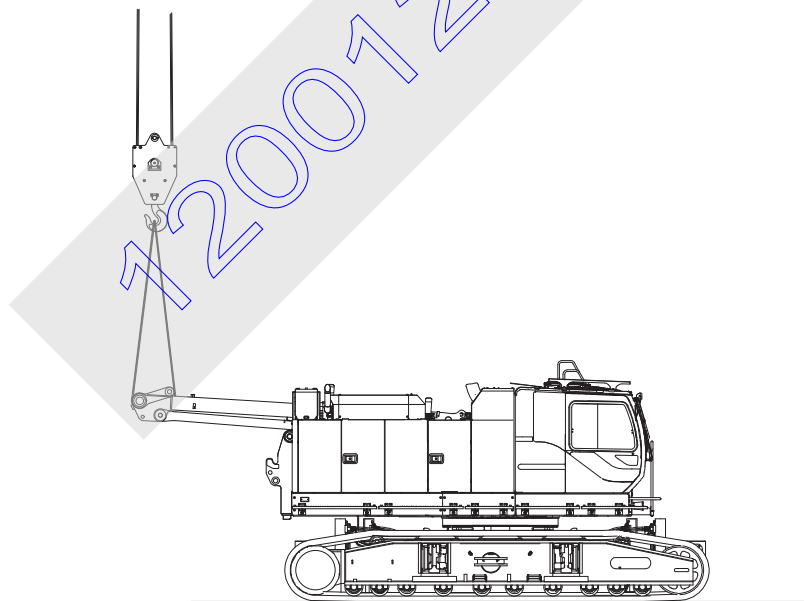
---

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

4. Retract the cylinder by operating the control switch.



5. Lower the gantry backward fully.



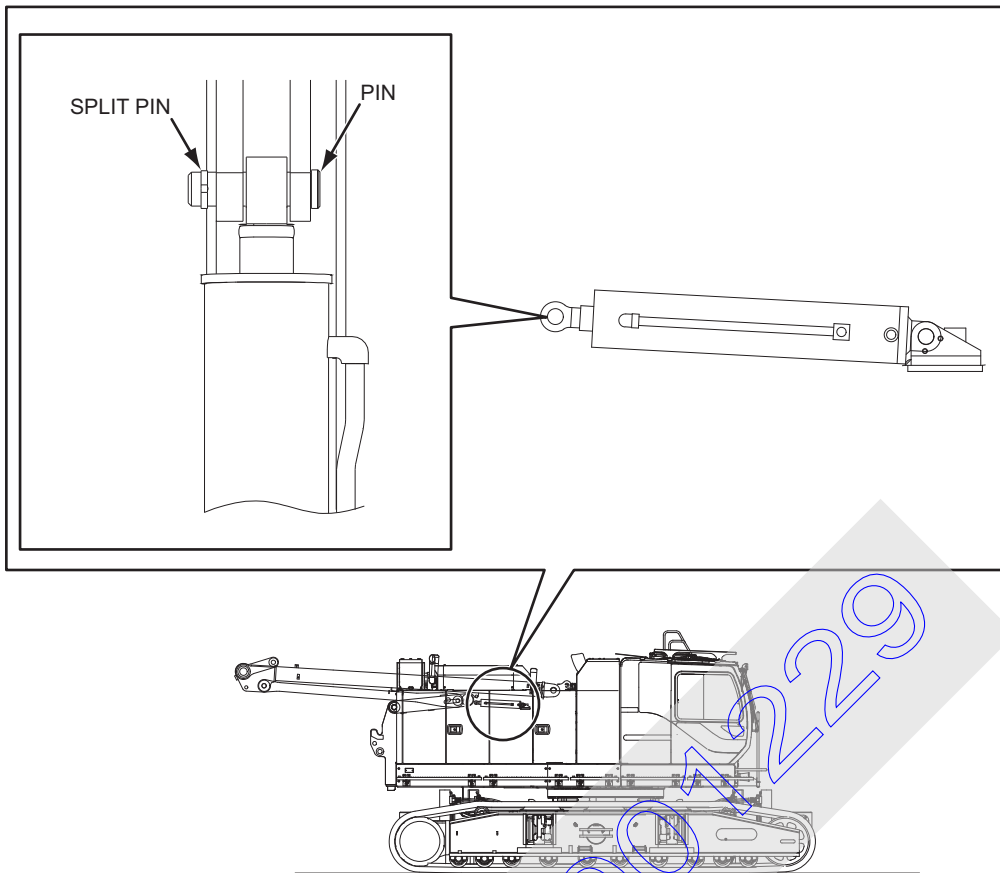
### **WARNING**

Do not stand under the gantry to avoid being caught if the gantry suddenly drops.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

6. Set the gantry cylinders to the compression members.



### 4.6 ASSEMBLY OF BOOM BASE

Although this machine is designed to transport with the boom base attached, there would be a case that the machine is to be transported with the boom base removed for certain reason.

The boom base installation is explained here.

Prior to work, check the machine condition again.

- Machine must be placed on firm and level ground.
- The crawlers are extended and fixing pins are installed to the crawlers and the shims are inserted on the axles.

---

#### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not allow any person to enter under or inside of the boom during boom connecting work to prevent accident of being crushed due to falling of the boom.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

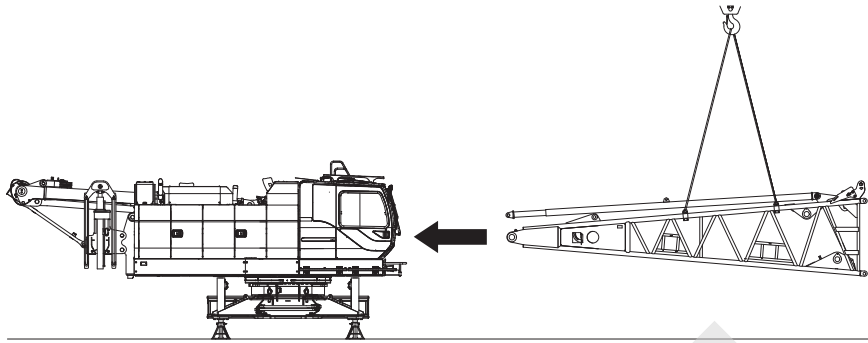
---

12001229

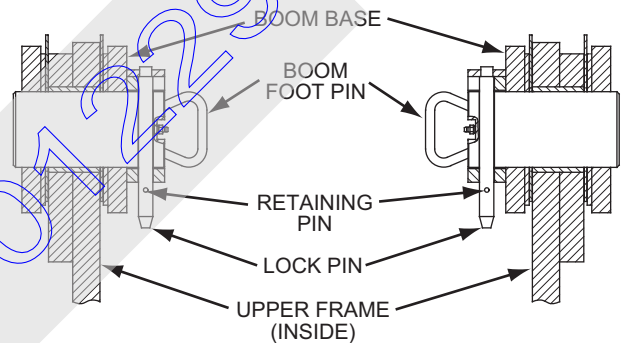
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.6.1 BOOM BASE INSTALLATION

1. Lift up the boom base with the assisting crane and install it to the main machinery.  
Lift up the boom horizontally on left and right direction.  
At this time, secure the backstop to prevent it from coming out.



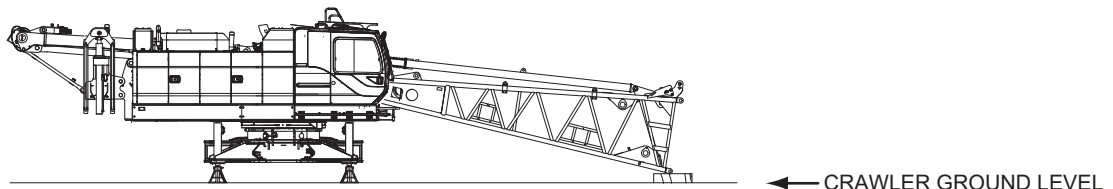
2. Paste grease on the boom foot pin and pin hole area.
3. Align the boom foot pin hole on both side and insert the right hand pin from inside then insert the left hand pin. Insert the lock pins from top to bottom and fix them with the retaining pins.



#### **WARNING**

Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole when inserting or pulling out the pins.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

4. Place the boom base connector area on the wooden block and remove the sling wire rope.



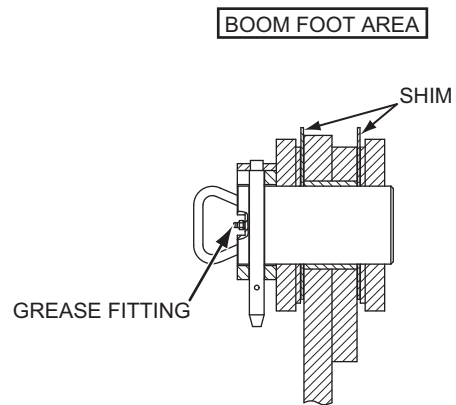
#### **DANGER**

Do not lower the boom base tip to the level lower than ground level. Otherwise some components may be damaged with the boom or the backstop, winch valve.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

5. Install the shims to reduce backlash in the boom foot area.

Amount of the shim to be installed is a manually possible amount and should not be forcibly packed in with a hammer etc.



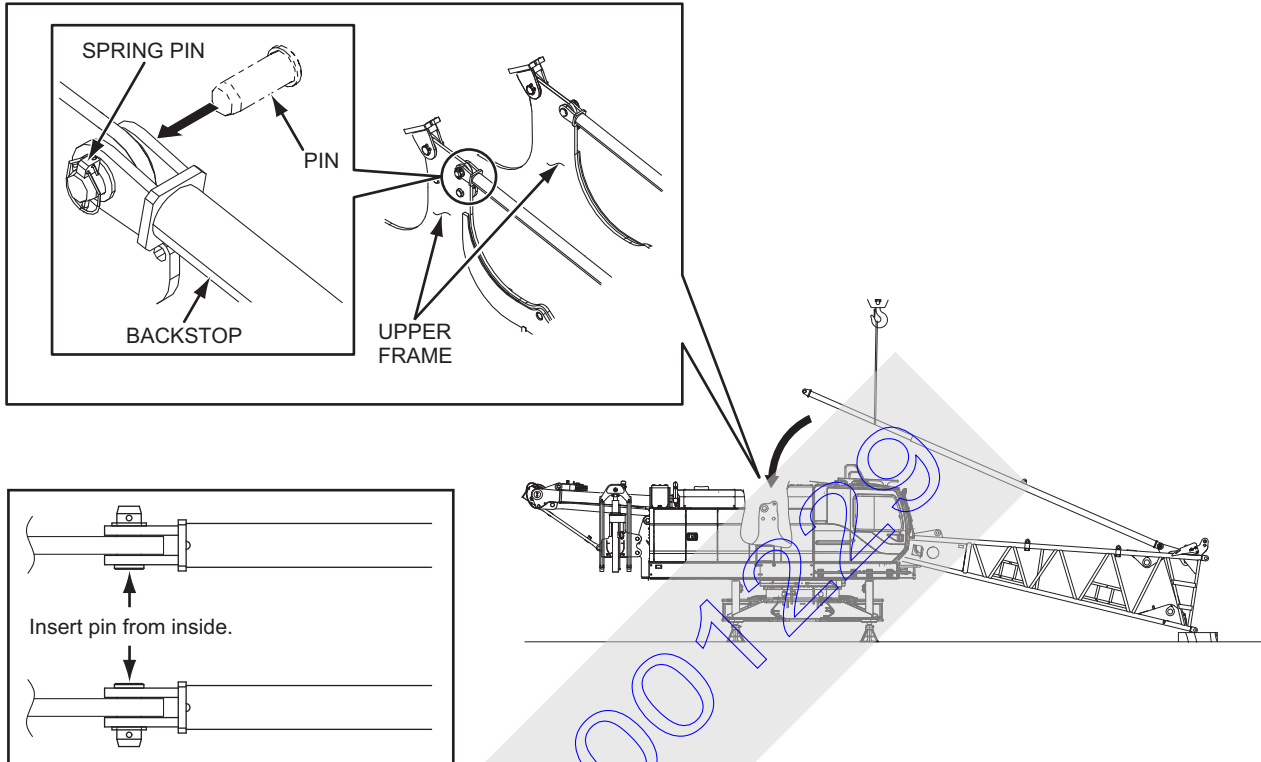
6. Connect the cable reel and angle detector wiring refer to "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE".
6. Apply grease from the left and right boom foot pins.

12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.6.2 BACKSTOP INSTALLATION

Lift up the backstop with outer pipe and pull inner pipe toward main machinery and connect to upper frame with pins and secure the pin with spring pins.  
Insert the pins from inside of the upper frame.  
(both side)



#### **WARNING**

Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole when inserting or pulling out the pins.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

#### **WARNING**

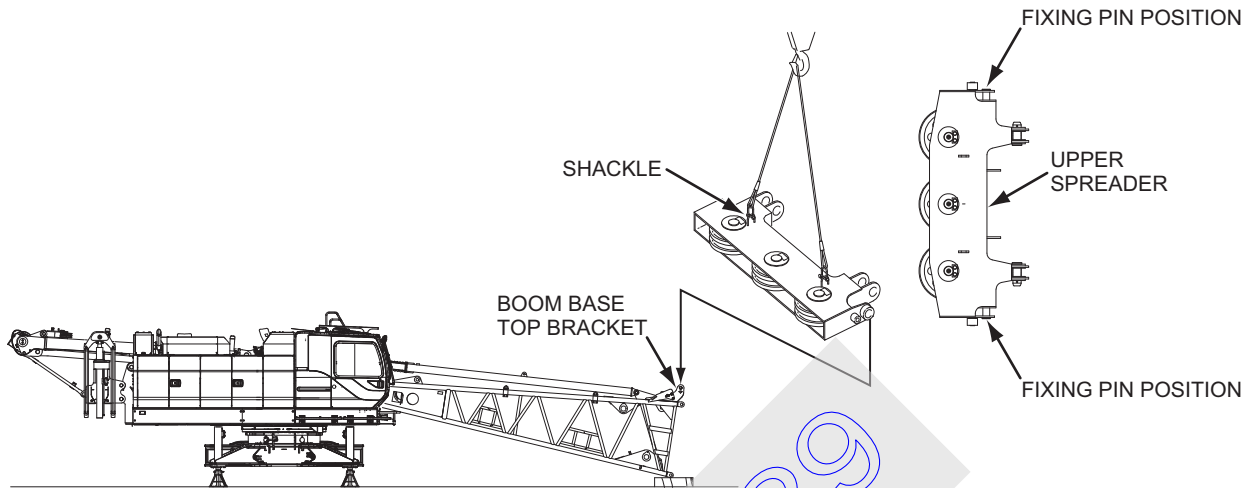
Do not stand on backstop pulling out direction to prevent accident of collision.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.



### 4.6.3 UPPER SPREADER INSTALLATION

Fix the upper spreader with the boom base top bracket with pins.

Reeve the boom hoist wire rope through the upper and lower spreader and connect to the guy line. Pins must be removed after connection.



---

#### **WARNING**

Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole when inserting or pulling out the pins.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

---

#### **WARNING**

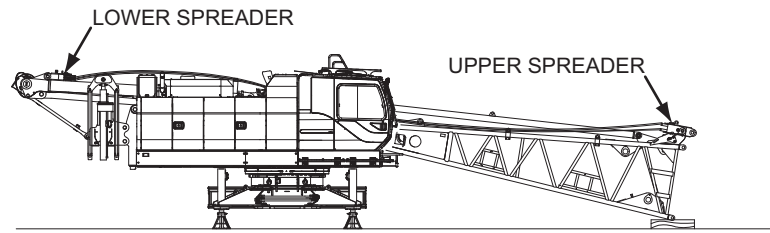
Take extra care not to stumble over or falling during work on the top surface of the boom.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

---

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.6.4 REEVING BOOM HOIST WIRE ROPE

1. This is to explain reeving method when the boom hoist wire rope has been wound on the boom hoist drum.



#### **WARNING**

Do not touch the wire rope with bare hands.

Use leather groves.

Pay extra attention to the running rope to prevent caught accident.

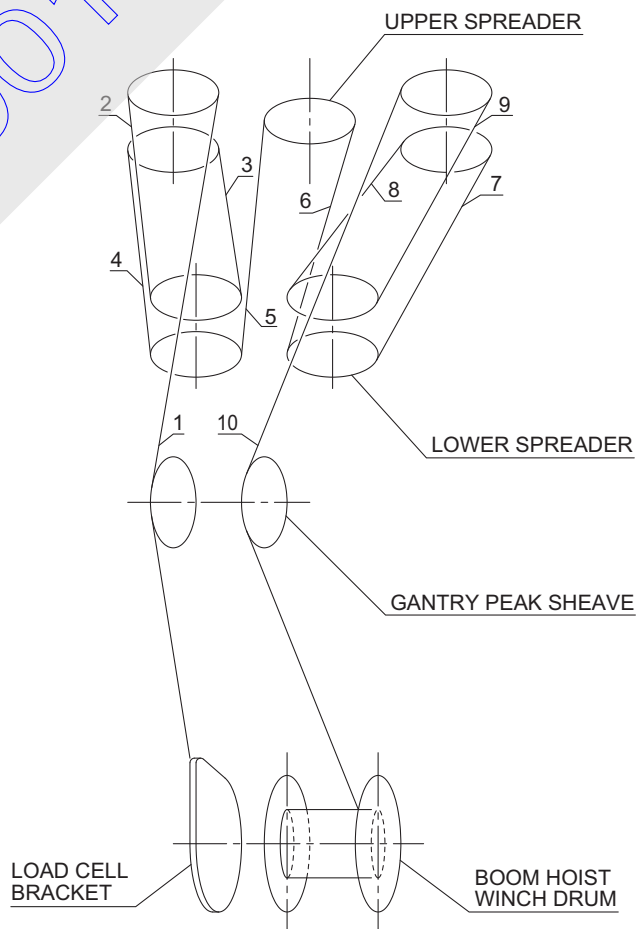
Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

2. Turn the boom drum control lever to lowering side to feed out the wire rope from the boom drum.
3. Reeve the wire rope through the upper spreader and the lower spreader preventing the wire rope from twisting, twining or coming out of sheave.

#### **CAUTION**

Do not fail to follow the reeving order when passing the boom hoist wire rope through the upper and lower spreader.

Otherwise wire rope may interfere and may cause strand cut or damage.

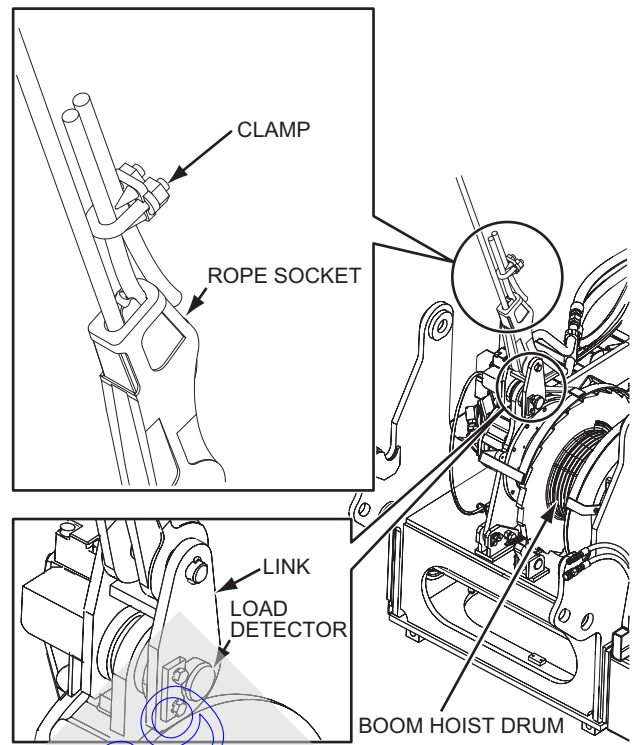


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

4. Fix the wire rope end to the winch bracket using the socket, wedge and clamp.

### **WARNING**

To prevent an accident due to falling, be sure to wear a safety belt during work at high place. In the case of work on a boom, stand on the walkway. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injury or loss of life.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.6.5 INSTALLATION OF BOOM HOIST WIRE ROPE TO THE DRUM

#### **WARNING**

Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole when inserting or pulling out the pins.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

#### **WARNING**

Turn each control lever to neutral and check the machine surrounding area for safety before starting the engine.

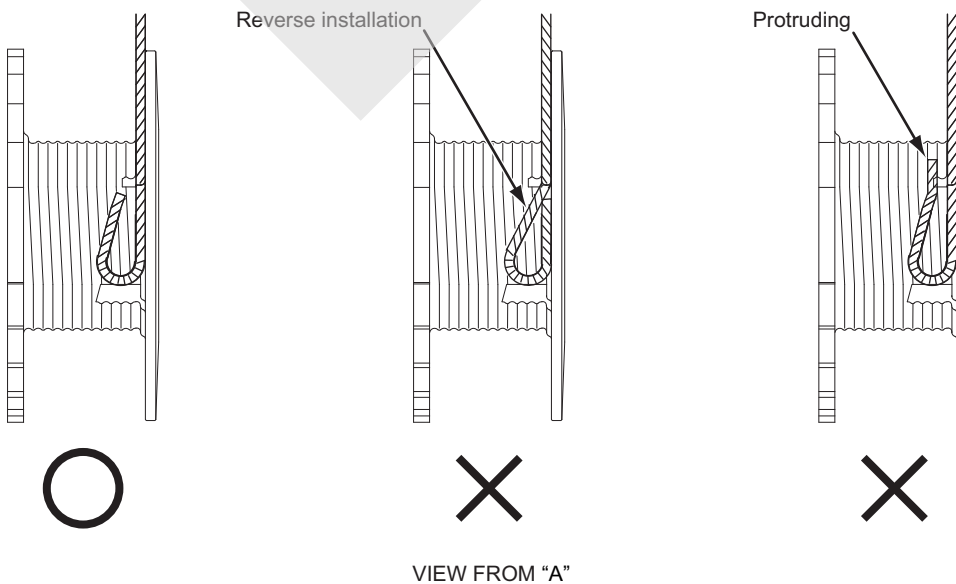
#### **WARNING**

Do not touch the wire rope with bare hands. Use leather groves.

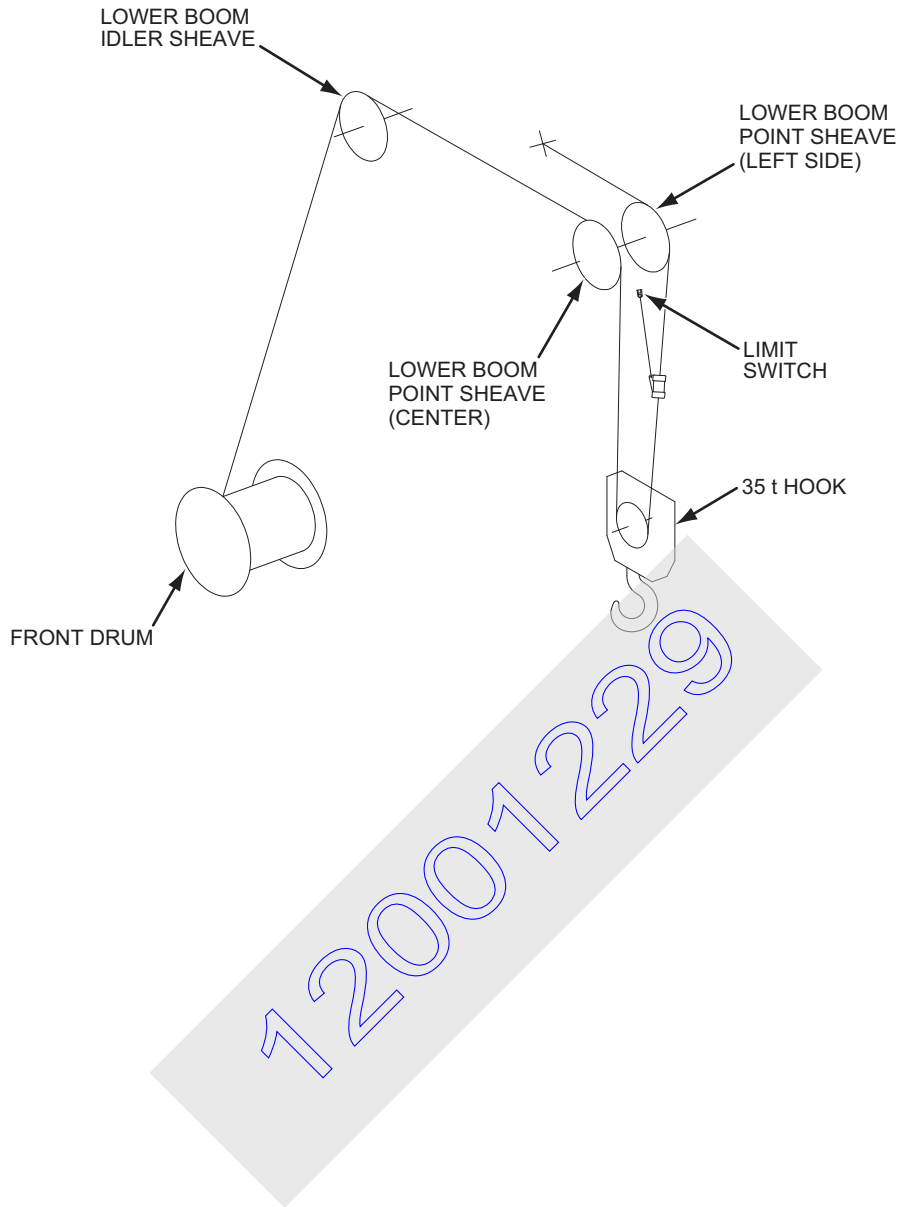
Pay extra attention to the running rope to prevent caught accident.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

1. Secure the wire rope end to the boom hoist drum with the wedge.
2. Wind up the wire rope to the boom drum.



4.6.6 REEVING HOOK HOIST WIRE ROPE



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.7 DISASSEMBLY OF BOOM BASE

#### 4.6.1 WINDING UP OF BOOM HOIST ROPE

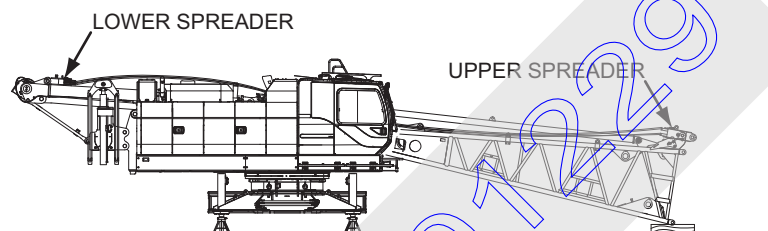
##### 1. WINDING UP OF BOOM HOIST ROPE

Winding up of the boom hoist rope to the boom hoist drum is explained here.

#### **WARNING**

Use safety belt whenever work is done on elevated place. Use walkway for work on the boom. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

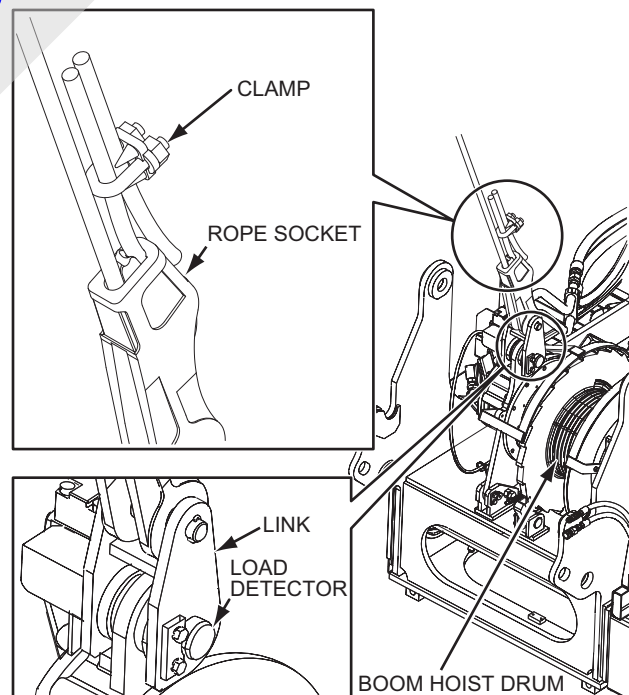
- (1) Confirm that the upper spreader is fixed to the boom base top bracket with pin.



- (2) Remove the wire rope from the boom hoist winch link.

#### **CAUTION**

Do not touch the wire rope with bare hands. Use leather gloves. Take extra care on running wire rope to avoid accident of being caught. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

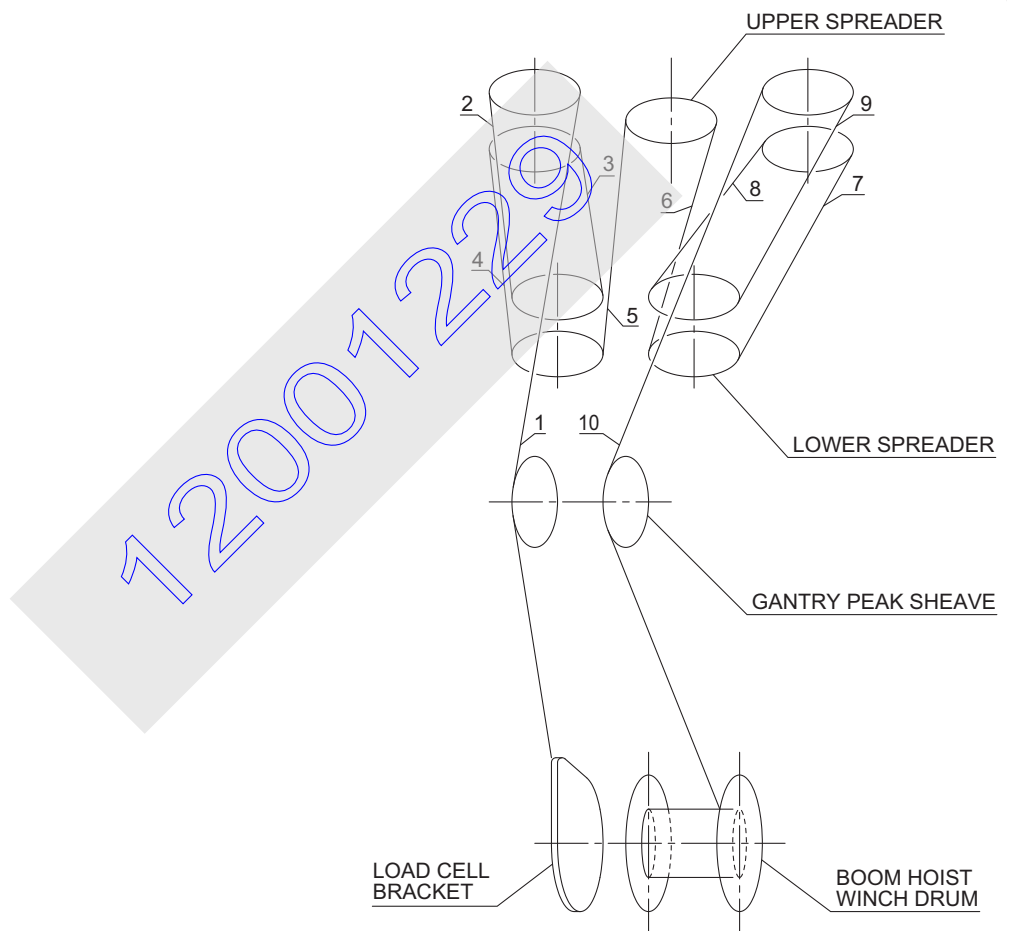
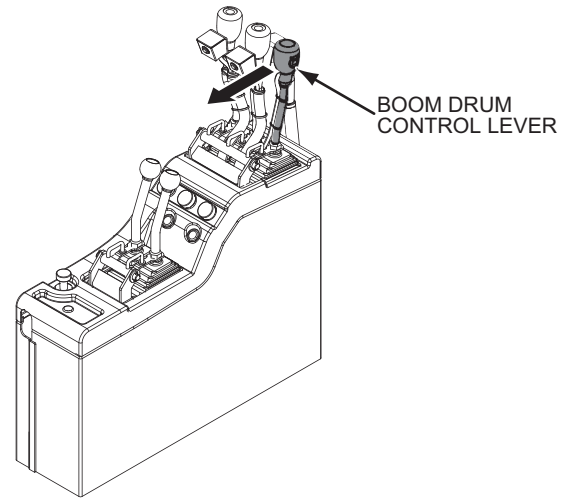


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (3) Wind up the wire rope to the boom hoist drum slowly by turning the boom drum control lever to raising side.

Apply some tension on the boom hoist wire rope and tap lightly on the rope with hammer to prevent rough spooling.

- (4) When the boom hoist wire rope is completely wound up, fix the rope end to the drum outer most layer with the steel wire.

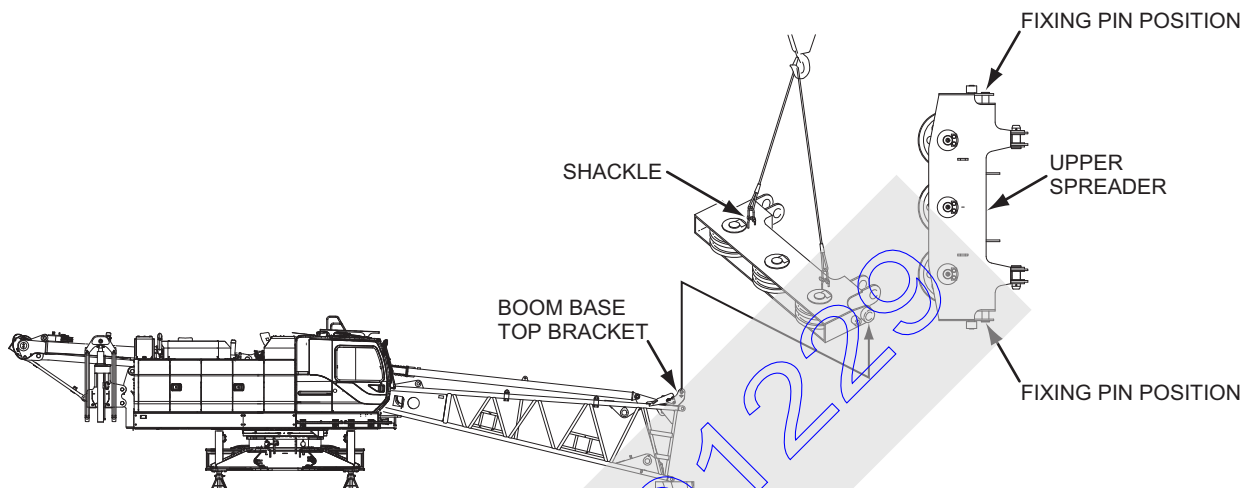


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 4.6.2 UPPER SPREADER REMOVAL

The upper spreader removal after the boom hoist wire rope is wound up to the boom hoist drum is explained here.

1. Remove the fixing pin of the boom base top bracket and remove the upper spreader.
2. Lower the upper spreader on the ground with the assisting crane.



#### **WARNING**

Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

#### **CAUTION**

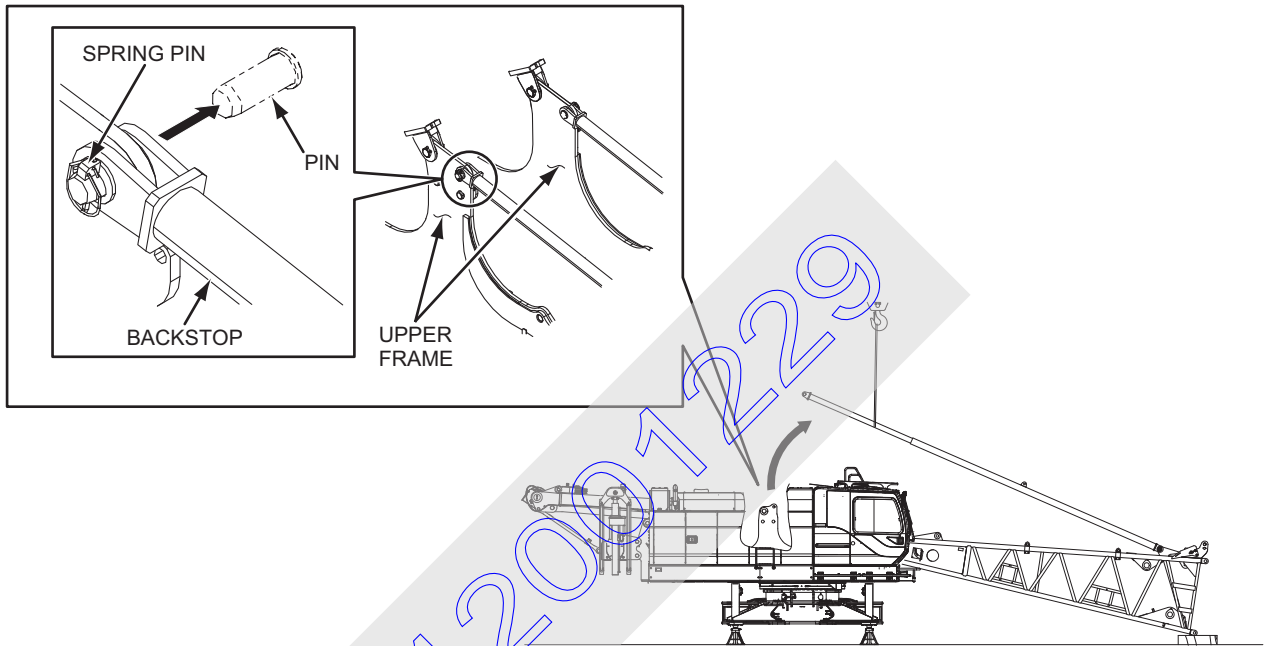
Take extra care about falling off during work on the boom top surface.



### 4.6.3 BACKSTOP REMOVAL

1. Lift up the backstop pipe slightly with the assisting crane.
2. Remove the spring pin and the pin on the upper frame side and lift up the backstop pipe and bring then close to the boom side.

Attach the removed spring pins and pins to the backstop.  
(on both side)



---

#### **WARNING**

Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

---

#### **CAUTION**

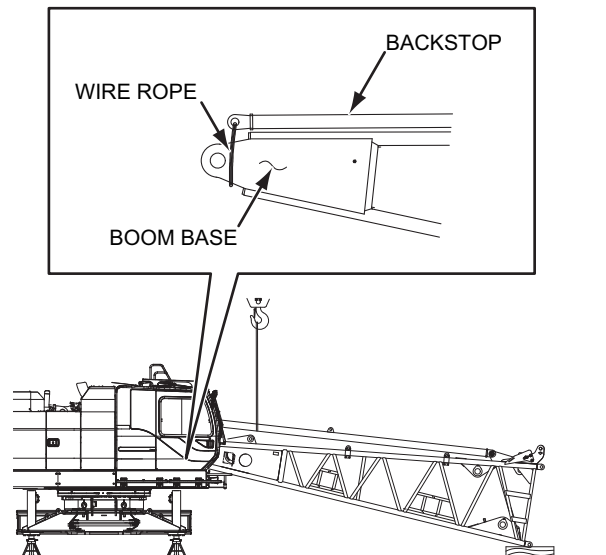
Do not stand on the area on the direction where the backstop is to be pulled out.

---

#### 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

3. While holding the backstop with the assisting crane, secure the backstop to the boom base with the wire rope.  
(both right and left hand)



12001229

### 4.6.4 REMOVAL OF BOOM BASE

Although this machine is designed to transport with the boom base attached, this article explains the removal procedure of the boom base if it becomes necessary to transport with the boom base removed.

Prior to work, check the machine condition again.

- The main machinery is placed on level and firm ground.
- The crawlers are extended to WORK position.

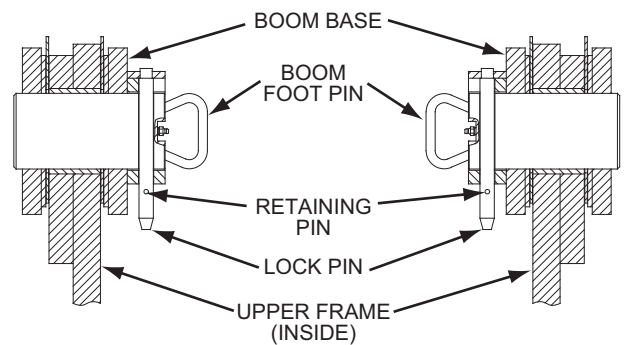
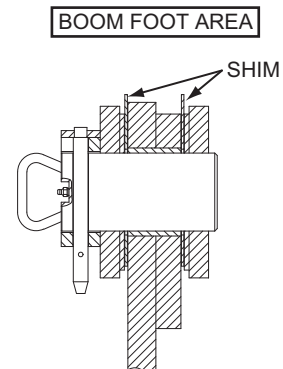
#### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not stand under or inside the boom to avoid accident of being crushed due to falling off of the boom during boom connecting work.**

1. Remove the wiring of the cable reel and the angle detector refer to "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE".
2. Take out the boom foot shim.

3. Place the boom base connector area on the wooden blocks.

12001229



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

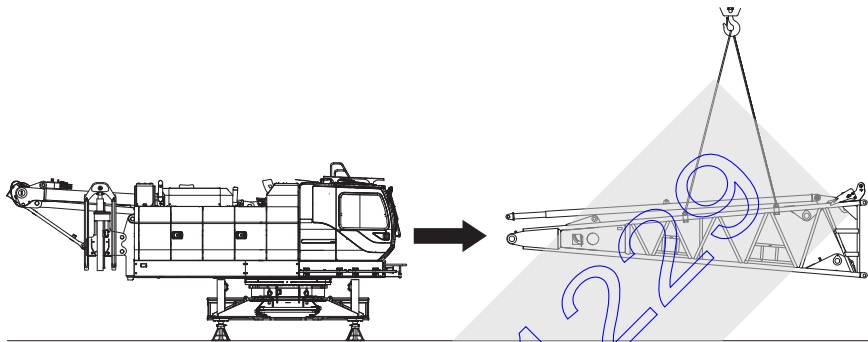
4. Hold the boom base foot area with the assisting crane and pull out the cab side (right hand) boom foot pin first and then left side boom foot pin.



**Do not put your finger or hand into pin hole.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in  
serious injury.**

---

5. Propel the machine backward slightly and lower the boom base to the ground with the assisting crane.



## 4.8 EXTENDING/RETRACTING THE CRAWLERS

### 4.7.1 EXTENDING THE CRAWLER

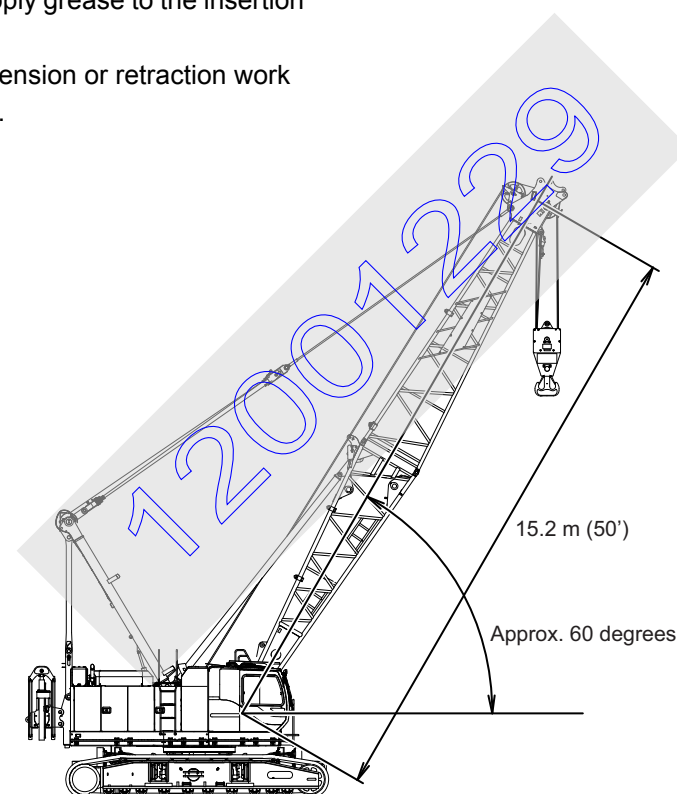
Although the crawler extending can be done without the boom base, this article explains the procedure with boom base attached.

Perform the crawler extending work under the following conditions.

- Without counterweight, carbody weight
- Boom.....Less than 15.2 m (50')
- Boom angle .....approx. 60 degrees

Prior to extending or retracting work, clean the axle extension completely and apply grease to the insertion area.

If the mud is adhered to, extension or retraction work would not be done smoothly.



---

**CAUTION**

Perform the crawler extending work on the flat place with steel plates placed.

Extend the crawlers with all the counterweight, carbody weight removed.

---

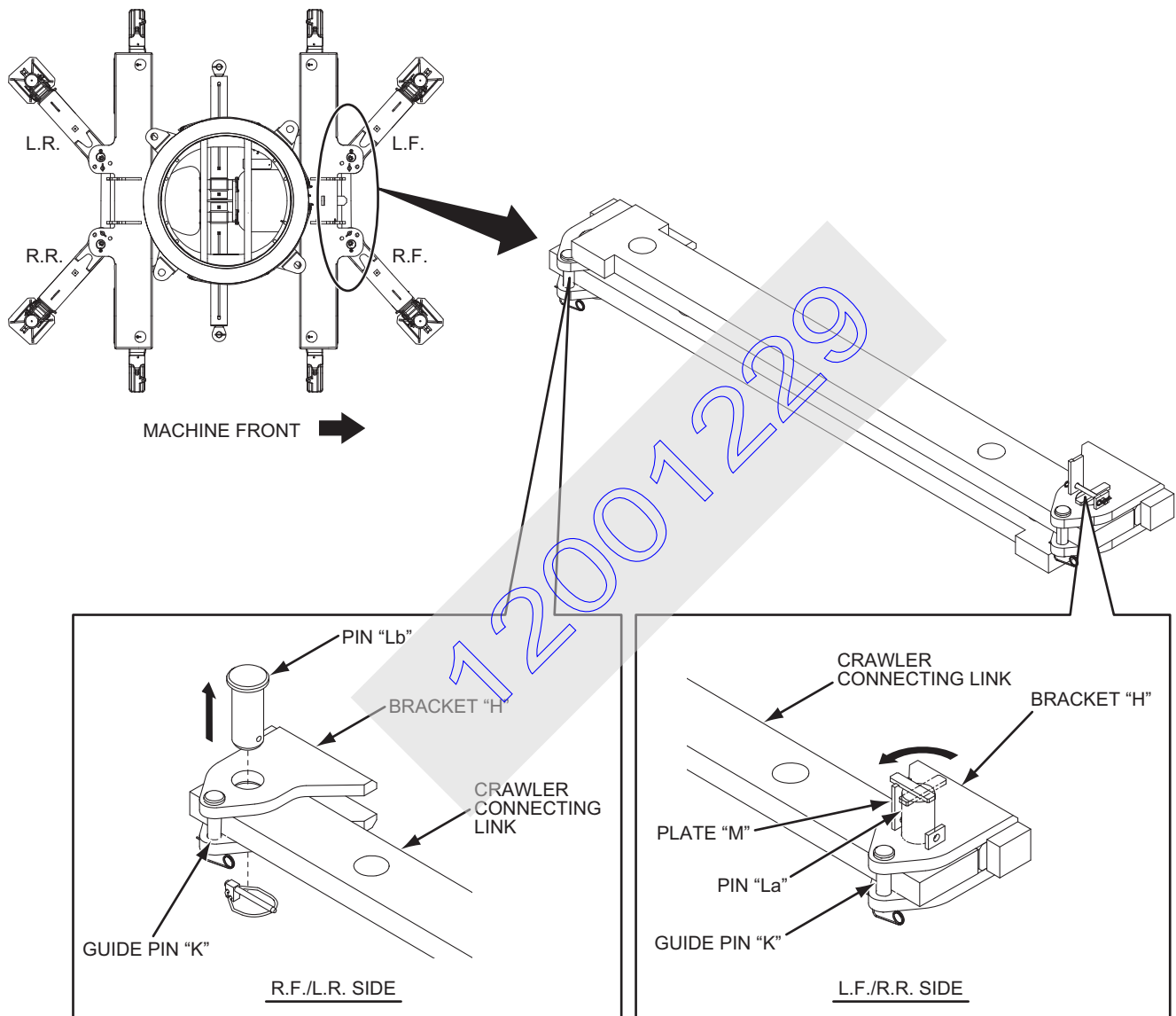
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

### 1. EXTENDING THE CRAWLERS

- (1) Handling of the crawler connecting links differs between those of "LF", "RR" and those of "RF", "LR".

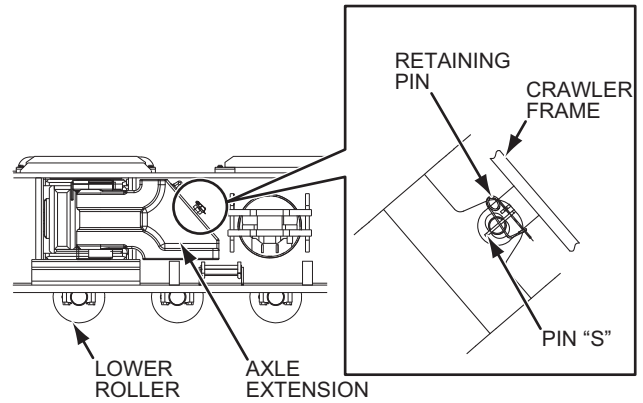
Place pins "La" of left front side and right rear side against the plate "M".

Pull out pins "Lb" of right front and left rear side in advance.

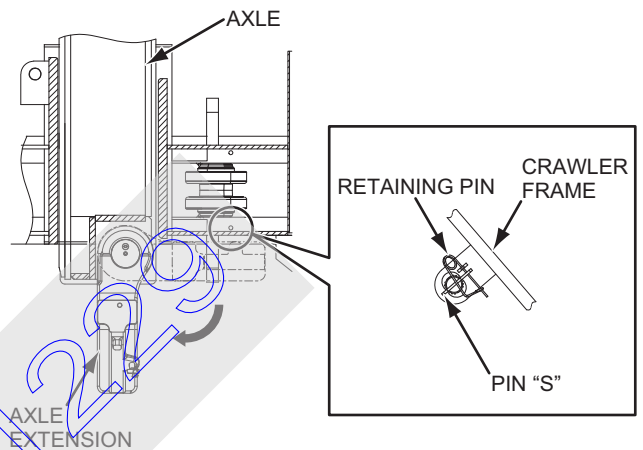


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

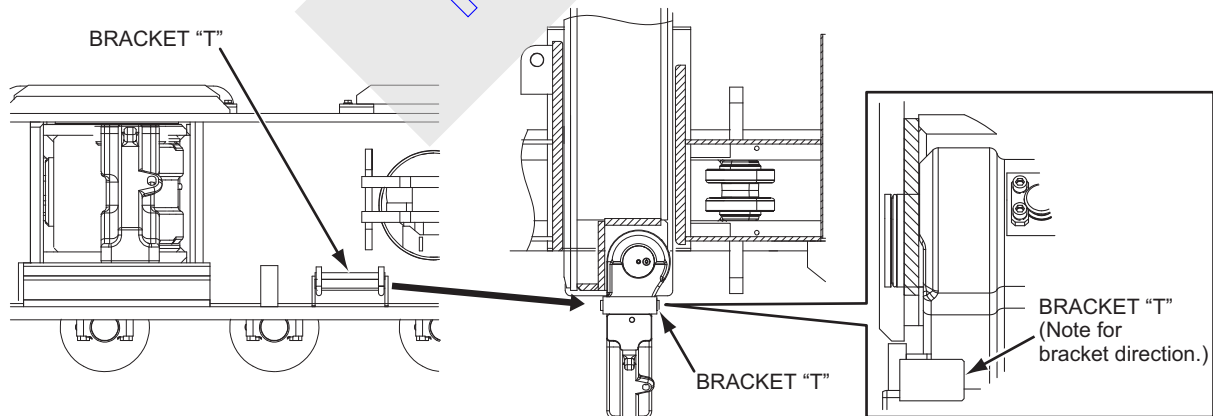
- (2) Pull out the pin "S" which secures the axle extension and the crawler frame.  
Remove the retaining pin before pulling the pin "S" out.  
(4 pieces on right and left)



- (3) Turn all four axle extensions for 90 degrees toward outside to make them parallel to the axles.  
Insert the pin "S" into the crawler frame bracket hole and secure it with the retaining pin.

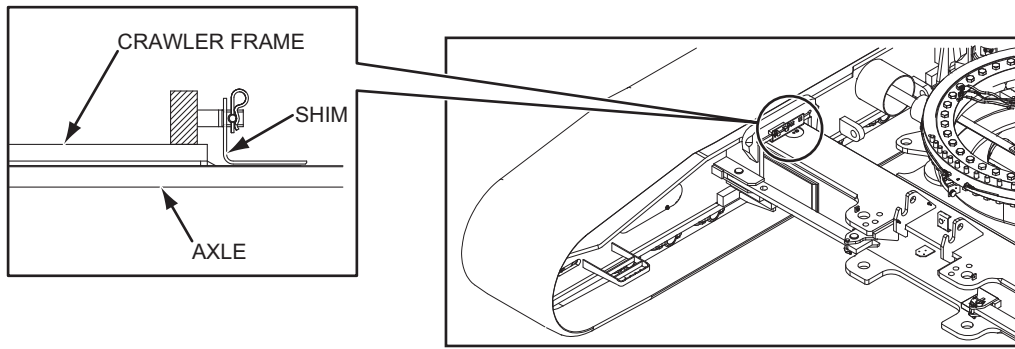


- (4) Insert the axle extension retaining bracket "T" to the foot area of the axle extension from the direction as shown lower.  
Stow the bracket "T" to the crawler frame.



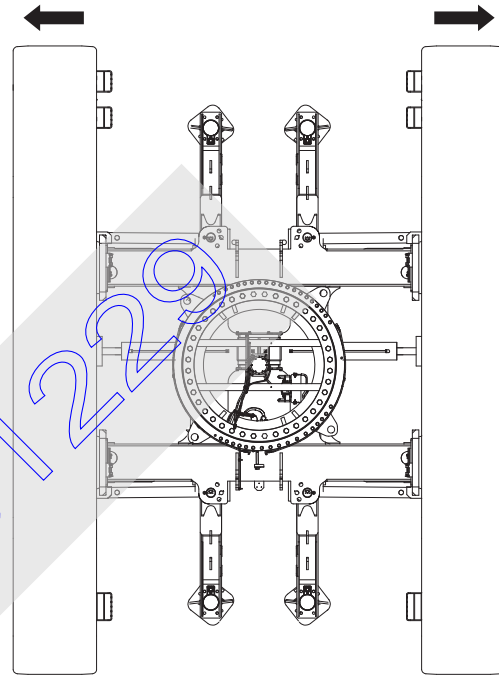
- (5) Take out the clearance adjusting shims between the crawler and the axle.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY



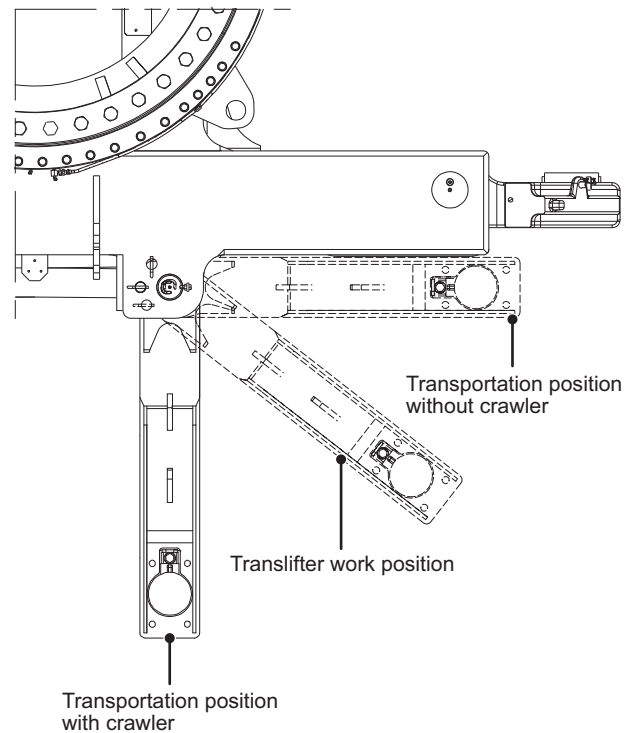
(6) Set the translifter to the "transportation position", and install the float to the vertical cylinder.

(7) Extend the vertical cylinder to lift the machine until the lower rollers are just clear of the track.



### **⚠ DANGER**

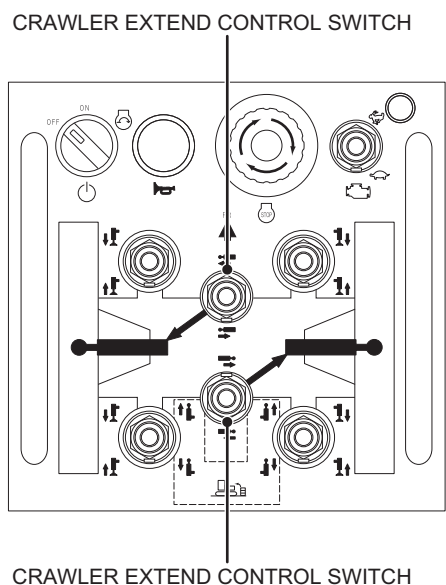
If the machine swings at transportation position, the machine would overturn to rear side. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.





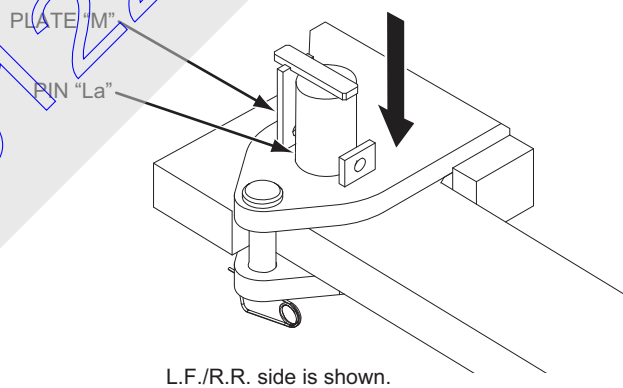
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (8) By controlling the crawler extend control switch of the remote controller, extend both crawlers (right and left) toward outside.



REMOTE CONTROL SWITCH BOX

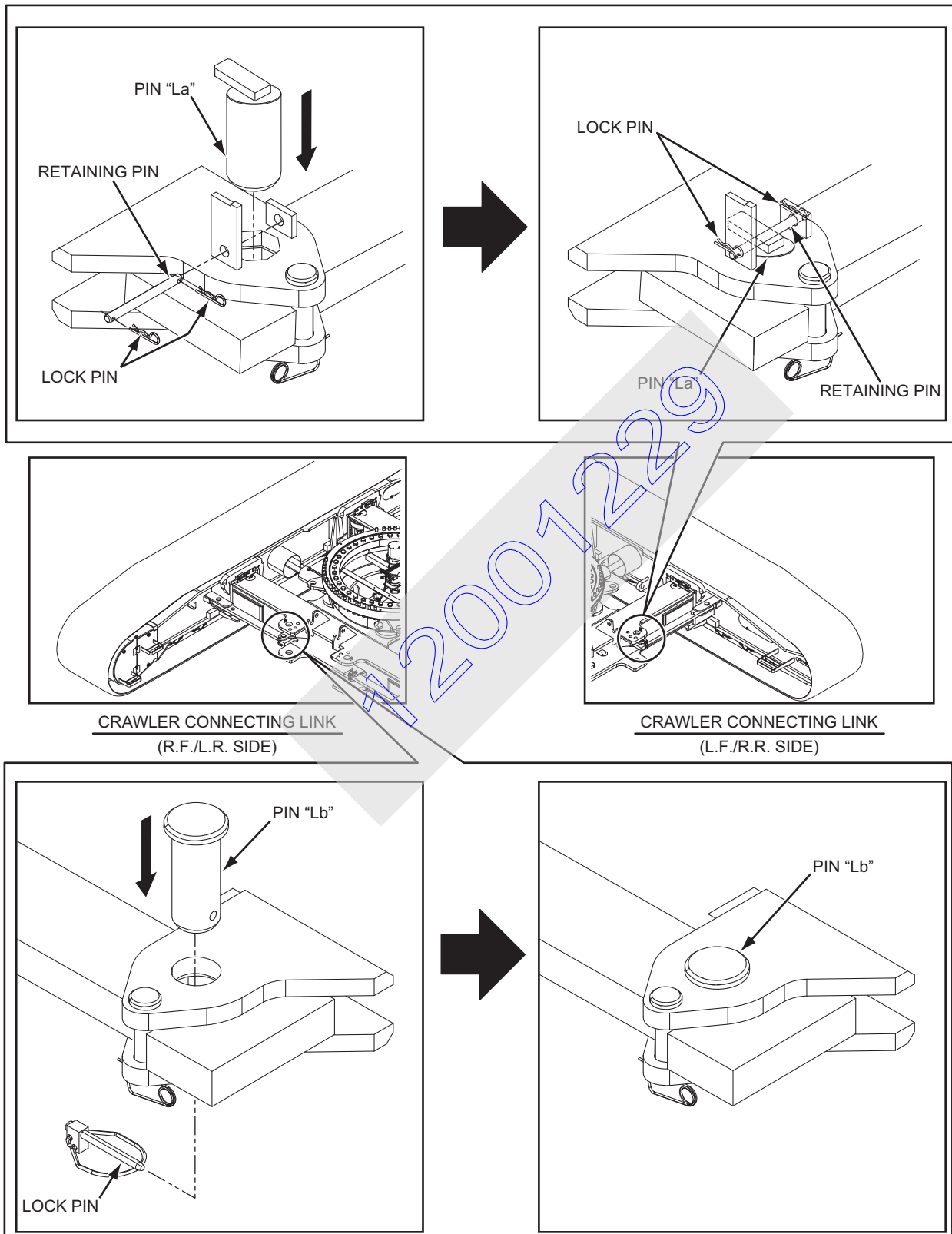
- (9) After extending the crawler for approx. 400 mm (1' 4") (Ref : ext/ret stroke is 900 mm (2' 11")), stop the crawler ext/ret switch once and place the pin "La" on extending/retracting side on the link.



12001229

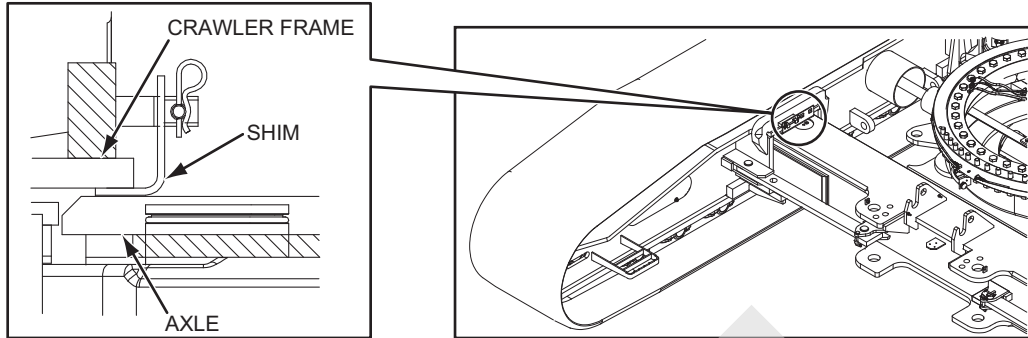
## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (10) By extending the crawler to the extended position, the pin "La" and "Lb" will be inserted into the pin hole. Insert the retaining pin on the pin "La" and "Lb" and fix them with right and left lock pins.



## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (11) Retract the vertical cylinder, and remove the float.
- (12) Swing the upper machinery to make clearance between the crawler and the axle larger and install the clearance adjusting shims.  
Each shim has its number stamped. Install it to meet with frame side number.



12001229

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

---

### 4.7.2 RETRACTING THE CRAWLER

Although the crawler retraction can be done without the boom base attached, the procedure with boom base attached is explained here.

- Without counterweight, carbodyweight
- Boom.....Less than 15.2 m (50')
- Boom angle.....approx. 60 degrees

Prior to extending or retracting work, clean and wash the axle and the axle extension completely and apply grease on the inserting area.

If the mud is adhered to, extension or retraction work may not be preformed easily.

---

 **CAUTION**

Perform the crawler retraction work on the flat place with the steel plate placed.

Retract the crawler with all the counterweight removed.

---

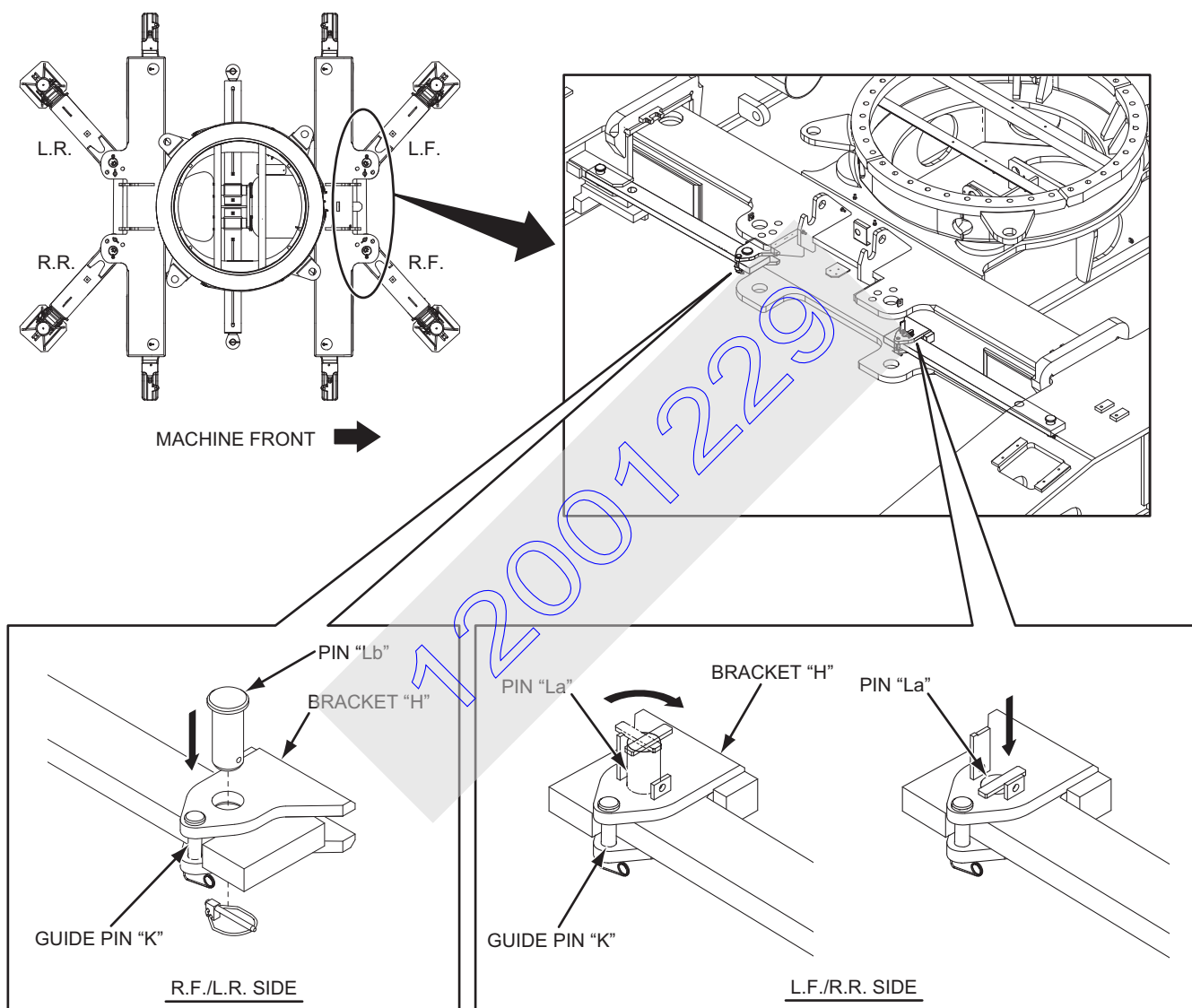
12001229

1. RETRACTING THE CRAWLER FRAME

(1) Handling of the crawler connecting links differs between those of "LF", "RR" and those of "RF", "LR".

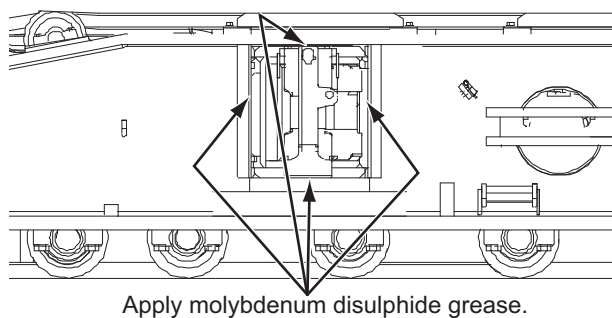
Place pins "La" of left front side and right rear side against the plate "M".

Pull out pins "Lb" of right front and left rear side in advance.



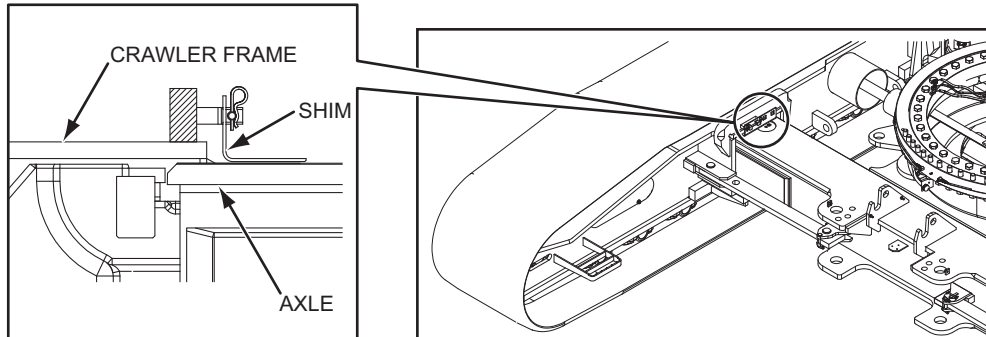
**Note**

Apply grease on the sliding surface between the carbody and crawler prior to work. (4 locations)

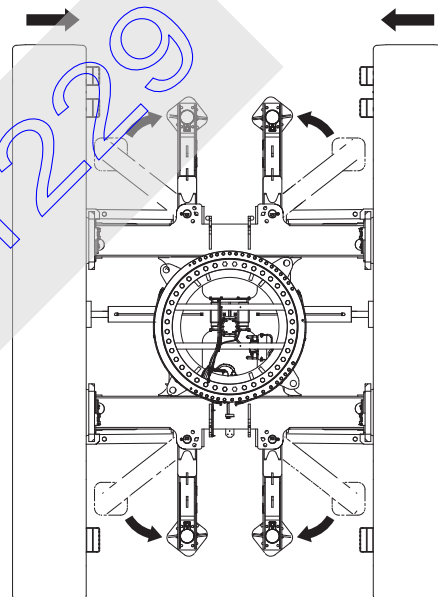


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (2) Take out the clearance adjusting shims between the crawler and the axle.  
Stow the removed shims as shown in the figure.  
Swing the upper machinery to make clearance between the crawler and the axle larger and install the clearance adjusting shims.

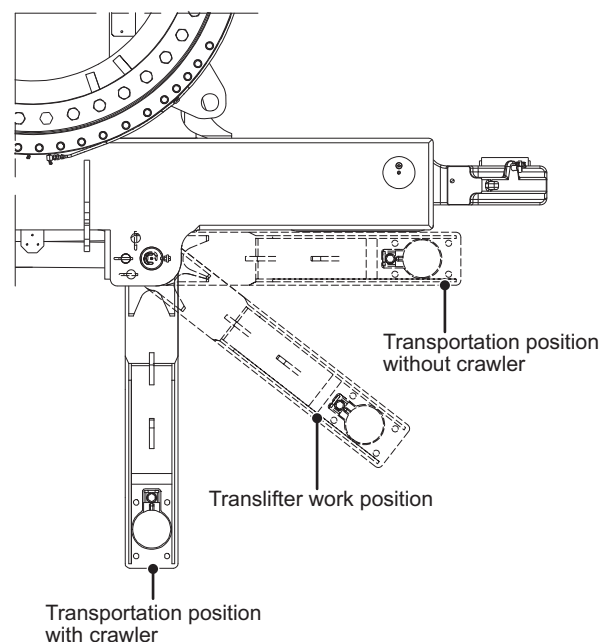


- (3) Set the translifter to the "transportation position",  
and install the float to the vertical cylinder.  
  
(4) Extend the vertical cylinder to lift the machine until  
the lower rollers are just clear of the track.



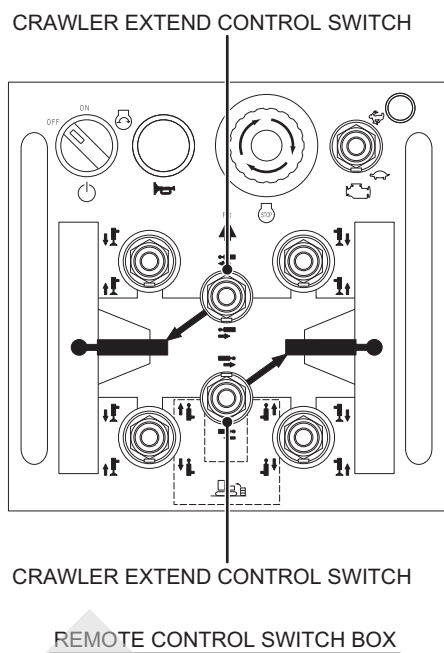
### **⚠ DANGER**

If the machine swings at transportation position,  
the machine would overturn to rear side.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in  
serious injury or loss of life.

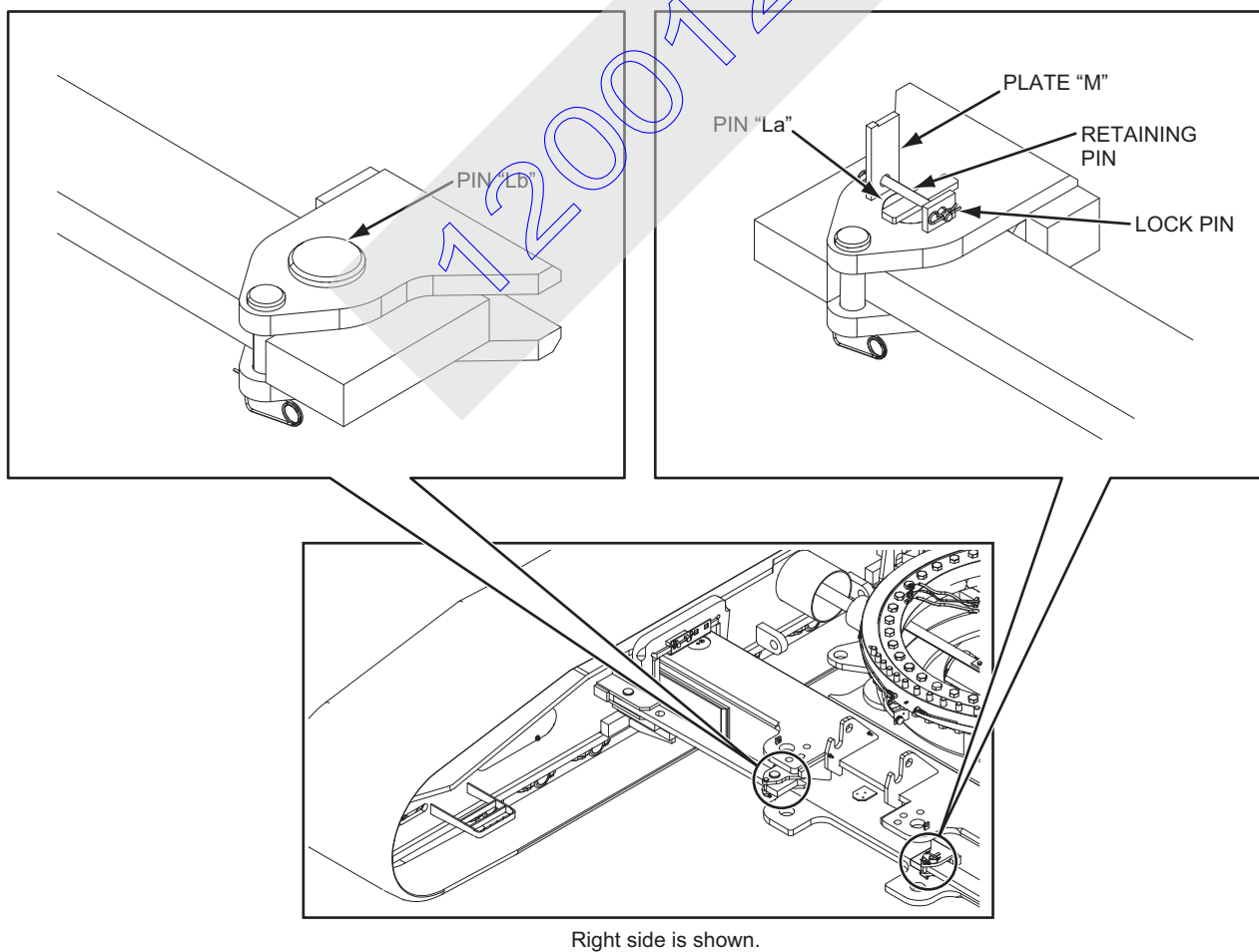


## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

- (5) By controlling the crawler extend control switch of the remote controller, retract both crawlers (right and left) toward inner side.
- (6) After retracting the crawler for approx. 400 mm (1' 4") (Ref: ext/ret stroke is 900 mm (2' 11")), stop the crawler ext/ret switch once and place the pin "La" and "Lb" which has been placed against the retracting plate "M" on the link.



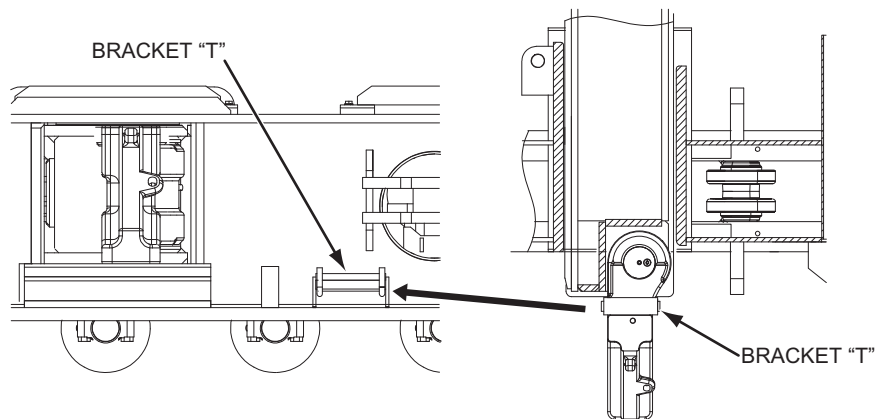
- (7) Retract the crawler to the retracted position and confirm that the pin "La" and "Lb" is inserted. Then set the retaining pin and fix with the lock pin.



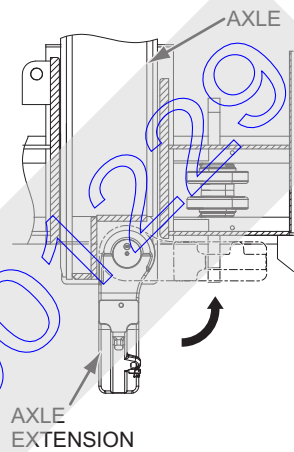
- (8) Retract the vertical cylinder, and remove the float.

## 4. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN MACHINERY

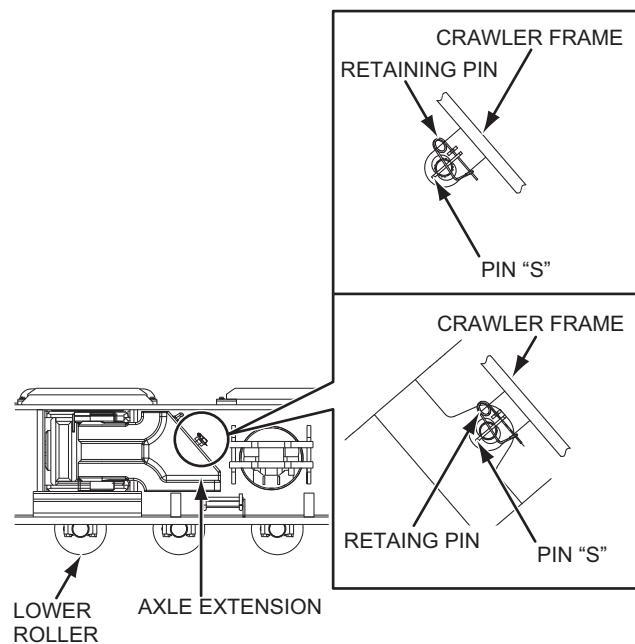
- (9) Remove the retaining bracket "T" from the axle extension root area and move to the stowing position.



- (10) Rotate all four axle extensions for 90 degrees toward inside to make them right angle with axles.



- (11) Secure the axle extension and crawler frame with the pin "S" and insert the retaining pin.



- (12) Swing the upper machinery for 180 degrees and retract the other side of the crawler.

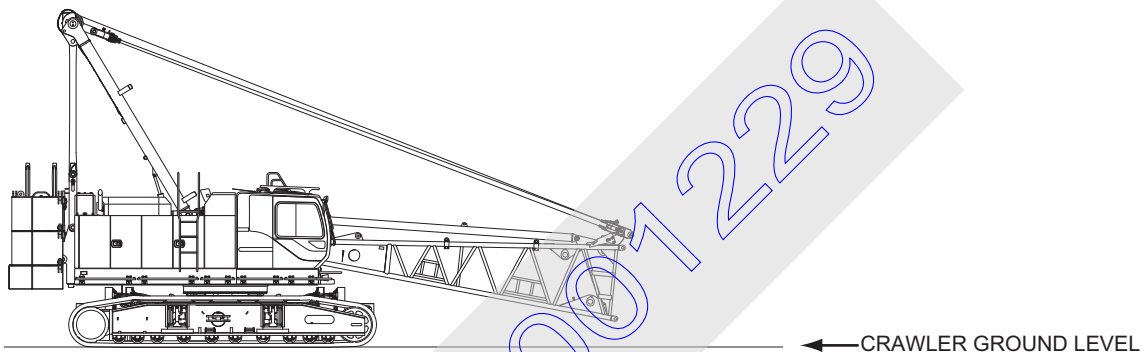


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

This section covers assembling, erecting, lowering and disassembling of the crane attachment and transport of the boom.

This assembly procedure starts when the machine is under the following conditions.

- The crawler is extended to the extended position.
- All counter weights and carbody weights are installed.
- The boom hoist rope has been reeved through the upper and lower spreader and the gantry is in work position (high gantry).
- The base boom is attached to the main machinery.
- The crane backstop has been installed.



### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not lower the boom base tip to the level lower than ground level. Otherwise some components may be damaged with the boom or the backstop.**

Before starting the actual work, confirm the following items.

#### 1. PLACE

- (1) Paying attention to that erecting and lowering of the attachment must be operated in front or rear of the crawlers.

There must be adequate room for assembling and the ground must be firm and level.

Improve the ground as required and lay sheet plates of iron.

The ground shall be drained unless the place is in marshes or wetland.

- (2) There must be also adequate room to set an assisting crane and to allow free passage of vehicles delivering necessary parts and for unloading and storing the parts until they are required.

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

### 2. WORK PROCEDURE AND PREARRANGEMENT FOR SAFETY.

Have a qualified supervisor who is competent in assembly and disassembly procedures.

Before assembling work, gather all concerned to make previous arrangement for the working procedure and safety, and make precise role and responsibility of each person.

Review potential hazards and hazardous locations in the course of work.

### 3. PREOPERATION CHECKS

Perform the preoperation checks of the basic machine.

---

#### **DANGER**

**Do not allow any person to enter under, inside of the boom, jib during assembly, disassembly. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---

---

#### **DANGER**

**Do not apply slings directly to a sharp edge part to prevent the slings from cutting. Apply the sling to the guy cable pin hole or bracket for lifting through a shackle. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious accident.**

---

---

#### **WARNING**

**Wear the safety belt during the high place work and prepare the foot hold for work on the boom. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---

---

#### **WARNING**

**Do not put your hand or finger into a pin hole. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

---

**⚠ WARNING**

To avoid serious injuries, fix guy line to both ends of each boom when placing guy lines on the booms during boom connection.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

---

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not handle boom or jib sections with chains, hooks or wire rope attached directly to main chords or lacings. Use soft material sling.

---

#### 4. CAUTIONS DURING ASSEMBLY WORK

Refer to P.8-7 for weight and dimension during assembly.

Pay attention on center of gravity and stability of parts and machine.

The operator has to be informed if any person moved to out of sight from the operator or at hazardous location when equipment or machine part moves.

For use of synthetic slings, follow manufacturer's guidelines provided, and prevent damage from shifting or concentrated load.

Pin shall not be removed from the following components when they are under tension ; Guy cable (line) or boom.

12001229



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.1 ARRANGEMENT OF BOOM/JIB/GUY LINE

#### 1. PREPARATION OF BOOM/JIB/GUY LINE

Preparation of boom/jib/guy line and steel blocking plate (Pillow wedge).

Prepare necessary parts.

##### (1) Boom and Jib

Prepare the boom and jib following to the arrangement chart.

Do not assemble the boom with boom arrangement not specified in the arrangement chart.

Also check each boom and jib for damage.

If damage is confirmed, repair the damage in the designated service shop.

Item	In case of crane boom
The boom length in which the jib can be installed	26.4 m to 61.0 m (90 ft to 200 ft)
The boom length in which the aux. sheave can be installed	15.2 m to 66.1 m (50 ft to 220 ft)

### **⚠ DANGER**

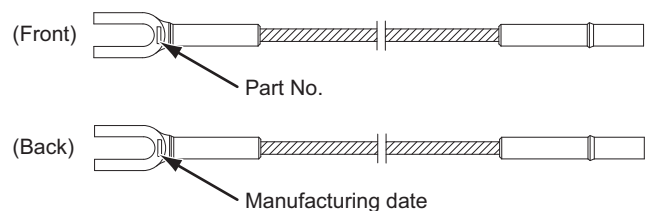
**Do not use damaged boom section. The damaged booms may collapse and cause serious injuries or loss of life.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

##### (2) Guy Line

Prepare the guy lines following the arrangement chart. The diameter of the boom guy line is 34 mm (1.34 inch), and the diameter of the jib guy line is 22 mm (0.87 inch).

To identify each guy line, see the part number stamped on the connector. (last 5 digits)

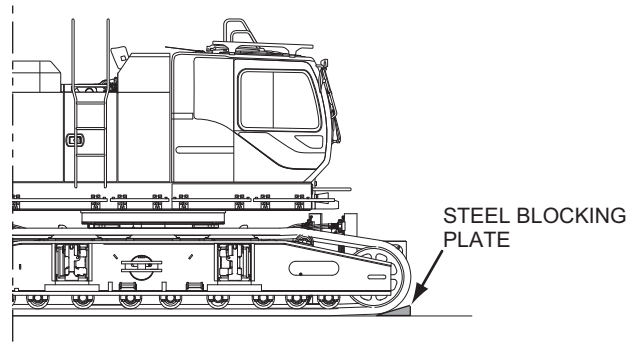


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

### (3) Steel Blocking Plate

As for crane specification, when erecting of max. boom of 70.1 m (230 ft), place the steel plates between the ends of the crawler and the ground. For the combination of the boom of 61.0 m (200 ft) length and the jib of any length, place steel plates between the ends of the crawlers and the ground.



## 2. BOOM AND GUY LINE ARRANGEMENT

---

### Note

Depending on the purchased configuration of boom, boom may not be able to arrange as shown on the chart.

The boom arrangement with the "\*" is the preferred configuration. Using the "\*" arrangement will allow any shorter boom length to be assembled. Shown below the "\*" configurations are acceptable arrangement if required due to boom that was purchased.

---

12001229

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

Boom length m (ft)	Boom and guy line configuration chart (Standard boom) 1/3	With fixed jib	With aux. sheave	Front drum	Rear drum	Boom self erecting at side direction
				Max. Number of parts line	Max. Number of parts line	
15.2 (50)		×	○	10	2	○
18.3 (60)	*	×	○	9	2	○
21.3 (70)	*	×	○	8	2	○
24.4 (80)	*	×	○	7	2	○
27.4 (90)	*	○	○	6	2	○
30.5 (100)	*	○	○	6	2	○
33.5 (110)	*	○	○	6	2	○
36.6 (120)	*	○	○	5	2	○

○ : Attachable      × : Not attachable

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

Boom length m (ft)	Boom and guy line configuration chart (Standard boom) 2/3	With fixed jib	With aux. sheave	Front drum	Rear drum	Boom self erecting at side direction
				Max. Number of parts line	Max. Number of parts line	
39.6 (130)		○	○	4	2	○
42.7 (140)		○	○	4	2	○
45.7 (150)		○	○	4	2	○
48.8 (160)		○	○	3	2	○
51.8 (170)		○	○	3	2	○
54.9 (180)		○	○	3	2	○

○ : Attachable      × : Not attachable



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

Boom length m (ft)	Boom and guy line configuration chart (Standard boom) 3/3	With fixed jib	With aux. sheave	Front drum	Rear drum	Boom self erecting at side direction
				Max. Number of parts line	Max. Number of parts line	
57.9 (190)		○	○	3	2	○
61.0 (200)		○	○	2	2	○
64.0 (210)		×	○	2	2	○
67.1 (220)		×	○	2	2	×
70.1 (230)		×	×	2	-	×

○ : Attachable      × : Not attachable

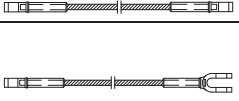
↗ mark shows the guy line installing position when the jib is used.

\* mark shows the standard boom arrangement which make the boom arrangement of less than the each boom length possible.

○ mark shows the installing of the cable roller for the insert boom.

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

Kind of boom insert	
Symbol	Boom length
10	3.0 m (10 ft)
20	6.1 m (20 ft)
40	12.2 m (40 ft)

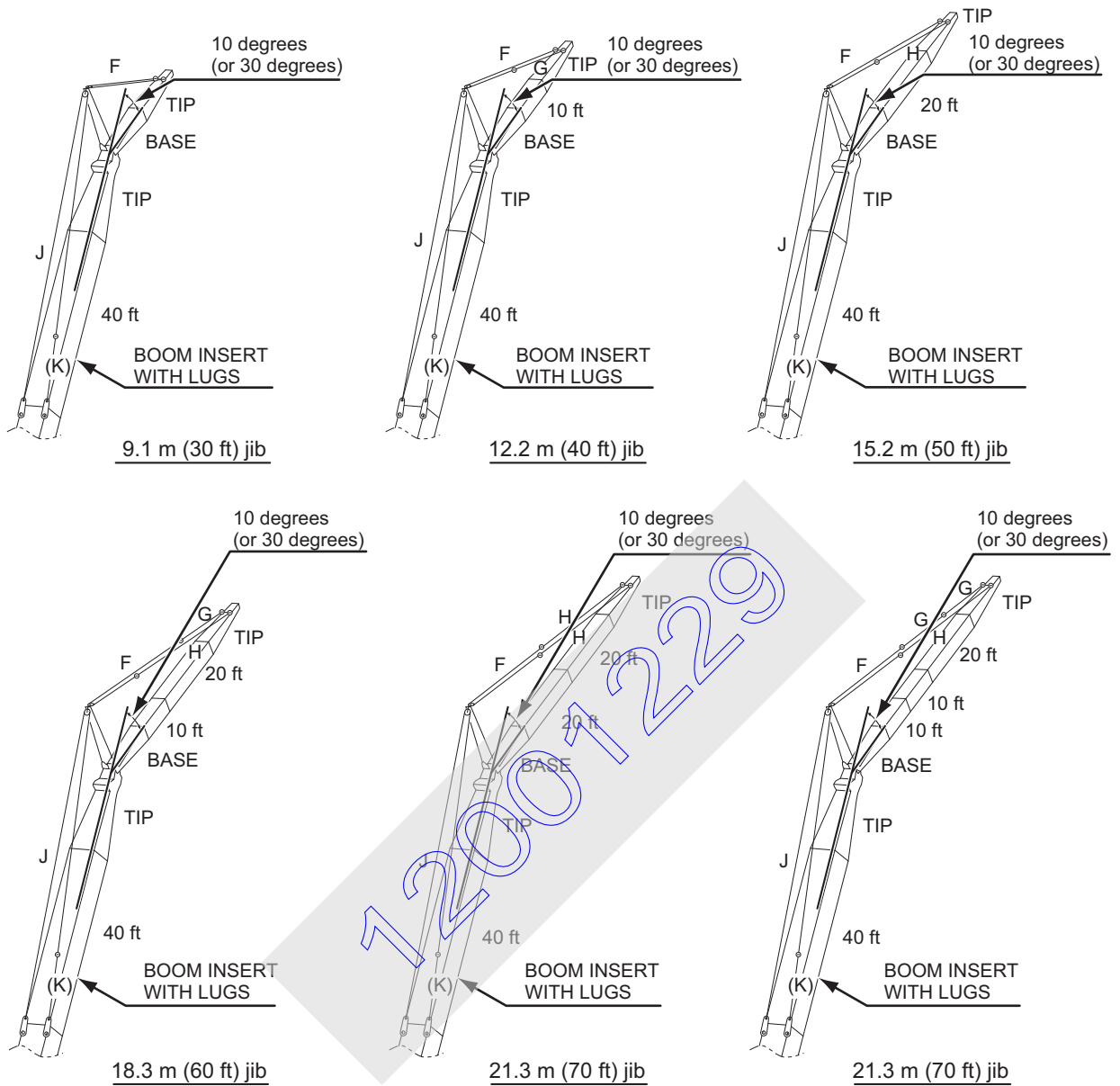
Boom guy line chart				Connector type
Symbol	Guy line dimension		Remarks [m(ft)]	
	Diameter mm (in)	Length m (ft)		
A	34 (1-11/32)	7.1 (23.3)	Boom tip	
B	34 (1-11/32)	3.05 (10)	3.0 (10) Bom insert	
C	34 (1-11/32)	6.10 (20)	6.1 (20) Bom insert	
E	34 (1-11/32)	12.19 (40)	12.2 (40) Bom insert	

12001229

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### ARRANGEMENT OF JIB AND GUY LINE

The length of the boom to which the jib can be attached is 26.4 m (90 ft) to 61.0 m (200 ft).



Arrangement of guy line in boom side	
Offset angle	Boom arrangement
	(Boom tip + 12.2 m (40 ft)) Arrangement
10 degrees	J
30 degrees	J + K


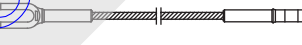

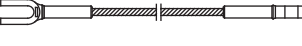
K : Additional guy line when the offset angle is 30 degrees

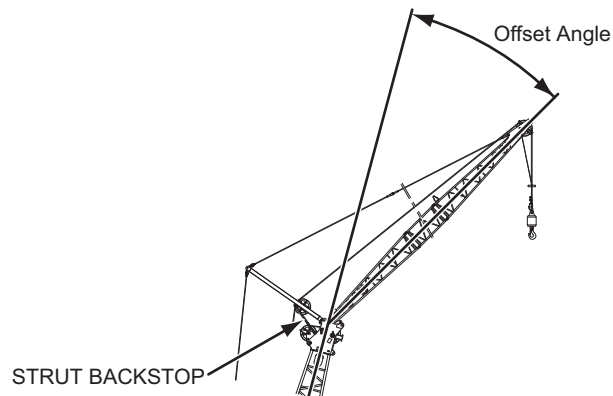
Arrangement of guy line in jib side				
8.1 m (30 ft) Jib	12.2 m (40 ft) Jib	15.2 m (50 ft) Jib	17.3 m (60 ft) Jib	21.3 m (70 ft) Jib
F	F + G	F + H	G + F + H	H + F + H
				H + F + G + G

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

Boom length m (ft)	Jib length m (ft)					Self erecting of boom with jib in side direction
	8.1 (30)	12.2 (40)	15.2 (50)	17.3 (60)	21.3 (70)	
26.4 (90)	O	O	O	O	O	O
30.5 (100)	O	O	O	O	O	O
33.5 (110)	O	O	O	O	O	O
36.6 (120)	O	O	O	O	O	O
38.6 (130)	O	O	O	O	O	O
42.7 (140)	O	O	O	O	O	O
45.7 (150)	O	O	O	O	O	O
47.8 (160)	O	O	O	O	O	O
51.8 (170)	O	O	O	O	O	O
54.9 (180)	O	O	O	O	O	O
56.9 (190)	O	O	O	O	O	X
61.0 (200)	O	O	O	O	O	X

O: Installation possible  
X: Installation not possible

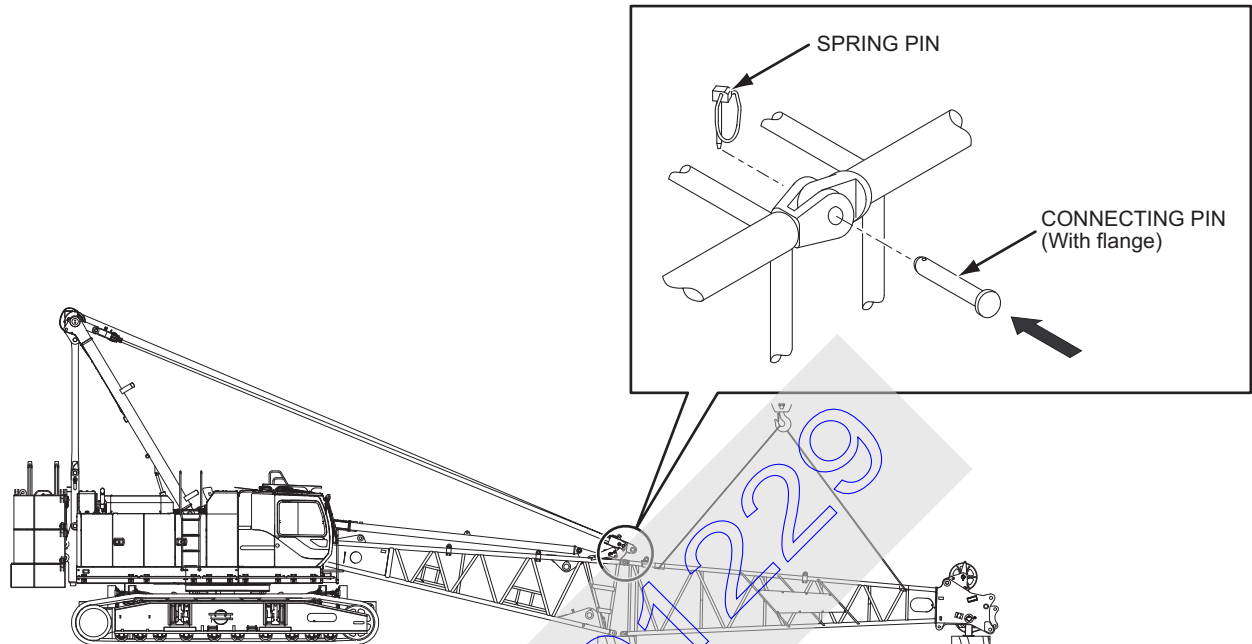
Symbol	Kind of guy line		Connector type
	Diameter mm (inch)	Length m (ft)	
J	Φ22 (7/8)	40.0 (131' 2")	
K	Φ22 (7/8)	2.44 (8')	
F	Φ22 (7/8)	19.34 (63' 5")	
G	Φ22 (7/8)	5.88 (19' 3")	
H	Φ22 (7/8)	11.75 (38' 6")	



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.2 INSTALLING THE BOOM TIP

1. Hold the boom tip with the assist crane.  
Align the top connectors of the boom tip with that of the boom base and tap the connecting pins (pin with flange) in, and insert the spring pin into the side of the connecting pins to fix them.



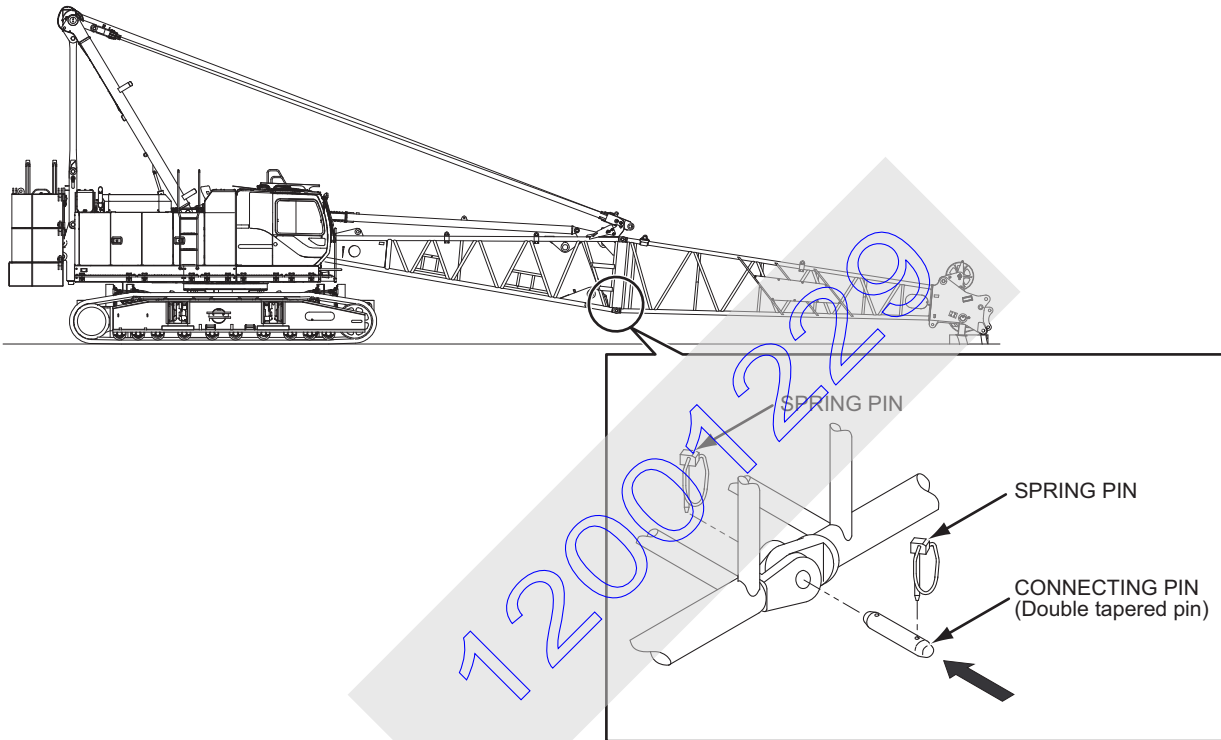
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

2. Raise the boom base until the lower pin holes are aligned with each other. Then tap the connecting pins (double tapered pin) in, and insert the spring pins into the both ends of the connecting pin.

### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not stand under, inside, or on the boom structure when the connecting boom.**

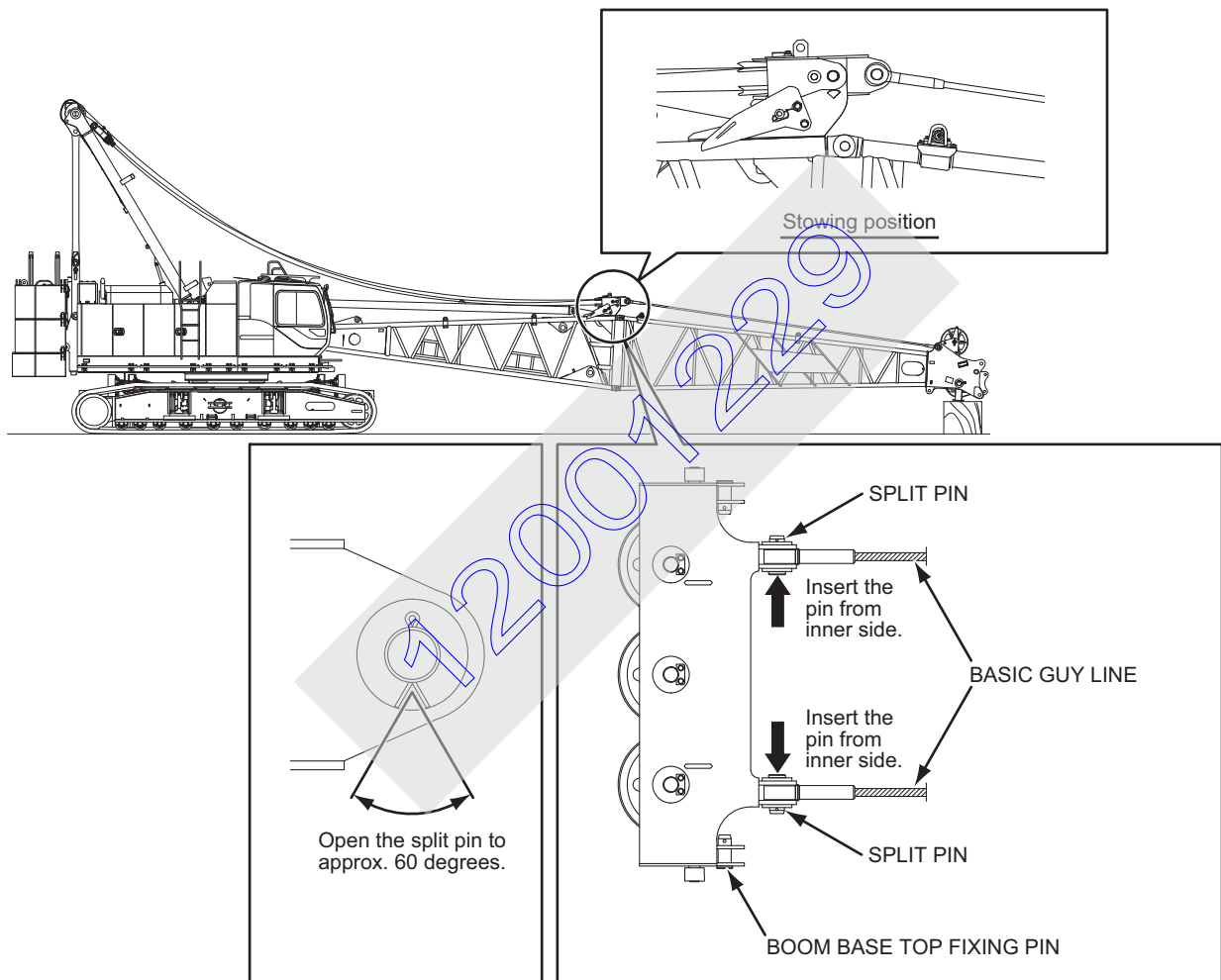
**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.3 INSTALLATION OF THE BASIC GUY LINE

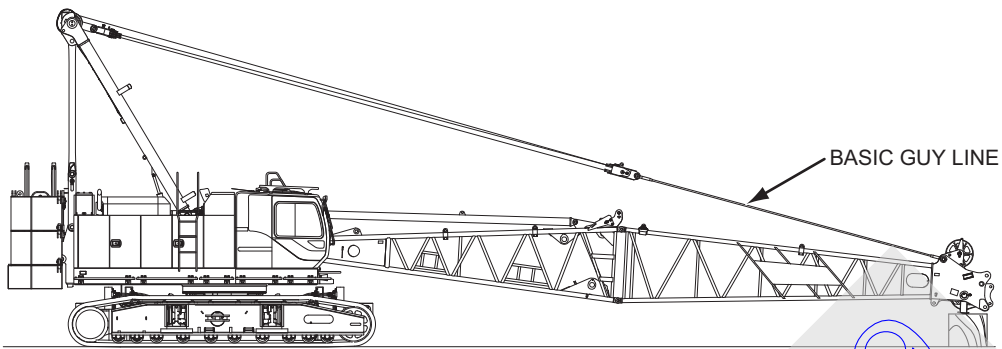
1. Install the basic guy line to the boom tip and upper spreader.  
Open the split pin of the guy line installing pins to approx. 60 degrees.
2. Remove the connecting pin and disconnect the upper spreader from top of boom base.  
Loosen the boom hoist wire rope enough not to apply tension to the upper spreader.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

3. Turn the boom drum control lever into the raising side and wind up the boom hoist wire rope slowly. During this operation, apply tension on the lower layer rope to prevent rope upsetting and tap the rope lightly with a hammer etc to make rope winding evenly. Stop winding the boom hoist wire rope just before the lower portion of the boom tip point sheave becomes afloat.



12001229



### 5.1.4 CONNECTING THE BOOM INSERT

This section covers procedure to connect the boom insert (s) from the condition that the basic-boom has been once assembled, to assemble the long length boom.

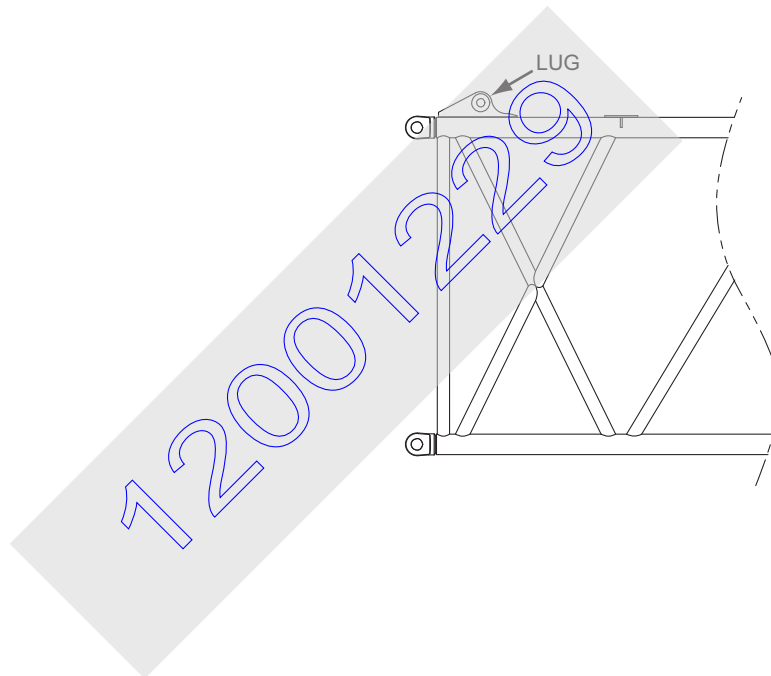
#### 1. KIND OF BOOM INSERT

There are four types of boom inserts as follows.

Standard boom insert	Boom insert with lug
3.0 m (10 ft)	-
6.1 m (20 ft)	-
12.2 m (40 ft)	12.2 m (40 ft)

The case that the boom insert with the lugs attached is as follows.

For the specification with jib.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 2. WINDING UP THE FRONT DRUM WIRE ROPE

Remove the rope socket from the wire rope, and wind up the wire rope onto the drum.

#### **CAUTION**

Do not touch a wire rope directly with bare hands. If wire protrude, you could be injured. Working gloves are recommended.

Keep away from rope end when removing the wire rope. It may suddenly jump and cause injury.

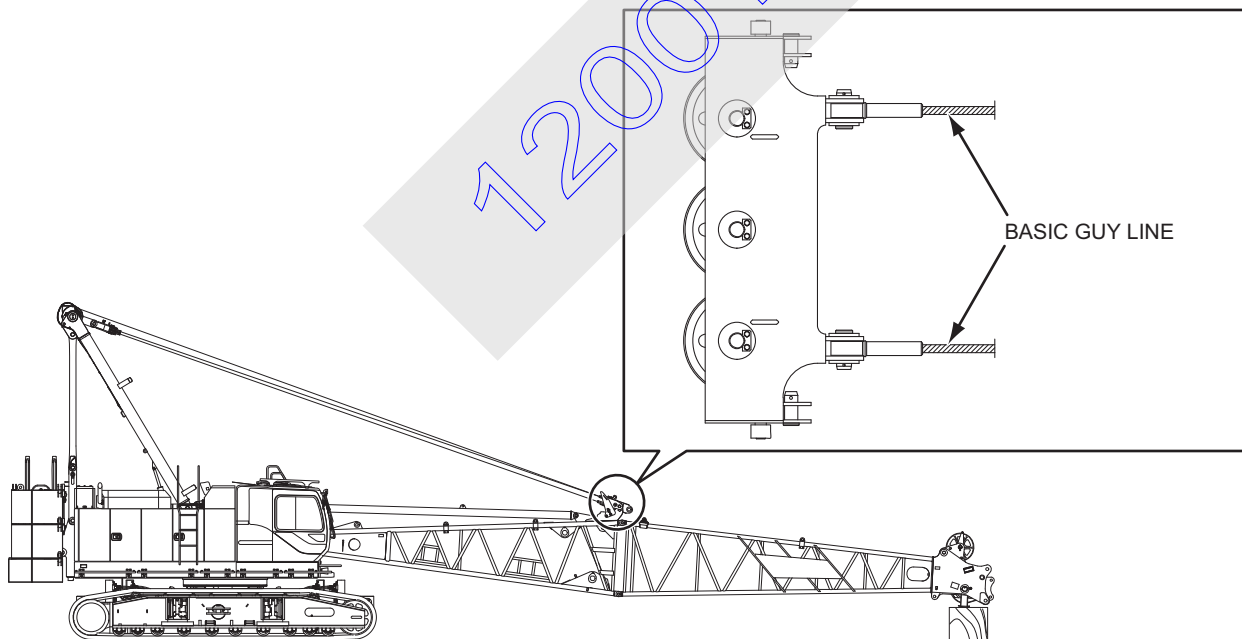
Keep hands and clothing clear of the rotating drum and running wire rope.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

### 3. REMOVING THE BOOM TIP SECTION

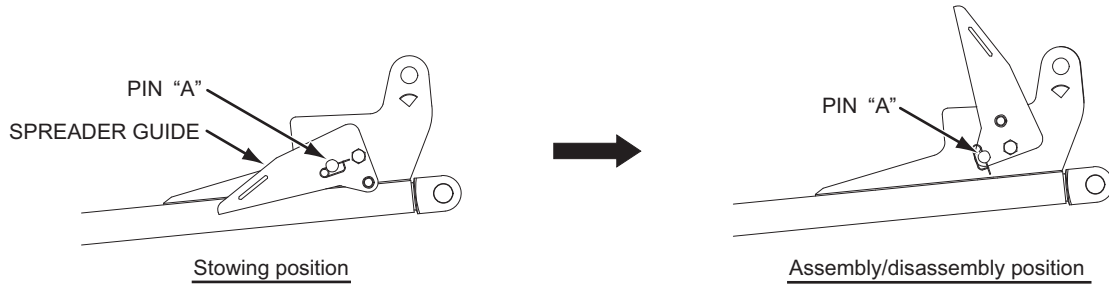
(1) Lower the boom and install the upper spreader onto the top of the boom base with the use of spreader guide.

How to use spreader guide is shown on the next page.

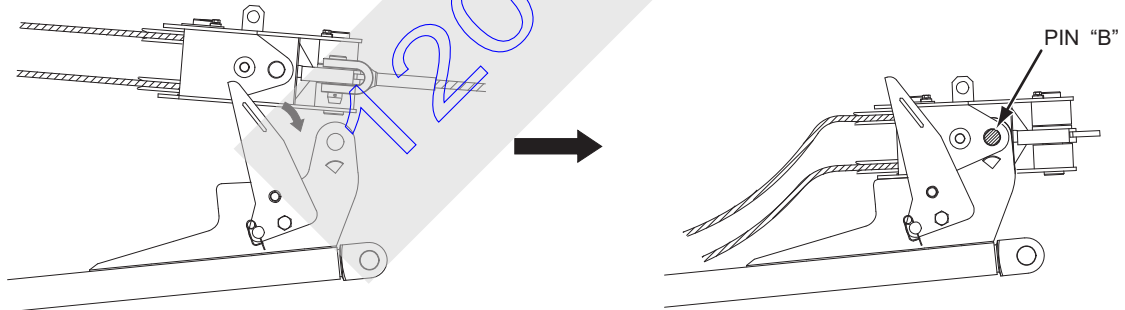


### HOW TO USE SPREADER GUIDE

- (A) Draw out pin "A" and change the spreader guide from the stowing position to the assembly/disassembly position. Place the pin "A" to the original position.



- (B) Lower the boom. After the tip end of the boom has been grounded, slowly loosen the boom hoist wire rope more. The spreader is lowered along the spreader guide. When the hole of the spreader is aligned with the pin hole of the bracket on the boom base section, insert pin "B" to connect the spreader to the base boom bracket.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

(C) When stowing the spreader guide, slowly tighten the boom hoist wire rope. When there becomes clearance between the spreader and the spreader guide, draw out pin "A", and return the spreader guide to the stowing position.

---

### Note

Since the clearance would not occur with boom base section only, perform this before disassembling the boom.

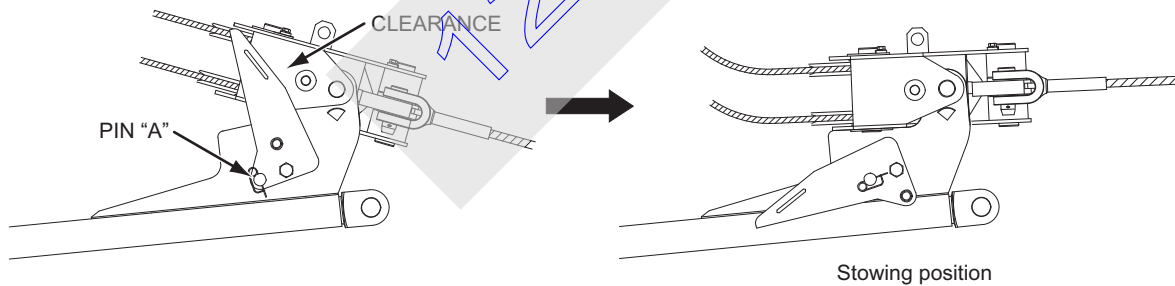
---

### CAUTION

When the gantry is in the lowered condition, be sure to set the guide in the stowing position. If the guide is left in the assembly/disassembly position, the guide could be damaged by boom raising.

When the gantry is lowered and the upper spreader is connected to the boom base section, set the guide in the stowing position. At this time, do not raise the boom to higher than 20 degrees. If the boom is raised to higher than 20 degrees, the winch wire rope has possibility to be damaged.

---



### WARNING

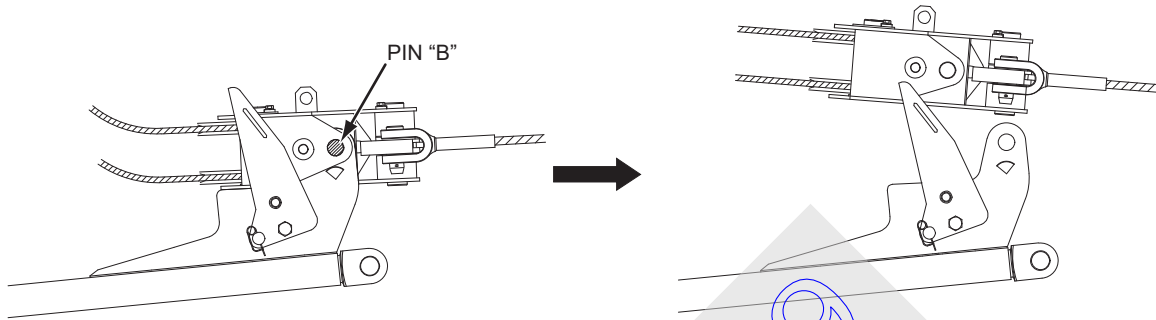
Be sure to hold the guide end with hands when removing the pin and stowing the guide. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

---

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

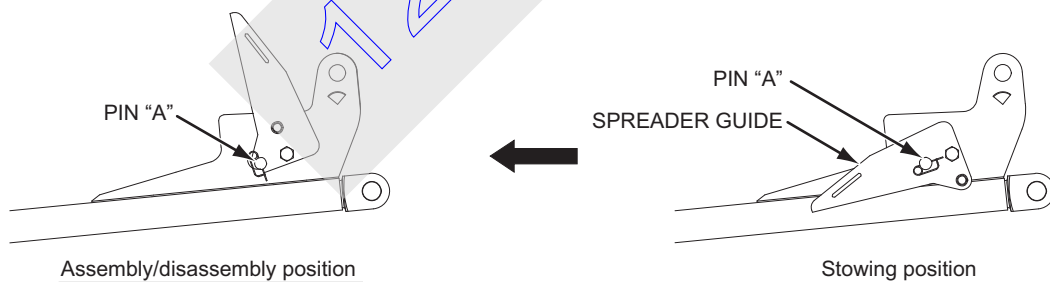
- (D) After change of the boom connection or assembly has been finished, draw out pin "B", and wind up the boom hoist wire rope slowly so that the spreader slides up slowly on the guide.

If the spreader is raised up quickly, the spreader has possibility to be caught on the guide and bend the guide. If it is caught, loosen the wire rope once, then move the boom drum control lever to the raise side intermittently to remove the caught.



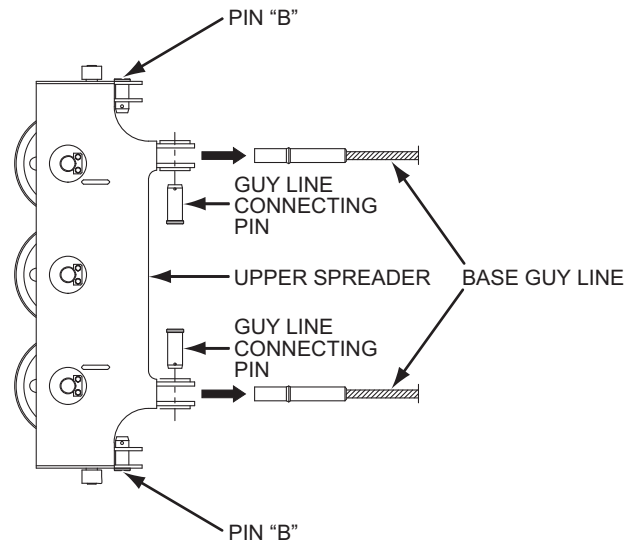
- (E) Return the spreader guide to the stowing position.

- (F) When setting the spreader guide to the assembly/disassembly position, after the boom connection is finished, tighten the boom hoist wire rope, and set the spreader guide to the assembly/disassembly position.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

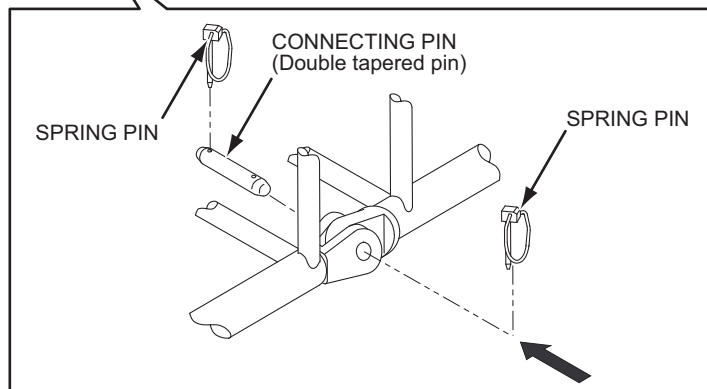
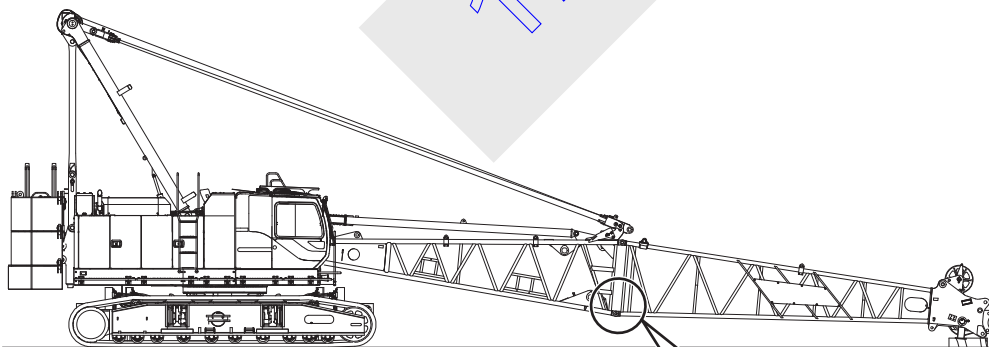
- (2) By following the procedure (B) in "HOW TO USE SPREADER GUIDE" connect the spreader and the boom base bracket with the pin "B". Then remove the guy line connecting pin and remove the base guy line from the upper spreader.



- (3) Operate the boom hoist control lever to tighten the boom hoist wire rope to remove load from the bottom connector section, then draw out the bottom connecting pins (with a suitable tool).

### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not stand or work under, inside or on the boom structure when removing the connecting pins. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

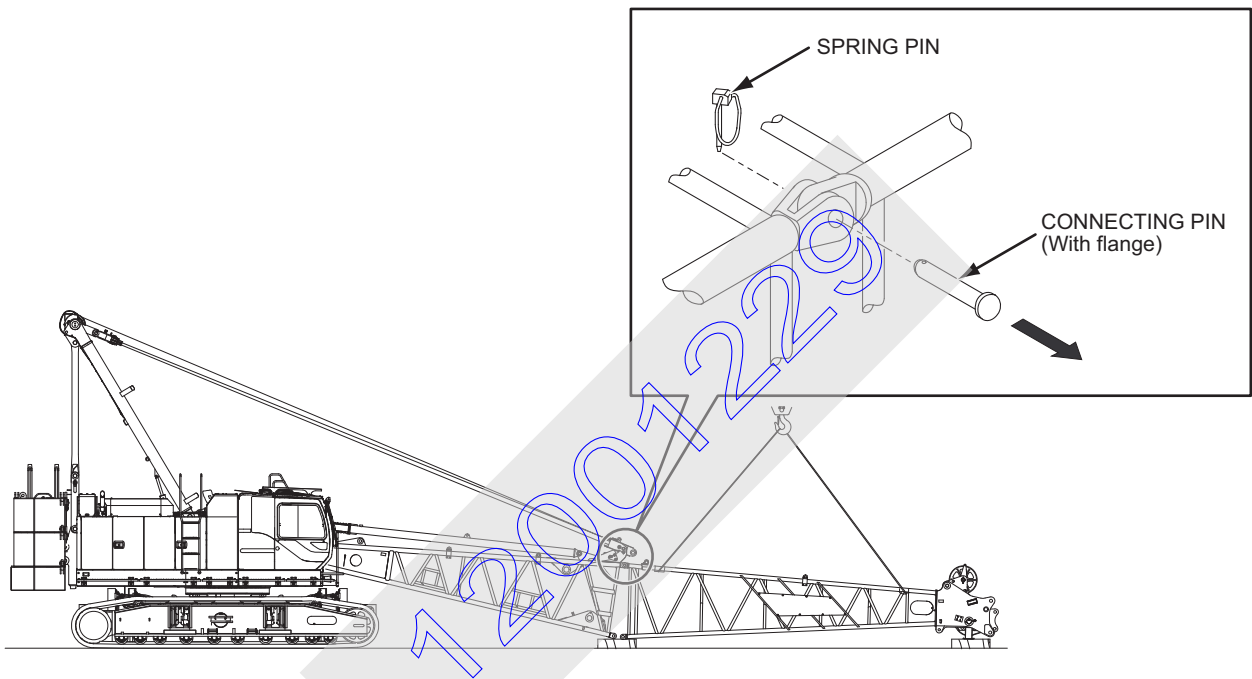


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

- (4) Hold the boom tip with the assist crane.  
Place blocking under the boom tip section and  
lower the boom base section.  
Then draw out the top connecting pins.

### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not stand or work under, inside or on the boom structure when removing the connecting pins. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**



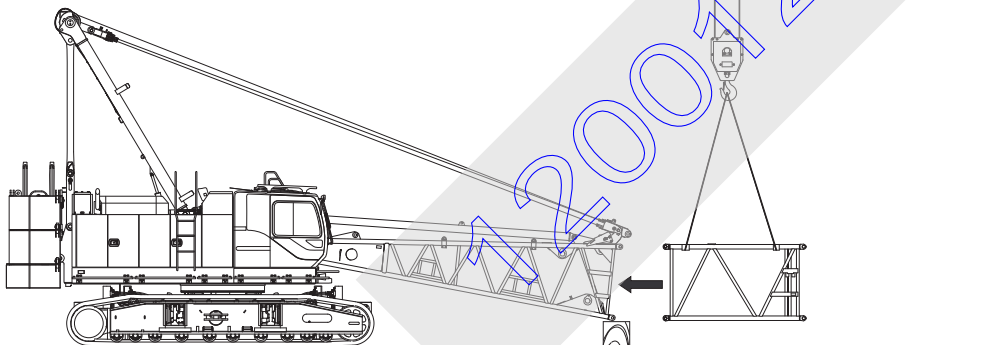
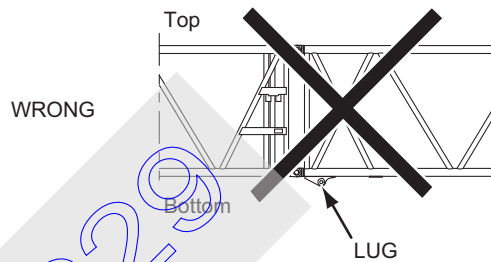
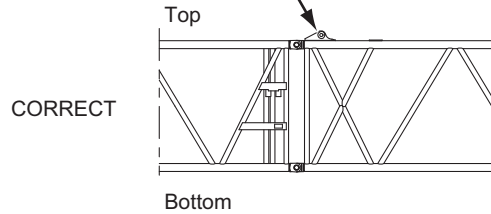
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 4. CONNECTING THE BOOM INSERT

For the cautions on the cantilever support, refer to P.5-32.

- (1) Referring to Boom and guy line arrangement chart, lift the required boom insert (s), being careful not to mistake the top for the bottom, and bring it near the boom base section.

LUG (Assemble so that this part is positioned on the top.)



### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not stand under the boom or inside the boom structure when removing connecting pins. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

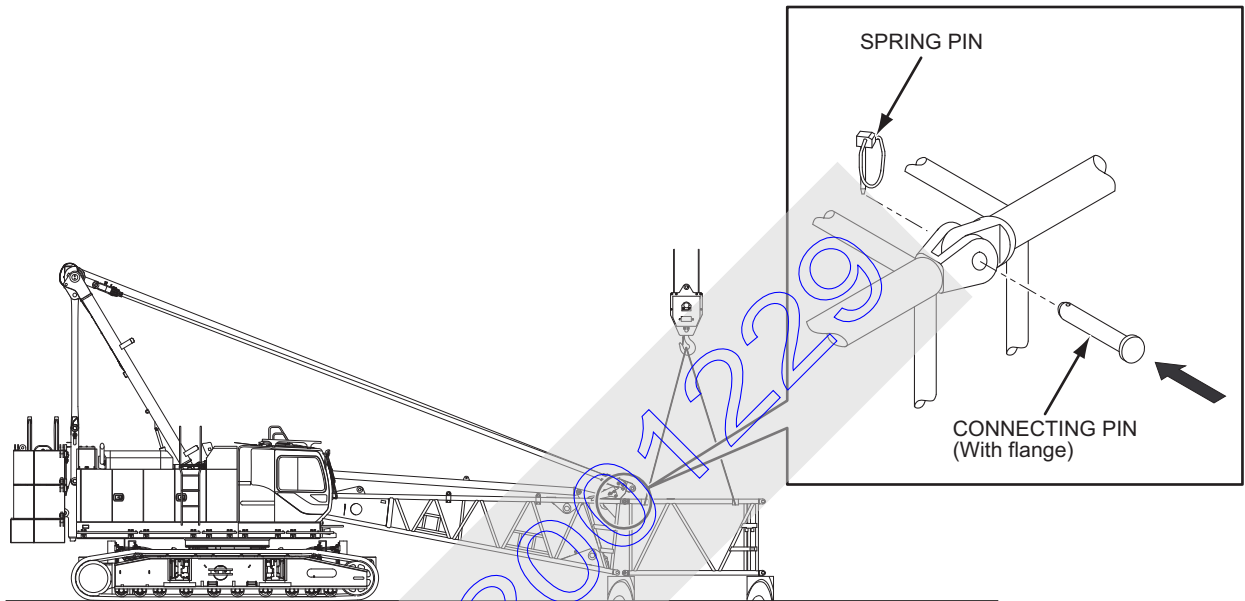


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

- (2) Align the top connecting pin holes of the boom base and insert the right and left connecting pins (pin with flange) with the lock pinholes facing up and down. Insert the spring pins to fix the connecting pins.

### **WARNING**

**Do not insert your hand or finger into pin hole.**  
**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

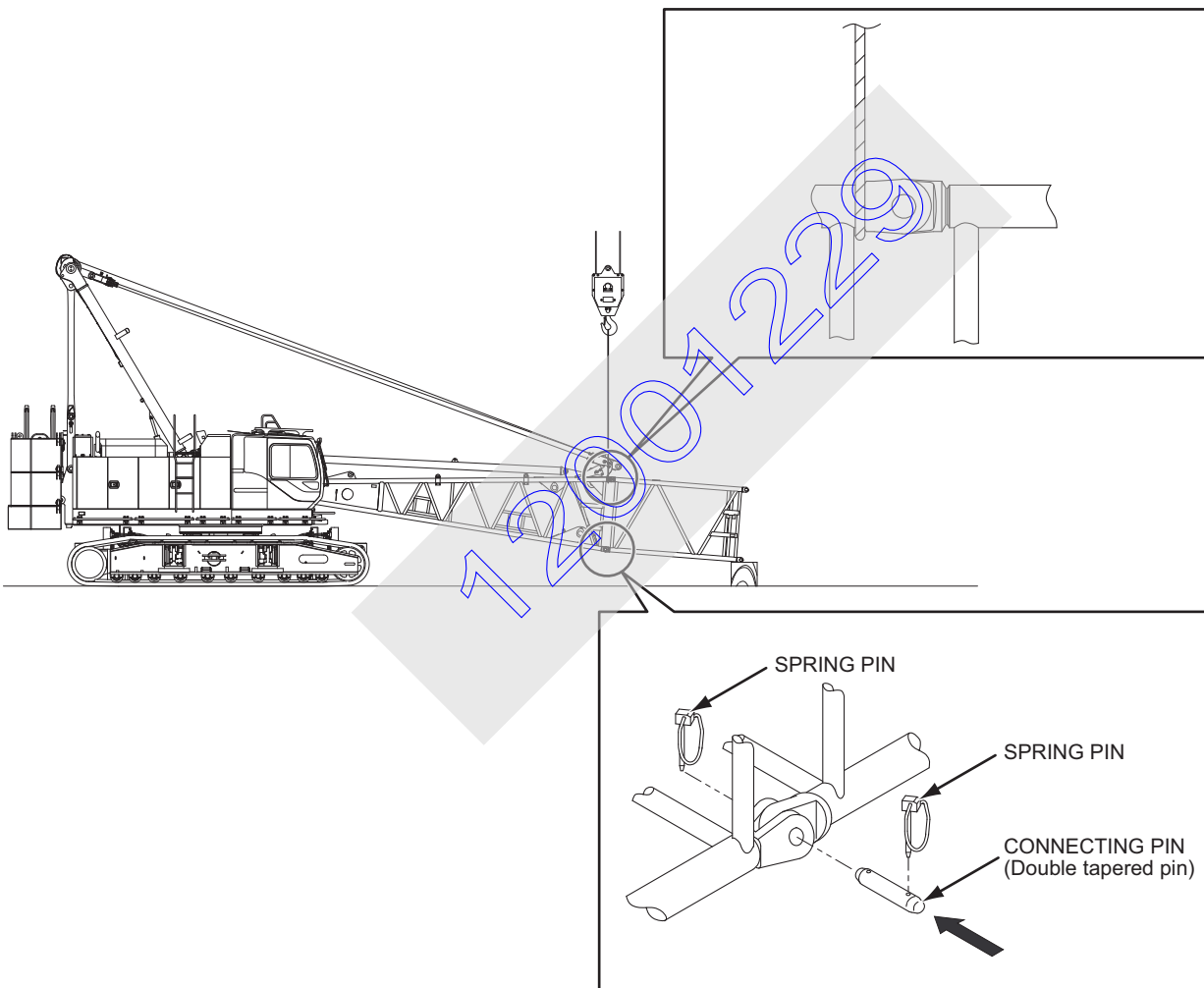
(3) Lift up the connecting section of the boom base and the boom insert and align the bottom connecting pin holes, and insert the connecting pins (double tapered pin) into these holes.

Insert the spring pins into the connecting pins to fix them.

### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not stand under the boom or inside the boom structure when removing connecting pins.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

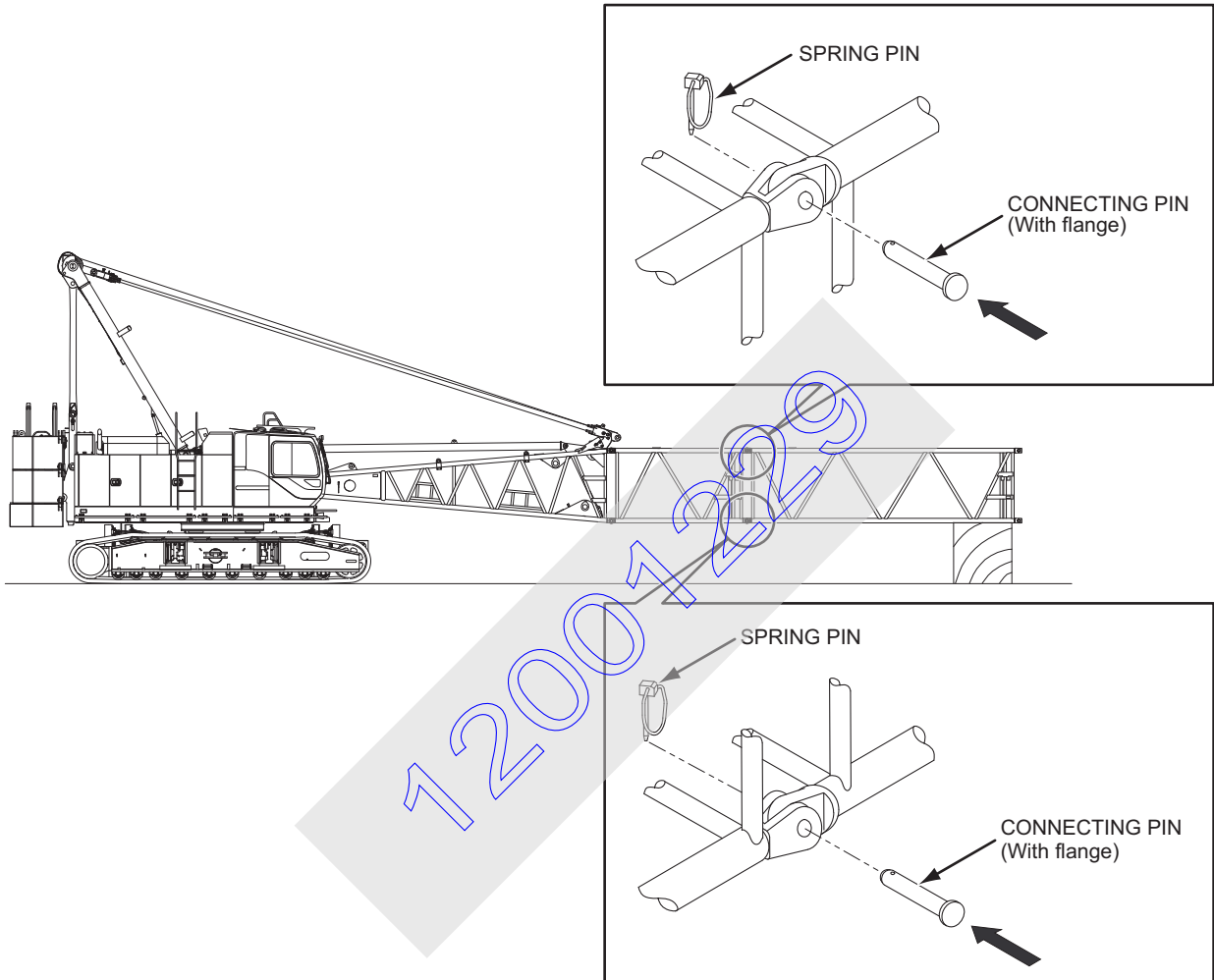


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

(4) Referring to Boom and guy line arrangement chart, connect the boom inserts in order in the same way.

**Note**

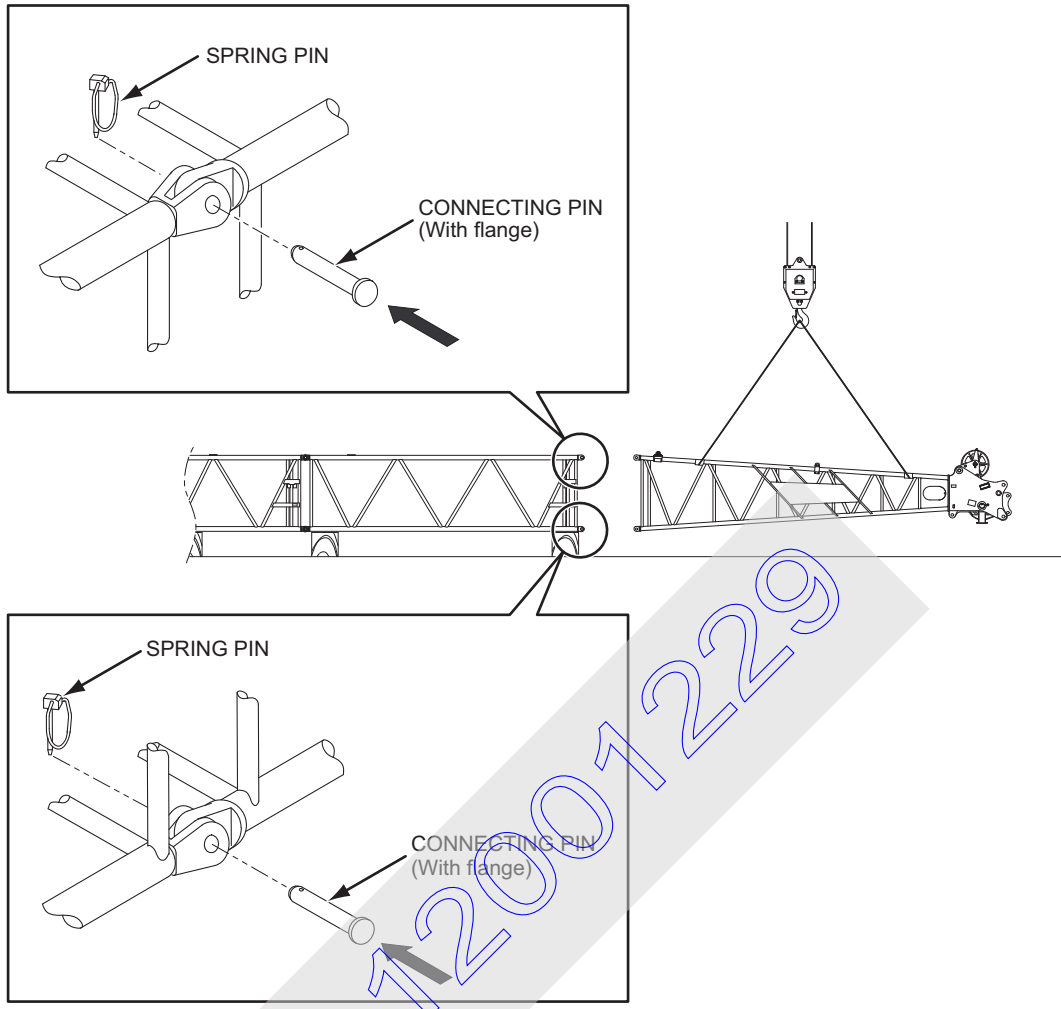
Ensure to drive in the pin with flange from outside to inside.



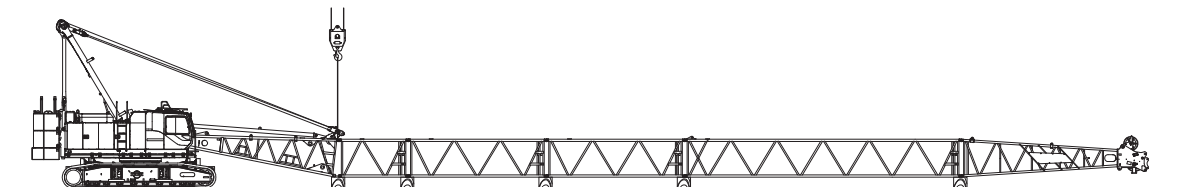
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5. INSTALLING THE BOOM TIP

Lift up the boom tip and connect it to the boom insert with the connecting pins (with flange).

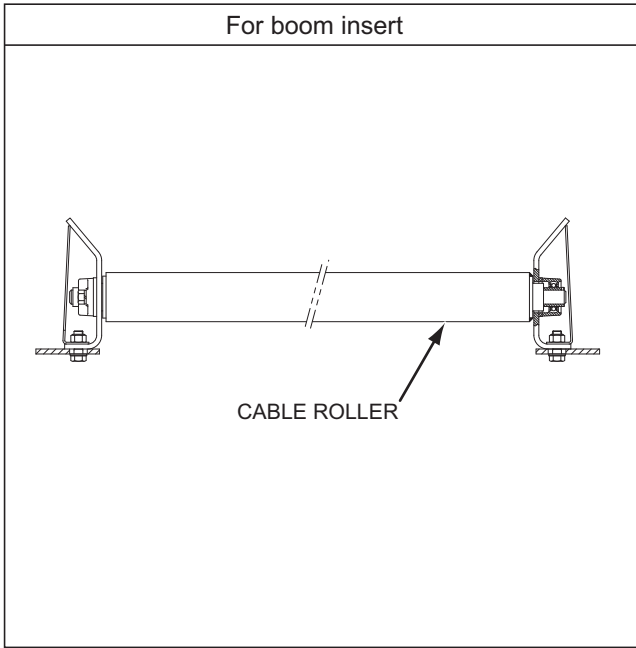


As an alternative way of attachment connection, the boom inserts and boom top are to be connected first and then the boom base and the boom inserts can be connected last as shown below.



**5.1.5 INSTALLING THE CABLE ROLLERS**

Install the cable rollers to the location as shown in the boom configuration chart.



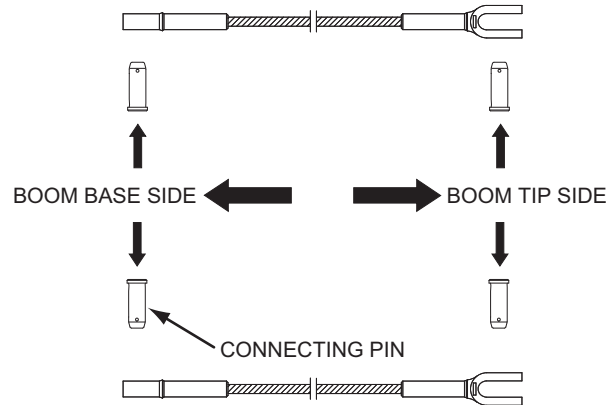
12001229

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.6 CONNECTING THE BOOM GUY LINES

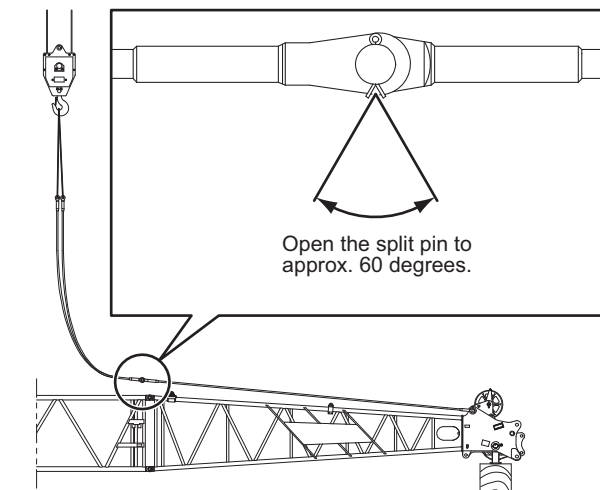
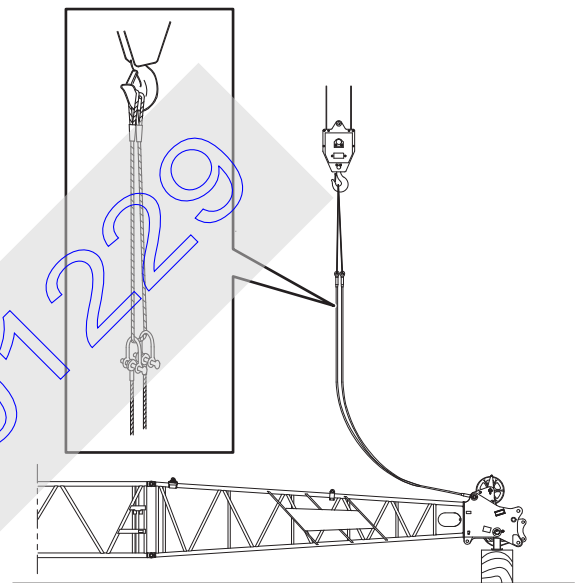
1. Prepare guy line according to the guy line configuration chart.

Insert the guy line connecting pin from the inside.



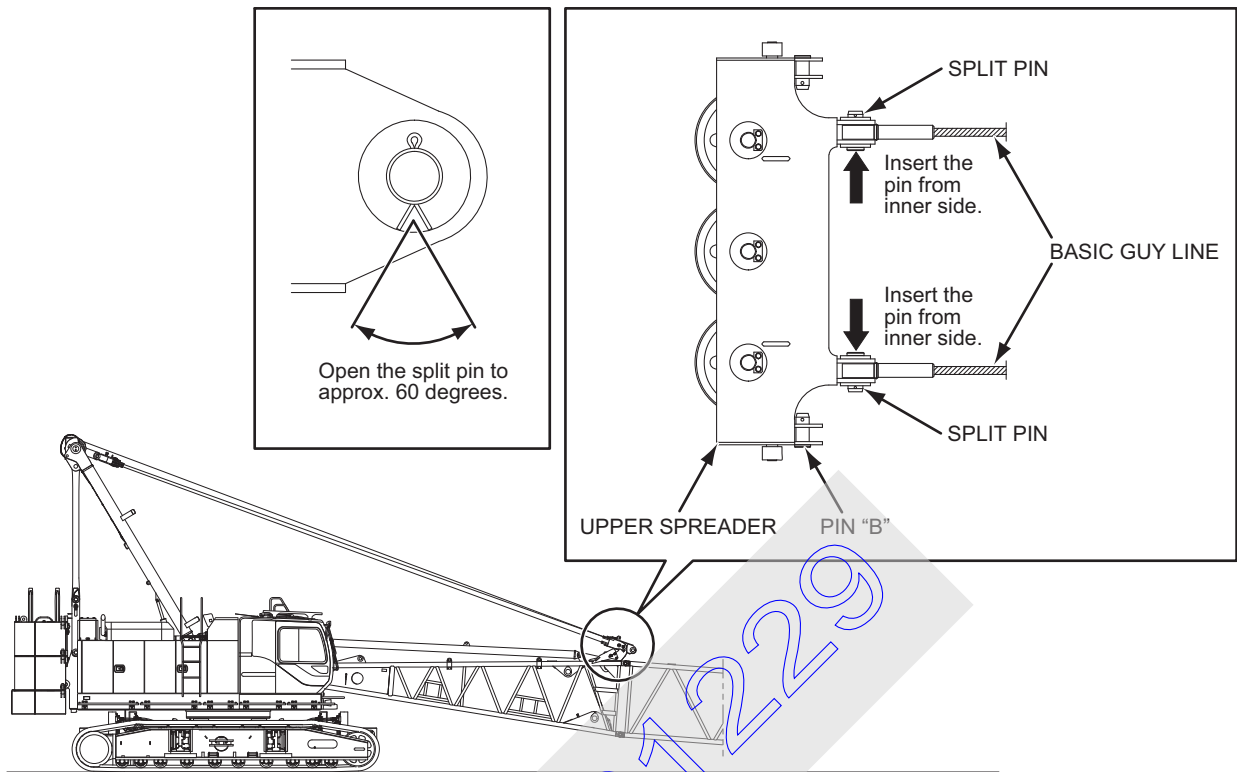
2. Connect the prepared guy lines from the boom tip side to the basic machine side one by one.

When connecting from boom tip side one by one, do not make the guy lines slacken. If the guy lines slacken much, then guy lines may not reach to the upper spreader.

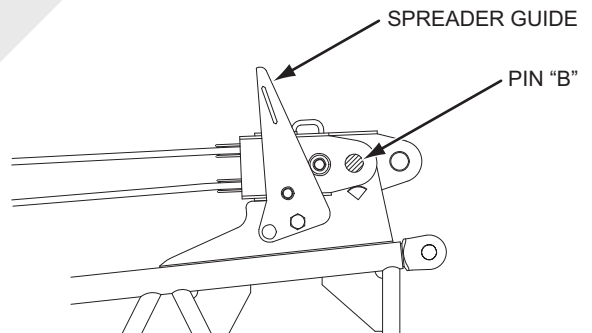


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

3. Connect the guy line to the upper spreader.
4. Loosen the boom hoist wire rope enough.



5. Use the spreader guide to remove the pin "B"



6. Wind up the boom hoist rope to the boom hoist drum paying attention not making rough spooling.

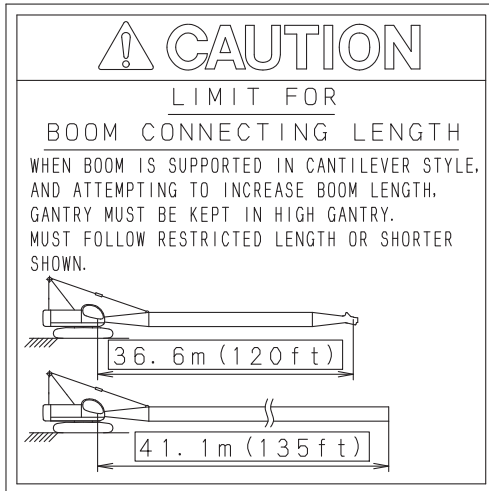
### **WARNING**

Place a signal man to avoid accident of being caught.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.7 CAUTION FOR CANTILEVER

#### 1. SUPPORT WITH BOOM BASE



#### **CAUTION**

Be sure to confirm that gantry is set in high gantry condition.

Do not exceed the length of cantilever mentioned below.

Operate crane at the slowest speed as possible.

(1)	With boom tip	36.6 m (120 ft) and shorter
(2)	With aux. sheave	33.5 m (110 ft) and shorter
(3)	With boom insert only	41.1 m (135 ft) and shorter

For the details of connection of the boom insert, refer to the topic of "5.1.4 CONNECTING THE BOOM INSERT".

#### **DANGER**

**Do not perform the hoisting work or propel while the boom is supported with the cantilever.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**



### 5.1.8 FRONT DRUM WIRE ROPE REEVING

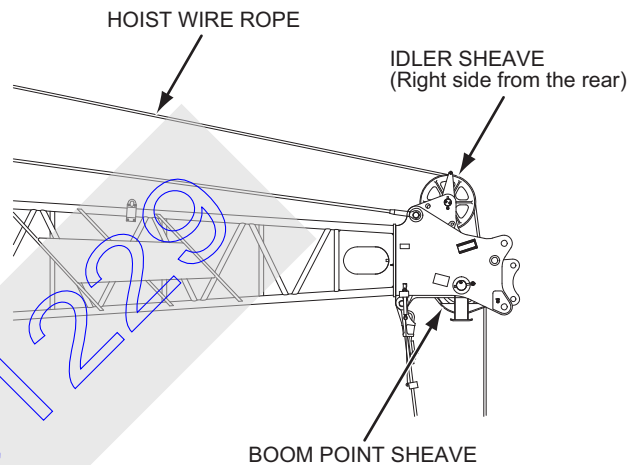
#### **CAUTION**

Ensure to use leather gloves to prevent injuries in handling the wire rope.

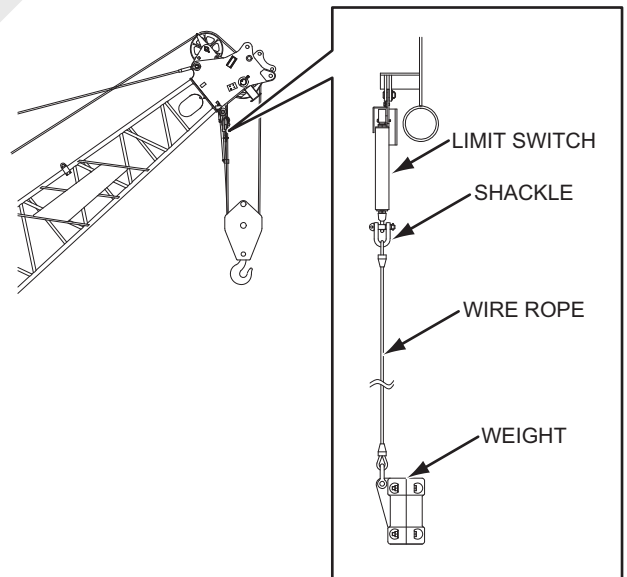
Take extra care in working with the running wire rope to prevent accident of being caught or being entangled.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

1. Prepare the hook, overhoist limit switch, weight and socket, etc. to be used near the tip end of the boom.
2. Turn the front drum control lever to the lowering side to feed out the wire rope to the tip end of the boom and pass it through the right idler sheave and pass it to the right of the boom point.



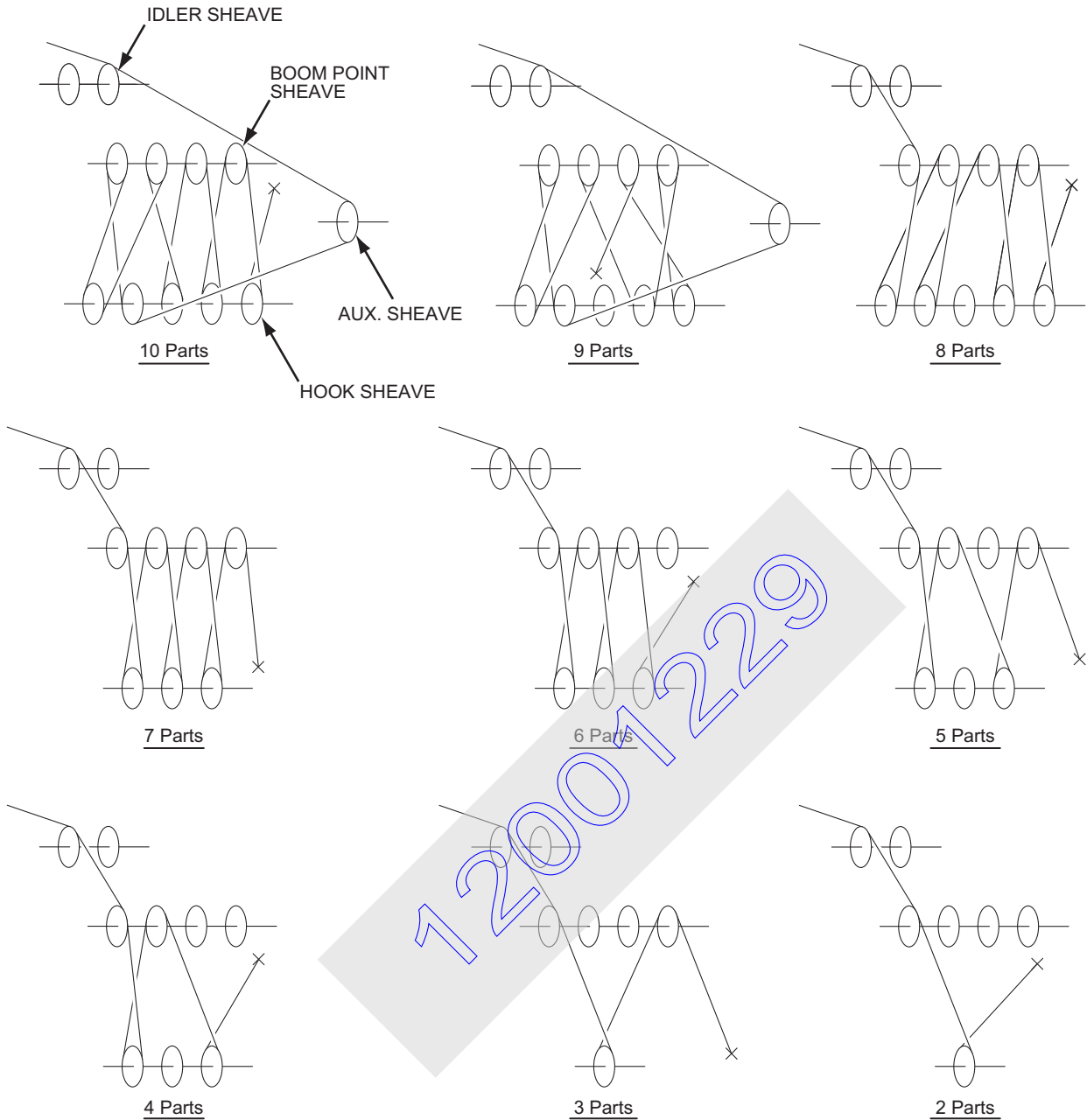
3. Install the overhoist limit switch and weight to the left side bracket on the tip end of the boom. Insert the split pin into the shackle pin to fix it.



4. Pass the front drum wire rope through the hook (s) and boom point sheave (s) in order. Fix the wire rope end to the boom point for even number part reeving and to the hook for odd number part reeving with the rope socket.

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

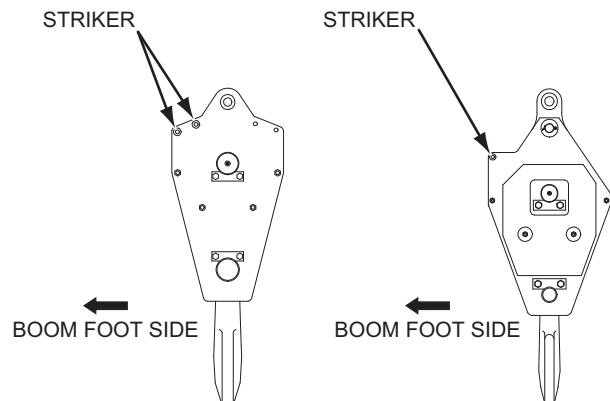
### HOIST ROPE REEVING IN BOOM POINT AREA



(This figure is view from the boom tip side.)

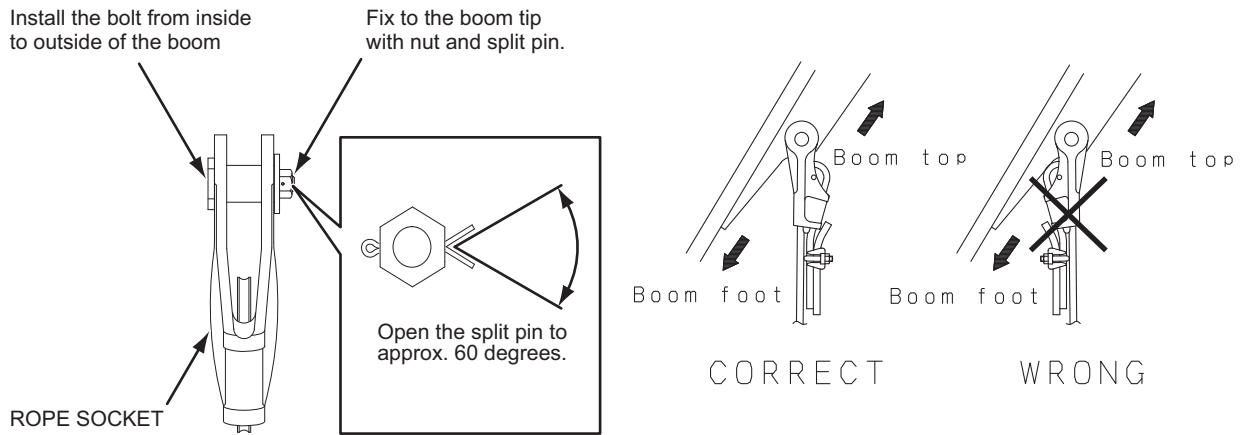
### HOOK INSTALLING DIRECTION

When passing the hoist wire rope to the hook, face the striker (hook side weight catch) contacting the hook overhoist limit switch weight to the boom foot side.



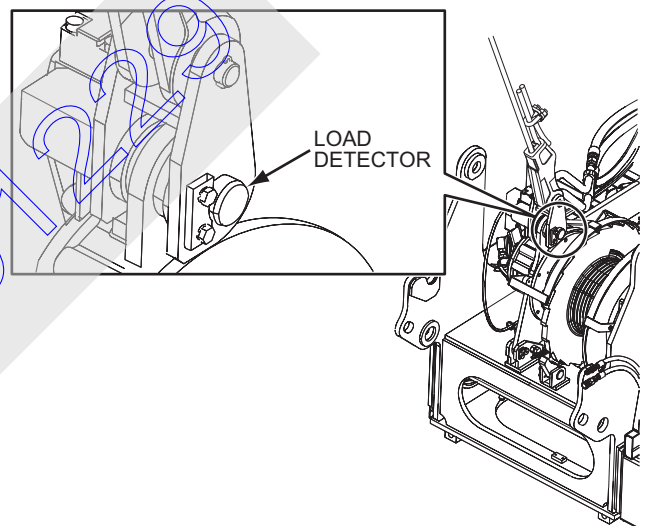
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

When installing the rope socket to the boom point, pay attention on the side of rope socket.  
Do not fail to pass the wire rope through the hook overhoist limit switch weight.

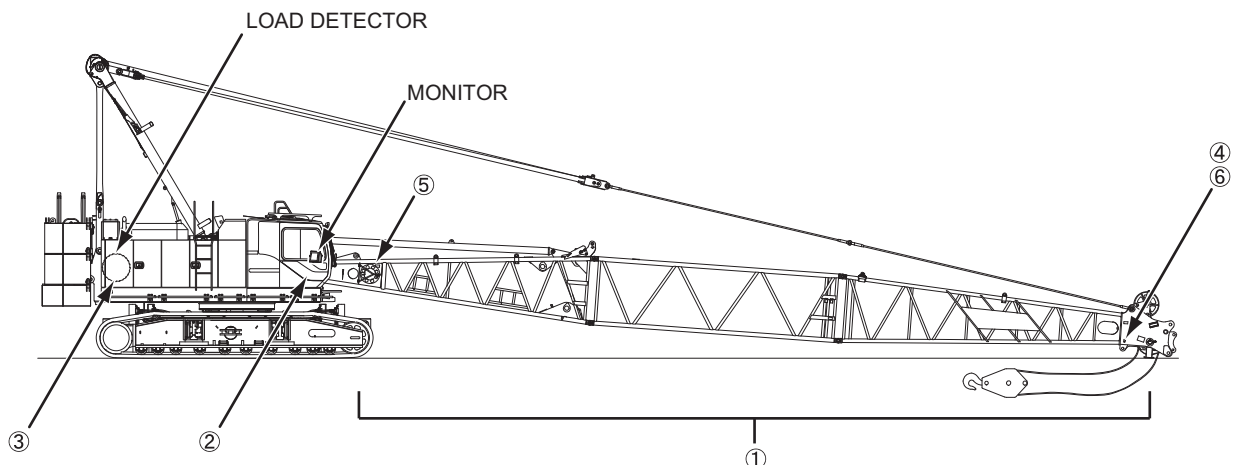


### 5. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE CONNECTION

- Secure the junction cables or limit switch wiring to the boom with the hanger.
- Connect the attachment wiring to the main machinery junction panel.
- Check the connection of load detector connector. (boom hoist winch plate area)
- Connect the cable reel wiring to the boom tip junction box.
- Connect the hook overhoist cable reel connector.
- Check the connection of hook overhoist limit switch wiring to the boom tip junction box.













If the jib and the aux. sheave are not installed, connect the hook overhoist limit switch wiring at this time.  
As for detail of wiring connection, refer to the article "3.3 CONNECTING PROCEDURE OF WIRING" P.3-19.




## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

6. Referring to chapter 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE, input the crane configuration data in the load safety device.

Choose the mode of working or assembly.

1	Crane Boom 2	Fixed Jib 3	Luffing 4	5
				
On Barge 6	Clamshell 7	8	9	Self removal mode 10
				

\*\*\*\*\*



### DANGER

Input the crane configuration properly to prevent machine overturn or damage.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

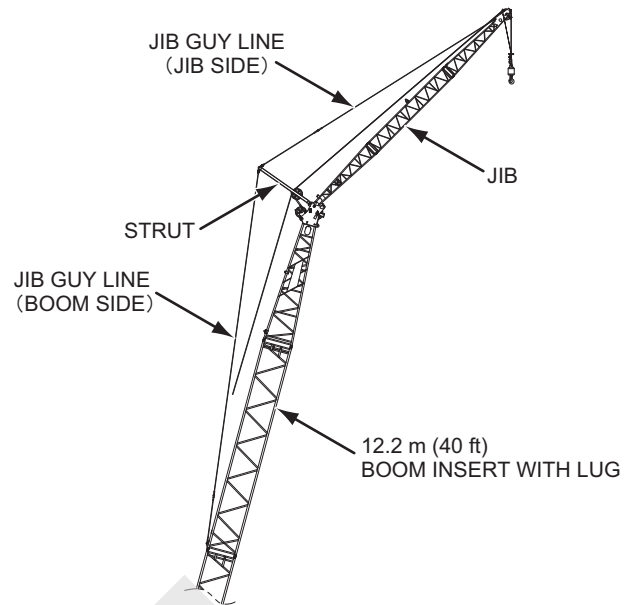
Type	Type of overhoist	Type of stop	Auto-stop angle
Crane	Boom overhoist	Controller (against ground angle)	77.0 to 81.4 degrees
		Limit switch (against machine angle)	83.5 to 84.5 degrees
	Self removal	Controller (against ground angle)	86 degrees
		Limit switch (against machine angle)	Approx. 86.5 degrees

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.9 ASSEMBLING THE JIB

When the jib is not installed, proceed to "5.1.11 INSTALLING THE AUXILIARY SHEAVE".

For the jib and jib guy line configuration, refer to P.5-45.



### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not stand or work under, inside or on the jib structure when assembling jib.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

The boom length to which the jib can be installed is 26.4 m (90 ft) to 61.0 m (200 ft).

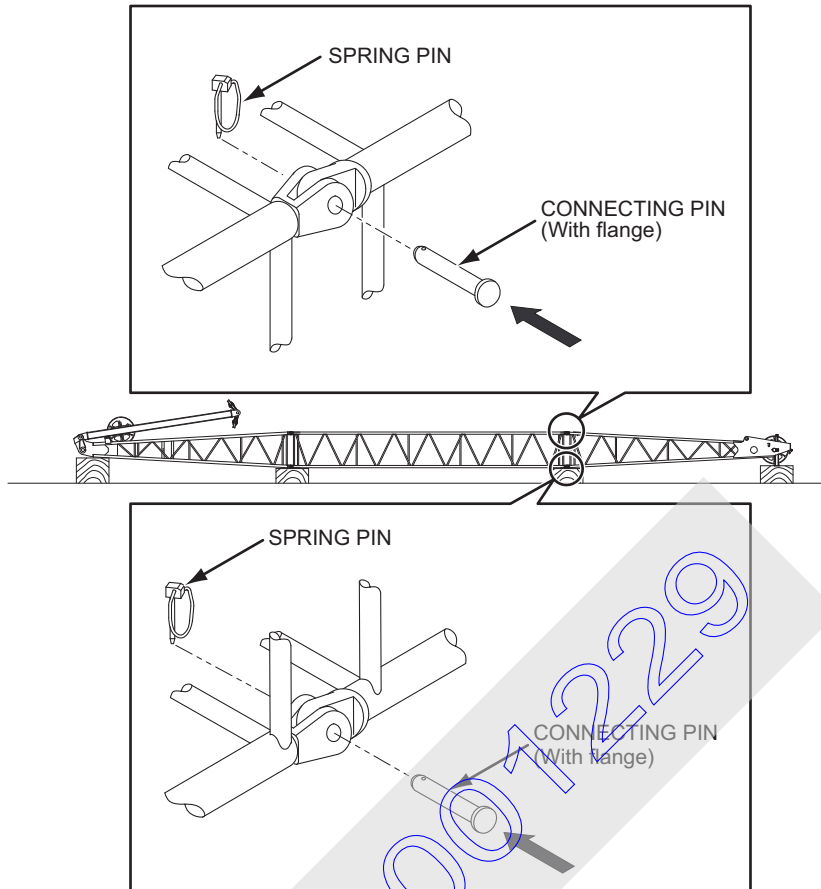
Boom length m (ft)	Jib length m (ft)				
	8.1 (30)	12.2 (40)	15.2 (50)	17.3 (60)	21.3 (70)
26.4 (90)	O	O	O	O	O
30.5 (100)	O	O	O	O	O
33.5 (110)	O	O	O	O	O
36.6 (120)	O	O	O	O	O
38.6 (130)	O	O	O	O	O
42.7 (140)	O	O	O	O	O
45.7 (150)	O	O	O	O	O
47.8 (160)	O	O	O	O	O
51.8 (170)	O	O	O	O	O
54.9 (180)	O	O	O	O	O
56.9 (190)	O	O	O	O	O
61.0 (200)	O	O	O	O	O

O : Installation possible

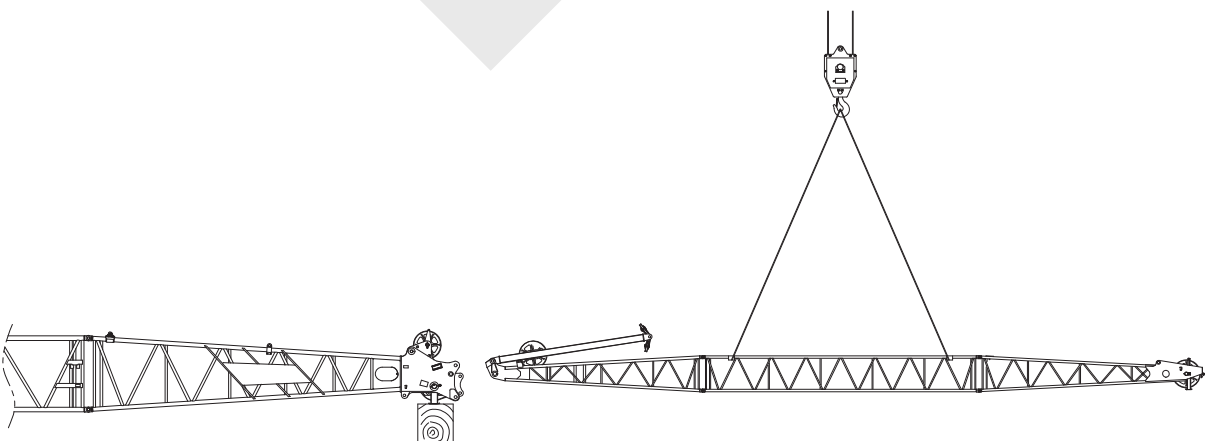
X : Installation not possible

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

1. Place the assembled jib and strut on the extension line of the boom tip.  
The jib connecting pin are all with flange.



2. Lift up the preassembled jib with the assisting crane connect it to the boom point section.

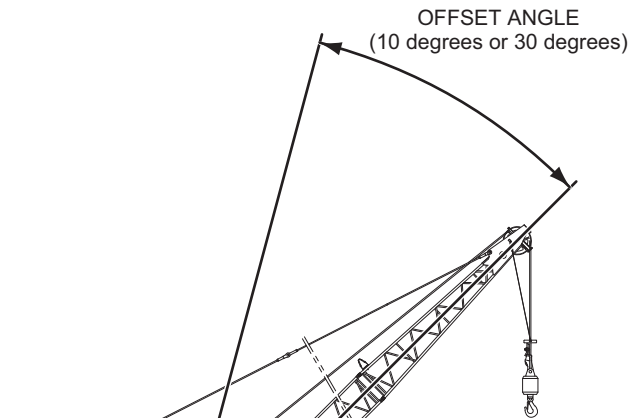


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

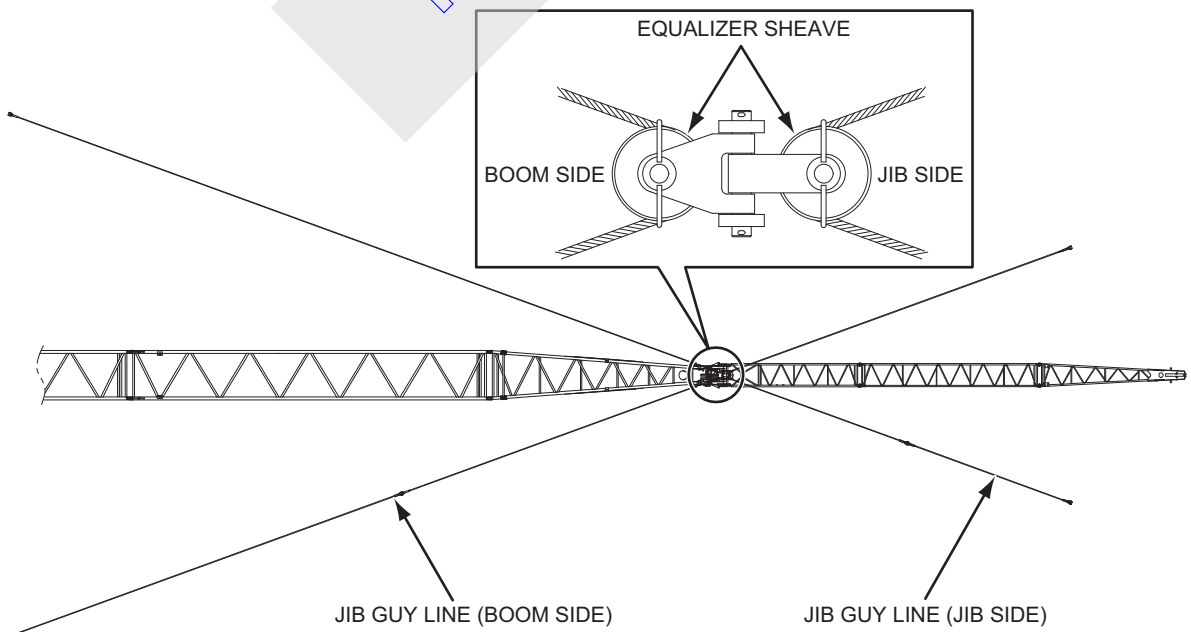
3. Prepare the jib guy lines (the jib side and boom side).

Insert the guy line connecting pins from outside.

- The length of the jib guy line of the jib side varies according to the jib length.
- The length of the jib guy line of the boom side varies according to the jib offset angle (10 degrees or 30 degrees) and the boom insert length (6.1 m or 8.1 m) connected to the boom tip.

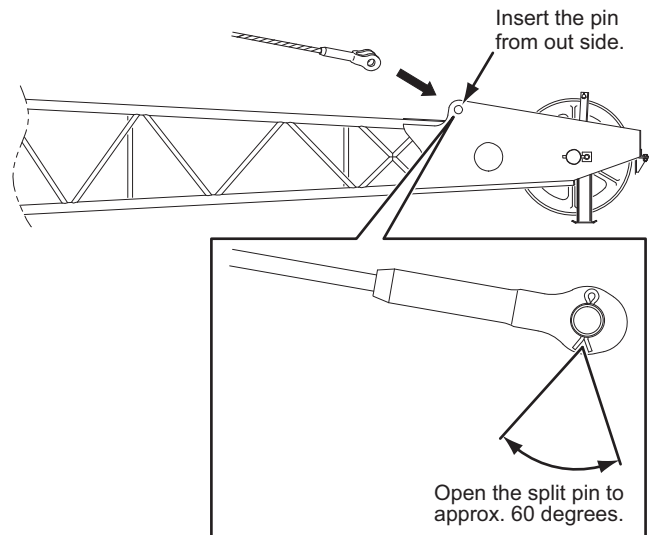


4. Temporarily remove the equalizer sheave of the jib strut, and pass the jib guy line through the sheave. Only then, reinstall the sheave back to the original position. (keep the strut down.)

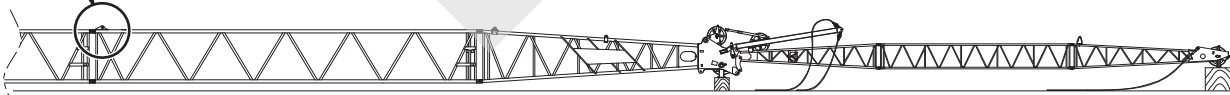
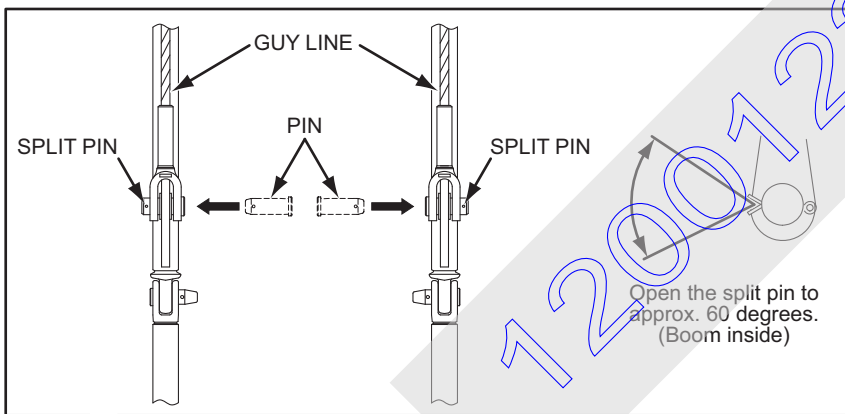


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

5. Connect both ends of the jib guy line to the top end of the jib.



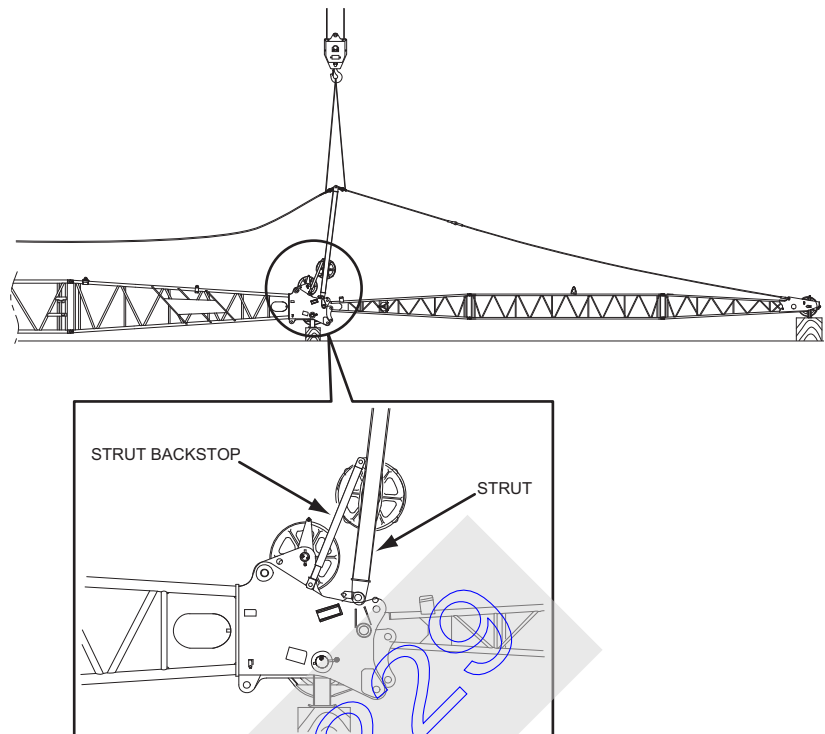
6. Install the jib guy line link to the boom insert with lug, referring to the "Boom and guy line configuration chart".



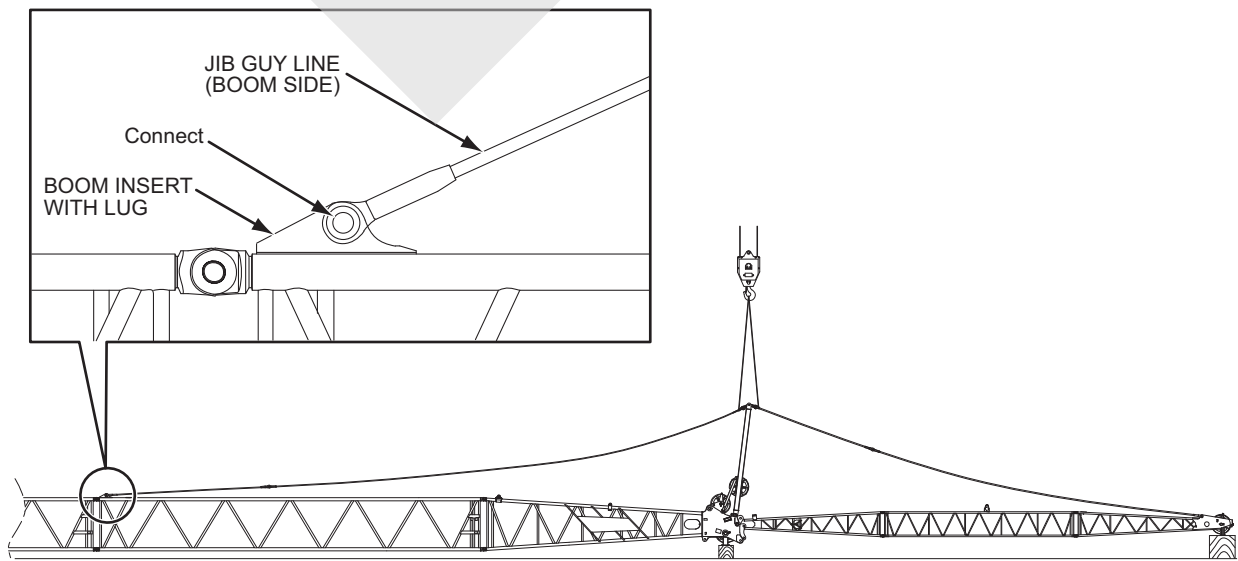


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

6. Raise the strut with the assisting crane and install the strut backstop.



7. By holding the jib strut, connect the both ends of the boom side jib guy line to the link on the boom insert.
8. Remove the sling wire rope from the jib strut.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.10 REEVING OF REAR DRUM WIRE ROPE

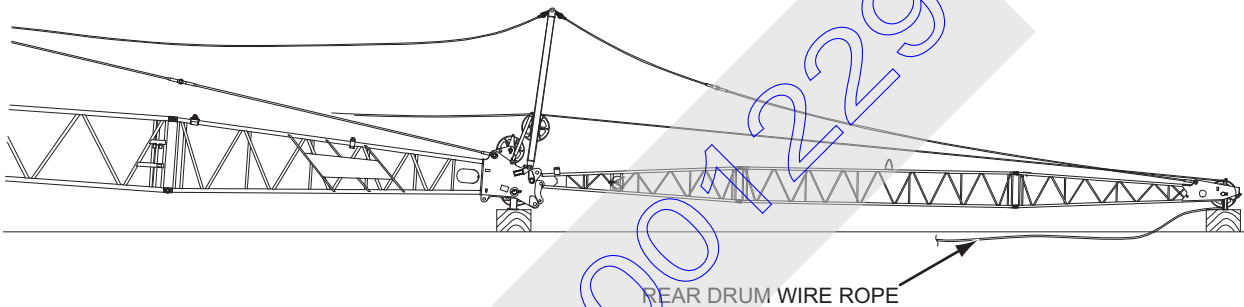
#### **WARNING**

Do not touch a wire rope directly with bare hands. If wire protrude, you could be injured. Working gloves are recommended.

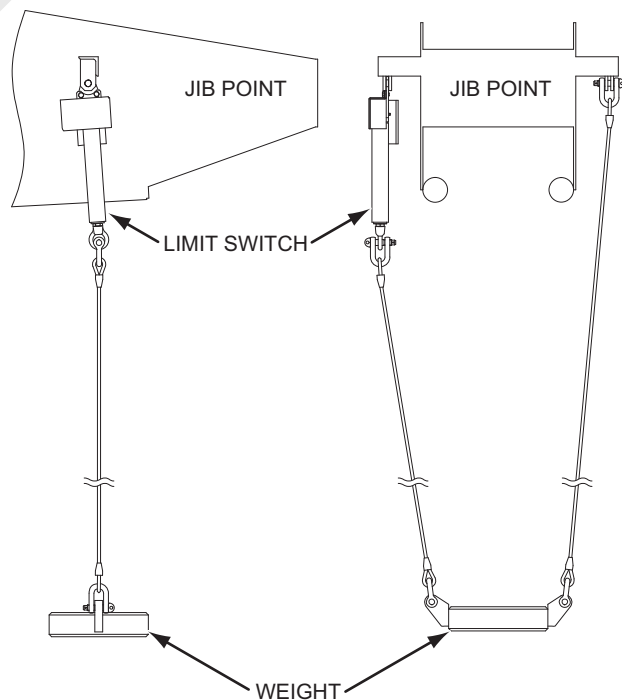
Keep hands and clothing clear of the rotating drum and running wire rope.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

1. Place the ball hook near the tip end of the jib.
2. Turn the rear drum control lever to the lowering side to feed out the rear drum wire rope to the tip end of the jib, and pass it through the jib point sheave.

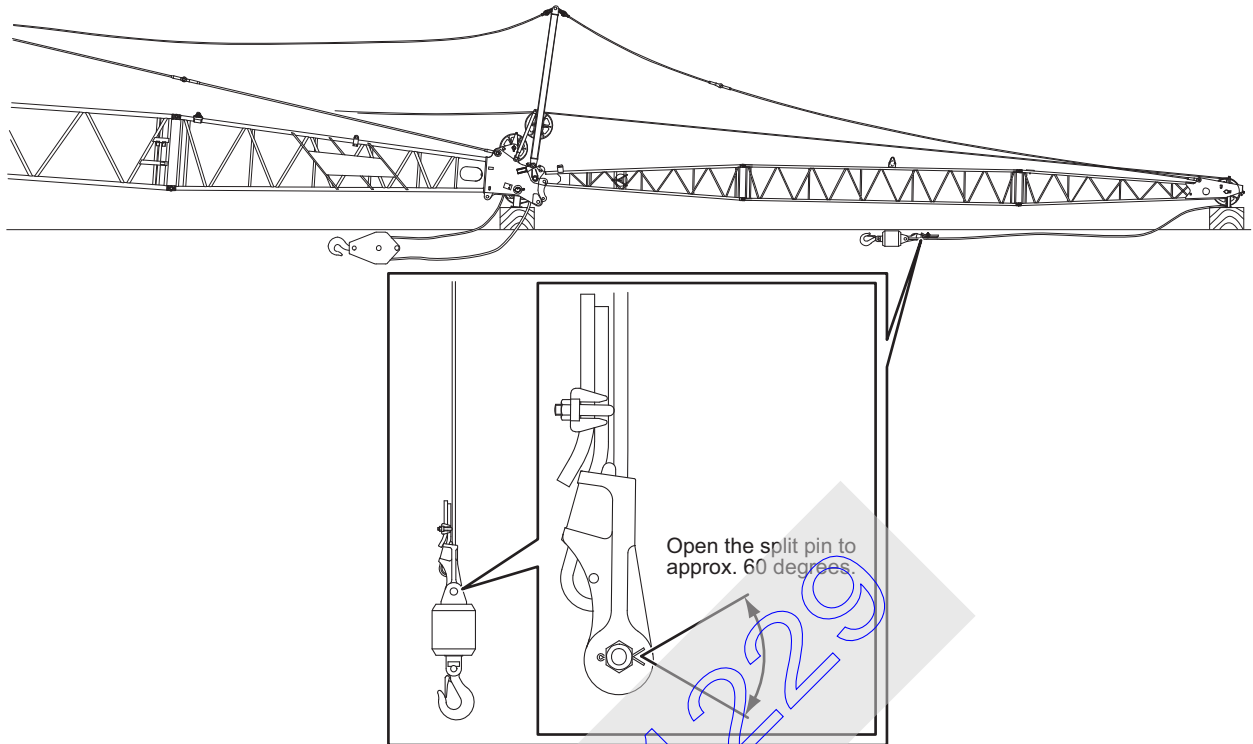


3. Install the hook overhoist limit switch and weight to the jib point section.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

4. Pass the wire rope end through the weight for the limit switch, and secure the end to the hook rope socket with the bolt, nut and split pin.



5. Referring to chapter "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE", connect the wiring for the auxiliary hoist hook anti-two block (overhoist) limit switch.

---

### **WARNING**

**After the assembly has been completed, be sure to confirm that all connecting pins and lock pins are correctly installed.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

---

### **CAUTION**

Check the performance of the anti-two-block alarm system.

---

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 6. CONNECTING THE LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

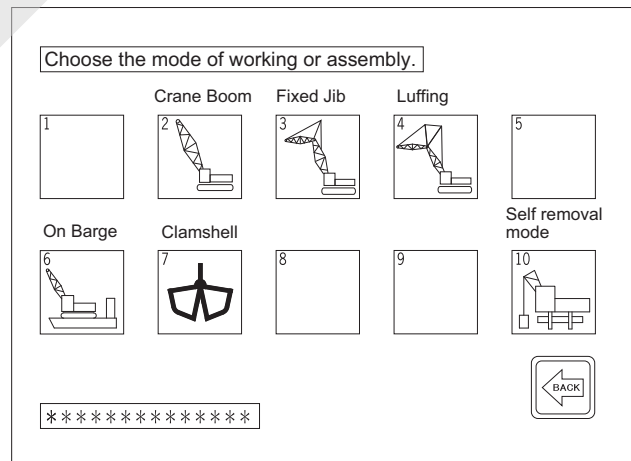
- Connect the jib cable reel wiring to the top of the boom tip wiring and to the hook overhoist limit switch wiring.
- Connect the jib angle detector wiring to the boom tip junction box.  
For detail of wiring connection, refer to the article "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE" P.3-25



### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not set wrong crane configuration.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in  
serious injury or loss of life.**

6. Referring to chapter "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE", input the crane configuration data in the load safety device.



**Monitor indication**

### **⚠ DANGER**

**Ensure to input the "Jib configuration" data  
properly to prevent overturn of the machine.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in  
serious accident.**

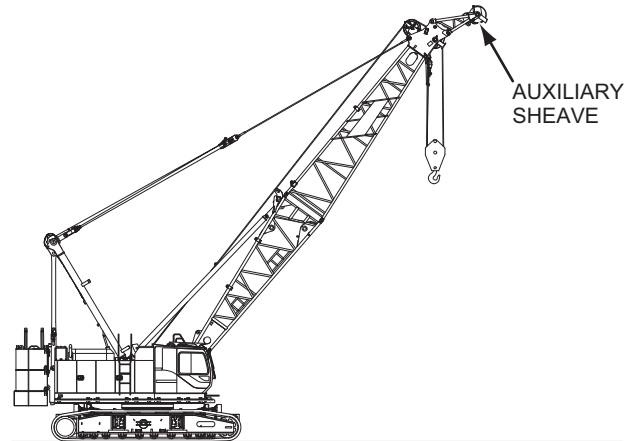
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.11 INSTALLING THE AUXILIARY SHEAVE

When the auxiliary sheave is not installed, proceed to "5.2 ERECTING THE ATTACHMENT".

The boom length to which the auxiliary sheave can be installed are 15.2 m (50 ft) to 66.1 m (220 ft).

Auxiliary sheave weight: 300 kg (660 lbs)

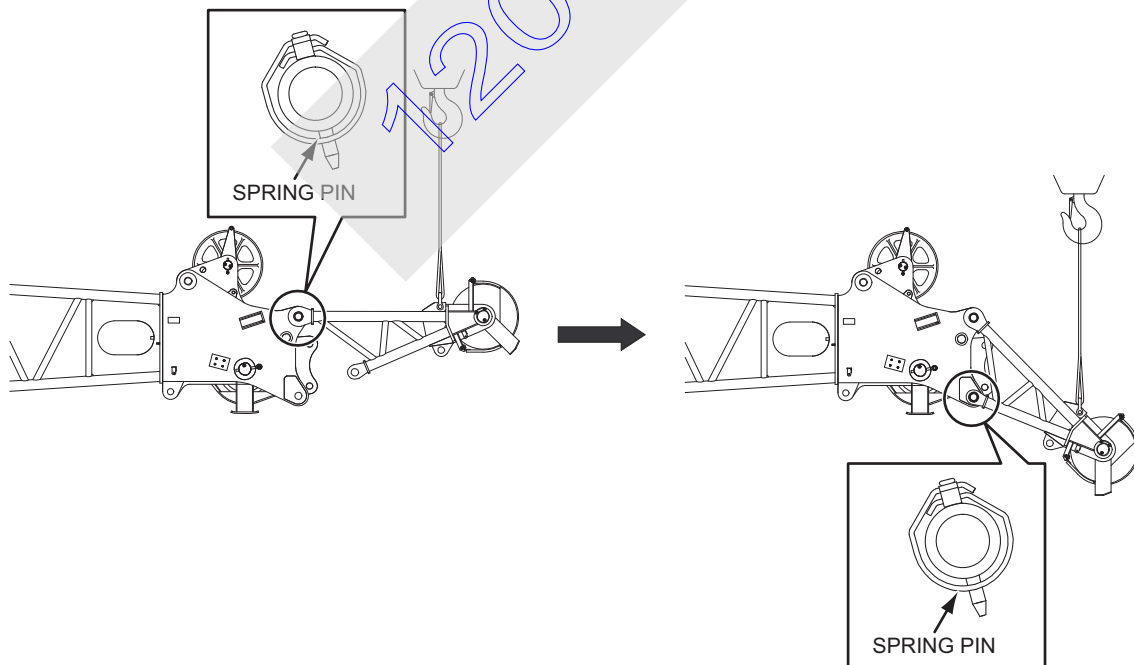


Lift the auxiliary sheave with the assisting crane.  
Secure it to the boom top with the pins and lock them with spring pins (2 positions, both upper and lower sides).

#### **WARNING**

Do not insert your hand or finger into the pin hole to align or check holes.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.1.12 REEVING THE REAR DRUM WIRE ROPE TO THE AUXILIARY SHEAVE

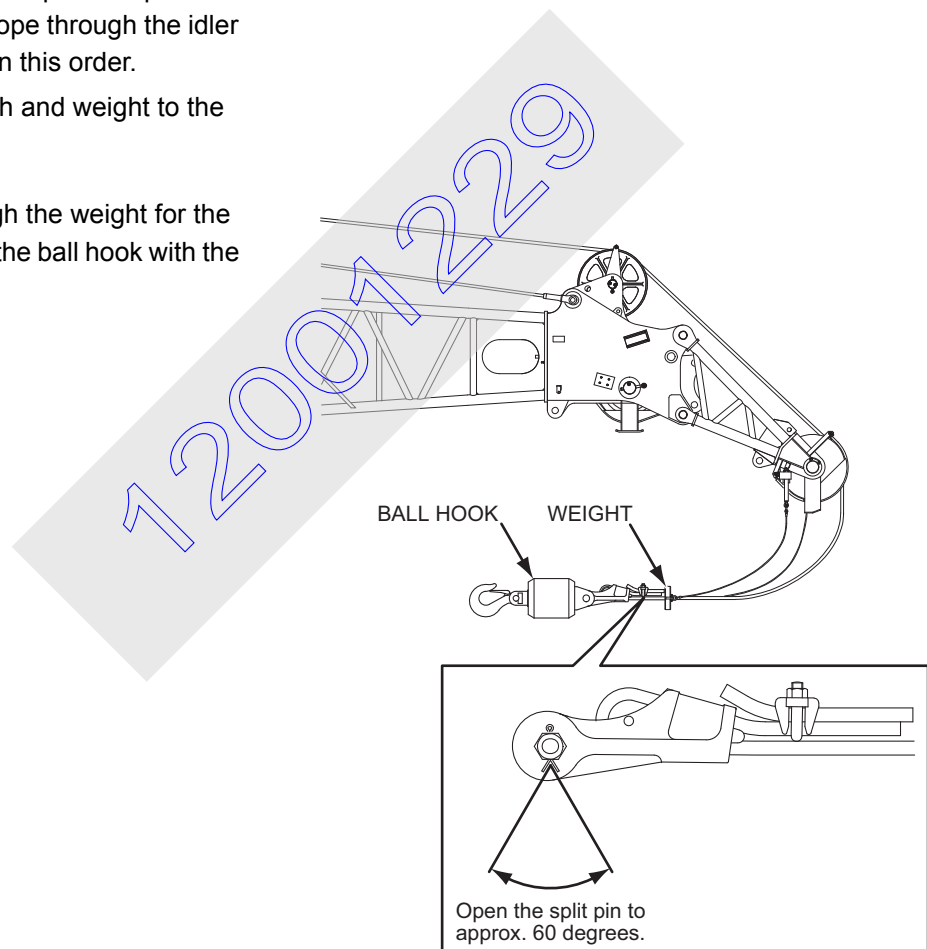
#### **WARNING**

Do not touch a wire rope directly with bare hands. If wire protrude, you could be injured. Working gloves are recommended.

Keep hands and clothing clear of the rotating drum and running wire rope.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

1. Place the hook block near the tip of the auxiliary sheave.
2. Control the rear drum control lever to the lowering position to pay out the wire rope upto the tip end of the boom, and pass the wire rope through the idler sheave and auxiliary sheave in this order.
3. Install the overhoist limit switch and weight to the auxiliary sheave.
4. Pass the wire rope end through the weight for the limit switch, and fix the end to the ball hook with the use of the rope socket.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT








### 5. CONNECTING THE LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Connect the aux. sheave frame wiring to the boom top wiring and overhoist limit switch wiring.

For detail of wiring connection, refer to the article "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE" P.3-24.

6. Referring to chapter "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE", input the crane configuration data in the load safety device.

Choose the mode of working or assembly.

	Crane Boom	Fixed Jib	Luffing	
1				5
On Barge	Clamshell			Self removal mode
6	7	8	9	10
				
*****				
				

### **⚠ DANGER**

Ensure to input the "Auxiliary sheave configuration" properly to prevent overturning of the machine.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in overturning of crane and may lead to serious injuries or loss of life.

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

### 5.1.13 PERFORMANCE CHECK OF EACH LIMIT SWITCH

---



Return each lever to the neutral position before starting the engine and check for safety around the machine.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

---

1. Start the engine
2. Check the performance of the limit switch of the main hook overhoist, aux. hook overhoist and boom overhoist.

As for the detail of the checking method, refer to the article "3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE" (P.3-76).

If any part of the boom overhoist limit switch or striker shows damage, deformation, loose bolt etc and angle setting becomes deviated or parts replaced, re-adjustment of angle is necessary.

In such case, contact the Manitowoc service shop.

12001229

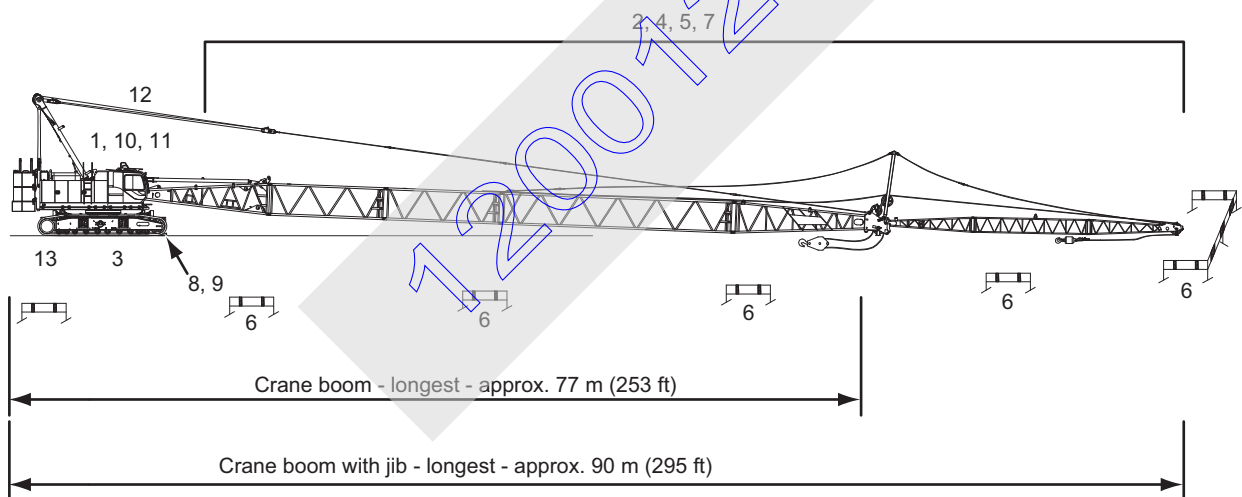


## 5.2 ERECTING THE ATTACHMENT

### 5.2.1 CONFIRMATION BEFORE ERECTING THE ATTACHMENT

Check the following items, and confirm that there is no abnormality, then erect the boom.

1. Is preoperation check done?
2. Is lubrication to the each part of the attachment done?
3. Are the crawlers extended to the working position?
4. Are the wire ropes correctly reeved?
5. Are tools, etc. not left on the attachment?
6. Is the offlimiting step to the surrounding area of the attachment taken?
6. Are the wirings for the boom, main and auxiliary hook overhoist limit switches correctly connected?
7. Steel plate is placed under the front end of the crawler when the crane boom length is 70.1 m (230 ft).
8. Steel plate is placed under the front end of the crawler when the jib attached to the 61.0 m (200 ft) boom length.
10. Does each limit switch properly work?
11. Is the load safety device correctly wired?
12. Is the crane configuration data properly set in the controller (load safety device)?  
Is the mode (Front/Rear) properly selected?
13. Is the propel motor set to rear side?



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

### 5.2.2 ERECTING THE ATTACHMENT

---

#### **DANGER**

Do not stand or work under, inside or on the boom structure to prevent accident due to sudden fall of the attachment.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

---

#### **WARNING**

To prevent possible serious injuries or loss of life from being dragged or struck by suddenly moving hook, keep clear from the area near the hook when the attachment is erected.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

---

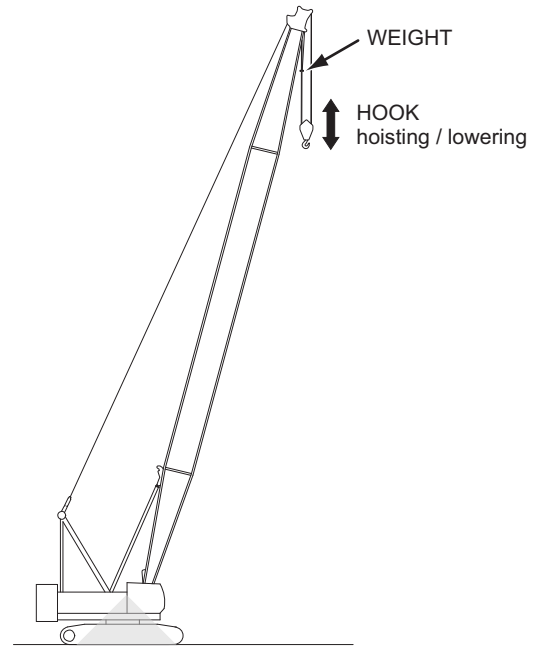
#### 1. CAUTIONS WHEN ERECTING

- (1) Erecting of the attachment must be performed in the front and rear direction of the crawlers.
  - (2) When the boom angle is less than approx. 20 degrees, place the hook on the ground.  
(However, when a jib is attached to the boom of 51.8 m (170 ft) length or more, place the hook on the ground until the boom angle reaches approximately 30 degrees.)
  - (3) Operation must be performed at a low speed. Sudden start and stop must be avoided.
  - (4) Prevent the wire rope from catching and kink in the tip of the boom and jib.
- 
2. Release the drum lock in the side where the hook is attached.
  3. Operate the boom hoist control lever toward the RAISING side to raise the boom slowly.
  4. Paying close attention to catching and kink of the hoist wire rope, raise the hook.

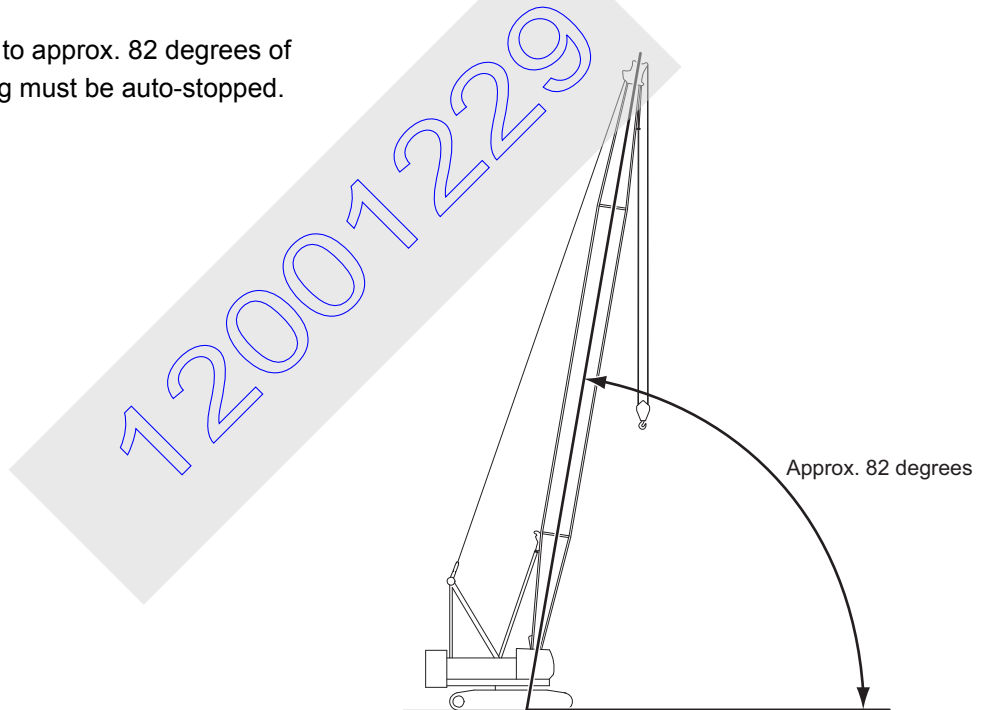
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

5. Before starting actual work, confirm the following items.

(1) When the hook is raised to strike against the weight for preventing overhoist, raising motion must be auto-stopped.



(2) When the boom is raised to approx. 82 degrees of boom angle, boom raising must be auto-stopped.



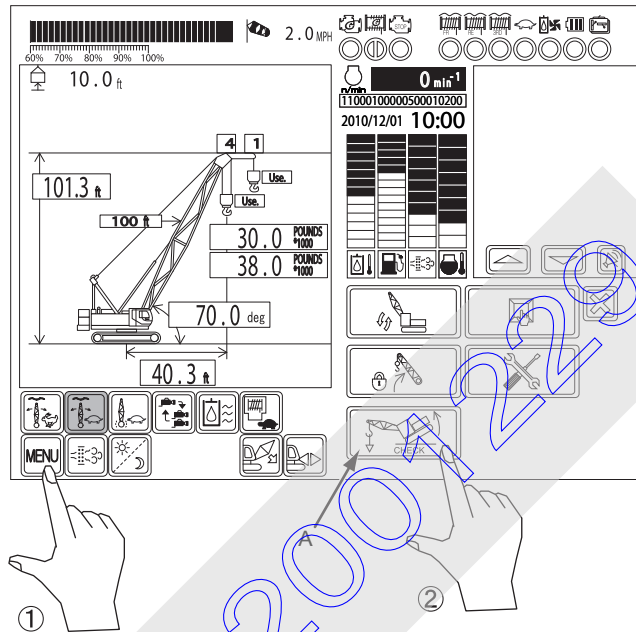
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

- (3) If it is difficult to test auto-stop function due to overload by lifting the actual load, check can be done in the display.

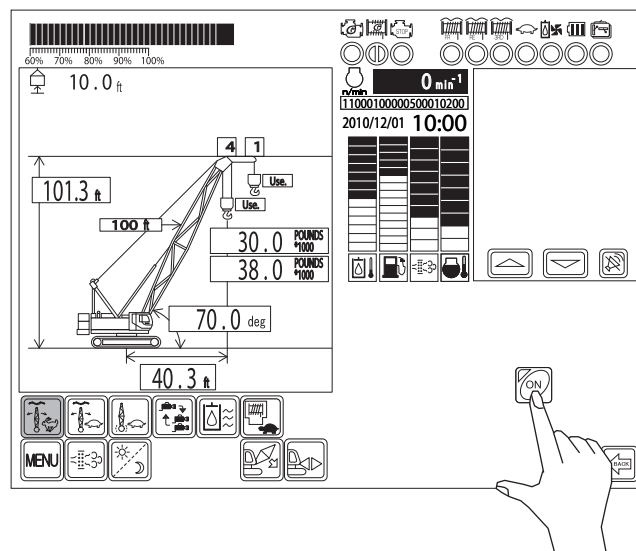
Perform this test in "WORK" position.

The test will not work in assembly/disassembly mode.

Push [MENU] icon to indicate menu and push [A].

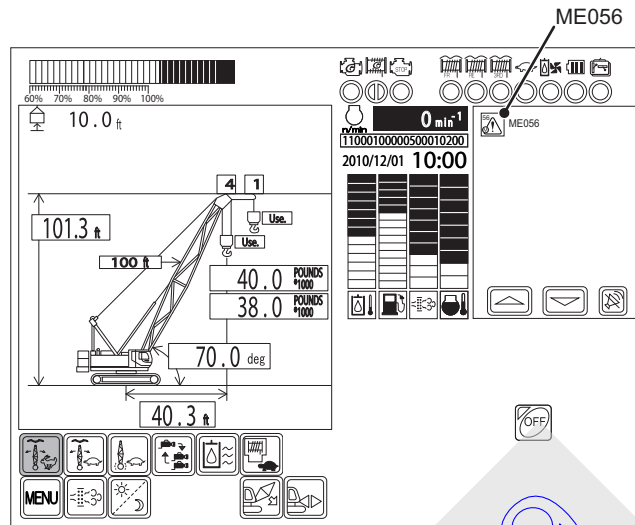


Push [ON] icon.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

The crane turns to the simulated overload condition and auto-stop occurs. (Overload check mode)



Check to see that hook raising or boom lowering can not be done.

During check mode, message [ME056] appears in the message area.

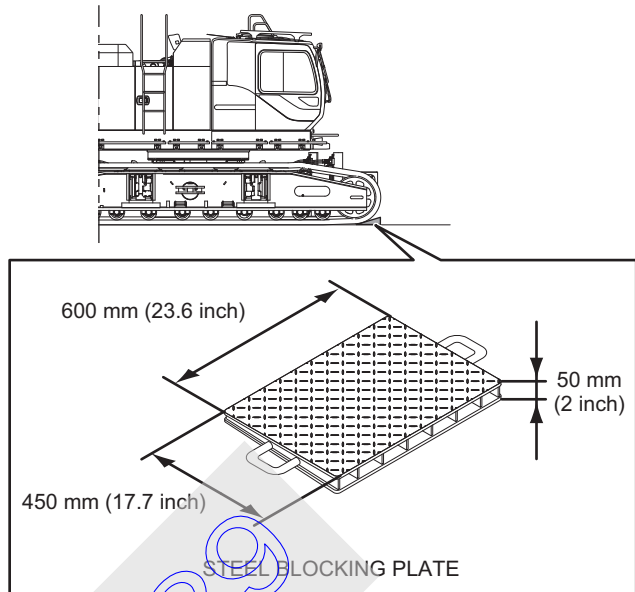
After motion check, push [OFF] icon. Check mode is completed.

## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.3 LOWERING THE ATTACHMENT

When lowering the attachment, observe the following items.

1. Lowering of the attachment must be performed in the front and rear direction of the crawlers.
2. When the boom angle is less than approx. 30 degrees, place the hook on the ground.
3. Operation must be performed at a low speed. Sudden start and stop must be avoided.
4. Prevent the wire rope from catching and kink in the tip end of the boom and jib.
5. Place the steel plate under the front end of the crawler when the crane boom length is 70.1 m (230 ft).
6. Place the steel plate under the front end of the crawler when the jib attached to the 61.0 m (200 ft) boom length.



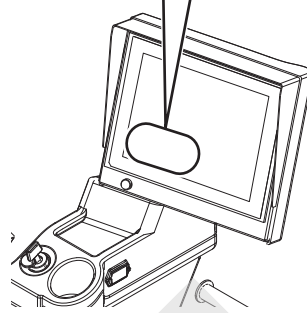
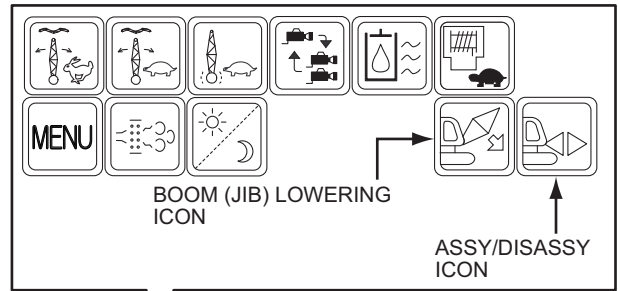
#### **⚠ DANGER**

**Before operating the boom ensure the area above and beneath the boom is clear of all obstructions and personnel.**

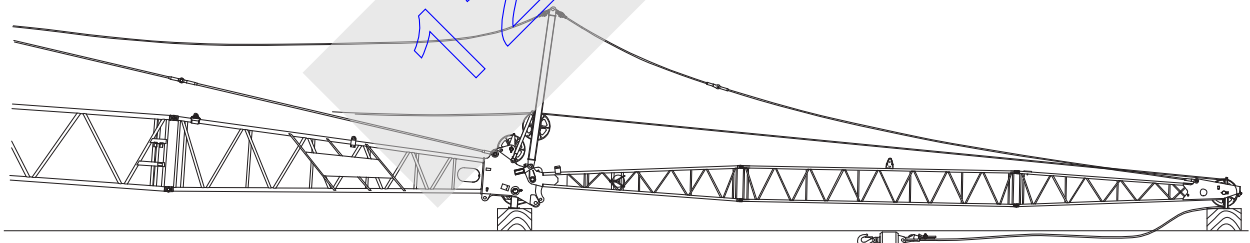
**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

### 5.3.1 LOWERING THE ATTACHMENT

1. Lower the boom at a low speed.
2. When the boom angle exceeds the working area, boom lowering is automatically stopped, and the warning alarm sounds.
3. Lower the hook onto the ground.
4. Press and hold the "Boom (jib) lowering" icon of the controller for approx. 1 second. The automatic stop will be released. Lower the boom further.



5. By lowering the boom further, the hook overhoist limit switch operates when the weight of the hook overhoist limit switch is placed on the ground, and the boom lowering is automatically stopped again. Press and hold the "Assy/disassy" icon one time for approx. 1 second and it becomes the Assy/disassy mode, and the boom can be lowered. Be careful because the hook overhoist automatic stop does not function in the Assy/disassy mode.



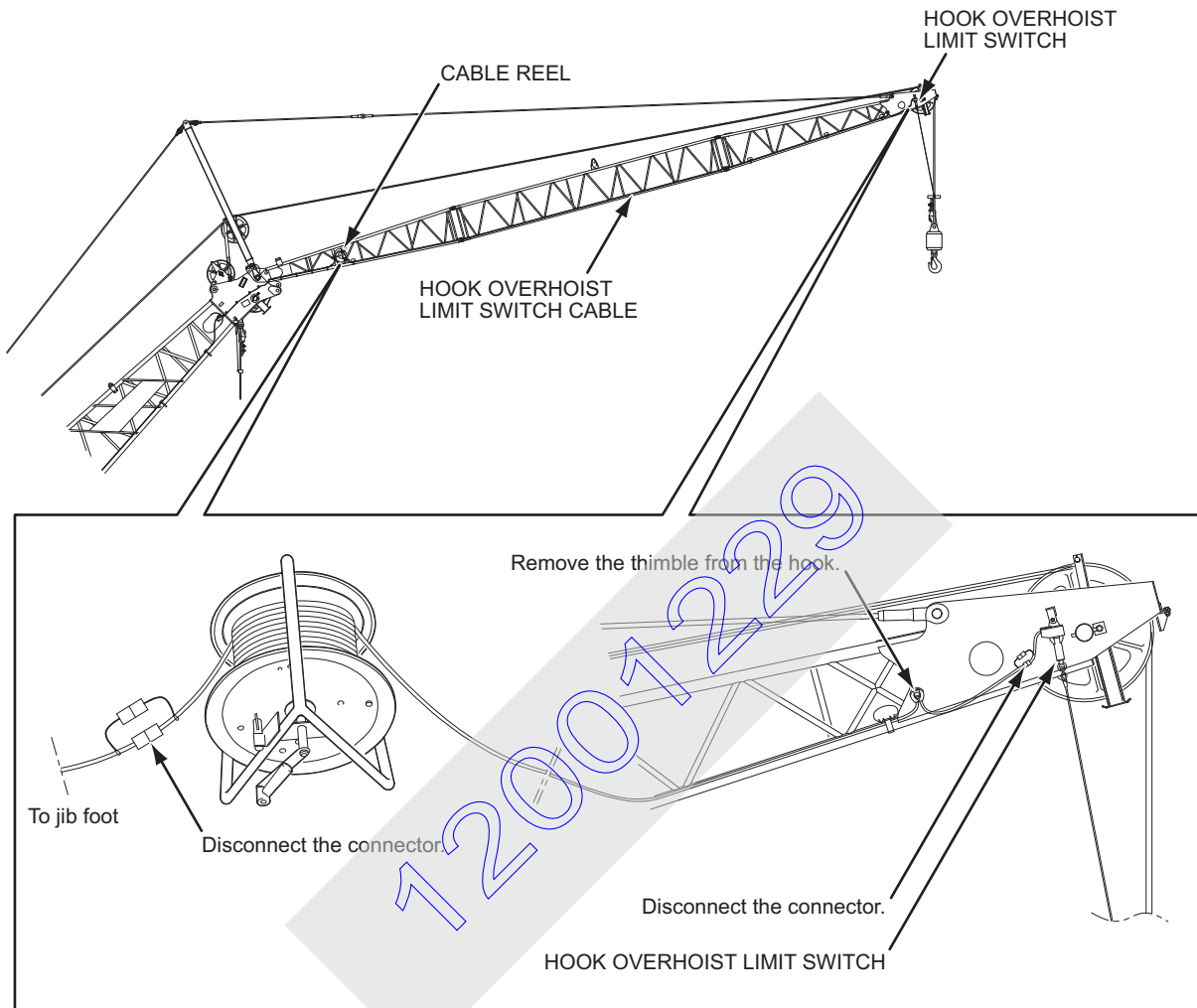




## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 1. DISCONNECTING THE JIB WIRING

If the jib is installed, disconnect the jib side wiring and wind up to the cable reel.  
Put the water proof cap to the disconnected connector.



### **WARNING**

Ensure to wear the safety belt and use the walkway when working on high place to prevent accident of falling off.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

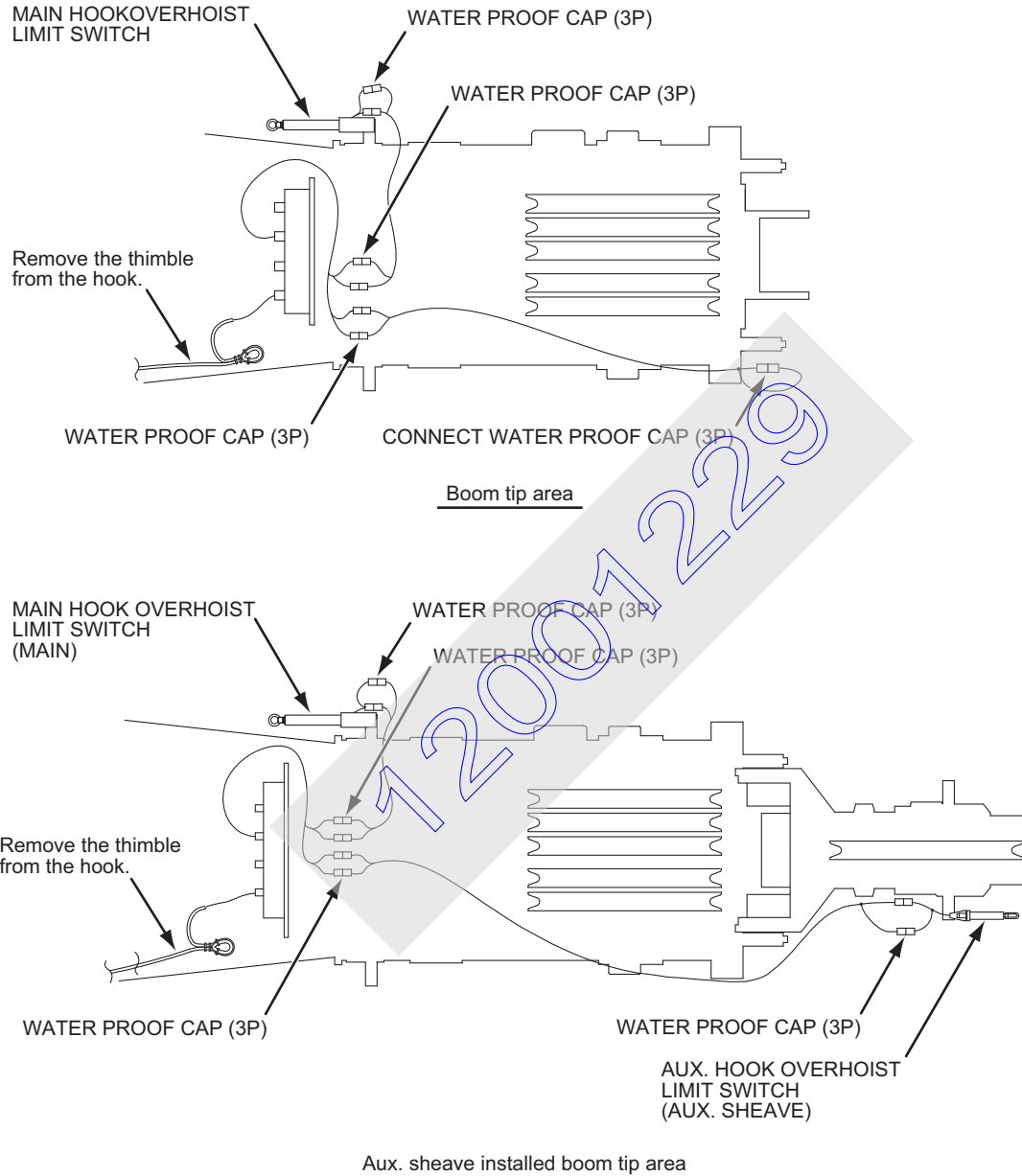
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 2. DISCONNECTING THE LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

#### WIRING ON THE BOOM TIP

Disconnect the overhoist limit switch wiring on the boom tip area. Disconnect the same on the boom with auxiliary sheave too.

Put the water proof cap on the disconnected connector.



### **WARNING**

Ensure to wear the safety belt and use the walkway when working on high place to prevent accident of falling off.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

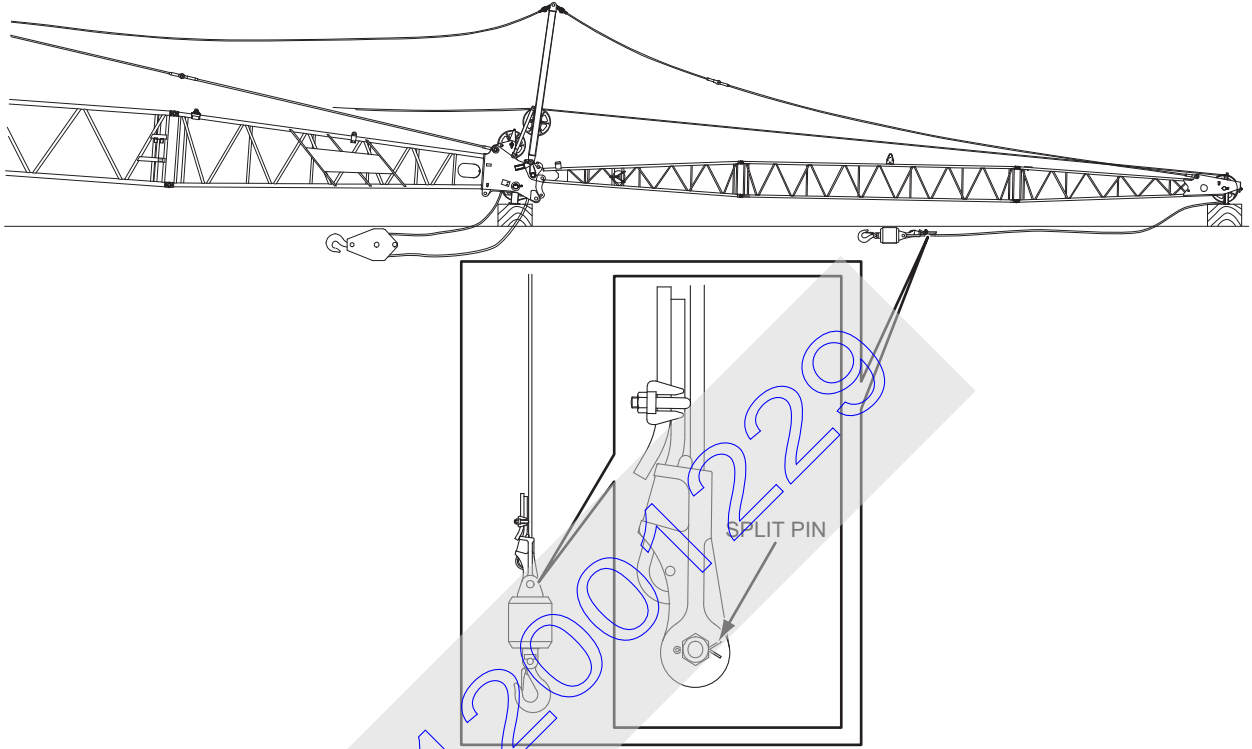
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.4.2 WINDING UP THE FRONT/REAR DRUM WIRE ROPES

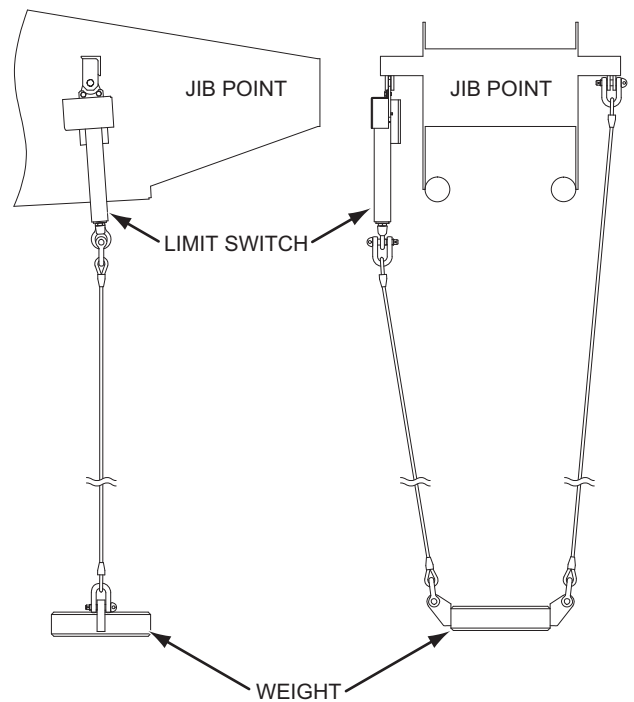
#### **CAUTION**

Confirm that the hook is placed in the stable condition.

1. Remove the rope socket and clamp from the wire rope end.



2. Remove the hook overhoist limit switch and weight from the jib point area.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

3. Slowly operate the front drum or rear drum control lever to wind up the hoist wire rope onto the corresponding drum, being careful for being caught to the sheave.

---

### CAUTION

Do not touch a wire rope directly with bare hands. Protruding wire could cause serious injuries. Working gloves are recommended.

Keep away from rope end removing the wire rope. It may suddenly jump and cause injuries.

Keep hands and clothing clear of the rotating drum and running wire rope.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

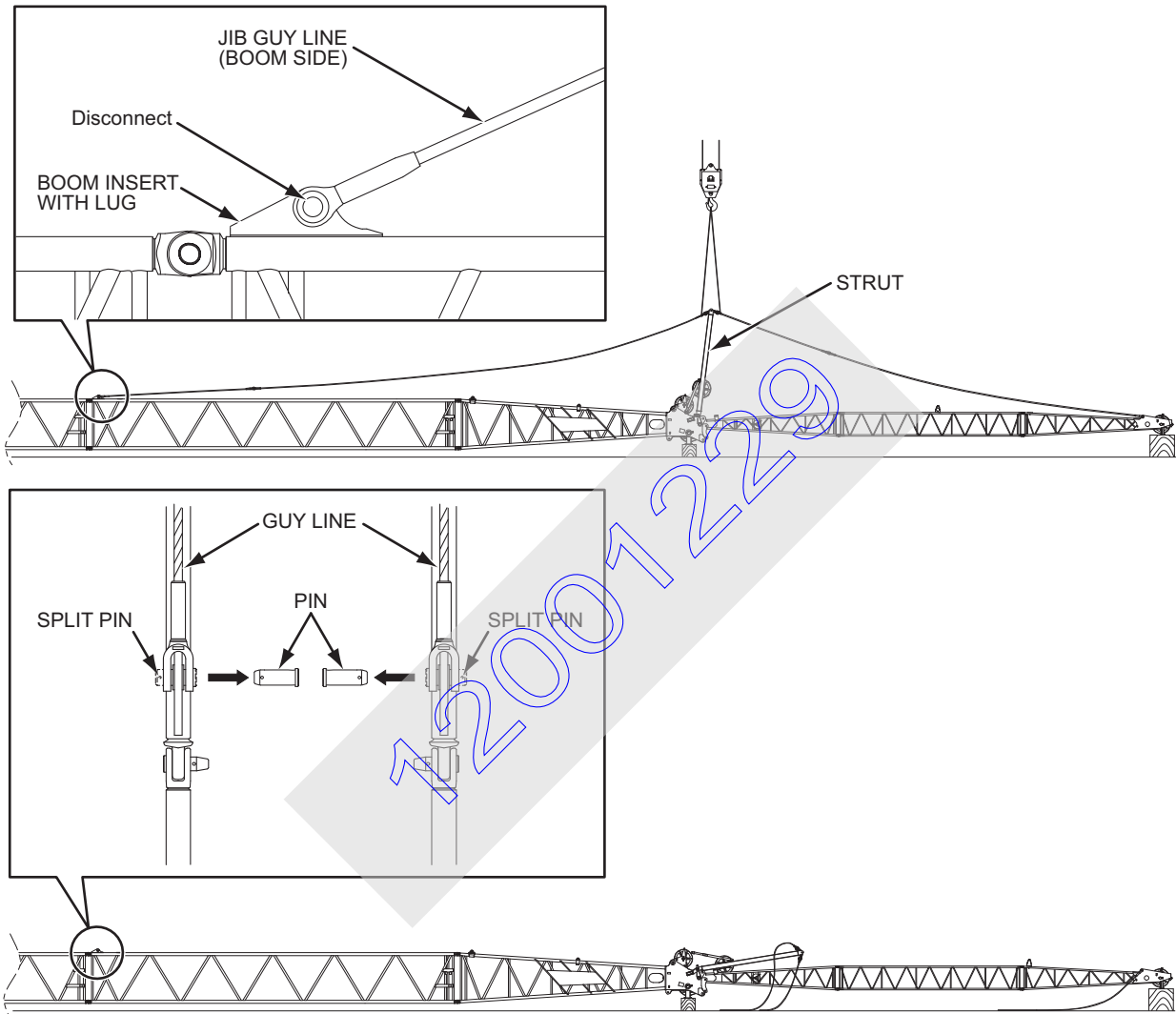
---

4. Fix the wire rope end to the drum outer layer with a steel wire after winding up.

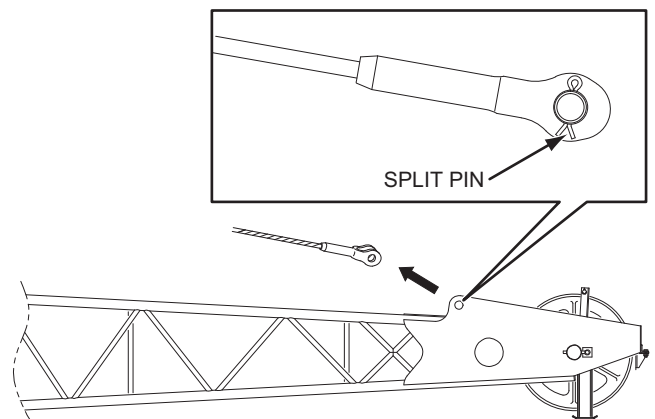
12001229

### 5.4.3 DISASSEMBLING THE JIB

1. After lowering the jib and holding the strut with the assisting crane, disconnect both ends of the boom side jib guy line from the boom insert with lug.
2. Remove the backstop from the strut, and lay down the strut to the jib side while holding the strut.

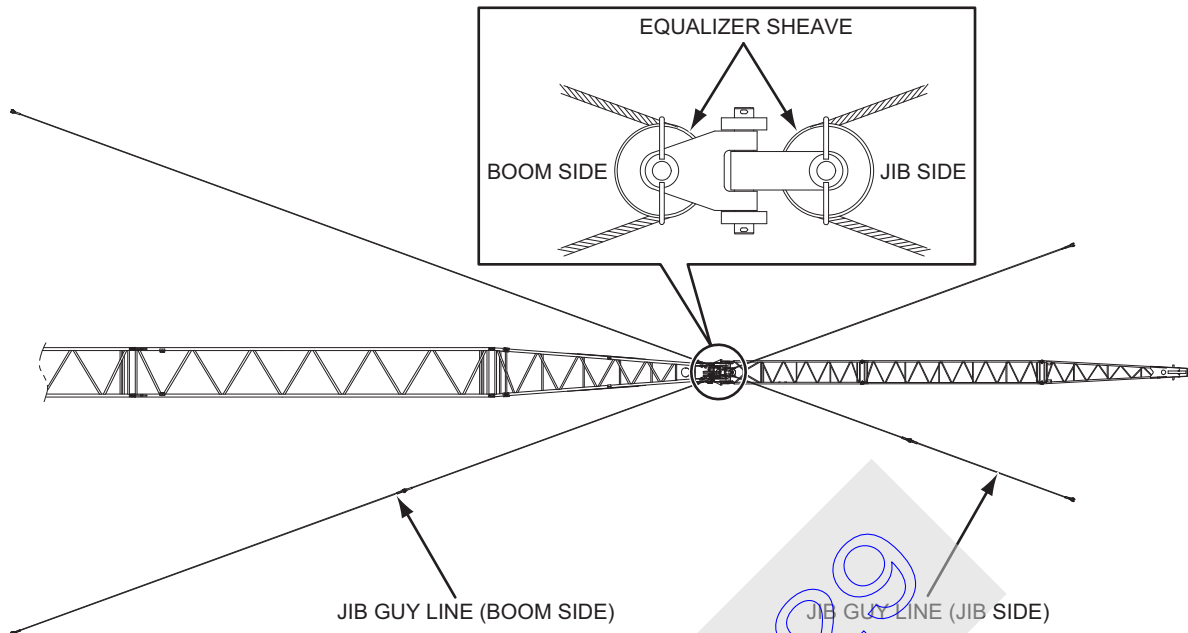


3. Take off the jib guy line from the jib tip end.

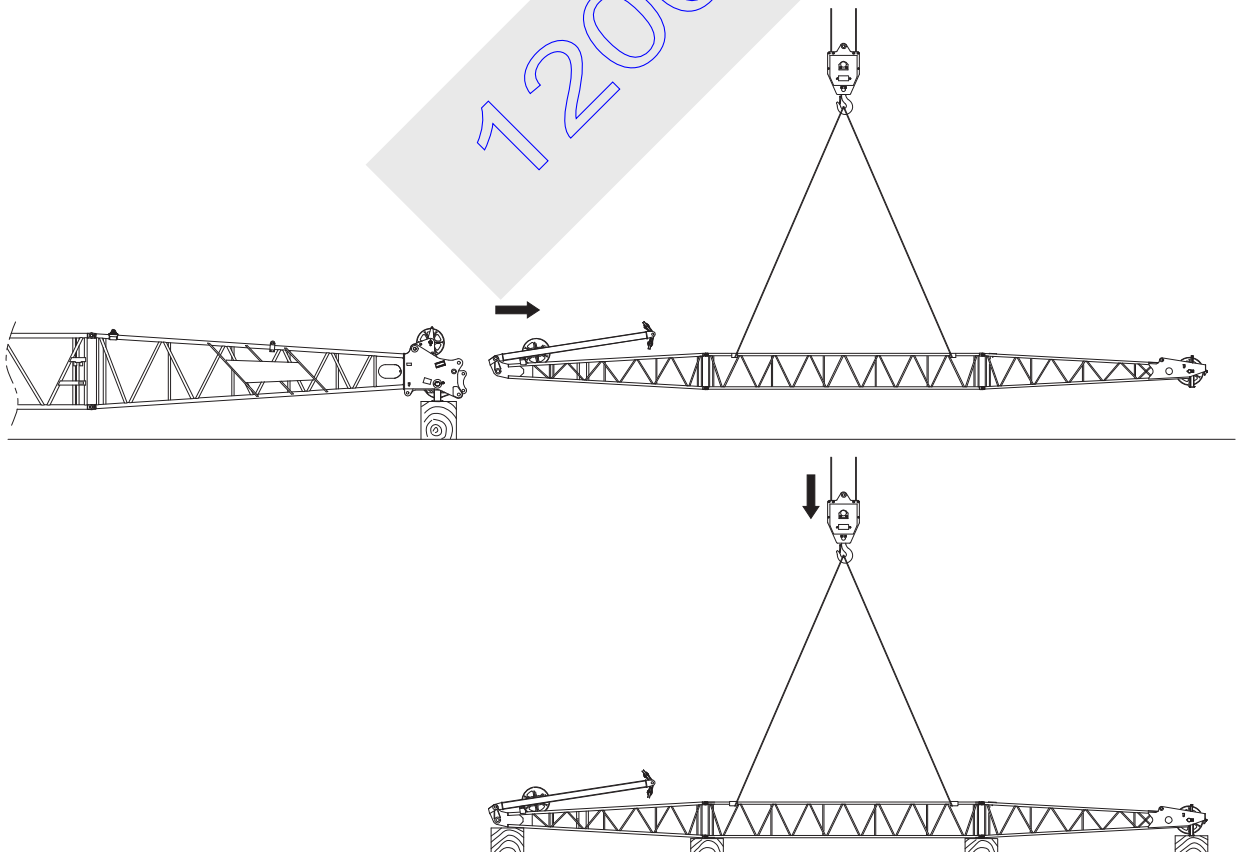


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

4. Take off the strut equalizer sheave and jib guy line.  
Re-install the removed equalizer sheave back to the original position.



5. With the jib being held with the assisting crane, detach the jib from the boom. Place the jib on wooden blocking.

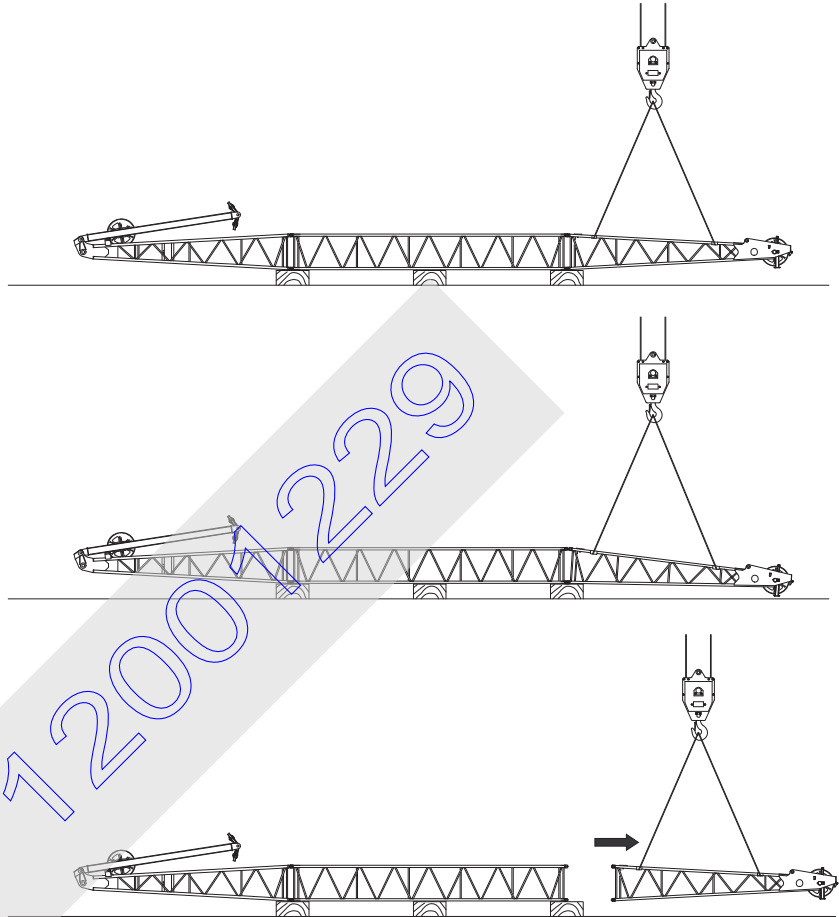


## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

6. Remove the connecting pins between the strut and the jib tip and the connecting pins between the jib base and jib insert.

Remove the top pins first and then remove the bottom pins.

When disconnecting the jib connection points, support the jib with the wooden blocks to prevent the jib from jumping up or falling down.



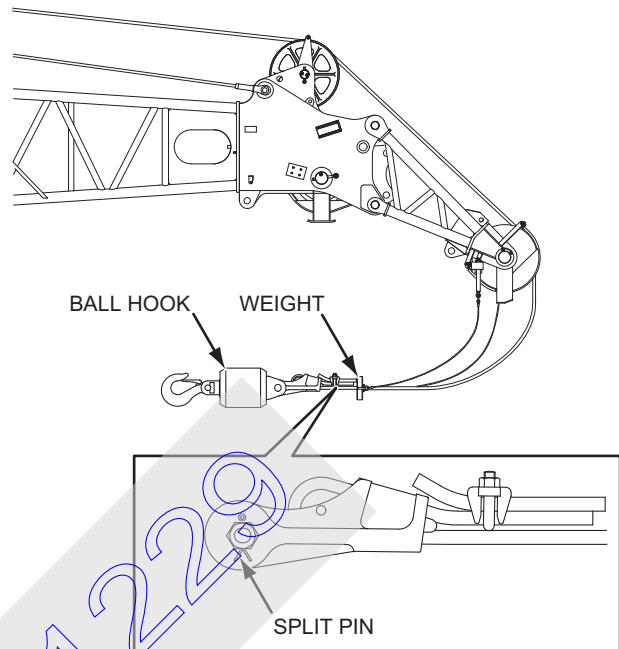
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.4.4 REMOVING THE AUXILIARY SHEAVE

When the aux. sheave is equipped, remove the aux. sheave with the following procedure.

Auxiliary sheave weight: 300 kg (660 lbs)

1. Remove the bolt, nut and split pin first and then remove the rope socket from the ball hook.
2. Remove the overhoist limit switch and weight from the aux. sheave.
3. Wind up the rear drum rope slowly.

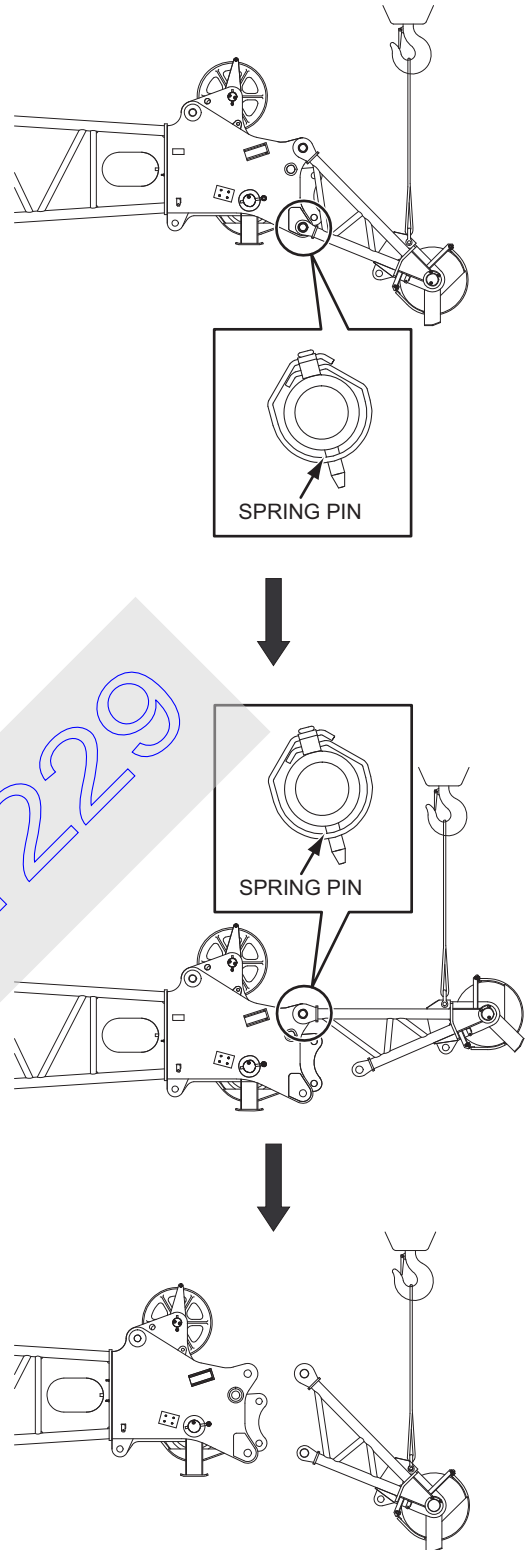




## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

4. Hold the aux. sheave with the assisting crane.

5. Remove the spring pins and the mounting pins as per the procedure as shown right and remove the aux. sheave.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

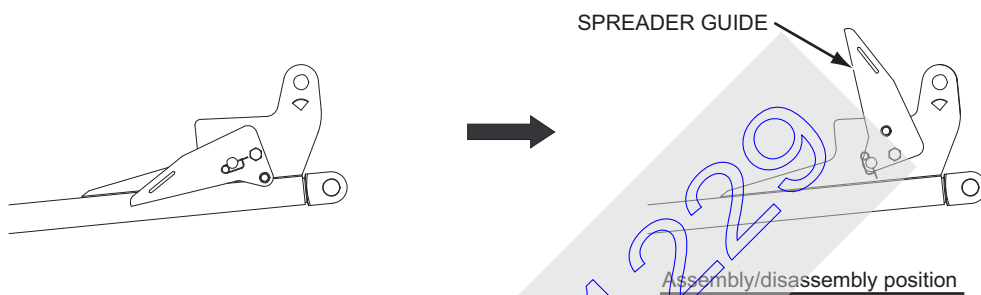
### 5.4.5 REMOVING THE BOOM GUY LINE

1. Set the spreader guide to the "assembly/disassembly position", and slowly loosen the boom hoist wire rope (Refer to P.5-19 "HOW TO USE SPREADER GUIDE").

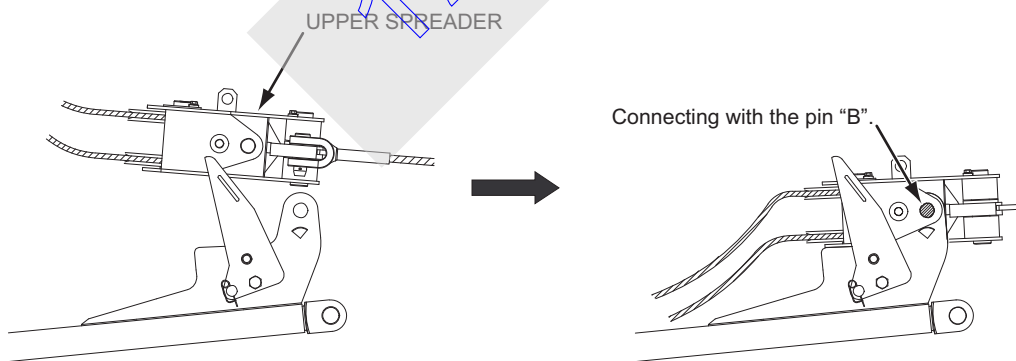


Ensure to work with a signal man to prevent accident caused by wire rope.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.



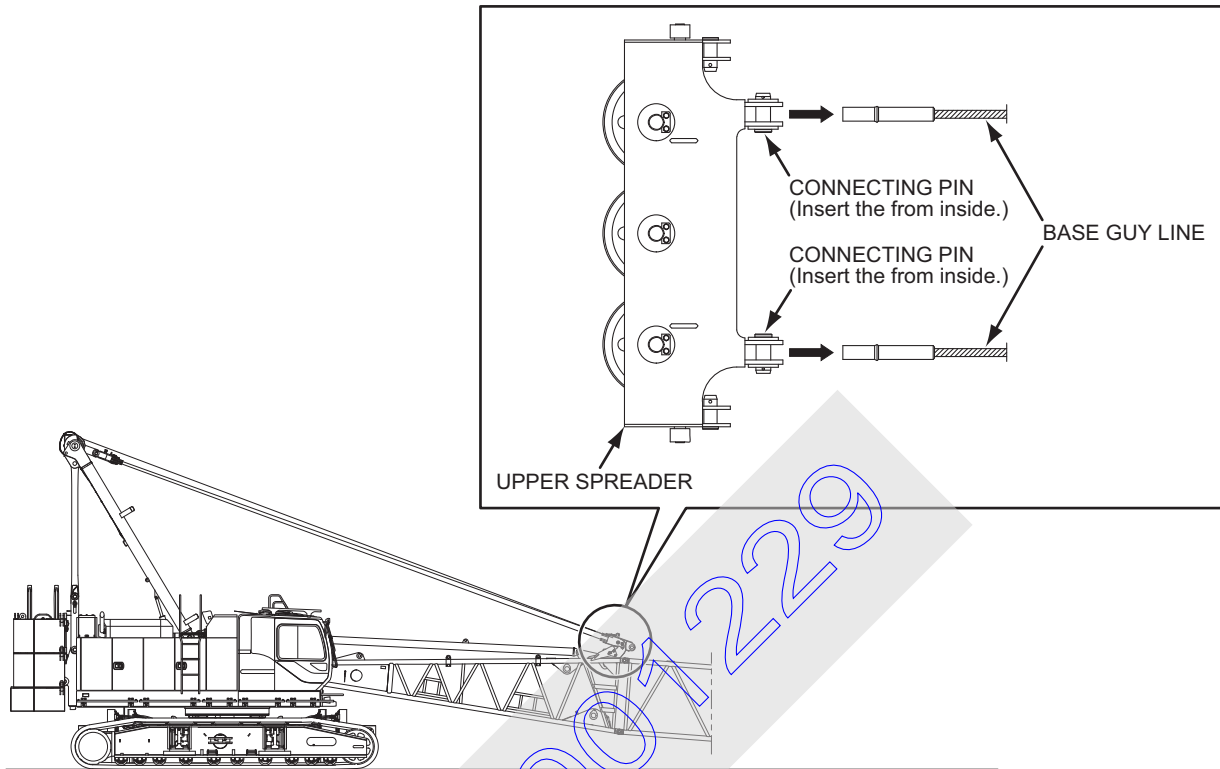
2. Use the spreader guide, and install the upper spreader on the boom base with the pin "B".



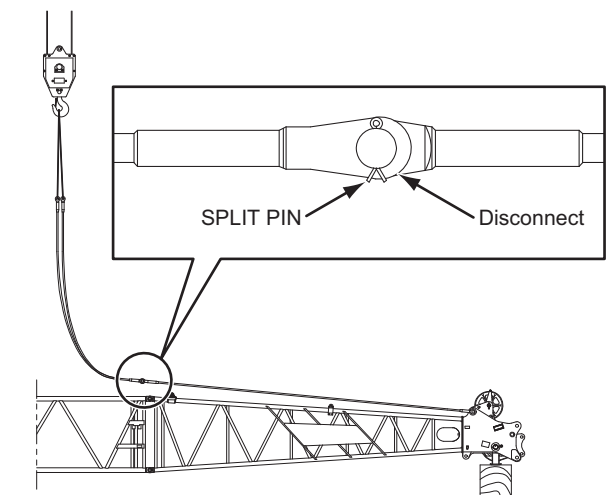
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

3. Disconnect the guy lines from the upper spreader.

Insert the connecting pins on the upper spreader side.



4. Disconnect the connector sections of the guy lines in order.
5. Using the assisting crane, lower the guy lines to the ground.  
At this time, be careful not to damage the boom.



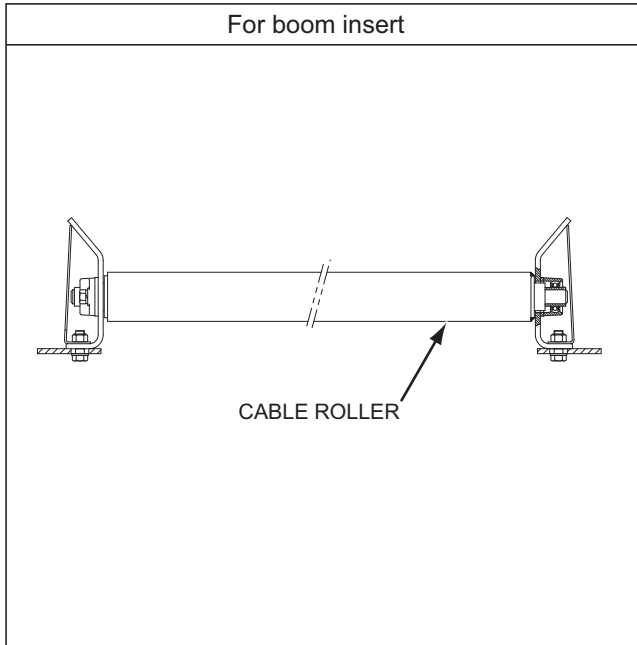
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

---

### 5.4.6 REMOVING THE CABLE ROLLER

Remove the cable roller which is installed on the boom insert.

Remove the cable roller installed on the boom tip if required.



12001229

### 5.4.7 DISASSEMBLING THE BOOM

#### **⚠ DANGER**

Do not stand under, inside or on the boom structure when disassembling boom to prevent accident of crushing due to boom falling off.

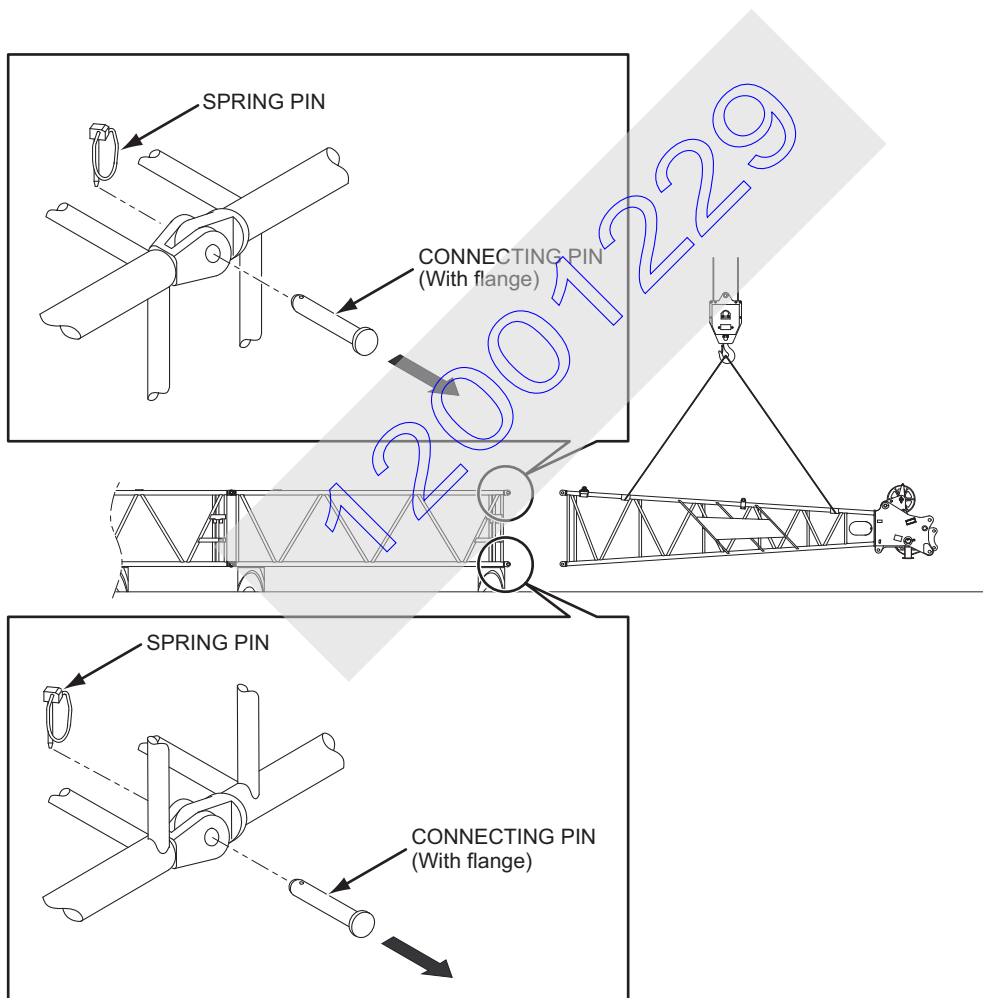
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

#### 1. DISCONNECTING THE BOOM TIP

While holding the boom tip with the assisting crane, draw out the bottom side connecting pins.

Then, draw out the top side connecting pins, and disconnect the boom tip.

Remove the boom tip with using the assisting crane.



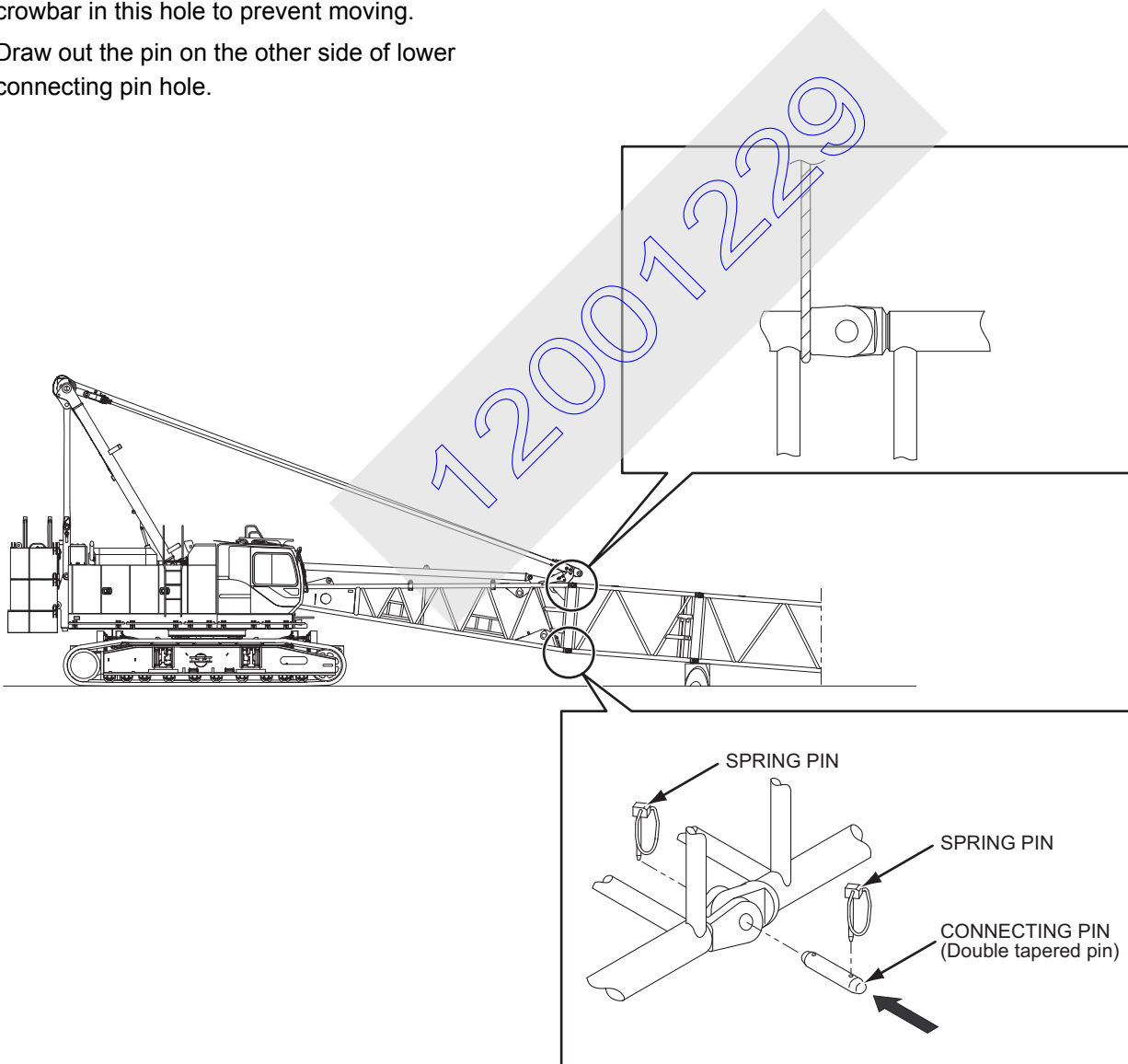
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 2. DISCONNECTING THE BOOM BASE AND BOOM INSERT INSERT

#### **⚠ DANGER**

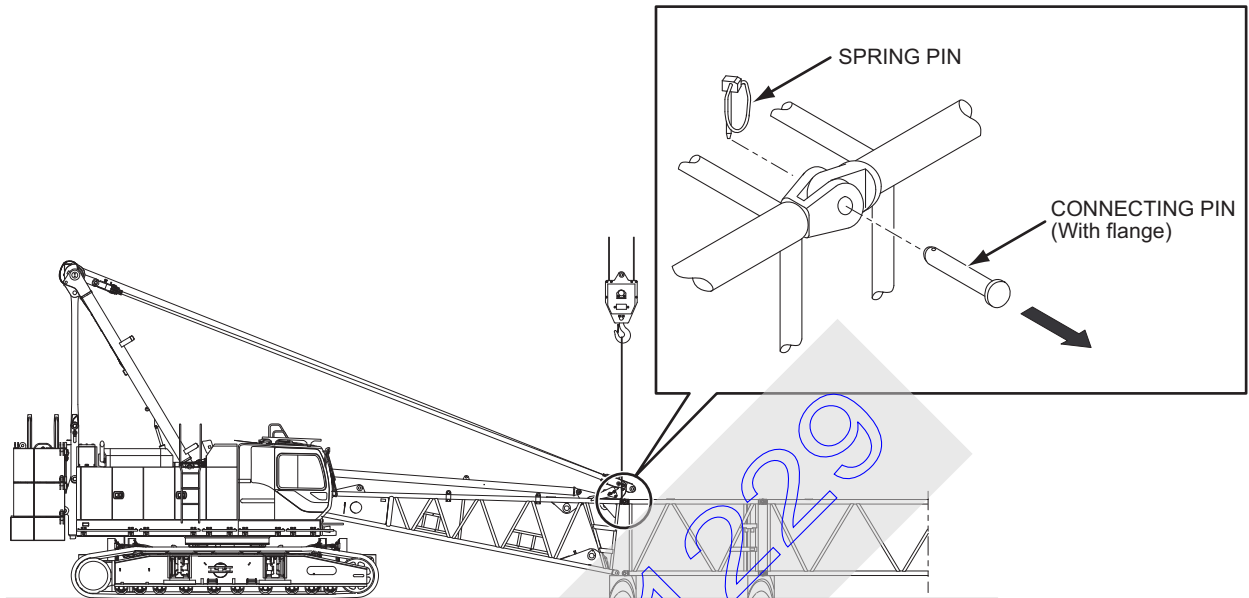
Do not enter under or inside of the boom during disassembling the boom to prevent accident of being crushed due to falling off of the boom. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

- (1) Lift up the connecting point of the boom base and the boom insert and take out the spring pins in the lower connecting pins (double tapered pin) and then draw out the pins from outside to inside. Draw out the pin for only one side and insert the crowbar in this hole to prevent moving.
- (2) Draw out the pin on the other side of lower connecting pin hole.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

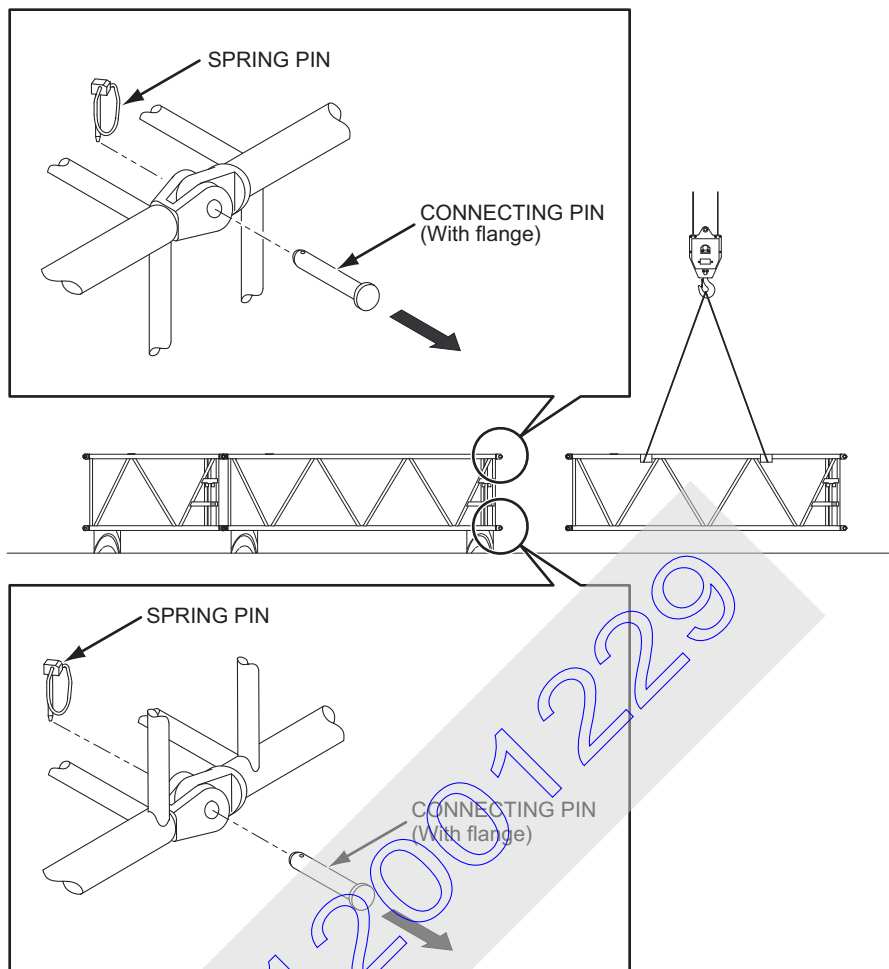
- (3) Remove the crowbar and slowly lower the boom base which has been supported with the assisting crane and place it on the wooden blocks.
- (4) After confirming that the boom base is stable on the wooden blocks, remove the upper connecting pins (with flange) and disconnect it from the boom insert.



## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 3. DISASSEMBLING THE BOOM INSERT

Disconnect the boom insert in order by removing the connecting pins.



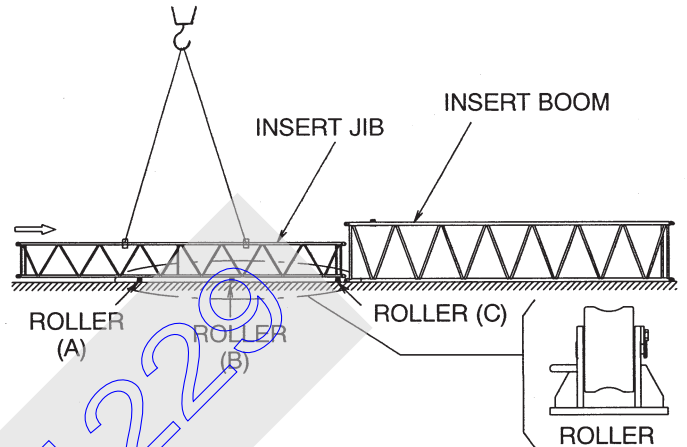


**5.5 PROCEDURE OF THE BOOM NESTING (OPTION)**

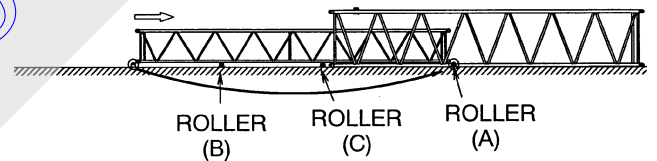
This device is to store the insert jib into the insert boom when the insert boom and the insert jib are transported together.

**5.5.1 NESTING PROCEDURE**

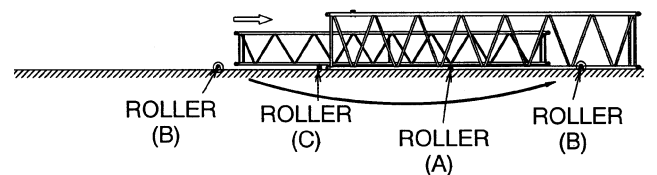
1. Lift the insert jib to the side opening of the insert boom. Place the insert jib on the rollers (A), (B), and (C) (total 6 rollers). Push the insert jib into the insert boom.



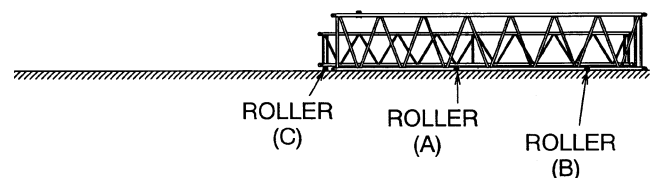
2. After the insert jib has passed the rollers (A), move them to the front of the insert jib.



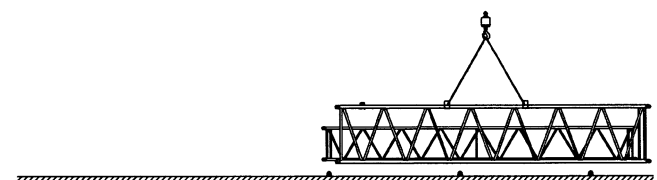
3. Push in the insert jib further. After it has passed the rollers (B), move them in the same way as Step 2.



4. Push in the jib insert to the end of the insert boom. Do not damage the cross beam of the insert boom.



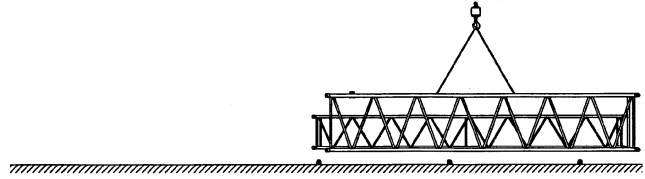
5. After the insert jib is stored into the insert boom, lift the insert boom with the assisting crane.



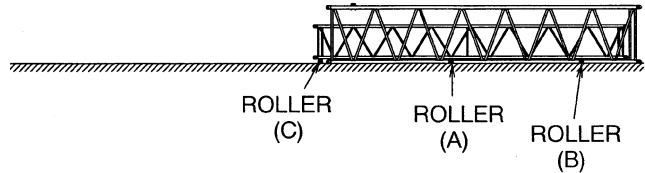
## 5. ASSEMBLY/DISASSEMBLY OF CRANE ATTACHMENT

### 5.5.2 UNNESTING PROCEDURE

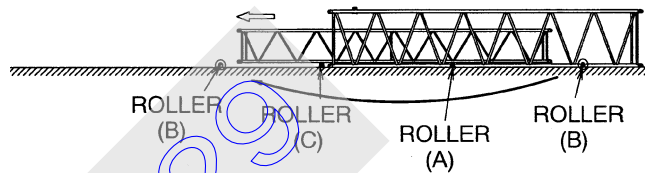
1. Lift the insert boom which has the insert jib inside with the assisting crane. Place the rollers (A), (B) and (C) on the ground so that the rollers come just under the insert jib.



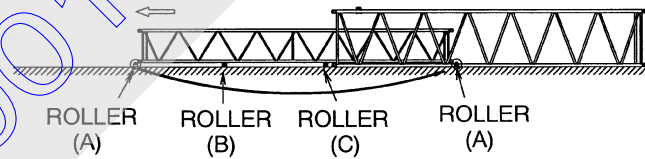
2. Lower the insert boom on the ground so that the insert jib come on the rollers (A), (B) and (C).



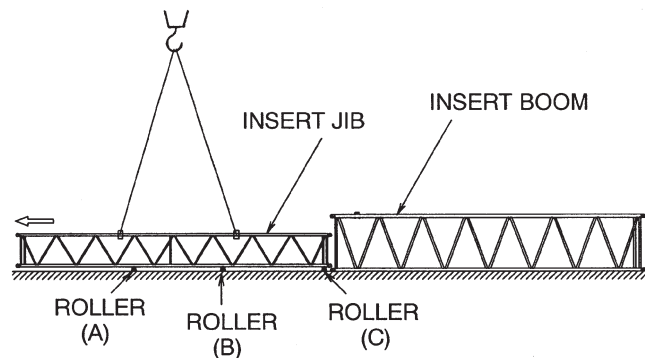
3. While pulling out the insert jib, move the roller (B) to the front of the insert jib when it has passed the roller (B).



4. Pull out the insert jib further and move the roller (A) to the front of the insert jib.

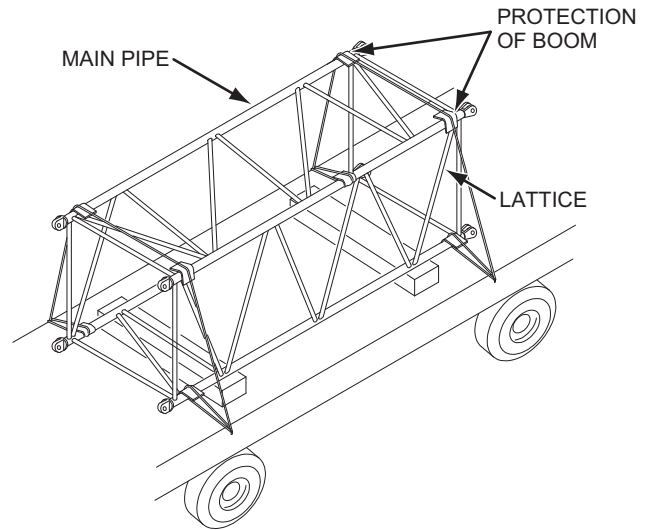


5. Pull out the insert jib completely from the insert boom.



5.6 CAUTION WHEN TRANSPORTING BOOM

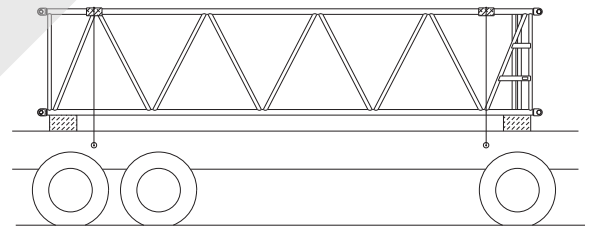
1. In order to prevent the boom from damage, do not hook the fixing ropes directly to the main chord members and lacing members. Be sure to use sling cloth.



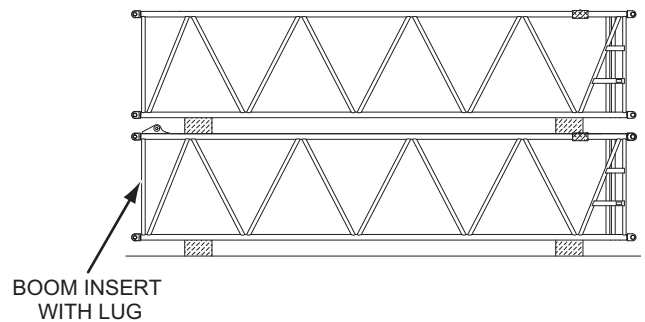
**CAUTION**

Do not transport the boom with the lattice pipe fixed. Lattice pipe may be damaged.

2. Place wooden block under both ends of the boom.



3. When placing a boom upon another boom, place blocking just above the under blocking. Place the boom insert with lugs attached on the bottom. If it is placed on the top, the transporting height becomes high.



12001229

## 6. WIRE ROPE

### 6.1 HANDLING OF WIRE ROPE

---

**CAUTION**

When the crane is delivered from factory, maximum length of wire rope required for boom and jib configuration and a number of part lines which is possible has been wound on the drum.

If boom length is short and a number of parts lines are less, rough spooling such as looseness of wire rope, cross winding or biting may occur.

Use of proper rope length based on crane operating conditions (length of boom or jib, number of part lines of rope, lifting height) is recommended.

(Refer to the table in 6.1.2 WIRE ROPE LENGTH.)

The hook has been removed at the factory delivery.

Winding of rope may be loose and rope biting may occur.

If wire rope is loose, rewind the wire rope applying some tension.

---

---

**CAUTION**

If rope diameter is not correct, biting or rough spooling may occur.

Use genuine wire rope.

---

---

**CAUTION**

Set the hook and number of parts line of rope properly based on lifting load and length of boom and jib.

---

---

**CAUTION**

Handle the control lever slowly.

Abrupt returning of the control lever to neutral may cause loose wire rope or rough spooling due to sudden stop of drum.

---

## 6. WIRE ROPE

### 6.1.1 SPECIFICATION OF WIRE ROPE

#### 1. Wire rope for crane

- Crane

Use	Rope specifications	Breaking strength kN (lbs)	Rope dia. mm	Rope length m (ft)
Front drum	IWRC 6 X Fi (29) Right-hand Regular lay	534 (120,048)	26	260 (853)
	U3 X SeS (48) O/O Special	601 (135,110)		265 (869)
Rear drum	IWRC 6 X Fi (29) Right-hand Regular lay	534 (120,048)	26	230 (755)
	U3 X SeS (48) O/O Special	601 (135,110)		235 (771)
Boom hoist drum	IWRC 6 X P•WS (31) Right-hand Regular lay	328 (73,737)	20	155 (509)
Third drum (Option)	IWRC 6 X Fi (29) Right-hand Regular lay	534 (120,048)	26	190 (623)

#### CAUTION

To properly wind the wire rope to the drum, it is recommended to use wire rope with its diameter of 2.5 to 4.5% larger than nominal value.

Wire rope diameter other than this range may cause rough spooling.

2. Wire rope for hydraulic tagline (Option)

Use	Rope specifications	Breaking strength kN (lbs)	Rope dia. mm	Rope length m (ft)
Hydraulic tagline	FC 6 X W (19) Right-hand Regular lay	58 (13,039)	10	45 (148)

3. Wire rope for reeving winch (Option)

Use	Rope specifications	Breaking strength kN (lbs)	Rope dia. mm	Rope length m (ft)
Reeving winch	FC 6 X W (19) Right-hand Regular lay	37 (8,318)	8	260 (853)

- Ensure to use the specified type of wire rope on each drum at factory shipment by Manitowoc.
- If the diameter of the rope used is out of dimension tolerance range on each drum groove, rope upsetting may be caused.

WINDING CAPACITY OF WIRE ROPE ON EACH DRUM

Front drum, Rear drum, Third drum (option)					Boom hoist drum				
Drum winding capacity on min. Pcd with 26 mm dia. rope.					Drum winding capacity on min. Pcd with 20 mm dia. rope.				
Layer	lane	Min Pcd m (ft)	Winding L on each layer m (ft)	Total winding length m (ft)	Layer	lane	Min Pcd m (ft)	Winding L on each layer m (ft)	Total winding length m (ft)
1	22	0.614 (2.014)	42.4 (139)	42.4 (139)	1	13	0.480 (1.575)	19.6 (64)	19.6 (64)
2	22	0.658 (2.159)	45.5 (149)	87.9 (288)	2	13	0.514 (1.686)	21.0 (69)	40.6 (133)
3	22	0.702 (2.303)	48.6 (159)	136.5 (448)	3	13	0.548 (1.798)	22.4 (73)	63.0 (207)
4	22	0.747 (2.451)	51.6 (169)	188.1 (617)	4	13	0.582 (1.909)	23.7 (78)	86.7 (284)
5	22	0.791 (2.595)	54.6 (179)	242.7 (796)	5	13	0.616 (2.021)	25.2 (83)	111.9 (367)
6	22	0.835 (2.740)	57.7 (189)	300.4 (985)	6	13	0.650 (2.133)	26.5 (87)	138.4 (454)
7	22	0.879 (2.884)	60.8 (199)	361.2 (1,186)	7	13	0.684 (2.244)	28.0 (92)	166.4 (546)
					8	13	0.718 (2.356)	29.3 (96)	195.7 (642)

Min Pcd means theoretical value calculated from the right figure on 2nd or higher layer.

Unit : mm (inch)

Min Pcd means theoretical value calculated from the right figure on 2nd or higher layer.

Unit : mm (inch)

## 6. WIRE ROPE

### TYPE OF WIRE ROPE

The factory delivered wire ropes do not satisfy all working conditions. Selection of proper wire rope to the working condition is required.

The wire rope has its own characteristics. Select the proper wire rope to the working condition referring to the table below.

### MAIN WORK CONTENT AND ITS RECOMMENDED HOIST WIRE ROPE TYPE

Work content	Type of wire rope	Remarks
High lifting work • Crane, Tower • Jib, Aux. sheave • Rope number of parts line 1 to 2	U4 X SeS (39)	Even non-rotating type has rotating property.
General crane work • Work with boom shorter than half of longest boom. Work cycle is comparatively low. • Assisting crane work to foundation work • Clamshell work	IWRC 6 X Fi (29)	
Large load, High cycle work • Block lifting / transposition work • Port loading / unloading work (Grab bucket work)	IWRC 6 X Fi (29)	
Large load, High cycle work • Under ground excavating work (Hammer grab work)	IWRC 6 X Fi (29) non rotating rope U3 X SeS (48)	Even non-rotating type has rotating property.
Large load, High cycle work • Underground diaphragm wall work (Diaphragm wall bucket work)	IWRC 6 X Fi (29) non rotating rope U3 X SeS (48)	Even non-rotating type has rotating property.
Light load, high cycle work • Lifting magnet work	IWRC 6 X Fi (29)	

### TYPE OF WIRE ROPE FOR BOOM AND JIB HOIST

Work content	Type of wire rope	Remarks
All construction and foundation work • Crane boom hoist • Tower hoist • Tower jib hoist	IWRC 6 X P•WS (31)	Non shape deformed property, fatigue resistance type rope



## 6.1.2 WIRE ROPE LENGTH

## 1. MAIN

Unit : m (ft)

Parts of Boom length \ line	1 Part	2 Part	3 Part	4 Part	5 Part	6 Part	7 Part	8 Part	9 Part	10 Part
15.2 (50)	40 (131)	58 (190)	76 (249)	95 (312)	113 (371)	131 (430)	149 (489)	167 (548)	185 (607)	203 (666)
18.3 (60)	46 (151)	67 (220)	89 (292)	110 (361)	131 (430)	152 (499)	173 (568)	194 (636)	215 (705)	
21.3 (70)	52 (171)	77 (253)	101 (331)	125 (410)	149 (489)	173 (568)	197 (646)	221 (725)		
24.4 (80)	58 (190)	86 (282)	113 (371)	140 (459)	167 (548)	194 (636)	221 (725)			
27.4 (90)	65 (213)	95 (312)	125 (410)	155 (509)	185 (607)	215 (705)				
30.5 (100)	71 (233)	104 (341)	137 (449)	170 (558)	203 (666)	237 (778)				
33.5 (110)	77 (253)	113 (371)	149 (489)	185 (607)	222 (728)	258 (846)				
36.6 (120)	83 (272)	122 (400)	161 (528)	200 (656)	240 (787)					
39.6 (130)	89 (292)	131 (430)	173 (568)	216 (709)						
42.7 (140)	95 (312)	140 (459)	185 (607)	231 (758)						
45.7 (150)	101 (331)	149 (489)	197 (646)	246 (807)						
48.8 (160)	107 (351)	158 (518)	210 (689)							
51.8 (170)	113 (371)	167 (548)	222 (728)							
54.9 (180)	119 (390)	176 (577)	234 (768)							
57.9 (190)	125 (410)	186 (610)	246 (807)							
61.0 (200)	131 (430)	195 (640)								
64.0 (210)	137 (449)	204 (669)								
67.1 (220)	143 (469)	213 (699)								
70.1 (230)	149 (489)	222 (728)								

## 6. WIRE ROPE

### 2. JIB

Unit : m (ft)

Jib	Jib length				
Boom length	9.1 (30)	12.2 (40)	15.2 (50)	18.3 (60)	21.3 (70)
27.4 (90)	81 (267)	87 (287)	93 (306)	99 (326)	105 (345)
30.5 (100)	87 (287)	93 (306)	99 (326)	105 (345)	111 (365)
33.5 (110)	94 (307)	99 (326)	105 (346)	111 (365)	117 (385)
36.6 (120)	100 (327)	106 (346)	111 (366)	117 (385)	123 (405)
39.6 (130)	106 (347)	112 (366)	118 (386)	123 (405)	129 (425)
42.7 (140)	112 (367)	118 (386)	124 (406)	130 (425)	136 (445)
45.7 (150)	118 (386)	124 (406)	130 (425)	136 (445)	142 (464)
48.8 (160)	124 (406)	130 (426)	136 (445)	142 (465)	148 (484)
51.8 (170)	130 (426)	136 (446)	142 (465)	148 (485)	154 (504)
54.9 (180)	136 (446)	142 (466)	148 (485)	154 (505)	160 (524)
57.9 (190)	142 (466)	148 (486)	154 (505)	160 (525)	166 (544)
61.0 (200)	148 (486)	154 (505)	160 (525)	166 (544)	172 (564)

#### Note

This table indicates the required rope length in case that the hook height is about boom foot.

When underground work is required, rope length must be adjusted accordingly.

#### Note

If longer rope is used, rope rough spooling on the drum is likely to occur.

6.1.3 CAUTIONS IN HANDLING WIRE ROPE

1. Cautions in unloading or during transportation

- Do not drop from the load deck.
- When rolling the wooden rope reel with lever etc. do not touch the wire rope direct with the lever but touch the outer flange area.
- In case of coiled wire rope, do not place or roll over directly on the sandy ground or on the steel pieces.

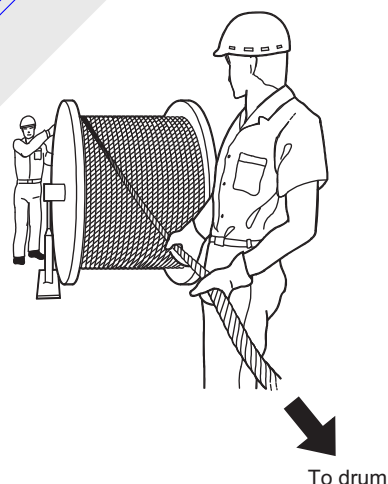
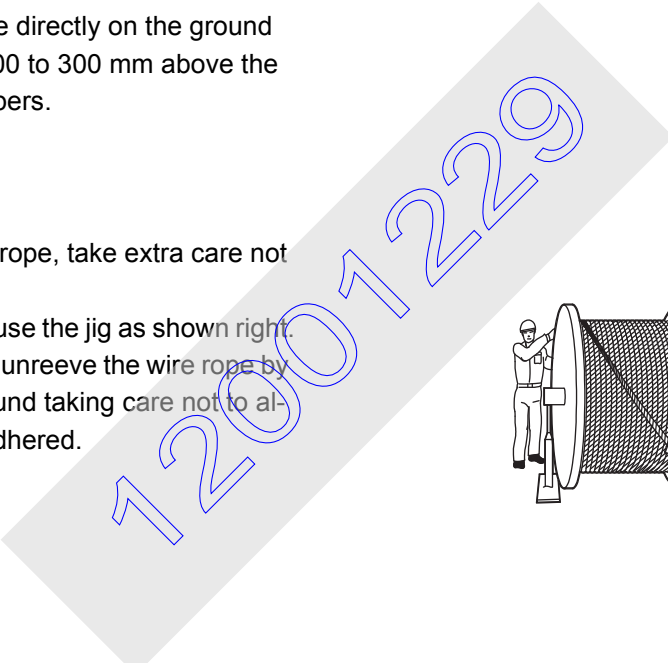
2. Cautions in storing

- Store the wire rope in dry atmosphere.  
In case of outdoor storage, ensure to put the cover to protect from rain.
- Do not place the wire rope directly on the ground but place them approx. 200 to 300 mm above the ground with wooden sleepers.


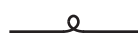


3. Unreeving the wire rope

When unreeving the wire rope, take extra care not to allow kinking.

It would be convenient to use the jig as shown right. If such jig is not available, unreeve the wire rope by rolling the reel on the ground taking care not to allow sand or iron pieces adhered.



Kink : Deformation by twisting of wire rope

- (1)  Loop by twisting wire rope
- (2)  Pulled up condition under tension
- (3)  Kink occurred
- (4)  Wire rope does not return to original shape



Unreeving method of wire rope

## 6. WIRE ROPE

---

### 6.1.4 WINDING WIRE ROPE TO THE DRUM

- Adjust the wire rope to the proper length suitable to the working condition (boom length, number of rope parts line and lifting height) to prevent the upper layer of rope penetrating into lower layer when the load is lifted.
- When winding the wire rope to the drum, take care not to cause laying.
- The dead turns of rope on the drum should be wound tight under tension.
- When feeding out the rope from the drum, take care not to cause laying or kink.

Wire ropes are simply wound on the drum and not tight under tension at the factory delivery.

Lifting the large load without tension on the base layer may cause upper layer to penetrate into lower layer and may cause rope deformation, rope upsetting or premature strand cut.

Ensure to feed out all of the wire rope from the drum prior to actual crane work and properly wind the dead turns to the drum applying tension based on the work content.

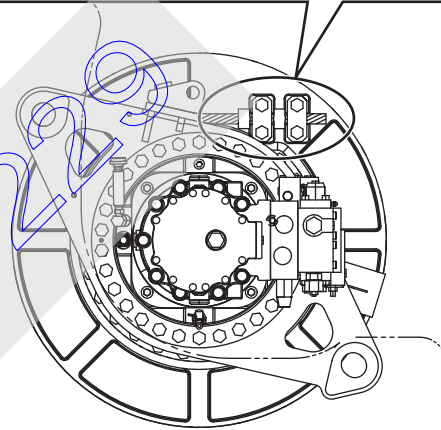
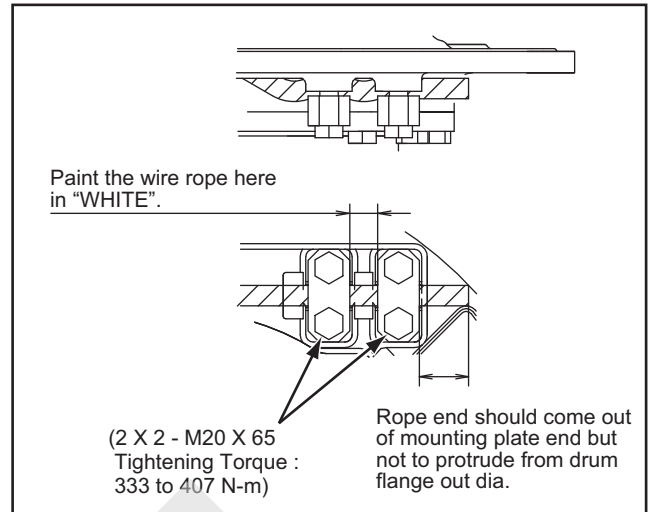
12001229

## 6.1.5 WINDING PROCEDURE OF WIRE ROPE TO DRUM

1. In case of front and rear drum

(1) Pass the wire rope end through the inside of the drum flange and fix it to the drum flange by pressing with two mounting plates.

Do not allow the rope end to protrude from the drum flange.



**WARNING**

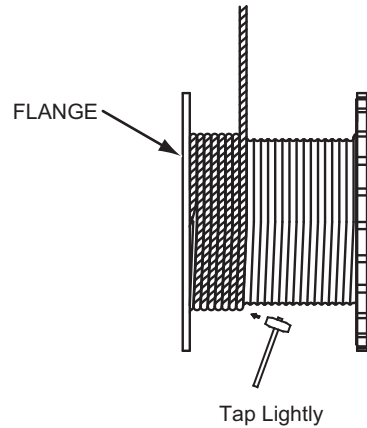
If the rope end is not firmly fixed, rope may slip out and the load may drop off.

Ensure to fix the rope end properly.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

## 6. WIRE ROPE

- (2) Pull the wire rope manually and wind up on the drum groove while guiding the rope along the drum end guide. Make sure that minimum 3 turns remain on the drum even wire rope is fed out to maximum.



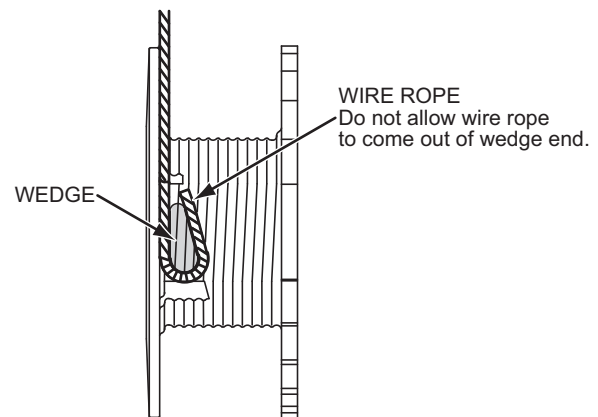
### **WARNING**

If more than 3 turns do not remain on the drum, wire rope may slip out and lifting load may drop off. Ensure to have minimum 3 turns remained on the drum. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

- (3) Then apply the required tension on the wire rope and wind up to the drum. Refer to the chapter "Applying tension on the rope" and its figure.

### 2. In case of boom drum

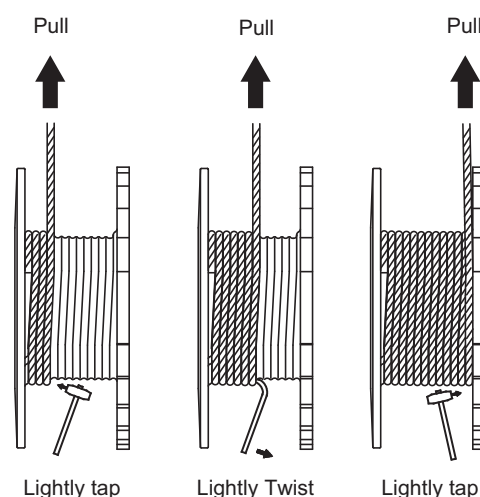
- (1) Do not allow the wire rope end comes out of drum wedge hole. Tension side rope should come to the straight face side of socket. Install the wedge firmly on the drum.



WIRE ROPE INSTALLATION

- (2) Pull the boom hoist wire rope manually and tap lightly on the wire rope to align and wind the wire rope slowly.

Apply tension on the wire rope by boom weight and slowly wind on the drum.



WINDING OF WIRE ROPE  
(In case of boom hoist wire rope)

**WARNING**

Take extra care on running wire rope to prevent accident of being crushed or being entangled.

Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

- (3) Make sure that minimum 3 turns remain on the drum even wire rope is fed out to maximum.

**WARNING**

If more than 3 turns do not remain on the drum, wire rope may slip out and lifting load may drop off.

Ensure to have minimum 3 turns remained on the drum.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

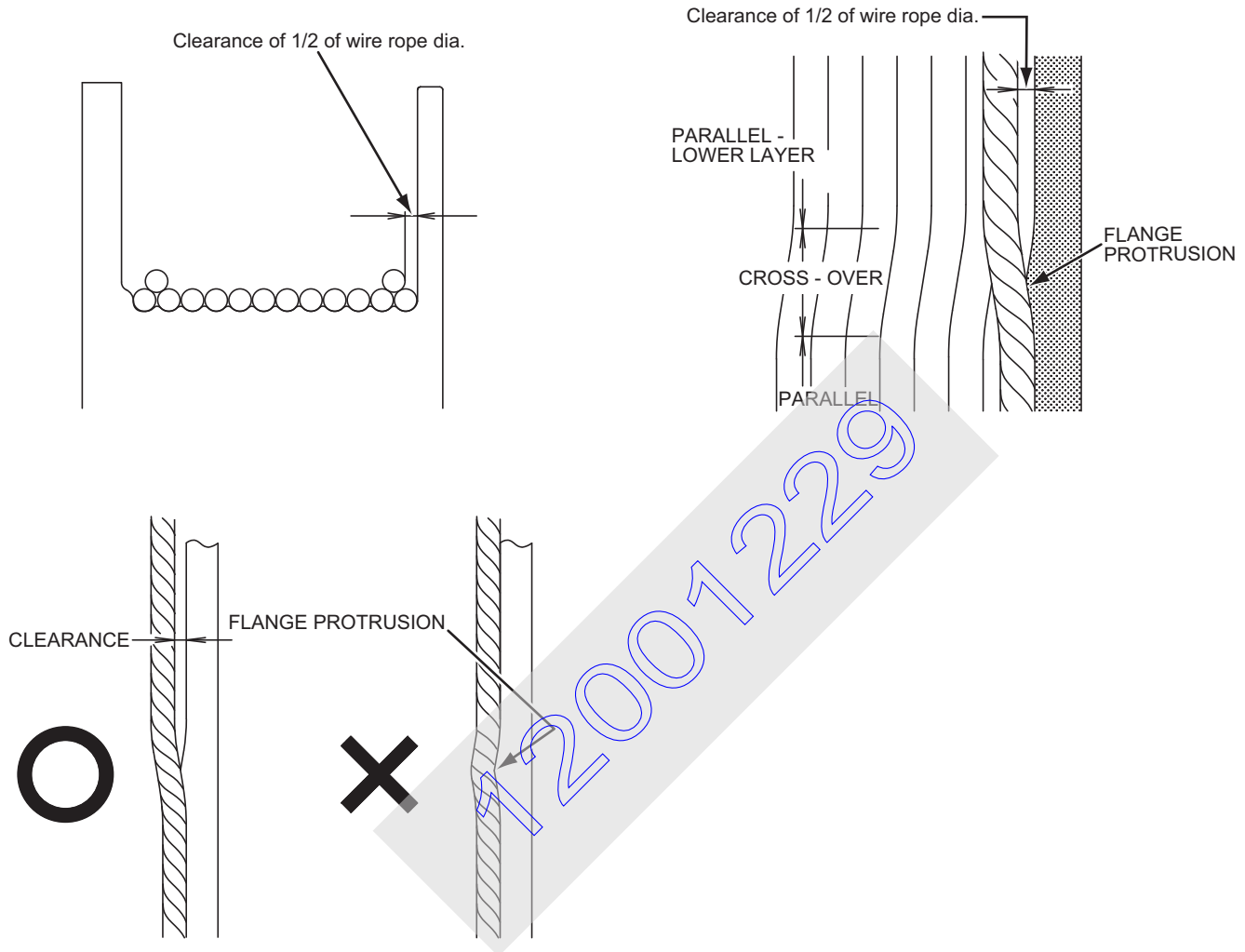
- (4) Then apply the required tension on the wire rope and wind the wire rope.

To apply the tension on the wire rope, lift up the whole of boom hoist wire rope between the upper and the lower spreader with an assist crane using a pulley block or apply the boom weight on the boom hoist wire rope between the upper and the lower spreader.

## 6. WIRE ROPE

### 3. Drum flange rope clearance

- (1) If the layer change occurs on the drum flange protruding point (change from 1st layer to 2nd layer), wire rope and drum end area is guided by protruding portion and the clearance of about 1/2 of wire rope diameter may be created.



### **CAUTION**

If wound without clearance having wire rope followed the protruding area excessively may cause rope upsetting.

Ensure to provide clearance as shown on the above figure at the protruding area.

- (2) Even if the winding layer becomes multiple layer, wire rope behavior in layer changing area is basically same as that between 1st and 2nd layer. However due to wire rope and drum manufacturing unevenness, layer change area varies as layer becomes larger.



**6.1.6 CORRECTING METHOD OF ENTANGLED WIRE ROPE**

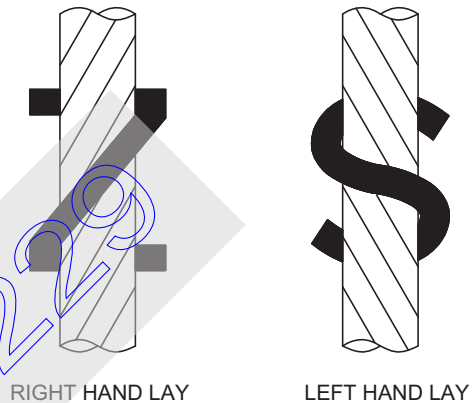
The wire rope has a tendency to rotate to the direction for returning its lay when the load is applied due to its construction.

This is called "wire rope rotating property".

In case of high lifting crane or lifting with 2 to 3 parts of line on hook rope, wire rope may be entangled or lifting load may rotate due to rope rotating property and work safety or efficiency may be suffered.

When the rope becomes entangled due to this wire rope rotating property, correct them as per the following procedure.

- (1) Type of wire rope lay There are two types of wire rope lay, Right hand lay and Left hand lay. Be careful about the type of lay.



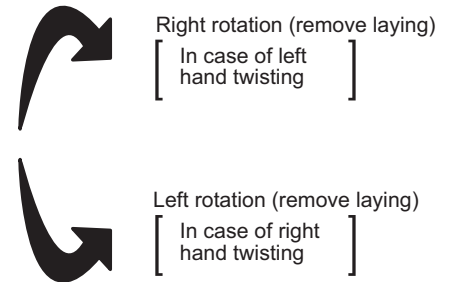
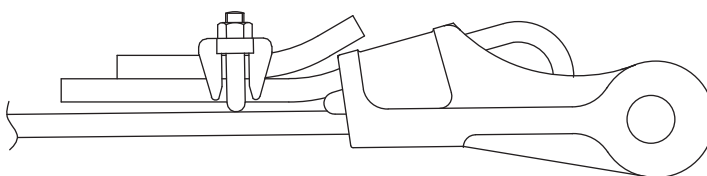
- (2) Correcting method of entangled wire rope.

To correct the entangled wire rope, loosen the wire rope completely.

Turn the rope socket side end forcibly by repeating hook hoisting or lowering in such way that the applied lay portion will move toward drum side sequentially.

Perform running in of rope by repeating these.

- Method to provide rotating of rope socket area. Rotate the rope socket in the opposite direction as that of the entangled rope hook.



## 6. WIRE ROPE

---

### (3) Cautions in correcting entangled wire rope

- Number of rotation of rope required for correcting entangled rope.  
Number of entanglement x rope number of parts of line = correcting rotation number

Number of entanglement: number of rotation of hook

- Too many rotations in one trial may cause rope shape deformation.  
Since it would be difficult to correct evenly throughout the entire length by one trial, limit the rope rotations to 4 to 5 on one trial.  
Repeat the correcting several times based on the conditions.
- The cause of entanglement may vary based on the timing of entanglement occurrence.  
Be careful on this point.

If the entanglement occurs just after the rope installation or crane operation, correct them as per the previously mentioned procedure.

If the entanglement occurs sometime after or during the crane work, the following causes can be assumed.

If the entanglement occurs sometime after during the crane work, the following causes can be assumed.

- Wire rope is drawn with the sheave and rope lay move irregularly
- The sheave diameter is too small.
- Wear on sheave groove.
- Fleet angle is too large. Confirmation of cause is required. Contact the nearest Manitowoc service shop.

---

### CAUTION

Be careful on rope socket rotation due to rope lay when removing the rope socket.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries.

---

- Removing method of rope lay of boom hoist drum wire rope.

In the boom hoist drum wire rope, wire rope may cause waving due to wire rope unlay.

In such case, remove the rope socket and take out the rope lay.

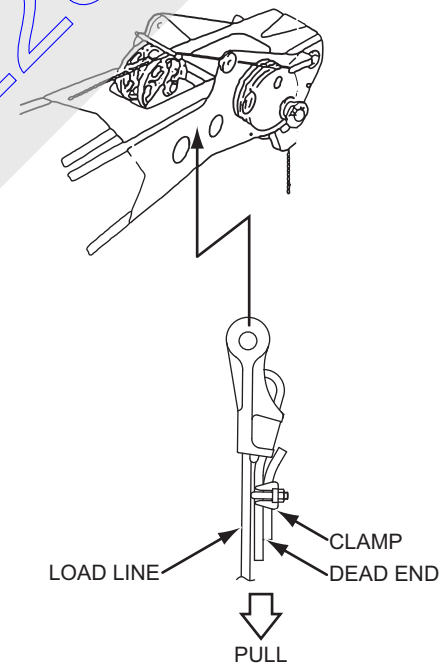
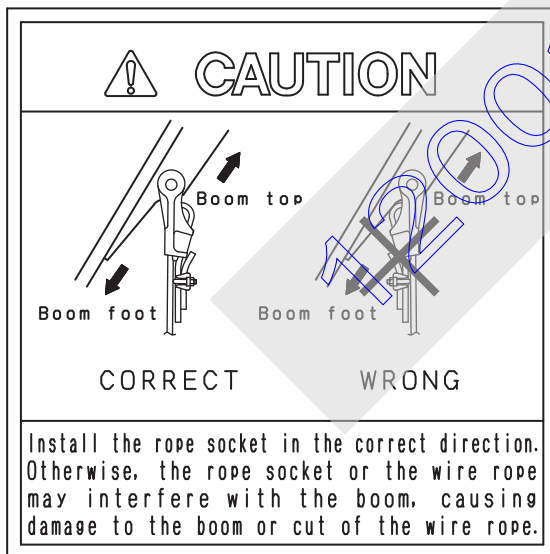
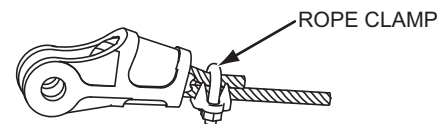
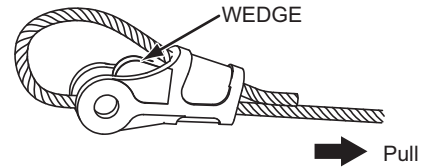
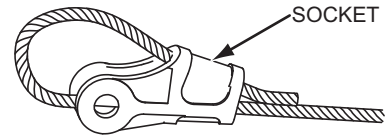
At the same time, inspect the sheave rotation.

12001229

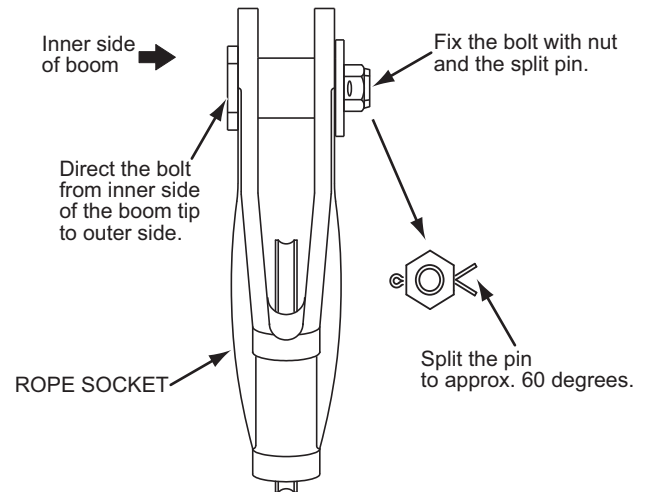
## 6. WIRE ROPE

### 6.1.7 ROPE SOCKET INSTALLATION

1. Pass the wire rope through the socket and make loop on the rope end.  
Load end of the rope must be in the straight side of the socket.
2. Insert the wedge and pull the wire rope loop with the wedge strongly to fix.
3. Fix the wire rope with the rope clamps.  
Set the rope clamp to the proper direction.
4. Install the socket to the boom or hook and apply the load to the wire rope to pull in the wedge to the final position.  
When installing the rope socket to the boom point, make sure to install in the proper direction.



5. When installing the rope socket to the boom, insert the mounting bolt from the boom inner side and fix it with the nut and split pin from outer side.

**⚠ DANGER**

Insert the rope socket mounting bolt from boom inner side and fix it with the nut and split pin at the outer side.

If fixed with nut at the inner side, the wire rope and the split pin would interfere and the nut would become loose and fall off.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.

12001229

## 6. WIRE ROPE

### 6.1.8 REPLACEMENT STANDARDS FOR WIRE ROPE

#### 1. CHECK AND REPLACEMENT STANDARDS OF WIRE ROPE

If the wire rope is broken during operation, it might cause a serious accident.

Therefore, check the rope periodically.

Never use those wire ropes that are subject to wire-cut, abrasion, corrosion and other defects. Such wire rope as given in Items (1) to (5) below must be immediately replaced with a new rope.

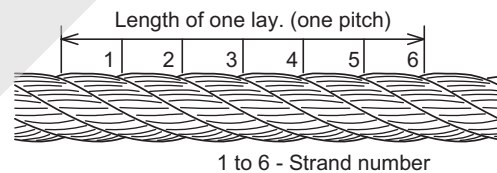
And wire rope subject to damage mentioned in Items (6) onwards should be replaced with new one as soon as possible according to the degree of damage.

#### TYPE OF WIRE ROPE

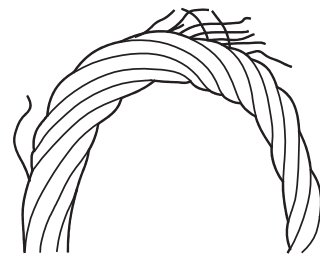
- HOOK HOIST WIRE ROPE
- BOOM HOIST WIRE ROPE
- THIRD DRUM WIRE ROPE (OPTION)
- GUY LINE
- TAGLINE WIRE ROPE (OPTION)
- REEVING WINCH WIRE ROPE (OPTION)

(1) 10% or more steel wires are broken excepting filler wires in one lay of wires. Inspection of internal breakage of wires is difficult. To check breakage of wires in the valley section of wire ropes, bend the rope sharply. Broken element wires, if any, will be exposed.

If breakage of wires in the valley section is found, it is considered that internal breakage of wires may also have developed, and that in other words, fatigue of the whole rope may have developed. Replace the rope at once.



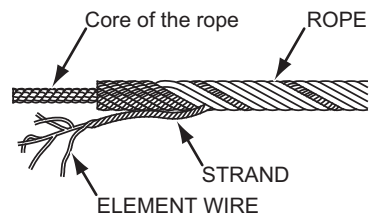
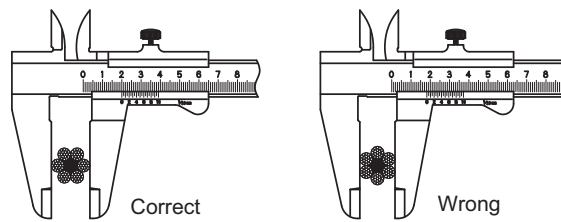
Lay length of wire rope



Bend rope sharply to expose breakage.

(2) Wire rope of more than 7% (or 5%, under OSHA § 1926.1413) reduction of diameter from the nominal diameter, caused by abrasion.

Method of measuring rope diameter.



12001229

## 6. WIRE ROPE

---

### BREAKING LOAD AND DIAMETER

#### (A) Breaking load

Strength of wire rope is indicated by breaking load. Breaking load is decided on the strength of wire and its strength is classified to E, G, A and B and maker's special grade and tensile strength of each class is specified.

---

#### CAUTION

Even on the same diameter rope, different class rope has different breaking load.  
Be careful on this point.

---

#### (B) Diameter

Diameter of wire rope will be reduced by wear. Diameter also is reduced by applying overload. Therefore, it is necessary to keep measuring its diameter for safety.

Do not use the wire rope of which diameter is reduced by 7% from its normal value.

For example, nominal 22 mm diameter rope

$$22 - (22 \times 0.07) = 20.46$$

Therefore if the diameter becomes 20.5 mm it can not be used.

#### CAUTION

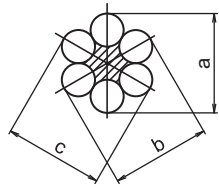
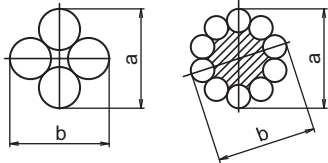
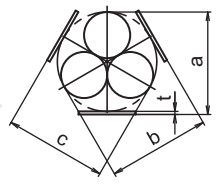
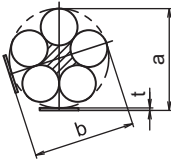
To properly wind the wire rope to the drum, it is recommended to use wire rope with its diameter of 2.5 to 4.5% larger than nominal value.

---



## MEASURING METHOD OF WIRE ROPE DIAMETER

The table below shows how to measure rope diameter

Outer strand number		Diameter measurement	
Even number strand	6 strand	In the same cross section, take measurement at 3 directions and take average value. $d = \frac{a + b + c}{3}$	
	Others	In the same cross sections, measure on almost 90 degree angle and take average of those. $d = \frac{a + b}{2}$	
Odd number strand	3 strand	In the same cross section, place the plate with 1/2 to 1 layer length and its known thickness t at 3 position and take measurement as shown and deduct t from its average value. $d = \frac{a + b + c}{3} - t$	
	Others	In the same cross section, place the plate with 1/2 to 1 layer length and its known thickness t at 3 position and take measurement as shown and deduct t from its average value. $d = \frac{a + b}{2} - t$	

## HANDLING WIRE ROPE

Wire rope supports large load and its role is important.

If broken, it will cause serious accident.

Therefore take extra care in handling wire rope. Degree of wire rope wear or damage varies remarkably depending on handling method.

Take utmost care in safety matters.



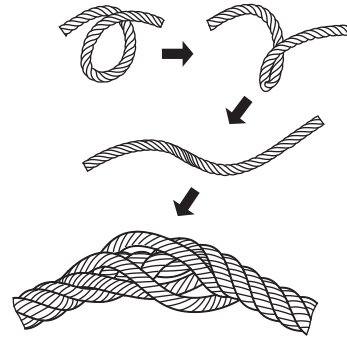
Do not bend sharply on the corner. This will affect the strength of the wire rope adversely.

Put the protective covering on the sharp corner.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries.

## 6. WIRE ROPE

(3) Kink is observed in the wire rope.



Kink due to lay jamming

- (4) Due to upper layer wire rope with load penetrated into lower layer wire rope and lower wire rope is excessively deformed.
- (5) Excessive deformation or corrosion is observed on the wire rope.
- (6) Excessive elongation is observed due to overloading or derailment from sheaves.
- (7) A short circuit has been formed electrically.
- (8) Those wire ropes that are subject to fire or spark by electric current or by gas welding as well as subject to high temperature.

### 1. REPLACEMENT STANDARD FOR GUY LINE

Since damage and corrosion are caused by fatigue from the inside in the boom guy line, replacement time cannot be judged from the appearance.

If the guy line is broken by progressing of internal damage and/or corrosion, there is possibility to cause an serious accident.

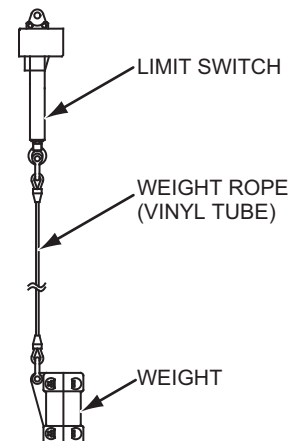
Be sure to replace the guy line periodically.

Replacement time according to the content of work is shown in the table.

Contents of Work	Replacement Interval
Normal crane work	6 years
Both crane and clamshell work, or frequent crane work such as landing work	4 years
Lifting magnet or clamshell work only	2 years

### 2. OVER HOIST LIMIT SWITCH WEIGHT ROPE

Replace the wire rope as soon as possible if its vinyl tubing is broken or it is subject to the above mentioned replacement standard.



---

## 7. MAINTENANCE

In order to use this machine always safely in the best condition, preventive maintenance is required.

---

### WARNING

**When checking the machine, lower the boom down on to the ground, stop the engine and engage all locks. Also remove the keys or battery cables to prevent other personnel from starting the crane while maintenance personnel are at work. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

---

#### 1. PRECAUTIONS WHEN PERFORMING CHECK AND MAINTENANCE

- Carry out check and maintenance with suitable working clothes on.
- Be sure to set the machine on firm and level ground, and post a notice board showing "Under Check and Inspection".
- Check and maintenance in a place of higher than two meters is elevation work.  
Be sure to use a working scaffold and safety belt.
- When moving to perform check and maintenance, determine the fixed signals, and move the machine following the signals.
- When performing check and maintenance of hydraulic equipments, be careful to prevent dust and dirt from entering.

#### 2. INSPECTION TABLE

- The following check table is based on the average operating condition.  
Consider the check schedule according to the working condition and weather condition.
- The check table covers all items, but if operators and maintenance personnel judge that additional items are necessary, add them to the check items.
- Whenever a question arises regarding check and maintenance, consult the local representative.

---

### WARNING

**When necessary repairs or adjustments are noted during an inspection, be sure to complete the repairs or adjustments immediately.**

---

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### 3. MAINTENANCE

- Maintenance

When replacement of parts and readjustment are required by check, immediately replace or adjust. If repair is necessary, consult the service shop designated by Manitowoc.

- Parts

Use the Manitowoc genuine parts for replacement parts and lubricant to be used in order to keep performance of the machine.

The parts of consumption such as elements, etc. must be replaced somewhat early in order to prevent deterioration of performance due to delay of replacement.

For doubtful point regarding check and maintenance, consult the service shop designated by Manitowoc.

12001229

### 4. PRECAUTIONS WHEN PERFORMING INSPECTIONS AND MAINTENANCE

- Be sure to use Manitowoc genuine parts for replacement parts and lubricant to be used.



---

#### **CAUTION**

The warranty does not cover malfunctions caused by the use of parts other than Manitowoc genuine parts (genuine oil, grease and filter).

- Do not use fuel other than specified one.

---

#### **WARNING**

**Use ultra low sulfur diesel fuel only (S50 : sulfur content lower than 50 ppm).**

**If fuel other than specified one is used, adverse affect may be caused to the engine or diesel particulate filter and white smoke or failure may be resulted.**

- Use recommended engine oil.

---

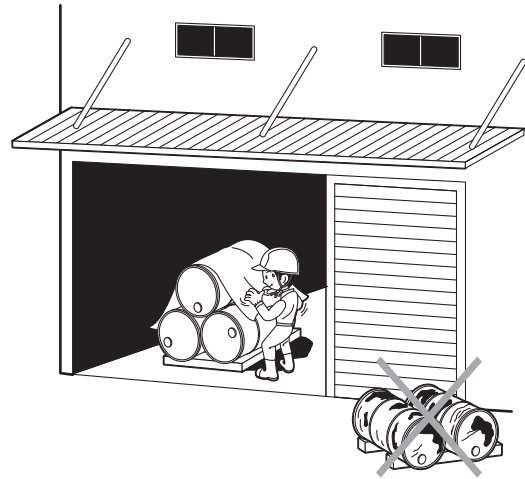
#### **CAUTION**

In order to keep good function of the diesel particulate filter, it is recommended to use the specified brand (recommended) engine oil.

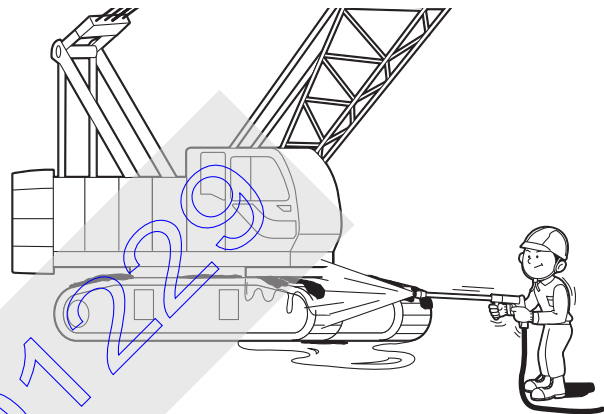
---

## 7. MAINTENANCE

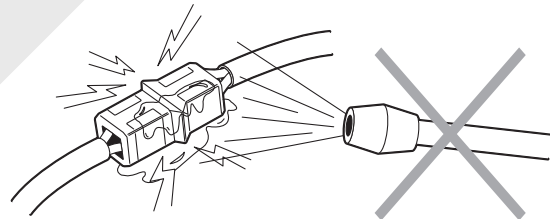
- Use clean oil and grease.  
Keep the containers for oil and grease in a clean inside of a house to prevent dust and water from entering.  
Be sure to use clean oil and grease which do not contain water.



- Clean carrier.  
Cleanly wash the carrier to make finding of oil leak, crack, loosening and other wrong condition easy. Especially, clean grease fittings, breathers and oil level gauge parts (window for check of oil), and avoid entering of dust.

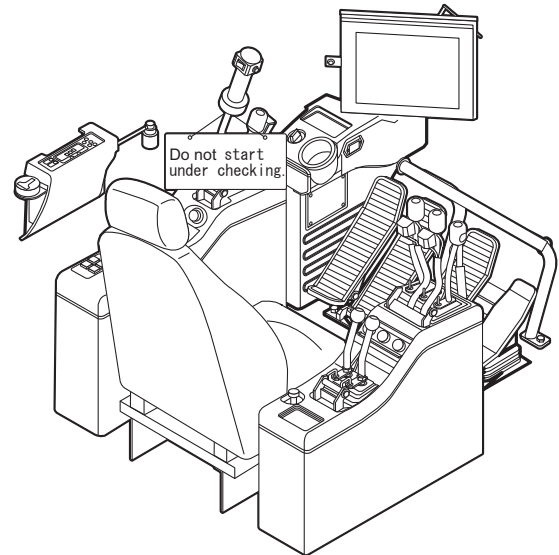


- Disposal of spilled oil.  
Leaving oil spilled when refilling or replacing fuel, hydraulic oil, various lubricants, or replacing the filter, may lead to a fire accident.  
Thoroughly wipe it away.



- Caution when washing the machines.  
Do not aim pressure wash or steam directly to electric parts and connectors.

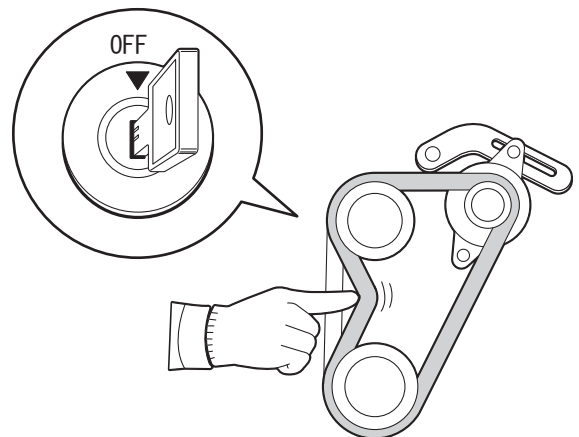
- Place a warning plate under checking.  
When performing check and maintenance, be sure to indicate warning plate "Under checking. Do not Start." to the key switch.



- The lighting of fires prohibited!  
Wastes with oil adhered and combustibles should be stored in a safe place without fire.  
Confirm the storage position and using method of fire extinguisher for emergency.



- Pay attention to rotating parts!  
When checking fan belt tension or water pump, it may become entangled in moving machinery.  
Stop the engine, then work.



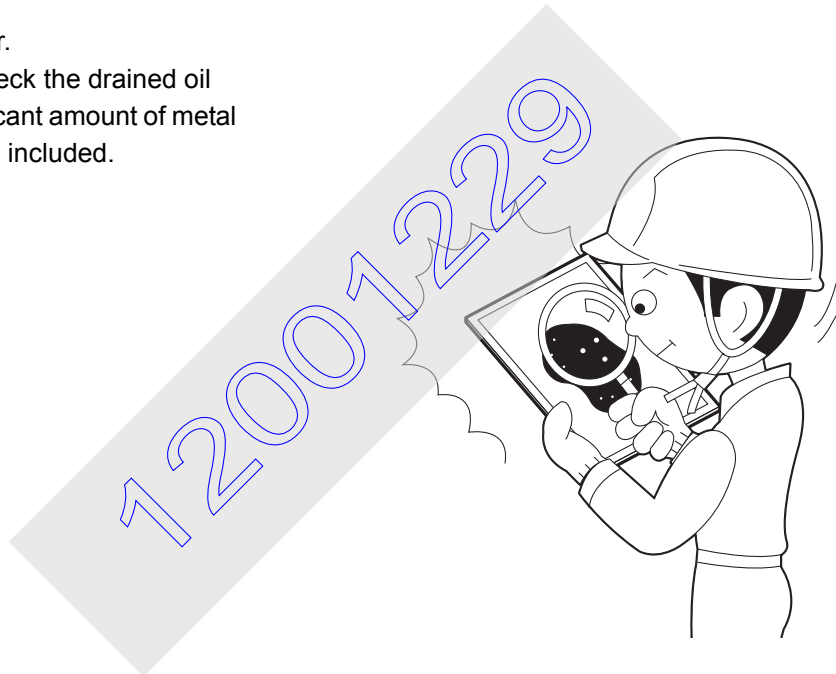
## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

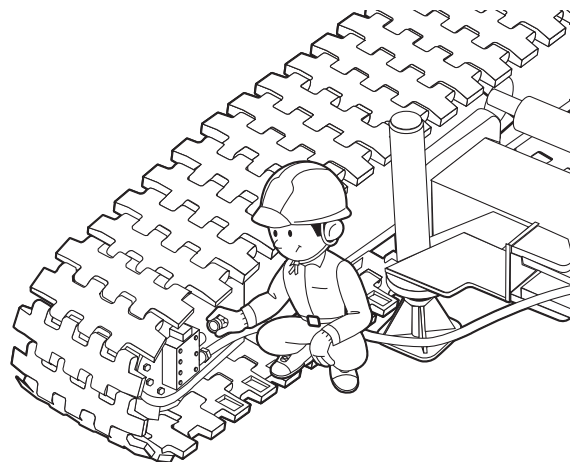
- Pay attention to temperature of water and oil.  
Since draining oil, draining water and replacing filter just after the engine stops is dangerous, wait until the temperature lowers, then perform these works.  
However, when oil is cold, warm the oil properly (approximately 20° C to 50° C (68° F to 122° F)).



- Check the drained oil and filter.  
When replacing oil or filter, check the drained oil and oil filter to see if the significant amount of metal powder or foreign material are included.

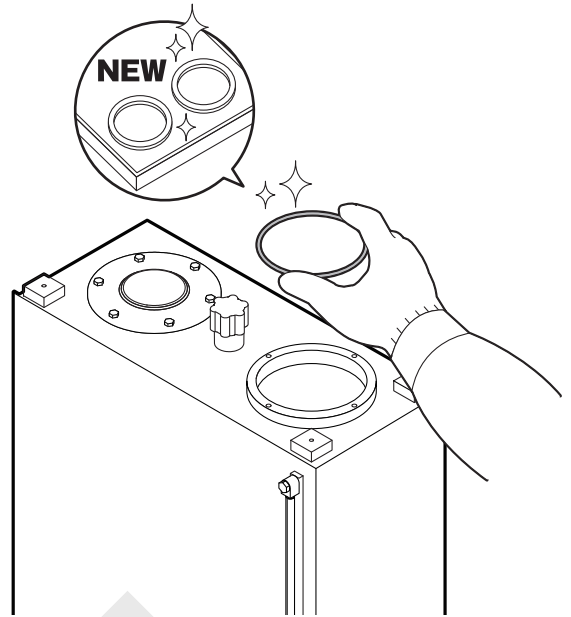


- Pay attention to dust.  
Install the clean plug or cap to the oil holes of the disconnected hyd. hoses to prevent contamination of foreign material.

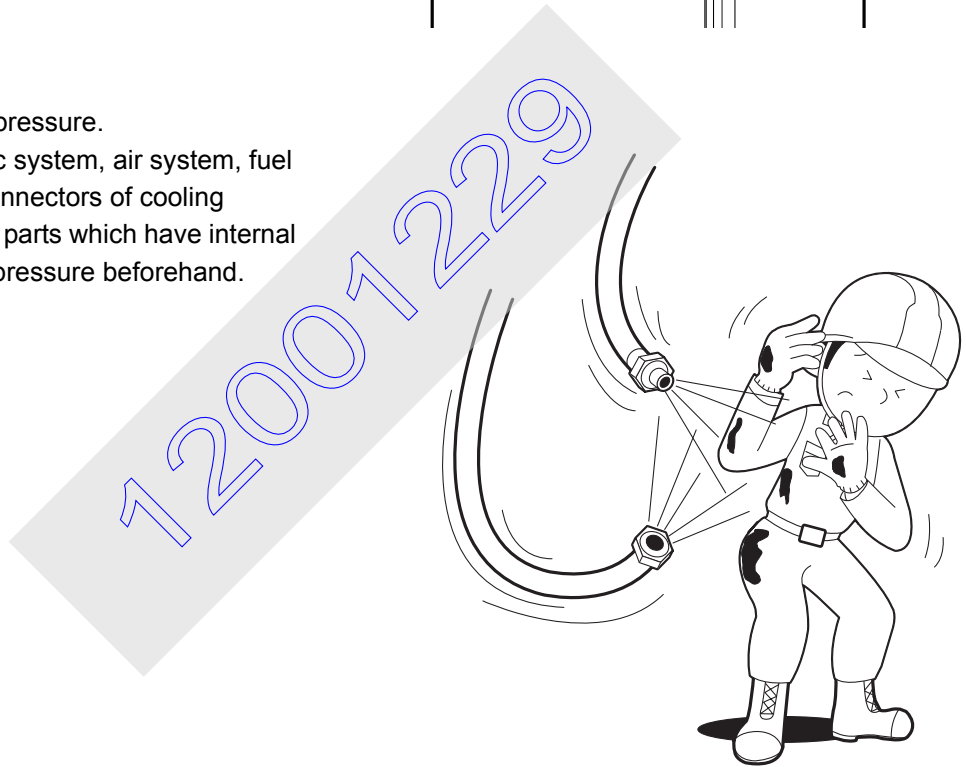




- Clean mounting Surfaces.  
When sealing sections of O-rings and gaskets were removed, clean the mounting surfaces, then replace with new ones.  
When assembling, apply a thin coat of oil to the seals.



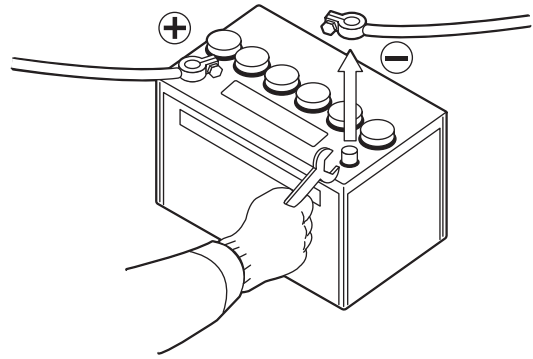
- Pay attention to internal pressure.  
When removing hydraulic system, air system, fuel system or pipings and connectors of cooling system and other related parts which have internal pressure, bleed internal pressure beforehand.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

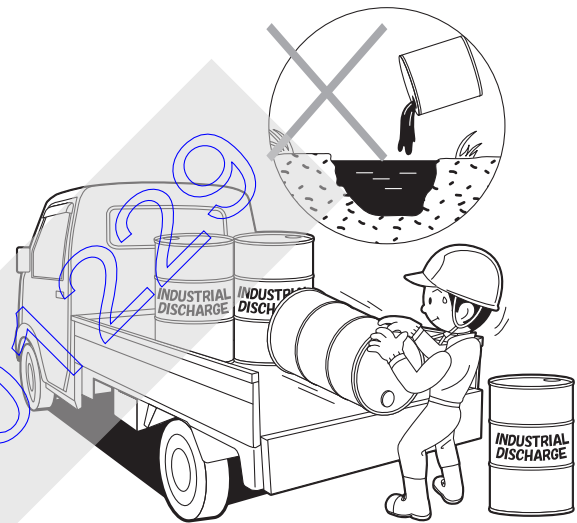
- Precaution when welding.

1. Turn off power supply (turn the key switch off).
2. Disconnect the cable of [-] side of the battery.
3. Do not apply voltage more than 200 volts continuously.
4. Provide earth (ground) within 1 meter from the welding section.
5. Do not allow a seal and bearing to enter between the welding section and earth.
6. When welding near the load safety device and controller, remove them to prevent damage.



- Treatment of discarded oil.

Be sure to drain discarded oil into a container such as oil can, and treat it as industrial discharges.



- Caution for adjustment, disassembly.

Never adjust or disassemble the engine, hydraulic component and the electronic components (controller etc.).

Failures due to unauthorized modification, unauthorized parts installation or wrong handling of components would not be covered by WARRANTY.

This page is blank for editing convenience.

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.1 INSPECTION INTERVAL

#### 7.1.1 INSPECTION POINT

This table summarizes inspection interval of crane on upper machinery, lower machinery and attachment.

Refer to 7.2 INSPECTION for detail of inspection points and inspection method. Numbers in this table correspond with numbers in page 7-14.

Item	No.	Inspection point	Check interval (hourmeter : Hr)				
			8 or every shift	50	100	250	500
Upper machinery	1	Fuel and hydraulic lines	O				
	2	Engine	O				
	3	Hose, piping, connector	O				
	4	Swing brake	O				
	5	Swing lock	O				
	6	Control lever, brake pedal	O				
	7	Gantry	O				
	8	Horn, head light, wiper	O				
	9	Air cleaner	O				
	10	Pin, link, cotter pin	O				
	11	Bolt, nut	O				
	12	Hook overhoist preventive device	O				
	13	Boom overhoist preventive device	O				
	14	Load safety device, monitor	O				
	15	Drum lock	O				
	16	Window glass, step, handle, guard	O				
	17	Front, rear drum brake disk	O				
	18	Fuel pre-filter		O			
	19	Fan belt			O		
	20	Radiator, oil cooler			O		
	21	Engine mounting bolt, rubber mount			O		
	22	Power divider			O		
	23	Hydraulic motor, reduction unit			O		
	24	Valve, etc.			O		
	25	Hydraulic pump			O		
	26	Gantry cylinder			O		
	27	Drum lock			O		
	28	Fuel supply pump, hose (Option)			O		
	29	Swing alarm lamp			O		
	30	Accumulator					O
	31	Frame					O

\* The item numbers in the above table correspond to the numbers in the following description.

\* The item numbers, 3, 10, 11 are not indicated in the drawing.

Item	No.	Inspection point	Check interval (hourmeter : Hr)				
			8 or every shift	50	100	250	500
Lower machinery	32	Hose, piping, connector	O				
	33	Pin, link, cotter pin	O				
	34	Bolt, nut	O				
	35	Hydraulic motor, reduction unit			O		
	36	Valve, etc.			O		
	37	Crawler extend/retract cylinder, Translifter cylinder			O		
	38	Swivel joint			O		
	39	Slewing bearing			O		
	40	Crawler shoe			O		
	41	Drive tumbler, idler wheel, upper and lower roller				O	
	42	Slewing bearing mounting bolt				O	
	43	Frame					O
	Attachment	44	Upper spreader, lower spreader	O			
45		Hook, latch	O				
46		Cable roller, Guide roller	O				
47		Sheave	O				
48		Boom, jib	O				
49		Pin, link, cotter pin	O				
50		Bolt, nut	O				
51		Boom backstop, jib backstop, strut backstop	O				
52		Strut	O				
53		Wire rope, guy line	O				
54		Load detector rope socket pin, bolt, nut	O				
55		Hoist wire rope clamp bolt	O				
56		Strut backstop cylinder	O				

\* The item number in the above table correspond to numbers in the following description.

\* The item numbers, 33, 34, 49 and 50 are not indicated in the drawing.

OSHA § 1926.1412 Inspections

Item	Content	Every shift	Every month	Every year
Ground conditions	Soil, water inclusion	O	O	O
Equipment leveling	Horizontalness shall satisfy maker's recommendation	O	O	O
Warning labels and decals	Missing, unreadable condition	-	-	O
Operator seat	Not appropriate for use	-	-	O

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.1.2 GREASING (WATER SUPPLY) POINT

This table summarizes interval of grease supply (water supply) of crane on upper machinery, lower machinery and attachment.

Refer to 7.3 OIL/GREASE SUPPLY AND WATER SUPPLY for detail of grease supply (water supply) points and supply method.

Numbers in this table correspond with numbers on page 7-49.

Item	No.	Inspection point	Check interval (hourmeter : Hr)							
			8 or every shift	50	100	250	500	1,000	2,000	
Upper machinery	1	Fuel tank *1	O							
	2	Engine	O							
	3	Radiator	O							
	4	Hyd.oil tank	O							
	5	Drum lock (Front, rear, third, boom)		O						
	6	Hyd.oil tank		O						
	7	Swing reduction unit								
	8	Power divider								
	9	Drum shaft bearing					O			
	10	Reduction unit (Front, rear, third drum (Option))					O			
	11	Reduction unit (Boom drum)					O			
	12	Engine (Engine oil) *2					O			
	13	Fuel tank						O		
	14	Radiator							O	
	15	Reduction unit-swing							O	
	16	Reduction unit (Front, rear, third drum (Option))							O	
	17	Reduction unit (Boom drum)							O	
	18	Power divider							O	
	19	Fuel tank								O
	20	Washer tank								O
Lower machinery	21	Swing bearing		O						
	22	Reduction unit-propel					O			
	23	Slewing ring gear *3					O			
	24	Axle extension					O			
	25	Translifter arm mtg. pin					O			
	26	Reduction unit-propel						O		
	27	Lower roller *4								
	28	Upper roller *4								
	29	Idler wheel *4								

Item	No.	Inspection point	Check interval (hourmeter : Hr)						
			8 or every shift	50	100	250	500	1,000	2,000
Attachment	30	Boom foot pin	○						
	31	Gantry link	○						
	32	Hook sheave		○					
	33	Hook bearing		○					
	34	Ball hook bearing		○					
	35	Front drum rope guide sheave		○					
	36	Boom point sheave					○ *6	○ *5	
	37	Idler sheave					○ *6	○ *5	
	38	Auxiliary sheave					○ *6	○ *5	
	39	Upper spreader sheave (Boom hoist)					○ *6	○ *5	
	40	Lower spreader sheave (Boom hoist)					○ *6	○ *5	
	41	Gantry peak sheave					○ *6	○ *5	
	42	Strut sheave						○ *5	
	43	Strut equalizer sheave						○ *5	
	44	Jib point sheave						○ *5	
	45	Jib idler sheave						○ *5	
	46	Rear guide sheave						○ *5	
	47	Guide sheave						○ *5	
	48	Front strut sheave						○ *5	
	49	Rear strut sheave						○ *5	
	50	Front, rear wire rope *7							
	51	Boom hoist wire rope *7							
	52	Boom guy line *7							
	53	Jib guy line *7							

\*1 Replace item 1 when required.

\*2 Replace item 12 at the initial 50 hours.

\*3 Replace item 23 on every week or every 50 hours operation in case of clamshell or lifting magnet work.

\*4 Replace item 27 to 29 at the overhaul time, unless any abnormality such as oil leak is noted.

\*5 Item 36 to 49 are grease sealed type.

In case of general crane work, grease on every 1,000 hours.

If plug is installed to sheave pin or sheave, change it with grease fitting.

\*6 Item 36 to 41 are grease sealed type.

In case of clamshell, lifting magnet or hammer grab, grease on every 500 hours.

If plug is installed to sheave pin or sheave, change it with grease fitting.

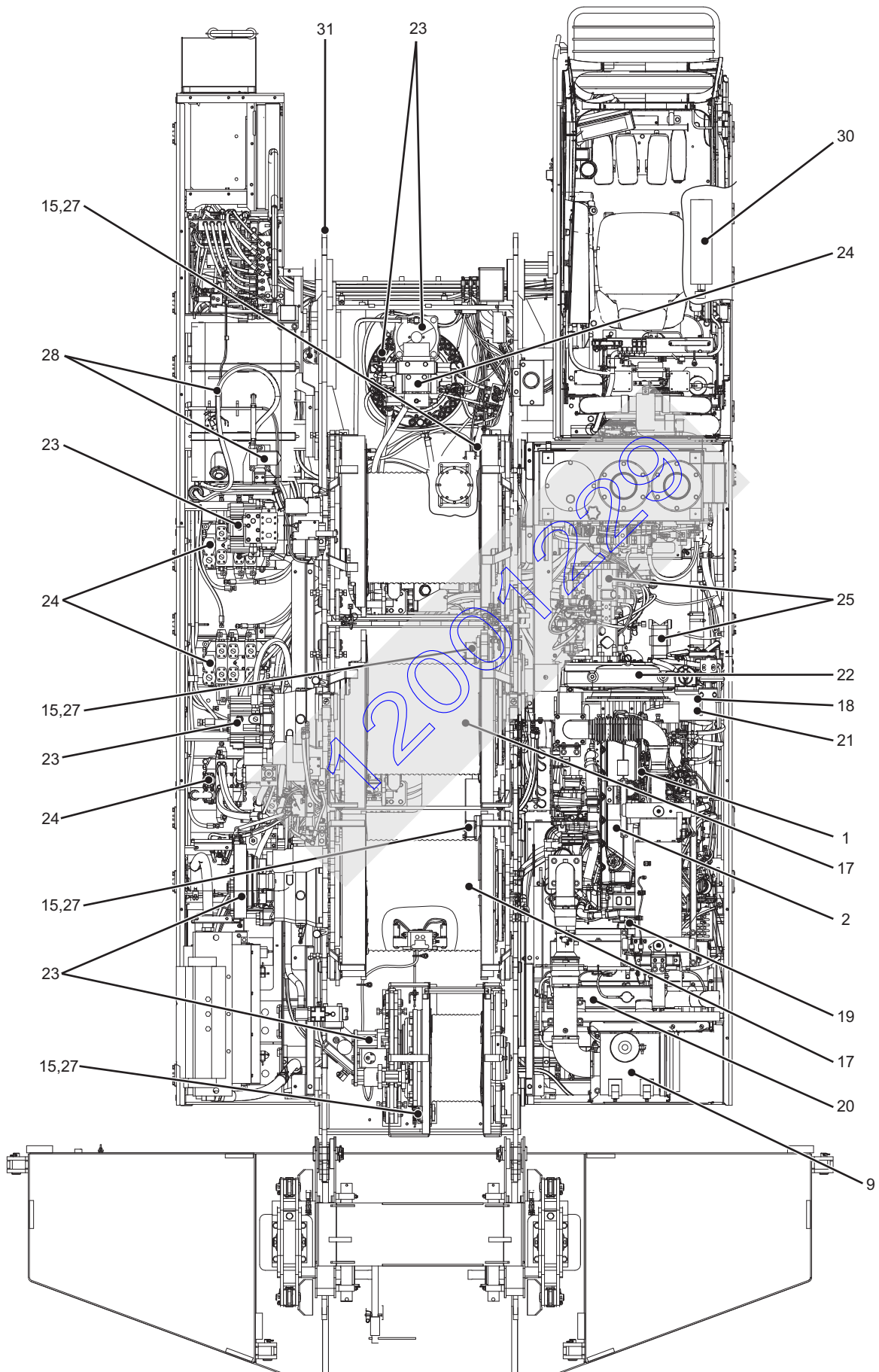
\*7 Apply lubricant on each wire rope as required based on work condition.

When lubricating to wire rope, use brush or spray.

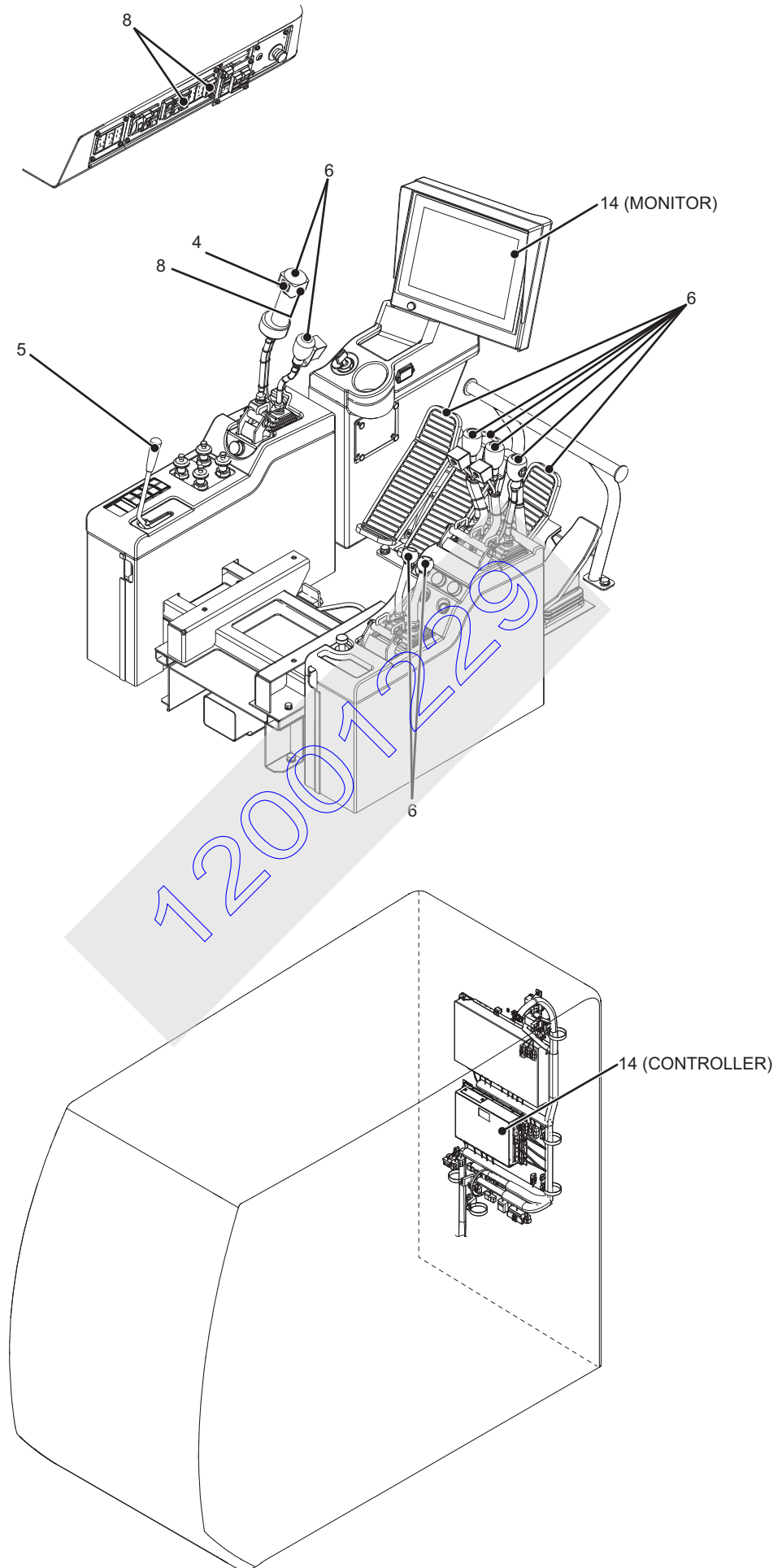
## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.2 INSPECTION

#### 7.2.1 INSPECTION OF UPPER MACHINERY

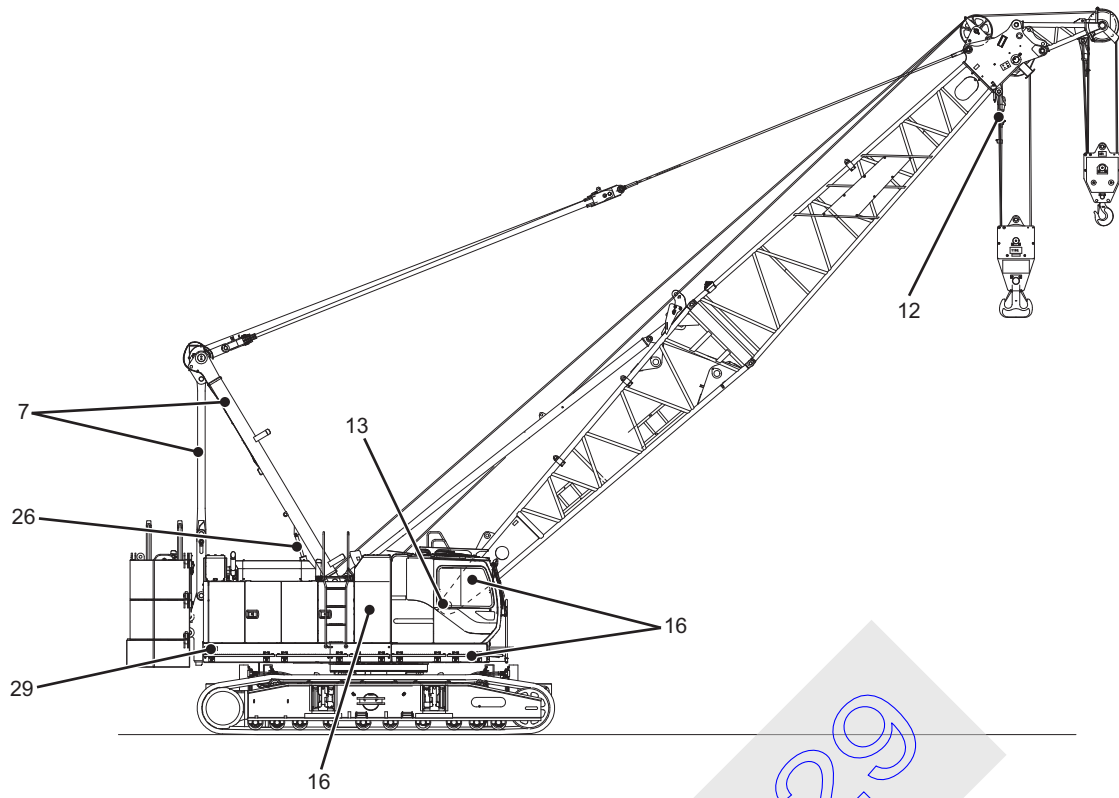






## 7. MAINTENANCE

---



12001229

This page is blank for editing convenience.

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

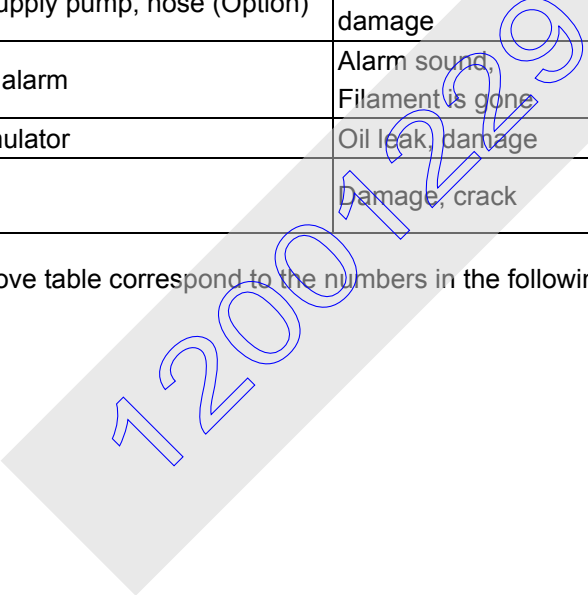
Check interval	No.	Identification	Check item	Check method	Reference page
Daily or every 8 hours (Every shift)	1	Fuel and hydraulic lines	Damage	Visual check	7-24
	2	Engine	Starting, leak, unusual noise	Starting, check by hearing	7-24
	3	Hose, piping, connector	Oil leak	Visual check	7-24
	4	Swing brake	Effectiveness	Operation	7-24
	5	Swing lock	Performance	Operation	7-25
	6	Control lever, Brake pedal	Play, deformation	Operation, visual check	7-25
	7	Gantry	Deformation, crack	Visual check	7-25
	8	Horn, head light, wiper	Performance	Operation, visual check	7-25
	9	Air cleaner	Clogging (indicator)	Visual check	7-26
	10	Pin, link, cotter pin	Damage, falling off	Visual check	7-26
	11	Bolt, nut	Looseness, falling off	Visual check	7-26
	12	Hook overhoist preventive device	Performance	Operation	7-26
	13	Boom overhoist preventive device	Performance	Operation	7-26
	14	Load safety device, monitor	Performance	Operation	7-26
	15	Drum lock	Performance	Operation	7-27
	16	Window glass, step, handle, guard	Damage, crack, falling off	Visual check	7-27
	17	Front, rear drum brake disk	Wear (indicator)	Visual check	7-28
Weekly or every 50 hours	18	Fuel pre-filter	Water level	Visual check	7-29

\* The item numbers in the above table correspond to the numbers in the following description.

\* The item numbers, 3, 10, 11 are not indicated in the drawing.

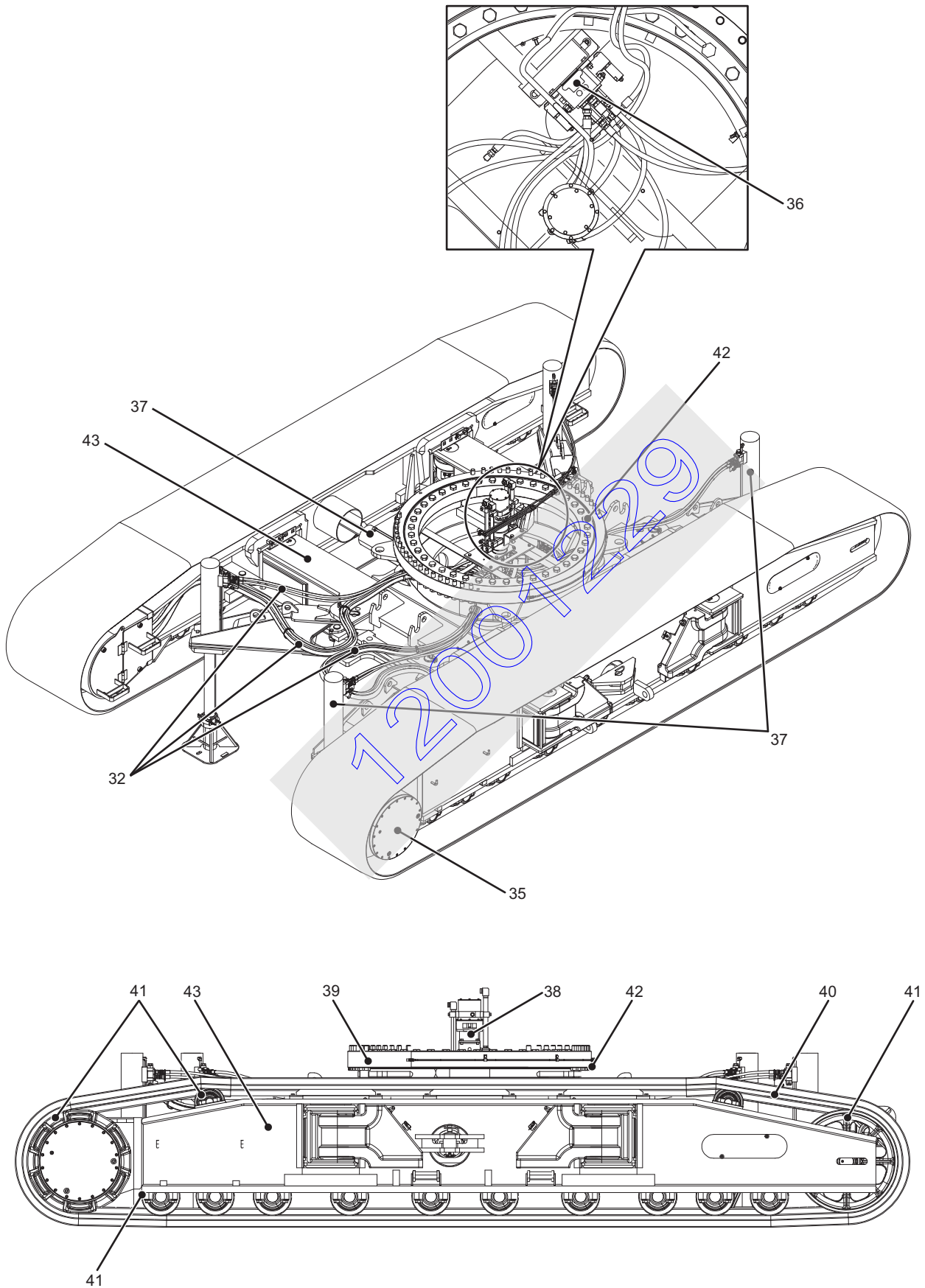
Check interval	No.	Identification	Check item	Check method	Reference page
Monthly or every 100 hours	19	Fan belt	Looseness, damage	Push with finger, visual check	7-30
	20	Radiator, oil cooler	Oil leak, damage	Visual check	7-32
	21	Engine mounting bolt, rubber mount	Looseness, damage	Visual check, test hammer	7-32
	22	Power divider	Oil leak, unusual noise	Visual check, check by hearing	7-32
	23	Hydraulic motor, Reduction unit	Oil leak, unusual noise	Visual check, check by hearing	7-33
	24	Valve, etc.	Oil leak	Visual check	7-33
	25	Hydraulic pump	Oil leak, unusual noise	Visual check, check by hearing	7-34
	26	Gantry cylinder	Oil leak, damage	Visual check	7-34
	27	Drum lock	Wear, damage	Visual check	7-34
	28	Fuel supply pump, hose (Option)	Performance, damage	Operation, visual check	7-35
Semi-annually or every 500 hours	29	Swing alarm	Alarm sound, Filament is gone	Operation, visual check	7-35
	30	Accumulator	Oil leak, damage	Visual check	7-36
	31	Frame	Damage, crack	Visual check	7-37

\* The item numbers in the above table correspond to the numbers in the following description.



# 7. MAINTENANCE

## 7.2.2 INSPECTION OF LOWER MACHINERY



Check interval	No.	Identification	Check item	Check method	Reference page
Daily or every 8 hours (Every shift)	32	Hose, piping, connector	Oil leak, damage	Visual check	7-38
	33	Pin, link, cotter pin	Damage, falling off	Visual check	7-38
	34	Bolt, nut	Looseness, falling off	Visual check	7-38
Weekly or every 50 hours	35	Hydraulic motor, reduction unit	Oil leak, unusual noise	Visual check	7-38
	36	Valve, etc.	Oil leak	Visual check	7-38
	37	Crawler extend/retract cylinder, Translifter cylinder	Oil leak, damage	Visual check	7-38
	38	Swivel joint	Oil leak	Visual check	7-39
	39	Slewing bearing	Unusual noise	Check by hearing	7-39
	40	Crawler shoe	Extension, damage, wear	Visual check	7-39
Quarterly or every 250 hours	41	Drive tumbler, idler wheel, upper and lower roller	Oil leak, damage	Visual check	7-40
	42	Slewing bearing mounting bolt	Looseness, falling off	Visual check	7-40
Semi-annually or every 500 hours	43	Frame	Damage, crack	Visual check	7-41

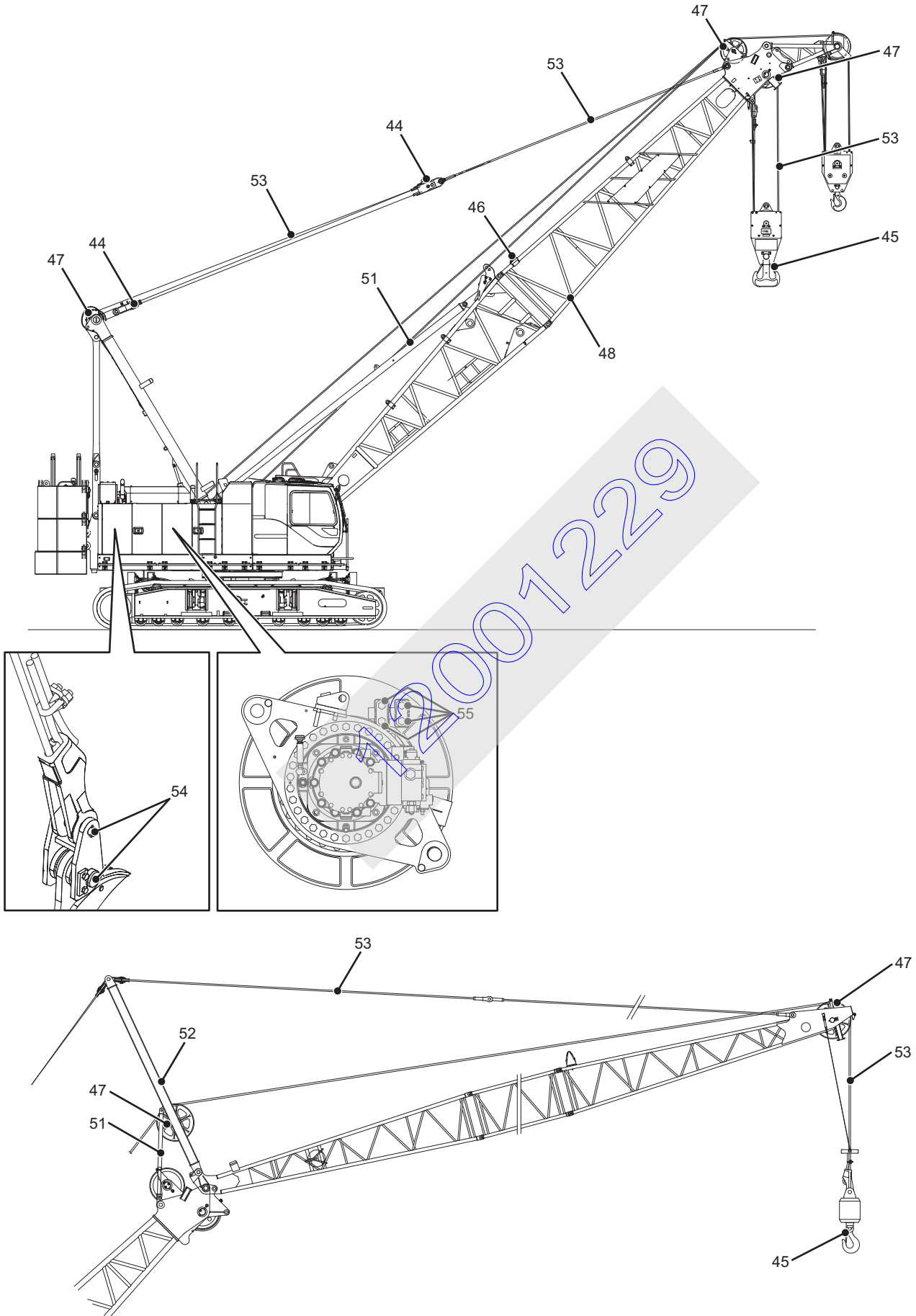
\* The item numbers in the above table correspond to numbers in the following description.

\* The item numbers, 33, 34 are not indicated in the drawing.

12001229

# 7. MAINTENANCE

## 7.2.3 INSPECTION OF ATTACHMENT





Check interval	No.	Identification	Check item	Check method	Reference page
Daily or every 8 hours (Every shift)	44	Upper spreader, lower spreader	Deformation, crack	Visual check	7-42
	45	Hook, latch	Damage, looseness	Visual check	7-42
	46	Cable roller, Guide roller	Damage, deformation, wear	Visual check	7-42
	47	Sheave	Damage, deformation, wear	Visual check	7-43
	48	Boom, jib	Damage, deformation	Visual check	7-43
	49	Pin, link, cotter pin	Damage, falling off	Visual check	7-44
	50	Bolt, nut	Looseness, falling off	Visual check	7-44
	51	Backstop (Boom, jib)	Damage, deformation	Visual check	7-44
	52	Strut	Damage, deformation	Visual check	7-45
	53	Wire rope, guy line	Damage, deformation, wear	Visual check	7-45
	54	Load detector rope socket pin, bolt, nut	Looseness, falling off	Visual check	7-46
	55	Hoist wire rope clamp bolt	Looseness, falling off	Visual check	7-47
	56	Strut backstop cylinder	Damage, oil leak	Visual check	7-48

\* The item numbers in the above table correspond to numbers in the following description.

\* The item numbers 49, 50 are not indicated in the drawing.

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### 7.2.4 INSPECTION METHOD OF EACH POINT

#### CHECK OF UPPER MACHINERY

(Refer to P.7-14 to 7-16)

#### CHECK OF UPPER MACHINERY, DAILY OR EVERY 8 HOURS (EVERY SHIFT)

##### 1. FUEL AND HYDRAULIC LINES

Check the fuel and hydraulic lines for damage and for fuel leak.



**If fuel leak is observed, repair leak and remove excess fuel immediately.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

---

##### 2. ENGINE

Start the engine to confirm proper starting condition and listen for unusual noise.

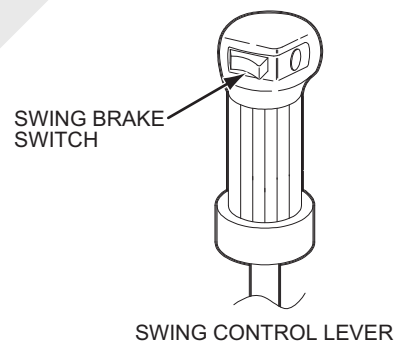
##### 3. HOSE, PIPING AND CONNECTOR, ETC.

Check the hose, piping and connector, etc. for oil leaks and for damage.

##### 4. SWING BRAKE

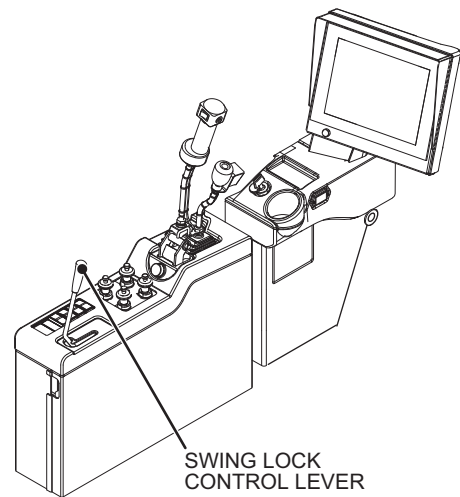
Confirm that the swing brake is functioning properly.

With the swing brake switch placed in the ON position, operate the swing control lever to confirm that the swing brake is functioning properly. When the swing brake is engaged, swinging is impossible.



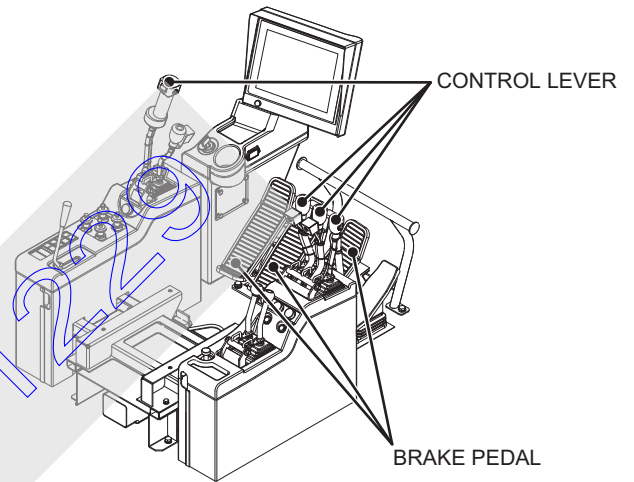
**5. SWING LOCK**

Confirm that the swing lock pin is inserted smoothly and can be held being pulled out. Check the lock pin and rod for deformation.



**6. CONTROL LEVER, BRAKE PEDAL**

Check the control lever and brake pedal for unusual play and for damage.

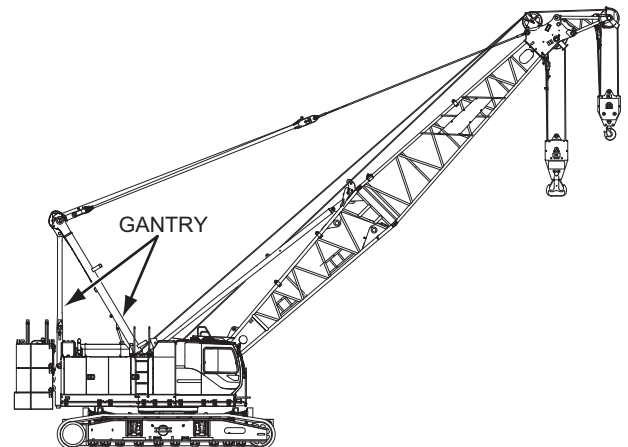


**6. GANTRY**

Check the gantry for damage.



Special repair procedures are required for repair. Consult your local authorized Manitowoc dealer for instructions.



**7. HORN, HEAD LIGHT AND WIPER**

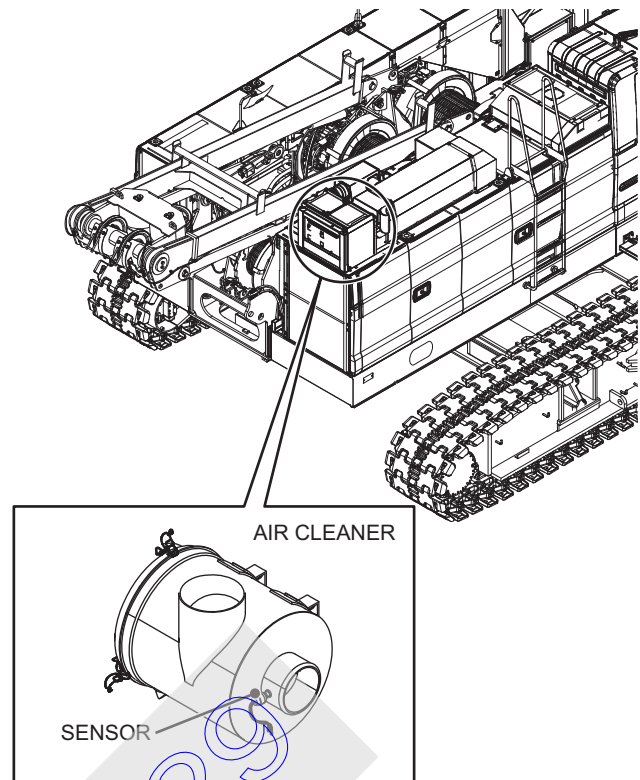
Confirm that the horn, headlight and wiper operate normally by operating the switches.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

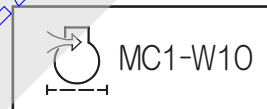
### 8. AIR CLEANER

Use the sensor to determine if the air cleaner is clogged.

When the air cleaner is clogged the error code will be indicated on the monitor as below.



The engine air cleaner is clogged.  
Clean or replace the element.



### 10. PIN, LINK AND COTTER PIN

Check the pin, link and cotter pin for damage and to determine if they are loose or missing.

### 11. BOLT AND NUT

Check the bolt and nut to determine if they are loose or missing.

### 12. HOOK OVER HOIST PREVENTIVE DEVICE

Confirm that the hook over hoist preventive device operates normally.

(Refer to chapter 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE)

### 13. BOOM OVER HOIST PREVENTIVE DEVICE

Confirm that the boom overhoist limit switch operates normally.

(Refer to chapter 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE)

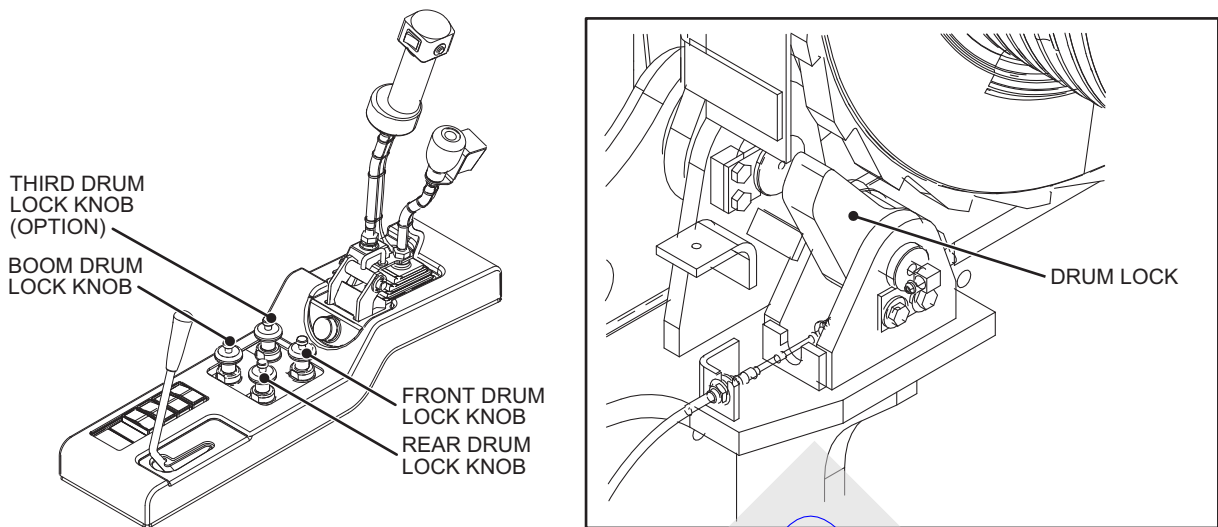
### 14. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE

Confirm that operation is automatically stopped.

(Refer to chapter 3. LOAD SAFETY DEVICE)

**15. DRUM LOCK**

Confirm that the drum lock functions normally. Pull up the drum lock knob to "LOCK" side and confirm that the pawl is engaged.

**16. WINDOW GLASS, STEP, HANDLE AND GUARD**

Always clean the window glass, step, handle and guard, etc.

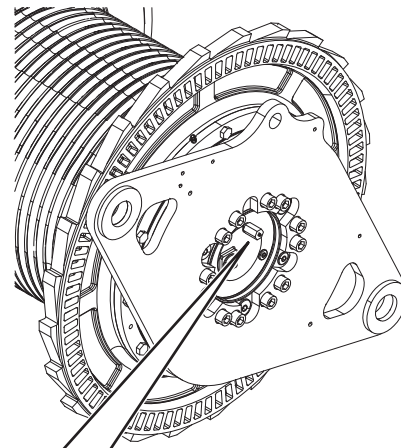
Immediately remove any grease and oil.

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 16. DRUM BRAKE DISK (FRONT AND REAR)

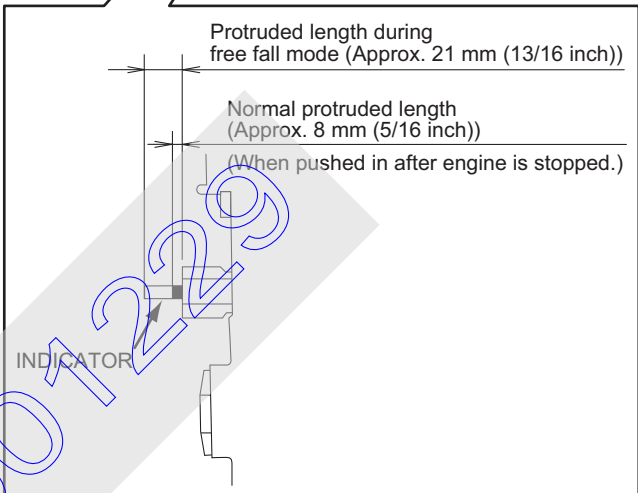
Check the wear of the brake disk with the indicator. If the FREE FALL mode is selected, the indicator is protruded by approx. 21 mm (13/16 inch). Stop the engine and press the indicator. If the indicator protrudes from the end face by approx. 8 mm (5/16 inch), the brake disk is normal. If the protruded length of the indicator is 5 mm (3/16 inch) or shorter (Indicator recess disappears), raising may become difficult. In such a case, replace the brake disk by contacting your nearest Manitowoc authorized dealer.



(RIGHT SIDE VIEW)

#### **⚠ DANGER**

**Be sure to lower the hook block onto the ground to prevent it from dropping abruptly. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**

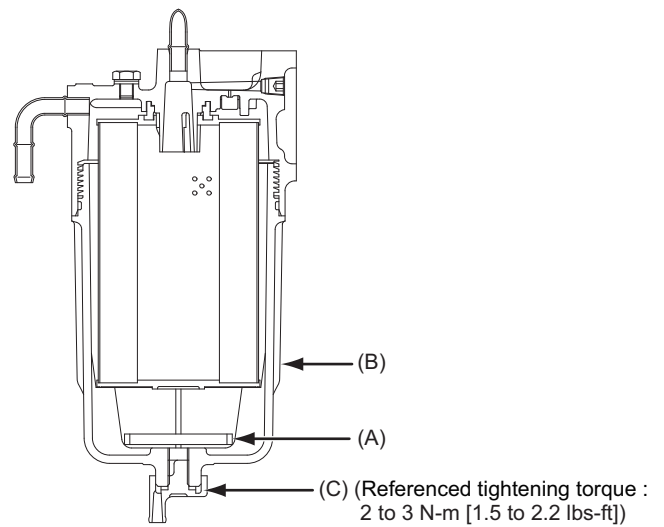


**CHECK OF UPPER MACHINERY, WEEKLY OR EVERY 50 HOURS****18. FUEL PRE-FILTER****DRAIN WATER FROM FUEL PRE-FILTER**

If the red ring (A) of the pre-filter is on the bottom of the case (B), water does not get in.

When the red ring (A) floats, drain the water in accordance with the following procedures.

- (1) Place a container to receive the drained water under the drain hose.
- (2) Loosen the water draining plug (C) of the fuel pre-filter to drain water gathered at the bottom of the fuel pre-filter case.
- (3) Tighten the water draining plug (C).
- (4) Actuate the priming pump and bleed air from the fuel system.

**CAUTION**

Drained water contains fuel, therefore, follow the processing regulation specified in each region, when disposing of it.

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

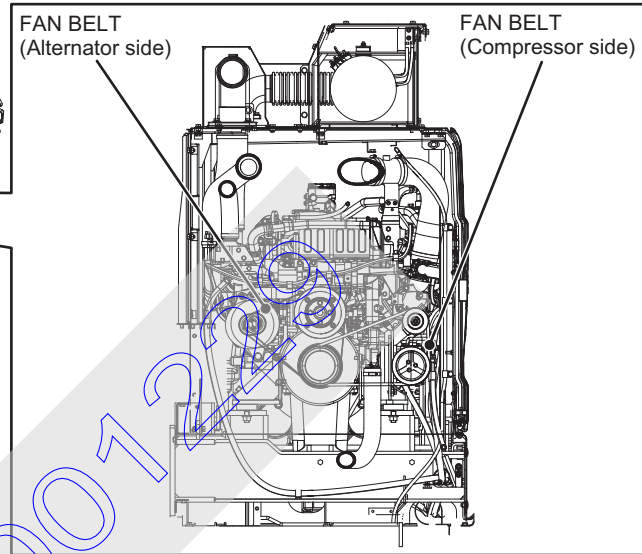
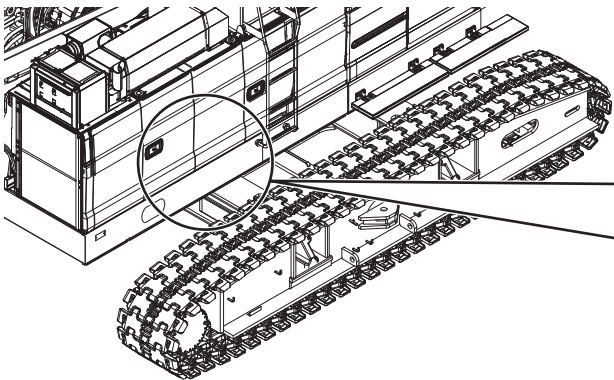
### CHECK OF UPPER MACHINERY, MONTHLY OR EVERY 100 HOURS

#### 18. FAN BELT

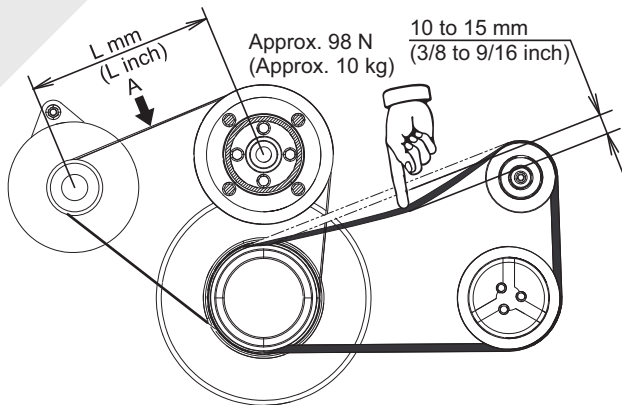
Check the fan belt for proper tension.

#### **CAUTION**

Turn the engine off before inspecting the fan belt.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.



- **COMPRESSOR SIDE FAN BELT**  
Firmly push middle of the fan belt with a finger. Deflection of 10 to 15 mm (3/8 to 9/16 inch) is normal.
- **ALTERNATOR SIDE FAN BELT**  
The alternator side belt needs to be tension-adjusted more precisely than the compressor side belt. Rough target of sag amount is 3 to 5 mm (1/8 to 3/16 inch) but use of the ultrasonic tension meter is recommended for checking.



#### **CAUTION**

Inadequate tension may cause lower life of accessory or belt itself. It may also cause belt to squeal.  
Adjust tension adequately.



### Checking method of tension

- (1) Check "L" dimension in "A" area.
- (2) Turn the ultrasonic tension meter ON and input the unit weight.  
(0.015 kg/m / 0.109 lbs-ft)
- (3) Input the number of belt crest.
- (4) Input the span length. (L mm/L inch)
- (5) Put the microphone of the ultrasonic tension meter near the measuring area A. With using a bar (extension bar) hit the A area of the belt with a specified force.  
The ultrasonic tension meter reads the belt frequency and indicates it.
- (6) Repeat the above actions (5) for about five times and confirm that the average value is within the specified value range.

Specified tension value: 1,324 to 1,422 N  
(135 to 145 kgf)

If not within the specified value, adjust the alternator belt tension.

---

### CAUTION

If the condition as listed below occurs, replace the belt with a new one.

- Belt squeals occur even after the belt is adjusted properly.
- Crack or damage found on the belt.

If the belt is over-used, belt may break and may cause damage to the other parts.

Replace the failed belt.

---

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 20. RADIATOR AND OIL COOLER

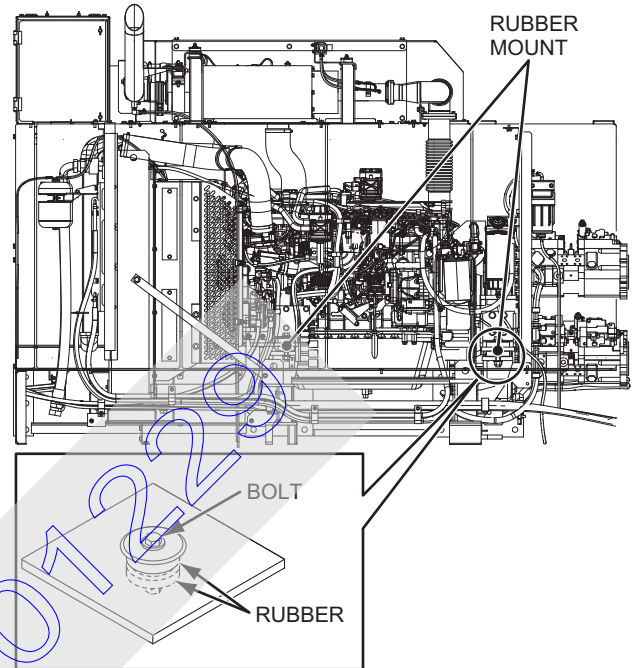
Clean the radiator core. Check the radiator and oil cooler for abnormalities such as water leak, oil leak or deformation.

Radiator core clogging may cause engine over-heat.

Take care not to damage the core while cleaning the radiator core.

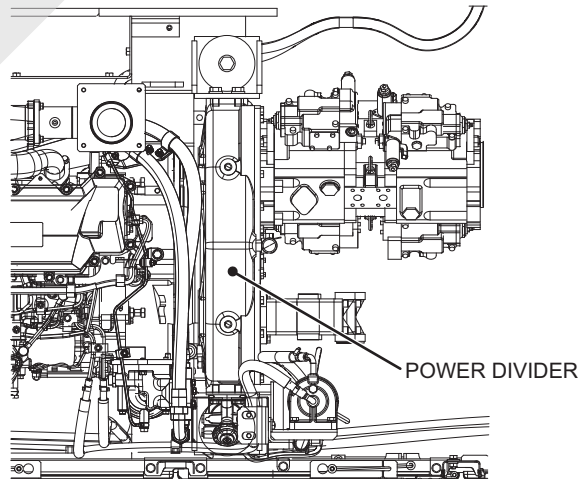
### 21. ENGINE MOUNTING BOLT AND RUBBER MOUNT

Check the engine mounting bolt for looseness, and the rubber mount for damage.



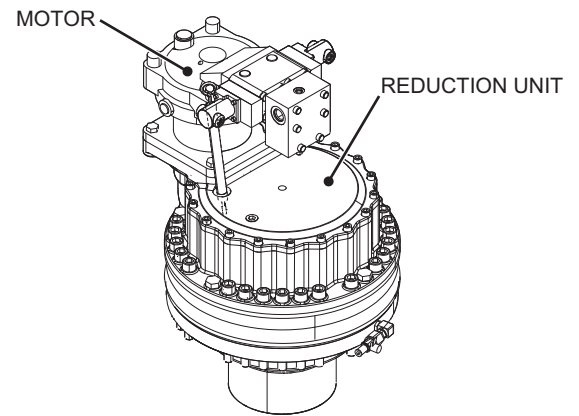
### 22. POWER DIVIDER

Check the power divider for oil leak and unusual noise.

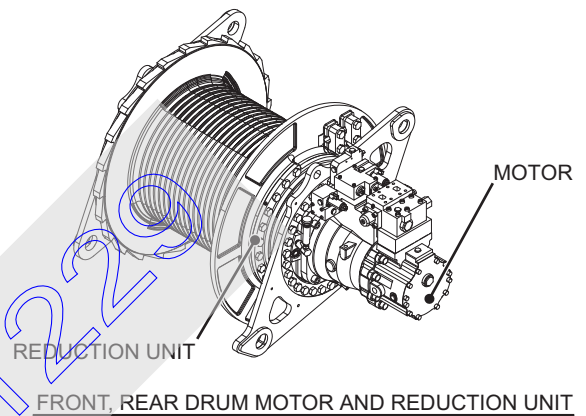


### 23. HYDRAULIC MOTOR AND REDUCTION UNIT

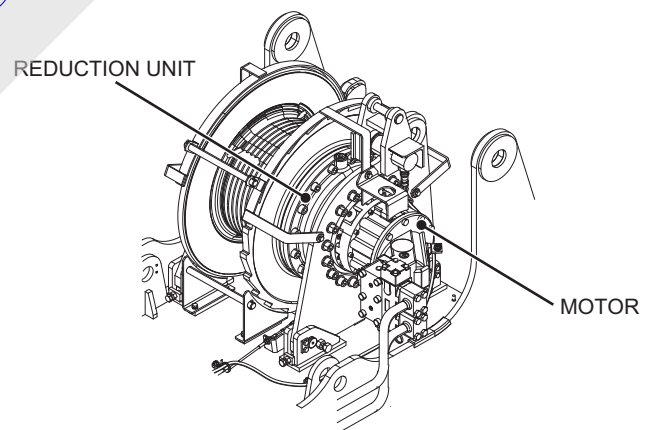
- Swing motor and reduction unit.
  - Front and rear drum motors and reduction units.
  - Boom hoist drum motor and reduction unit.
- Check these for oil leak and unusual noise.



SWING MOTOR AND REDUCTION UNIT



FRONT, REAR DRUM MOTOR AND REDUCTION UNIT



BOOM HOIST DRUM MOTOR AND REDUCTION UNIT

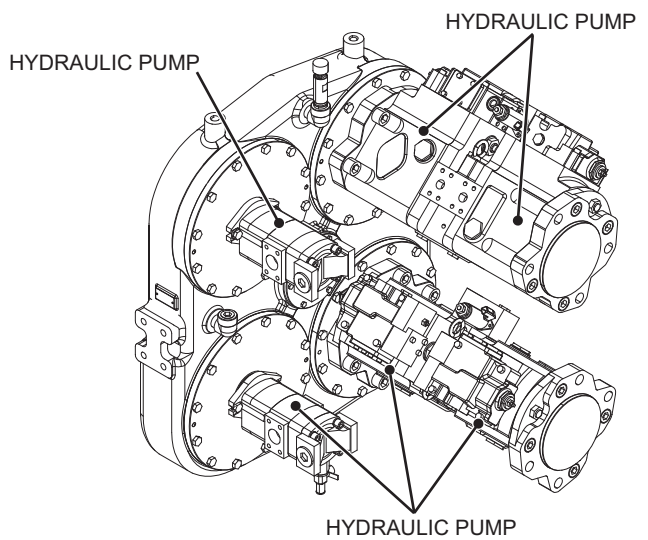
### 24. VALVE

Check each valve for oil leak.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

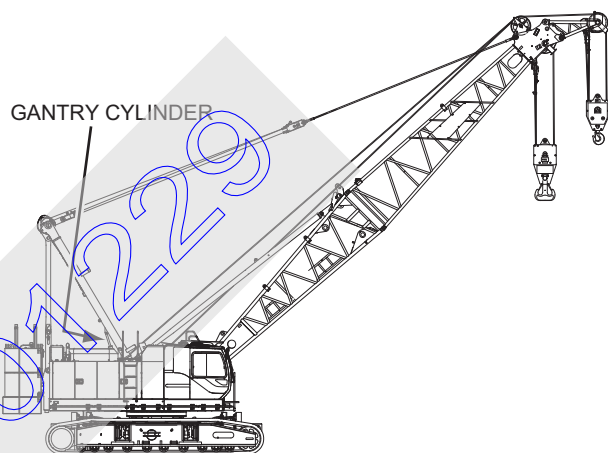
### 25. HYDRAULIC PUMP

Check the hydraulic pump for oil leak and for unusual noise.



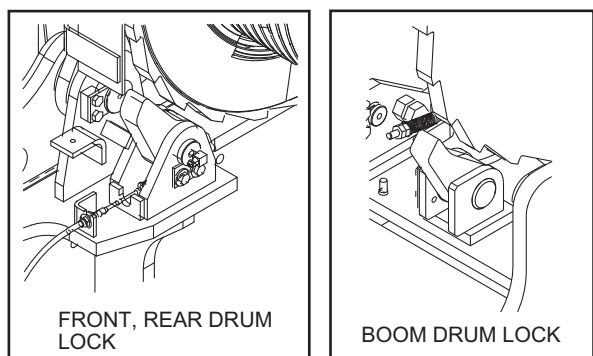
### 26. GANTRY CYLINDERS

Check the gantry cylinder for oil leak and damage.



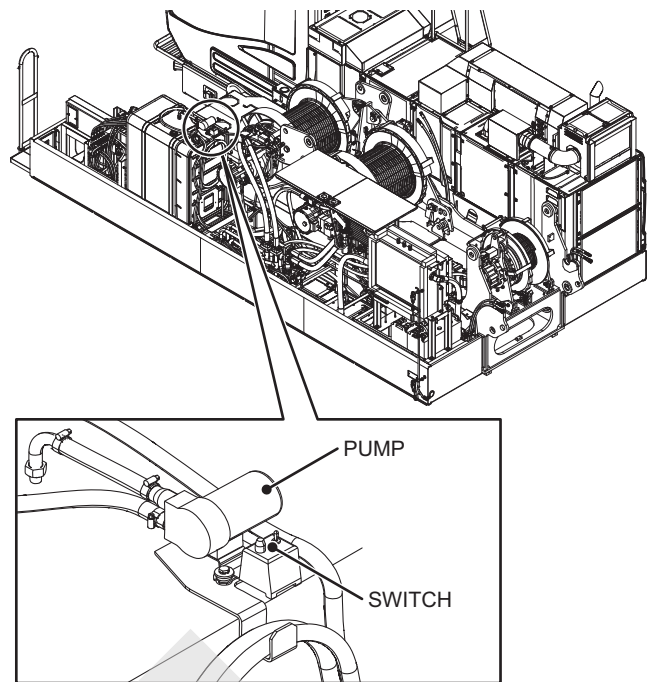
### 26. DRUM LOCK

Check the drum lock and drum ratchet for wear and damage.



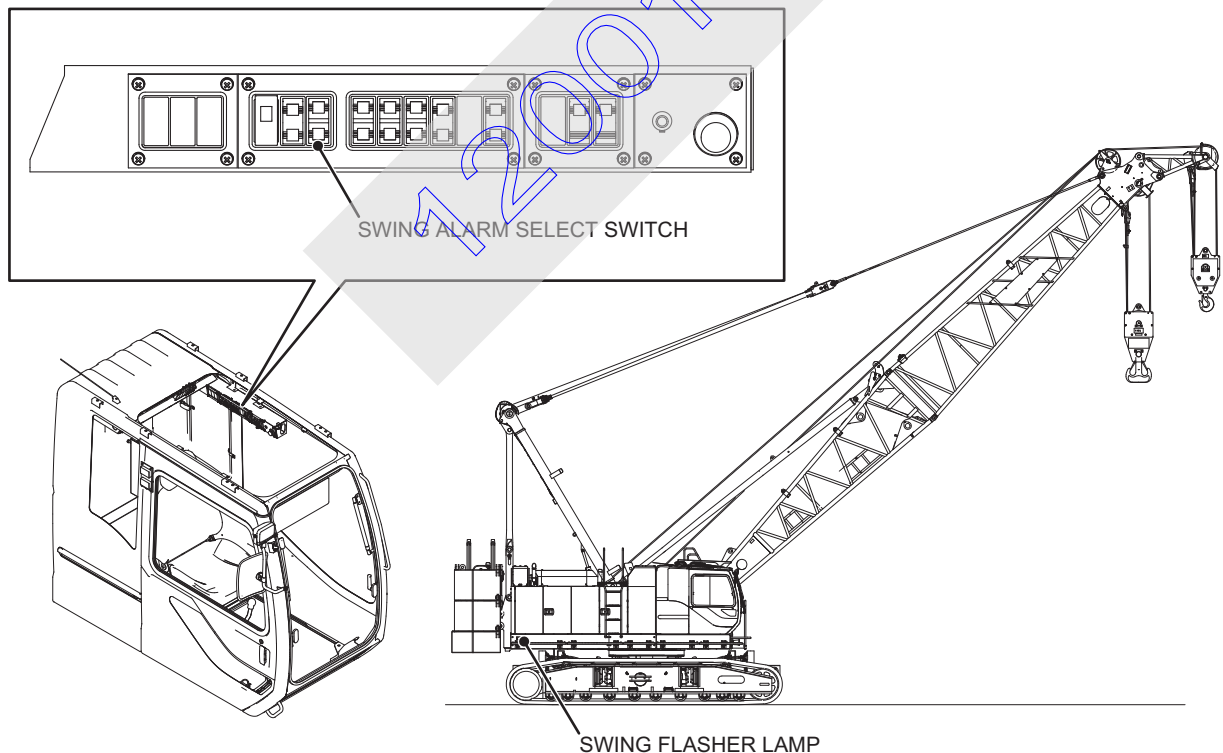
**28. FUEL SUPPLY PUMP AND HOSE (OPTION)**

Check the fuel supply pump for normal operation, and check the supply hose for damage.



**28. SWING ALARM**

Make sure that the swing alarm and swing flasher on left and right rear of main machinery function properly while operating machine swing.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### CHECK OF UPPER MACHINERY, SEMI-ANNUALLY OR EVERY 500 HOURS

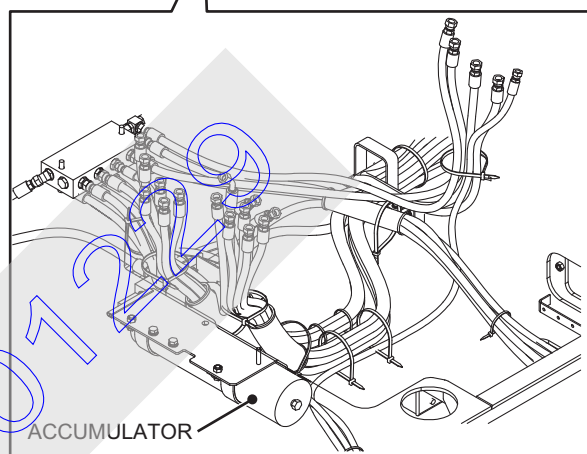
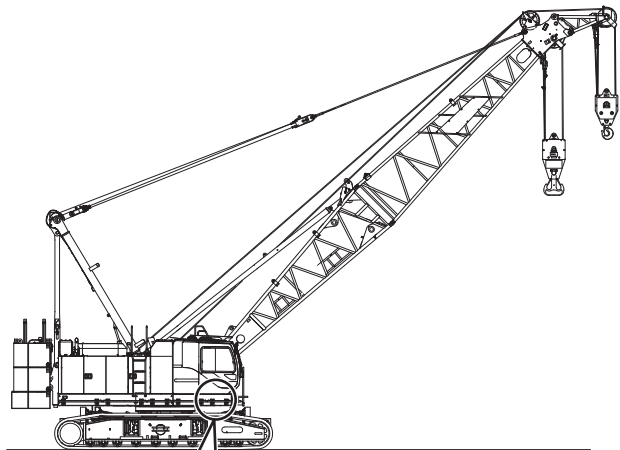
#### 30. ACCUMULATOR

Check the accumulator for oil leak.

#### **WARNING**

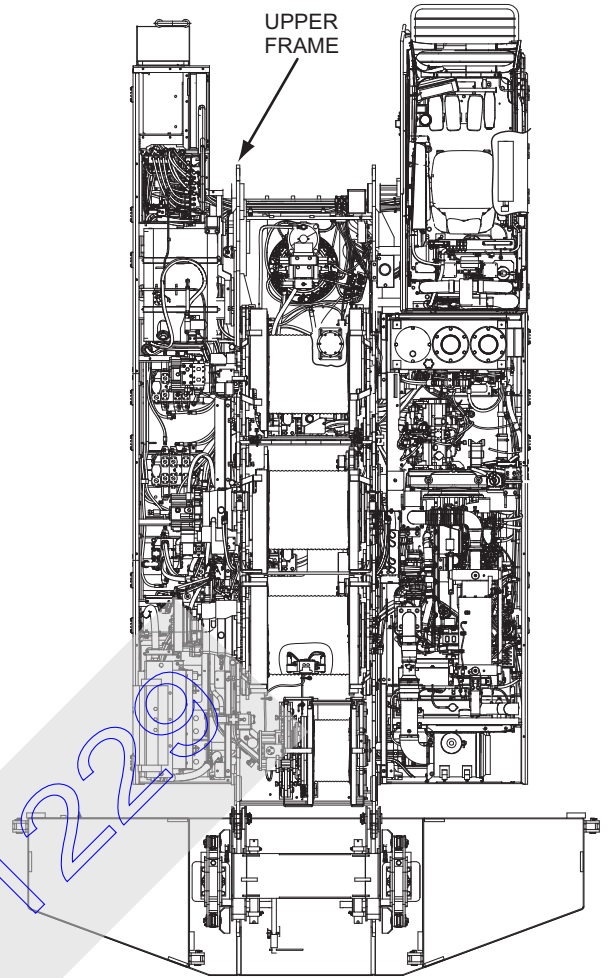
- Do not handle the accumulator roughly.**
- Do not store or handle the accumulator near the heat of fire.**
- Do not weld or machine the accumulator.**
- Do not remove valve cap except when charging or discharging gas.**
- Do not step on or place heavy material on the accumulator installed on the machine.**
- Check the accumulator for gas pressure every two years.**
- Ask Manitowoc authorized dealer to charge the gas.**
- Do not disassemble the accumulator.**

The accumulator is charged with Nitrogen gas under pressure of 3.4 to 3.7 MPa (35 to 38 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>).



**31. FRAME**

Check the frame for crack and deformation.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### CHECK OF LOWER MACHINERY

(Refer to P.7-20 to 7-21)

### CHECK OF LOWER MACHINERY, DAILY OR EVERY 8 HOURS (EVERY SHIFT)

#### 32. HOSE, PIPING AND CONNECTOR

Check the hose, piping and connector, etc. for oil leak and damage.

#### 33. PIN, LINK AND COTTER PIN

Check the pin, link and cotter pin for damage, and for falling off.

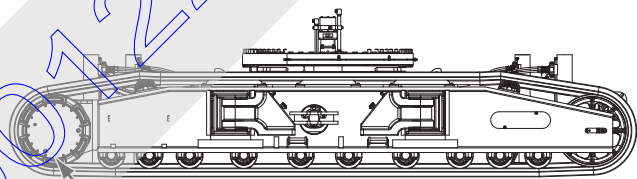
#### 34. BOLT AND NUT

Check the bolt and nut for looseness and for falling off.

### CHECK OF LOWER MACHINERY, MONTHLY OR EVERY 100 HOURS

#### 35. HYDRAULIC MOTOR AND REDUCTION UNIT

Check the hyd. motor and reduction unit for oil leak and unusual noise.



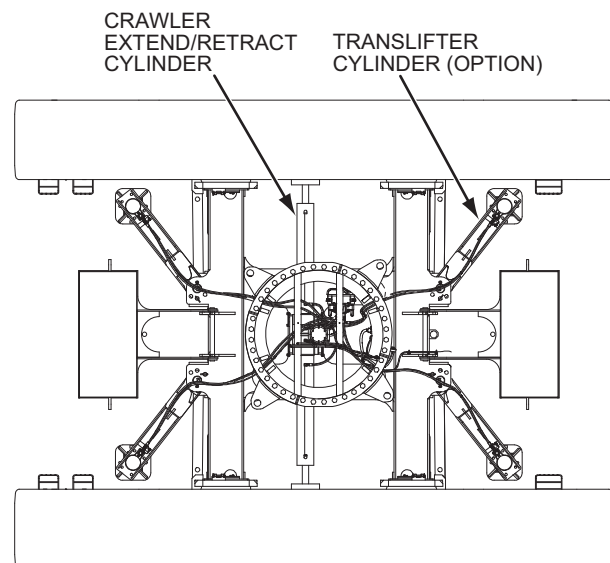
HYD. MOTOR AND REDUCTION UNIT

#### 36. VALVE

Check the valve, etc. for oil leak.

#### 36. TRANSLIFTER CYLINDER CRAWLER EXTEND/RETRACT CYLINDER

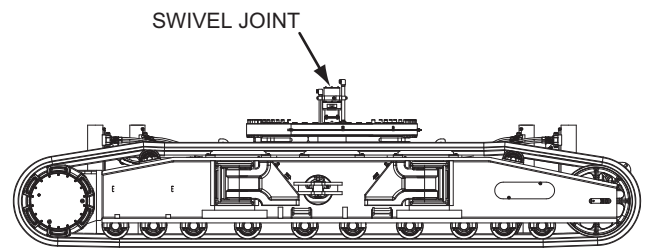
Check the crawler extend/retract cylinder and the translifter cylinder for oil leak and damage.



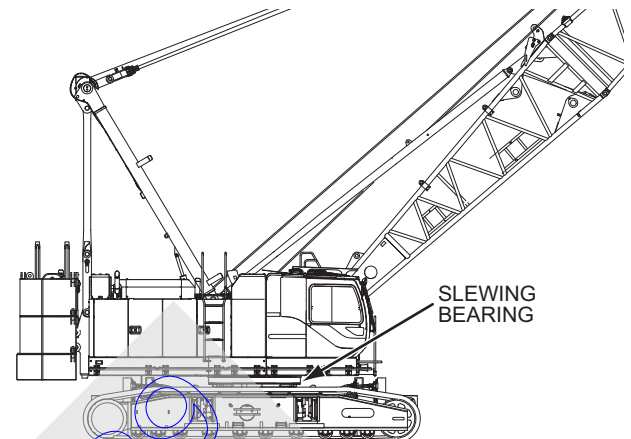


**38. SWIVEL JOINT**

Check the swivel joint for oil leak.

**38. SLEWING BEARING**

Check the slewing bearing for unusual noise.

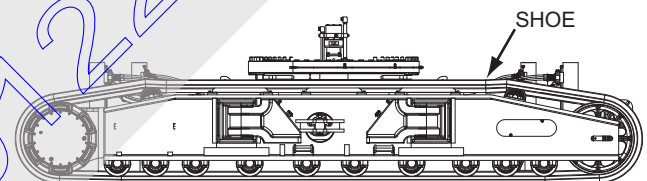
**40. CRAWLER SHOE**

Check the crawler shoes for looseness and for damage and wear.

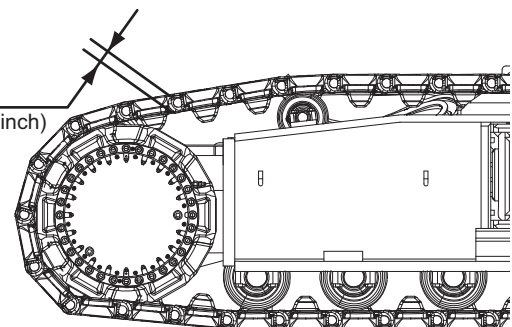
If the crawler tension is too high, the shoes wear quickly and a connection part of shoes could break.

On the other hand, if the crawler tension is too loose, the shoes may ride off the drive tumbler or idler wheel during propelling.

The slackening of 10 to 20 mm (3/8 to 13/16 inch) is normal condition after propelling the machine forward about the crawler length when measuring at the upper side of the crawler.



SLACK  
10 to 20 mm  
(3/8 to 13/16 inch)

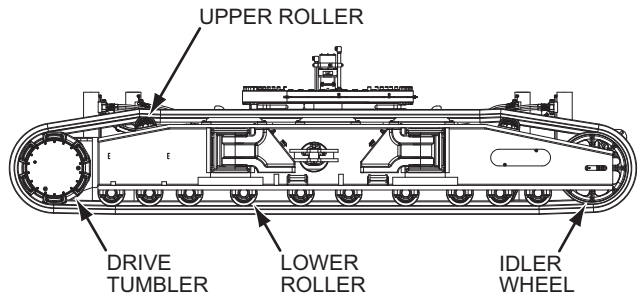


## 7. MAINTENANCE

### CHECK OF LOWER MACHINERY, QUARTERLY EVERY 3 MONTHS OR EVERY 250 HOURS

#### 41. DRIVE TUMBLER, IDLER WHEEL AND UPPER/LOWER ROLLER

Check the drive tumbler, idler wheel and upper/lower rollers for oil leak and damage.



#### 42. SLEWING BEARING MOUNTING BOLT

Check the slewing bearing mounting bolt for looseness and falling off.

Remove the upper and lower covers of the revolving frame for the inner bolt checking.

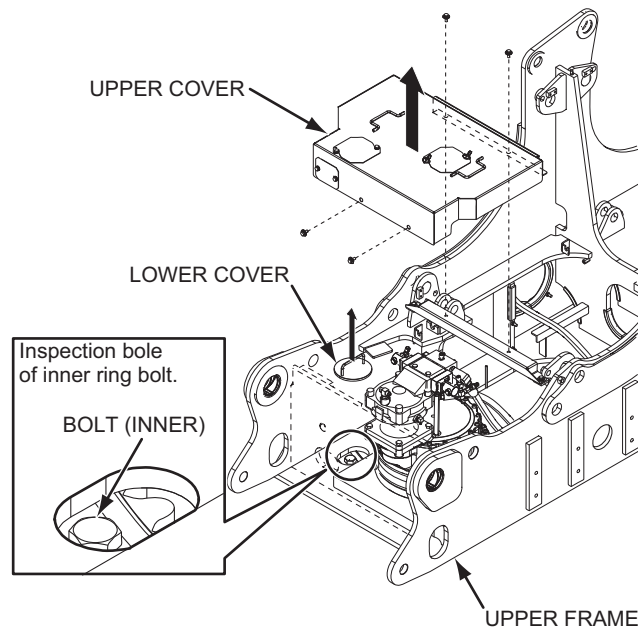
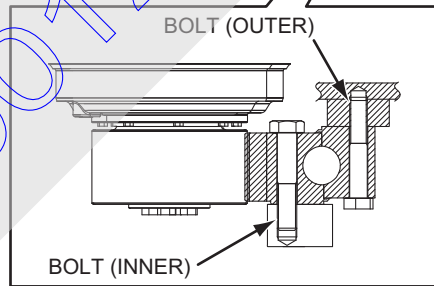
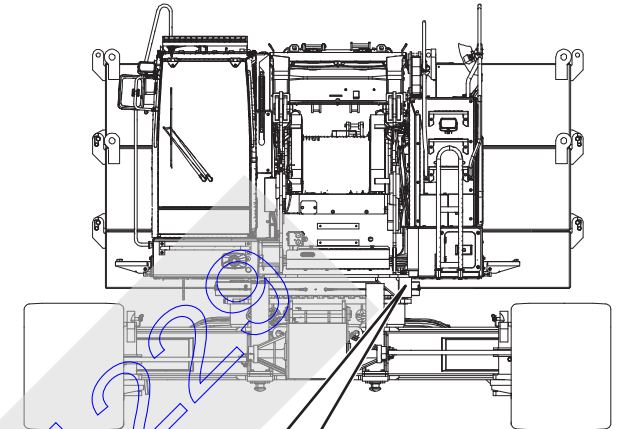
If the bolt is loose, remove and check it.

And if it is damaged, replace it with new one.

If the removed bolt is not damaged, clean and coat it with LOCTITE #242 or equivalent, then securely tighten it.

Tightening torque:

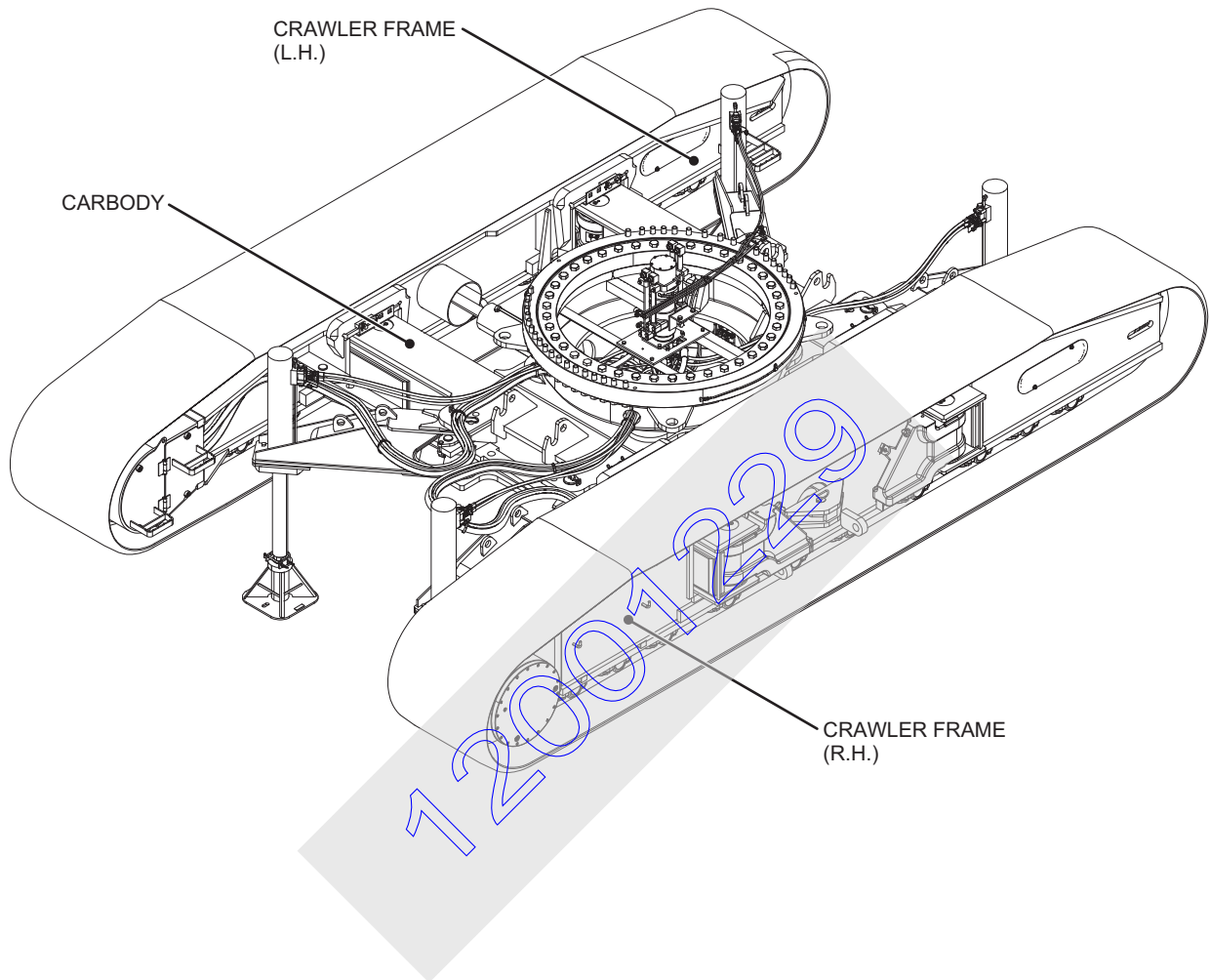
- Outer Bolt = 2,780 N-m (2,050 lbs-ft)
- Inner Bolt = 2,780 N-m (2,050 lbs-ft)



CHECK OF LOWER MACHINERY, SEMI-ANNUALLY OR EVERY 500 HOURS

43. FRAME

Check the carbody and crawler frame for crack and damage.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### CHECK OF ATTACHMENT

(Refer to P.7-22 to 7-23)

### CHECK OF ATTACHMENT DAILY OR EVERY 8 HOURS (EVERY SHIFT)

#### 44. UPPER SPREADER AND LOWER SPREADER

Check the sheave and frame of the upper and lower spreaders for damage.

---

**WARNING**

Do not touch a wire rope directly with bare hands. If wires protrude, you could be injured. Working gloves are recommended. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

---

---

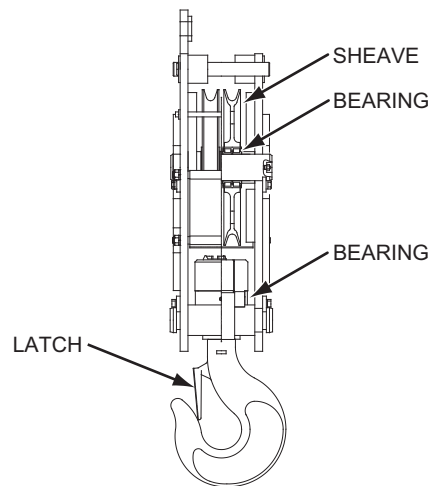
**WARNING**

Before climbing on machine make certain that the guard and walkways are clean and dry, and use safety belt in order to prevent falls due to slippery surface. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

---

#### 45. HOOK AND LATCHES

Check the sheave, bearing and latches of the hook block for damage, and check the bolt and nut for falling off.



#### 46. CABLE ROLLER

- Cable roller for boom insert
- Cable roller for boom tip
- Guide roller

Check these parts for damage, deformation and wear.

**46. SHEAVE**

- Boom point sheave
- Idler sheave
- Auxiliary sheave
- Jib point sheave
- Strut sheave
- Gantry peak sheave

Check these sheaves for damage, deformation and wear.

**48. BOOM AND JIB**

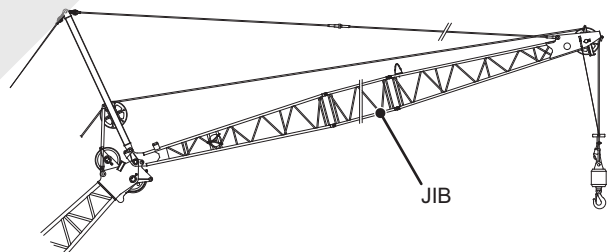
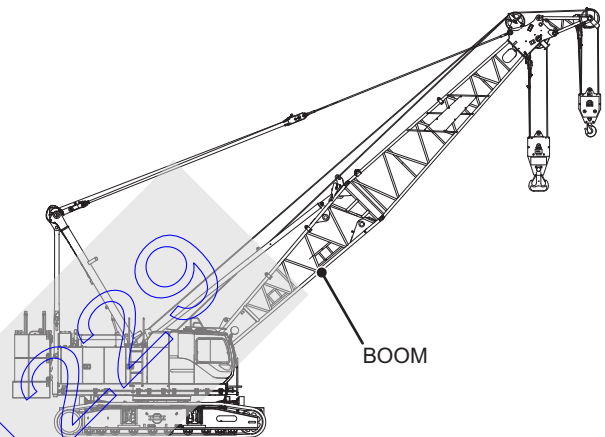
Check the boom and jib for damage and deformation. Do not use the damaged and/or deformed boom and jib.

Be sure to replace the damaged boom and jib with new ones, or repair.

**CAUTION**

Due to the high strength steels used in boom and jibs, special repair procedures are required.

Consult your local Manitowoc authorized dealer for instruction.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### 48. PIN, LINK AND COTTER PIN

Check the pin, link and cotter pin for damage and falling off.

### 50. BOLT AND NUT

Check the bolt and nut for looseness and for falling off.

### 51. BACKSTOP (BOOM, JIB)

- Boom backstop
- Jib strut backstop
- Jib backstop
- Strut backstop

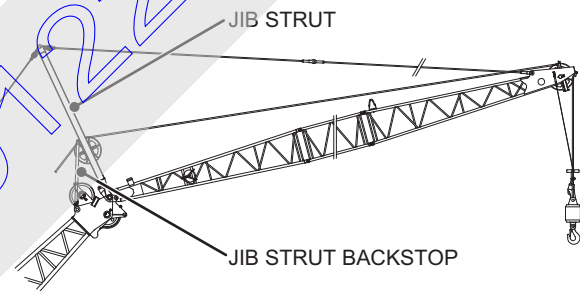
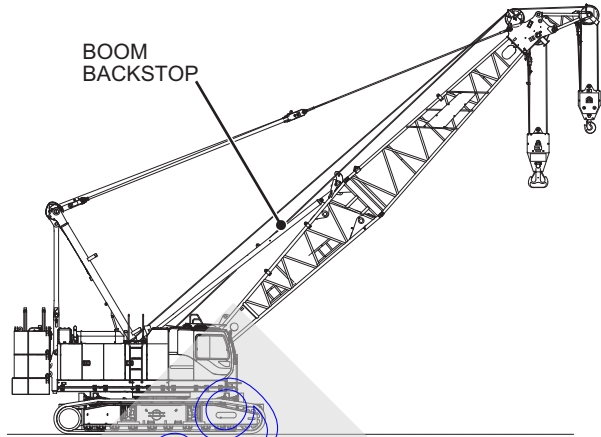
Check these backstops for damage and deformation.

---

**CAUTION**

Special procedures required for repair.  
Consult your local Manitowoc authorized dealer for instruction.

---



**52. STRUT**

Check the jib strut for damage, deformities and usual play.

**CAUTION**

Special procedures required for repair.  
Consult your local Manitowoc authorized dealer for instruction.

**53. WIRE ROPE AND GUY LINE**

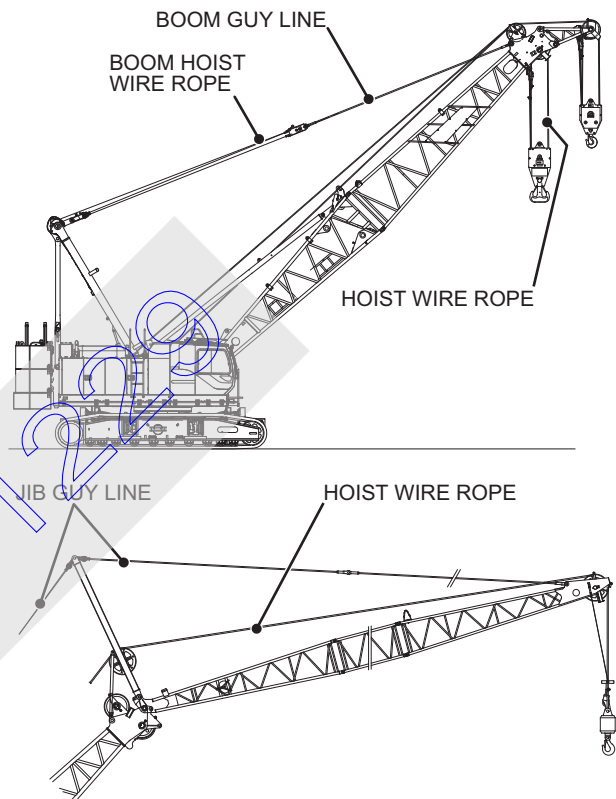
Check the wire rope and guy line for damage and deformation and wear.

Signs are; Kink, Crushing, Unstranding, Birdcage, Core Failure / Protrusion, Significant corrosion, Electric arc damage.

Also inspect socket and end conditions.

Do not use the wire rope and guy line sustaining damages beyond regulations described.

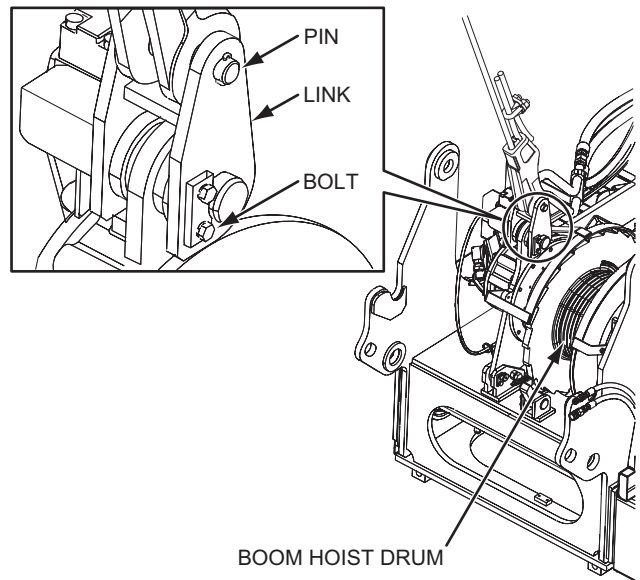
Refer to the article 6. WIRE ROPE.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 54. LOAD DETECTOR ROPE SOCKET PIN, BOLT, NUT

Check for the looseness and missing of pin, bolt, nut.



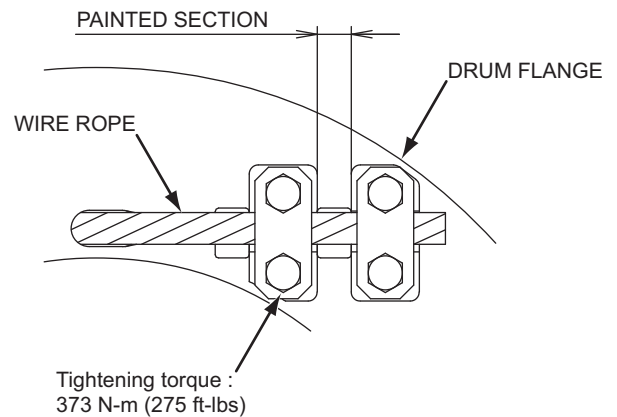
12001229



**55. HOIST WIRE ROPE CLAMP BOLT**

Ensure that the bolts securing the hoist wire rope to the drum flange are securely tightened, and the painted section of the wire rope is correctly positioned.

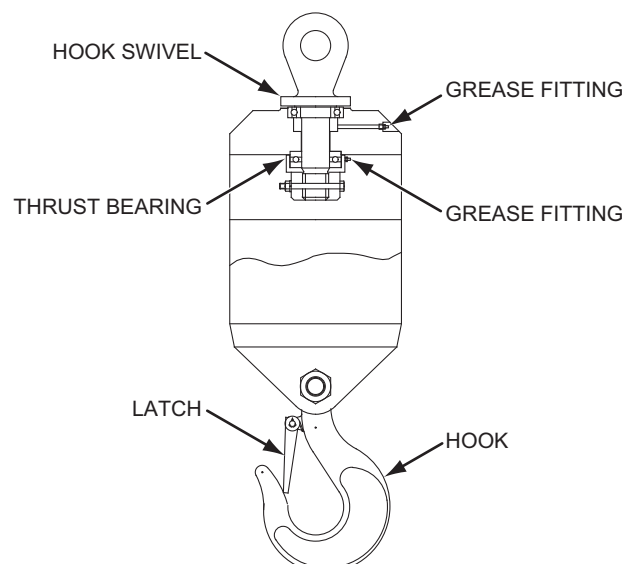
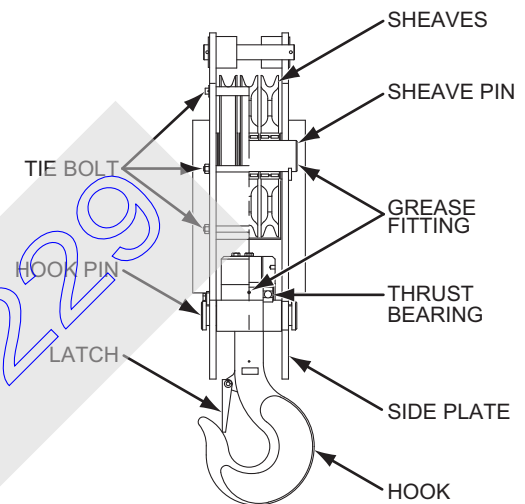
Tightening torque : 373 N-m (275 ft-lbs)

**HOOK AND SHACKLE MAINTENANCE STANDARD**

The operating condition of main and aux. hook can change daily with use; therefore, they must be inspected daily (at start of each shift) and observed during operation for any defects which could affect their safe operation. Correct all defects before using the hook block or ball hook.

Daily inspection and maintenance will include the following points.

- (1) Clean the hook block or the ball hook.
- (2) Lubricate the sheaves (if fittings provided), the hook swivel, and any other part equipped with a grease fitting at the intervals specified in the "32.HOOK SHEAVE" (P.7-77).
- (3) Tighten loose tie-bolts, capscrews, and setscrews. Check that all cotter keys are installed and opened.
- (4) Check the sheaves for uneven wear in the grooves and on the flanges. Check for loose or wobbly sheaves. These conditions indicate faulty bearings or bushings.
- (5) Check the fit of the wire rope in the groove of each sheave. An oversize wire rope can crack the lip of the sheave flange causing rapid wear of the wire rope and sheave. The groove must be larger than the wire rope, and the groove must be free of rough edges and burrs.

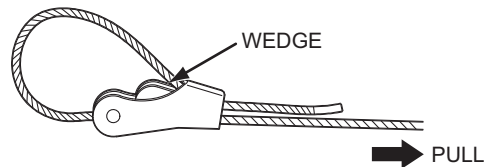
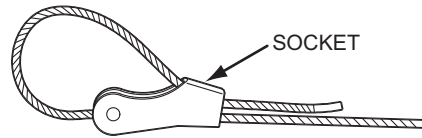
**Note**

Rope groove dia. shall be about 10% larger than rope nominal dia..

Take extra care since larger or smaller dia. groove may cause premature damage of the rope.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

- (6) Check that the hook, the trunnion, and the swivel rotate freely without excessive play. Faulty operation indicates faulty bushings or bearings or inadequate lubrication.
- (7) Check the swivel of the hook for the following conditions:  
Overloading: Spin the swivel by hand; if the motion is rough or has a ratchet-like effect, the swivel bearings are damaged.
- (8) Check the main hook for signs of overloading: spread side plates, elongated holes, bent or elongated tie-bolts, and cracks.
- (9) Check the wire rope for wear and broken wires at the point the wire rope enters the dead-end socket. Check the socket for cracks. Tighten the wire-rope clips at the dead end of the wire rope.
- (10) Check that each hook is equipped with a hook latch and that the latch operates properly. The latch must not be wired open or removed.



CHECK FOR WEAR AND DEFORMATION

CHECK THAT HOOK IS NOT TWISTED

CHECK FOR "OPENING UP"

CHECK FOR CRACKS AND TWISTING

CHECK FOR WEAR AND CRACKS

HOOK

- (11) Inspect shackles for damage.

### Note

Check each hook and shackle at least yearly for cracks using a dye penetrant test, MAG particle test, ultrasonic test, or by X-raying.

CHECK FOR WEAR AND DEFORMATION

CHECK FOR WEAR AND STRAIGHTNESS

CHECK THAT PIN IS ALWAYS SEATED

CHECK FOR "OPENING UP"

SHACKLE

### CAUTION

Do not attempt to repair cracks in hooks and shackles by welding. Furthermore, do not weld on any load bearing component unless proper welding methods are used. (contact Service Department at factory for material and welding specifications)

## 56. STRUT BACKSTOP CYLINDER

Inspect the backstop cylinder for oil leak and damage.

### 7.3 OIL/GREASE SUPPLY AND WATER SUPPLY

To ensure proper operation of this machine, all points requiring lubrication must be serviced with the correct lubricant (oil, grease and water) at the proper interval.

**STANDARD OIL (WATER) SUPPLY CAPACITY TABLE (NOT INCLUDING GREASING POINT)**

	Points of Lubrication	Kind	Symbol	Capacity (ltr.(gal))
Upper	Engine	Engine oil SAE #10W-30 (JASO DH-2,API CJ-4, ACEA E-6)	MO	28.5 (7.5)
	Radiator	Long life coolant (LLC)	LLC	34 (9.0)
	Fuel tank	ULTRA LOW SULFUR FUEL. Sulfur contained 50 ppm or less.	-	400 (105.6)
	Hydraulic oil tank	Hydraulic oil #46 #32 (OPTION)	HO	460 (121.5)
	Power divider	Gear oil #90	GO	10 (2.6)
	Front, rear drum reduction unit	Gear oil #80W-90	GO	22/each (5.8/each)
	Boom hoist drum reduction unit	Gear oil #90	GO	8 (2.1)
	Swing reduction unit	Gear oil #90	GO	16.5 (4.3)
Lower	Propel reduction unit	Gear oil #90	GO	25 (6.6)
	Idler wheel	Gear oil #140	GO	0.25/each (0.07/each)
	Lower roller	Gear oil #140	GO	0.13/each (0.03/each)
	Upper roller	Gear oil #140	GO	0.06/each (0.02/each)

#### WARNING

Use ultra low sulfur diesel fuel only (S50: sulfur content lower than 50 ppm).

If fuel other than specified one is used, adverse affect may be caused to the engine or diesel particulate filter and white smoke or failure may be resulted.

#### CAUTION

In order to keep good function of the diesel particulate filter, it is recommended to use the specified brand (recommended) engine oil.

#### Note

When shipment of the machine from the factory, the long life coolant (LLC) is arranged compounding ratio of 30% or 55% (for cold region) of cooling water in order to obtain anti-corrosive and antifreeze of cooling system.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### Manitowoc GENUINE LUBRICANT CHART

Kind	Symbol	Specification
Hydraulic oil	HO	#46
Hydraulic oil (option)	HO	#32
Extreme pressure grease	EPG	-
High temperature grease	HPG	-
Molybdenum disulphide grease	GL	-
Gear oil	GO	#90
		#80W-90
		#140
Engine oil	MO	SAE #10W-30 (DH-2, CJ-4, E-6)
Antifreeze	-	Long life coolant
Wire rope grease	-	Red
	-	Black

12001229

## LUBRICATION CHART

Lubricant	Symbol	Recommended Lubricant (Initial Factory Fill)			
Hydraulic Oil	HO	Hydraulic oil with anti-wear, anti-oxidant an anti-harmful foaming			
		55 °C to 5 °C (131°F to 41°F)	40 °C to 5 °C (104°F to 41°F)	30 °C to -25 °C (86°F to -13°F)	15 °C to -30 °C (59°F to -22°F)
		ISO VG68	ISO VG46	ISO VG32	ISO VG22
Gear Oil	GO	Extreme pressure gear oil #90 Grade GL-4 by API classification			
Grease	EPG	Extreme pressure Multipurpose grease NLGI No.2 Lithium base grease EP type			
	GL	NLGI No.1 Lithium base with MoS <sub>2</sub> grease			
Engine Oil	MO	Above 40 °C (Above 104°F)	40 °C to - 0 °C (104°F to 32°F)	40 °C to -30 °C (104°F to -22°F)	
		SAE40	SAE30	SAE10W-30	

## RECOMMENDED HYDRAULIC OIL

	VG32 KW32S	VG32 KW32	VG46 KW46	VG68 KW68
ESSO	-	NUTO H32	NUTO H46	NUTO H68
MOBIL	DTE 13	DTE 24	DTE 25	DTE 26
CALTEX	-	RANDO HD32	RANDO HD46	RANDO HD68
SHELL	-	TELLUS 32	TELLUS 46	TELLUS 68
GULF	-	HARMONY 32AW	HARMONY 46AW	HARMONY 68AW

**Note**

Under extreme cold temperature (lower than -15° C (5° F)), use engine oil SAE10W.

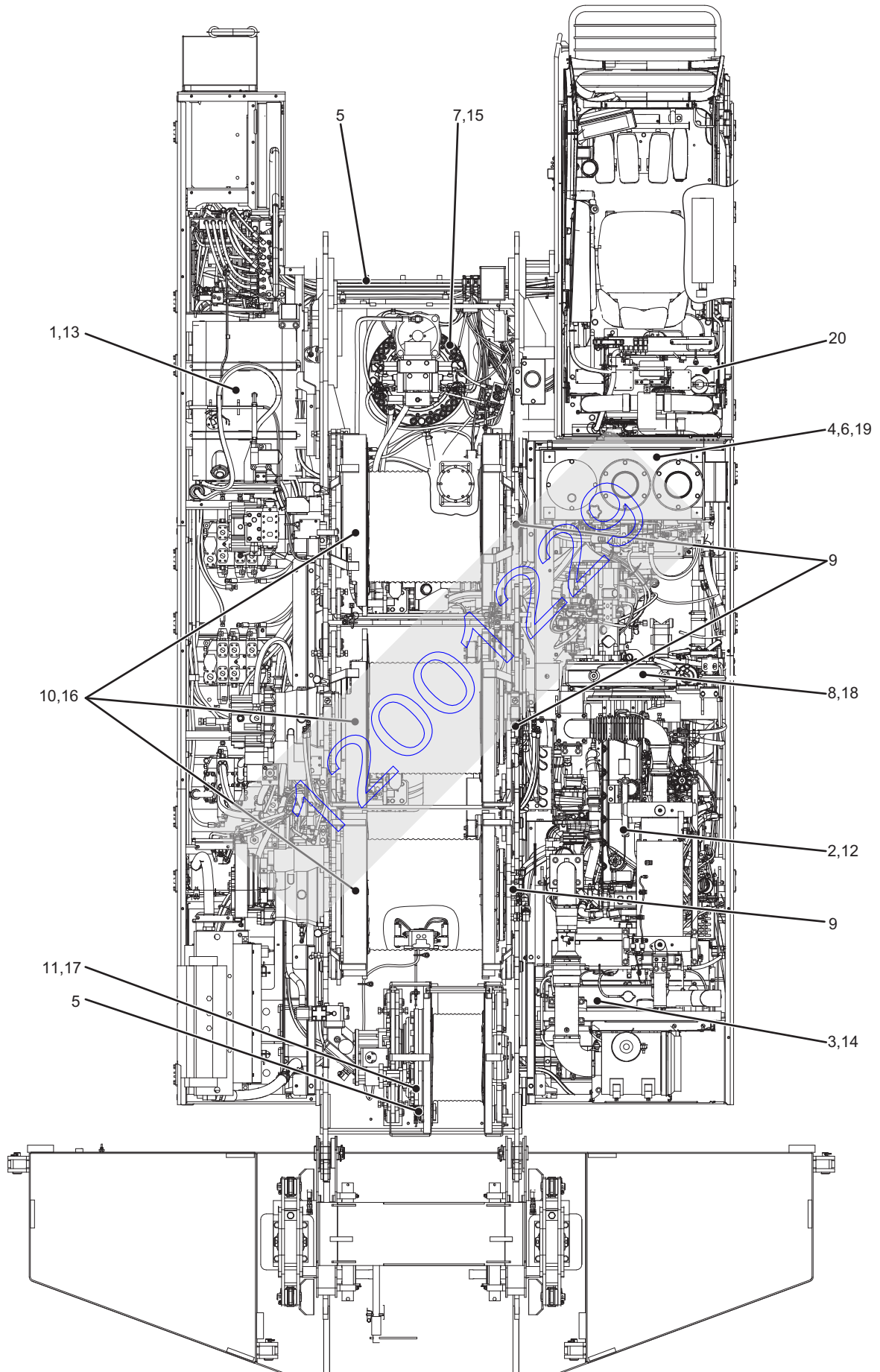
**Note**

Listed oil specification may be changed without prior notice.

This page is blank for editing convenience.

12001229

7.3.1 UPPER LUBRICATION (INCL. WATER SUPPLY)



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### UPPER LUBRICATION TABLE (WATER SUPPLY)

Check and lubrication interval	Item No.	Check and lubrication place	Required service	Kind of lubricant	Amount ltr. (gal)	Reference page
Daily or every 8 hours (Every shift)	1	Fuel tank *1	Supply fuel	Diesel fuel	400 (105.6)	7-59 to 7-60
	2	Engine (Engine oil)	Check oil level	MO		7-60
	3	Radiator	Check coolant level	LLC		7-61
	4	Hydraulic oil tank	Check oil level	HO		7-62
Weekly or every 50 hours	5	Drum lock (Front, rear, third, boom drums)	Grease	EPG		7-63
	6	Hydraulic oil tank	Drain			7-63
Monthly or every 100 hours	7	Swing reduction unit	Check oil level	GO		7-64
	8	Power divider	Check oil level	GO		7-64
Quarterly or every 250 hours	9	Drumshaft bearing	Grease	EPG		7-65
	10	Winch reduction unit (Front, rear, third drum (Option))	Check oil level	GO		7-65
	11	Winch reduction unit (Boom drum)	Check oil level	GO		7-65
	12	Engine *2	Replace oil	MO	28.5 (6.5)	7-66
Half years or 500 hours	13	Fuel tank	Drain			7-66
Annually or every 1,000 hours	14	Radiator	Replace coolant	Soft water	34 (8.0)	7-67
	15	Swing reduction unit	Replace oil	GO	16.5 (4.4)	7-68
	16	Winch reduction unit (Front, rear, third drum (Option))	Replace oil	GO	22/1 pc (5.8/1 pc)	7-69
	17	Winch reduction unit (Boom drum)	Replace oil	GO	8 (2.1)	7-69
	18	Power divider	Replace oil	GO	10 (2.6)	7-70
Every 2 years or 2,000 hours	19	Hydraulic oil tank	Replace oil	HO	460 (121.5)	7-71
	20	Washer tank	Supply liquid	Washer liquid		

\*1 Replace item 1 whenever required.

\*2 Replace item 12 at the initial 50 hours.

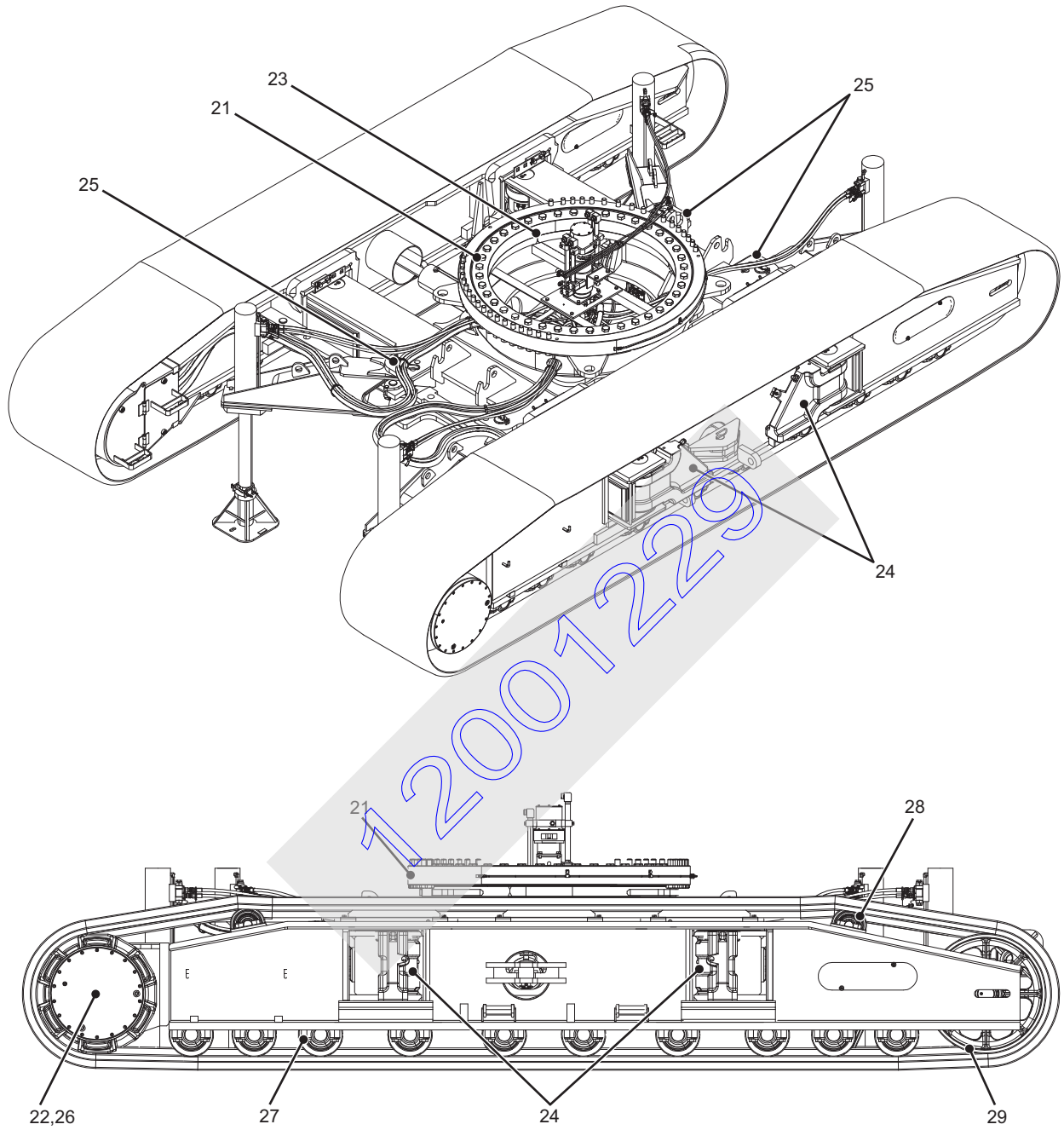
Clean the grease fittings before greasing.  
Wipe off the excess grease.



**Stop the engine when supplying grease.**



7.3.2 LOWER LUBRICATION



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### UPPER LUBRICATION TABLE (WATER SUPPLY)

Check and lubrication interval	Item No.	Check and lubrication place	Required service	Kind of lubricant	Amount ltr. (gal)	Reference page
Weekly or every 50 hours	21	Slewing bearing	Grease	EPG		7-72
Quarterly or every 250 hours	22	Propel reduction unit	Check oil level	GO		7-72
	23	Slewing ring gear *3	Grease	GL		7-73
	24	Axle extension	Grease	EPG		7-73
	25	Translifter arm mtg pin	Grease	EPG		7-74
Annually or every 1,000 hours	26	Propel reduction unit	Change oil	GO	25/pc (6.6/pc)	7-74
*4	27	Lower roller	Change oil leak	GO	0.13/pc (0.03/pc)	7-75
	28	Upper roller	Check oil leak	GO	0.06/pc (0.02/pc)	7-75
	29	Idler wheel	Check oil leak	GO	0.25/pc (0.06/pc)	7-75

\*3 Replace item 23 on every week or every 50 hours operation in case of clamshell or lifting magnet work.

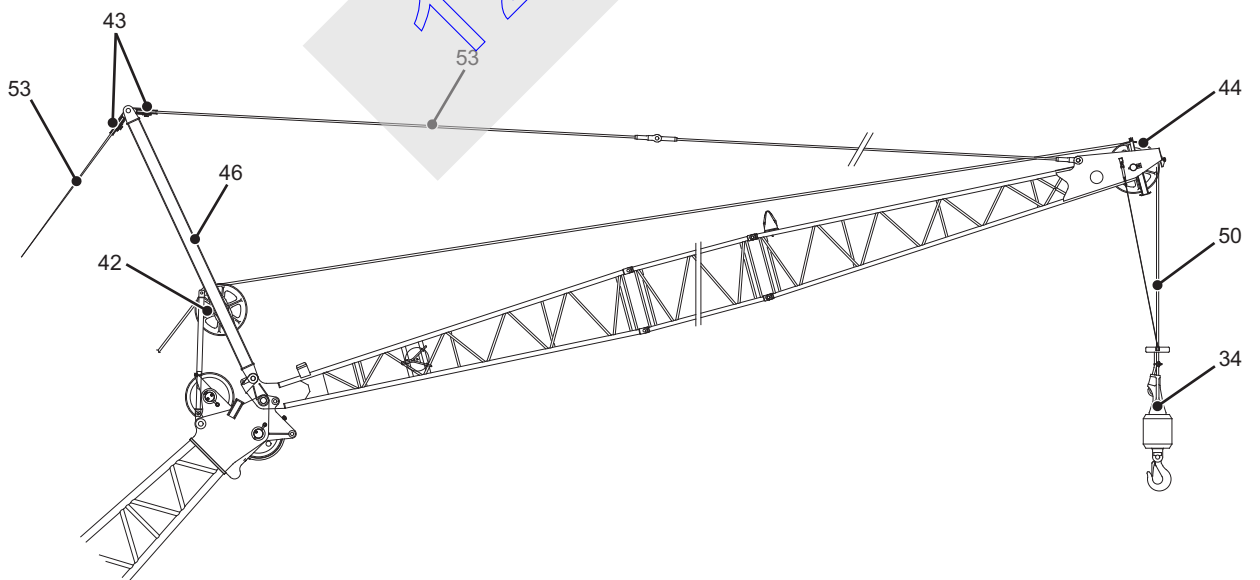
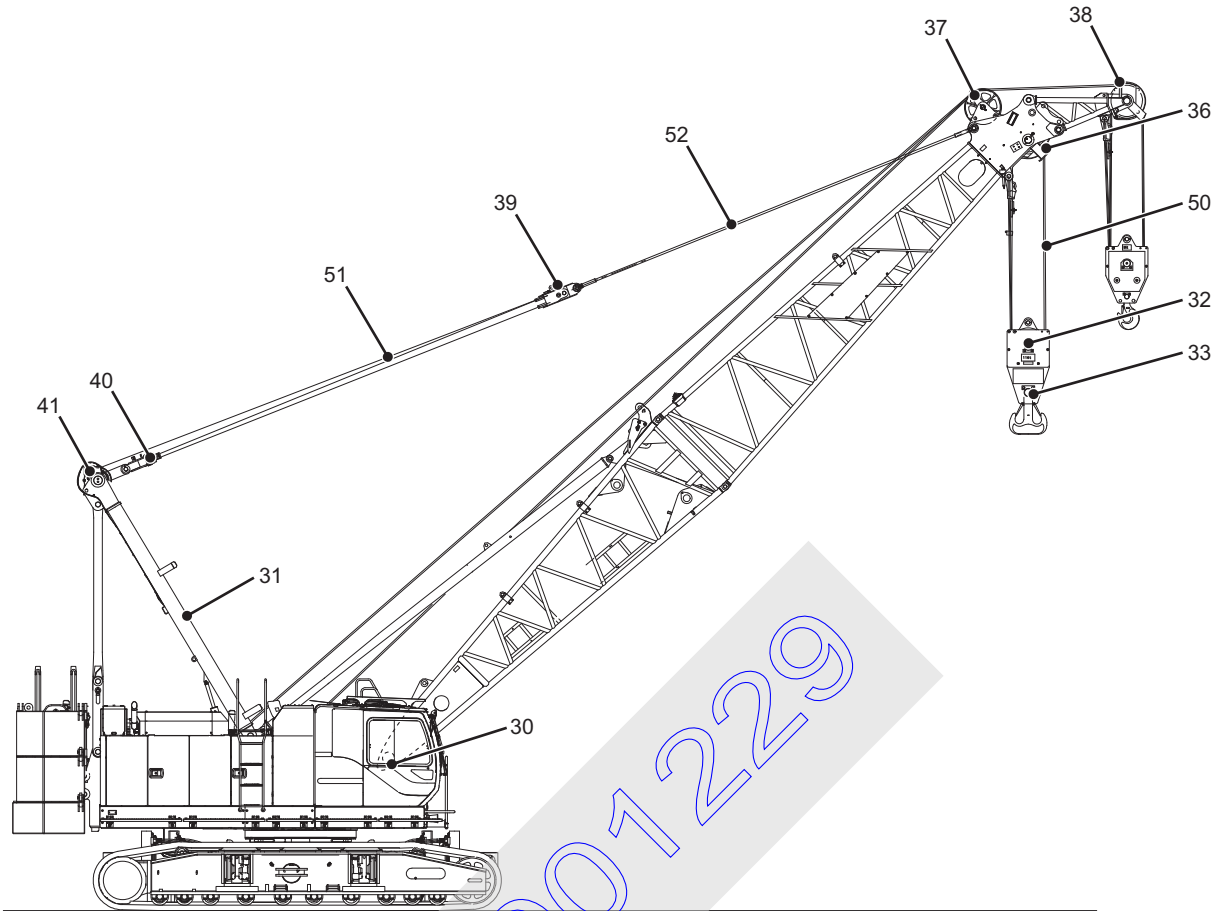
\*4 Item 27 to 29, replace them at the overhaul time if there is no abnormality such as oil leak is noted.

Clean the grease fitting before greasing.  
Wipe off the excess grease.



**Stop the engine when supplying grease.**

7.3.3 ATTACHMENT LUBRICATION



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### ATTACHMENT LUBRICATION TABLE

Check and lubrication interval	Item No.	Check and lubrication place	Required service	Kind of lubricant	Reference page
Daily or every 8 hours (Every shift)	30	Boom foot pin	Grease	EPG	7-76
	31	Gantry link	Grease	EPG	7-76
Weekly or every 50 hours	32	Hook sheave	Grease	EPG	7-77
	33	Hook bearing	Grease	EPG	7-77
	34	Ball hook bearing	Grease	EPG	7-77
Annually or every 1,000 hours *5	36	Boom point sheave	Grease	EPG	
	37	Idler sheave	Grease	EPG	
	38	Auxiliary sheave	Grease	EPG	
	39	Upper spreader sheave (For boom hoist)	Grease	EPG	
	40	Lower spreader sheave (For boom hoist)	Grease	EPG	
	41	Gantry peak sheave	Grease	EPG	
	42	Strut sheave	Grease	EPG	
	43	Strut equalizer sheave	Grease	EPG	
	44	Jib point sheave	Grease	EPG	
	45	Jib idler sheave	Grease	EPG	
	46	Rear guide sheave	Grease	EPG	
	47	Guide sheave	Grease	EPG	
	48	Front strut sheave	Grease	EPG	
49	Rear strut sheave	Grease	EPG		
*6	50	Front and rear hoist wire rope	Lubricate	WO	
	51	Boom hoist wire rope	Lubricate	WO	
	52	Boom guy line	Lubricate	WO	
	53	Jib guy line	Lubricate	WO	

\*5 Item 36 to 49 are grease sealed type.

If plug is installed to sheave pin or sheave, change it with grease fitting.

In case of clamshell, lifting magnet or hammer grab, grease to item 36 to 41 on every 500 hours.

\*6 Apply lubricant to the wire rope based on work condition.

Use brush or spray when supplying lubricant to wire rope.

Clean the grease fitting before greasing.

Wipe off the excess grease.



**Stop the engine when supplying grease.**

## 7.3.4 INSPECTION, GREASING (WATER SUPPLY) ON EACH POINT

## INSPECTION, GREASING (WATER SUPPLY) ON UPPER MACHINERY

(Refer to P.7-49)

## 1. ADDING FUEL

After daily work is finished, fill the fuel tank as full as possible in order to minimize condensation.

**CAUTION**

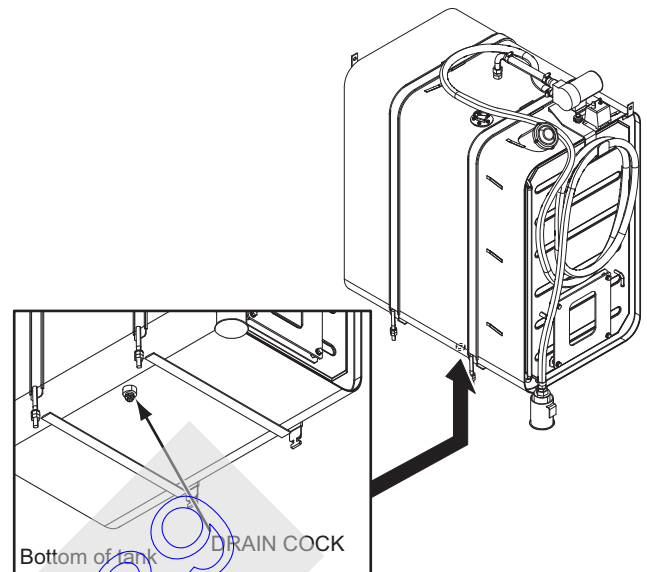
Never run the fuel pump empty.

**WARNING**

Do not use fuel other than those specified.  
Check for proper type of fuel again before refilling.  
When fuel is to be refilled, ensure to stop the engine.  
Do not overfill the fuel. Otherwise it may cause fire.  
Ensure to wipe off spilled fuel completely.  
Do not bring fire close.  
Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

**WARNING**

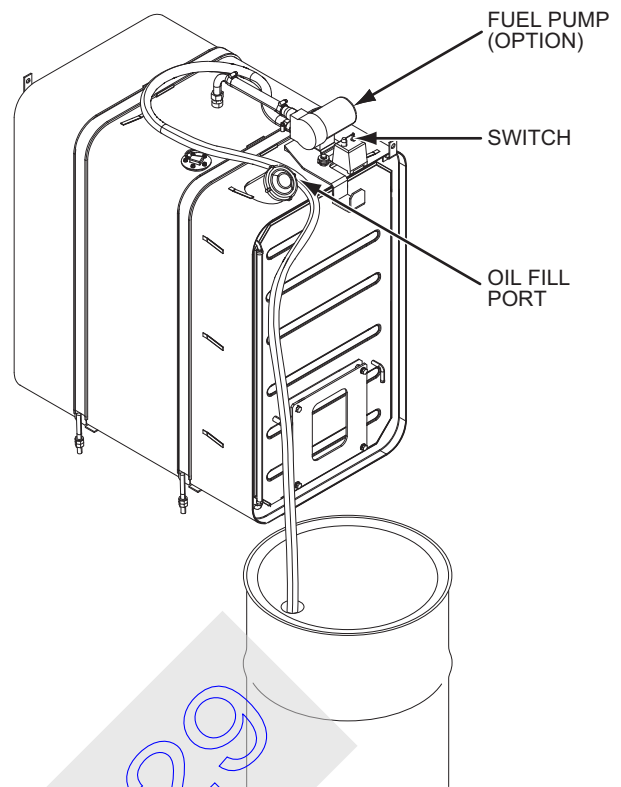
Use ultra low sulfur diesel fuel only (S50, sulfur content lower than 50 ppm).  
If fuel other than specified one is used, adverse affect may be caused to the engine or diesel particulate filter and white smoke or failure may be resulted.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

The fuel pump is optional item.  
If the fuel pump is not equipped, supply fuel from the fill port.

Refer to P.7-66 for fuel tank drain.

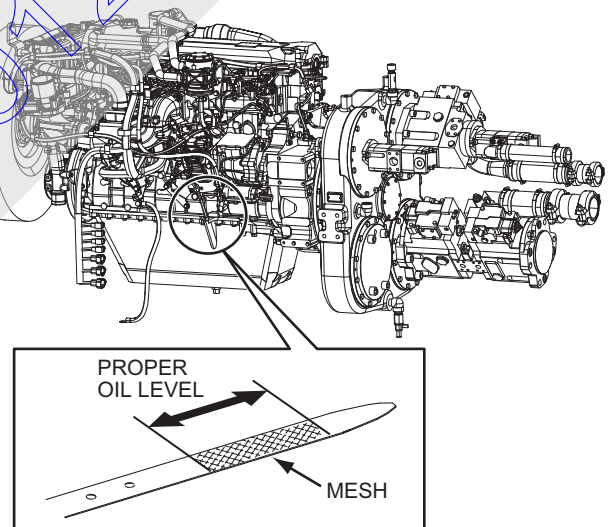


### 2. ENGINE OIL LEVEL CHECK

Ensure to check the engine oil level prior to work.  
Wipe the level gauge clean once and then insert the level gauge.  
If the level is within the cross hatch range, it is normal.

Refer to P.7-66 for replacing engine oil.

12000-1229



### 3. CHECKING OF COOLANT LEVEL

#### **WARNING**

Do not remove the radiator cap while the engine is hot.

Use a heavy cloth or gloves to protect yourself while slowly loosening the cap.

Wait until any sound or fluid flow stops before removing cap.

Engine coolant is hot and under pressure when the engine is at operating temperature.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

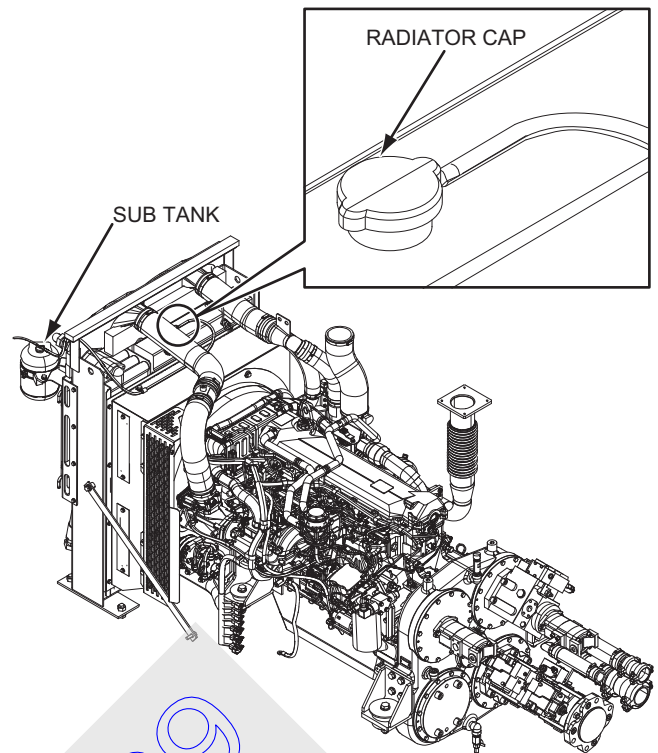
#### **WARNING**

The long life coolant (LLC) has the flammability and it is harmful for human body.

Keep away from flame when it is replaced. Ensure no to splash the long life coolant (LLC) to the eyes and the skin.

In case the LLC contacts the eyes and the skin, immediately wash thoroughly with clear water and consult with doctor.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.



After removing the radiator cap, confirm coolant level, and also confirm the coolant level of the sub-tank.

- When cooling water is in sufficient, fill the antifreeze up to the throat of filling port of the radiator and fill up to "FULL" mark position of sub-tank. (The composition is to be considered depending on ambient temperature.) (Refer to P.7-102.)

Refer to P.7-67 for replacing coolant.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 4. CHECK OF HYDRAULIC OIL LEVEL

If the hydraulic oil level is within the specified range shown in the label of the level gauge with the following conditions and the engine running, the oil level is normal.

[Oil temperature: 20° C (68° F)]

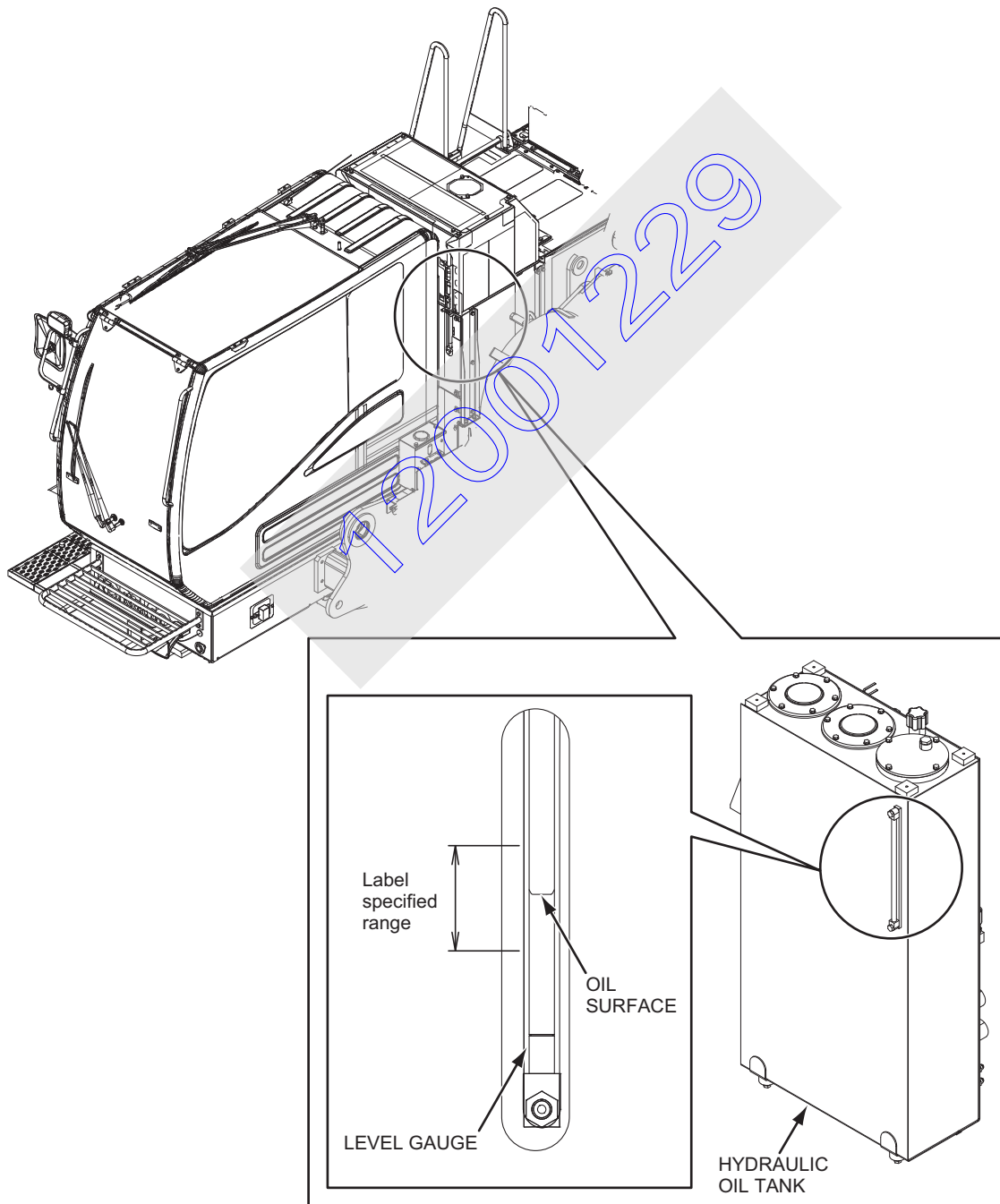
Gantry cylinder: Extended

Crawler ext/retr cylinder: Extended

Translifter cylinder: Retracted

CWT self removal cylinder: Retracted

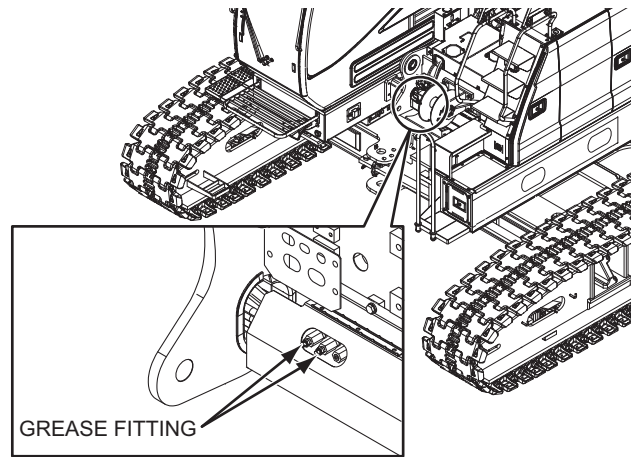
Refer to P.7-71 for replacing hydraulic oil.



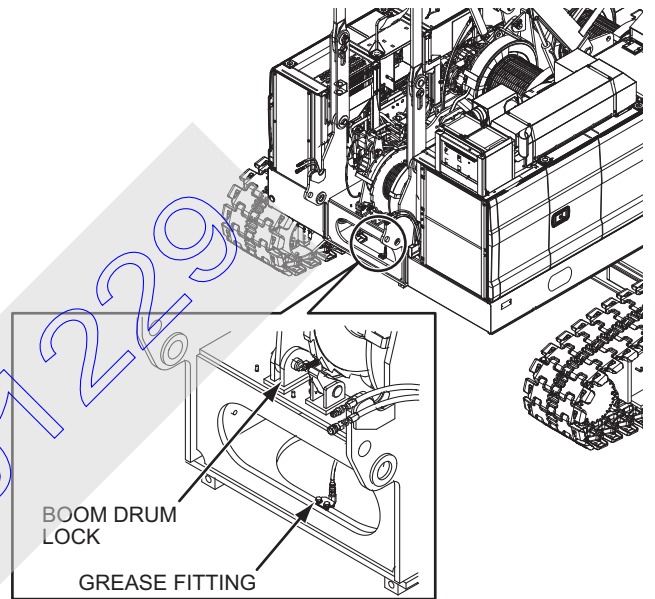


**5. DRUM LOCK**

Supply grease to the drum lock of the front, rear and third drum (option) from the grease fittings provided on the front face of the swing frame. (2 or 3 for with third drum)

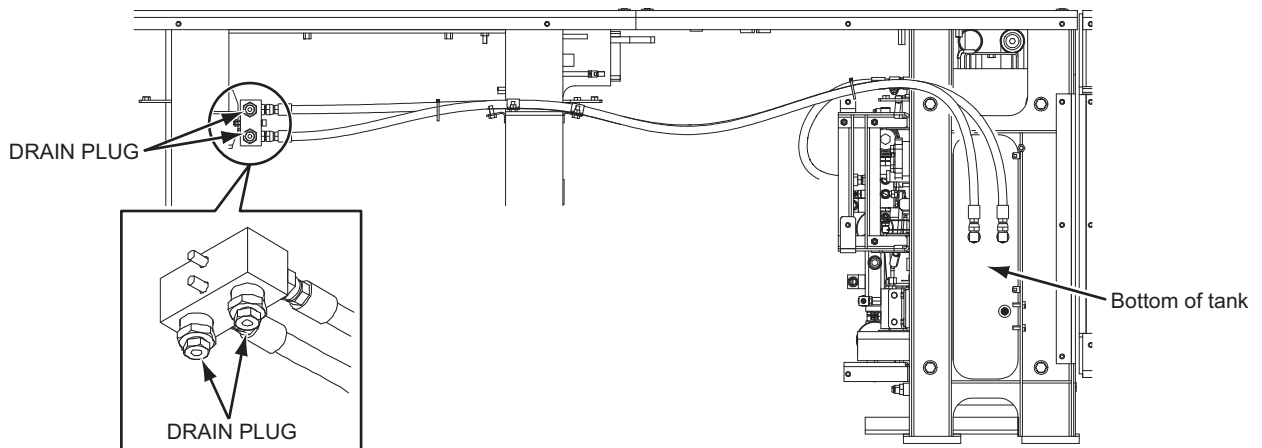


Supply grease to the boom drum lock from the grease fitting provided under the swing frame.



**6. DRAIN OF HYDRAULIC OIL TANK**

Before starting operation, loosen the drain plug to drain water and sediment from the tank. (2 locations)



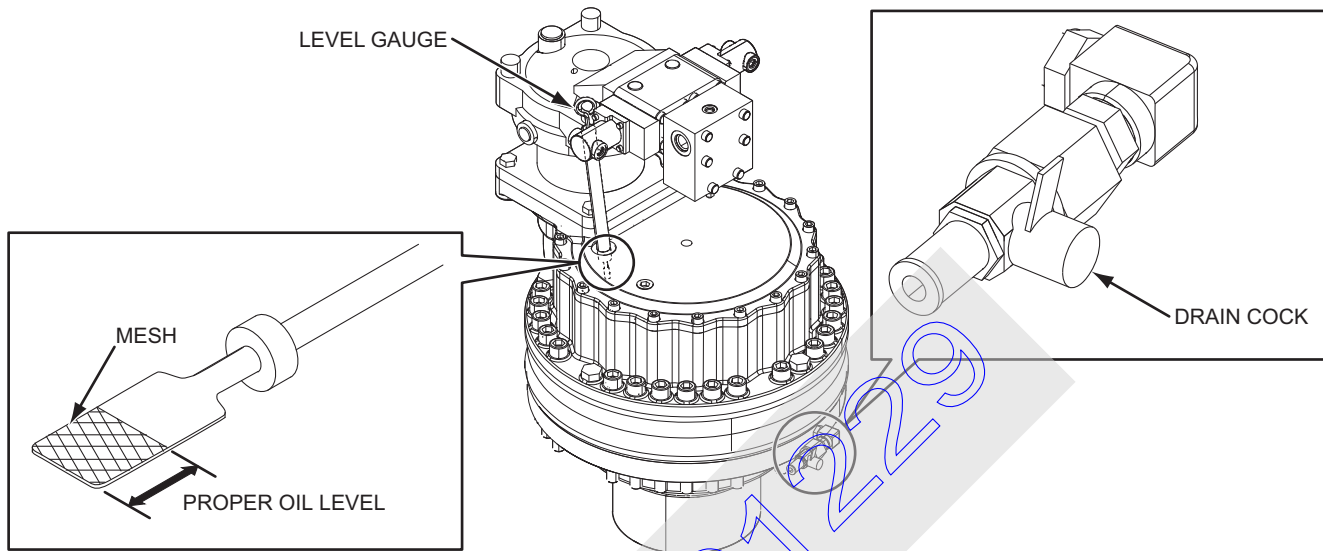
View from under the deck

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 6. OIL LEVEL CHECK OF SWING REDUCTION UNIT

Check the oil level more than 30 minutes after the operation is stopped.  
If the oil level is in the meshes of the level gauge, it is normal.

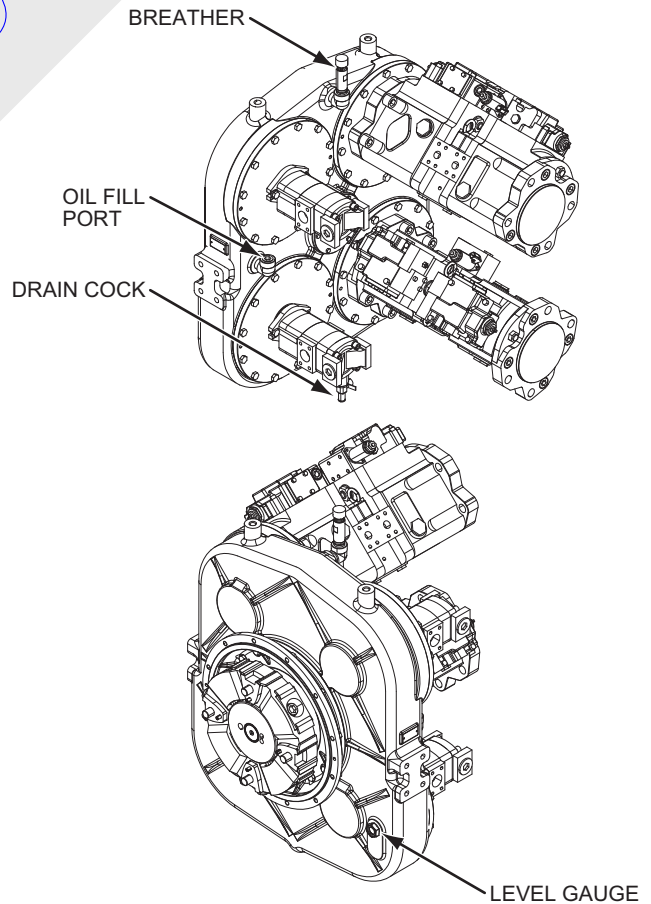
Refer to P.7-68 for oil change of the swing reduction unit.



### 7. OIL LEVEL CHECK OF POWER DIVIDER

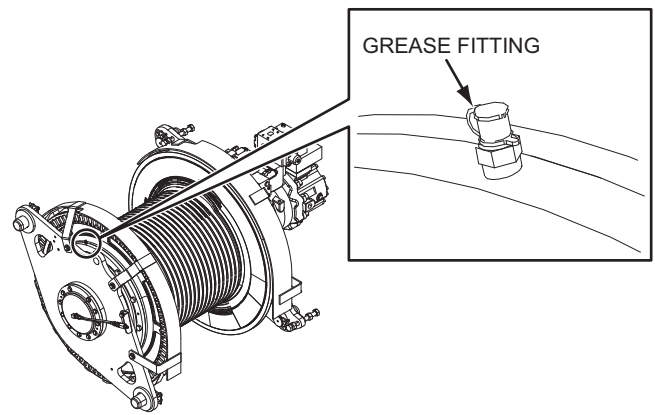
Check the oil level more than 30 minutes after the operation is stopped.  
If the oil level is up to the red color mark of the level gauge, it is normal.

Refer to P.7-70 for oil change of the power divider.



**8. DRUM SHAFT BEARING**

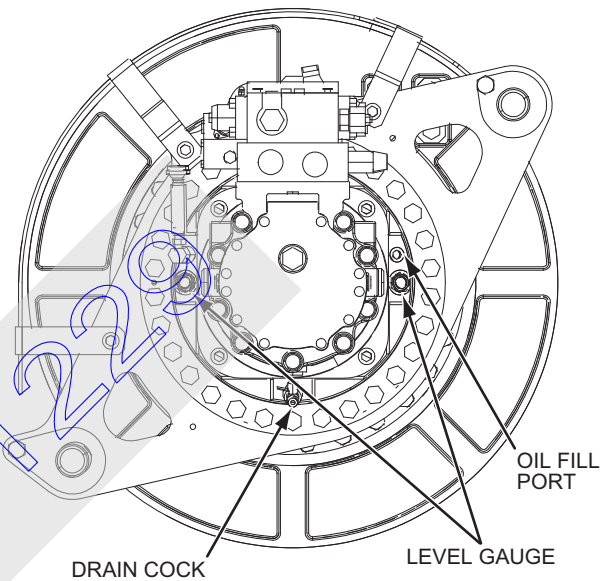
Supply grease from the grease fitting provided on the bearing sleeve on the rope clamp side. There are 3 grease fittings but take one easiest grease point. (It is not necessary to grease from all 3 points.)



**10. OIL LEVEL CHECK OF REDUCTION UNIT (FRONT, REAR, THIRD DRUM (OPTION))**

More than 30 minutes of operation stop, check the oil level. If the oil level is up to red mark on the oil level meter, it is normal in case of front drum and rear drum.

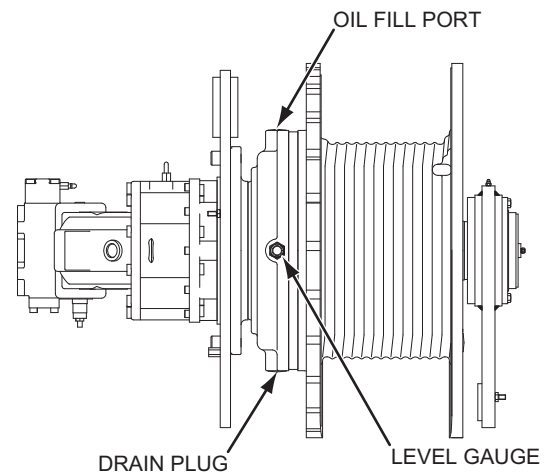
Refer to P.7-69 for oil change of reduction unit (front, rear and third drum (option)).



**11. OIL LEVEL CHECK OF WINCH REDUCTION UNIT (BOOM DRUM)**

More than 30 minutes of operation stop, check the oil level. If the level is up to the specified point, it is normal.

Refer to P.7-69 for oil change of the winch reduction unit (Boom drum).



View from rear side of the reduction unit (boom drum)

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 12. ENGINE OIL CHANGE

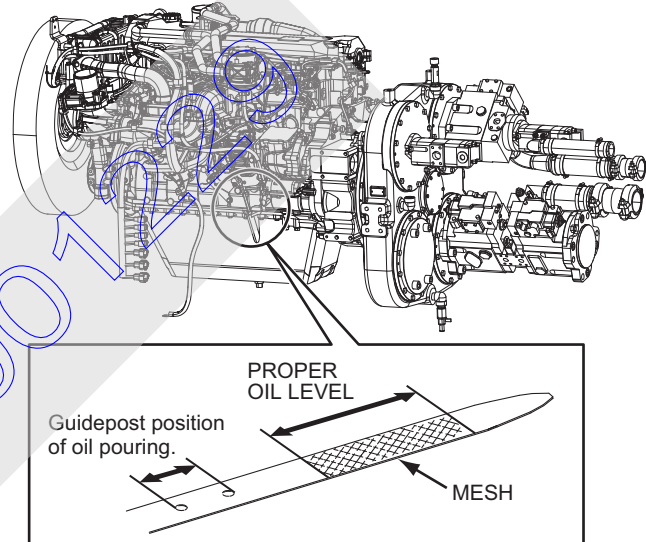
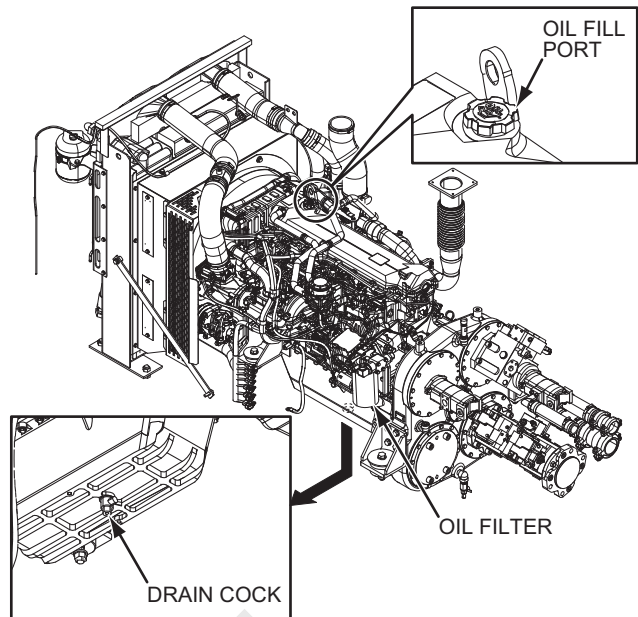
#### **WARNING**

Draining the engine oil while it is hot may cause burns. Drain the oil after it becomes cool. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

#### **CAUTION**

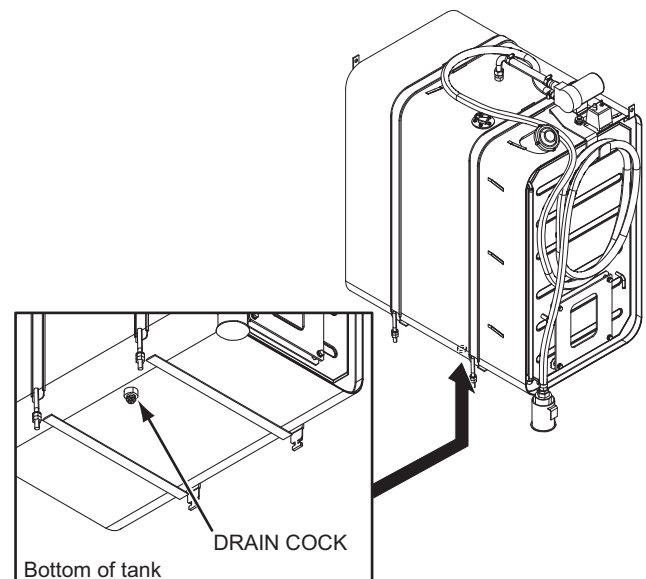
The warranty does not cover malfunctions caused by the use of parts other than Manitowoc genuine parts (genuine oil, grease and filter).

- (1) Prepare the container about 30 ltr. (6.9 gal).
- (2) Loosen the drain plug and drain the oil to the prepared container.
- (3) Tighten the drain plug.
- (4) After checking if there is no metal powder mixed in the oil, pour the new oil to the fill port. When changing oil, replace the oil filter too.
- (5) When the filter element and the total quantity of the oil are changed, pour the oil using the guidepost position of oil pouring. (Do not start the engine.) Drive the engine for a few minutes. Stop the engine for about 30 minutes. Then confirm that the oil level is in the proper level.



### 13. FUEL TANK DRAIN

Loosen the drain plug and drain the water or sediment contaminated in the tank.



## 14. CHANGE OF COOLANT

**WARNING**

Do not drain the coolant when it is hot. The hot water may spout out which could result in personal injury. After the water has cooled, drain the water. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

- (1) Loosen the drain cock in the bottom of the radiator and the plug of the water jacket, drain the coolant.
- (2) Combine soft water (tap water) and Long life coolant, and fill the radiator up to the foot of the water supply port.  
In order to prevent air from entering, slowly pour water. After water pouring, confirm that the water level does not lower, then tighten the radiator cap.
- (3) Start and run the engine for about 1 minute. Stop the engine, and check water level. If insufficient, add water.

**COOLANT BLENDING**

Blend the coolant (long life coolant) based on ambient temperature. Refer to P.7-102 for blending.

**WARNING**

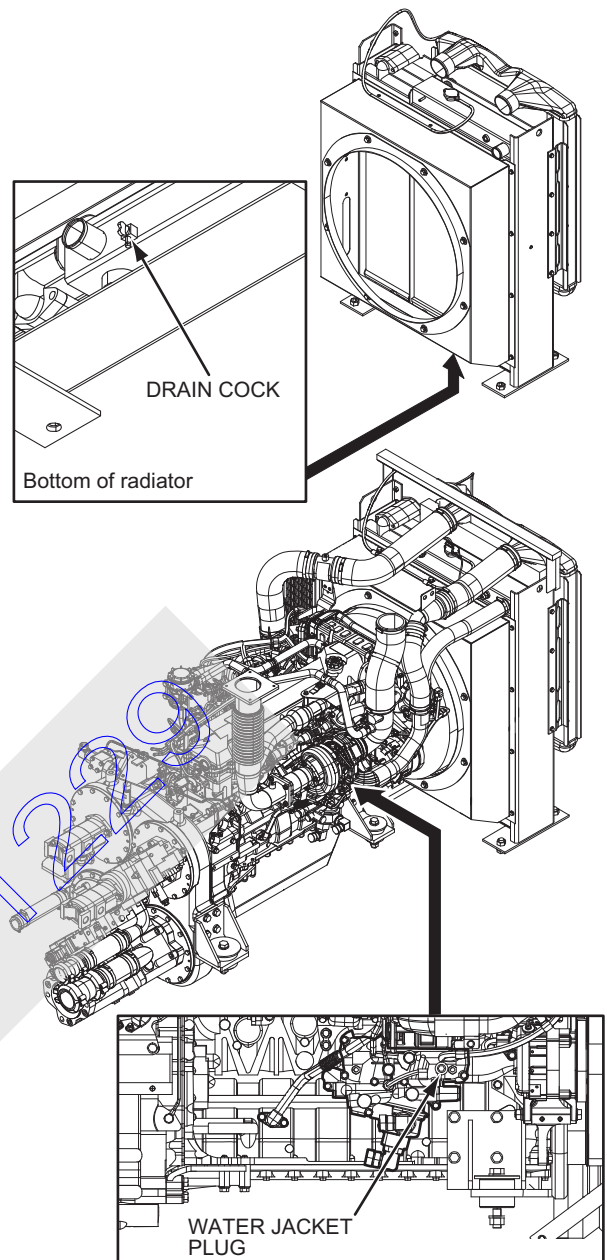
The long life coolant (LLC) has the flammability and it is harmful for human body. Keep away from flame when it is replaced. Ensure not to splash the long life coolant (LLC) to the eyes and the skin. In case the LLC contacts the eyes and the skin, immediately wash by the sufficient amount of clear water and consult with doctor. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.

**Note**

When shipment of the machine from the factory, the long life coolant (LLC) is arranged compounding ratio of 30% or 55% (for cold region) of cooling water in order to obtain anti-corrosive and antifreeze of cooling system.

Compound water shall be use of clean soft water (tap water) without occurring of a moss.

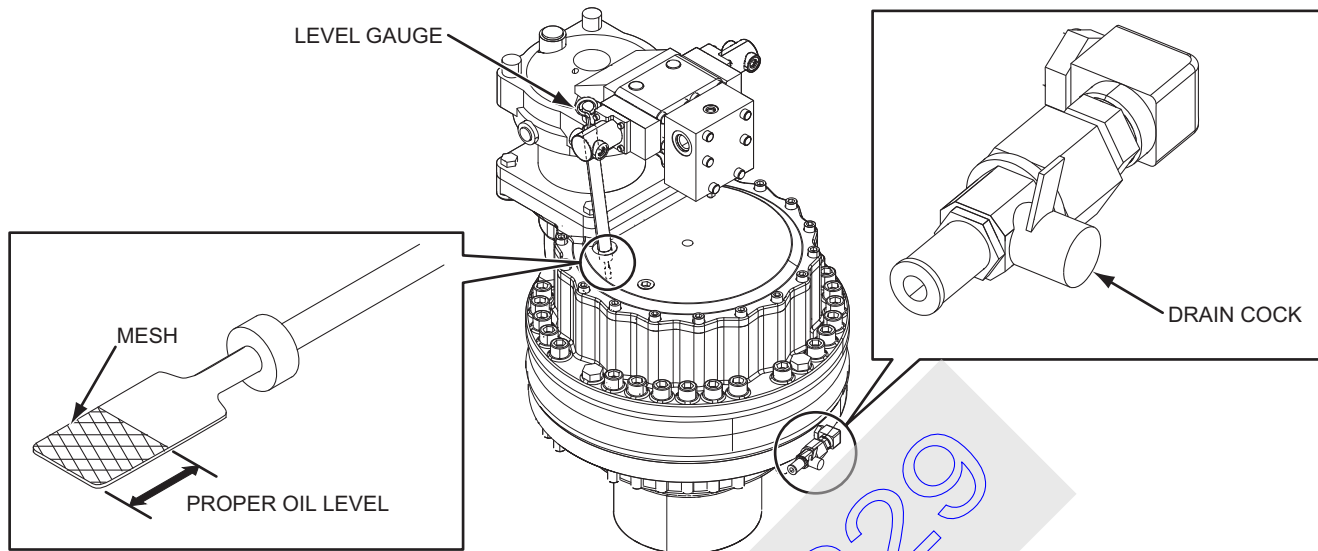
This machine is used of none-amine group anti-freeze. Replace immediately replace cooling water as soon as appearance of contamination and/ or bubbles in the cooling water.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 15. OIL CHANGE OF SWING REDUCTION UNIT

With the gauge stick drawn out, loosen the drain cock, and drain the oil into a prepared container. Shut the drain cock and supply the specified oil through the fill port until the oil level reaches the specified level.



#### **WARNING**

**Do not drain the oil when it is hot. The hot oil may spout out which could result in personal injury. After the oil has cooled, drain the oil. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.**

### 16. OIL CHANGE OF REDUCTION UNIT (FRONT, REAR, THIRD DRUM (OPTION))

Prepare a container of approx. 30 ltr. (6.9 gal) capacity.

With the oil fill plug removed, turn the lever of the drain cock to drain the oil into the prepared container.

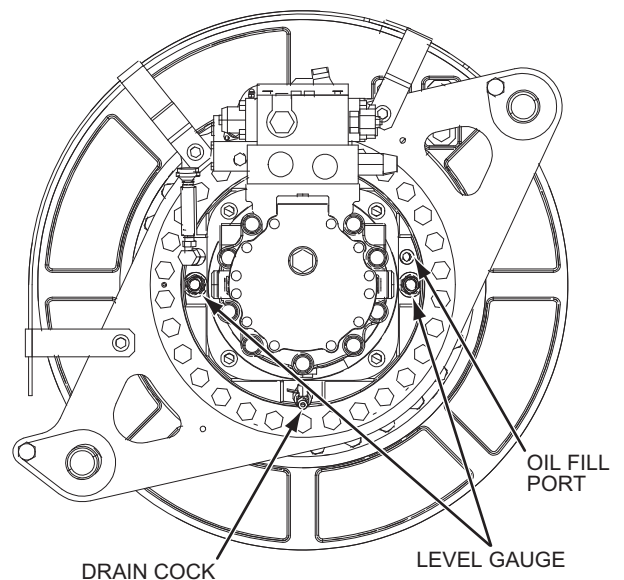
Return the lever of the drain cock to the original position, and supply the specified oil through the oil fill port until the oil level reaches the specified oil level.

#### **WARNING**

**Do not drain the oil when it is hot. The hot oil may spout out which could result in personal injury.**

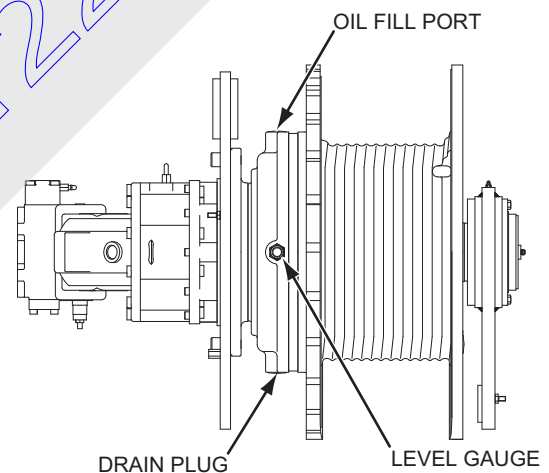
**After the oil has cooled, drain the oil.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.**



### 16. OIL CHANGE OF BOOM HOIST DRUM REDUCTION UNIT

- (1) Prepare a container of approx. 10 ltr. (2.6 gal) of capacity.
- (2) Rotate the drum to make the level gauge in horizontal position.
- (3) With the level plug removed, remove the drain plug to drain the oil into the container.
- (4) After drain, install the drain plug and add the specified oil from the supply port to the level gauge center.



View from rear side of the reduction unit (boom drum)

## 7. MAINTENANCE

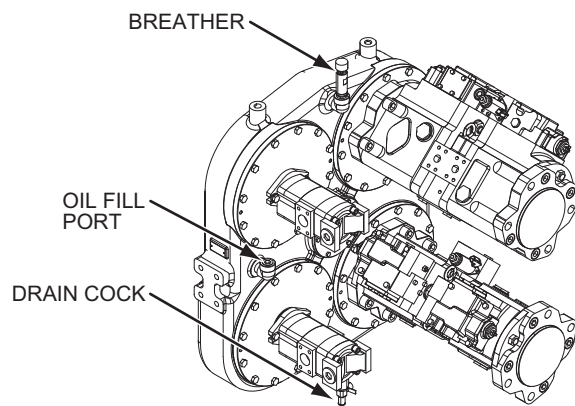
---

### 17. OIL CHANGE OF POWER DIVIDER

Prepare a container of approx. 20 ltr. (5.3 gal) of capacity.

With the cap of the oil supply port removed, turn the lever of the drain cock to drain the oil into the container.

Return the lever of the drain cock to the original position, pour the specified oil through the oil supply port until the oil level reaches the specified level.



---

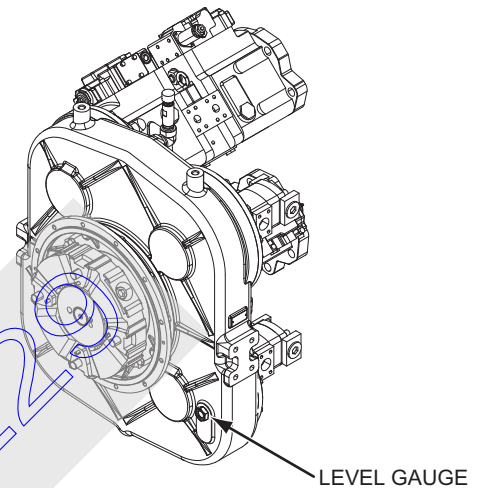
**WARNING**

**Do not drain the oil when it is hot. The hot oil may spout out which could result in personal injury.**

**After the oil has cooled, drain the oil.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

---



1200122



## 18. CHANGE OF HYDRAULIC OIL

**WARNING**

Do not drain the oil when it is hot.

The hot oil may spout out which could result in personal injury. After the oil has cooled, drain the oil.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

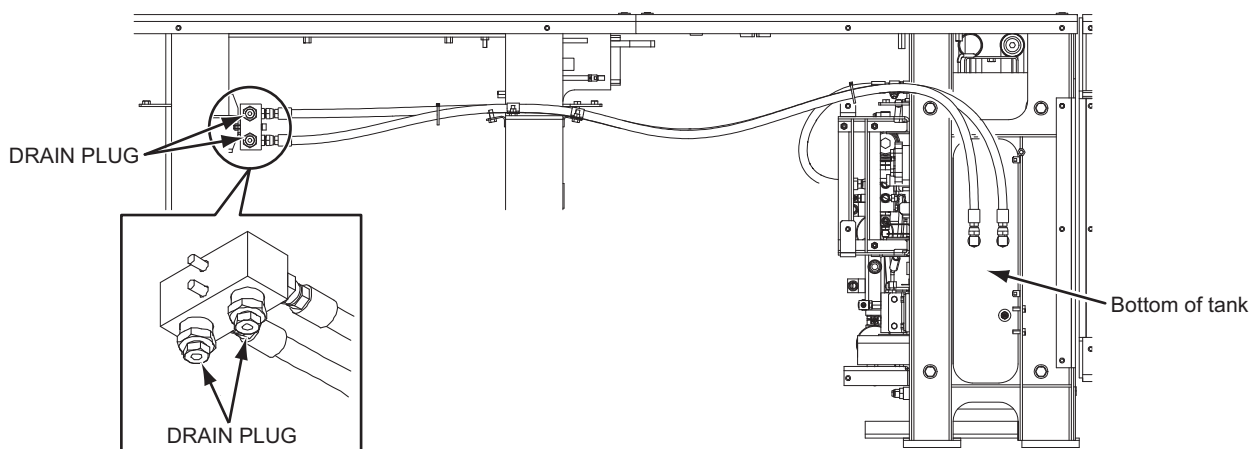
**CAUTION**

Extra care must be taken to ensure that all the hydraulic tank is completely filled with oil before the engine is restarted.

Failure to properly prime the hydraulic pumps could result in a catastrophic failure of the pumps.

It is standard to replace hydraulic oil every 2,000 hours of the hourmeter, but if the oil is remarkably contaminated or deteriorated, replace the oil regardless of operating hours.

- (1) Prepare a container of approx. 400 ltr. (105.6 gal).
- (2) Remove the cap of the filler port and filter cover.
- (3) Loosen the drain plug and drain the hydraulic oil into the prepared container.
- (4) Replace the drain plug, fill the tank with the specified hydraulic oil through the filler port up to the specified level.
- (5) Reinstall the filter cover and oil supply cap.
- (6) Check the oil level again.



View from under the deck

When changing hydraulic oil, change the filter also at the same time.

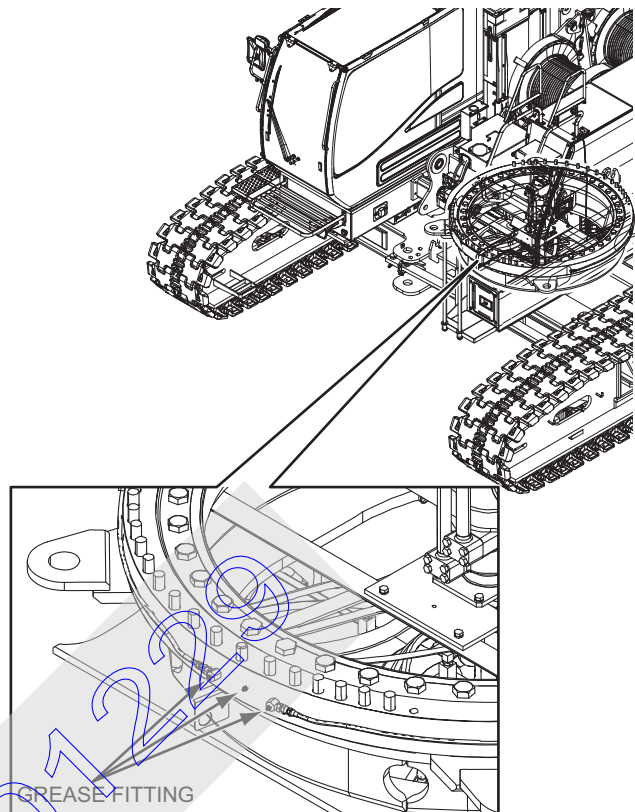
## 7. MAINTENANCE

### INSPECTION, GREASING OF LOWER MACHINERY

(Refer to P.7-55)

#### 21. SLEWING BEARING

Grease through the grease fitting provided on the slewing ring bearing.

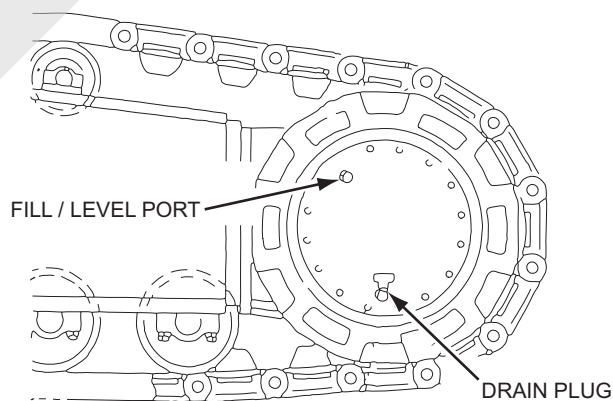


#### 22. OIL LEVEL CHECK OF PROPEL REDUCTION UNIT

Check the oil level more than 30 minutes after the operation is stopped.

With the drain plug positioned at the right bottom, remove the level plug. If the oil level is up to the bottom of the level plug opening, it is normal.

Refer to P.7-74 for oil change of the propel reduction unit.

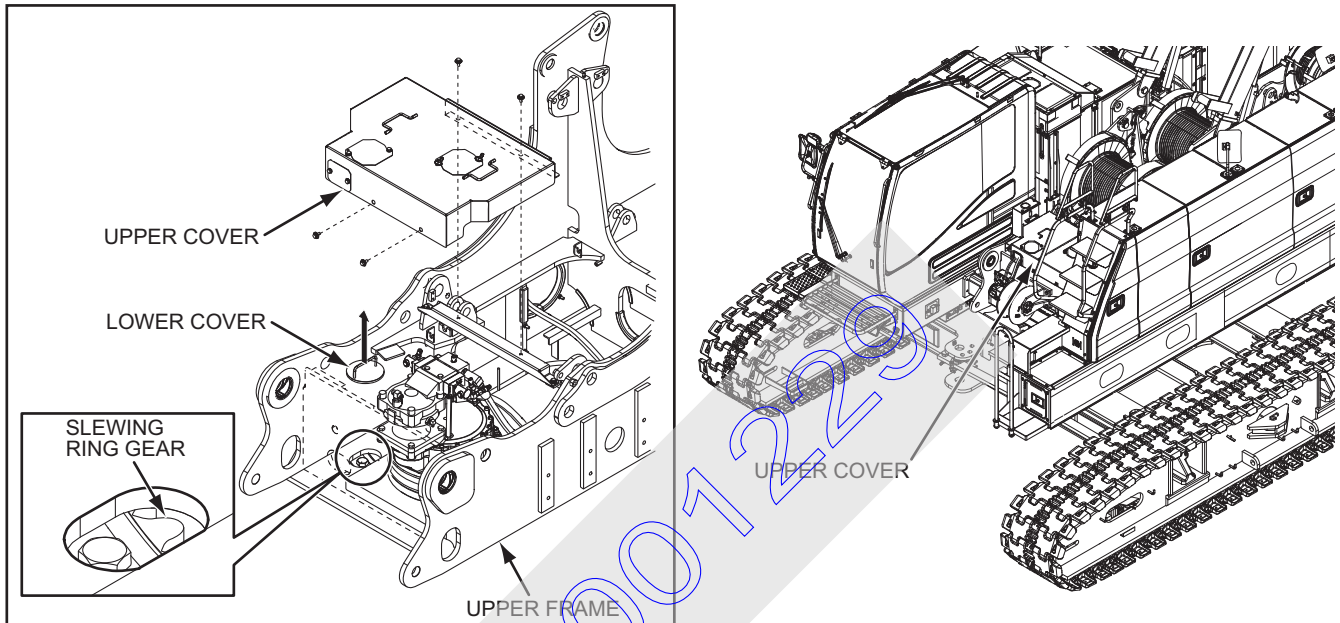


**23. SLEWING RING GEAR**

Removing the upper and lower cover in the swing frame front, turn the upper little by little, and grease so that grease goes around the entire ring gear.

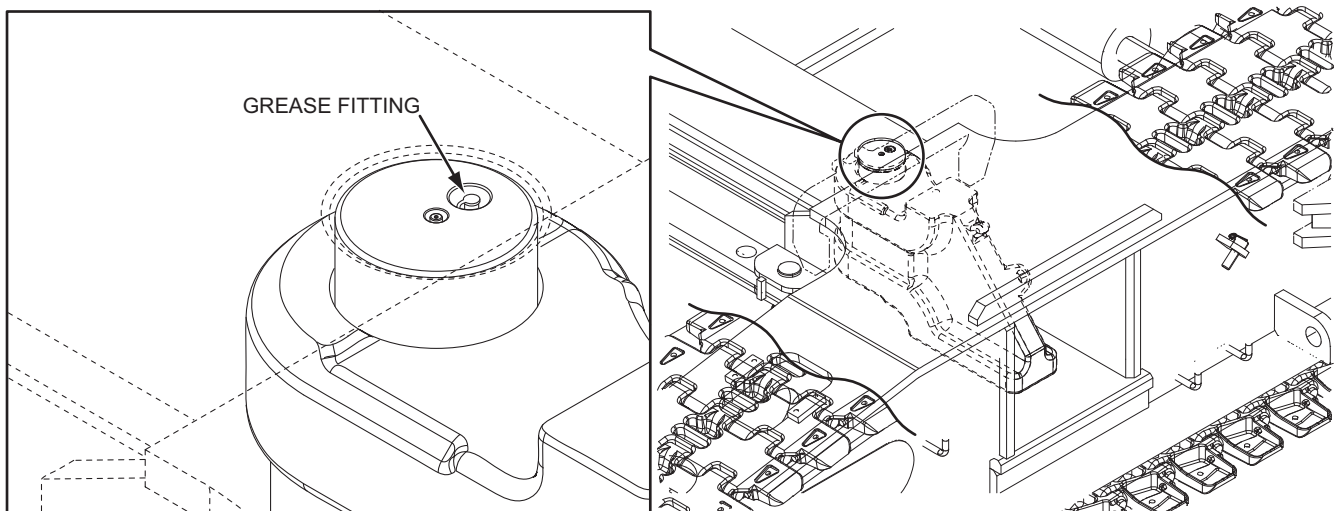


To avoid injury, do not apply grease to slewing ring gear directly by hand.

**24. AXLE EXTENSION**

Apply grease from the grease fitting provided in the rotating area of the axle extension.

Grease from the inside with the crawler extended.  
(4 locations)

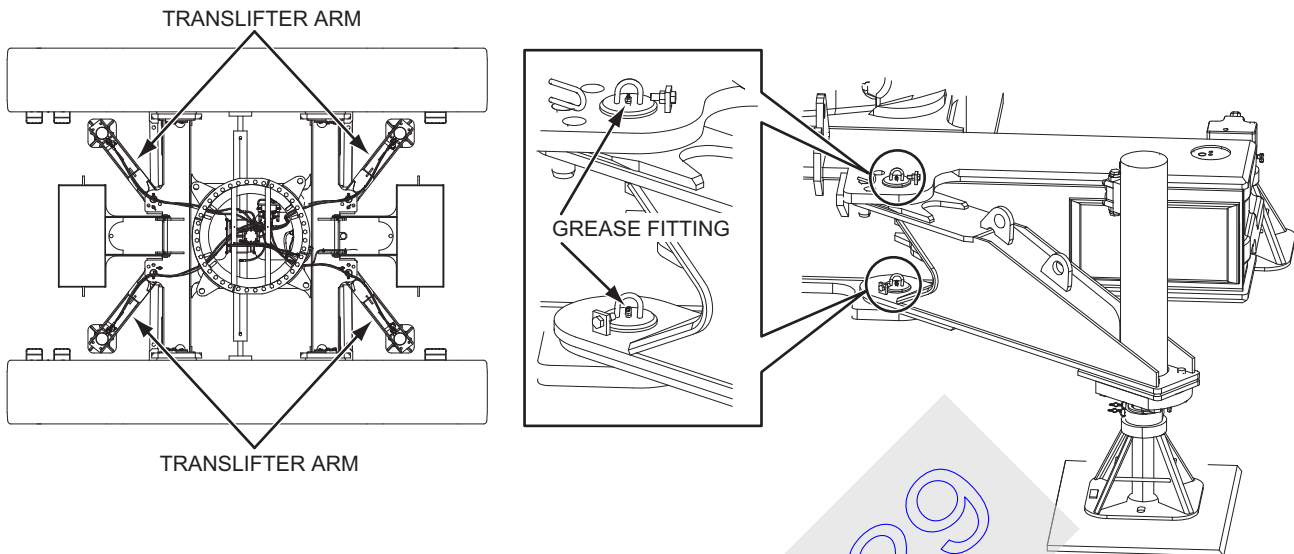


## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 25. TRANSLIFTER ARM MOUNTING PIN

Supply grease from the grease fitting provided on the rotating area of the translifter arm.

(4 locations on upper side, 4 locations on lower side, total 8 locations)

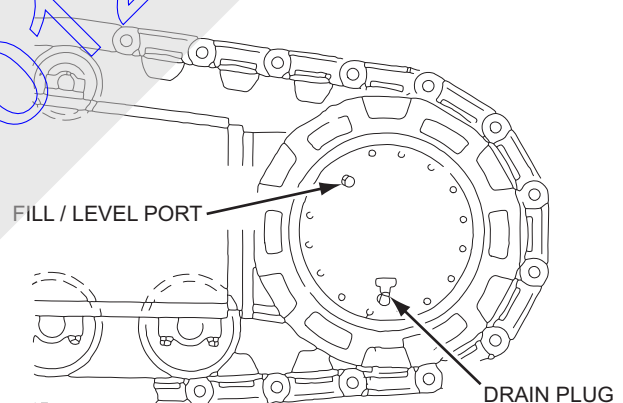


### 26. OIL CHANGE OF PROPEL REDUCTION UNIT

Prepare a container of approx. 30 ltr. (6.9 gal) of capacity.

With the level plug removed, remove the drain plug to drain the oil into the container.

Reinstall the drain plug, pour the specified oil through the fill/level port until the oil reaches the specified level.



#### **WARNING**

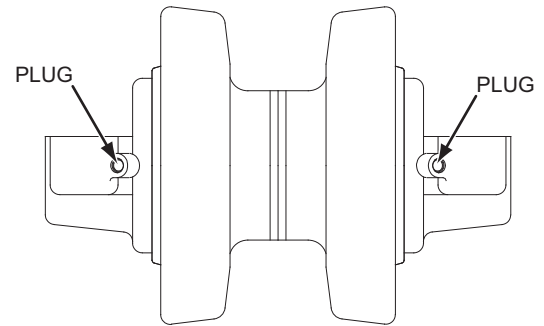
**Do not drain the oil when it is hot. The hot oil may spout out which could result in personal injury.**

**After the oil has cooled, drain the oil.**

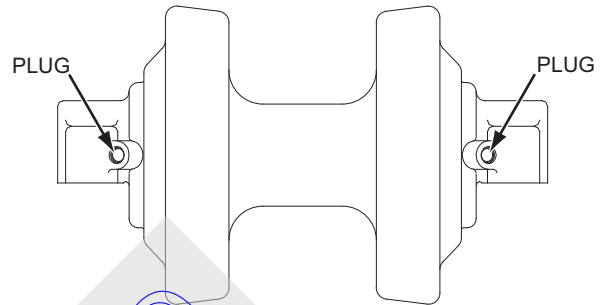
**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

**26. OIL CHANGE OF LOWER ROLLER**

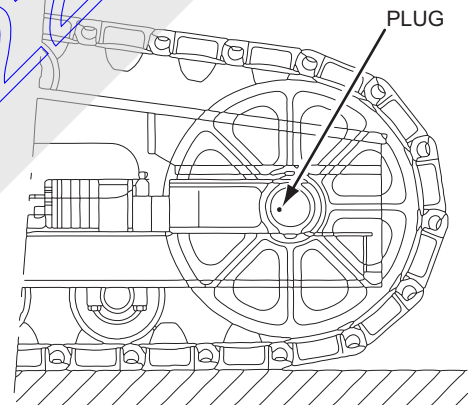
Remove both end plugs to drain the oil. Supply the specified oil of specified amount.  
To change oil, consult the local Manitowoc authorized dealer.

**27. OIL CHANGE OF UPPER ROLLER**

Remove both end plugs to drain the oil. Supply the specified oil of specified amount.  
To change oil, consult the local Manitowoc authorized dealer.

**28. OIL CHANGE OF IDLER WHEEL**

Remove the plug of the sliding block to drain the oil.  
Supply the specified oil of specified amount.  
To change oil, consult the local Manitowoc authorized dealer.



12001229

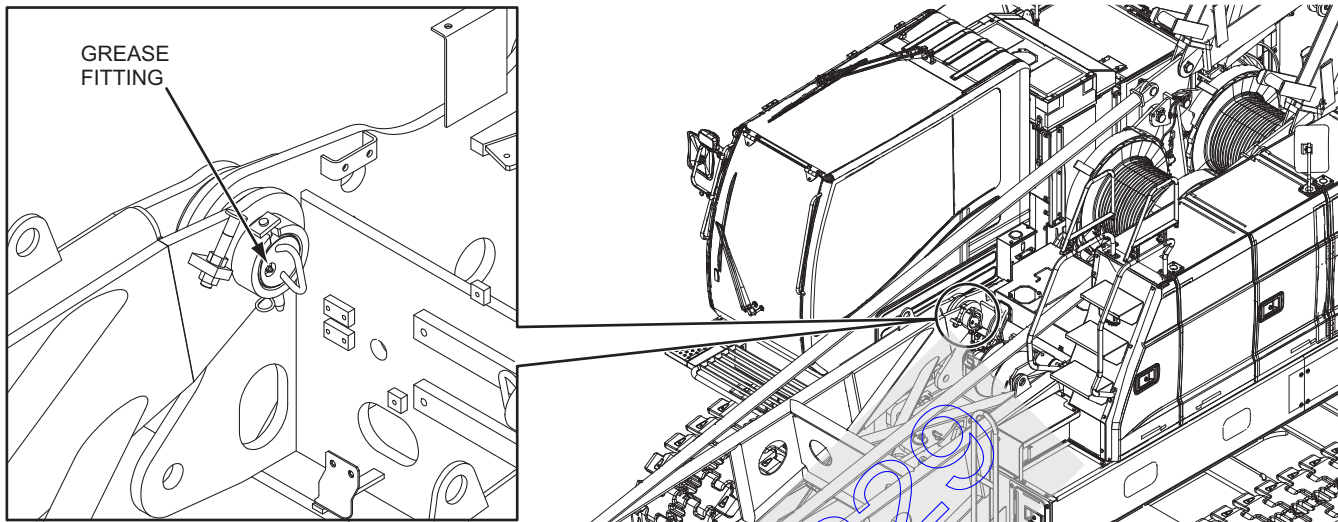
## 7. MAINTENANCE

### INSPECTION, LUBRICATION OF ATTACHMENT

(Refer to P.7-57)

#### 30. BOOM FOOT PIN

Grease through the grease fitting on the foot pin (left and right).

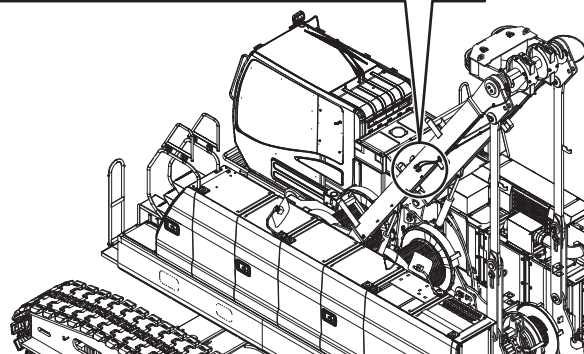
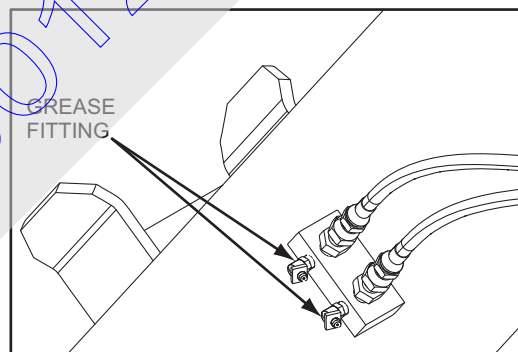


#### 31. GANTRY LINK

Grease through the grease fitting provided on the front member.

#### **CAUTION**

Before climbing on machine make certain that the guard and walk ways are clean and dry, and use safety belt in order to prevent falls due to slippery surface. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

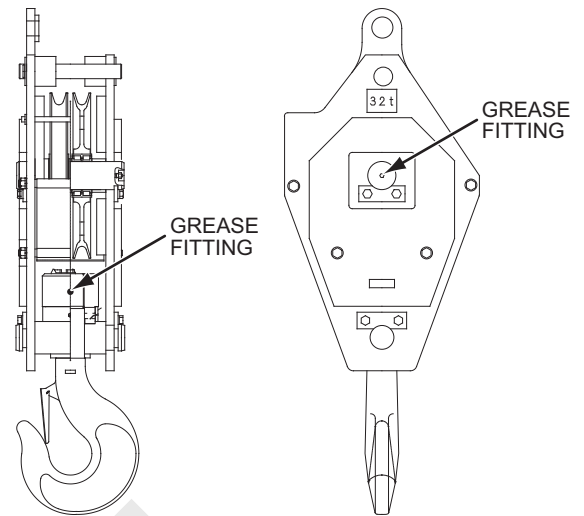


**32. HOOK SHEAVE**

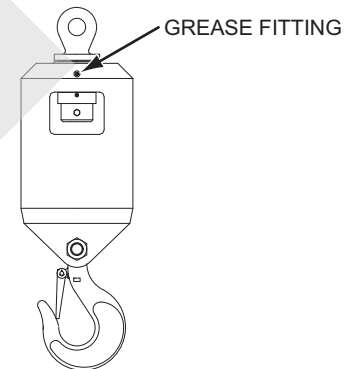
Grease from the grease fitting on the sheave pin.

**33. HOOK BEARING**

Grease from the grease fitting on the bearing cap.

**34. BALL HOOK BEARING**

Grease from the grease fitting provided on the bearing cap.



12001229

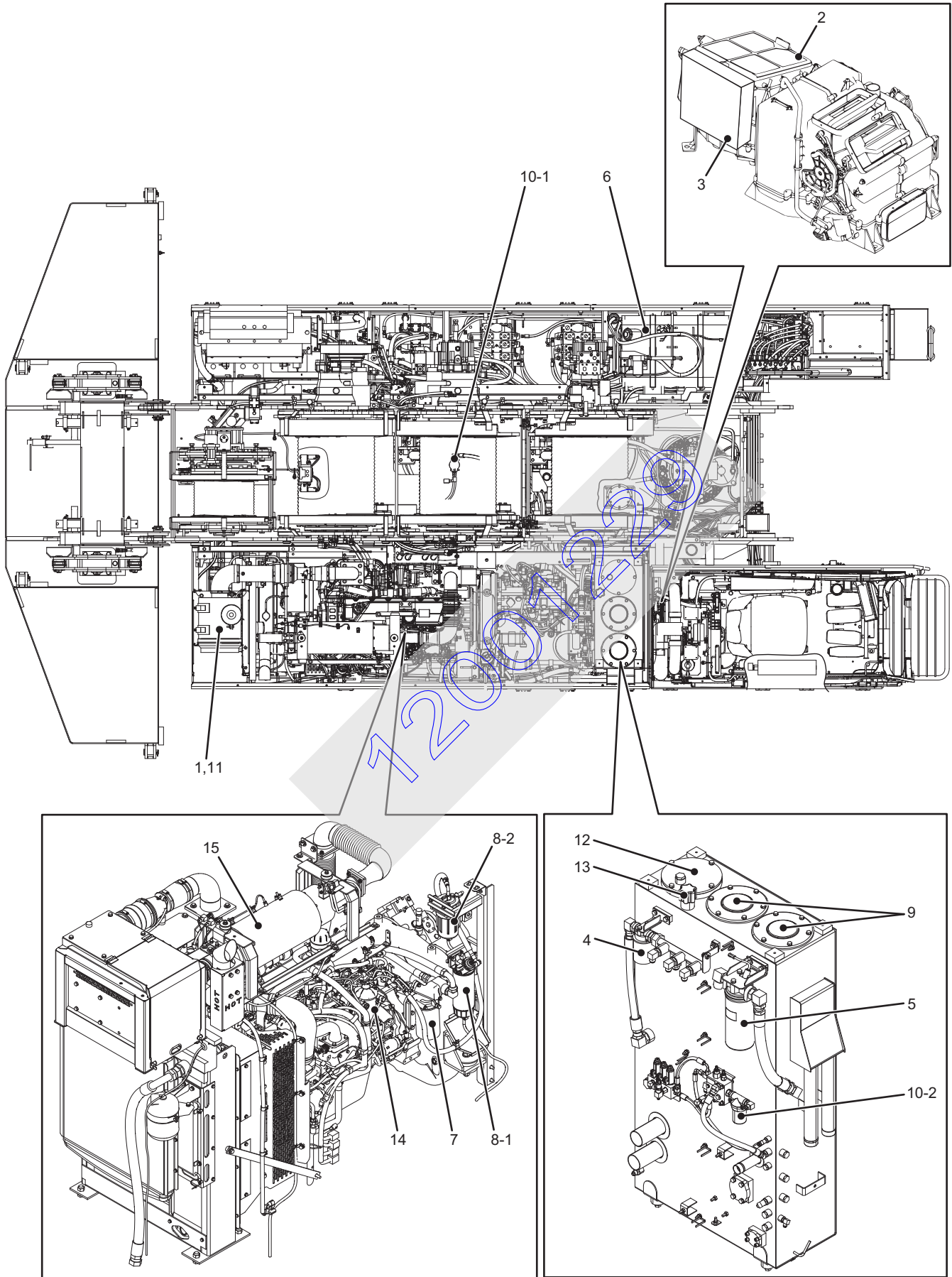
**(2) CHANGE OF HYDRAULIC OIL**

It is standard to replace hydraulic oil every 2000 hours of the hour meter, but if the oil is remarkably contaminated or deteriorated, replace the oil regardless of operating hours.

- (A) Prepare a container of approximately 4 gal. (15 ltr.)
- (B) Remove the cap of the filler port.
- (C) Loosen the drain plug and drain the hydraulic oil into the prepared container.
- (D) Replace the drain plug, fill the tank with the specified hydraulic oil through the filler port up to the specified level.
- (E) Reinstall the oil supply cap.
- (F) When changing hydraulic oil, change the filter also of the same time.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.4 CLEANING/WASHING/CHANGING FILTER ELEMENT AND STRAINER





Check interval	No.	Check, lubrication, change point clean	Required service	Part No.	Quantity	Reference page
Monthly or every 100 hours	1	Air element	Clean	NIPPON-DONALDSON	1	7-80
	2	Air conditioner filter (Internal air filter)	Clean	YT20M00004S050 SANDEN	1	7-80 to 7-81
	3	Air conditioner filter (Open air filter)	Clean	YN50V01006P1 SANDEN	1	7-80 to 7-81
Quarterly or every 250 hours	4	Drain filter (cartridge)	Replace		1	7-82
	5	Brake coolant line filter (cartridge)	Replace		1	7-82
	6	Fuel tank fill port strainer	Wash		1	7-82
	7	Engine oil element	Replace	HINO MOTORS	1	7-83
Half years or 500 hours	8-1	Fuel filter	Replace	HINO MOTORS	1	7-84 to 7-86
	8-2	Fuel pre-filter		(Element, O-ring, gasket)	1	7-87
Annually or every 1,000 hours	9	Return filter (in hyd. tank)	Replace	(Repair kit)	2	7-88 to 7-90
	10-1	Line filter	Wash •	Filter O-ring	1	7-91
	10-2		Replace	Filter O-ring	1	7-91
	11	Air element	Replace	NIPPON-DONALDSON	1	7-91
Every 2 years or 2,000 hours	12	Suction filter (in hyd. tank)	Replace	(Element)	1	7-92
	13	Fill port strainer (in hyd. tank)	Wash		1	7-92
	14	Fuel filter (On engine)	Replace	HINO MOTORS	1	7-93
Every 4,500 hours	15	Diesel particulate filter	Wash • Replace	HINO MOTORS	1	7-95

\* Replace item 4, 5, 7 at the initial 50 hours.

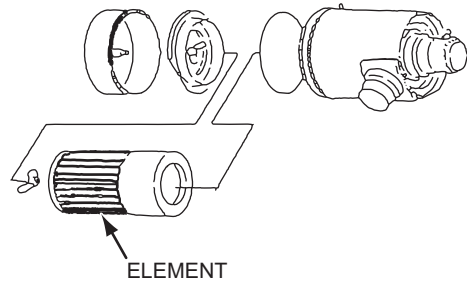
**Note**

The part number described in the operator manual is to be changed without prior notice.  
When placing an order, please confirm the part number with the parts manual or the engine handbook.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 1. CLEANING AIR ELEMENT

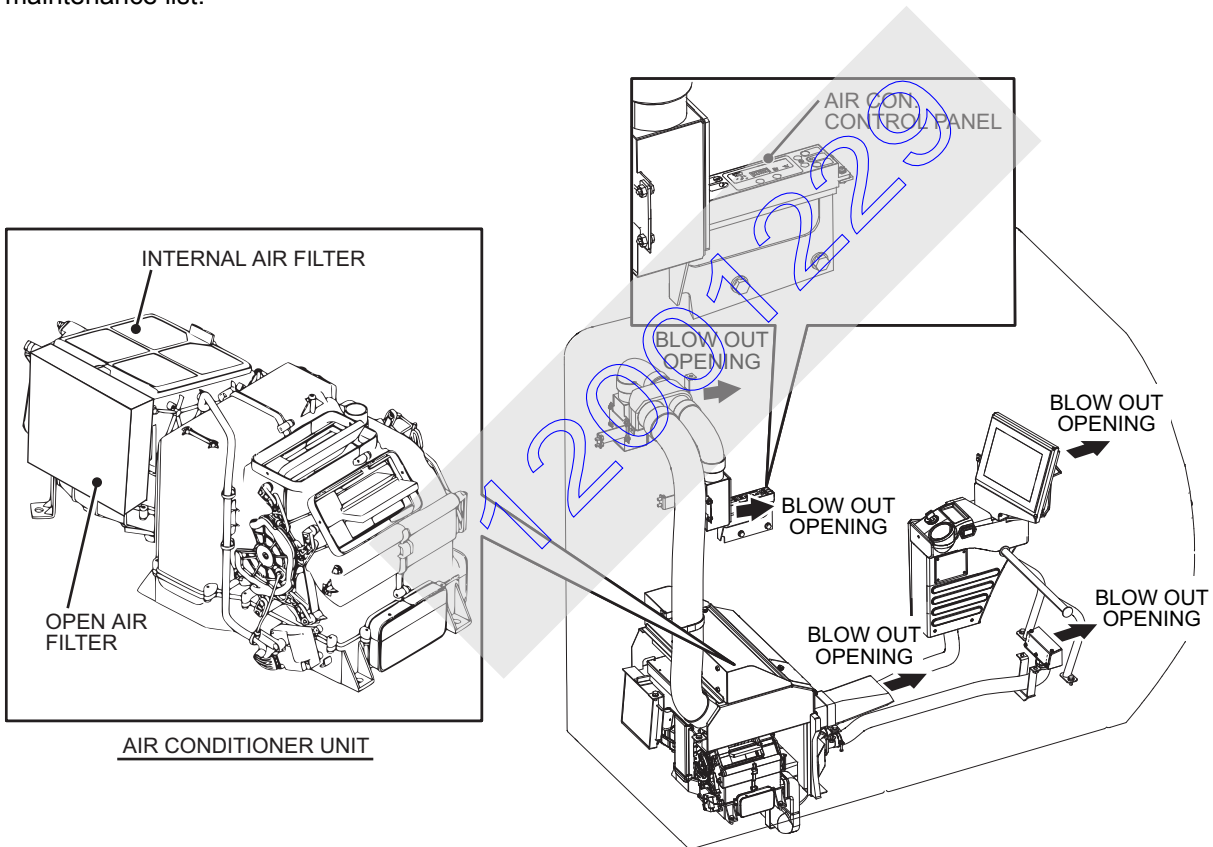
Remove the air element, and blow air from the inside to remove any dust.



### 2. CLEANING AIR CONDITIONER FILTER (INTERNAL AIR FILTER)

### 3. CLEANING AIR CONDITIONER FILTER (OPEN AIR FILTER)

The clogged air conditioner filter causes air volume to decrease and poor air conditioner performance. Clean the filter according to the check and maintenance list.



**Removal and installation****(1) Internal air filter****Removal:**

Remove the emergency cable cover. Then, pick the tab of the filter, and remove the filter upward.

**Installation:**

Install the filter by reversing the removal steps.

**(2) Open air filter****Removal:**

Remove the cover on the rear of the seat and take out the filter upward.

**Installation:**

Take the reverse way of the installation.

**Cleaning****(1) Cleaning of the internal air filter (once a month)**

- Remove the inspection window in rear of the operator seat.
- Draw out the filter upward.
- Remove any dirt including dusts from the filter with compressed air.

If the filter is excessively dirty or clogged, immerse it in lukewarm water with a neutral detergent dissolved, and wash it by moving it up, down, right. Then, rinse it with clean water, and let it dry completely.

**(2) Cleaning of the open air filter (once a month)**

- Remove the cover on the back of the operator seat.
- Draw out the filter.
- Remove any dirt including dusts from the filter with compressed air.

If the filter is excessively dirty or clogged, immerse it in the lukewarm water with a neutral detergent dissolved, and wash it by forcibly moving it back and forth in the solution for twenty to thirty seconds. Then, rinse it with clean water until detergent bubbles are almost washed away, and shake the filter two or three times to drain water off.

Then, blow compressed air (approx. 5 Pa) right down to the whole surface of the filter for approx. two minutes to dry it completely.

---

**Note**

It is recommended that the filters be replaced once a year in order to maintain the filters good performance. Carefully handle the filters not to make a hole, nor break them.

---

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 4. CHANGING DRAIN FILTER (CARTRIDGE)

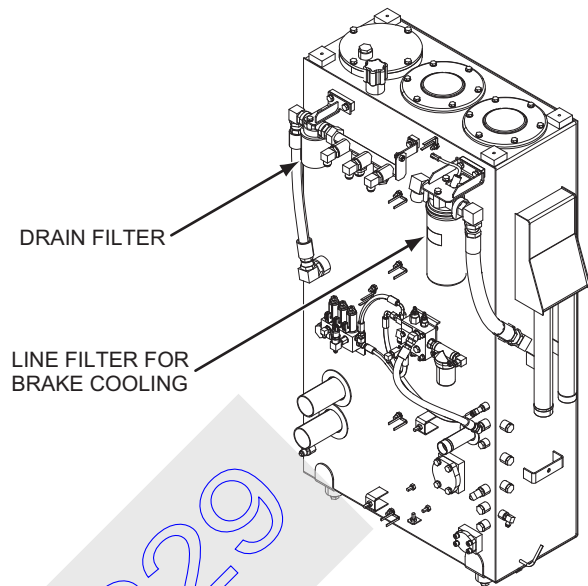
Loosen the plug of the filter cover to remove the remaining pressure in the tank.

Prepare an oil receptacle under the filter, and replace the cartridge with a new one.

### 5. CHANGE OF LINE FILTER FOR BRAKE COOLING LINE (CARTRIDGE)

Loosen the plug of the filter cover to remove the remaining pressure in the tank.

Prepare a oil receptacle under the filter, and replace the cartridge with a new one.

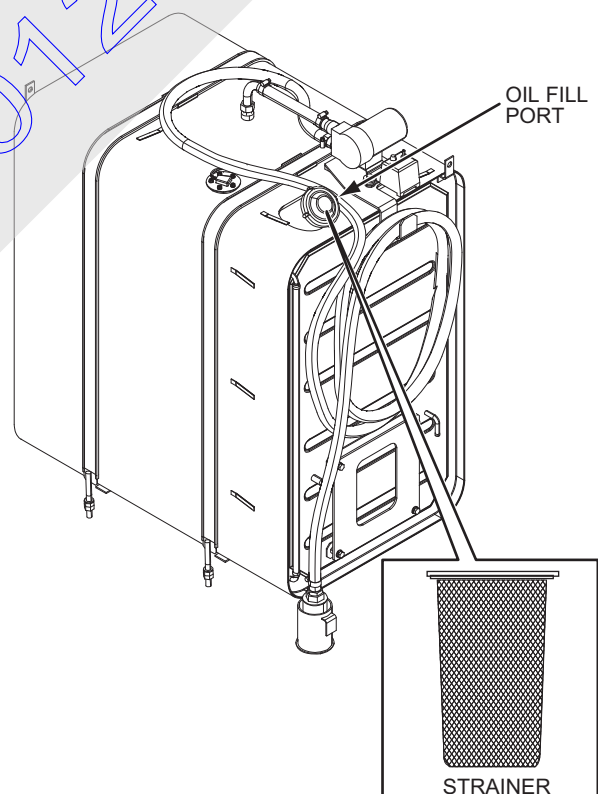


### 6. WASHING FUEL TANK FILL PORT STRAINER

Remove the cap, take out the strainer and sufficiently wash it with washing liquid.

#### **WARNING**

Keep fuel away from spark or flame.  
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.



**6. CHANGE OF ENGINE OIL ELEMENT**

- (1) Place the container to receive the oil under the filter and loosen the lower side drain plug in the filter case and drain the oil in the case.
- (2) Turn the element to left and remove it using the special oil filter wrench.

**WARNING**

**Do not open the drain plug while the engine oil is hot. Oil will be extremely hot and may cause burns.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

- (3) Remove the dirt or mud adhered to the seal face of the oil filter body.
- (4) Paste the engine oil on the gasket of the new element and rotate it lightly to right until it touches the body seal face.

**Note**

Ensure to use the new gasket supplied as element kit. When installing it, take extra care not to damage the gasket due to twisting. Do not reuse the element.

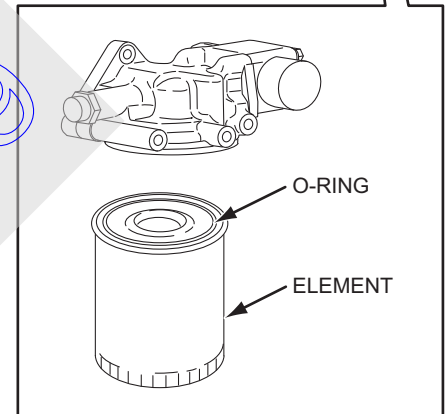
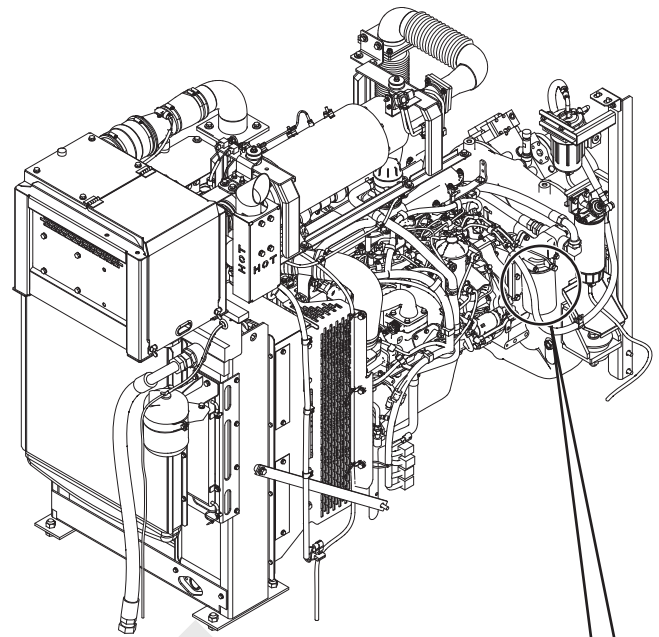
- (5) Under this condition, rotate the element for about 3/4 to 1 turn with the oil filter wrench supplied as special tool.
- (6) After the element is replaced, start the engine and make the element filled with oil and then check the engine oil level.

**WARNING**

**After the element is replaced, start the engine and make sure that this is no oil leak around the filter.**

**Oil leak may result in fire.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious accident.**



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 8-1. REPLACING FUEL FILTER

#### (1) Removing fuel filter element

(A) Prepare the container to receive the drained fuel under the drain valve (b).

(B) Loosen the drain valve (b) and air bleed plug (a) and drain the fuel accumulated in the fuel tank.

(C) Remove the element (c) from the filter body together with a ball (d).

Filter wrench

(Accessory of machine tool: Refer to P.7-121)

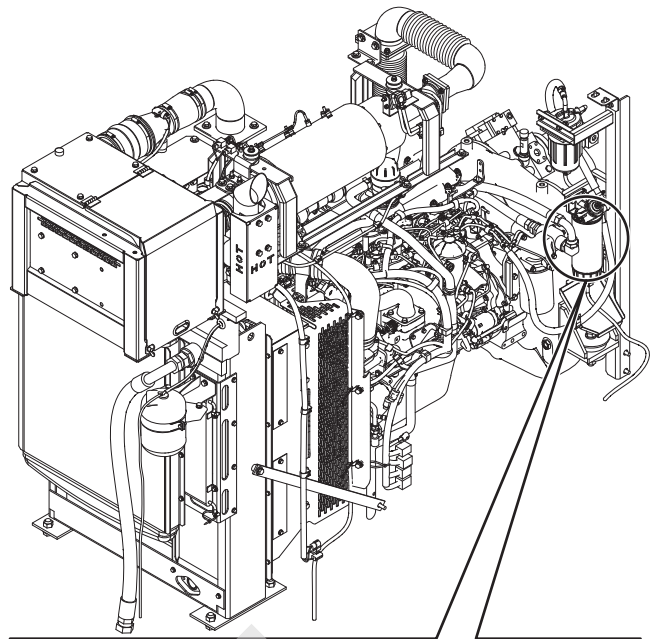
(D) Remove the element (c) from the ball (d) by the filter wrench or the pipe wrench.

Filter wrench

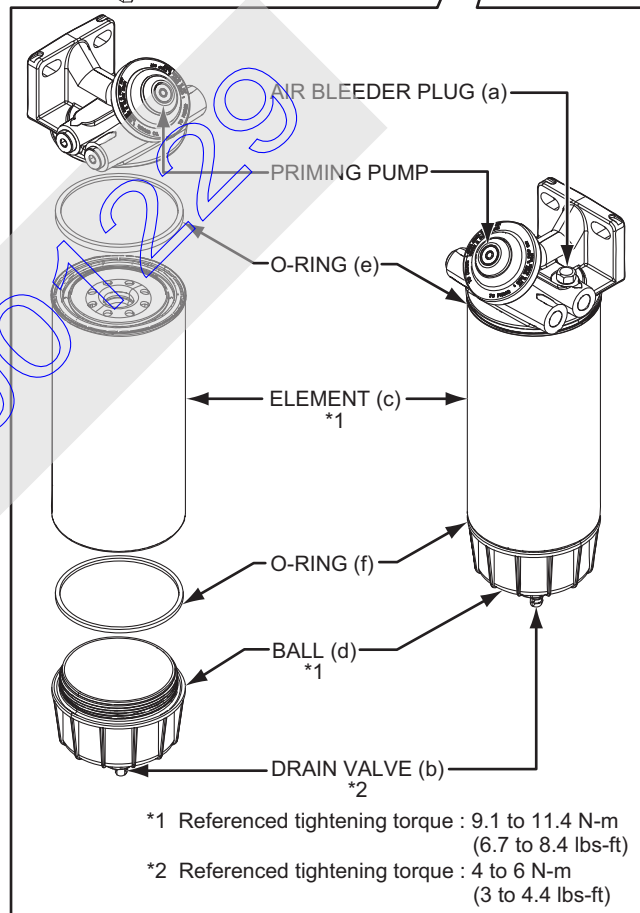
Pipe wrench

(Accessory of machine tool: Refer to P.7-121)

The ball to be reused, therefore, it is not damaged or throw it away.



**The drained water contains the fuel. Dispose them by following the rule specified by regional authority office.**



(2) Installing the fuel filter element

(A) Remove the dirt or foreign material adhered to the installation surface.

(B) Rotate the new element (c) for about 1/2 turns after the element touches the O-ring (f) of the filter body to install on the filter body.

- Paste the fuel on the O-ring (f) surface.
- Hand tighten. Do not use tool.

---

**CAUTION**

Do not re-use the element (c).

Use the new element supplied as element kit. Take extra care not to damage the O-ring (f) by twisting. Make sure that the O-ring (f) touches firmly on the seal face.

---

(C) After the O-ring (f) of the ball (d) contacts the element (c), rotate it further for about 1/2 to 3/4 turns to install the element (c).

(Referenced tightening torque: 9 to 11.3 N-m  
[6.6 to 8.3 lbs-ft])

- \* Do not use tools. Hand-tighten.

(D) Install further 1/2 turn after contacting the O-ring (e) to the priming pump housing.

(Referenced tightening torque: 9 to 11.3 N-m  
[6.6 to 8.3 lbs-ft])

- \* Do not use tools. Hand-tighten.

(E) Tighten the drain valve (b).

(Referenced tightening torque: 4 to 6 N-m  
[3 to 4.4 lbs-ft])

(F) Start the priming pump and bleed air in the system.

---

**CAUTION**

Make sure that the air bleed plug (a) is loose.

---

(G) Install the air bleed plug (a).

---

**CAUTION**

After work, wipe off the leaked fuel and start the engine and make sure that there is no more oil leak.

---

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### (3) DRAIN WATER FROM FUEL FILTER

If the condition with the water mixed in the fuel filter is left for a long time, it may result in the premature damage and deterioration of the engine body.

Thoroughly perform checking before starting daily works and drain the water if mixed in.

The condition can be visually checked through the ball section under the filter.

<Water drainage instruction>

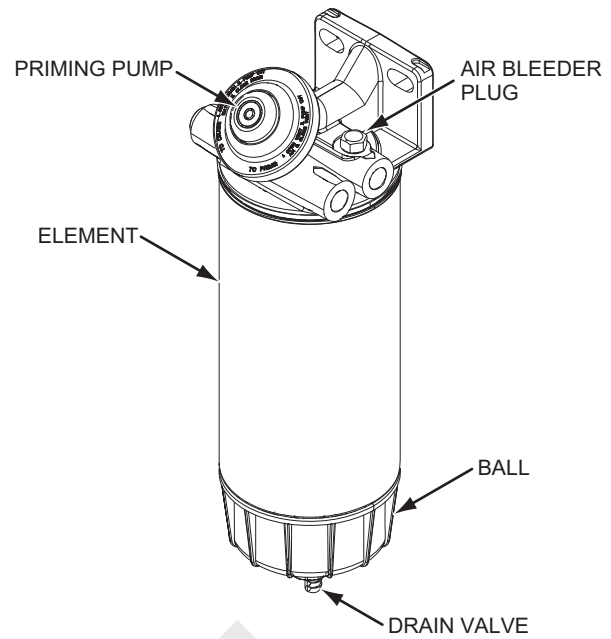
- (A) Place a container to receive the drained water under the drain valve.
- (B) Loosen the air bleeder plug and the drain valve of the fuel filter to drain water gathered at the inside of the fuel filter.

---

#### **CAUTION**

Drained water contains fuel, therefore, follow the disposing regulation specified in each region, when disposing of it.

- (C) Tighten the water drain valve and air bleeder plug.
- (D) Bleed air from the system.



12001229

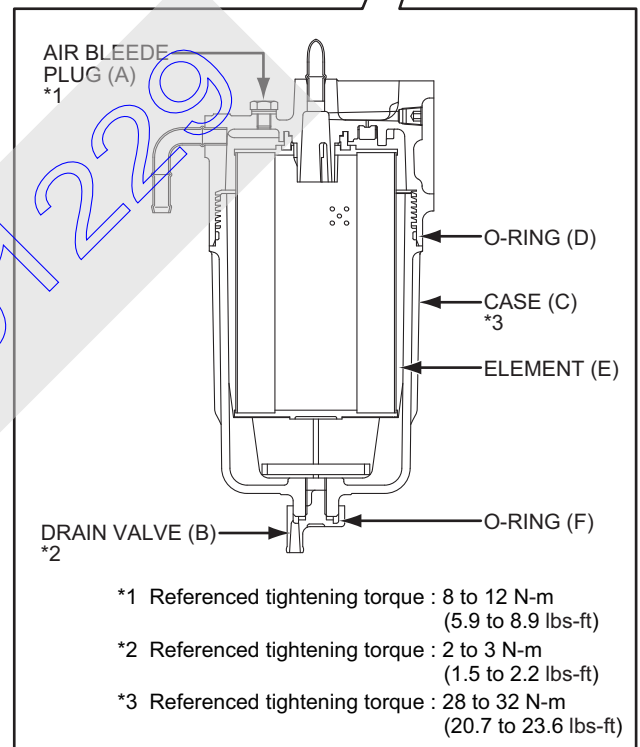
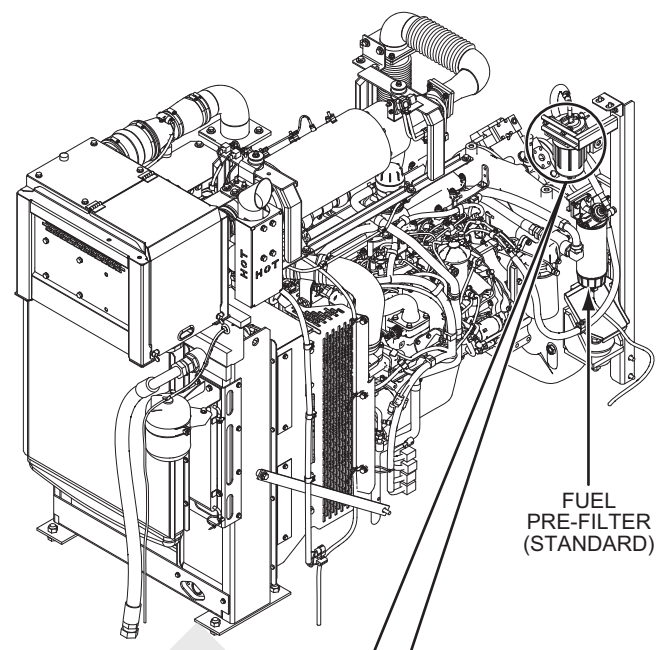


**8-2. CHANGING OF FUEL PRE-FILTER**

- (1) Prepare a container for drain oil.
- (2) Loosen air bleeder plug (A) and drain valve (B) and drain fuel from fuel pre-filter.
- (3) Fit the special filter wrench to the lower side of stiffening ribs and remove case (C).  
Filter wrench  
(Accessory of machine tool: Refer to P.7-120)
- (4) Remove drain valve (B).
- (5) Remove dirt and foreign matter from attaching surface.
- (6) Apply light oil to new O-rings (D), (F) thinly, set it to case (C) and replace it with new element (E).
- (7) Fit case (C) to filter head by hand securely and tighten it with filter wrench.  
(Referenced tightening torque: 28 to 32 N-m [20.7 to 23.6 lbs-ft])
- (8) Tighten air bleeder plug (A) (Referenced tightening torque: 8 to 12 N-m [5.9 to 8.9 lbs-ft]) and drain valve (B) (Referenced tightening torque: 2 to 3 N-m [1.5 to 2.2 lbs-ft]).
- (9) Bleed air according to the air bleeding procedure for fuel system.

**CAUTION**

Do not reuse the element.  
Replace old O-rings.  
Be careful not to damage the O-rings by twisting.  
Check to see if the O-rings firmly contact to the sealing surface.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 8. CHANGE OF HYDRAULIC OIL TANK RETURN FILTERS

#### **CAUTION**

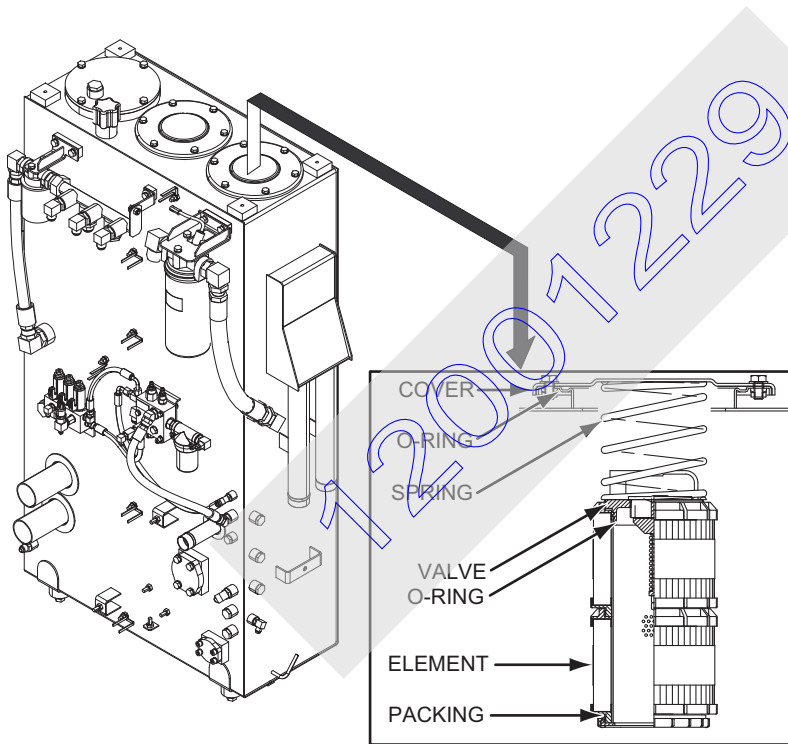
Do not change hydraulic oil filter when hydraulic oil is hot.

After the oil has cooled and the pressure has been released, change the filter.

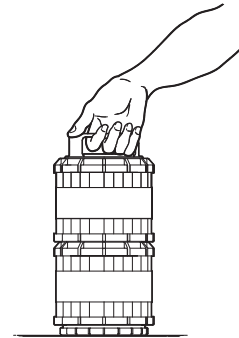
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

#### PROCEDURE OF REPLACING THE RETURN FILTER

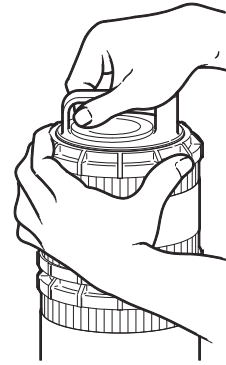
Remove the filter cover and replace the element and O-ring with new ones.



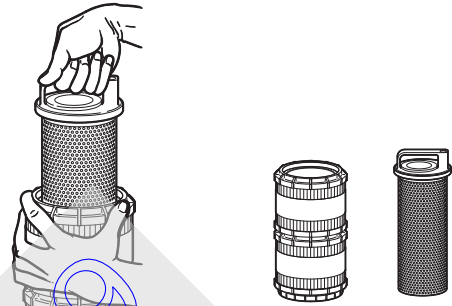
- (1) Remove the filter assembly and place it on the flat surface.



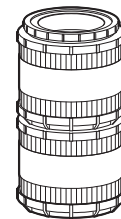
(2) Hold the top mold plate and loosen the grip.



(3) Pull out the grip assembly.

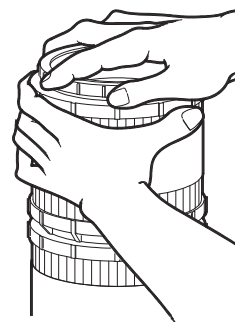


(4) Turn over the filter.



(5) Hold the plate on which the end plate is attached.

(6) Loosen the end plate and replace the packing material with new one.



## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

(7) This is to complete the disassembly.  
To assemble, take the reverse way.

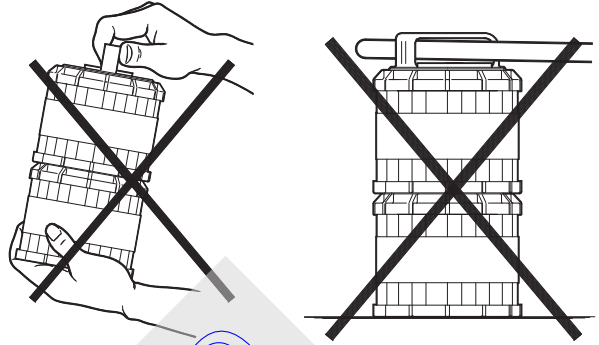
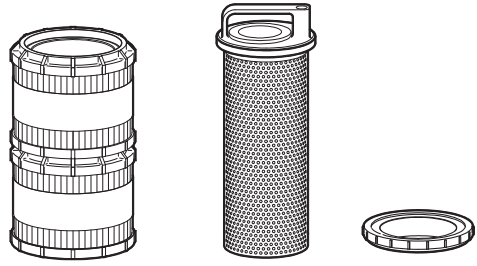
---

**CAUTION**

Do not try to pull out the grip assembly by holding lower portion.

This may make disassembly harder since the element may be twisted and excessive force may be applied.

---



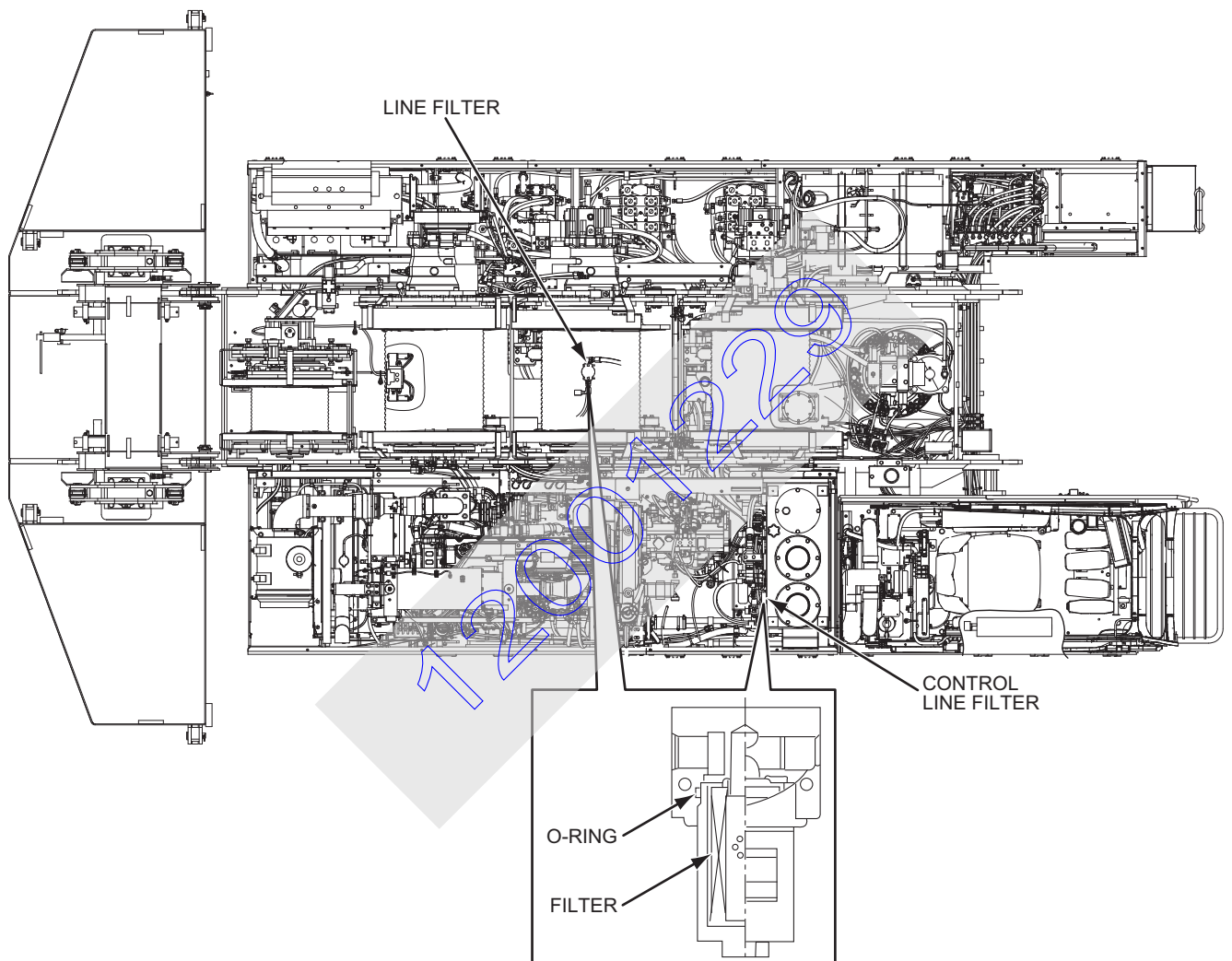
12001229

**10. WASHING OF LINE FILTER**

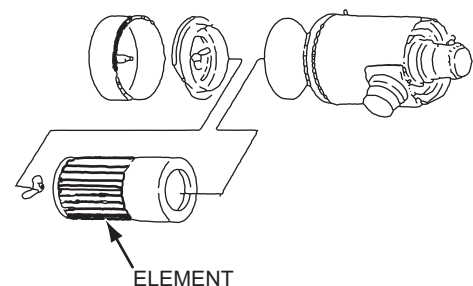
Remove the case, take out the filter and sufficiently wash it.  
Replace the O-ring with a new one.



**After stopping engine, wait for five minutes to release pressure.**

**11. CHANGING OF AIR ELEMENT**

If the element is exceptionally dirty and the element is deformed, replace the element with a new one early.

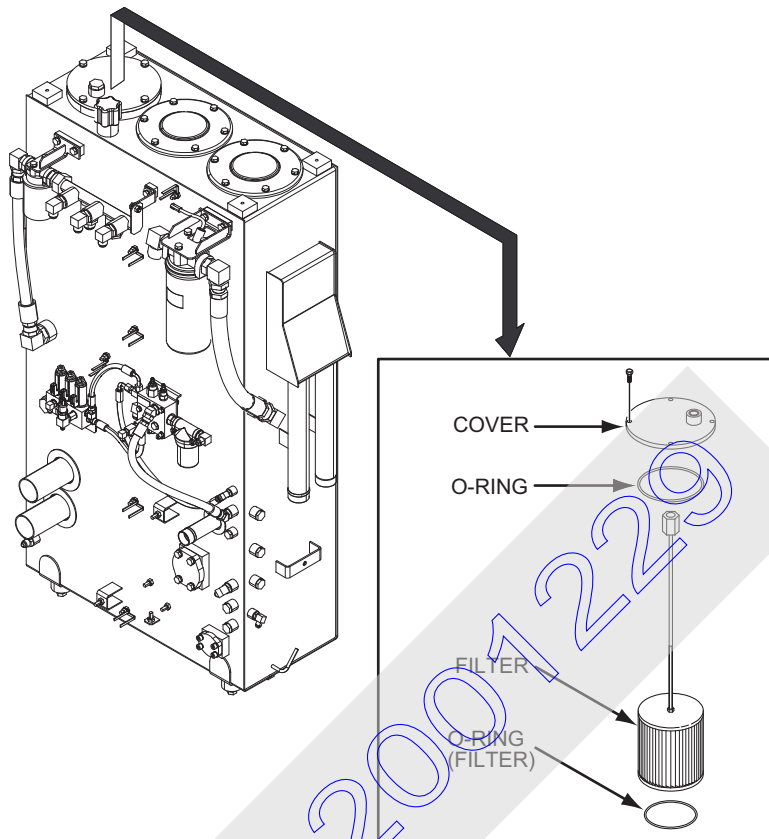


## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 12. CHANGING HYDRAULIC OIL SUCTION FILTER

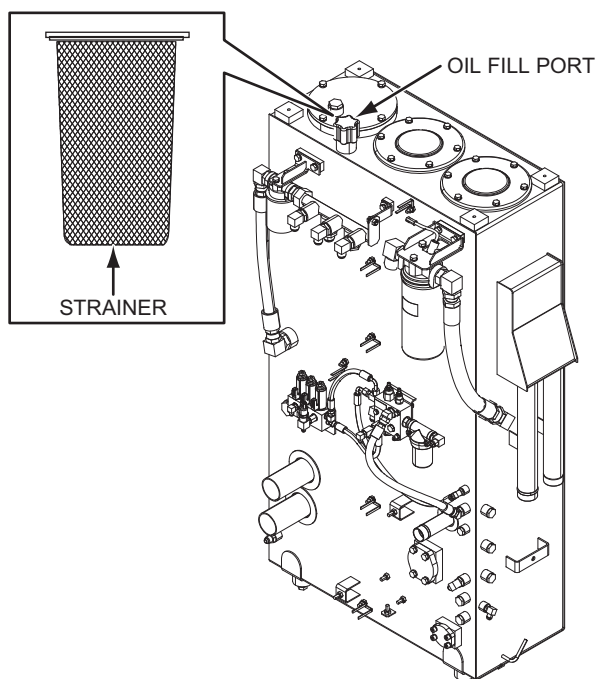
Remove the filter cover and replace the element and O-ring.

Perform this change when changing the hydraulic oil.



### 13. WASHING OIL FILL PORT STRAINER

Remove the air breather cap, take out the fill port strainer, and sufficiently wash it with washing liquid.



**14. REPLACING FUEL FILTER (ON ENGINE)**

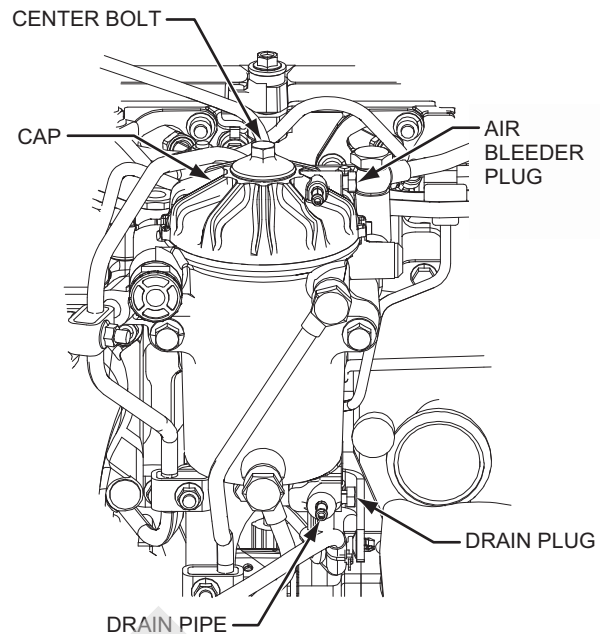
The fuel filter is an element type. Its purpose is to remove moisture and fine dirt particles from the fuel, the element is made from resin and paper.

**Draining of fuel**

- \* Clean the area around the fuel filter before the start of work.  
Otherwise dirt may enter.

- (1) Provide a waste oil container under the fuel filter.
- (2) After loosening the drain plug, loosen the air bleeder plug and drain the fuel from the drain pipe.

- \* At this time, drain all fuel from the filter. When the element is replaced without draining all of the fuel, unfiltered fuel may remain inside the filter and later flow to the engine.

**⚠ WARNING**

- For safety and to keep the ground clean, always collect the fuel in a container.
- Carefully wipe off any fuel splashed onto engine parts.  
Otherwise it may cause a fire.
- Keep burning cigarettes etc. away during work.  
Otherwise there is the danger of parts catching fire.

- (3) Confirm that no more fuel flows from the drain pipe and then tighten the drain plug.

Tightening torque

Drain plug	4.9 to 8.9 N-m (3.6 to 6.6 lbs-ft)
------------	------------------------------------

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### Removing the fuel filter element

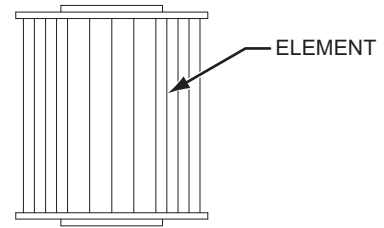
Loosen the center bolt, remove the cap, and then remove the element.

### Installing the fuel filter element

- (1) After replacing the element by a new one, install the cap and tighten the center bolt and the air bleeder plug.

Tightening torque

Center bolt	24.5 to 34.3 N-m (18.1 to 25.3 lbs-ft)
Air bleeder plug	4.9 to 8.9 N-m (3.6 to 6.6 lbs-ft)



- \* Replace the gasket by the new gasket included in the element kit.

- (2) After installation, bleed the air from the fuel system.



**After replacing the element, start the engine, make a test run, and confirm that there are no fuel leaks around the filter.**

**Leaking fuel may cause a fire.**

---

- \* Refer to P.7-84 for bleeding air from the fuel system.

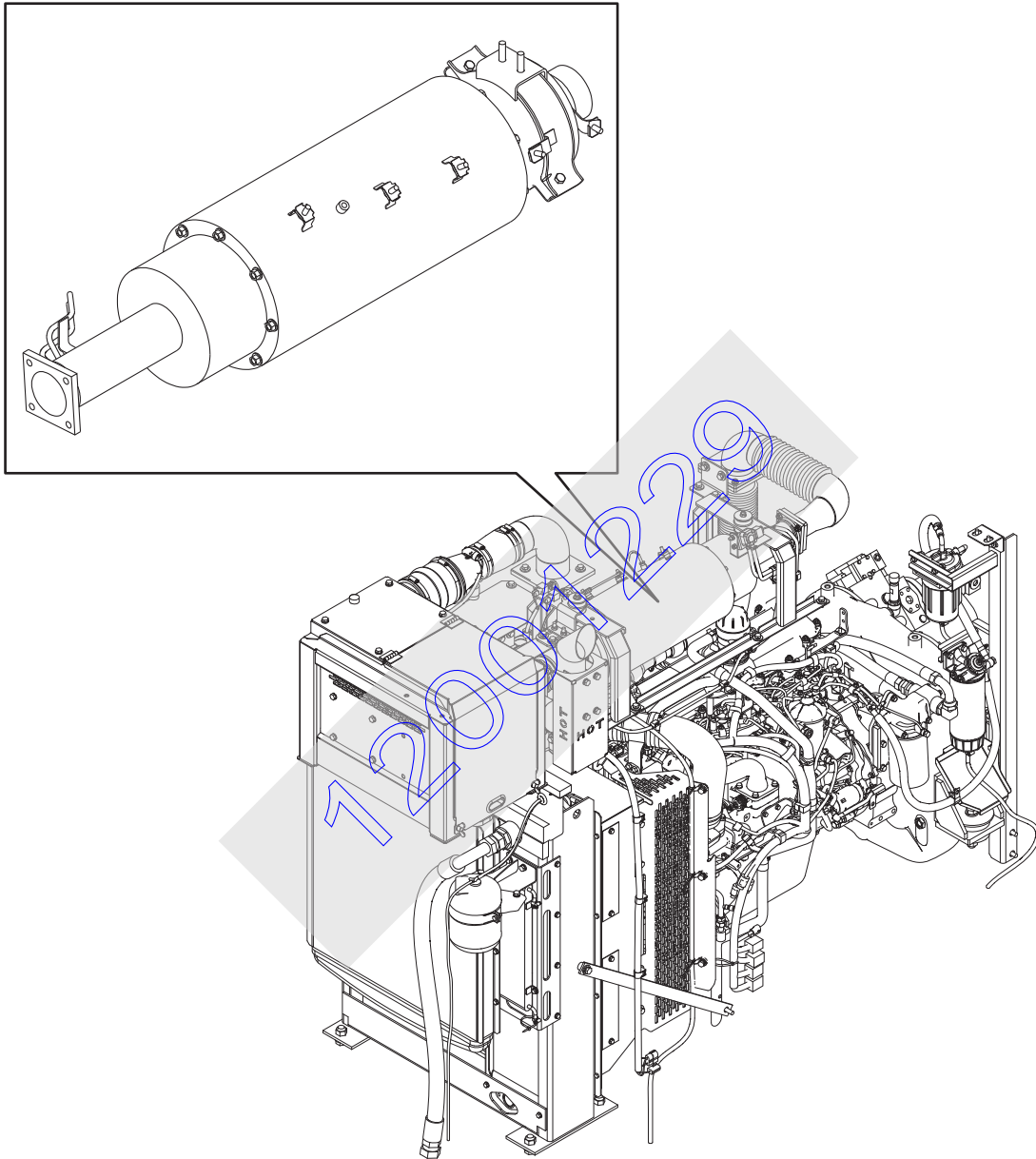
120001229



**15. Washing or replacing diesel particulate filter.**

It is necessary to wash or replace the diesel particulate filter under the specified inspection interval.

Contact the nearest Manitowoc service shop to carry out washing or replacement.



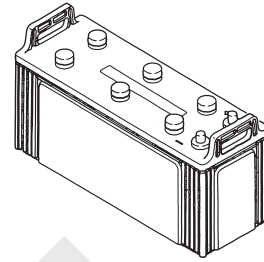
## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.5 BATTERY INSPECTION

Check interval	No.	Check item	Part No.
Monthly or every 100 hours	1	Check of battery electrolyte level.	
As required	2	Check of charge condition.	Battery

#### 1. CHECKING BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL

If the battery electrolyte level is up to 10 mm (3/8 inch) above the plates, it is normal. If insufficient, add distilled water.

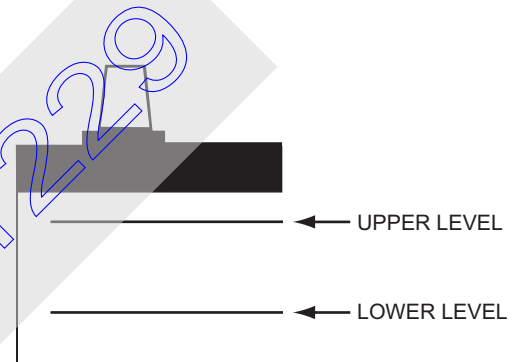


(1) Checking the battery electrolyte level from the side level line:

Clean around the level lines with a wet cloth, and make sure that the electrolyte level is between the upper level and the lower level.

When the electrolyte level is lower than the level halfway between the upper level and the lower level, add battery electrolyte.

After replenishment, securely tighten the plug.



#### **⚠ DANGER**

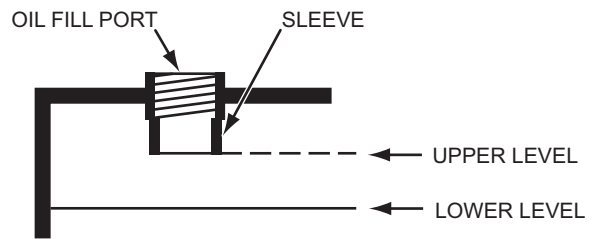
**NEVER** clean the battery with a dry cloth.

**Otherwise, static electricity occurs, leading to combustion and explosion.**

**Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

(2) When you cannot check the battery electrolyte level from the side level line, or no level lines are provided on the side of the battery:

Detach the plug at the top of the battery, and check the battery electrolyte level from the filling port. If the electrolyte level is lower than the sleeve, add battery electrolyte to the bottom of the sleeve.



**WARNING**

- Keep battery away from flame or spark.
- Never smoke cigarettes while checking electrolyte level. This could cause the battery electrolyte to ignite and cause property damage, injury to personnel or loss of life.



when the electrolyte level reaches the bottom of the sleeve, the electrolyte surface is swelled by surface tension, and the pole plates seen to be warp.

Sufficiently replenished



When the electrolyte level does not reach the bottom of the sleeve, the pole plates seen to be straight.

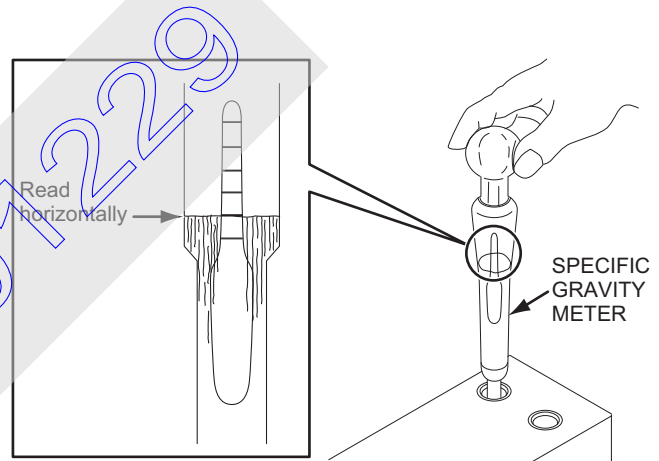
Insufficiently replenished

**2. CHECKING CHARGE CONDITION**

The charge condition is judged by measuring the specific gravity of the battery electrolyte.

The normal specific gravity is 1.25 to 1.27 at 20° C (68° F) of electrolyte temperature.

If the specific gravity is lower than 1.25, charge the battery. If the battery is not used for a long time, remove the battery from the machine and store it in a cold and dark place.



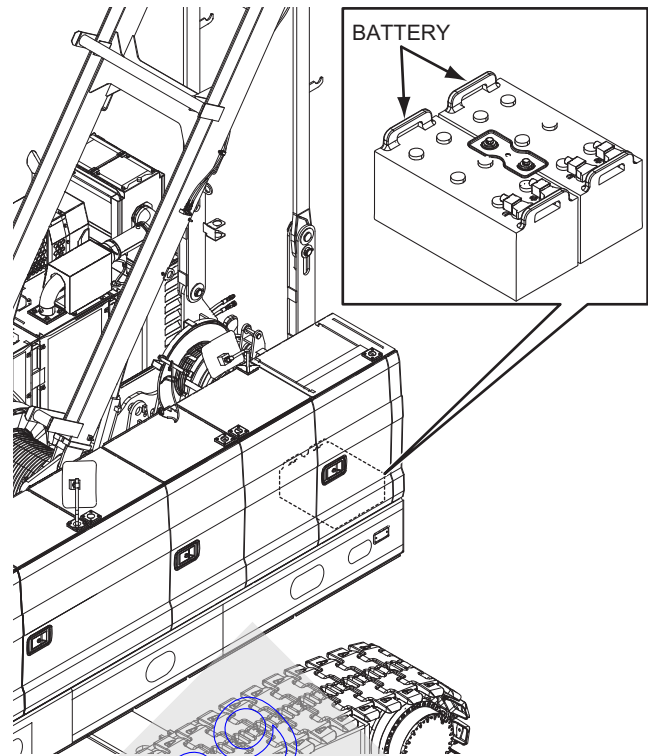
**WARNING**

Do not short across the battery terminals to check charging condition. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 3. CHANGING BATTERY

- (1) Place the machinery on the horizontal place and stop the engine.
- (2) When changing to new battery, make sure to change two batteries as one set.
- (3) When removing the battery cable, make sure to remove the earth side cable {-} side terminal} first.
- (4) After installed, put the red and black battery terminal covers.



### 4. USING BOOSTER CABLES

#### **CAUTION**

Battery generates flammable hydrogen gas.  
Do not use fire or spark near the battery.  
Do not use or charge the battery when the battery fluid level is lower than limit level.  
This may cause battery explosion.  
Place the machine and machine on dry soil or concrete.  
Placing on the steel plate makes machine grounded condition and may cause unexpected spark.  
When the booster cables are connected, do not connect (+) terminal and (-) terminal.  
This cause short circuit and is dangerous.

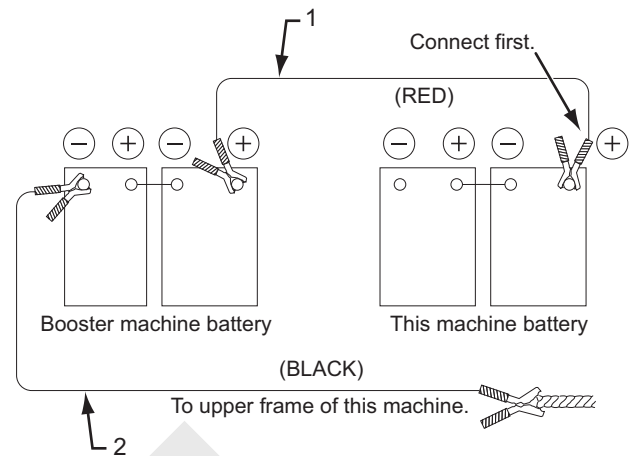
#### **Note**

This machine has DC24 V system.  
Ensure to use DC24 V machine with large capacity enough to start as booster machine.

When the battery is discharged and booster machine battery is to be connected with the booster cables to start the engine, observe the following procedures.

### (1) Connecting the booster cables

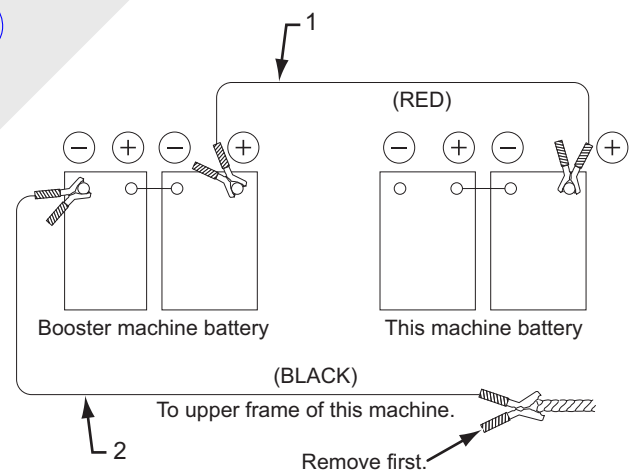
- (A) Stop the booster machine engine.
- (B) Connect one end of the booster cable (1) (red) to the battery (+) terminal of this machine and the other end to the battery terminal (+) of the booster machine.
- (C) Connect one end of the other booster cable (2) (black) to the battery (-) terminal of the booster machine and the other end to the upper frame of this machine. Since at the last connection, sparking will occur, connect it separating from the battery as much as possible.
- (D) Make sure for connection and then start the booster machine engine.
- (E) Start this machine engine.
- (F) After the engine is started, remove the booster cable (2) and (1) in this order in the following procedure which is reverse way to the connection.



BOOSTER CABLE CONNECTION

### (2) Removing the booster cable

- (A) Remove the booster cable (2) (black) which is connected to the upper frame of this machine.
- (B) Remove the booster cable (2) (black) which is connected to the (-) terminal of the booster machine.
- (C) Remove the booster cable (1) (red) which is connected to (+) terminal of the booster machine.
- (D) Remove the booster cable (1) (red) which is connected to (+) terminal of this machine.
- (E) Put the red and black battery terminal covers as the last step.

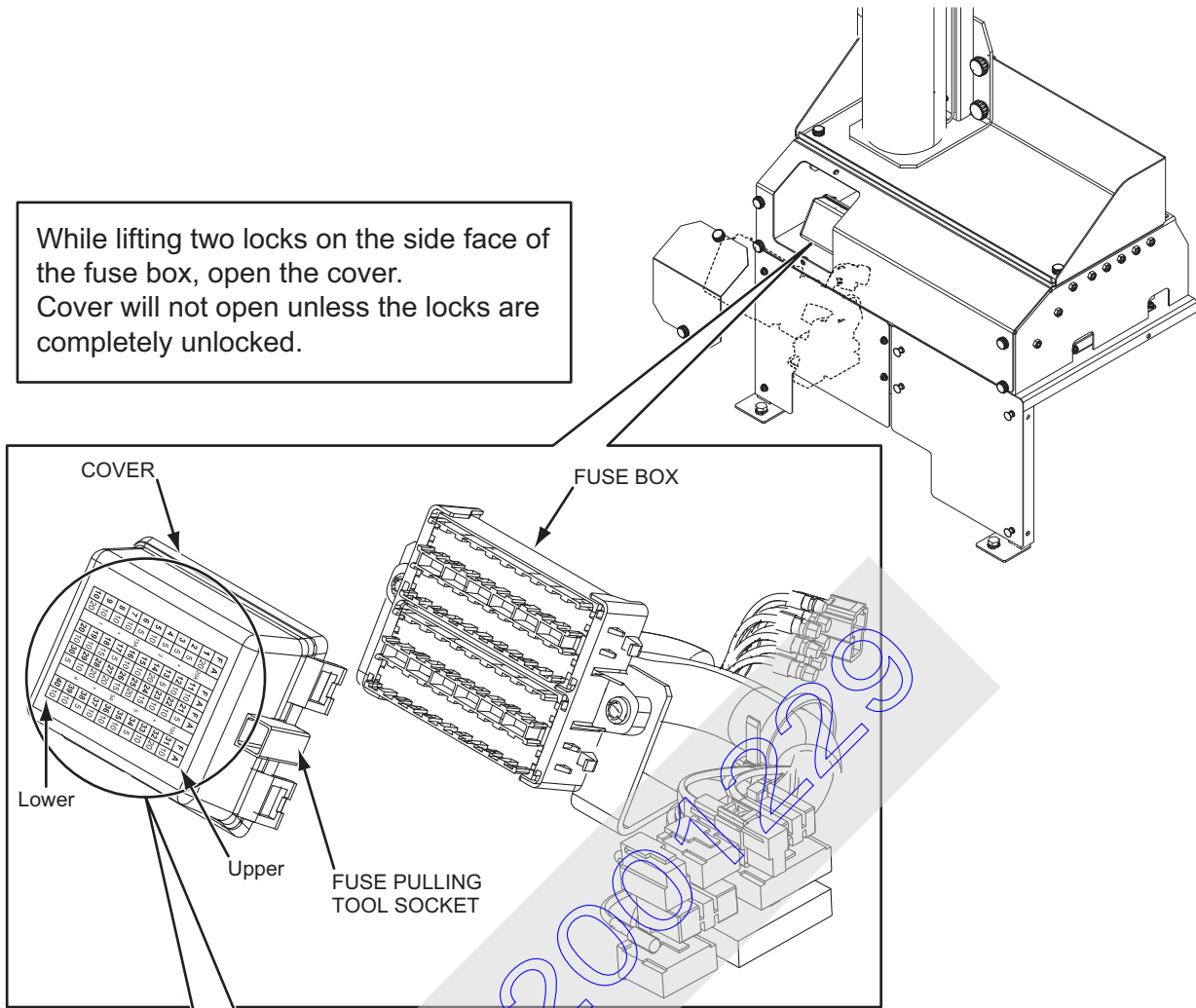


BOOSTER CABLE REMOVAL

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.6 LOCATION AND USE OF FUSE

While lifting two locks on the side face of the fuse box, open the cover. Cover will not open unless the locks are completely unlocked.



Fuse No.								Upper	
F	A	F	A	F	A	F	A	F	A
1	20	20A	11	10	21	5	10A	31	10
2	5	x	12	10	22	10	x	32	20
3	5		13	5	23	10		33	10
4	5	2	14	20	24	15	5	34	5
5	10		15	10	25	20		35	10
6	5	15A	16	10	26	15	5A	36	10
7	10	x	17	5	27	20	x	37	10
8	10		18	15	28	20		38	5
9	10	1	19	10	29	10	4	39	10
10	20		20	10	30	5		40	10

Lower

Fuse capacity (A) → Spare fuse → Spare fuse

Classification of fuse use					
Fuse No.	Capacity	Kind	Line No.	Use	Location
F1	20A	Auto motive mini fuse	1A - 11	Main power supply • Head light	Fuse box
F2	5A		4 - 12	Sub battery voltage monitor	
F3	5A		1B - 13	IT controller	
F4	5A		1B - 14	Back-up (M/L, MC1, MC2, Radio)	
F5	10A		2F - 15	Redundancy circuit	
F6	5A		2F - 16	Release circuit	
F7	10A		2F - 17	Control power (M/L)	
F8	10A		2F - 18	Output power (M/L)	
F9	10A		2F - 19	Control power (MC1)	
F10	20A		2F - 20	Output power (MC1)	
F11	10A		2F - 21	Auto-stop	
F12	10A		2F - 22	Engine condition	
F13	5A		52 - 23	Radio, One-way call	
F14	20A		2G - 24	Wiper	
F15	10A		2G - 25	Function lock	
F16	10A		2G - 26	Remo-con	
F17	5A		2G - 27	Monitor	
F18	15A		2E - 28	Air conditioner	
F19	10A		2E - 29	Air conditioner 2	
F20	10A		2E - 30	Furn motor	
F21	5A		51 - 31	Generation detect	
F22	10A		471 - 32	PCV1 (P11C engine)	
F23	10A		471 - 33	PCV2 (P11C engine)	
F24	15A		2J - 34	ECU (+BF)	
F25	20A		2J - 35	ECU (+B:J08E)	
F26	15A		2J - 36	ECU (+B:P11C)	
F27	20A		2I - 37	DC motor ① for oil cooler	
F28	20A		2I - 38	DC motor ② for oil cooler	
F29	10A		2I - 39	Swing flasher, Voice alarm	
F30	5A		54 - 40	Starter	
F31	10A		2H - 41	Control power (MC2)	
F32	20A		2H - 42	Output power (MC2)	
F33	10A		2H - 43	Solenoid valve (Confluence/independent)	
F34	5A		2H - 44	Over hoist limit switch	
F35	10A		2H - 45	Fuel pump, Cigarette lighter	
F36	10A		2K - 46	Relay	
F37	10A		2K - 47	Relay	
F38	5A		2K - 48	Free fall	
F39	10A		2K - 49	Light	
F40	10A		2K -	Spare	

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.7 OPERATION UNDER SEVERE CONDITIONS

#### 1. OPERATION IN EXTREME COLD

Item	Treatment	Caution																		
Engine oil	<p>Use engine oil suitable to the atmospheric temperature. (JASO DH-2, API CJ-4, ACEA E-6)</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Atmospheric temperature When engine starting.</td> <td>40° C to 0° C (104° F to 32° F)</td> <td>10° C to -30° C (50° F to -22° F)</td> <td>40° C to -30° C (104° F to -22° F)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Viscosity of oil</td> <td>SAE 30</td> <td>SAE 10W</td> <td>SAE 10W-30</td> </tr> </table> <hr/> <p><b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>In order to keep good function of the diesel particulate filter, it is recommended to use the specified brand (recommended) engine oil.</p>	Atmospheric temperature When engine starting.	40° C to 0° C (104° F to 32° F)	10° C to -30° C (50° F to -22° F)	40° C to -30° C (104° F to -22° F)	Viscosity of oil	SAE 30	SAE 10W	SAE 10W-30	When adding oil, do not mix different brand and quality oil.										
Atmospheric temperature When engine starting.	40° C to 0° C (104° F to 32° F)	10° C to -30° C (50° F to -22° F)	40° C to -30° C (104° F to -22° F)																	
Viscosity of oil	SAE 30	SAE 10W	SAE 10W-30																	
Fuel	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Ambient temp.</th> <th>Type</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>-5° C (23° F) or more</td> <td>JIS 2 light oil</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-5° C to -15° C (23° F to 5° F)</td> <td>JIS 3 light oil</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-15° C (5° F) or less</td> <td>JIS 3 special light oil</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Use fuel, suitable to the atmospheric temperature. Before starting work, drain water. After the work is finished, fill the tank as full as possible.</p> <hr/> <p><b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Use ultra low sulfur diesel fuel only (S50 : sulfur content lower than 50ppm). If fuel other than specified one is used, adverse affect may be caused to the engine or diesel particulate filter and white smoke or failure may be resulted.</p>	Ambient temp.	Type	-5° C (23° F) or more	JIS 2 light oil	-5° C to -15° C (23° F to 5° F)	JIS 3 light oil	-15° C (5° F) or less	JIS 3 special light oil											
Ambient temp.	Type																			
-5° C (23° F) or more	JIS 2 light oil																			
-5° C to -15° C (23° F to 5° F)	JIS 3 light oil																			
-15° C (5° F) or less	JIS 3 special light oil																			
Coolant	<p>Combine antigreeze (long life coolant) according to the atmospheric temperature. (Capacity of Coolant : 30 ltr. (7.9 gal))</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Atmospheric temperature (° C (° F))</th> <th>Volume of Cooling water (ltr. (gal))</th> <th>Volume of antifreeze (ltr. (gal))</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>-17 (1.4)</td> <td>21 (5.5)</td> <td>9 (2.4) (30%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-21 (-5.8)</td> <td>19 (5.0)</td> <td>11 (2.9) (35%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-25 (-13)</td> <td>18 (4.8)</td> <td>12 (3.2) (40%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-31 (-23.8)</td> <td>16 (4.2)</td> <td>14 (3.7) (45%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-40 (-40)</td> <td>15 (4.0)</td> <td>15 (4.0) (50%)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Atmospheric temperature (° C (° F))	Volume of Cooling water (ltr. (gal))	Volume of antifreeze (ltr. (gal))	-17 (1.4)	21 (5.5)	9 (2.4) (30%)	-21 (-5.8)	19 (5.0)	11 (2.9) (35%)	-25 (-13)	18 (4.8)	12 (3.2) (40%)	-31 (-23.8)	16 (4.2)	14 (3.7) (45%)	-40 (-40)	15 (4.0)	15 (4.0) (50%)	Sometimes, combination rate may be different depending upon brands.
Atmospheric temperature (° C (° F))	Volume of Cooling water (ltr. (gal))	Volume of antifreeze (ltr. (gal))																		
-17 (1.4)	21 (5.5)	9 (2.4) (30%)																		
-21 (-5.8)	19 (5.0)	11 (2.9) (35%)																		
-25 (-13)	18 (4.8)	12 (3.2) (40%)																		
-31 (-23.8)	16 (4.2)	14 (3.7) (45%)																		
-40 (-40)	15 (4.0)	15 (4.0) (50%)																		
Battery	<p>Sufficiently charge the battery. (Maintain the specific gravity more 1.22.)</p> <hr/> <p><b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The electrolyte in a fully charged battery will resist freezing at lower temperatures better than a battery that is not fully charged.</p>	After distilled water has been added, start and run the engine to mix water and electrolyte.																		



2. OPERATION IN EXTREME HEAT

Item	Treatment	Caution						
Engine oil	<p>Use engine oil suitable to atmospheric temperature. (JASO DH-2, API CJ-4, ACEA E-6)</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Atmospheric temperature when starting engine</td> <td>40° C (104° F) or more</td> <td>40° C to 0° C (104° F to 32° F)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Viscosity of oil</td> <td>SAE 40</td> <td>SAE 30</td> </tr> </table> <p><b>CAUTION</b> In order to keep good function of the diesel particulate filter, it is recommended to use the specified brand (recommended) engine oil.</p>	Atmospheric temperature when starting engine	40° C (104° F) or more	40° C to 0° C (104° F to 32° F)	Viscosity of oil	SAE 40	SAE 30	Do not mix different brand and quality oil.
Atmospheric temperature when starting engine	40° C (104° F) or more	40° C to 0° C (104° F to 32° F)						
Viscosity of oil	SAE 40	SAE 30						
Coolant	Use of long life coolant compounding ratio of 30%.							
Battery	Always maintain the electrolyte level 10mm (3/8inch) above the plates.							

3. OPERATION IN DUSTY PLACE

Item	Treatment	Caution
Air cleaner	Perform washing and change of the element early.	
Radiator, oil cooler	Early clean the core not to allow dust to clog the core.	
Filter, element	Early replace with new ones.	
Engine oil	Early change oil.	
Slewing ring gear	Early lubricate.	
Wire rope	Early clean and lubricate	

4. OPERATION IN SEASIDE

Item	Treatment	Caution
Lubrication	Thoroughly and carefully lubricate each point. Lubricate connector sections not equipped with grease fittings.	
Basic machine	Sufficiently wash the basic machine, radiator and oil cooler to wash salt off.	

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### 7.8 HANDLING OF DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

Diesel particulate filter turns into cleaning mode which automatically burns soot when the filter collected soot is accumulated to certain level.

In order to prevent failure of diesel particulate filter, observe the following points.

(\* Soot accumulation time and burning time may vary depending on work content.)

#### **What is the diesel particulate filter !**

When the soot accumulated in the cleaner of the diesel particulate filter reaches to a certain level, the unit starts burning process (regeneration).

With this, it is avoided that soot would accumulate to abnormal level and cleaning capacity of the diesel particulate filter is kept to a satisfactory level.

In addition, with using the high performance catalyst and common-rail fuel injection system, it becomes possible to burn (regenerate) soot during the crane work.

- Do not use fuel other than specified one.

---

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Use ultra low sulfur diesel fuel only (S50 : sulfur content lower than 50 ppm).**

**If fuel other than specified one is used, adverse affect may be caused to the engine or diesel particulate filter and white smoke or failure may be resulted.**

- 
- Use recommended engine oil.

---

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

In order to keep good function of the diesel particulate filter, it is recommended to use the specified brand (recommended) engine oil.

---

- Do not modify the tail pipe.

---

**CAUTION**

If the tail pipe direction or length is changed, performance of the diesel particulate filter would be adversely affected. Do not modify the tail pipe. Should modification become necessary for a certain reason, contact the nearest Manitowoc service shop.

- 
- Diesel particulate filter burns (regenerates) soot collected automatically.

---

**CAUTION**

Do not park the crane near the place where dry grass or inflammable objects are there. Directly after the work or during cleaning mode, exhaust pipe area, muffler and exhaust gas become hot. Inflammable object may cause fire. Hot exhaust gas may also cause burns to personnel. Failure to observe these precautions may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

---

When the diesel particulate filter is working, take care of the following points.

Due to some work conditions, burning (regeneration) of the soot collected in the diesel particulate filter may not be completed.

In such case, "soot burning (regenerate) icon" is indicated on the main monitor.

This is to resume function of the diesel particulate filter and is not a failure.

When "soot burning (regenerate) icon" is indicated on the main monitor, push the soot burning (regenerate) icon to burn soot (regeneration).

If the crane is left idling for long time, idling speed may increase and load valve may actuate to prevent from exhausting white smoke.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

The diesel particulate filter may cause increase of engine idling speed and may actuate load valve and lever operation may become impossible under the following case.

This is to raise the exhaust temperature and to clean the exhaust gas and not a failure.

- When the "soot burning (regenerate) icon" is indicated on the main monitor and the icon is pushed to burns (regenerate) the soot. (Lever work becomes possible.)
- When it becomes auto-regeneration mode during work. (Lever work becomes impossible.)
- If the low exhaust air temperature continues for long time (such as longer than 1 hour idling), regeneration motion may be interrupted once when the lever is turned on to work.  
This regeneration may resume whenever lever control is finished within a certain period of time.

The diesel particulate filter has the following features.

- Since the exhaust gas is cleaned with the diesel particulate filter, exhaust gas has different smell compared with the conventional machines.
- At machine start, white smoke comes out of the tail pipe. This is moisture and is normal.
- During soot burning (regenerating) white smoke may come out from the muffler area. This is exhaustion of moisture accumulated around the muffler area and is normal.

## 7.9 MACHINE STORAGE

1. SHORT TERM STORAGE (Period of 30 Days or Less)
  - Clean, sufficiently dry, and then carefully lubricate the entire machine.
  - Cover the machine to protect it from dust.
2. LONG TERM STORAGE (Longer than One month and less than 1 Year)
  - Clean, sufficiently dry, and then carefully lubricate the entire machine.
  - Sufficiently grease the slewing ring gear.
  - Replace the reduction unit gear oil and hydraulic oil with fresh oil.
  - Replace all filters with new ones.
  - Remove the battery and store it in a cold, dark place.
  - Apply thin coat of oil to places that are prone to rust.
  - Completely drain coolant and post a "No Water" sign.
  - Cover the entire machine to protect it from dust.

As for the storage of the engine area, refer to the engine manual [proper operating-long time storage].

12001229

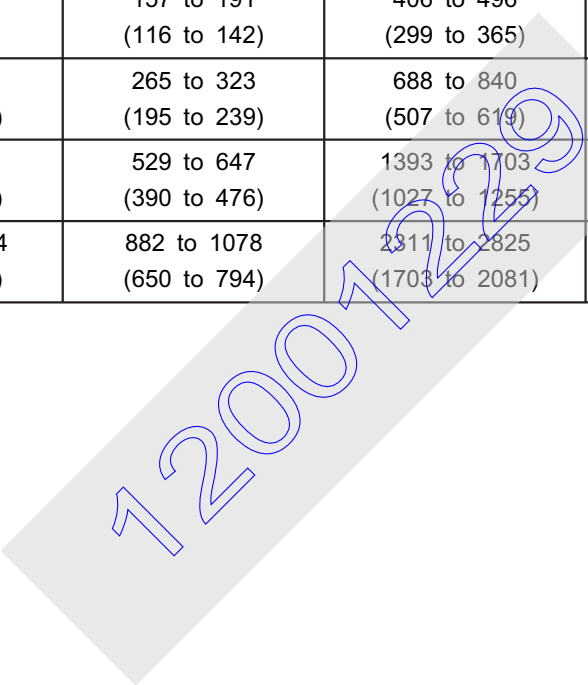
## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.10 TIGHTENING TORQUE VALUES

1. Unless otherwise specified, torque all metric screws and bolts on this machine to the values shown in the table below.

Nominal	Metric course screw thread (Plated)				2 face width mm (inch)
	4T		7T		
	Tightening torque N-m (lbs-ft)		Tightening torque N-m (lbs-ft)		
	Dry	Lubricated	Dry	Lubricated	
M6	4.6 to 5.6 (0.47 to 0.57)	3.9 to 4.7 (0.40 to 0.48)	10 to 12.2 (1.02 to 1.24)	8.4 to 10.2 (0.85 to 1.05)	10 (3/8)
M8	11.1 to 12.2 (8.1 to 9.9)	10.3 to 10.5 (6.9 to 8.5)	24.4 to 30.1 (18.2 to 22.2)	20.2 to 24.8 (14.9 to 18.3)	13 (1/2)
M10	22 to 27 (16.3 to 19.9)	18.5 to 22.7 (13.7 to 16.7)	47.6 to 58.2 (35.1 to 42.9)	40.6 to 49.6 (29.9 to 36.5)	17 (11/16)
M12	37.1 to 45.3 (27.3 to 33.3)	32.7 to 39.9 (24 to 29.4)	81.0 to 99.2 (59.8 to 73)	68.8 to 84.0 (50.7 to 61.9)	19 (3/4)
M14	59.1 to 72.3 (43.6 to 53.2)	50.2 to 61.5 (37.1 to 45.3)	129 to 157 (94.5 to 115.5)	109 to 133 (79.9 to 97.7)	22 (7/8)
M16	90 to 110 (66.2 to 81)	75.9 to 92.7 (55.9 to 68.3)	194 to 238 (143 to 175)	163 to 199 (121 to 147)	24 (15/16)
M18	123 to 151 (91 to 111)	105 to 129 (77.3 to 94.5)	274 to 334 (202 to 246)	229 to 281 (169 to 207)	27 (1-1/16)
M20	174 to 212 (128 to 156)	146 to 178 (107 to 131)	379 to 463 (279 to 341)	318 to 388 (234 to 286)	30 (1-3/16)
M22	229 to 281 (169 to 207)	194 to 238 (143 to 175)	503 to 615 (371 to 453)	423 to 517 (312 to 382)	32 (1-1/4)
M24	300 to 366 (220 to 250)	238 to 292 (175 to 215)	643 to 787 (474 to 580)	520 to 636 (382 to 468)	36 (1-7/16)
M27	432 to 528 (319 to 389)	353 to 431 (260 to 318)	943 to 1153 (696 to 850)	768 to 938 (579 to 707)	41 (1-5/8)
M30	591 to 723 (436 to 532)	494 to 604 (364 to 444)	1279 to 1563 (942 to 1152)	1075 to 1315 (793 to 969)	46 (1-13/16)
M33	794 to 970 (585 to 715)	661 to 809 (488 to 596)	1721 to 2101 (1267 to 1549)	1446 to 1768 (1066 to 1302)	50 (1-15/16)
M36	1023 to 1251 (754 to 922)	856 to 1046 (630 to 770)	2205 to 2659 (1625 to 1985)	1843 to 2253 (1358 to 1660)	55 (2-3/16)

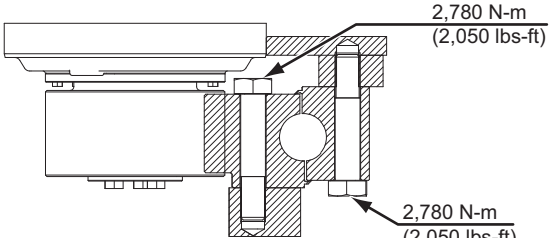
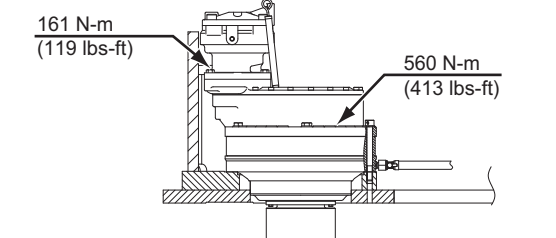
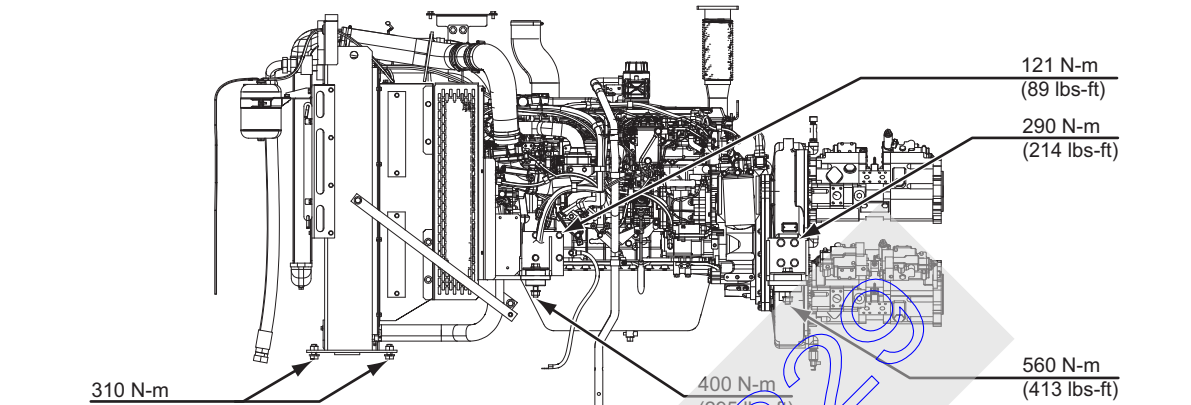
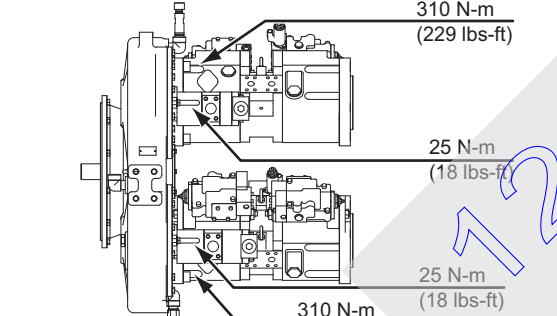
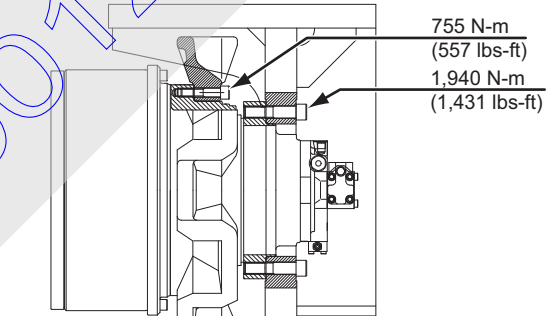
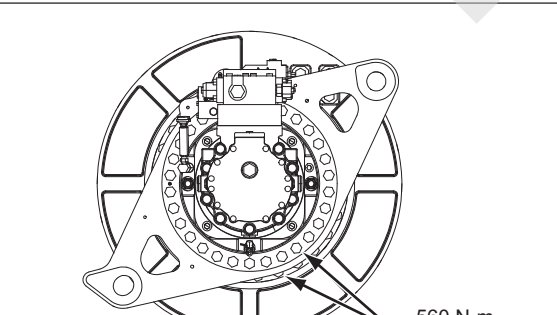
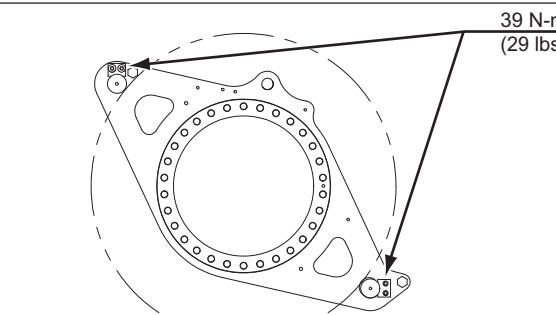
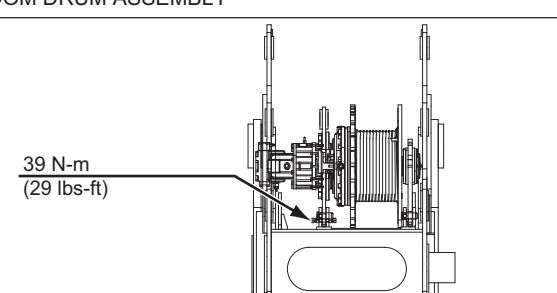
Nominal	Metric fine screw thread (Plated)				
	4T		7T		2 face width mm (inch)
	Tightening torque N-m (lbs-ft)		Tightening torque N-m (lbs-ft)		
	Dry	Lubricated	Dry	Lubricated	
M8	11.6 to 14.2 (8.6 to 10.4)	9.8 to 12 (7.2 to 8.8)	25.6 to 31.2 (18.8 to 23)	21.1 to 25.9 (15.6 to 19)	13 (1/2)
M10	22.9 to 28.1 (16.9 to 20.7)	19.4 to 23.8 (14.3 to 17.5)	49.4 to 60.4 (36.4 to 44.4)	42.7 to 51.7 (31.2 to 38.2)	17 (11/16)
M12	40.6 to 49.6 (29.9 to 36.5)	34.4 to 42 (25.4 to 31.6)	87.3 to 106.7 (64.3 to 78.7)	73.2 to 89.4 (53.9 to 65.9)	19 (3/4)
M16	94 to 116 (69.6 to 85)	79.4 to 97 (58.5 to 71.5)	202 to 248 (149 to 183)	172 to 210 (127 to 155)	24 (15/16)
M20	185 to 227 (137 to 27)	157 to 191 (116 to 142)	406 to 496 (299 to 365)	335 to 409 (247 to 301)	30 (1-3/16)
M24	318 to 388 (234 to 286)	265 to 323 (195 to 239)	688 to 840 (507 to 619)	573 to 701 (422 to 516)	36 (1-7/16)
M30	635 to 777 (468 to 572)	529 to 647 (390 to 476)	1393 to 1703 (1027 to 1255)	1156 to 1412 (851 to 1103)	46 (1-13/16)
M36	1058 to 1294 (779 to 953)	882 to 1078 (650 to 794)	2311 to 2825 (1703 to 2081)	1922 to 2350 (1417 to 1731)	55 (2-3/16)



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 2. Tightening torque of bolt, nut with special specification are listed below.

Tightening torque shall be withing  $\pm 10\%$  of the value in the list.

<p><b>SWING BEARING</b></p>  <p>2,780 N-m (2,050 lbs-ft)</p> <p>2,780 N-m (2,050 lbs-ft)</p>	<p><b>SWING REDUCTION UNIT</b></p>  <p>161 N-m (119 lbs-ft)</p> <p>560 N-m (413 lbs-ft)</p>
<p><b>ENGINE</b></p>  <p>310 N-m (229 lbs-ft)</p> <p>400 N-m (295 lbs-ft)</p> <p>121 N-m (89 lbs-ft)</p> <p>290 N-m (214 lbs-ft)</p> <p>560 N-m (413 lbs-ft)</p>	
<p><b>PUMP ASSEMBLY</b></p>  <p>310 N-m (229 lbs-ft)</p> <p>25 N-m (18 lbs-ft)</p> <p>25 N-m (18 lbs-ft)</p> <p>310 N-m (229 lbs-ft)</p>	<p><b>PROPEL REDUCTION UNIT ASSEMBLY</b></p>  <p>755 N-m (557 lbs-ft)</p> <p>1,940 N-m (1,431 lbs-ft)</p>
<p><b>FRONT AND REAR DRUM ASSEMBLY (OUTER)</b></p>  <p>560 N-m (413 lbs-ft)</p>	<p><b>FRONT AND REAR WINCH ASSEMBLY (INNER)</b></p>  <p>39 N-m (29 lbs-ft)</p>
<p><b>BOOM DRUM ASSEMBLY</b></p>  <p>39 N-m (29 lbs-ft)</p>	<p>Apply Loctite #242 or equivalence to the bolts and nuts. For maintenance, contact your Manitowoc authorize distributor.</p>



## **7.11 PERIODICAL REPLACING SECURITY PARTS**

In order to use the machine safely for long time, it is requested to inspect and repair the machine periodically.

Therefore replace the following parts periodically to keep safety of the machine.

These parts may cause material deterioration by aging, wear or fatigue by repeating use and may lead to serious accident.

It would be difficult to judge these parts life by operation or visual inspection.

If there is any abnormality noticed on the periodic inspection maintenance time, replace these parts with new ones even before periodic replacement time as shown here.

Contact Manitowoc service shop for part replacement.

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

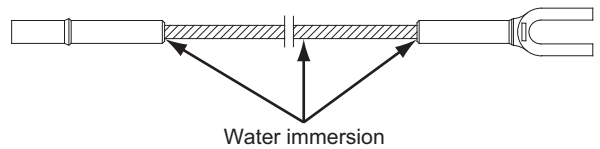
- Hose damage of clutch brake and control pressure related ones may lead to the serious accident.

Replace the following hoses as periodical replacing security parts every 2 years or less.

No.	HOSE RELATED PERIODICAL REPLACING PART	REPLACEMENT INTERVAL (RECOMMENDED)
1	Front drum nega. Posi-clutch main hose	2 years
	Front drum CLM	
	Front drum ESM	
	Rear drum CLA	
	Rear drum ESA	
	Third drum CLT	
	Third drum EST	
2	Foot brake control hose	
	Front drum FBM	
	Rear drum FBA	
	Third drum FBT	
3	Pressure control hose (Pump to Line filter)	
	Relief valve	
4	Pressure control hose (Line filter to Accumulator)	
	Manifold (P0)	
5	Pressure control hose (Accumulator to Valve block)	
	Under floor block (PH0)	
	Left deck front P block (P2)	
	2 section valve (Remo-con cut) (P1)	
	Remo-con valve (Brake pedal) (P3)	
	4 section valve (Free fall) (P4)	
	Remo-con valve (Third brake pedal)	
2 section valve (Third free fall)		

As for all hydraulic hoses, inspect them periodically and replace them if oil oozing or leaking are found.

2. The guy lines are subject to damage caused by internal fatigue or corrosion and can not be judged for their replacement time by outer visual inspections.



If the internal damage or corrosion is progressed, guy line may be broken and may cause serious accident. Make sure to replace periodically based on work content.

No.	GUY LINE RELATED PERIODICALLY REPLACING PARTS	REPLACEMENT INTERVAL
1	Geneal crane work.	6 years
2	Crane work main with clamshell and bucket work as sub.	4 years
3	Only for lifting magnet, clamshell and hammer grab.	2 years

-CRANE GUY LINE

Boom guy line chart				
Symbol	Guy line dimension		Remarks [m(ft)]	Connector type
	Diameter mm (in)	Length m (ft)		
A	34 (1-11/32)	7.1 (23.3)	Boom tip	
B	34 (1-11/32)	3.05 (10)	3.0 (10) Bom insert	
C	34 (1-11/32)	6.10 (20)	6.1 (20) Bom insert	
E	34 (1-11/32)	12.19 (40)	12.2 (40) Bom insert	

-CRANE JIB GUY LINE

Kind of guy line			Connector type
Symbol	Diameter mm (inch)	Length m (ft)	
J	Φ22 (7/8)	40.0 (131' 2")	
K	Φ22 (7/8)	2.44 (8')	
F	Φ22 (7/8)	19.34 (63' 5")	
G	Φ22 (7/8)	5.88 (19' 3")	
H	Φ22 (7/8)	11.75 (38' 6")	

## 7. MAINTENANCE

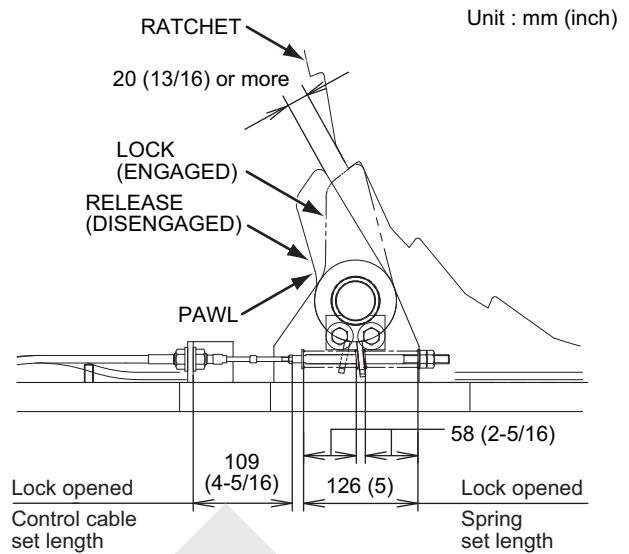
### 7.12 ADJUSTMENT

#### 7.12.1 ADJUSTMENT OF FRONT, REAR, THIRD DRUM LOCKS



**Do not adjust the drum locks until the boom, hook block, and load have been lowered to the ground. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.**

1. Pull the drum lock knob in the LOCK position and check to see that the pawl is engaged in the bottom of the drum ratchet.  
If the pawl is not engaged in the bottom of the ratchet, adjust the spring length to allow the pawl to be engaged.
2. With the RELEASE position, adjust the respective dimension as shown in the figure to the right.
3. Push the drum lock knob in the RELEASE position and check to see that the pawl is clear of the ratchet by at least 20 mm (13/16 inch).
4. Operate the knob to the LOCK position, and to the RELEASE position and confirm that the pawl moves smoothly.



FRONT, REAR, THIRD DRUM LOCKS



**Take extra-care on the rotating drum to prevent accident of being caught. Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.**

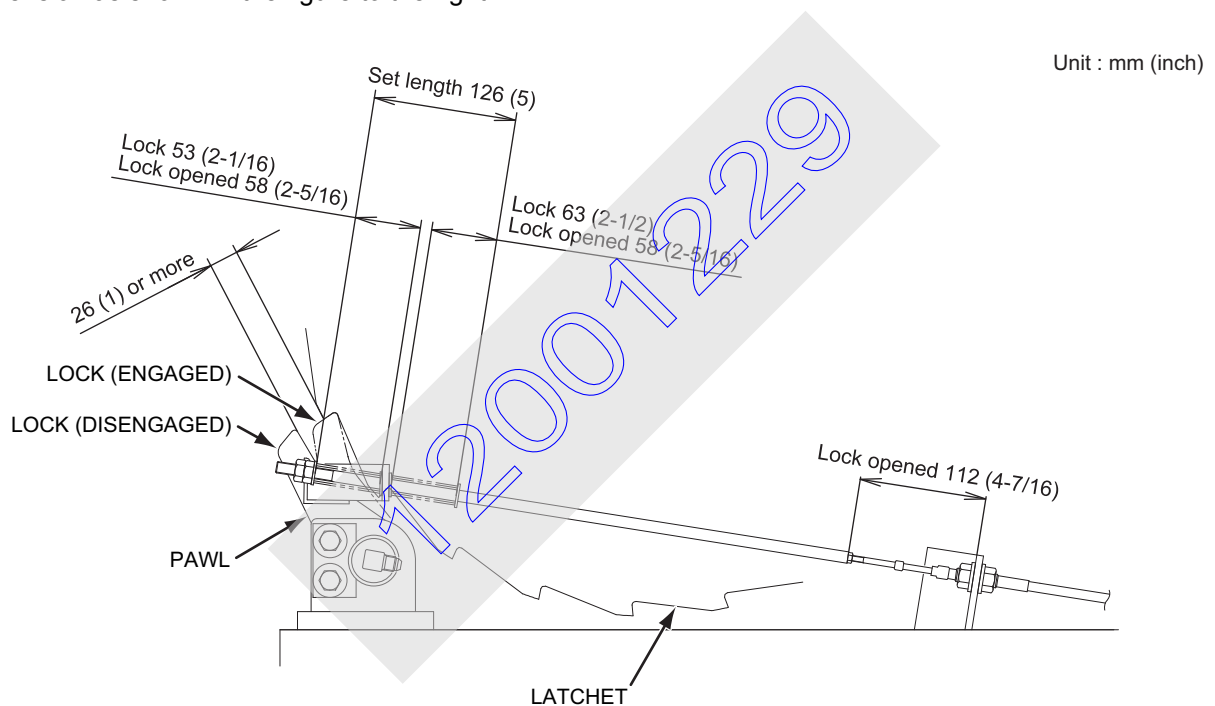
## 7.12.2 ADJUSTMENT OF BOOM DRUM LOCK

**WARNING**

Do not adjust the boom hoist drum lock until the boom has been lowered to the ground.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

1. Pull the drum lock knob in the LOCK position and check to see that the pawl is engaged in the bottom of the drum ratchet with the drum lock condition. If the pawl is not engaged in the bottom of the ratchet, adjust the spring dimension to allow the pawl to be engaged.
2. With the RELEASE position, adjust the respective dimension as shown in the figure to the right.



3. Push the drum lock knob in the RELEASE position, and check to see that the pawl is clear of the ratchet by at least 26 mm (1 inch).
4. Operate the knob to the LOCK position, and to the RELEASE position, and confirm that the pawl moves smoothly.

**WARNING**

Do not adjust the boom hoist drum lock until the boom has been lowered to the ground.

Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury or loss of life.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 7.12.3 CRAWLER SHOES ADJUSTMENT

If the crawler shoes are too tight, the shoes wear quickly and a connection between two shoes could break. On the other hand, if the shoes are too loose, the shoes may ride off the drive tumbler or idler wheel during propel.

To prevent these from happening, it is necessary to adjust shoe tension.

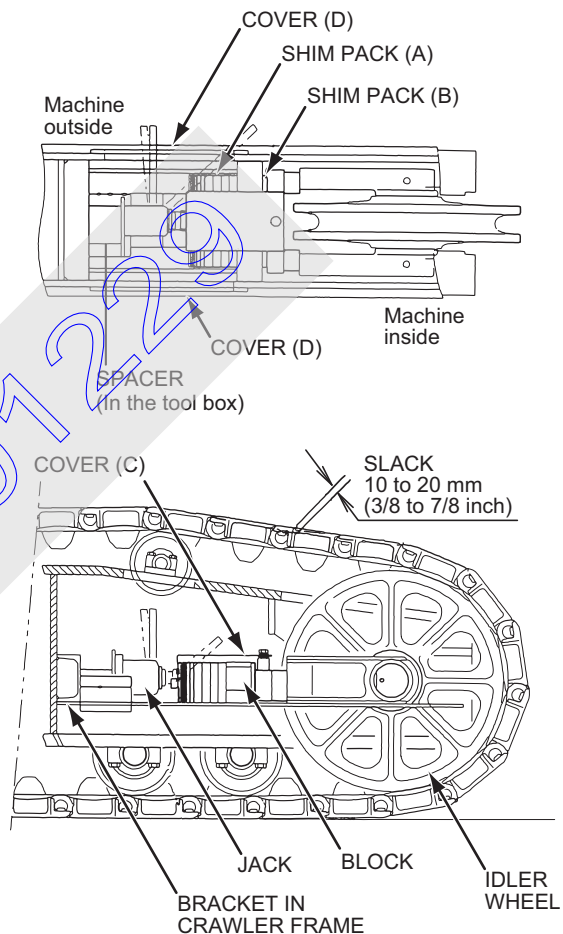
Propel forward about 7 m (23 ft) with the drive tumbler at rear and then adjust the shim to make upper shoe slackening to be 10 to 20 mm (3/8 to 7/8 inch).

To adjust shoe tension, proceed as follows:

1. Propel the machine forward about one crawler length so that the slackening in the crawler shoes appear on the top of the crawler.
2. Remove all the shims from shim pack (A).
3. Position the hydraulic jack between the bracket and block of the side frame.  
Operate the jack to push the idler wheel and remove the slackening in the shoes.
4. Insert the shims removed from pack (A) in step (2) into the vacant room of pack (B).  
Insert the remaining shims into pack (A).
5. After the shims are installed, install the mud cover (C) on the shim installation area (A).  
Install the cover (D) to the elongated hole area of both crawler frames.

#### **CAUTION**

Equalize the tension in right and left crawler tracks.



### 7.13 CONSUMABLE PARTS LIST

1. OIL/GREASE

For the recommended oil and grease, refer to the "Manitowoc Genuine Lubricant Chart" on page 7-50, and use genuine Manitowoc parts.

For the battery electrolyte and the window washer liquid, use commercial items.

2. FILTER ELEMENT

For the recommended filter element, refer to the chart on page 7-79.

3. FUSE

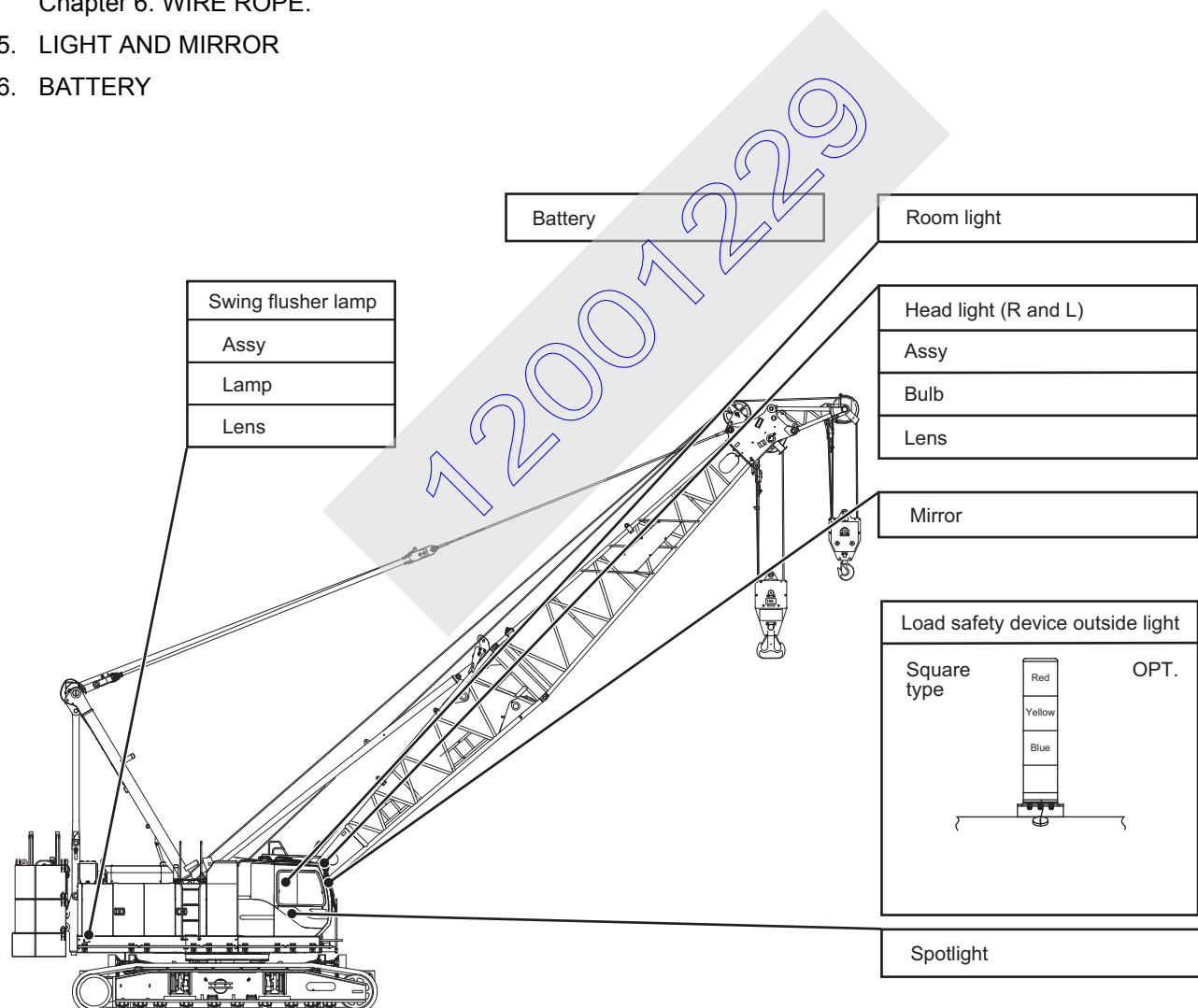
For the recommended fuse, refer to the chart on page 7-100.

4. WIRE ROPE

For the recommended wire rope, refer to the of Chapter 6. WIRE ROPE.

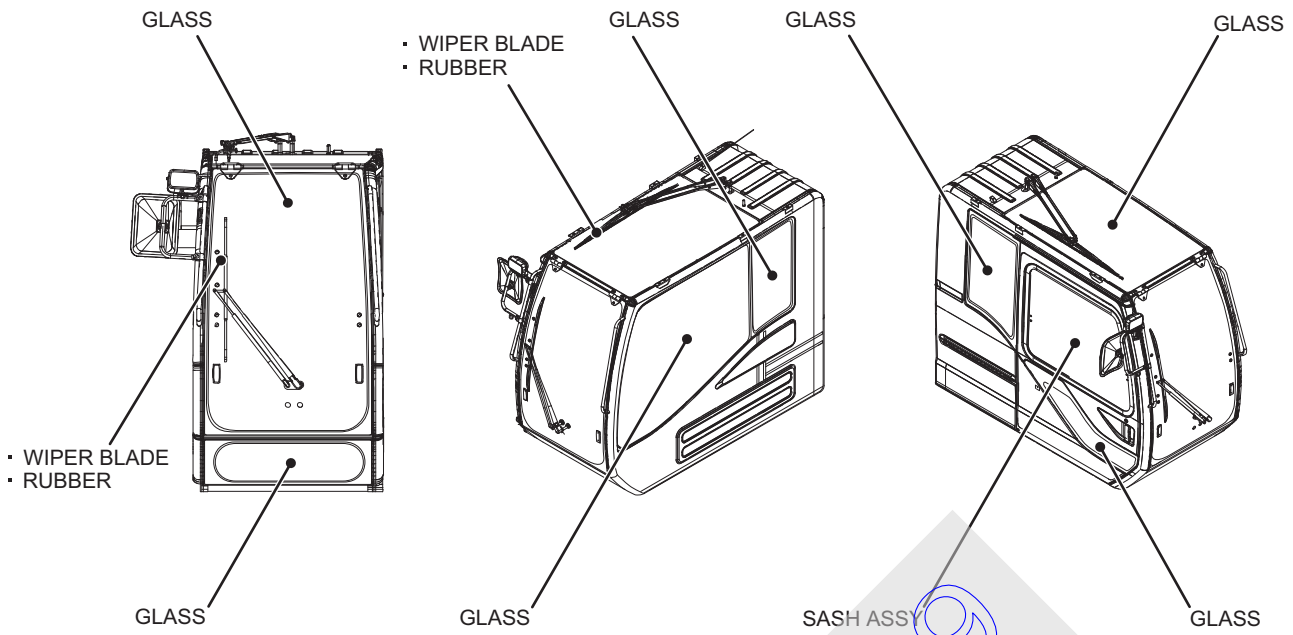
5. LIGHT AND MIRROR

6. BATTERY

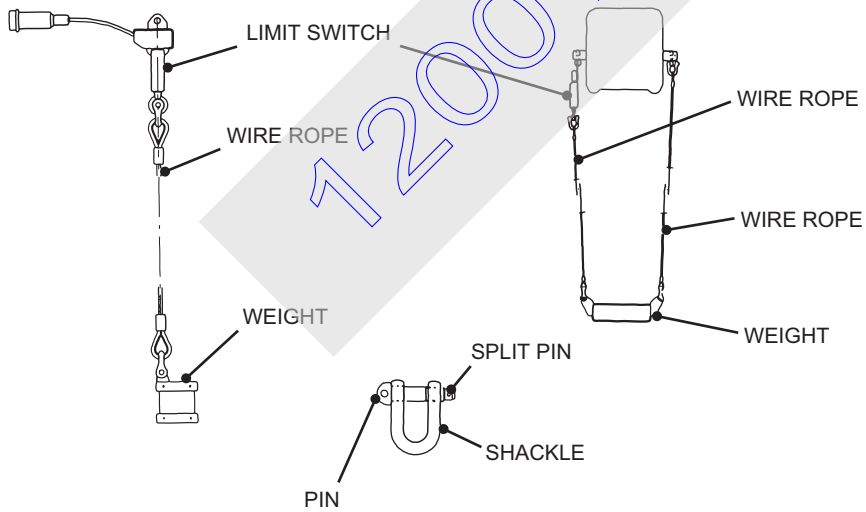


## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 6. WINDOW GLASS AND WIPER

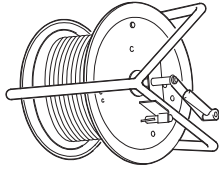


### 7. HOOK OVER HOIST LIMIT SWITCH



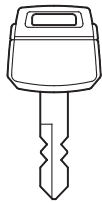


8. CABLE REEL

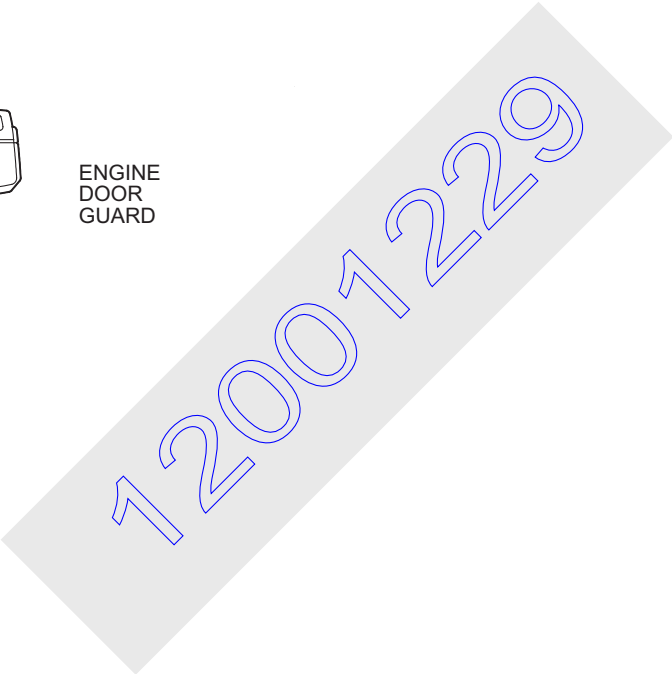


For crane-hook overhoist	
For crane jib-hook overhoist	

10. KEY




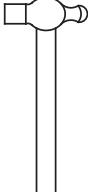










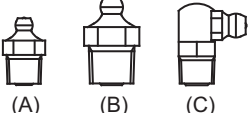
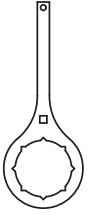


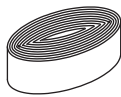


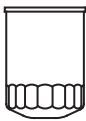

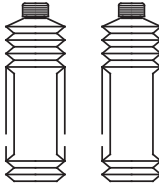
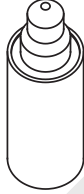
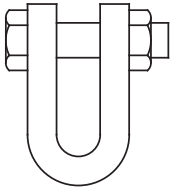
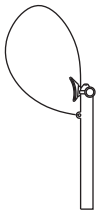
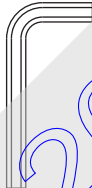
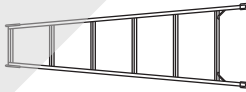


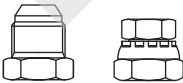
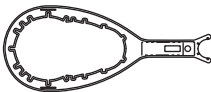
ENGINE  
DOOR  
GUARD



## 7. MAINTENANCE

### 11. TOOL

<p>TOOL BOX</p> 	<p>PLIERS</p> 	<p>ADJUST WRENCH</p>  <p>(24 mm) (1-15/16 inch) (44 mm) (2-3/4 inch)</p>	<p>HAMMER</p> 
<p>HAMMER</p> 	<p>(+) DRIVER</p> 	<p>(-) DRIVER</p>  <p>(5.5 mm) (3/16 inch)</p>	<p>ADAPTOR (When adjustment of shoe)</p> 
<p>JACK (When adjustment of shoe)</p> 	<p>RATCHET HANDLE</p>  <p>12.7 19</p>	<p>EXTENSION BAR</p>  <p>12.7 19</p>	<p>SPANNER</p>  <p>(55 mm) (2-3/16 inch)</p>
<p>SOCKET</p>  <p>(17 mm) (11/16 inch) (19 mm) (3/4 inch) (22 mm) (7/8 inch) (24 mm) (15/16 inch) (30 mm) (1-3/16 inch) (55 mm) (2-3/16 inch)</p>	<p>PIPE (For wrench)</p> 	<p>GREASE NIPPLE</p>  <p>(A) (PT1/8) (B) (PT1/4) (C) (PT1/8)</p>	<p>FUEL PRE-FILTER WRENCH</p> 

<p>TAPE</p> 	<p>GREASE PUMP</p> 	<p>HOSE (For grease pump)</p> 	<p>CARTRIDGE</p> 
<p>CARTRIDGE</p>  <p>(Only with free fall)</p>	<p>GREASE</p> 	<p>GEAR OIL (For swing gear)</p> 	<p>SHACKLE</p>  <p>X 4 (For 10.0 t) X 2 (For 2.0 t)</p>
<p>PIPE WRENCH</p> 	<p>SCREW KEY</p> 	<p>STEP LADDER</p> 	<p>CHAIN</p> 
<p>SUPPORT ASSY</p> 	<p>PLUG</p>  <p>(A) (B)</p> <p>(A) (B)</p>	<p>FUEL FILTER (HINO MADE) WRENCH</p> 	

(REFERENCE) FILTERS AND TOOLS LIST FOR ENGINE

FUEL PRE-FILTER	FUEL FILTER WRENCH	FUEL FILTER (MOUNTED ON ENGINE)	ENGINE OIL FILTER
-----------------	--------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------

\* HYDRAULIC LINE FILTER : 2421R152 (BAND TYPE WREICH) 77 to 137 mm diameter.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### 7.14 MEASURES REQUIRED FOR FRONT, REAR WINCH MONITORING

---

#### CAUTION

Refer to the information on the general inspection of the front, rear winch too.

---

#### 7.14.1 THEORETICAL SERVICE LIFE

The theoretical service life is determined from certain operating conditions and a theoretical operating time assumed by the design engineer when calculating and dimensioning the winches of this crane.

The winches of this crane are classified as follows.  
(ISO 4301/1, FEM 1.001, DIN Calculating code for power unit)

Power unit group	: M 3
Load spectrum	: Q 1 (L 1)
Load spectrum factor	: $K_m = 0.125$
Theoretical service life	: $D = 3,200$ h

#### CAUTION

The theoretical service life is not the same as the real (actual) service life of a winch.

---

12001229

The real service life of a winch is affected by a number of additional external factors, such as:

1. Overloading caused by improper use of the crane.	
2. Insufficient maintenance:	Oil is not changed at the specified intervals.
3. Operating errors:	Extreme acceleration or deceleration of the load. Sudden load drops and stops while lifting load.
4. Improper maintenance:	Wrong oil used. Incorrect filling quantity. Contamination during oil change.
5. Improper assembly during maintenance and repair work.	
6. Leaks which were ignored.	
6. Improper adjustment of safety devices.	
7. Concealed damage caused by accidents.	
8. Extreme environmental conditions:	Extreme low or high temperatures. Severe climate condition. Dust and dirt.

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### 7.14.2 USED PROPORTION OF THEORETICAL SERVICE LIFE

The crane operator must perform a crane inspection at least once a year (ISO 9927-1).

This includes establishing the proportion of theoretical service life that has been used.

If required, the crane operator is to appoint an expert for this assessment.

The actual operating conditions (load spectrum) and the operating hours of the hoists are to be determined for each inspection interval when establishing the proportion of theoretical service life that has been used. The operator is responsible for proper documentation in the crane logbook.

#### DETERMINING THE OPERATING CONDITIONS (LOAD SPECTRUM)

The load spectrum of the crane is divided into groups :  
(also refer to ISO 430/1, JIS 8822-2)

---

#### CAUTION

When establishing the load spectrum, the existing wire cable condition is used as a standard, i.e. under certain circumstances, the crane can be supporting a heavy load, whereby the winch is actually supporting a light load.

Therefore, the following graphic representation of the load spectrum refers to the winch's wire cables.

---

12001229

Collective load class	Definition	Proportion of operating time	Collective load factor Km =	Graphic representation
Light Q 1 L 1	Power units or parts thereof that are rarely subject to maximum load, but are constantly subject to minimal loads	10.% of the operating time with highest load (dead load + 1/1 payload) 40.% of the operating time with dead load + 1/3 payload 50.% of the operating time with dead load only	0.125	<p>W1355</p>
Medium Q 2 L 2	Power units or parts thereof that are fairly often subject to maximum load, but continuously subject to minimal loads	1/6 of the operating time with highest load (dead load + 1/1 payload) 1/6 of the operating time with dead load + 2/3 payload 1/6 of the operating time with dead load + 1/3 payload 50.% of the operating time with dead load only	0.25	<p>W1356</p>
Heavy Q 3 L 3	Power units or parts thereof that are often subject to maximum load and continuously subject to medium loads	50 % of the operating time with highest load (dead load + 1/1 payload) 50.% of the operating time with dead load only	0.5	<p>W1357</p>
Very heavy Q 4 L 4	Power units or parts thereof that are regularly subject to loads close to maximum load	90.% of the operating time with highest load (dead load + 1/1 payload) 10.% of the operating time with dead load only	1	<p>W1358</p>

One of the load spectrums listed above should be selected on the basis of the actual operating conditions and entered in the crane logbook for the respective testing interval.

The load spectrum L 1 and the load spectrum factor Km = 0.125 are generally applied to your crane.

**DETERMINATION OF THE EFFECTIVE OPERATING HOURS Ti**

The effective operating hours must be entered into the crane log book for the corresponding testing interval.

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### DETERMINING THE PROPORTION OF THEORETICAL SERVICE LIFE USED

For a testing interval "i" (max. 1 year according to ISO 9927-1) the used proportion of theoretical service life  $S_i$  is calculated using the formula:

$$S_i = \frac{K_{mi}}{K_m} \times T_i$$

- $K_m$  = Load spectrum factor established during winch calculation.  
This factor is given in the operating instructions.
- $K_{mi}$  = Load spectrum factor in inspection interval "i" in accordance with the section "Determining the operating conditions (collective load)"
- $T_i$  = Effective operating hours in the testing interval "i" according to section "Determining the actual operating hours  $T_i$ "

This used proportion is subtracted from the remaining theoretical service life  $D_i$  after every testing interval (see example in the appendix to this chapter).

If the remaining theoretical service life is not sufficient for the next operating period, then a general overhaul of the winch must be performed.

If theoretical service life  $D$  has been reached (7.14.1), the winch must not be operated until after a general overhaul has been performed.

A general overhaul must be performed at least once every 10 years after commissioning of the crane.

The general overhaul is to be arranged by the operator and performed by the manufacturer or their representative.

The results are to be entered in the crane logbook.

The manufacturer or his representative will specify a new theoretical service life  $D$  upon completion of the general overhaul.

The next general overhaul must be performed within 10 years.



### ALTERNATIVE PROVISION

If, after ten years, the theoretical service life has not been used up, the winch can continue to be operated without a general overhaul under the following conditions.

The crane expert has confirmed that the used portion of the service life is correct and proper by signing his/her name in the crane test book after every inspection.

In this case, the crane expert must closely inspect the winch.

As a minimum, this includes:

- a visual inspection of the exterior (for leaks, damage, malformation etc. )
- an oil inspection (especially for metallic residue)
- a load inspection with minimum and maximum rope pull and each with maximum possible speed.  
At least one position is to be wound.  
Pay attention to any unusual noises during the load inspection.

This inspection must be confirmed in the crane test book by the crane expert and there must be a declaration of continued operation for the winch.

The next inspection takes place before the 12th year of operation and must be repeated every year thereafter.

12001229

**Sample table to determine the remaining theoretical service life on winch no. 1 (main hoisting winch)**

Crane model : 12000-1  
 Work number :  
 Commissioned on :  
 Serial number of the winch in accordance with the type plate :  
 Last general overhaul performed on :  
 Winch design data (see operating instructions) :  
 Power unit group : M 3  
 Load spectrum : Q 1 (L 1)  
 Factor of the load spectrum : Km = 0.125  
 Theoretical service life : D = 3,200 h

Inspection interval no. (max. 1 year)	Date of commission/ date of inspection	Operational condition since the last inspection	Load spectrum factor	Operating hours of the entire crane	Operating hours of the superstructure	Operating hours of the superstructure since the last inspection	Operating hours of the winch	Operating hours of the winch since the last inspection	Used proportion of theoretical service life D <sub>i</sub>	Remaining theoretical service life D <sub>i</sub> = D <sub>T-1</sub> - S <sub>i</sub>	Name of competent person	Signature	Note	Name of the approved inspector	Signature
0(*)	10. 6. 11	—	—	0	—	—	—	0	0	3,200					
1	5. 6. 12	L 1	0.125	800	800	800	—	160 (20% of 800)	160	3,040					
2	20. 5. 13	L 2	0.5	2,000	1,200	1,200	—	480 (40% of 1,200)	1,920	1,120					
3	18. 5. 14	L 3	0.25	3,000	1,000	1,000	—	300 (30% of 1,000)	600	520					

**CAUTION :**  
**A general overhaul is to be performed every 10 years.**

Alternative provision, refer to [ALTERNATIVE PROVISION] in chapter "10.11.2".

- S<sub>i</sub> = Used proportion of theoretical service life since the last inspection
- D<sub>i</sub> = Remaining theoretical service life
- D<sub>T-1</sub> = Remaining theoretical service life after the previous inspection
- Km = Load spectrum factor established during winch calculation. This factor is given in the operating instructions.
- Km<sub>i</sub> = Load spectrum factor in the inspection interval "i".
- T<sub>i</sub> = Effective working hours in the inspection interval "i".
- (\*) Copy last line of the previous page to the following pages.

Last general overhaul performed on .....

**7.14.3 EXAMPLE**

Power unit group : M 3  
Load spectrum : light L 1,  $K_m = 0.125$   
Theoretical service life :  $D = 3,200$  h

The used proportion  $S$  of theoretical service life is calculated over the individual inspection intervals as follows:

**1. Inspection (1st year)**

The crane was used for assembly work during the previous year: Load spectrum L 1,  
i.e.  $K_{m1} = 0.125$ .

The operating hour counter reads 800 h. The winch was operated 20% of the time,  
i.e.  $T_1 = 160$  h.

The used proportion  $S_1$  of theoretical service life after the first inspection is therefore:

$$S_1 = \frac{0.125}{0.125} \times 160 \text{ h} = 160 \text{ h}$$

Remaining theoretical service life:

$$D_1 = 3,200 \text{ h} - 160 \text{ h} = 3,040 \text{ h}$$

The aforementioned values are entered in the table.

(see table example P. 7-128)

12001229

## 7. MAINTENANCE

---

### 2. Inspection (2nd year)

The crane was used for unloading work on docks :

Load spectrum: L 3, i.e.  $Km_2 = 0.5$ .

The operating hour counter reads 2,000 h, i.e. during this period:

2,000 h - 800 h = 1,200 h (800 h were used during the first year).

The winch was operated 40% of the time,

i.e.  $T_2 = 480$  h.

The used proportion  $S_2$  of theoretical service life after the second inspection is therefore:

$$S_i = \frac{0.5}{0.125} \times 480 \text{ h} = 1,920 \text{ h}$$

Remaining theoretical service life:

$$D_2 = 3,040 \text{ h} - 1,920 \text{ h} = 1,120 \text{ h}$$

The values above are entered in the table  
(see table example P.7-128)

### 3. Inspection (3rd year)

The crane was used for assembly work and occasional unloading work on docks:

Load spectrum : L 2, i.e.  $Km_3 = 0.25$ .

The operating hour counter reads 3,000 h, i.e. during this period:

3,000 h - 2,000 h = 1,000 h (2,000 h were used during the first two years).

The winch was operated 30% of the time,

i.e.  $T_3 = 300$  h.

The used proportion  $S_3$  of theoretical service life after the third inspection interval is therefore:

$$S_i = \frac{0.25}{0.125} \times 300 \text{ h} = 600 \text{ h}$$

Remaining theoretical service life:

$$D_3 = 1,220 \text{ h} - 600 \text{ h} = 620 \text{ h}$$

The values are entered in the table.  
(see table example P.7-128)

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

### 8.1 SPECIFICATION

This crane is designed for normal work of lifting hook.

Classification of this crane is as follows. (ISO 4301/2, FEM 1.001)

Class of utilization: U1

State of loading: Q2

Group Classification as crane: A1

In case of severer work condition such as bucket etc, components life may be lowered.

In case of severer work condition, perform work referring to manufacture's recommended condition.

As for Front or Rear winch, calculate service life of component referring to Article 7.14 MEASURES REQUIRED FOR WINCH MONITORING and perform maintenance work under appropriate interval.

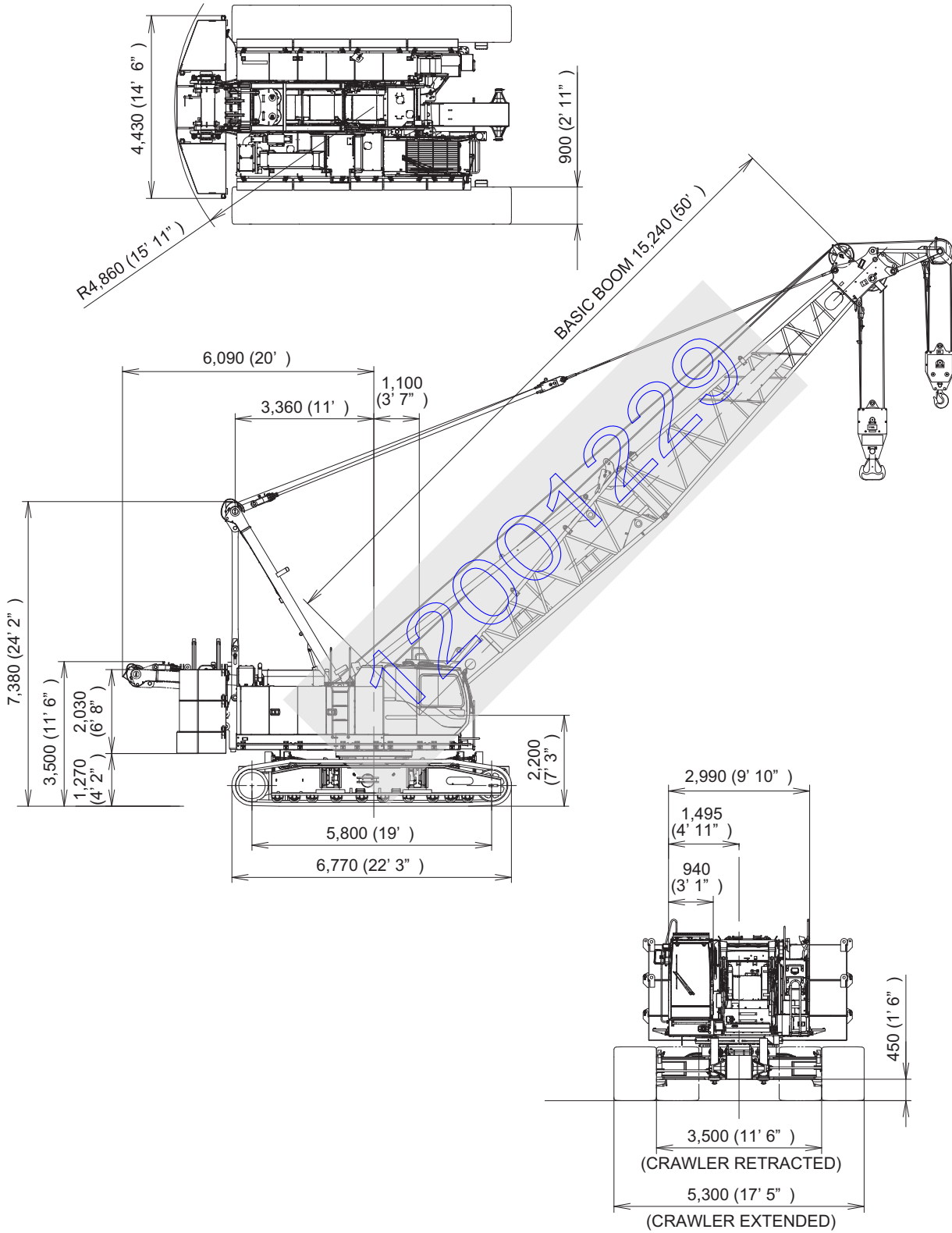
12001229

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

### 8.1.1 OUTER DIMENSION

#### 1. CRANE

UNIT : mm (ft-in)



8.1.2 CRANE SPECIFICATION, PERFORMANCE

- CRANE

Type		Full swing, crawler type	
Max. rated load × work radius		108.9 t × 3.65 m (240,000 lbs × 12 ft)	
Boom length	Basic boom	15.2 m (50 ft)	
	Maximum boom	70.1 m (230 ft)	
	Crane jib	9.1 m (30 ft) to 21.3 m (70 ft)	
	Maximum boom and jib	61 m (200 ft) Boom + 21.3 m (70 ft) Jib	
Work speed (wire rope)	Front / rear hoisting rope speed	120 m/min (390 ft/min)	Wire rope dia.
	Front / rear lowering rope speed	120 m/min (390 ft/min)	
	Boom raising rope speed	48 m/min (160 ft/min)	
	Boom lowering rope speed	48 m/min (160 ft/min)	
	Third hoisting rope speed (Option)	120 m/min (390 ft/min)	
	Third lowering rope speed (Option)	120 m/min (390 ft/min)	
	Swing speed	3.2 min <sup>-1</sup> (3.2 rpm)	
	Propel speed	1.4/1.0 km/h (0.87/0.62 mph)	
Gradability (tan θ)		40%	
Working weight *1		99.942 t (220,330 lbs)	
Average ground pressure *1		Approx. 93.9 kPa (13.6 psi)	
Engine	Engine name	Hino J08E-UV	
	Engine out put	213 kW/2,100 min <sup>-1</sup> (286 HP/2,100 rpm)	

\*1 Crane (15.2 m (50 ft), Without rear drum rope, Without main hook, With self removal)

1. Each rope speed varies based on load.
2. Each rope speed is the value of the drum first layer's one.

OUTSIDE DIMENSIONS

Unit : mm (ft-in)

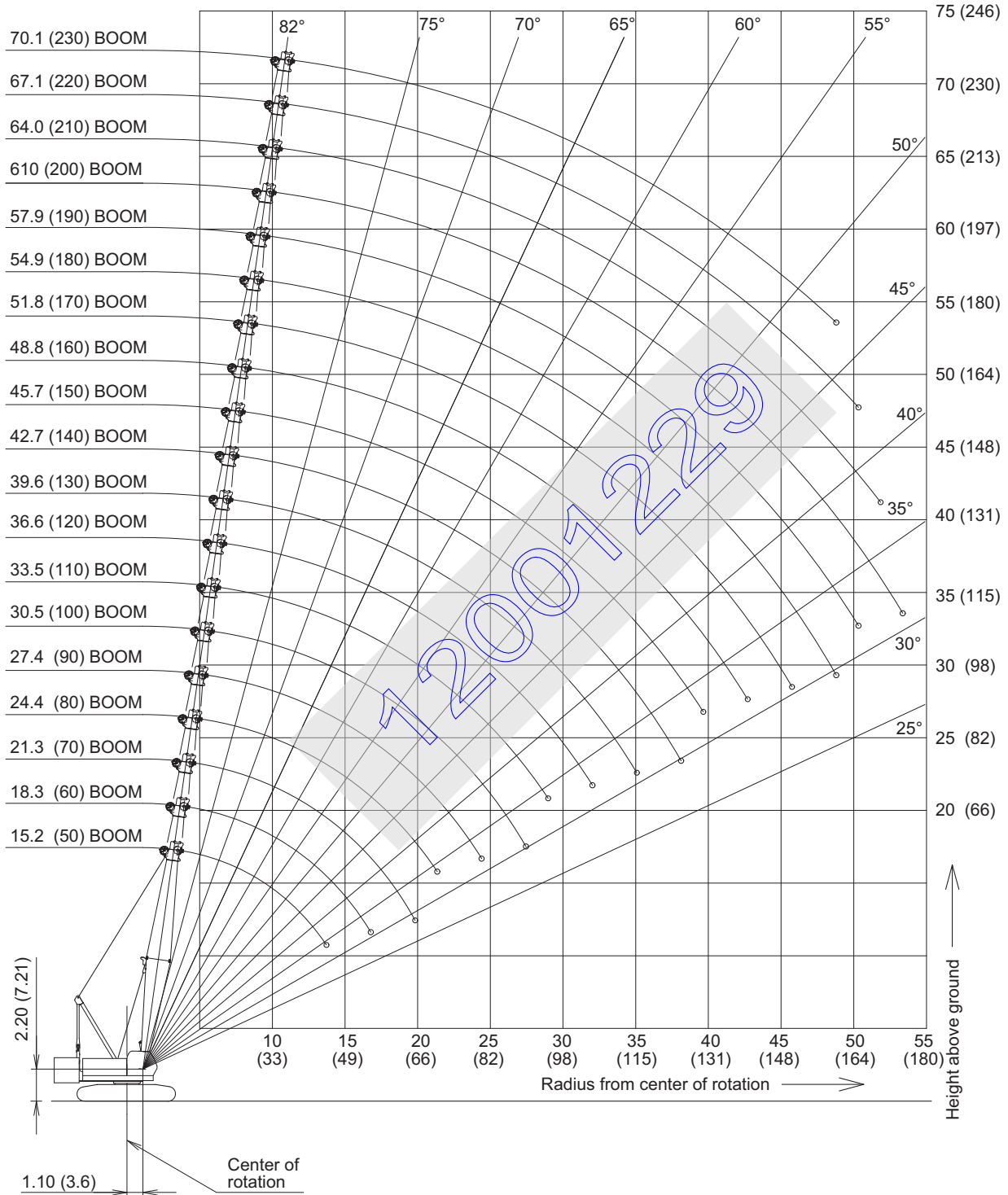
Overall width of cab	2,990 (9' 10")
Radius of rear end (counterweight)	4,860 (15' 11")
Center of rotation to rear end (Low gantry position)	6,090 (20')
Center of rotation to boom foot pin (from center of rotation)	1,100 (3' 7")
Height from ground to boom foot pin	2,200 (7' 3")
Height to top of gantry (Working position)	7,380 (24' 2")
Height to top of gantry (Low gantry position)	3,500 (11' 6")
Counterweight ground clearance	1,270 (4' 2")
Overall length of crawlers	6,770 (22' 3")
Distance between centers of tumblers	5,800 (19')
Overall width of crawlers (Extend/Retract)	5,300 / 3,500 (17' 5" / 11' 6")
Width of crawler shoe	900 (2' 11")
Ground clearance of carbody	450 (1' 6")

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

### 8.1.3 CRANE WORKING RANGES

#### 1. CRANE WORKING RANGES

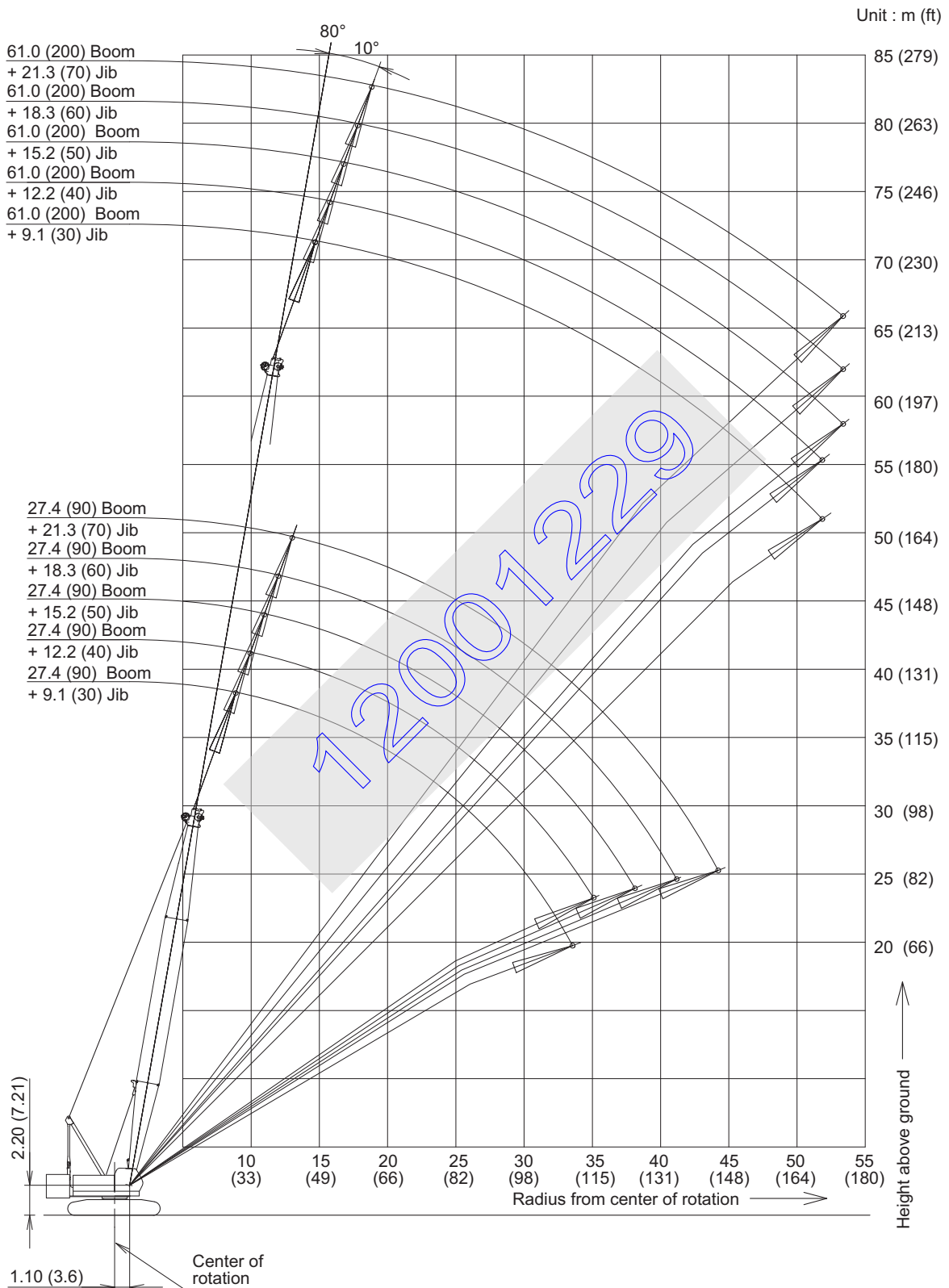
Unit : m (ft)





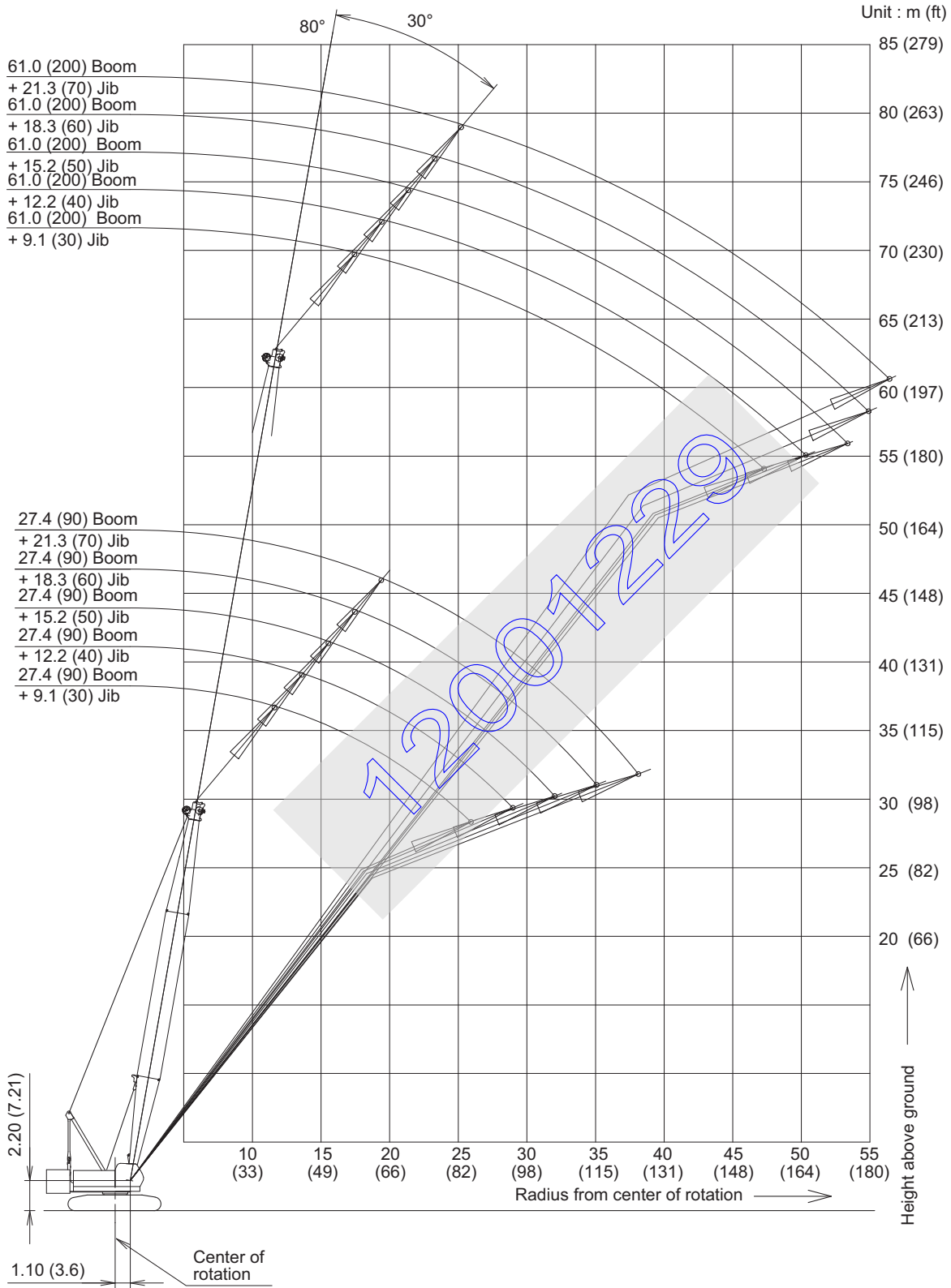
2. JIB WORKING RANGE

(1) Offset angle 10 degrees



# 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

(2) Offset angle 30 degrees



## 8.2 DIMENSION, WEIGHT OF EACH COMPONENT

Dimension and weight of each component when disassembled is shown here.  
Use this as reference value.

### 8.2.1 MAIN MACHINERY

Name	Dimension mm (ft-in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Base Machine • Boom base • Gantry • Crawler • Wire rope (Front / rear / boom hoist)		57,520 (126,808)
Base Machine • Gantry • Crawler • Wire rope (Front / rear / boom hoist)		54,200 (119,489)
Base Machine • Boom base • Gantry • Wire rope (Front / rear / boom hoist) • Without crawler • Without side steps		33,660 (74,206)
Base Machine • Gantry • Wire rope (Front / rear / boom hoist) • Without crawler • Without side steps		30,340 (66,887)
Crawler		11,930 (26,301)

\*1 With the side step on cabin side : 3,170 (10' 5")  
With the side steps on the both side : 3,340 (11')

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

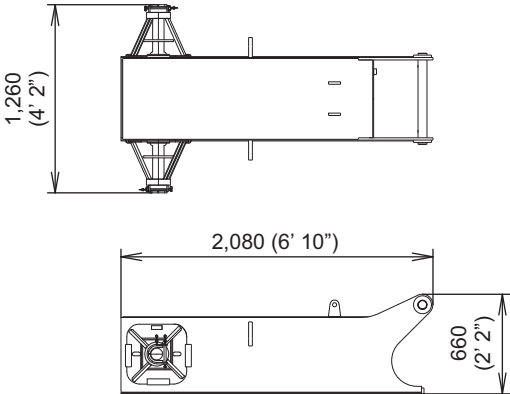
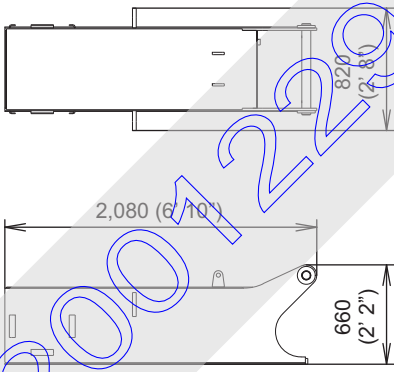
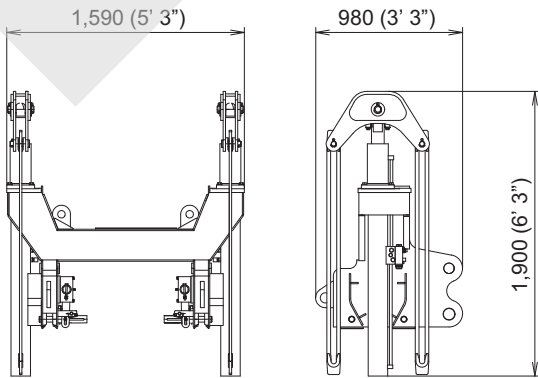
Name	Dimension mm (ft-in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Translifter	<p>Technical drawing of a Translifter component. The drawing shows two views: a side view and a top view. The side view shows a height of 970 mm (3' 2") and a base width of 230 mm (9"). The top view shows a length of 1,480 mm (4' 10").</p>	320 (705) /1piece

12001229

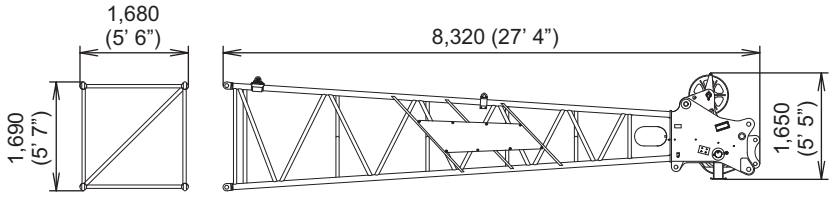
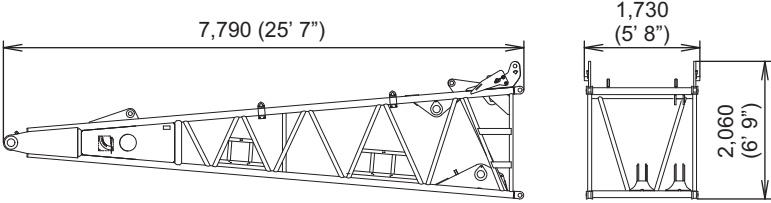

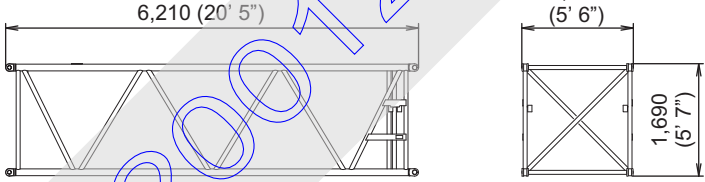
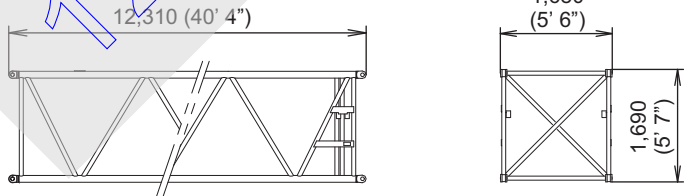
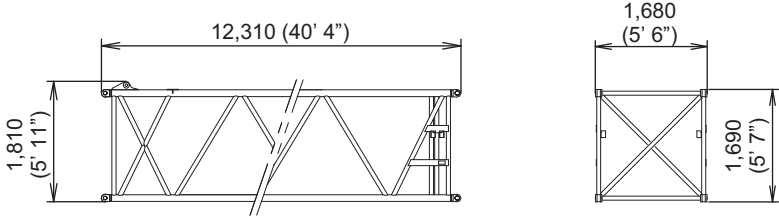
8.2.2 COUNTERWEIGHT

Name	Dimension mm (ft-in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Counterweight (1)		11,600 (25,600)
Counterweight (R) (3) (5)		5,750 (12,680)
Counterweight (L) (2) (4)		5,750 (12,680)

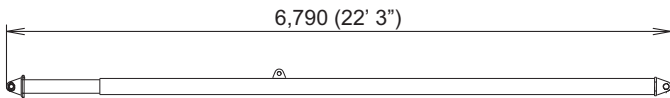
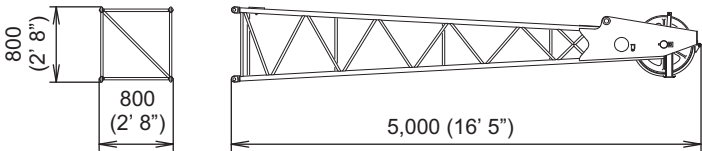
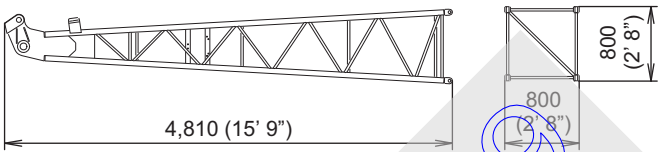
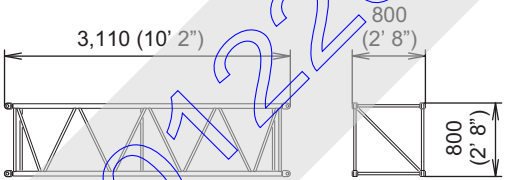
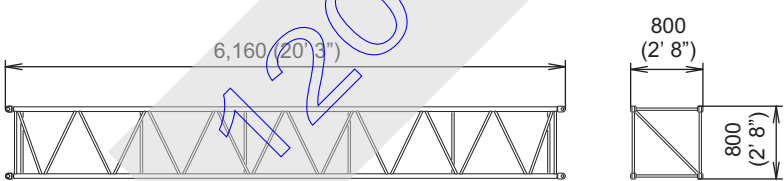
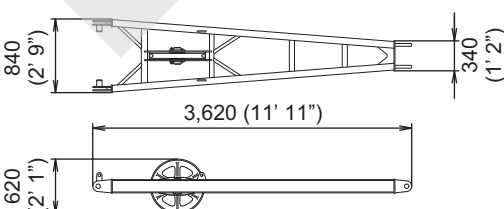
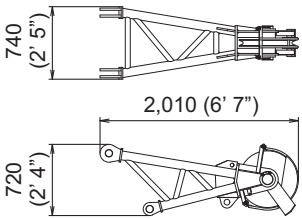
## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

Name	Dimension mm (ft-in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Carbody weight • With float		3,320 (7,319) /1piece
Carbody weight • Without float		3,250 (7,165) /1piece
Self removal unit		870 (1,918)

8.2.3 CRANE ATTACHMENT

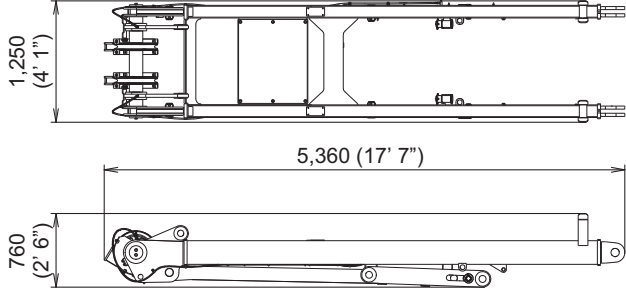
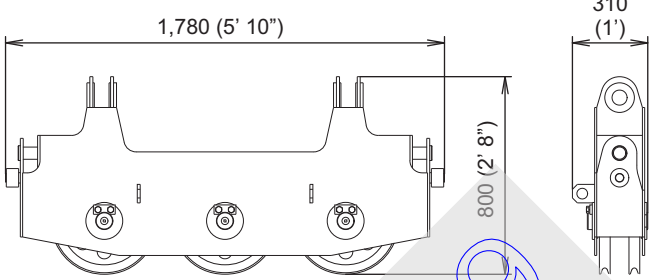
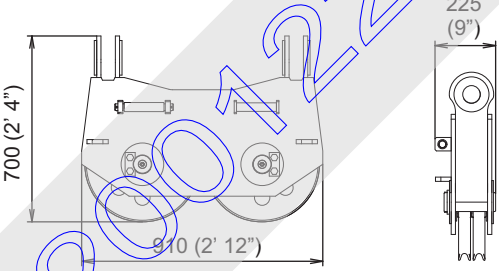
Name	Dimension mm (ft-in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Boom tip		1,525 (3,360)
Boom base		2,235 (4,927)
3.0 m Boom insert		380 (840)
6.1 m Boom insert		655 (1,445)
12.2 m Boom insert		1,195 (2,635)
12.2 m Boom insert (With lug)		1,220 (2,690)

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

Name	Dimension mm (ft-in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Backstop	 <p>6,790 (22' 3")</p>	440 (970) (each)
Jib tip	 <p>800 (2' 8") 800 (2' 8") 5,000 (16' 5")</p>	280 (620)
Jib base	 <p>4,810 (15' 9") 800 (2' 8") 800 (2' 8")</p>	200 (440)
3.0 m Jib insert	 <p>3,110 (10' 2") 800 (2' 8") 800 (2' 8")</p>	100 (220)
6.0 m Jib insert	 <p>6,160 (20' 3") 800 (2' 8") 800 (2' 8")</p>	180 (400)
Strut	 <p>840 (2' 9") 3,620 (11' 11") 340 (1' 2") 620 (2' 1")</p>	250 (550)
Auxiliary sheave	 <p>740 (2' 5") 2,010 (6' 7") 720 (2' 4")</p>	300 (660)



## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

Name	Dimension mm (ft-in)	Weight kg (lbs)
Gantry		1,320 (2,910)
Upper spreader		300 (660)
Lower spreader		200 (440)

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

---

### 8.3 CLAMSHELL RATED LOADS (OPTION)

#### CLAMSHELL SPECIFICATION

1. Rated loads included in the charts are the maximum allowable freely suspended loads at a given boom length, boom angle and load radius, and have been determined for the machine standing level on firm supporting surface under ideal operating conditions.  
The user must limit or de-rate rated loads to allow for adverse conditions (such as soft or uneven ground, out-of-level conditions, wind, side loads, pendulum action, jerking or sudden stopping of loads, inexperience of personnel, multiple machine lifts, and traveling with a load).
2. Rated loads do not exceed 66% of minimum tipping loads.  
Rated loads based on factors other than machine stability such as structural competence are shown by asterisk \* in the charts.
3. The machine must be reeved and set-up as stated in the operator manual and all the instruction manuals.  
If these manuals are missing, obtain replacements.
  - Boom backstops are required for all boom lengths.
  - Gantry must be fully raised position for all operations.
  - Crawlers must be fully extended and be locked in position.
  - The crane must be leveled to within 1% on a firm supporting surface.
  - 50,900 lbs Counterweight and without carbody weight.
4. Do not attempt to lift where no radius on load is listed as crane may tip or collapse.
5. Attempting to lift more than rated loads may cause machine to tip or collapse.  
Do not tip machine to determine rated loads.
6. Weight of bucket, slings and other lifting devices are a part of the total load.  
Their total weight must be subtracted from the rated load to obtain the weight that can be lifted.
6. The boom should be erected over the front of the crawlers, not laterally.
7. Least stable position is over the side.

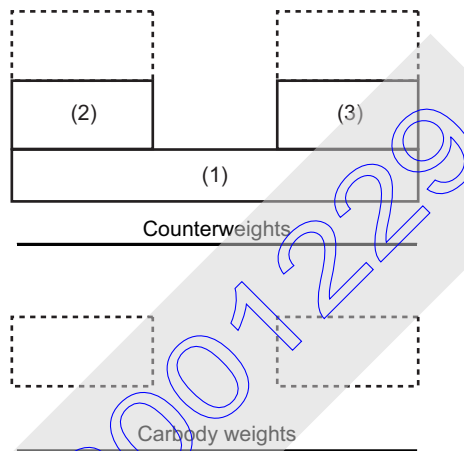
**Maximum Load for Main Boom**

No. of Part of Line	1
Maximum Loads (lbs)	25,000

8. Rated loads listed apply only to the machine as originally manufactured and designed by Manitowoc CRANES CO.,LTD. Modifications to this machine or use of equipment other than that specified can reduce operating capacity.

10. ASSEMBLING THE COUNTERWEIGHT

- 50,900 lbs Counterweight
- Without carbody counterweight.



Operation of this equipment in excess of rated loads or disregard of instruction voids the warranty.

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

CLAMSHELL CAPACITIES IN POUNDS  
 THREE COUNTERWEIGHTS (50,900 lbs)  
 WITHOUT CARBODY WEIGHTS (0 lbs)  
 CRAWLERS : EXTENDED POSITION

50' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
26.0	64.4	25,000 *
28.0	61.8	25,000 *
30.0	59.2	25,000 *
32.0	56.4	25,000 *
34.0	53.6	25,000 *
36.0	50.7	25,000 *
38.0	47.6	25,000 *
40.0	44.3	25,000 *
45.0	35.2	23,100

60' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
30.0	64.8	25,000 *
32.0	62.6	25,000 *
34.0	60.4	25,000 *
36.0	58.2	25,000 *
38.0	55.9	25,000 *
40.0	53.5	25,000 *
45.0	47.2	22,900
50.0	40.2	19,800
55.0	31.9	17,400

70' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
34.0	65.0	25,000 *
36.0	63.2	25,000 *
38.0	61.3	25,000 *
40.0	59.4	25,000 *
45.0	54.5	22,700
50.0	49.2	19,600
55.0	43.5	17,200
60.0	37.1	15,200

80' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
40.0	63.6	25,000 *
45.0	59.5	22,500
50.0	55.2	19,400
55.0	50.7	17,000
60.0	45.8	15,000
65.0	40.5	13,200
70.0	34.6	11,900

90' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
45.0	63.2	16,600
50.0	59.5	19,200
55.0	55.8	16,800
60.0	51.8	14,800
65.0	47.6	13,000
70.0	43.0	11,700
75.0	38.1	10,600
80.0	32.5	9,500

100' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
50.0	62.9	18,500 *
55.0	59.6	16,500
60.0	56.2	14,600
65.0	52.6	12,800
70.0	48.9	11,500
75.0	45.0	10,400
80.0	40.7	9,300
85.0	36.0	8,400
90.0	30.8	7,700

110' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
55.0	62.6	15,900 *
60.0	59.6	14,300
65.0	56.5	12,600
70.0	53.3	11,200
75.0	50.0	9,900
80.0	46.5	9,000
85.0	42.7	8,200
90.0	38.7	7,300
95.0	34.3	6,600

120' Boom		
Load Radius (ft)	Boom Angle (deg.)	360° Rated Load (lbs)
60.0	62.4	13,900 *
65.0	59.7	12,600
70.0	56.8	11,200
75.0	53.9	9,900
80.0	50.9	9,000
85.0	47.7	8,200
90.0	44.4	7,300
95.0	40.8	6,600
100.0	37.0	6,000
105.0	32.8	5,500

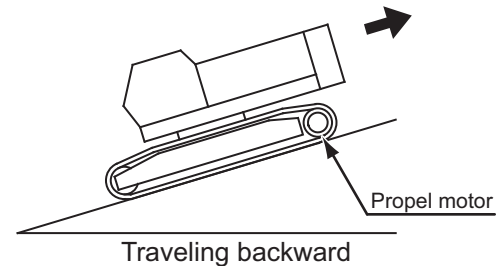
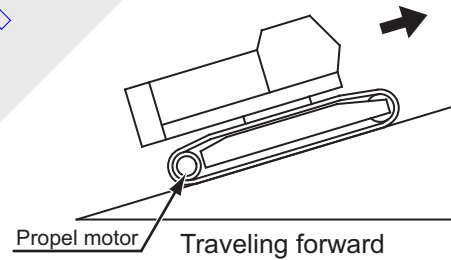
### 8.4 SWING AND PROPEL STABILITY

1. Without carbody weight

Attachment	Counterweight ton (lbs)	All-round swing			Propelling on slope	
		Crawler extend	Crawler retract	When jacked up without crawler	Forward	Backward
Without attachment (Base machine only)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	△(No abrupt lever control)	×	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	×	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	×	×	×	×	×
With boom base (Boom angle : 30 degrees or less)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	○	×	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	△(Slope:8 deg. or less)	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	△(No abrupt lever control)	×	×	×	△(No abrupt lever control)

○ : Able to be operated  
 △ : Able to be operated with conditions  
 × : Unable to be operated

- (1) The table above shows the values for operation on firm ground.  
 On weak ground, operate with care after curing the ground.
- (2) As a principle, swinging on a trailer is prohibited.
- (3) Maximum slope angle is 21.8 degrees (40%).  
 This may become lower depending on condition (ground, crane configuration).
- (4) Travelling forward means the case where the counterweight is at the lower slope and traveling backward where it is at the upper slope.



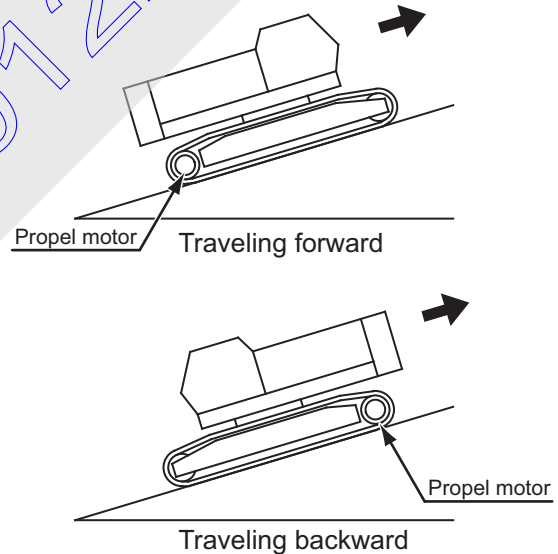
## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

### 2. With carbody weight

Attachment	Counterweight ton (lbs)	All-round swing			Propelling on slope	
		Crawler extend	Crawler retract	When jacked up without crawler	Forward	Backward
Without attachment (Base machine only)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	○	×	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	△ (Slope:5 deg. or less)	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	△ (No abrupt lever control)	×	×	×	△ (No abrupt lever control)
With boom base (Boom angle : 30 degrees or less)	0 (Without)	○	○	○	○	○
	11.6 (25,573) (No.1)	○	○	△ (No abrupt lever control)	○	○
	23.1 (50,925) (No.1 to No.2)	○	×	×	△ (Slope:12 deg. or less)	○
	34.6 (76,277) (No.1 to No.3)	○	×	×	×	○

○ : Able to be operated  
 △ : Able to be operated with conditions  
 × : Unable to be operated

- (1) The table above shows the values for operation on firm ground.  
On weak ground, operate with care after curing the ground.
- (2) As a principle, swinging on a trailer is prohibited.
- (3) Maximum slope angle is 21.8 degrees (40%).  
This may become lower depending on condition (ground, crane configuration).
- (4) Traveling forward means the case where the counterweight is at the lower slope and traveling backward where it is at the upper slope.



## 8.5 PROPEL ALLOWABLE SLOPE ANGLE

### 8.5.1 CRANE ATTACHMENT INSTALLED : BOOM INSERT CONFIGURATION

#### **CAUTION**

In the area showing [-] mark, do not propel.

Machine may overturn.

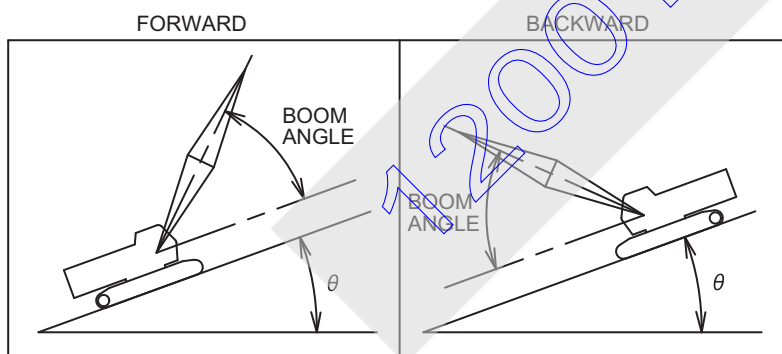
Failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injuries or loss of life.

If the machine has to propel by some reason, observe the following points.

- Do not propel with a load lifted.
- Propel with low speed and gently.
- Propel on the flat and firm ground.
- Ensure to check the ground condition and propel on the slope angle smaller than shown in the chart.
- Propel straight against slope.
- Provide the gentle slope at the beginning and end positions of slope.

Propel upward downward on slope

( $\theta$  : allowable angle)



## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

### 1. CRANE PROPEL ALLOWABLE SLOPE ANGLE

#### (1) Without aux. sheave

(Unit : Degree)

Boom length m (ft)	Forward			Backward		
	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
15.2 (50)	7	7	5	8	8	8
18.3 (60)	8	8	6	8	8	8
21.3 (70)	8	8	7	8	8	8
24.4 (80)	8	8	7	8	8	8
27.4 (90)	8	8	7	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	8	8	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	8	8	8
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	7	8	8
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	5	6	8
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	3	5	6
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	1	3	5
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	2	4
64.0 (210)	8	8	8	-	-	2
67.1 (220)	8	8	8	-	-	1
70.1 (230)	8	8	8	-	-	-

#### (2) With aux. sheave

(Unit : Degree)

Boom length m (ft)	Forward			Backward		
	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
15.2 (50)	7	7	5	8	8	8
18.3 (60)	8	8	6	8	8	8
21.3 (70)	8	8	7	8	8	8
24.4 (80)	8	8	7	8	8	8
27.4 (90)	8	8	7	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	8	8	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	8	8	8
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	7	8	8
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	5	6	8
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	3	5	6
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	1	3	5
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	2	4
64.0 (210)	8	8	8	-	-	2
67.1 (220)	8	8	8	-	-	1



2. FIXED JIB PROPEL ALLOW SLOPE ANGLE

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	9.1 (30)					
Offset angle	10					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	7	8	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	5	6	8
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	4	5	7
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	2	4	5
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	-	4
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	3
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	1

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	9.1 (30)					
Offset angle	30					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	7	8	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	5	6	8
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	4	5	7
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	2	4	5
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	2	4
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	3
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	1

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	12.2 (40)					
Offset angle	10					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	7	7	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	4	6	7
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	3	5	6
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	1	3	5
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	1	4
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	2
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	1

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	12.2 (40)					
Offset angle	30					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	7	7	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	4	6	7
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	3	5	6
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	1	3	5
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	1	3
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	2
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	1

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	15.2 (50)					
Offset angle	10					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	6	7	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	4	5	7
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	3	4	6
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	1	3	5
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	1	3
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	2
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	1

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	15.2 (50)					
Offset angle	30					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	8	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	6	7	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	4	5	7
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	3	4	6
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	1	2	4
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	1	3
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	2
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	1

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	18.3 (60)					
Offset angle	10					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	7	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	5	6	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	3	4	6
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	2	4	6
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	-	2	4
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	-	3
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	1
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	-

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	18.3 (60)					
Offset angle	30					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	7	8	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	5	6	8
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	3	4	6
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	2	4	5
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	-	2	4
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	-	3
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	1
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	-

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	21.3 (70)					
Offset angle	10					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	7	7	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	5	6	7
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	2	4	6
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	1	3	5
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	-	1	3
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	-	2
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	1
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	-

(Unit : Degree)

Jib length m (ft)	21.3 (70)					
Offset angle	30					
Configuration	Forward			Backward		
Boom length m (ft)	Boom angle			Boom angle		
	35	40	50	40	50	60
27.4 (90)	8	8	8	8	8	8
30.5 (100)	8	8	8	8	8	8
33.5 (110)	8	8	8	8	8	8
36.6 (120)	8	8	8	8	8	8
39.6 (130)	8	8	8	7	7	8
42.7 (140)	8	8	8	5	6	7
45.7 (150)	8	8	8	2	4	6
48.8 (160)	8	8	8	1	3	5
51.8 (170)	8	8	8	-	1	3
54.9 (180)	8	8	8	-	-	2
57.9 (190)	8	8	8	-	-	1
61.0 (200)	8	8	8	-	-	-

## 8. REFERENCE MATERIALS

### 8.6 LOW GANTRY POSITION

During the work, if the machine must propel under low overhead place such as under bridge, move with low gantry position (Gantry is lowered).

#### **⚠ DANGER**

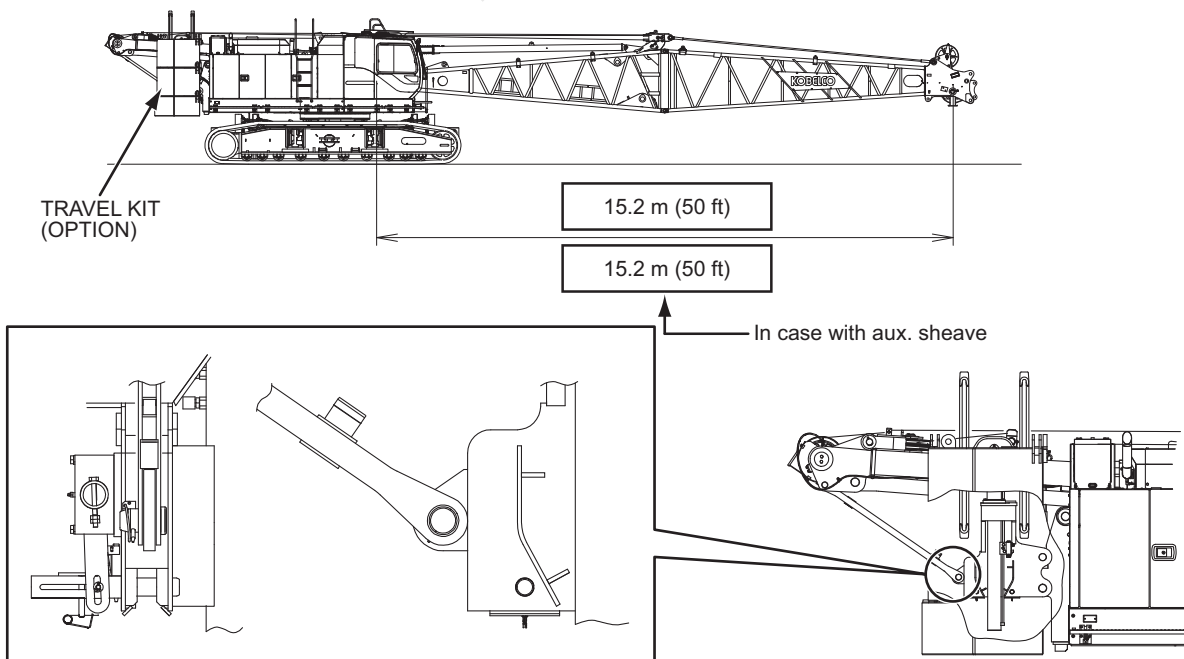
**Never lift a load with low gantry position. Otherwise damage to the boom, gantry or travel kit or coming up of counterweight may occur and is very dangerous.**

**Ensure to see that there is enough clearance between the machine height / boom height and the low overhead place.**

**Make low gantry propel distance as short as possible and slowly.**

#### CONDITIONS

- The crawlers are fully extended.
- All counterweight are equipped and secured firmly with bolts.
- Install the travel kit to the counterweight firmly.
- Propel on level ground with low speed.
- The boom angle is horizontal or slightly up.
- Guy cable with proper length is connected on the boom tip.
- Boom angle should be such that the guy cables do not press down the boom tip guide roller.
- The longest boom length is 15.2 m (50 ft)  
(The longest boom length with auxiliary sheave is 15.2 m (50 ft))



## 8.7 SAFETY DEVICE LIST (OPTION)

No.	Item
1	MONITOR CAMERA
	Monitor camera installation for rope winding and machine rear condition.
	Front / rear drum monitor camera
	Boom drum monitor camera
	Machine rear monitor camera
2	CAB CEILING WINDOW GUARD
	Preventing damage of ceiling window by falling thing.
3	AUXILIARY PLATFORM
	Stowing type step on the both side of machine deck. ( width : 300mm)
4	LOAD SAFETY DEVICE OUTER INDICATING LIGHT
	Indication of load condition by square type 3 color light to outside ( gr, ye. Re)
5	PROPEL WARNING DEVICE
	Warning at propel by buzzer intermittent sound.
6	EXTINGUISHER
	ABC powder type extinguisher
7	RIGHT AND LEFT GUARD UPPER FACE HANDRAIL (HIGH)
	Preventing falling off at guard upper face (folding type)

12001229

12001229